

# Easy Access Rules for Acceptable Means of Compliance for Airworthiness of Products, Parts and Appliances (AMC-20) (Amendment 14)

## **EASA eRules: aviation rules for the 21st century**

Rules and regulations are the core of the European Union civil aviation system. The aim of the **EASA eRules** project is to make them **accessible** in an efficient and reliable way to stakeholders.

**EASA eRules** will be a comprehensive, single system for the drafting, sharing and storing of rules. It will be the single source for all aviation safety rules applicable to European airspace users. It will offer easy (online) access to all rules and regulations as well as new and innovative applications such as rulemaking process automation, stakeholder consultation, cross-referencing, and comparison with ICAO and third countries' standards.

To achieve these ambitious objectives, the **EASA eRules** project is structured in ten modules to cover all aviation rules and innovative functionalities.

The **EASA eRules** system is developed and implemented in close cooperation with Member States and aviation industry to ensure that all its capabilities are relevant and effective.

Published November 2018<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The published date represents the date when the consolidated version of the document was generated.

## **DISCLAIMER**

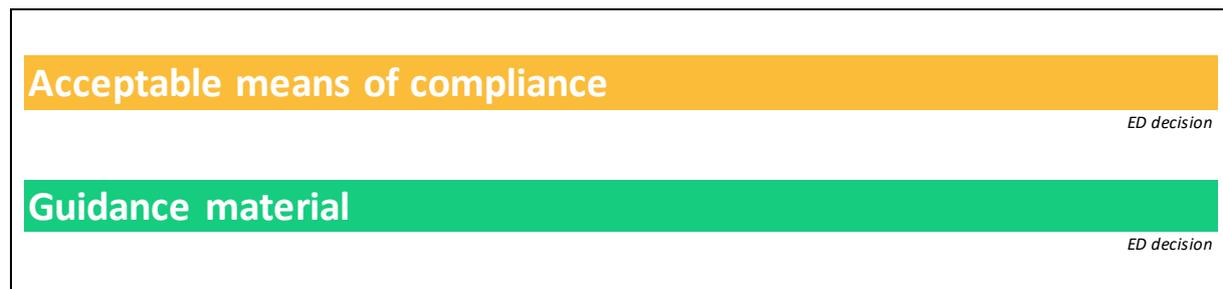
This version is issued by the European Aviation Safety Agency (EASA) in order to provide its stakeholders with an updated and easy-to-read publication. It has been prepared by putting together the acceptable means of compliance with the related guidance material. However, this is not an official publication and EASA accepts no liability for damage of any kind resulting from the risks inherent in the use of this document.

---

## NOTE FROM THE EDITOR

The content of this document is arranged as follows: the acceptable means of compliance (AMC) are followed by the related guidance material (GM) paragraph(s).

All elements (i.e. AMC and GM) are colour-coded and can be identified according to the illustration below. The EASA Executive Director (ED) decision through which the point or paragraph was introduced or last amended is indicated below the paragraph title(s) *in italics*.



The format of this document has been adjusted to make it user-friendly and for reference purposes. Any comments should be sent to [erules@easa.europa.eu](mailto:erules@easa.europa.eu).

## INCORPORATED AMENDMENTS

### AMC/GM (ED DECISIONS)

Incorporated ED Decision	AMC/GM Issue No, Amendment No	Applicability date
<a href="#">ED Decision 2003/12/RM</a>	AMC-20/ Initial issue	5/11/2003
<a href="#">ED Decision 2006/012/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 1	29/12/2006
<a href="#">ED Decision 2007/019/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 2	26/12/2007
<a href="#">ED Decision 2008/004/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 3	2/5/2008
<a href="#">ED Decision 2008/007/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 4	5/9/2008
<a href="#">ED Decision 2009/019/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 5	23/12/2009
<a href="#">ED Decision 2010/003/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 6	26/07/2010
<a href="#">ED Decision 2010/012/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 7	23/12/2010
<a href="#">ED Decision 2011/001/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 8	30/3/2011
<a href="#">ED Decision 2012/014/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 9	24/9/2012
<a href="#">ED Decision 2013/026/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 10	1/1/2014 <sup>1</sup>
<a href="#">ED Decision 2013/030/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 11	1/1/2014
<a href="#">ED Decision 2014/001/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 12	8/2/2014
<a href="#">ED Decision 2015/017/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 13	16/7/2015
<a href="#">ED Decision 2017/020/R</a>	AMC-20/ Amendment 14	25/10/2017

*Note: To access the official versions, please click on the hyperlinks provided above.*

<sup>1</sup> This is the main applicability date defined in the ED Decision. However, the decision allowed that this AMC was not applied to applications received until 30 June 2014, if so requested by the applicant and providing that in such a case the applicant could demonstrate that the process of development of the relevant part or appliance started before the entry into force of the ED Decision (1 January 2014), in accordance with the specifications applicable at that time.

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Disclaimer .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Note from the editor .....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Incorporated amendments .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Table of contents .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Preamble .....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>AMC-20-1 .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>AMC 20-1 Certification of Aircraft Propulsion Systems Equipped with Electronic Control     Systems.....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>AMC 20-2A .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>AMC 20-2A Certification of Essential APU Equipped with Electronic Controls .....</b>	<b>19</b>
Appendix to AMC 20-2 .....	24
<b>AMC 20-3A .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>AMC 20-3A Certification of Engines Equipped with Electronic Engine Control Systems.....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>AMC 20-4A .....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>AMC 20-4A Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria For the Use of Navigation     Systems in European Airspace Designated For Basic RNAV Operations.....</b>	<b>55</b>
Annex 1 to AMC 20-4 – GPS Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) Prediction Program.....	61
<b>AMC 20-5 .....</b>	<b>62</b>
<b>AMC 20-5 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for the use of the Navstar Global     Positioning System (GPS) .....</b>	<b>62</b>
Appendix A to AMC 20-5 .....	69
<b>AMC 20-6 .....</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>AMC 20-6 Extended Range Operation with Two-Engine Aeroplanes ETOPS Certification and     Operation.....</b>	<b>71</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-6 – Propulsion System Reliability Assessment .....	99
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-6 – Aircraft Systems Reliability Assessment.....	110
Appendix 3 to AMC 20-6 – Operational Limitations.....	117
Appendix 4 to AMC 20-6 – Flight Preparation and In-flight Procedures .....	118

---

Appendix 5 to AMC 20-6 – ETOPS En-Route Alternate Aerodromes .....	123
Appendix 6 to AMC 20-6 – ETOPS Training Programme.....	125
Appendix 7 to AMC 20-6 – Typical ETOPS Operations Manual Supplement.....	127
Appendix 8 to AMC 20-6 – Continuing Airworthiness Considerations.....	129
<b>AMC 20-8 .....</b>	<b>135</b>
<b>AMC 20-8 Occurrence Reporting .....</b>	<b>135</b>
Annex 1 to AMC 20-8 – Reportable occurrences to specific systems .....	150
<b>AMC 20-9 .....</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>AMC 20-9 Acceptable Means of Compliance for the Approval of Departure Clearance via     Data Communications over ACARS.....</b>	<b>153</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-9 PDC versus DCL: A Comparison.....	161
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-9 Common Terms.....	162
<b>AMC 20-10 .....</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>AMC 20-10 Acceptable Means of Compliance for the Approval of Digital ATIS via Data Link     over ACARS .....</b>	<b>163</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-10 Common Terms.....	171
<b>AMC 20-12 .....</b>	<b>172</b>
<b>AMC 20-12 Recognition of FAA Order 8400.12a for RNP-10 Operations.....</b>	<b>172</b>
<b>AMC 20-15 .....</b>	<b>178</b>
<b>AMC 20-15 Airworthiness Certification Considerations for the Airborne Collision Avoidance     System (ACAS II) with optional Hybrid Surveillance .....</b>	<b>178</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-15 – ACAS II/Mode S Transponder Ground Testing Precautions .....	185
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-15 – List of Acronyms .....	186
<b>AMC 20-20 .....</b>	<b>187</b>
<b>AMC 20-20 Continuing Structural Integrity Programme .....</b>	<b>187</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a Supplementary Structural Inspection Programme .....	200
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a programme to preclude the occurrence of widespread fatigue damage .....	207
Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for establishing instructions for continued airworthiness of structural repairs and modifications .....	227
Annex 1 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Approval Process for New Repairs .....	244

Annex 2 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Assessment of Existing Repairs.....	245
Annex 3 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Repairs and Modifications to Removable Structural Components.....	251
Annex 4 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Service Bulletin Review Process.....	254
Annex 5 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: List of Significant STCs that may Adversely Affect Fatigue Critical Structure.....	258
Appendix 4 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a corrosion control programme.....	259
Appendix 5 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a SB review and mandatory modification programme .....	271
<b>AMC 20-21 .....</b>	<b>276</b>
<b>AMC 20-21 Programme to enhance aeroplane Electrical Wiring Interconnection System (EWIS) maintenance .....</b>	<b>276</b>
Appendix A to AMC 20-21 Enhanced Zonal Analysis Logic Diagram and Steps.....	292
Appendix B to AMC 20-21 Examples of Typical EZAP Worksheets .....	299
Appendix C to AMC 20-21 Determination if a major change to an aircraft should be specifically subjected to an EZAP .....	306
Appendix D to AMC 20-21 .....	309
Appendix E to AMC 20-21 Causes of Wire Degradation .....	310
<b>AMC 20-22 .....</b>	<b>312</b>
<b>AMC 20-22 Aeroplane Electrical Wiring Interconnection System Training Programme .....</b>	<b>312</b>
Appendix A to AMC 20-22 – EWIS Minimum Initial Training Programme for Group 1 and 2.....	319
Appendix B to AMC 20-22 – EWIS Minimum Initial Training Programme for Group 3 through 8.....	321
Appendix C to AMC 20-22 – Curriculum and Lessons Plan .....	323
<b>AMC 20-23 .....</b>	<b>338</b>
<b>AMC 20-23 Development of Electrical Standard Wiring Practices documentation.....</b>	<b>338</b>
Appendix A: Groups, Major Topics, Standardised Sequence and Description of Minimum Content.....	345
<b>AMC 20-24 .....</b>	<b>347</b>
<b>AMC 20-24 Certification Considerations for the Enhanced ATS in Non-Radar Areas using ADS-B Surveillance (ADS-B-NRA) Application via 1090 MHZ Extended Squitter .....</b>	<b>347</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-24 .....	362
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-24 .....	363

---

Appendix 3 to AMC 20-24 .....	364
Appendix 4 to AMC 20-24 .....	366
<b>AMC 20-25 .....</b>	<b>368</b>
<b>AMC 20-25 Airworthiness and operational consideration for Electronic Flight Bags (EFBs) .368</b>	
Appendix A to AMC 20-25 – Examples of Type A Software Applications .....	400
Appendix B to AMC 20-25 – Type B Software Applications .....	401
Appendix C to AMC 20-25 – Process for the Classification of Software Applications....	402
Appendix D to AMC 20-25 – Human Machine Interface Assessment and Human Factors Considerations .....	404
Appendix E to AMC 20-25 – Flight Crew Training .....	409
Appendix F to AMC 20-25 – Software Application Documentation.....	413
Appendix G to AMC 20-25 – EFB Policy and Procedures Manual .....	416
Appendix H to AMC 20-25 – Airport Moving Map Display (AMMD) Application with Own-Ship Position .....	418
Appendix I to AMC 20-25 – Example of Final Operational Report.....	421
Appendix J to AMC 20-25 – Power Supply Considerations for Portable EFBs.....	423
Appendix K to AMC 20-25 – Considerations for Rapid Depressurisation Test.....	424
<b>AMC 20-26 .....</b>	<b>425</b>
<b>AMC 20-26 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP Authorisation Required     (RNP AR) Operations .....</b>	<b>425</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-26 Glossary .....	452
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-26 Training and Crew Qualification Issues.....	455
Appendix 3 to AMC 20-26 RNP Operational Considerations.....	461
Appendix 4 to AMC 20-26 Acceptable Methods for Flight Technical Error Assessment for RNP .....	466
Appendix 5 to AMC 20-26 Flight Operation Safety Assessments .....	470
Appendix 6 AMC 20-26/PBN Manual/AC90-101 Comparison.....	473
<b>AMC 20-27A .....</b>	<b>481</b>
<b>AMC 20-27A Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP APPROACH (RNP     APCH) Operations Including APV BARO-VNAV Operations .....</b>	<b>481</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-27 Glossary .....	504
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-27 Operational Characteristics of the Procedure and its Operational Use .....	507
Appendix 3 to AMC 20-27 Alternate Navigation Database Integrity Check.....	508
Appendix 4 to AMC 20-27 Operational Procedures .....	510

---

Appendix 5 to AMC 20-27 Flight Crew Training Syllabus.....	515
<b>AMC 20-28 .....</b>	<b>517</b>
<b>AMC 20-28 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria related to Area Navigation for     Global Navigation Satellite System approach operation to Localiser Performance with     Vertical guidance minima using Satellite Based Augmentation System.....</b>	<b>517</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-28 Glossary .....	531
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-28 Operational Characteristics of the Procedure and its Operational Use .....	533
Appendix 3 to AMC 20-28 LPV Approach Operational Procedures.....	534
Appendix 4 to AMC 20-28 Flight Crew Training Syllabus.....	537
<b>AMC 20-29 .....</b>	<b>539</b>
<b>AMC 20-29 Composite Aircraft Structure .....</b>	<b>539</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-29 – Applicable CSs and Relevant Guidance .....	566
Appendix 2 to AMC 20-29 – Definitions.....	569
Appendix 3 to AMC 20-29 – Change of Composite Material and/or Process .....	572
<b>AMC 20-115D .....</b>	<b>576</b>
<b>AMC 20-115D Airborne Software Development Assurance Using EUROCAE ED-12 and RTCA     DO-178.....</b>	<b>576</b>
<b>AMC 20-128A .....</b>	<b>591</b>
<b>AMC 20-128A Design Considerations for Minimizing Hazards Caused by Uncontained Turbine     Engine and Auxiliary Power Unit Rotor Failure .....</b>	<b>591</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-128A User’s Manual .....	609
<b>AMC 20-136.....</b>	<b>625</b>
<b>AMC 20-136 Aircraft Electrical and Electronic System Lightning Protection.....</b>	<b>625</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-136 Definitions and acronyms.....	645
<b>AMC 20-158.....</b>	<b>647</b>
<b>AMC 20-158 Aircraft Electrical and Electronic System High-Intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF)     Protection.....</b>	<b>647</b>
Appendix 1 to AMC 20-158 Generic transfer functions and attenuation.....	672

## PREAMBLE

*ED Decision 2017/020/R*

### Amendment 14

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-115	Amended ( <a href="#">NPA 2017-02</a> )
------------	---

*ED Decision 2015/017/R*

### Amendment 13

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-136	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2014-16</a> )
AMC 20-158	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2014-16</a> )

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

### Amendment 12

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-25	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2012-02</a> )
-----------	---

*ED Decision 2013/030/R*

### Amendment 11

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-11	Cancelled ( <a href="#">NPA 2013-06</a> )
AMC 20-13	Cancelled ( <a href="#">NPA 2012-19</a> )

*ED Decision 2013/026/R*

### Amendment 10

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-2	Amended ( <a href="#">NPA 2012-11</a> )
AMC 20-3	Amended ( <a href="#">NPA 2012-11</a> )
AMC 20-4	Amended ( <a href="#">NPA 2012-11</a> )
AMC 20-27	Amended ( <a href="#">NPA 2012-11</a> )
AMC 20-115	Amended ( <a href="#">NPA 2012-11</a> )

*ED Decision 2012/014/R*

### Amendment 9

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-28	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2009-04</a> )
-----------	---

*ED Decision 2011/001/R*

### Amendment 8

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-15	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2010-03</a> )
-----------	---

ED Decision 2010/012/R

#### Amendment 7

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-6 rev. 2	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2008-01</a> )
-----------------	---

AMC 20-6 adopted on the 05/11/2003 by means of ED Decision 2003/12/RM is replaced by AMC 20-6 rev. 2.

ED Decision 2010/003/R

#### Amendment 6

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-29	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2009-06</a> )
-----------	---

ED Decision 2009/019/R

#### Amendment 5

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-26	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2008-14</a> )
-----------	---

AMC 20-27	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2008-14</a> )
-----------	---

ED Decision 2008/007/R

#### Amendment 4

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-21	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2007-01</a> )
-----------	---

AMC 20-22	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2007-01</a> )
-----------	---

AMC 20-23	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2007-01</a> )
-----------	---

ED Decision 2008/004/R

#### Amendment 3

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-24	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 2007/05</a> )
-----------	---

ED Decision 2007/019/R

#### Amendment 2

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-1	Amended ( <a href="#">NPA 04/2005</a> )
----------	---

AMC 20-3	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 04/2005</a> )
----------	---

AMC 20-11	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 11/2005</a> )
-----------	---

AMC 20-20	Created ( <a href="#">NPA 05/2006</a> )
-----------	---

**Amendment 1**

The following is a list of paragraphs affected by this amendment:

AMC 20-9	Created
AMC 20-10	Created
AMC 20-12	Created
AMC 20-13	Created

# AMC-20-1

## AMC 20-1 Certification of Aircraft Propulsion Systems Equipped with Electronic Control Systems

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

### 1 GENERAL

The existing specific regulations for Engine, Propeller and aircraft certification may require special interpretation for Engines and Propellers equipped with electronic control systems. Because of the nature of this technology and because of the greater interdependence of engine, propeller and aircraft systems, it has been found necessary to prepare acceptable means of compliance specifically addressing the certification of these control systems.

This AMC 20-1 addresses the compliance tasks relating to certification of the installation of propulsion systems equipped with electronic control systems. [AMC 20-3](#) is dedicated to certification of Engine Control Systems but identifies some engine installation related issues, that should be read in conjunction with this AMC 20-1.

Like any acceptable means of compliance, it is issued to outline issues to be considered during demonstration of compliance with the certification specifications.

### 2 RELEVANT SPECIFICATIONS

For aircraft certification, the main related certification specifications are:

For aeroplanes in CS-25 (and, where applicable, CS-23)

- Paragraphs, 33, 581, 631, 899, 901, 903, 905, 933, 937, 939, 961, 994, 995, 1103(d), 1143 (except (d)), 1149, 1153, 1155, 1163, 1181, 1183, 1189, 1301, 1305, 1307(c), 1309, 1337, 1351(b)(d), 1353(a)(b), 1355(c), 1357, 1431, 1461, 1521(a), 1527.
- For rotorcraft: equivalent specifications in CS-27 and CS-29.

### 3 SCOPE

This acceptable means of compliance is relevant to certification specifications for aircraft installation of Engines or Propellers with electronic control systems, whether using electrical or electronic (analogue or digital) technology.

It gives guidance on the precautions to be taken for the use of electrical and electronic technology for Engine and Propeller control, protection and monitoring, and, where applicable, for integration of functions specific to the aircraft.

Precautions have to be adapted to the criticality of the functions. These precautions may be affected by the degree of authority of the system, the phase of flight, and the availability of a back-up system.

This document also discusses the division of compliance tasks between the applicants for Engine, Propeller (when applicable) and aircraft type certificates. This guidance relates to issues to be considered during aircraft certification.

It does not cover APU control systems APU, which are not used as “propulsion systems”, are addressed in the dedicated [AMC 20-2](#).

## 4 PRECAUTIONS

### (a) General

The introduction of electrical and electronic technology can entail the following:

- A greater dependence of the Engine or Propeller on the aircraft owing to the use of electrical power and/or data supplied from the aircraft.
- an increased integration of control and related indication functions,
- an increased risk of significant failures common to more than one Engine or Propeller of the aircraft which might, for example, occur as a result of -
  - Insufficient protection from electromagnetic disturbance (lightning, internal or external radiation effects),
  - Insufficient integrity of the aircraft electrical power supply,
  - Insufficient integrity of data supplied from the aircraft,
  - Hidden design faults or discrepancies contained within the design of the propulsion system control software or complex electronic hardware, or
  - Omissions or errors in the system/software specification.

Special design and integration precautions should therefore be taken to minimise these risks.

### (b) Objective

The introduction of electronic control systems should provide for the aircraft at least the equivalent safety, and the related reliability level, as achieved in aircraft equipped with Engine and Propellers using hydromechanical control and protection systems.

When possible, early co-ordination between the Engine, Propeller and aircraft applicants is recommended in association with the Agency as discussed under paragraph (5) of this AMC.

### (c) Precautions relating to electrical power supply and data from the aircraft

When considering the objectives of paragraph 4 (a) or (b), due consideration should be given to the reliability of electrical power and data supplied to the electronic control systems and peripheral components. The potential adverse effects on Engine and Propeller operation of any loss of electrical power supply from the aircraft or failure of data coming from the aircraft are assessed during the Engine and Propeller certification.

During aircraft certification, the assumptions made as part of the Engine and Propeller certification on reliability of aircraft power and data should be checked for consistency with the actual aircraft design.

Aircraft should be protected from unacceptable effects of faults due to a single cause, simultaneously affecting more than one Engine or Propeller. In particular, the following cases should be considered:

- Erroneous data received from the aircraft by the Engine/Propeller control system if the data source is common to more than one Engine/Propeller (e.g. air data sources, autothrottle synchronising), and

- Control system operating faults propagating via data links between Engine/Propellers (e.g. maintenance recording, common bus, cross-talk, autofeathering, automatic reserve power system).

Any precautions needed may be taken either through the aircraft system architecture or by logic internal to the electronic control system.

(d) Local events

For Engine and Propeller certification, effects of local events should be assessed.

Whatever the local event, the behaviour of the electronic control system should not cause a hazard to the aircraft. This will require consideration of effects such as the control of the thrust reverser deployment, the over-speed of the Engine, transients effects or inadvertent Propeller pitch change under any flight condition.

When the demonstration that there is no hazard to the aircraft is based on the assumption that there exists another function to afford the necessary protection, it should be shown that this function is not rendered inoperative by the same local event (including destruction of wires, ducts, power supplies).

Such assessment should be reviewed during aircraft certification.

(e) Software and Programmable Logic Devices

The acceptability of levels and methods used for development and verification of software and Programmable Logic Devices which are part of the Engine and Propeller type designs should have been agreed between the aircraft, Engine and Propeller designers prior to certification activity.

(f) Environmental effects

The validated protection levels for the Engine and Propeller electronic control systems as well as their emissions of radio frequency energy are established during the Engine and Propeller certification and are contained in the instructions for installation. For the aircraft certification, it should be substantiated that these levels are adequate.

## **5 INTER-RELATION BETWEEN ENGINE, PROPELLER AND AIRCRAFT CERTIFICATION**

(a) Objective

To satisfy the aircraft certification specifications, such as CS 25.901, CS 25.903 and CS 25.1309, an analysis of the consequences of failures of the system on the aircraft has to be made. It should be ensured that the software levels and safety and reliability objectives for the electronic control system are consistent with these requirements.

(b) Interface Definition

The interface has to be identified for the hardware and software aspects between the Engine, Propeller and the aircraft systems in the appropriate documents.

The Engine/Propeller/aircraft documents should cover in particular -

- The software quality level (per function if necessary),
- The reliability objectives for loss of Engine/Propeller control or significant change in thrust, (including IFSD due to control system malfunction), of faulty parameters,
- The degree of protection against lightning or other electromagnetic effects (e.g. level of induced voltages that can be supported at the interfaces),

- Engine, Propeller and aircraft interface data and characteristics, and
- Aircraft power supply and characteristics (if relevant).

(c) Distribution of Compliance Demonstration

The certification tasks of the aircraft propulsion system equipped with electronic control systems may be shared between the Engine, Propeller and aircraft certification. The distribution between the different certification activities should be identified and agreed with the Agency and/or the appropriate Engine and aircraft Authorities: (an example is given in paragraph (6)).

Appropriate evidence provided for Engine and Propeller certification should be used for aircraft certification. For example, the quality of any aircraft function software and aircraft/Engine/Propeller interface logic already demonstrated for Engine or Propeller certification should need no additional substantiation for aircraft certification.

Aircraft certification should deal with the specific precautions taken in respect of the physical and functional interfaces with the Engine/Propeller.

**6. TABLE**

An example of distribution between Engine and aircraft certification. (When necessary, a similar approach should be taken for Propeller applications).

TASK	SUBSTANTIATION UNDER CS-E	SUBSTANTIATION UNDER CS-25	
		with engine data	with aircraft data
ENGINE CONTROL AND PROTECTION	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Safety objective</li> <li>– Software level</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Consideration of common mode effects (including software)</li> <li>– Reliability</li> <li>– Software level</li> </ul>	–
MONITORING	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Independence of control and monitoring parameters</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Monitoring parameter reliability</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Indication system reliability</li> <li>– Independence engine/ engine</li> </ul>
AIRCRAFT DATA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Protection of engine from aircraft data failures</li> <li>– Software level</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Aircraft data reliability</li> <li>– Independence engine/ engine</li> </ul>
THRUST REVERSER CONTROL/ MONITORING	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Software level</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System reliability</li> <li>– Architecture</li> <li>– Consideration of common mode effects (including software)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Safety objectives</li> </ul>

TASK	SUBSTANTIATION UNDER CS-E	SUBSTANTIATION UNDER CS-25	
		with engine data	with aircraft data
CONTROL SYSTEM ELECTRICAL SUPPLY	– Reliability or quality Requirement of aircraft supply, if used		– Reliability of quality of aircraft supply, if used – Independence engine/ engine
ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS	– Equipment protection	– Declared capability	– Aircraft design
LIGHTNING AND OTHER ELECTROMAGNETIC EFFECTS	– Equipment protection Electromagnetic emissions	– Declared capability – Declared emissions	– Aircraft wiring protection and electromagnetic compatibility
FIRE PROTECTION	– Equipment protection	– Declared capability	– Aircraft design

[Amdt 20/2]

## AMC 20-2A

### AMC 20-2A Certification of Essential APU Equipped with Electronic Controls

*ED Decision 2013/026/R*

#### 1. GENERAL

The existing regulations for APU and aircraft certification may require special interpretation for essential APU equipped with electronic control systems. Because of the nature of this technology it has been found necessary to prepare acceptable means of compliance specifically addressing the certification of these control systems.

Like any acceptable means of compliance, the content of this document is not mandatory. It is issued for guidance purposes, and to outline a method of compliance with the airworthiness code. In lieu of following this method, an alternative method may be followed, provided that this is agreed by the Agency as an acceptable method of compliance with the airworthiness code.

This document discusses the compliance tasks relating to both the APU and the aircraft certification.

#### 2. REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS

##### 2.1 APU Certification

CS-APU

Book 1, paragraph 2(c)

Book 1, Section A, paragraphs 10(b), 20, 80, 90, 210, 220, 280 and 530

Book 2, Section A, AMC CS-APU 20

##### 2.2 Aircraft Certification

Aeroplane: CS-25

Paragraphs 581, 899, 1301, 1307(c), 1309, 1351(b)(d), 1353(a)(b), 1355(c), 1357, 1431, 1461, 1524, 1527

A9011, A903, A939, A1141, A1181, A1183, A1189, A1305, A1337, A1521, A1527, B903, B1163

#### 3. SCOPE

This acceptable means of compliance provides guidance for electronic (analogue and digital) essential APU control systems, on the interpretation and means of compliance with the relevant APU and aircraft certification requirements.

It gives guidance on the precautions to be taken for the use of electronic technology for APU control, protection and monitoring and, where applicable, for integration of functions specific to the aircraft.

Precautions have to be adapted to the criticality of the functions. These precautions may be affected by -

Degree of authority of the system,

Phase of flight,  
Availability of back-up system.

This document also discusses the division of compliance tasks between the APU and aircraft certification.

## **4 PRECAUTIONS**

### **4.1 General**

The introduction of electronic technology can entail the following:

- (a) A greater dependence of the APU on the aircraft owing to the use of electrical power and/or data supplied from the aircraft,
- (b) Risk of significant failures which might, for example, occur as a result of -
  - (i) Insufficient protection from electromagnetic disturbance (lightning, internal or external radiation effects),
  - (ii) Insufficient integrity of the aircraft electrical power supply,
  - (iii) Insufficient integrity of data supplied from the aircraft,
  - (iv) Hidden design faults or discrepancies contained within the design of the APU control software, or
  - (v) Omissions or errors in the system specification.

Special design and integration precautions must therefore be taken to minimise these risks.

### **4.2 Objective**

The introduction of electronic control systems should provide for the aircraft at least the equivalent safety, and the related reliability level, as achieved by essential APU equipped with hydromechanical control and protection systems.

This objective, when defined during the aircraft/APU certification for a specific application, will be agreed with the Agency.

### **4.3 Precautions relating to APU control, protection and monitoring**

The software associated with APU control, protection and monitoring functions must have a software level and architecture appropriate to their criticality of those functions (see paragraph 4.2).

For digital systems, any residual errors not detected during the software development and certification process could cause an unacceptable failure. The latest edition of AMC 20-115 constitutes an acceptable means of compliance for software development, verification and software aspects of certification. The APU software should be at least level B according to the industry documents referred in the latest edition of AMC 20-115. In some specific cases, level A may be more appropriate.

It should be noted that the software disciplines described in the latest edition of AMC 20-115 may not, in themselves, be sufficient to ensure that the overall system safety and reliability targets have been achieved. This is particularly true for certain critical systems, such as fully authority digital control systems. In such cases it is accepted that other measures, usually within the system, in addition to a high level of software discipline may

be necessary to achieve these safety objectives and demonstrate that they have been met.

It is outside the scope of the latest edition of AMC 20-115 to suggest or specify these measures, but in accepting that they may be necessary, it is also the intention to encourage the development of software techniques which could support meeting the overall system safety objectives."

#### 4.4 Precautions relating to APU independence from the aircraft

##### 4.4.1 Precautions relating to electrical power supply and data from the aircraft

When considering the objectives of paragraph 4.2, due consideration must be given to the reliability of electrical power and data supplied to the electronic controls and peripheral components. Therefore the potential adverse effects on APU operation of any loss of electrical power supply from the aircraft or failure of data coming from the aircraft must be assessed during the APU certification.

###### (a) Electrical power

The use of either the aircraft electrical power network or electrical power sources specific to the APU, or the combination of both, may meet the objectives.

If the aircraft electrical system supplies power to the APU control system at any time, the power supply quality, including transients or failures, must not lead to a situation identified during the APU certification which is considered during the aircraft certification to be a hazard to the aircraft.

###### (b) Data

The following cases should be considered:

- (i) Erroneous data received from the aircraft by the APU control system, and
- (ii) Control system operating faults propagating via data links.

In certain cases, defects of aircraft input data may be overcome by other data references specific to the APU in order to meet the objectives.

##### 4.4.2 Local Events

- (a) In designing an electronic control system to meet the objectives of paragraph 4.2, special consideration needs to be given to local events.

Examples of local events include fluid leaks, mechanical disruptions, electrical problems, fires or overheat conditions. An overheat condition results when the temperature of the electronic control unit is greater than the maximum safe design operating temperature declared during the APU certification. This situation can increase the failure rate of the electronic control system.

- (b) Whatever the local event, the behaviour of the electronic control system must not cause a hazard to the aircraft. This will require consideration of effects such as the overspeed of the APU.

When the demonstration that there is no hazard to the aircraft is based on the assumption that there exists another function to afford the necessary protection, it must be shown that this function is not rendered inoperative

by the same local event (including destruction of wires, ducts, power supplies).

- (c) Specific design features or analysis methods may be used to show compliance with respect to hazardous effects. Where this is not possible, for example due to the variability or the complexity of the failure sequence, then testing may be required. These tests must be agreed with the Agency.

#### 4.4.3 Lightning and other electromagnetic effects

Electronic control systems are sensitive to lightning and other electromagnetic interference. The system design must incorporate sufficient protection in order to ensure the functional integrity of the control system when subjected to designated levels of electric or electromagnetic inductions, including external radiation effects.

The validated protection levels for the APU electronic control system must be detailed during the APU certification in an approved document. For aircraft certification, it must be substantiated that these levels are adequate.

#### 4.5 Other functions integrated into the electronic control system

If functions other than those directly associated with the control of the APU are integrated into the electronic control system, the APU certification should take into account the applicable aircraft requirements.

## 5 INTER-RELATION BETWEEN APU AND AIRCRAFT CERTIFICATION

### 5.1 Objective

To satisfy the CS aircraft requirements, such as CS 25A901, CS 25A903 and CS 25.1309, an analysis of the consequences of failures of the system on the aircraft has to be made. It should be ensured that the software levels and safety and reliability objectives for the electronic control system are consistent with these requirements.

### 5.2 Interface definition

The interface has to be identified for the hardware and software aspects between the APU and aircraft systems in the appropriate documents.

The APU documents should cover in particular -

- (a) The software quality level (per function if necessary),
- (b) The reliability objectives for - APU shut-down in flight, Loss of APU control or significant change in performance, Transmission of faulty parameters,
- (c) The degree of protection against lightning or other electromagnetic effects (e.g. level of induced voltages that can be supported at the interfaces),
- (d) APU and aircraft interface data and characteristics, and
- (e) Aircraft power supply and characteristics (if relevant).

### 5.3 Distribution of compliance demonstrations

The certification of the APU equipped with electronic controls and of the aircraft may be shared between the APU certification and aircraft certification. The distribution between the APU certification and the aircraft certification must be identified and agreed with the Agency and/or the appropriate APU and aircraft Authorities (an example is given in appendix).

---

Appropriate evidence provided for APU certification should be used for aircraft certification. For example, the quality of any aircraft function software and aircraft/APU interface logic already demonstrated for APU certification should need no additional substantiation for aircraft certification.

Aircraft certification must deal with the specific precautions taken in respect of the physical and functional interfaces with the APU.

[Amdt 20/10]

## Appendix to AMC 20-2

ED Decision 2003/12/RM

An example of tasks distribution between APU and aircraft certification

FUNCTIONS OR INSTALLATION CONDITIONS	SUBSTANTIATION UNDER CS-APU	SUBSTANTIATION UNDER CS-25	
APU CONTROL AND PROTECTION	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Safety objective</li> <li>– Software level</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Reliability</li> <li>– Software level</li> </ul>	
MONITORING	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Independence of control and monitoring parameters</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Monitoring parameter reliability</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Indication system reliability</li> </ul>
AIRCRAFT DATA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Protection of APU from aircraft data failures</li> <li>– Software level</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Aircraft data reliability</li> </ul>
CONTROL SYSTEM ELECTRICAL SUPPLY			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Reliability and quality of aircraft supply if used</li> </ul>
ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS, LIGHTNING AND OTHER ELECTRO-MAGNETIC EFFECTS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Equipment protection</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Declared capability</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Aircraft design</li> <li>– Aircraft wiring protection</li> </ul>

## AMC 20-3A

### AMC 20-3A Certification of Engines Equipped with Electronic Engine Control Systems

ED Decision 2013/026/R

#### (1) PURPOSE

The existing certification specifications of CS-E for Engine certification may require specific interpretation for Engines equipped with Electronic Engine Control Systems (EECS), with special regard to interface with the certification of the aircraft and/or Propeller when applicable. Because of the nature of this technology, it has been considered useful to prepare acceptable means of compliance specifically addressing the certification of these control systems.

Like any acceptable means of compliance, it is issued to outline issues to be considered during demonstration of compliance with the Engine certification specifications.

#### (2) SCOPE

This acceptable means of compliance is relevant to Engine certification specifications for EECS, whether using electrical or electronic (analogue or digital) technology. This is in addition to other acceptable means of compliance such as AMC E 50 or AMC E 80.

It gives guidance on the precautions to be taken for the use of electrical and electronic technology for Engine control, protection, limiting and monitoring functions, and, where applicable, for integration of aircraft or Propeller functions. In these latter cases, this document is applicable to such functions integrated into the EECS, but only to the extent that these functions affect compliance with CS-E specifications.

The text deals mainly with the thrust and power functions of an EECS, since this is the prime function of the Engine. However, there are many other functions, such as bleed valve control, that may be integrated into the system for operability reasons. The principles outlined in this AMC apply to the whole system.

This document also discusses the division of compliance tasks for certification between the applicants for Engine, Propeller (when applicable) and aircraft type certificates. This guidance relates to issues to be considered during engine certification. [AMC 20-1](#) addresses issues associated with the engine installation in the aircraft.

The introduction of electrical and electronic technology can entail the following:

- a greater dependence of the Engine on the aircraft owing to the increased use of electrical power or data supplied from the aircraft,
- an increased integration of control and related indication functions,
- an increased risk of significant Failures common to more than one Engine of the aircraft which might, for example, occur as a result of:
  - Insufficient protection from electromagnetic disturbance (lightning, internal or external radiation effects) (see CS-E 50(a)(1), CS E-80 and CS-E 170),
  - Insufficient integrity of the aircraft electrical power supply (see CS-E 50(h)),
  - Insufficient integrity of data supplied from the aircraft (see CS-E 50(g)),

- Hidden design Faults or discrepancies contained within the design of the propulsion system control software or complex electronic hardware (see CS-E 50(f)), or
- Omissions or errors in the system/software specification (see CS-E 50(f)).

Special design and integration precautions should therefore be taken to minimise any adverse effects from the above.

### (3) RELEVANT SPECIFICATIONS AND REFERENCE DOCUMENTS

Although compliance with many CS-E specifications might be affected by the Engine Control System, the main paragraphs relevant to the certification of the Engine Control System itself are:

CS-E Specification	Turbine Engines	Piston Engines
CS-E 20 (Engine configuration and interfaces)	✓	✓
CS-E 25 (Instructions for Continued Airworthiness),	✓	✓
CS-E 30 (Assumptions),	✓	✓
CS-E 50 (Engine Control System)	✓	✓
CS-E 60 (Provision for instruments)	✓	✓
CS-E 80 (Equipment)	✓	✓
CS-E 110 (Drawing and marking of parts - Assembly of parts)	✓	✓
CS-E 130 (Fire prevention)	✓	✓
CS-E 140 (Tests-Engine configuration)	✓	✓
CS-E 170 (Engine systems and component verification)	✓	✓
CS-E 210 (Failure analysis)		✓
CS-E 250 (Fuel System)		✓
CS-E 390 (Acceleration tests)		✓
CS-E 500 (Functioning)	✓	
CS-E-510 (Safety analysis)	✓	
CS-E 560 (Fuel system)	✓	
CS-E 745 (Engine Acceleration)	✓	
CS-E 1030 (Time limited dispatch)	✓	✓

The following documents are referenced in this AMC 20-3:

- International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), Central Office, 3, rue de Varembe, P.O. Box 131, CH - 1211 GENEVA 20, Switzerland
  - IEC/PAS 62239, Electronic Component Management Plans, edition 1.0, dated April 2001.
  - IEC/PAS 62240, Use of Semiconductor Devices Outside Manufacturers' Specified Temperature Ranges, edition 1.0, dated April 2001.
- RTCA, Inc. 1828 L Street, NW, Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036 or EUROCAE, 17, rue Hamelin, 75116 Paris, France
  - RTCA DO-254/ EUROCAE ED-80, Design Assurance Guidance for Airborne Electronic Hardware, dated April 19, 2000.
  - RTCA DO-160/EUROCAE ED 14, Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment.

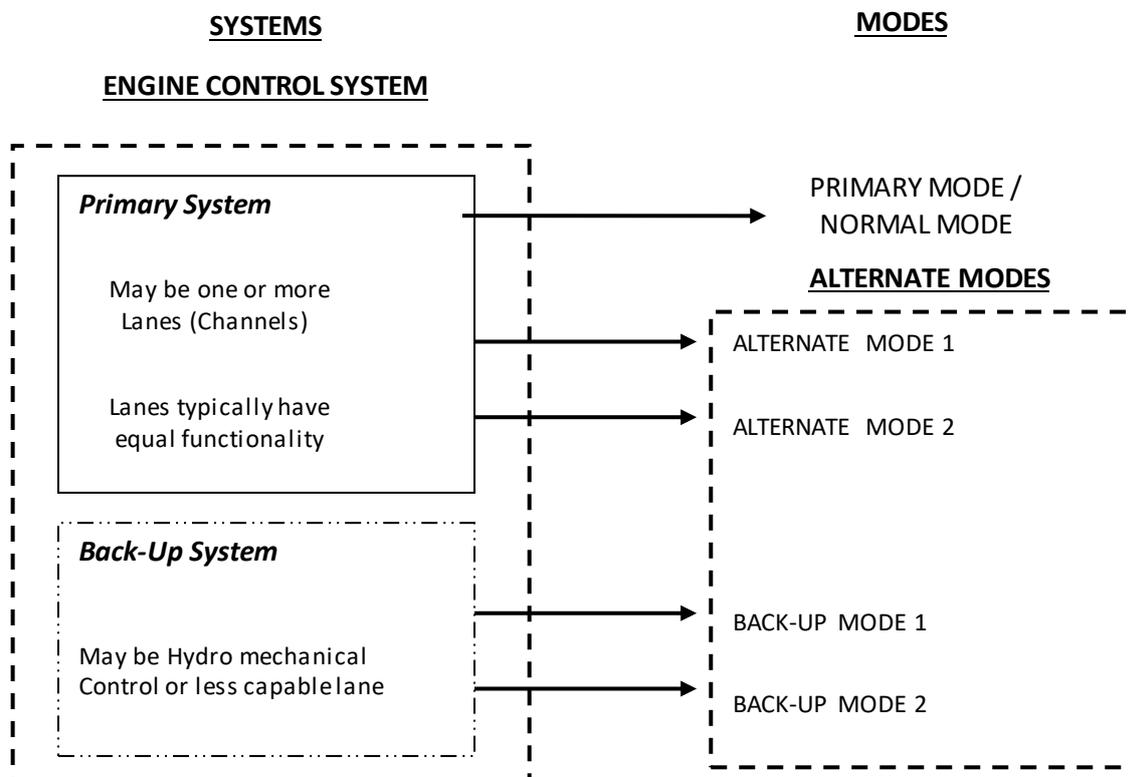
- AMC 20-115 on software considerations for certification of airborne systems and equipment.
- Aeronautical Systems Center, ASC/ENOI, Bldg 560, 2530 Loop Road West, Wright-Patterson AFB, OH, USA, 45433-7101
  - MIL-STD-461E, Requirements for the Control of Electromagnetic Interference Characteristics, dated August 20, 1999
  - MIL-STD-810 E or F, Test Method Standard for Environmental Engineering, E dated July 14, 1989, F dated January 1, 2000
- U.S. Department of Transportation, Subsequent Distribution, Office Ardmore East Business Center, 3341 Q 75th Ave, Landover, MD, USA, 20785
  - AC 20-136, Protection of Aircraft Electrical/Electronic Systems Against the Indirect Effects of Lightning, dated March 5, 1990
- Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE), 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA 15096-0001 USA or EUROCAE, 17, rue Hamelin, 75116 Paris, France
  - SAE ARP 5412 / EUROCAE ED-84, with Amendment 1 & 2, Aircraft Lightning Environment and Related Test Waveforms, February 2005/May 2001 respectively.
  - SAE ARP 5413 / EUROCAE ED-81, with Amendment 1, Certification of Aircraft Electrical/Electronic Systems for the Indirect Effects of Lightning, November 1999/August 1999 respectively.
  - SAE ARP 5414 / EUROCAE ED-91, with Amendment 1, Aircraft Lightning Zoning, February 2005/June 1999 respectively.
  - SAE ARP 5416 / EUROCAE ED-105, Aircraft Lightning Test Methods, March 2005/April 2005 respectively.

#### (4) DEFINITIONS

The words defined in CS-Definitions and in CS-E 15 are identified by capital letter.

The following figure and associated definitions are provided to facilitate a clear understanding of the terms used in this AMC.

**DEFINITIONS VISUALISED**



**(5) GENERAL**

It is recognised that the determination of compliance of the Engine Control System with applicable aircraft certification specifications will only be made during the aircraft certification.

In the case where the installation is unknown at the time of Engine certification, the applicant for Engine certification should make reasonable installation and operational assumptions for the target installation. Any installation limitations or operational issues will be noted in the instructions for installation or operation, and/or the Type Certificate Data Sheet (TCDS) (see CS-E 30).

When possible, early co-ordination between the Engine and the aircraft applicants is recommended in association with the relevant authorities as discussed under paragraph (15) of this AMC.

**(6) SYSTEM DESIGN AND VALIDATION**

**(a) Control Modes - General**

Under CS-E 50(a) the applicant should perform all necessary testing and analysis to ensure that all Control Modes, including those which occur as a result of control Fault Accommodation strategies, are implemented as required.

The need to provide protective functions, such as over-speed protection, for all Control Modes, including any Alternate Modes, should be reviewed under the specifications of CS-E 50(c), (d) and (e), and CS-E 210 or CS-E 510.

Any limitations on operations in Alternate Modes should be clearly stated in the Engine instructions for installation and operation.

Descriptions of the functioning of the Engine Control System operating in its Primary and any Alternate Modes should be provided in the Engine instructions for installation and operation.

Analyses and/or testing are necessary to substantiate that operating in the Alternate Modes has no unacceptable effect on Engine durability or endurance. Demonstration of the durability and reliability of the control system in all modes is primarily addressed by the component testing of CS-E 170. Performing some portion of the Engine certification testing in the Alternate Mode(s) and during transition between modes can be used as part of the system validation required under CS-E 50(a).

(i) Engine Test Considerations

If the Engine certification tests defined in CS-E are performed using only the Engine Control System's Primary Mode in the Full-up Configuration and if approval for dispatch in the Alternate Mode is requested by the applicant under CS-E 1030, it should be demonstrated, by analysis and/or test, that the Engine can meet the defined test-success criteria when operating in any Alternate mode that is proposed as a dispatchable configuration as required by CS E-1030.

Some capabilities, such as operability, blade-off, rain, hail, bird ingestion, etc, may be lost in some control modes that are not dispatchable. These modes do not require engine test demonstration as long as the installation and operating instructions reflect this loss of capability.

(ii) Availability

Availability of any Back-up Mode should be established by routine testing or monitoring to ensure that the Back-up Mode will be available when needed. The frequency of establishing its availability should be documented in the instructions for continued airworthiness.

(b) Crew Training Modes

This acceptable means of compliance is not specifically intended to apply to any crew training modes. These modes are usually installation, and possibly operator, specific and need to be negotiated on a case-by-case basis. As an example, one common application of crew training modes is for simulation of the 'failed-fixed' mode on a twin-engine rotorcraft. Training modes should be described in the Engine instructions for installation and operation as appropriate. Also, precautions should be taken in the design of the Engine Control System and its crew interfaces to prevent inadvertent entry into any training modes. Crew training modes, including lock-out systems, should be assessed as part of the System Safety Analysis (SSA) of CS-E 50(d).

(c) Non-Dispatchable Configurations and Modes

For control configurations which are not dispatchable, but for which the applicant seeks to take credit in the system LOTC/LOPC analysis, it may be acceptable to have specific operating limitations. In addition, compliance with CS-E 50(a) does not imply strict compliance with the operability specifications of CS-E 390, CS-E 500 and CS-E 745 in these non-dispatchable configurations, if it can be demonstrated that, in the intended installation, no likely pilot control system inputs will result in Engine surge, stall, flame-out or unmanageable delay in power recovery. For example, in a twin-engine rotorcraft, a rudimentary Back-up System may be adequate since frequent and rapid changes in power setting with the Back-up System may not be necessary.

In addition to these operability considerations, other factors which should be considered in assessing the acceptability of such reduced-capability Back-up Modes include:

- The installed operating characteristics of the Back-up Mode and the differences from the Primary Mode.
- The likely impact of the Back-up Mode operations on pilot workload, if the aircraft installation is known.
- The frequency of transfer from the Primary Mode to the Back-up Mode (i.e. the reliability of the Primary Mode). Frequencies of transfer of less than 1 per 20 000 engine flight hours have been considered acceptable.

(d) Control Transitions

The intent of CS-E 50(b) is to ensure that any control transitions, which occur as a result of Fault Accommodation, occur in an acceptable manner.

In general, transition to Alternate Modes should be accomplished automatically by the Engine Control System. However, systems wherein pilot action is required to engage the Back-up Mode may also be acceptable. For instance, a Fault in the Primary System may result in a “failed-fixed” fuel flow and some action is required by the pilot to engage the Back-up System in order to modulate Engine power. Care should be taken to ensure that any reliance on manual transition is not expected to pose an unacceptable operating characteristic, unacceptable crew workload or require exceptional skill.

The transient change in power or thrust associated with transfer to Alternate Modes should be reviewed for compliance with CS-E 50(b). If available, input from the installer should be considered. Although this is not to be considered a complete list, some of the items that should be considered when reviewing the acceptability of Control Mode transitions are:

- The frequency of occurrence of transfers to any Alternate Mode and the capability of the Alternate Mode. Computed frequency-of-transfer rates should be supported with data from endurance or reliability testing, in-service experience on similar equipment, or other appropriate data.
- The magnitude of the power, thrust, rotor or Propeller speed transients.
- Successful demonstration, by simulation or other means, of the ability of the Engine Control System to control the Engine safely during the transition. In some cases, particularly those involving rotorcraft, it may not be possible to make a determination that the mode transition provides a safe system based solely on analytical or simulation data. Therefore, a flight test programme to support this data will normally be expected.
- An analysis should be provided to identify those Faults that cause Control Mode transitions either automatically or through pilot action.
- For turboprop or turboshaft engines, the transition should not result in excessive over-speed or under-speed of the rotor or Propeller which could cause emergency shutdown, loss of electrical generator power or the setting-off of warning devices.

The power or thrust change associated with the transition should be declared in the instructions for installing the Engine.

(i) Time Delays

Any observable time delays associated with Control Mode, channel or system transitions or in re-establishing the pilot's ability to modulate Engine thrust or power should be identified in the Engine instructions for installation and operation (see CS-E 50(b)). These delays should be assessed during aircraft certification.

(ii) Annunciation to the Flight Crew

If annunciation is necessary to comply with CS-E 50(b)(3), the type of annunciation to the flight crew should be commensurate with the nature of the transition. For instance, reversion to an Alternate Mode of control where the transition is automatic and the only observable changes in operation of the Engine are different thrust control schedules, would require a very different form of annunciation to that required if timely action by the pilot is required in order to maintain control of the aircraft.

The intent and purpose of the cockpit annunciation should be clearly stated in the Engine instructions for installation and operation, as appropriate.

(e) Environmental conditions

Environmental conditions include EMI, HIRF and lightning. The environmental conditions are addressed under CS E-80 and CS-E 170. The following provides additional guidance for EMI, HIRF and lightning.

(i) Declared levels

When the installation is known during the Engine type certification programme, the Engine Control System should be tested at levels that have been determined and agreed by the Engine and aircraft applicants. It is assumed that, by this agreement, the installation can meet the aircraft certification specifications. Successful completion of the testing to the agreed levels would be accepted for Engine type certification. This, however, may make the possibility of installing the Engine dependent on a specific aircraft.

If the aircraft installation is not known or defined at the time of the Engine certification, in order to determine the levels to be declared for the Engine certification, the Engine applicant may use the external threat level defined at the aircraft level and use assumptions on installation attenuation effects.

If none of the options defined above are available, it is recommended that the procedures and minimum default levels for HIRF testing are agreed with the Agency.

(ii) Test procedures

(A) General

The installed Engine Control System, including representative Engine-aircraft interface cables, should be the basis for certification testing.

Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI) test procedures and test levels conducted in accordance with MIL-STD-461 or EUROCAE ED 14/DO-160 have been considered acceptable.

The applicant should use the HIRF test guidelines provided in EUROCAE ED 14/RTCA DO-160 or equivalent. However, it should be recognised that the

tests defined in EUROCAE ED 14/RTCA DO-160 are applicable at a component test level, requiring the applicant to adapt these test procedures to a system level HIRF test to demonstrate compliance with CS-E 80 and CS-E 170.

For lightning tests, the guidelines of SAE ARP 5412, 5413, 5414, and 5416 and EUROCAE ED 14/RTCA DO-160 would be applicable.

Pin Injection Tests (PIT) are normally conducted as component tests on the EECS unit and other system components as required. PIT levels are selected as appropriate from the tables of EUROCAE ED 14/DO-160.

Environmental tests such as MIL-STD-810 may be accepted in lieu of EUROCAE ED-14/DO-160 tests where these tests are equal to or more rigorous than those defined in EUROCAE ED 14/DO-160.

(B) Open loop and Closed loop Testing

HIRF and lightning tests should be conducted as system tests on closed loop or open loop laboratory set-ups.

The closed loop set-up is usually provided with hydraulic pressure to move actuators to close the inner actuating loops. A simplified Engine simulation may be used to close the outer Engine loop.

Testing should be conducted with the Engine Control System controlling at the most sensitive operating point, as selected and detailed in the test plans by the applicant. The system should be exposed to the HIRF and lightning environmental threats while operating at the selected condition. There may be a different operating point for HIRF and lightning environmental threats.

For tests in open and closed loop set ups, the following factors should also be considered:

- If special EECS test software is used, that software should be developed and implemented by guidelines defined for software levels of at least software level C as defined in the industry documents referred in the latest edition of AMC 20-115. In some cases, the application code is modified to include the required test code features.
- The system test set-up should be capable of monitoring both the output drive signals and the input signals.
- Anomalies observed during open loop testing on inputs or outputs should be duplicated on the Engine simulation to determine whether the resulting power or thrust perturbations comply with the pass/fail criteria.

(iii) Pass/Fail Criteria

The pass/fail criteria of CS-E 170 for HIRF and lightning should be interpreted as "no adverse effect" on the functionality of the system.

The following are considered adverse effects:

- A greater than 3 % change of Take-off Power or Thrust for a period of more than two seconds.

- Transfers to alternate channels, Back-up Systems, or Alternate Modes.
- Component damage.
- False annunciation to the crew which could cause unnecessary or inappropriate crew action.
- Erroneous operation of protection systems, such as over-speed or thrust reverser circuits.

Hardware or Software design changes implemented after initial environmental testing should be evaluated for their effects with respect to the EMI, HIRF and lightning environment.

(iv) Maintenance Actions

CS-E 25 requires that the applicant prepare Instructions for Continued Airworthiness (ICA). This includes a maintenance plan. Therefore, for any protection system that is part of the type design of the Engine Control System and is required by the system to meet the qualified levels of EMI, HIRF and lightning, a maintenance plan should be provided to ensure the continued airworthiness for the parts of the installed system which are supplied by the Engine type certificate holder.

The maintenance actions to be considered include periodic inspections or tests for required structural shielding, wire shields, connectors, and equipment protection components. Inspections or tests when the part is exposed may also be considered. The applicant should provide the engineering validation and substantiation of these maintenance actions.

(v) Time Limited Dispatch (TLD) Environmental Tests

Although TLD is only an optional requirement for certification (see CS-E 1000 and CS-E 1030), EMI, HIRF and lightning tests for TLD are usually conducted together with tests conducted for certification. Acceptable means of compliance are provided in AMC E 1030.

## **(7) INTEGRITY OF THE ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM**

(a) Objective

The intent of CS-E 50(c) is to establish Engine Control System integrity requirements consistent with operational requirements of the various installations. (See also paragraph (4) of AMC E 50).

(b) Definition of an LOTC/LOPC event

(i) For turbine Engines intended for CS-25 installations

An LOTC/LOPC event is defined as an event where the Engine Control System:

- has lost the capability of modulating thrust or power between idle and 90% of maximum rated power or thrust, or
- suffers a Fault which results in a thrust or power oscillation greater than the levels given in paragraph (7)(c) of this AMC, or
- has lost the capability to govern the Engine in a manner which allows compliance with the operability specifications given in CS-E 500(a) and CS-E 745.

## (ii) For turbine Engines intended for rotorcraft

An LOPC event is defined as an event where the Engine Control System:

- has lost the capability of modulating power between idle and 90% of maximum rated power at the flight condition, except OEI power ratings, or
- suffers a Fault which results in a power oscillation greater than the levels given in paragraph (7)(c) of this AMC, or
- has lost the capability to govern the Engine in a manner which allows compliance with the operability specifications given in CS-E 500(a) and CS-E 745, with the exception that the inability to meet the operability specifications in the Alternate Modes may not be included as LOPC events.
- Single Engine rotorcraft will be required to meet the operability specifications in the Alternate Mode(s), unless the lack of this capability is demonstrated to be acceptable at the aircraft level. Engine operability in the Alternate Mode(s) is considered a necessity if:
  - the control transitions to the Alternate Mode more frequently than the acceptable LOPC rate, or
  - normal flight crew activity requires rapid changes in power to safely fly the aircraft.
- For multi-Engine rotorcraft, the LOPC definition may not need to include the inability to meet the operability specifications in the Alternate Mode(s). This may be considered acceptable because when one Engine control transitions to an Alternate Mode, which may not have robust operability, that Engine can be left at reasonably fixed power conditions. The Engine(s) with the normally operating control(s) can change power – as necessary – to complete aircraft manoeuvres and safely land the aircraft. Demonstration of the acceptability of this type of operation may be required at aircraft certification.

## (iii) For turbine Engines intended for other installations

A LOTC/LOPC event is defined as an event where the Engine Control System:

- has lost the capability of modulating thrust or power between idle and 90% of maximum rated power or thrust, or
- suffers a Fault which results in a thrust or power oscillation that would impact controllability in the intended installation, or
- has lost the capability to govern the Engine in a manner which allows compliance with the operability specifications given in CS-E 500(a) and CS-E 745, as appropriate.

## (iv) For piston Engines

An LOPC event is defined as an event where the Engine Control System:

- has lost the capability of modulating power between idle and 85% of maximum rated power at all operating conditions, or
- suffers a Fault which results in a power oscillation greater than the levels given in paragraph (7)(c) of this AMC, or

- has lost the capability to govern the Engine in a manner which allows compliance with the operability specifications given in CS-E 390.
- (v) For engines incorporating functions for Propeller control integrated in the EECS  
The following Faults or Failures should be considered as additional LOPC events:
- inability to command a change in pitch,
  - uncommanded change in pitch,
  - uncontrollable Propeller torque or speed fluctuation.
- (c) Uncommanded thrust or power oscillations
- Any uncommanded thrust or power oscillations should be of such a magnitude as not to impact aircraft controllability in the intended installation. Thrust or power oscillations less than 10% peak to peak of Take-off Power and/or Thrust have been considered acceptable in some installations, where the failure affects one engine only. Regardless of the levels discussed herein, if the flight crew has to shut down an Engine because of unacceptable thrust or power oscillations caused by the control system, such an event would be deemed an in-service LOTC/LOPC event.
- (d) Acceptable LOTC/LOPC rate
- The applicant may propose an LOTC/LOPC rate other than those below. Such a proposal should be substantiated in relation to the criticality of the Engine and control system relative to the intended installation. The intent is to show equivalence of the LOTC/LOPC rate to existing systems in comparable installations.
- (i) For turbine Engines
- The EECS should not cause more than one LOTC/LOPC event per 100 000 engine flight hours.
- (ii) For piston Engines
- An LOPC rate of 45 per million engine flight hours (or 1 per 22,222 engine flight hours) has been shown to represent an acceptable level for the most complex EECS. As a result of the architectures used in many of the EECS for these engines, the functions are implemented in independent system elements. These system elements or sub-systems can be fuel control, or ignition control, or others. If a system were to contain only one element such as fuel control, then the appropriate total system level would be 15 LOPC events per million engine flight hours. So the system elements are then additive up to a max of 45 LOPC events per million hours. For example, an EEC system comprised of fuel, ignition, and wastegate control functions should meet a total system reliability of  $15+15+15 = 45$  LOPC events per million engine flight hours. This criterion is then applied to the entire system and not allocated to each of the subsystems. Note that a maximum of 45 LOPC events per million engine flight hours are allowed, regardless of the number of subsystems. For example, if the EEC system includes more than three subsystems, the sum of the LOPC rates for the total system should not exceed 45 LOPC events per million engine flight hours for all of the electrical and electronic elements.

(e) LOTC/LOPC Analysis

A system reliability analysis should be submitted to substantiate the agreed LOTC/LOPC rate for the Engine Control System. A numerical analysis such as a Markov model analysis, fault tree analysis or equivalent analytical approach is expected.

The analysis should address all components in the system that can contribute to LOTC/LOPC events. This includes all electrical, mechanical, hydromechanical, and pneumatic elements of the Engine Control System. This LOTC/LOPC analysis should be done in conjunction with the System Safety Assessment required under CS-E 50(d). Paragraph (8) of this AMC provides additional guidance material.

The engine fuel pump is generally not included in the definition of the Engine Control System. It is usually considered part of the fuel delivery system.

The LOTC/LOPC analysis should include those sensors or elements which may not be part of the Engine type design, but which may contribute to LOTC/LOPC events. An example of this is the throttle or power lever transducer, which is usually supplied by the installer. The effects of loss, corruption or Failure of Aircraft-Supplied Data should be included in the Engine Control System's LOTC/LOPC analysis. The reliability and interface requirements for these non-Engine type design elements should be contained in the Engine instructions for installation. It needs to be ensured that there is no double counting of the rate of Failure of non-engine parts within the aircraft system safety analyses.

The LOTC/LOPC analysis should consider all Faults, both detected and undetected. Any periodic maintenance actions needed to find and repair both Covered and Uncovered Faults, in order to meet the LOTC/LOPC rate, should be contained in the Engine instructions for continued airworthiness.

(f) Commercial or Industrial Grade Electronic Parts

When the Engine type design specifies commercial or industrial grade electronic components, which are parts not manufactured to military standards, the applicant should have the following data available for review, as applicable:

- Reliability data that substantiates the Failure rate for each component used in the LOTC/LOPC analysis and the SSA for each commercial and industrial grade electrical component specified in the design.
- The applicant's procurement, quality assurance, and process control plans for the vendor-supplied commercial and industrial grade parts. These plans should ensure that the parts will be able to maintain the reliability level specified in the approved Engine type design.
- Unique databases for similar components obtained from different vendors, because commercial and industrial grade parts may not all be manufactured to the same accepted industry standard, such as military component standards.
- Commercial and industrial grade parts have typical operating ranges of 0 degrees to +70 degrees Celsius and -40 degrees to +85 degrees Celsius, respectively. Military grade parts are typically rated at -54 degrees to 125 degrees Celsius. Commercial and industrial grade parts are typically defined in these temperature ranges in vendor parts catalogues. If the declared temperature environment for the Engine Control System exceeds the stated capability of the commercial or industrial grade electronic components, the applicant should substantiate that the

proposed extended range of the specified components is suitable for the installation and that the Failure rates used for those components in the SSA and LOTC/LOPC analyses is appropriately adjusted for the extended temperature environment. Additionally, if commercial or industrial parts are used in an environment beyond their specified rating and cooling provisions are required in the design of the EECS, the applicant should specify these provisions in the instructions for installation to ensure that the provisions for cooling are not compromised. Failure modes of the cooling provisions included in the EECS design that cause these limits to be exceeded should be considered in determining the probability of Failure.

- Two examples of industry published documents which provide guidance on the application of commercial or industrial grade components are:
  - IEC/PAS 62239, Electronic Component Management Plans
  - IEC/PAS 62240, Use of Semiconductor Devices Outside Manufacturers' Specified Temperature Ranges

When any electrical or electronic components are changed, the SSA and LOTC/LOPC analyses should be reviewed with regard to the impact of any changes in component reliability. Component, subassembly or assembly level testing may be required by the Agency to substantiate a change that introduces a commercial or industrial part(s). However, such a change would not be classified as 'significant' with respect to Part 21.A.101(b)1.

(g) Single Fault Accommodation

Compliance with the single Fault specifications of CS-E 50(c)(2) and (3) may be substantiated by a combination of tests and analyses. The intent is that single Failures or malfunctions in the Engine Control System's components, in its fully operational condition, do not result in a Hazardous Engine Effect. In addition, in its full-up configuration the control system should be essentially single Fault tolerant of electrical/electronic component Failures with respect to LOTC/LOPC events. For dispatchable configurations refer to CS-E 1030 and AMC E 1030.

It is recognised that to achieve true single Fault tolerance for LOTC/LOPC events could require a triplicated design approach or a design approach with 100% Fault detection. Currently, systems have been designed with dual, redundant channels or with Back-up Systems that provide what has been called an "essentially single Fault tolerant" system. Although these systems may have some Faults that are not Covered Faults, they have demonstrated excellent in-service safety and reliability, and have proven to be acceptable.

The objective, of course, is to have all the Faults addressed as Covered Faults. Indeed, the dual channel or Back-up system configurations do cover the vast majority of potential electrical and electronic Faults. However, on a case-by-case basis, it may be appropriate for the applicant to omit some coverage because detection or accommodation of some electrical/electronic Faults may not be practical. In these cases, it is recognised that single, simple electrical or electronic components or circuits can be employed in a reliable manner, and that requiring redundancy in some situations may not be appropriate. In these circumstances, Failures in some single electrical or electronic components, elements or circuits may result in an LOTC/LOPC event. This is what is meant by the use of the term "essentially", and such a system may be acceptable.

(h) Local Events

Examples of local events to be considered under CS-E 50(c)(4) include:

- Overheat conditions, for example, those resulting from hot air duct bursts,
- Fires, and
- Fluid leaks or mechanical disruptions which could lead to damage to control system electrical harnesses, connectors, or the control unit(s).

These local events would normally be limited to one Engine. Therefore, a local event is not usually considered to be a common mode event, and common mode threats, such as HIRF, lightning and rain, are not considered local events.

When demonstration that there is no Hazardous Engine Effect is based on the assumption that another function exists to afford the necessary protection, it should be shown that this function is not rendered inoperative by the same local event on the Engine (including destruction of wires, ducts, power supplies).

It is considered that an overheat condition exists when the temperature of the system components is greater than the maximum safe design operating temperature for the components, as declared by the Engine applicant in the Engine instructions for installation. The Engine Control System should not cause a Hazardous Engine Effect when the components or units of the system are exposed to an overheat or over-temperature condition. Specific design features or analysis methods may be used to show compliance with respect to the prevention of Hazardous Engine Effects. Where this is not possible, for example, due to the variability or the complexity of the Failure sequence, then testing may be required.

The Engine Control System, including the electrical, electronic and mechanical parts of the system, should comply with the fire specifications of CS-E 130 and the interpretative material of AMCE 130 is relevant. This rule applies to the elements of the Engine Control System which are installed in designated fire zones.

There is no probability associated with CS-E 50(c)(4). Hence, all foreseeable local events should be considered. It is recognised, however, that it is difficult to address all possible local events in the intended aircraft installation at the time of Engine certification. Therefore, sound Engineering judgement should be applied in order to identify the reasonably foreseeable local events. Compliance with this specification may be shown by considering the end result of the local event on the Engine Control System. The local events analysed should be well documented to aid in certification of the Engine installation.

The following guidance applies to Engine Control System wiring:

- Each wire or combination of wires interfacing with the EECS that could be affected by a local event should be tested or analysed with respect to local events. The assessment should include opens, shorts to ground and shorts to power (when appropriate) and the results should show that Faults result in identified responses and do not result in Hazardous Engine Effects.
- Engine control unit aircraft interface wiring should be tested or analysed for shorts to aircraft power, and these “hot” shorts should result in an identified and non-Hazardous Engine Effect. Where aircraft interface wiring is involved, the installer should be informed of the potential effects of interface wiring Faults by means of information provided in the Engine instructions for installation. It is the installer’s

responsibility to ensure that there are no wiring Faults which could affect more than one Engine. Where practical, wiring Faults should not affect more than one channel. Any assumptions made by the Engine applicant regarding channel separation should be included in the LOTC/LOPC analysis.

- Where physical separation of conductors is not practical, co-ordination between the Engine applicant and the installer should ensure that the potential for common mode Faults between Engine Control Systems is eliminated, and between channels on one Engine is minimised.

The applicant should assess by analysis or test the effects of fluid leaks impinging on components of the Electronic Engine Control System. Such conditions should not result in a Hazardous Engine Effect, nor should the fluids be allowed to impinge on circuitry or printed circuit boards and result in a potential latent Failure condition.

## **(8) SYSTEM SAFETY ASSESSMENT**

### **(a) Scope of the assessment**

The system safety assessment (SSA) required under CS-E 50(d) should address all operating modes, and the data used in the SSA should be substantiated.

The LOTC/LOPC analysis described in Section 7 is a subset of the SSA. The LOTC/LOPC analysis and SSA may be separate or combined as a single analysis.

The SSA should consider all Faults, both detected and undetected, and their effects on the Engine Control System and the Engine itself. The intent is primarily to address the Faults or malfunctions which only affect one Engine Control System, and therefore only one Engine. However, Faults or malfunctions in aircraft signals, including those in a multi-engine installation that could affect more than one Engine, should also be included in the SSA; these types of Faults are addressed under CS-E 50(g).

The Engine Control System SSA and LOTC/LOPC analysis, or combined analyses, should identify the applicable assumptions and installation requirements and establish any limitations relating to Engine Control System operation. These assumptions, requirements, and limitations should be stated in the Engine instructions for installation and operation as appropriate. If necessary, the limitations should be contained in the airworthiness limitations section of the instructions for continued airworthiness in accordance with CS-E 25(b)(1).

The SSA should address all Failure effects identified under CS-E 510 or CS-E 210, as appropriate. A summary should be provided, listing the malfunctions or Failures and their effects caused by the Engine Control System, such as:

- Failures affecting power or thrust resulting in LOTC/LOPC events.
- Failures which result in the Engine's inability to meet the operability specifications. If these Failure cases are not considered as LOPC events according to paragraph (7)(b)(ii) of this AMC, the expected frequency of occurrence for these events should be documented.
- Transmission of erroneous parameters which could lead to thrust or power changes greater than 3% of Take-off Power or Thrust (10% for piston engine installations) (e.g., false high indication of the thrust or power setting parameter) or to Engine shutdown (e.g., high EGT or turbine temperatures or low oil pressure).

- Failures affecting functions included in the Engine Control System, which may be considered aircraft functions (e.g. Propeller control, thrust reverser control, control of cooling air, control of fuel recirculation)
- Failures resulting in Major Engine Effects and Hazardous Engine Effects.

The SSA should also consider all signals used by the Engine Control System, in particular any cross-Engine control signals and air signals as described in CS-E 50(i).

The criticality of functions included in the Engine Control System for aircraft level functions needs to be defined by the aircraft applicant.

(b) Criteria

The SSA should demonstrate or provide the following:

- (i) Compliance with CS-E 510 or CS-E 210, as appropriate.
- (ii) For Failures leading to LOTC/LOPC events, compliance with the agreed LOTC/LOPC rate for the intended installation (see paragraph (7)(d) of this AMC).
- (iii) For Failures affecting Engine operability but not leading to LOPC events, compliance with the expected total frequency of occurrence of Failures that result in Engine response that is non-compliant with CS-E 390, CS-E 500(a) and CS-E 745 specifications (as appropriate). The acceptability of the frequency of occurrence for these events - along with any aircraft flight deck indications deemed necessary to inform the flight crew of such a condition - will be determined at aircraft certification.
- (iv) The consequence of the transmission of a faulty parameter

The consequence of the transmission of a faulty parameter by the Engine Control System should be identified and included, as appropriate, in the LOTC/LOPC analysis. Any information necessary to mitigate the consequence of a faulty parameter transmission should be contained in the Engine operating instructions.

For example, the Engine operating instructions may indicate that a display of zero oil pressure be ignored in-flight if the oil quantity and temperature displays appear normal. In this situation, Failure to transmit oil pressure or transmitting a zero oil pressure signal should not lead to an Engine shutdown or LOTC/LOPC event. Admittedly, flight crew initiated shutdowns have occurred in-service during such conditions. In this regard, if the Engine operating instructions provide information to mitigate the condition, then control system Faults or malfunctions leading to the condition do not have to be included in the LOTC/LOPC analysis. In such a situation, the loss of multiple functions should be included in the LOTC/LOPC analysis. If the display of zero oil pressure and zero oil quantity (or high oil temperature) would result in a crew initiated shutdown, then those conditions should be included in the systems LOTC/LOPC analysis.

(c) Malfunctions or Faults affecting thrust or power

In multi-engine aeroplanes, Faults that result in thrust or power changes of less than approximately 10% of Take-off Power or Thrust may be undetectable by the flight crew. This level is based on pilot assessment and has been in use for a number of years. The pilots indicated that flight crews will note the Engine operating differences when the difference is greater than 10% in asymmetric thrust or power.

The detectable difference level for Engines for other installations should be agreed with the installer.

When operating in the take-off envelope, Uncovered Faults in the Engine Control System which result in a thrust or power change of less than 3% (10% for piston engines installations), are generally considered acceptable. However, this does not detract from the applicant's obligation to ensure that the full-up system is capable of providing the declared minimum rated thrust or power. In this regard, Faults which could result in small thrust changes should be random in nature and detectable and correctable during routine inspections, overhauls or power-checks.

The frequency of occurrence of Uncovered Faults that result in a thrust or power change greater than 3% of Take-off Power or Thrust, but less than the change defined as an LOTC/LOPC event, should be contained in the SSA documentation. There are no firm specifications relating to this class of Faults for Engine certification; however the rate of occurrence of these types of Faults should be reasonably low, in the order of  $10^{-4}$  events per Engine flight hour or less. These Faults may be required to be included in aircraft certification analysis.

Signals sent from one Engine Control System to another in an aeroplane installation, such as signals used for an Automatic Take-off Thrust Control System (ATTCS), synchrophasing, etc., are addressed under CS-E 50(g). They should be limited in authority by the receiving Engine Control System, so that undetected Faults do not result in an unacceptable change in thrust or power on the Engine using those signals. The maximum thrust or power loss on the Engine using a cross-Engine signal should generally be limited to 3% absolute difference of the current operating condition.

Note: It is recognised that ATTCS, when activated, may command a thrust or power increase of 10% or more on the remaining Engine(s). It is also recognised that signals sent from one Engine control to another in a rotorcraft installation, such as load sharing and One Engine Inoperative (OEI), can have a much greater impact on Engine power when those signals fail. Data of these Failure modes should be contained in the SSA.

When operating in the take-off envelope, detected Faults in the Engine Control System, which result in a thrust or power change of up to 10% (15% for piston engines) may be acceptable if the total frequency of occurrence for these types of Failures is relatively low. The predicted frequency of occurrence for this category of Faults should be contained in SSA documentation. It should be noted that requirements for the allowable frequency of occurrence for this category of Faults and any need for a flight deck indication of these conditions would be reviewed during aircraft certification. A total frequency of occurrence in excess of  $10^{-4}$  events per Engine flight hour would not normally be acceptable.

Detected Faults in signals exchanged between Engine Control Systems should be accommodated so as not to result in greater than a 3% thrust or power change on the Engine using the cross-Engine signals.

## **(9) PROTECTIVE FUNCTIONS**

### **(a) Rotor Over-speed Protection.**

Rotor over-speed protection is usually achieved by providing an independent over-speed protection system, such that it requires two independent Faults or malfunctions (as described below) to result in an uncontrolled over-speed.

The following guidance applies if the rotor over-speed protection is provided solely by an Engine Control System protective function.

For dispatchable configurations, refer to CS-E 1030 and AMC E 1030.

The SSA should show that the probability per Engine flight hour of an uncontrolled over-speed condition from any cause in combination with a Failure of the over-speed protection system to function is less than one event per hundred million hours (a Failure rate of  $10^{-8}$  events per Engine flight hour).

The over-speed protection system would be expected to have a Failure rate of less than  $10^{-4}$  Failures per engine flight hour to ensure the integrity of the protected function.

A self-test of the over-speed protection system to ensure its functionality prior to each flight is normally necessary for achieving the objectives. Verifying the functionality of the over-speed protection system at Engine shutdown and/or start-up is considered adequate for compliance with this requirement. It is recognised that some Engines may routinely not be shut down between flight cycles. In this case this should be accounted for in the analyses.

Because in some over-speed protection systems there are multiple protection paths, there will always be uncertainty that all paths are functional at any given time. Where multiple paths can invoke the over-speed protection system, a test of a different path may be performed each Engine cycle. The objective is that a complete test of the over-speed system, including electro-mechanical parts, is achieved in the minimum number of Engine cycles. This is acceptable so long as the system meets a  $10^{-4}$  Failure rate.

The applicant may provide data that demonstrates that the mechanical parts (this does not include the electro-mechanical parts) of the over-speed protection system can operate without Failure between stated periods, and a periodic inspection may be established for those parts. This data is acceptable in lieu of testing the mechanical parts of the sub-system each Engine cycle.

(b) Other protective functions

The Engine Control System may perform other protective functions. Some of these may be Engine functions, but others may be aircraft or Propeller functions. Engine functions should be considered under the guidelines of this AMC. The integrity of other protective functions provided by the Engine Control System should be consistent with a safety analysis associated with those functions, but if those functions are not Engine functions, they may not be a part of Engine certification.

As Engine Control Systems become increasingly integrated into the aircraft and Propeller systems, they are incorporating protective functions that were previously provided by the aircraft or Propeller systems. Examples are reducing the Engine to idle thrust if a thrust reverser deploys and providing the auto-feather function for the Propeller when an Engine fails.

The reliability and availability associated with these functions should be consistent with the top level hazard assessment of conditions involving these functions. This will be completed during aircraft certification.

For example, if an Engine Failure with loss of the auto-feather function is catastrophic at the aircraft level - and the auto-feather function is incorporated into the Engine Control System - the applicant will have to show for CS-25 installations (or CS-23 installations certified to CS-25 specifications) that an Engine Failure with loss of the auto-feather

function cannot result from a single control system Failure, and that combinations of control system Failures, or Engine and control system Failures, which lead to a significant Engine loss of thrust or power with an associated loss of the autofeather function may be required to have an extremely improbable event rate (i.e.,  $10^{-9}$  events per Engine flight hour).

Although these functions await evaluation at the aircraft level, it is strongly recommended that, if practicable, the aircraft level hazard assessment involving these functions be available at the time of the Engine Control System certification. This will facilitate discussions and co-ordination between the Engine and aircraft certification teams under the conditions outlined in paragraph (15) of this AMC. It is recognised that this co-ordination may not occur for various reasons. Because of this, the applicant should recognise that although the Engine may be certified, it may not be installable at the aircraft level.

The overall requirement is that the safety assessment of the Engine Control System should include all Failure modes of all functions incorporated in the system. This includes those functions which are added to support aircraft certification, so that the information of those Failure modes will get properly addressed and passed on to the installer for inclusion in the airframe SSA. Information concerning the frequencies of occurrence of those Failure modes may be needed as well.

## **(10) SOFTWARE DESIGN AND IMPLEMENTATION**

### **(a) Objective**

For Engine Control Systems that use software, the objective of CS-E 50(f) is to prevent as far as possible software errors that would result in an unacceptable effect on power or thrust, or any unsafe condition.

It is understood that it may be impossible to establish with certainty that the software has been designed without errors. However, if the applicant uses the software level appropriate for the criticality of the performed functions and uses an approved software development method, the Agency would consider the software to be compliant with the requirement to minimise errors. In multiple Engine installations, the possibility of software errors common to more than one Engine Control System may determine the criticality level of the software.

### **(b) Approved Methods**

Methods for developing software, compliant with the guidelines contained in the latest edition of AMC 20-115 are acceptable methods. Alternative methods for developing software may be proposed by the applicant and are subject to approval by the Agency.

Software which was not developed using the version of ED-12 referenced in the latest edition of AMC 20-115 is referred to as legacy software. In general, changes made to legacy software applicable to its original installation are assured in the same manner as the original certification. When legacy software is used in a new aircraft installation that requires the latest edition of AMC 20-115, the original approval of the legacy software is still valid, assuming equivalence to the required software level can be ascertained. If the software equivalence is acceptable to the Agency taking into account the conditions defined in the latest edition of AMC 20-115, the legacy software can be used in the new installation that requires AMC 20-115 software. If equivalence cannot be substantiated, all the software changes should be assured through the use of the latest edition of AMC 20-115.

(c) Level of software design assurance

In multiple Engine installations, the design, implementation and verification of the software in accordance with Level A (as defined in the industry documents referred in the latest edition of AMC 20-115) is normally needed to achieve the certification objectives for aircraft to be type certificated under CS-25, CS-27-Category A and CS-29-Category A.

The criticality of functions on other aircraft may be different, and therefore, a different level of software development assurance may be acceptable. For example, in the case of a piston engine in a single-engine aircraft, level C (as defined in the industry documents referred in the latest edition of AMC 20-115) software has been found to be acceptable.

Determination of the appropriate software level may depend on the Failure modes and consequences of those Failures. For example, it is possible that Failures resulting in significant thrust or power increases or oscillations may be more severe than an Engine shutdown, and therefore, the possibility of these types of Failures should be considered when selecting a given software level.

It may be possible to partition non-critical software from the critical software and design and implement the non-critical software to a lower level as defined by the industry documents referred in the latest edition of AMC 20-115. The adequacy of the partitioning method should be demonstrated. This demonstration should consider whether the partitioned lower software levels are appropriate for any anticipated installations. Should the criticality level be higher in subsequent installations, it would be difficult to raise the software level.

(d) On-Board or Field Software Loading and Part Number Marking

The following guidelines should be followed when on-board or field loading of Electronic Engine Control software and associated Electronic Part Marking (EPM) is implemented.

For software changes, the software to be loaded should have been documented by an approved design change and released with a service bulletin.

For an EECS unit having separate part numbers for hardware and software, the software part number(s) need not be displayed on the unit as long as the software part number(s) is(are) embedded in the loaded software and can be verified by electronic means. When new software is loaded into the unit, the same verification requirement applies and the proper software part number should be verified before the unit is returned to service.

For an EECS unit having only one part number, which represents a combination of a software and hardware build, the unit part number on the nameplate should be changed or updated when the new software is loaded. The software build or version number should be verified before the unit is returned to service.

The configuration control system for an EECS that will be onboard/field loaded and using electronic part marking should be approved. The drawing system should provide a compatibility table that tabulates the combinations of hardware part numbers and software versions that have been approved by the Agency. The top-level compatibility table should be under configuration control, and it should be updated for each change that affects hardware/software combinations. The applicable service bulletin should define the hardware configurations with which the new software version is compatible.

The loading system should be in compliance with the guidelines of the latest edition of AMC 20-115.

If the applicant proposes more than one source for loading, (e.g., diskette, mass storage, Secure Disk card, USB stick flash, etc.), all sources should comply with these guidelines.

The service bulletin should require verification that the correct software version has been loaded after installation on the aircraft.

(e) Software Change Category

The processes and methods used to change software should not affect the software level of that software. For classification of software changes, refer to §4 in Appendix A of GM 21.A.91.

(f) Software Changes by Others than the TC Holder

There are two types of potential software changes that could be implemented by someone other than the original TC holder:

- option-selectable software, or
- user-modifiable software (UMS).

Option-selectable changes would have to be pre-certified utilising a method of selection which has been shown not to be capable of causing a control malfunction.

UMS is software intended for modification by the aircraft operator without review by the certification authority, the aircraft applicant, or the equipment vendor. For Engine Control Systems, UMS has generally not been applicable. However, approval of UMS, if required, would be addressed on a case-by-case basis.

In principle, persons other than the TC holder may modify the software within the modification constraints defined by the TC holder, if the system has been certified with the provision for software user modifications. To certify an Electronic Engine Control System with the provision for software modification by others than the TC holder, the TC holder should (1) provide the necessary information for approval of the design and implementation of a software change, and (2) demonstrate that the necessary precautions have been taken to prevent the user modification from affecting Engine airworthiness, especially if the user modification is incorrectly implemented.

In the case where the software is changed in a manner not pre-allowed by the TC holder as “user modifiable”, the “non-TC holder” applicant will have to comply with the requirements given in Part 21, subpart E.

## **(11) PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC DEVICES**

CS-E 50 (f) applies to devices referred to as Programmable Logic Devices.

Because of the nature and complexity of systems containing digital logic, the Programmable Logic Devices should be developed using a structured development approach, commensurate with the hazard associated with Failure or malfunction of the system in which the device is contained.

RTCA DO-254/ EUROCAE ED-80 which describes the standards for the criticality and design assurance levels associated with Programmable Logic Devices development, is an acceptable means, but not the only means, for showing compliance with CS-E 50(f).

For off-the-shelf equipment or modified equipment, service experience may be used in showing compliance to these standards. This should be acceptable provided the worst case Failure or malfunction of the device for the new installation is no more severe than that for original installation of the same equipment on another installation. Consideration should also be given

to any significant differences related to environmental, operational or the category of the aircraft where the original system was installed and certified.

## (12) AIRCRAFT-SUPPLIED DATA

### (a) Objective

As required by CS-E 50(g), in case of loss, interruption, or corruption of Aircraft-Supplied Data, the Engine should continue to function in a safe and acceptable manner, without unacceptable effects on thrust or power, Hazardous Engine Effects, or loss of ability to comply with the operating specifications of CS-E 390, CS-E 500(a) and CS-E 745, as appropriate.

### (b) Background

Historically, regulatory practice was to preserve the Engine independence from the aircraft. Hence even with very reliable architecture, such as triply redundant air data computer (ADC) systems, it was required that the Engine Control System provided an independent control means that could be used to safely fly the aircraft should all the ADC signals be lost.

However, with the increased Engine-aircraft integration that is currently occurring in the aviation industry and with the improvement in reliability and implementation of Aircraft-Supplied Data, the regulatory intent is being revised to require that Fault Accommodation be provided against single Failures of Aircraft-Supplied Data. This may include Fault Accommodation by transition into another Control Mode that is independent of Aircraft-Supplied Data.

The Engine Control System's LOTC/LOPC analysis should contain the effects of air data system Failures in all allowable Engine Control System and air data system dispatch configurations.

When Aircraft-Supplied Data can affect Engine Control System operation, the applicant should address the following items, as applicable, in the SSA or other appropriate documents:

- Software in the data path to the EECS should be at a level consistent with that defined for the EECS. The data path may include other aircraft equipment, such as aircraft thrust management computers, or other avionics equipment.
- The applicant should state in the instructions for installation that the aircraft applicant is responsible for ensuring that changes to aircraft equipment, including software, in the data path to the Engine do not affect the integrity of the data provided to the Engine as defined by the Engine instructions for installation.
- The applicant should supply the effects of faulty and corrupted Aircraft-Supplied Data on the EECS in the Engine instructions for installation.
- The instructions for installation should state that the installer should ensure that those sensors and equipment involved in delivering information to the EECS are capable of operating in the EMI, HIRF and lightning environments, as defined in the certification basis for the aircraft, without affecting their proper and continued operation.
- The applicant should state the reliability level for the Aircraft-Supplied Data that was used as part of the SSA and LOTC/LOPC analysis as an "assumed value" in the instructions for installation.

As stated in CS-E 50(g), thrust and power command signals sent from the aircraft are not subject to the specifications of CS-E 50(g)(2). If the aircraft thrust or power command system is configured to move the Engine thrust or power levers or transmit an electronic signal to command a thrust or power change, the Engine Control System merely responds to the command and changes Engine thrust or power as appropriate. The Engine Control System may have no way of knowing that the sensed throttle or power lever movement was correct or erroneous.

In both the moving throttle (or power lever) and non-moving throttle (or power lever) configurations, it is the installer's responsibility to show that a proper functional hazard analysis is performed on the aircraft system involved in generating Engine thrust or power commands, and that the system meets the appropriate aircraft's functional hazard assessment safety related specifications. This task is an aircraft certification issue, however Failures of the system should be included in the Engine's LOTC/LOPC analysis.

(c) Design assessment

The applicant should prepare a Fault Accommodation chart that defines the Fault Accommodation architecture for the Aircraft-Supplied Data.

There may be elements of the Engine Control System that are mounted in the aircraft and are not part of the Engine type design, but which are dedicated to the Engine Control System and powered by it, such as a throttle position resolver. In these instances, such elements are considered to be an integral component of the Electronic Engine Control System and are not considered aircraft data.

In the case where the particular Failure modes of the aircraft air data may be unknown, the typical Failure modes of loss of data and erroneous data should be assumed. The term "erroneous data" is used herein to describe a condition where the data appears to be valid but is incorrect.

Such assumptions and the results of the evaluation of erroneous aircraft data should be provided to the installer.

The following are examples of possible means of accommodation:

- Provision of an Alternate Mode that is independent of Aircraft-Supplied Data.
- Dual sources of aircraft-supplied sensor data with local Engine sensors provided as voters and alternate data sources.
- Use of synthesised Engine parameters to control or as voters. When synthesised parameters are used for control or voting purposes, the analysis should consider the impact of temperature and other environmental effects on those sensors whose data are used in the synthesis. The variability of any data or information necessary to relate the data from the sensors used in the synthesis to the parameters being synthesised should also be assessed.
- Triple redundant ADC systems that provide the required data.

If for aircraft certification it is intended to show that the complete loss of the aircraft air data system itself is extremely improbable, then it should be shown that the aircraft air data system is unaffected by a complete loss of aircraft generated power, for example, backed up by battery power. (See [AMC 20-1](#))

(d) Effects on the Engine

CS-E 510 defines the Hazardous Engine Effects for turbine Engines.

CS-E 50(g) is primarily intended to address the effects of aircraft signals, such as aircraft air data information, or other signals which could be common to all Engine Control Systems in a multi-Engine installation. The control system design should ensure that the full-up system is capable of providing the declared minimum rated thrust or power throughout the Engine operating envelope.

CS-E 50(g) requires the applicant to provide an analysis of the effect of loss or corruption of aircraft data on Engine thrust or power. The effects of Failures in Aircraft-Supplied Data should be documented in the SSA as described in Section (8) above. Where appropriate, aircraft data Failures or malfunctions that contribute to LOTC/LOPC events should be included in the LOTC/LOPC analysis.

(e) Validation

Functionality of the Fault Accommodation logic should be demonstrated by test, analysis, or combination thereof. In the case where the aircraft air data system is not functional because of the loss of all aircraft generated power, the Engine Control System should include validated Fault Accommodation logic which allows the Engine to operate acceptably with the loss of all aircraft-supplied air data. Engine operation in this system configuration should be demonstrated by test.

For all dispatchable Control Modes, see CS-E 1030 and AMC E 1030.

If an Alternate Mode, independent of Aircraft-Supplied Data, has been provided to accommodate the loss of all data, sufficient testing should be conducted to demonstrate that the operability specifications have been met when operating in this mode. Characteristics of operation in this mode should be included in the instructions for installation and operation as appropriate. This Alternate Mode need not be dispatchable.

### **(13) AIRCRAFT SUPPLIED ELECTRICAL POWER**

(a) Objective

The objective is to provide an electrical power source that is single Fault tolerant (including common cause or mode) in order to allow the EECS to comply with CS-E 50(c)(2). The most common practice for achieving this objective has been to provide a dedicated electrical power source for the EECS. When aircraft electrical power is used, the assumed quality and reliability levels of this aircraft power should be contained in the instructions for installation.

(b) Electrical power sources

An Engine dedicated power source is defined herein as an electric power source providing electrical power generated and supplied solely for use by a single Engine Control System. Such a source is usually provided by an alternator(s), mechanically driven by the Engine or the transmission system of rotorcraft. However, with the increased integration of the Engine-aircraft systems and with the application of EECS to small Engines, both piston and turbine, use of an Engine-mounted alternator may not necessarily be the only design approach for meeting the objective.

Batteries are considered an Aircraft-Supplied Power source except in the case of piston Engines. For piston Engines, a battery source dedicated solely to the Engine Control System may be accepted as an Engine dedicated power source. In such applications, appropriate information for the installer should be provided including, for example, health status and maintenance requirements for the dedicated battery system.

(c) Analysis of the design architecture

An analysis and a review of the design architecture should identify the requirements for Engine dedicated power sources and Aircraft-Supplied Power sources. The analysis should include the effects of losing these sources. If the Engine is dependent on Aircraft-Supplied Power for any operational functions, the analysis should result in a definition of the requirements for Aircraft-Supplied Power.

The following configurations have been used:

- EECS dependent on Aircraft-Supplied Power
- EECS independent of Aircraft-Supplied Power (Engine dedicated power source)
- Aircraft-Supplied Power used for functions, switched by the EECS
- Aircraft-Supplied Power directly used for Engine functions, independently from the EECS
- Aircraft-Supplied Power used to back up the Engine dedicated power source

The capacity of any Engine dedicated power source, required to comply with CS-E 50(h)(2), should provide sufficient margin to maintain confidence that the Engine Control System will continue to function in all anticipated Engine operating conditions where the control system is designed and expected to recover Engine operation automatically in-flight. The autonomy of the Engine Control System should be sufficient to ensure its functioning in the case of immediate automatic relight after unintended shutdown. Conversely, the autonomy of the Engine Control System in the whole envelope of restart in windmilling conditions is not always required. This margin should account for any other anticipated variations in the output of the dedicated power source such as those due to temperature variations, manufacturing tolerances and idle speed variations. The design margin should be substantiated by test and/or analysis and should also take into account any deterioration over the life of the Engine.

(d) Aircraft-Supplied Power Reliability

Any Aircraft-Supplied Power reliability values used in system analyses, whether supplied by the aircraft manufacturer or assumed, should be contained in the instructions for installation.

When Aircraft-Supplied Power is used in any architecture, if aircraft power Faults or Failures can contribute to LOTC/LOPC or Hazardous Engine Effects, these events should be included in the Engine SSA and LOTC/LOPC analyses.

When compliance with CS-E 50(h)(1) imposes an Engine dedicated power source, Failure of this source should be addressed in the LOTC/LOPC analysis required under CS-E 50 (c). While no credit is normally necessary to be given in the LOTC/LOPC analysis for the use of Aircraft-Supplied Power as a back-up power source, Aircraft-Supplied Power has typically been provided for the purpose of accommodating the loss of the Engine dedicated power source. However, LOTC/LOPC allowance and any impact on the SSA for the use of Aircraft-Supplied Power as the sole power source for an Engine control Back-up System or as a back-up power source would be reviewed on a case-by-case basis.

In some system architectures, an Engine dedicated power source may not be required and Aircraft-Supplied Power may be acceptable as the sole source of power.

An example is a system that consists of a primary electronic single channel and a full capability hydromechanical Back-up System that is independent of electrical power (a full capability hydromechanical control system is one that meets all CS-E specifications and is not dependent on aircraft power). In this type of architecture, loss or interruption of Aircraft-Supplied Power is accommodated by transferring control to the hydromechanical system. Transition from the electronic to the hydromechanical control system is addressed under CS-E 50(b).

Another example is an EECS powered by an aircraft power system that could support a critical fly-by-wire flight control system. Such a power system may be acceptable as the sole source of power for an EECS. In this example, it should be stated in the instructions for installation that a detailed design review and safety analysis is to be conducted to identify latent failures and common cause failures that could result in the loss of all electrical power. The instructions should also state that any emergency power sources must be known to be operational at the beginning of the flight. Any emergency power sources must be isolated from the normal electrical power system in such a way that the emergency power system will be available no matter what happens to the normal generated power system. If batteries are the source of emergency power, there must be a means of determining their condition prior to flight, and their capacity must be shown to be sufficient to assure exhaustion will not occur before getting the aircraft safely back on the ground.

This will satisfy that appropriate reliability assumptions are provided to the installer.

(e) Aircraft-Supplied Power Quality

When Aircraft-Supplied Power is necessary for operation of the Engine Control System, CS-E 50(h)(3) specifies that the Engine instructions for installation contain the Engine Control System's electrical power supply quality requirements. This applies to any of the configurations listed in paragraph (13)(c) or any new configurations or novel approach not listed that use Aircraft-Supplied Power. These quality requirements should include steady state and transient under-voltage and over-voltage limits for the equipment. The power input standards of RTCA DO-160/EUROCAE ED-14 are considered to provide an acceptable definition of such requirements. If RTCA DO-160/EUROCAE ED-14 is used, any exceptions to the power quality standards cited for the particular category of equipment specified should be stated.

It is recognised that the electrical or electronic components of the Engine Control System when operated on Aircraft-Supplied Power may cease to operate during some low voltage aircraft power supply conditions beyond those required to sustain normal operation, but in no case should the operation of the Engine control result in a Hazardous Engine Effect. In addition, low voltage transients outside the control system's declared capability should not cause permanent loss of function of the control system, or result in inappropriate control system operation which could cause the Engine to exceed any operational limits, or cause the transmission of unacceptable erroneous data.

When aircraft power recovers from a low-voltage condition to a condition within which the control system is expected to operate normally, the Engine Control System should resume normal operation. The time interval associated with this recovery should be contained in the Engine instructions for installation. It is recognised that Aircraft-Supplied Power conditions may lead to an Engine shutdown or Engine condition which is not recoverable automatically. In these cases the Engine should be capable of being restarted, and any special flight crew procedures for executing an Engine restart during

such conditions should be contained in the Engine instructions for operation. The acceptability of any non-recoverable Engine operating conditions - as a result of these Aircraft-Supplied Power conditions - will be determined at aircraft certification.

If Aircraft-Supplied Power supplied by a battery is required to meet an "all Engines out" restart requirement, the analysis according to paragraph 13(c) should result in a definition of the requirements for this Aircraft-Supplied Power. In any installation where aircraft electrical power is used to operate the Engine Control System, such as low Engine speed in-flight re-starting conditions, the effects of any aircraft electrical bus-switching transients or power transients associated with application of electrical loads, which could cause an interruption in voltage or a decay in voltage below that level required for proper control functioning, should be considered.

(f) Effects on the Engine

Where loss of aircraft power results in a change in Engine Control Mode, the Control Mode transition should meet the specifications of CS-E 50(b).

For some Engine control functions that rely exclusively upon Aircraft-Supplied Power, the loss of electrical power may still be acceptable. Acceptability is based on evaluation of the change in Engine operating characteristics, experience with similar designs, or the accommodation designed into the control system.

Examples of such Engine control functions that have traditionally been reliant on aircraft power include:

- Engine start and ignition
- Thrust Reverser deployment
- Anti-Icing (Engine probe heat)
- Fuel Shut-Off
- Over-speed Protection Systems
- Non-critical functions that are primarily performance enhancement functions which, if inoperative, do not affect the safe operation of the Engine.

(g) Validation

The applicant should demonstrate the effects of loss of Aircraft-Supplied Power by Engine test, system validation test or bench test or combination thereof.

**(14) PISTON ENGINES**

Piston Engines are addressed by the sections above; no additional specific guidance is necessary.

CS-E 50 specifications are applicable to these Engines but, when interpretation is necessary, the conditions which would be acceptable for the aircraft installation should be considered.

**(15) ENGINE, PROPELLER AND AIRCRAFT SYSTEMS INTEGRATION AND INTER-RELATION BETWEEN ENGINE, PROPELLER AND AIRCRAFT CERTIFICATION ACTIVITIES**

(a) Aircraft or Propeller Functions Integrated into the Engine Control System

This involves the integration of aircraft or Propeller functions (i.e., those that have traditionally not been considered Engine control functions), into the Electronic Engine Control System's hardware and software.

Examples of this include thrust reverser control systems, Propeller speed governors, which govern speed by varying pitch, and ATTCS. When this type of integration activity is pursued, the EECS becomes part of - and should be included in the aircraft's SSA, and although the aircraft functions incorporated into the EECS may receive review at Engine certification, the acceptability of the safety analysis involving these functions should be determined at aircraft certification.

The EECS may be configured to contain only part of the aircraft system's functionality, or it may contain virtually all of it. Thrust reverser control systems are an example where only part of the functionality is included in the EECS. In such cases, the aircraft is configured to have separate switches and logic (i.e., independent from the EECS) as part of the thrust reverser control system. This separation of reverser control system elements and logic provides an architectural means to limit the criticality of the functions provided by the EECS.

However, in some cases the EECS may be configured to incorporate virtually all of a critical aircraft function. Examples of this "virtual completeness" in aircraft functionality are EECS which contain full authority to govern Propeller speed in turboprop powered aircraft and ATTCS in turbofan power aircraft.

The first of these examples is considered critical because, if an Engine fails, the logic in the Engine Control System should be configured to feather the Propeller on that Engine. Failure to rapidly feather the Propeller following an Engine Failure results in excessive drag on the aircraft, and such a condition can be critical to the aircraft. When functions like these are integrated into the Engine control such that they render an EECS critical, special attention should be paid to assuring that no single (including common cause/mode) Failures could cause the critical Failure condition, e.g. exposure of the EECS to overheat should not cause both an Engine shutdown and Failure of the Propeller to feather.

The second example, that of an ATTCS, is considered critical because the system is required to increase the thrust of the remaining Engine(s) following an Engine Failure during takeoff, and the increased thrust on the remaining Engines is necessary to achieve the required aircraft performance.

All of the above examples of integration involve aircraft functionality that would receive significant review during aircraft certification.

(b) Integration of Engine Control Functions into Aircraft Systems

The trend toward systems integration may lead to aircraft systems performing functions traditionally considered part of the Engine Control System. Some designs may use aircraft systems to implement a significant number of the Engine Control System functions. An example would be the complex integrated flight and Engine Control Systems – integrated in aircraft avionics units - which govern Engine speed, rotor speed, rotor pitch angle and rotor tilt angle in tilt-rotor aircraft.

In these designs, aircraft systems may be required to be used during Engine certification. In such cases, the Engine applicant is responsible for specifying the requirements for the EECS in the instructions for installation and substantiating the adequacy of those requirements.

An example of limited integration would be an Engine control which receives a torque output demand signal from the aircraft and responds by changing the Engine's fuel flow and other variables to meet that demand. However, the EECS itself, which is part of the

type design, provides all the functionality required to safely operate the Engine in accordance with CS-E or other applicable specifications.

(c) Certification activities

(i) Objective

To satisfy the aircraft specifications, such as CS 25.901, CS 25.903 and CS 25.1309, an analysis of the consequences of Failures of the Engine Control System on the aircraft has to be made. The Engine applicant should, together with the aircraft applicant, ensure that the software levels and safety and reliability objectives for the Engine electronic control system are consistent with these specifications.

(ii) Interface Definition and System Responsibilities

System responsibilities as well as interface definitions should be identified for the functional and hardware and software aspects between the Engine, Propeller and the aircraft systems in the appropriate documents.

The Engine/Propeller/aircraft documents should cover in particular:

- Functional requirements and criticality (which may be based on Engine, Propeller and aircraft considerations)
- Fault Accommodation strategies
- Maintenance strategies
- The software level (per function if necessary),
- The reliability objectives for:
  - LOTC/LOPC events
  - Transmission of faulty parameters
  - The environmental requirements including the degree of protection against lightning or other electromagnetic effects (e.g. level of induced voltages that can be supported at the interfaces)
- Engine, Propeller and aircraft interface data and characteristics
- Aircraft power supply requirements and characteristics (if relevant).

(iii) Distribution of Compliance Tasks

The tasks for the certification of the aircraft propulsion system equipped with Electronic Engine Control Systems may be shared between the Engine, Propeller and aircraft applicants. The distribution of these tasks between the applicants should be identified and agreed with the appropriate Engine, Propeller and aircraft authorities. For further information refer to [AMC 20-1](#).

The aircraft certification should deal with the overall integration of the Engine and Propeller in compliance with the applicable aircraft specifications.

The Engine certification will address the functional aspects of the Engine Control System in compliance with the applicable Engine specifications.

Appropriate evidence provided for Engine certification should be used for aircraft certification. For example, the quality of any aircraft function software and

aircraft/Engine interface logic already demonstrated for Engine certification should need no additional substantiation for aircraft certification.

Two examples are given below to illustrate this principle.

- (A) Case of an EECS performing the functions for the control of the Engine and the functions for the control of the Propeller.

The Engine certification would address all general requirements such as software quality assurance procedures, EMI, HIRF and lightning protection levels, effects of loss of aircraft-supplied power.

The Engine certification would address the functional aspects for the Engine functions (safety analysis, rate for LOTC/LOPC events, effect of loss of Aircraft-Supplied Data, etc.). The Fault Accommodation logic affecting the control of the Engine, for example, will be reviewed at that time.

The Propeller certification will similarly address the functional aspects for the Propeller functions. The Fault Accommodation logic affecting the control of the Propeller, for example, will be reviewed at that time.

In this example, the Propeller functions and characteristics defined by the Propeller applicant, that are to be provided by the Engine Control System, would normally need to be refined by flight test. The Propeller applicant is responsible for ensuring that these functions and characteristics, that are provided for use during the Engine certification programme, define an airworthy Propeller configuration, even if they have not yet been refined by flight test.

With regard to changes in design, agreement by all parties involved should be reached so that changes to the Engine Control System that affect the Propeller system, or vice versa, do not lead to any inadvertent effects on the other system.

- (B) Case of an aircraft computer performing the functions for the control of the Engine.

The aircraft certification will address all general requirements such as software quality assurance procedures, EMI, HIRF and lightning protection levels.

The aircraft certification will address the functional aspects for the aircraft functions.

The Engine certification will address the functional aspects for the Engine functions (safety analysis, rate for LOTC/LOPC events, effect of loss of Aircraft-Supplied Data, etc.) The Fault Accommodation logic affecting the control of the Engine, for example, will be reviewed at that time.

[Amdt 20/2]  
[Amdt 20/10]

## AMC 20-4A

### AMC 20-4A Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria For the Use of Navigation Systems in European Airspace Designated For Basic RNAV Operations

*ED Decision 2013/026/R*

This AMC presents Acceptable means of Compliance relative to the implementation of Basic RNAV operations within European designated Airspace, from January 1998. This AMC has been co-ordinated with EUROCONTROL.

#### 1 PURPOSE

This document provides acceptable means of compliance for airworthiness approval and operational criteria for the use of navigation systems in European airspace designated for Basic RNAV operations. The document establishes an acceptable means, but not the only means, that can be used in the airworthiness approval process, and provides guidelines for operators where GPS stand-alone equipment is used as the means for Basic RNAV operations. The document is in accordance with the April 1990 directive issued by the Transport Ministers of ECAC member states and with regard to the Basic RNAV operations as defined within the EUROCONTROL Standard 003-93 Edition 1 and satisfies the intent of ICAO Doc. 9613-AN/937 Manual on Required Navigation Performance (RNP) First Edition - 1994. It is consistent also with Regional Supplementary Procedures contained within ICAO Doc 7030.

#### 2 SCOPE

This document provides guidance related to navigation systems intended to be used for Basic RNAV operations and considers existing airworthiness approval standards as providing acceptable means of compliance. The content is limited to general certification considerations including navigation performance, integrity, functional requirements and system limitations.

Compliance with the guidance in this Leaflet does not constitute an operational authorisation/approval to conduct Basic RNAV operations. Aircraft operators should apply to their Authority for such an authorisation/approval.

ICAO RNP-4 criteria are outside the scope of this AMC, but it is expected that navigation systems based on position updating from traditional radio aids and approved for Basic RNAV operations in accordance with this AMC will have an RNP-4 capability.

#### Related specifications

CS/FAR 25.1301, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1321, 25.1322, 25.1431

CS/FAR 23.1301, 23.1309, 23.1311, 23.1321, 23.1322, 23.1431

CS/FAR 27.1301, 27.1309, 27.1321, 27.1322

CS/FAR 29.1301, 29.1309, 29.1321, 29.1322, 29.1431

operating requirements

#### ATC Documents

EUROCONTROL Standard Document 003-93 Edition 1

ICAO Doc. 9613-AN/937 - Manual on Required Navigation Performance (RNP) First Edition - 1994

**Related documents**EASA Acceptable means of Compliance

AMC 25-11	Electronic Display Systems
AMC 20-5	Acceptable Means of Compliance for Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for the use of the NAVSTAR Global Positioning System (GPS)
AMC 20-115 (latest version)	Software considerations for certification of airborne systems and equipment

FAA Advisory Circulars

AC 20-121 A	Airworthiness Approval of LORAN C for use in the U.S. National Airspace System
AC 20-130()	Airworthiness Approval of Multi-sensor Navigation Systems for use in the U.S. National Airspace System
AC 20-138	Airworthiness Approval of NAVSTAR Global Positioning System (GPS) for use as a VFR and IFR Supplemental Navigation System
AC 25-4	Inertial Navigation Systems (INS)
AC 25-15	Approval of FMS in Transport Category Airplanes
AC 90-45 A	Approval of Area Navigation Systems for use in the U.S. National Airspace System

ETSOs

ETSO-C115b	Airborne Area Navigation Equipment Using Multi Sensor Inputs
ETSO-C129a	Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS)
ETSO-C145	Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS).
ETSO-C146	Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)

EUROCAE/RTCA documents

ED-27	Minimum Operational Performance Requirements (MOPR) for Airborne Area Navigation Systems, based on VOR and DME as sensors
ED-28	Minimum Performance Specification (MPS) for Airborne Area Navigation Computing Equipment based on VOR and DME as sensors
ED-39	MOPR for Airborne Area Navigation Systems, based on two DME as sensors
ED-40	MPS for Airborne Computing Equipment for Area Navigation System using two DME as sensors
ED-58	Minimum Operational Performance Specification (MOPS) for Area Navigation Equipment using Multi-Sensor Inputs
ED-72()	MOPS for Airborne GPS Receiving Equipment
DO-180()	Minimum Operational Performance Standards (MOPS) for Airborne Area Navigation Equipment Using a Single Collocated VOR/DME Sensor Input

---

DO-18	MOPS for Airborne Area Navigation Equipment Using Multi Sensor Inputs
DO-200	Preparation, Verification and Distribution of User-Selectable Navigation Data Bases
DO-20	User Recommendations for Aeronautical Information Services
DO-208	MOPS for Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using Global Positioning System (GPS)

### **3 SYSTEMS CAPABILITY**

Area navigation (RNAV) is a method which permits aircraft navigation along any desired flight path within the coverage of either station referenced navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of both methods.

In general terms, RNAV equipment operates by automatically determining aircraft position from one, or a combination, of the following together with the means to establish and follow a desired path:

VOR/DME

DME/DME

INS\* or IRS

LORAN C\*

GPS\*

Equipment marked with an asterisk \*, is subject to the limitations contained in paragraph 4.4.2.

### **4 AIRWORTHINESS APPROVAL**

#### **4.1 Criteria For Basic RNAV System**

##### **4.1.1 Accuracy**

The navigation performance of aircraft approved for Basic RNAV operations within European airspace requires a track keeping accuracy equal to or better than +/- 5 NM for 95% of the flight time. This value includes signal source error, airborne receiver error, display system error and flight technical error.

This navigation performance assumes the necessary coverage provided by satellite or ground based navigation aids is available for the intended route to be flown.

##### **4.1.2 Availability and Integrity**

Acceptable means of compliance for assessment of the effects associated with the loss of navigation function or erroneous display of related information is given in AMC 25-11 paragraph 4 a (3)(viii).

The minimum level of availability and integrity required for Basic RNAV systems for use in designated European airspace can be met by a single installed system comprising one or more sensors, RNAV computer, control display unit and navigation display(s) (e.g. ND, HSI or CDI) provided that the system is monitored by the flight crew and that in the event of a system failure the aircraft retains the capability to navigate relative to ground based navigation aids (e.g. VOR, DME and NDB).

## 4.2 Functional Criteria

### 4.2.1 Required Functions

The following system functions are the minimum required to conduct Basic RNAV operations.

- (a) Continuous indication of aircraft position relative to track to be displayed to the pilot flying on a navigation display situated in his primary field of view  
In addition where the minimum flight crew is two pilots, indication of aircraft position relative to track to be displayed to the pilot not flying on a navigation display situated in his primary field of view
- (b) Display of distance and bearing to the active (To) waypoint
- (c) Display of ground speed or time to the active (To) waypoint
- (d) Storage of waypoints; minimum of 4
- (e) Appropriate failure indication of the RNAV system, including the sensors.

### 4.2.2 Recommended Functions

In addition to the requirements of paragraph 4.2.1, the following system functions and equipment characteristics are recommended:

- (a) Autopilot and/or Flight Director coupling
- (b) Present position in terms of latitude and longitude
- (c) "Direct To" function
- (d) Indication of navigation accuracy (e.g. quality factor)
- (e) Automatic channel selection of radio navigation aids
- (f) Navigation data base
- (g) Automatic leg sequencing and associated turn anticipation

## 4.3 Aircraft Flight Manual - MMEL (Master Minimum Equipment List)

The basis for certification should be stated in the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM), together with any RNAV system limitations. The AFM may also provide the appropriate RNAV system operating and abnormal procedures applicable to the equipment installed, including, where applicable, reference to required modes and systems configuration necessary to support an RNP capability.

The (Master) Minimum Equipment List MMEL/MEL should identify the minimum equipment necessary to satisfy the Basic RNAV criteria defined in paragraphs 4.1 and 4.2.

## 4.4. Basic RNAV Systems - Acceptable Means Of Compliance

### 4.4.1 Acceptable Means of Compliance

Navigation systems which are installed on aircraft in accordance with the advisory material contained within FAA AC 90-45A, AC 20-130(), AC 20-138 or AC 25-15, are acceptable for Basic RNAV operations. Where reference is made in the AFM to either the above advisory material or the specific levels of available navigation performance (RNP), no further compliance statements will be required.

Compliance may be based also on the lateral navigation standards defined in ETSO-C115b, ETSO-C129a, ED-27/28, ED-39/40, DO-187/ED-58 or DO-180(). However, qualification of the equipment to these standards, in itself, is not considered as sufficient for the airworthiness approval.

#### 4.4.2 Limitations on the Use of Navigation Systems

The following navigation systems, although offering an RNAV capability, have limitations for their use in Basic RNAV operations.

##### 4.4.2.1 INS

INS without a function for automatic radio updating of aircraft position and approved in accordance with AC 25-4, when complying with the functional criteria of paragraph 4.2.1, may be used only for a maximum of 2 hours from the last alignment/position update performed on the ground. Consideration may be given to specific INS configurations (e.g. triple mix) where either equipment or aircraft manufacturer's data, justifies extended use from the last on-ground position update.

INS with automatic radio updating of aircraft position, including those systems where manual selection of radio channels is performed in accordance with flight crew procedures, should be approved in accordance with AC 90-45A or equivalent material.

##### 4.4.2.2 LORAN C

No EASA advisory material currently exists for operational or airworthiness approval of LORAN C system within European airspace. Where LORAN C coverage within European Airspace permits use on certain Basic RNAV routes, AC 20-121A may be adopted as a compliance basis.

##### 4.4.2.3 GPS

The use of GPS to perform Basic RNAV operations is limited to equipment approved to ETSO-C129a, ETSO-C 145, or ETSO-C 146 and which include the minimum system functions specified in paragraph

4.2.1. Integrity should be provided by Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) or an equivalent means within a multi-sensor navigation system. The equipment should be approved in accordance with the [AMC 20-5](#). In addition, GPS stand-alone equipment should include the following functions:

- (a) Pseudorange step detection
- (b) Health word checking.

These two additional functions are required to be implemented in accordance with ETSO-C129a criteria.

Traditional navigation equipment (e.g. VOR, DME and ADF) will need to be installed and be serviceable, so as to provide an alternative means of navigation.

Note: Where GPS stand-alone equipment provides the only RNAV capability installed onboard the aircraft, this equipment, on its own, may be incompatible with a future airspace infrastructure such as Precision RNAV routes, terminal procedures, and where implementation of an augmented satellite navigation system will allow, the decommissioning of traditional ground based radio navigation aids.

## 5 OPERATIONAL CRITERIA FOR USE OF GPS STAND-ALONE EQUIPMENT

### 5.1 General Criteria

GPS stand-alone equipment approved in accordance with the guidance provided in this Leaflet, may be used for the purposes of conducting Basic RNAV operations, subject to the operational limitations contained herein. Such equipment should be operated in accordance with procedures acceptable to the Authority. The flight crew should receive appropriate training for use of the GPS stand-alone equipment for the normal and abnormal operating procedures detailed in paragraphs 5.2 and 5.3.

### 5.2 Normal Procedures

The procedures for the use of navigational equipment on Basic RNAV routes should include the following:

- (a) During the pre-flight planning phase, given a GPS constellation of 23 satellites or less (22 or less for GPS stand-alone equipment that incorporate pressure altitude aiding), the availability of GPS integrity (RAIM) should be confirmed for the intended flight (route and time). This should be obtained from a prediction program either ground-based, or provided as an equipment function (see [Annex 1](#)), or from an alternative method that is acceptable to the Authority.

Dispatch should not be made in the event of predicted continuous loss of RAIM of more than 5 minutes for any part of the intended flight.

- (b) Where a navigation data base is installed, the data base validity (current AIRAC cycle) should be checked before the flight;
- (c) Traditional navigation equipment (e.g. VOR, DME and ADF) should be selected to available aids so as to allow immediate cross-checking or reversion in the event of loss of GPS navigation capability.

### 5.3 Abnormal Procedures in the event of loss of GPS navigation capability

The operating procedures should identify the flight crew actions required in the event of the GPS stand-alone equipment indicating a loss of the integrity monitoring detection (RAIM) function or exceedance of integrity alarm limit (erroneous position). The operating procedures should include the following:

- (a) In the event of loss of the RAIM detection function, the GPS stand-alone equipment may continue to be used for navigation. The flight crew should attempt to cross-check the aircraft position, where possible with VOR, DME and NDB information, to confirm an acceptable level of navigation performance. Otherwise, the flight crew should revert to an alternative means of navigation.
- (b) In the event of exceedance of the alarm limit, the flight crew should revert to an alternative means of navigation.

[Amdt 20/10]

## Annex 1 to AMC 20-4 – GPS Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) Prediction Program

*ED Decision 2013/026/R*

Where a GPS Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) Prediction Program is used as a means of compliance with paragraph 5.2(a) of this document, it should meet the following criteria:

1. The program should provide prediction of availability of the integrity monitoring (RAIM) function of the GPS equipment, suitable for conducting Basic RNAV operations in designated European airspace.
2. The prediction program software should be developed in accordance with at least level D guidelines as defined in the industry documents referred in the latest edition of AMC 20-115.
3. The program should use either a RAIM algorithm identical to that used in the airborne equipment, or an algorithm based on assumptions for RAIM prediction that give a more conservative result.
4. The program should calculate RAIM availability based on a satellite mask angle of not less than 5 degrees, except where use of a lower mask angle has been demonstrated to be acceptable to the Authority.
5. The program should have the capability to manually designate GPS satellites which have been notified as being out of service for the intended flight.
6. The program should allow the user to select:
  - a) the intended route and declared alternates;
  - b) the time and duration of the intended flight.

[Amdt 20/10]

## AMC 20-5

### AMC 20-5 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for the use of the Navstar Global Positioning System (GPS)

*ED Decision 2003/12/RM*

#### 1 PURPOSE

This AMC establishes an acceptable means, but not the only means that can be used for airworthiness approval and provides guidelines for operators in the use of the NAVSTAR Global Positioning System (GPS).

#### 2 RELATED MATERIAL

<u>Document-ID</u>	<u>Title of Document</u>
EUROCAE ED 72A	Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Airborne GPS Receiving Equipment used for Supplemental Means of Navigation
ETSO-C115b/ FAA TSO-C115 ( )	Airborne Area Navigation Equipment using Multi-sensor Inputs
ETSO-C129a/ FAA TSO-C129( )	Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment using the Global Positioning System (GPS)
ETSO-C145	Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS).
ETSO-C146	Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
RTCA DO 208	Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment using Global Positioning System (GPS)
FAA AC 20-138	Airworthiness Approval of Global Positioning System (GPS) Navigation Equipment for use as a VFR and IFR Supplemental Navigation System (formerly FAA Notice 8110-47).
FAA AC 20-130A	Airworthiness Approval of Navigation or Flight Management Systems Integrating Multiple Navigation Sensors (formerly FAA Notice 8110-48).
FAA AC 90-94	Guidelines for using GPS Equipment for IFR En-route and Terminal Area Operations and for Non-precision Instrument Approaches in the US National Airspace System
FAA Notice 8110.60	GPS as Primary Means of Navigation for Oceanic/Remote Operations
DOT/FAA/AAR-95/3	FAA Aircraft Certification Human Factors and Operations Checklist for Stand Alone GPS Receivers (TSO C129 Class A)
FAA Order 8400.10	HBAT 95-09, Guidelines for Operational Approval of Global Positioning System (GPS) to Provide the Primary Means of Class II Navigation in Oceanic and Remote Areas of Operation

#### 3 BACKGROUND

3.1 The declaration of Full Operational Capability (FOC) for the NAVSTAR GPS constellation, by the United States Department of Defense (DOD) and Department of Transportation (DOT) gives the civil aviation community the opportunity to use the navigation information provided by the constellation.

- 3.2 Acceptable Means of Compliance for the use of GPS, will assist in the future development of satellite based systems. The aim is to create a Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) under civilian control. In the transition to the GNSS, and in order to obtain early benefits, it will be necessary to augment the present military controlled systems - GPS and GLONASS - for example with a combination of geostationary satellites, ground based integrity monitors, civilian funded satellites in conjunction with airborne integrity monitoring techniques such as Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM). Other techniques whereby the navigation system determines the integrity of the GPS navigation signals by using other installed aircraft sensor inputs such as INS, DME or other appropriate sensors may be accepted.

Note: Full Operational Capability for GLONASS the Russian navigation system has been declared since 05.02.1996.

- 3.3 Wherever possible, EASA AMC on the use of GPS will follow that authorised by the FAA. However, some differences will be inevitable due to differences in the organisation of national airspace and the datum used to determine position on the earth's surface.
- 3.4 It is assumed that the State's bodies responsible for ATM and aerodromes, will take the necessary steps to authorise/publish the use of GPS.
- 3.5 In the context of this AMC the use of the term „approach“ means „non-precision approach“.

#### 4 TERMINOLOGY

**GPS Class A ( ) equipment** Equipment incorporating both the GPS sensor and navigation capability. This equipment incorporates RAIM as defined by FAA TSO-C129( ).

**GPS Class B ( ) equipment** Equipment consisting of a GPS sensor that provides data to an integrated navigation system e.g. flight management navigation system, multi-sensor navigation system, (FAA TSO-C129( )).

**GPS Class C ( ) equipment** Equipment consisting of a GPS sensor that provides data to an integrated navigation system (e.g. flight management navigation system, multi-sensor navigation system) which provides enhanced guidance to an autopilot or flight director in order to reduce the flight technical error (FAA TSO-C129( )).

**Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM)** A technique whereby a GPS receiver processor determines the integrity of the GPS navigation signals using only GPS signals or GPS signals augmented with altitude. This determination is achieved by a consistency check among redundant pseudorange measurements. At least one satellite in addition to those required for navigation should be in view for the receiver to perform the RAIM function (FAA AC 20-138, AC 90-94).

**Stand-Alone GPS Navigation System** Stand-alone GPS equipment is equipment that is not combined with other navigation sensors or navigation systems such as DME, Loran-C, Inertial. Standalone GPS equipment can, however, include other augmentation features such as altimetry smoothing, clock coasting. (FAA AC 20-138).

#### 5 AIRWORTHINESS APPROVAL

The following airworthiness criterion is applicable to the installation of GPS equipment intended for IFR operation, certified according to CS-23, -25, -27 and -29 or the corresponding FAR or national requirements on any aircraft registered in a member state.

##### 5.1 General

This AMC uses FAA Advisory Circulars AC 20-130A and AC 20-138 as the basis for airworthiness approval of GPS.

For certifications granted prior to the issue of these AC's, the corresponding FAA Notices are recognised as being equivalent. The feasibility of this course of action has already been shown: the two Notices have been used within Europe to approve aircraft installations. This AMC is intended to prevent the proliferation of installations of systems non-compliant with the current Advisory Circulars (based for example on the former FAA interim policy dated July 20th 1992).

For multi-sensor navigation systems using GPS inputs, qualified prior to the publication of FAA TSO-C129, where the intent of the TSO may be demonstrated, authorisation for the use of the equipment for the purposes described in this interim guidance may be granted.

The FAA AC's are to be used as Interpretative Material to show compliance with the applicable CS, on each application e.g. 25.1301 and 25.1309.

In the AC's, where reference is made to FAA rules and approval procedures, national or EASA equivalent material should be substituted as appropriate.

## 5.2 Airworthiness Criteria

The following FAA AC's are to be used as the basis for approval of the GPS equipment installation:

AC 20-130A for multi-sensor navigation systems using GPS inputs

AC 20-138 for stand-alone GPS equipment.

In addition to AC 20-138 stand-alone GPS equipment will need to be approved to FAA TSO-C129.

For all classes of equipment, integrity should be provided either by Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) or an equivalent method, e.g. by comparison within a multi-sensor navigation system with other approved sensors. The following Table summarises the Classes and sub class definitions. The types of equipment are specified in FAA TSO C-129( ). Refer to section 4 of this AMC for the definition of Class A, B or C.

## 5.3 Additional Criteria for all GPS installations

In showing compliance with the FAA AC material when verifying GPS accuracy by flight test evaluations, position information should be referenced in WGS-84 coordinates.

Class	Stand Alone	Multi Sensor	RAIM	RAIM Equiv.	En Route	Terminal	Non- Precision Approach
A1	X		X		X	X	X
A2	X		X		X	X	
B1		X	X		X	X	X
B2		X	X		X	X	
B3		X		X	X	X	X
B4		X		X	X	X	
C1		X	X		X	X	X
C2		X	X		X	X	
C3		X		X	X	X	X
C4		X		X	X	X	

#### 5.4 Additional Criteria for Stand-alone GPS equipment only.

The following points need to be taken into consideration as part of the airworthiness approval:

- (a) For IFR operations, Class A equipment, is required to be approved to either:
  - (i) FAA TSO-C129a or
  - (ii) FAA TSO-C129 and the additional paragraphs (a).(3),(xv).5 and (a).(6) of TSO C- 129a.
- (b) Where other navigation sources, apart from the stand-alone GPS equipment, provide display and/or guidance to a Flight Director/Autopilot, means should be provided for:
  - a navigation source selector as the only means of selection;
  - clear annunciation of the selected navigation source;
  - display guidance information appropriate to the selected and navigation source; and
  - guidance information to a Flight Director/Autopilot appropriate to the selected and navigation source.

Annunciations for Flight Director, Autopilot and navigation source should be consistent, and compatible with the original design philosophy of the cockpit.

- (c) Loss of navigation capability should be indicated to the flight crew.
- (d) If altitude input is used, loss of altitude information should be indicated by the GPS equipment.
- (e) Installation configuration features provided by the GPS equipment which affect airworthiness or operational approval, such as
  - external CDI selection;
  - external CDI calibration;
  - entering of GPS antenna height above ground;
  - serial Input/Output port configuration;
  - reference datum

should not be selectable by the pilot. Instructions on how to configure the GPS equipment for the particular installation should be listed in the appropriate manual.

- (f) Controls, displays, operating characteristics and pilot interface to GPS equipment should be assessed in relation to flight crew workload, particularly in the approach environment.

The FAA checklist concerning the pilot system interface characteristics (ref. DOT/FAA/AAR-95/3) or an equivalent checklist should be applied for GPS approval.

## 6 OPERATIONAL CRITERIA

This AMC describes acceptable operational criteria for oceanic, en-route, terminal and approach operations, subject to the limitations given below. The operational criteria assumes that the corresponding installation/airworthiness approval has been granted.

Operations of GPS equipment should be in accordance with the AFM or AFM supplement. The (Master) Minimum Equipment List (MMEL/MEL) should identify the minimum equipment necessary to satisfy operations using GPS.

Compliance with the guidance material of this AMC, by itself, is not sufficient to meet the airworthiness or operational criteria specified for Precision RNAV (P-RNAV) operations (See A&GM Section 1, Part 3, TGL 10).

The use of GPS for vertical navigation should not be authorised.

### 6.1 Use of GPS for Oceanic, En-route and Terminal areas

The following table summarises the operational conditions for the use of GPS for IFR oceanic, domestic en-route and terminal area operations.

OCEANIC/REMOTE	EN-ROUTE	TERMINAL
Refer to chapter 7 for specific operational criteria.	Traditional IFR approved navigation equipment will need to be available to continue the flight when integrity* is lost. * Integrity may be provided by RAIM or equivalent See Note 1	Traditional IFR approved navigation equipment will need to be available to continue the flight when integrity* is lost. * Integrity may be provided by RAIM or equivalent See Notes 1, 2 and 3

Notes:

- (1) When applying these conditions, they mean
  - a) The ground based aids on the route to be flown or ground based aids for RNAV-Routes are operational, and
  - b) Aircraft equipment, other than GPS, suitable for the route to be flown, is serviceable
- (2) The SID/STAR will need to be selectable from the navigation data base. The coding of the data base will need to support the officially published SID/STAR.  
 Caution: Some navigation data bases may not contain all required flight path parameters to ensure compliance with the published procedure.
- (3) When flying SID/STARs,
  - a) the procedure established by the State of the aerodrome has to be authorised/published by that State for the use of GPS.
  - b) the state of operator/registry (as applicable) has to approve the operator for such operations.

### 6.2 Use of GPS Equipment for Non-precision Approaches

In addition to the paragraph 6.1, GPS-based navigation equipment can be used to fly any part of instrument non-precision approaches provided each of the following conditions are met and checked, as required during pre-flight planning:

- (a) The State of operator/registry (as applicable) has authorised the use of multi-sensor equipment using GPS as one sensor or GPS Class A1 equipment for this purpose;
- (b) the State of the aerodrome has authorised/published an approach for use with GPS;
- (c) the published approach procedure is referenced to WGS-84 co-ordinates;
- (d) the navigation database contains current information on the non-precision approach to be flown (actual AIRAC cycle);
- (e) the approach to be flown is retrievable from the database and defines the location of all navigation aids and all waypoints required for the approach;
- (f) the information stored in the data base is presented to the crew in the order shown on the published non-precision approach plate;
- (g) the navigation data base waypoints showing the non-precision approach cannot be changed by the flight crew;
- (h) the appropriate airborne equipment required for the route to be flown from the destination to any required alternate airport and for an approach at this airport, is installed in the aircraft and is operational. Also, the associated ground-based nav aids are operational.
- (i) The approach is selectable from the navigation data base. The coding of the data base will need to support the officially published approach.

Caution: Some navigation data bases may not contain all required flight path parameters to ensure compliance with the published procedure.

#### 6.2.1 'Overlay' Approaches

An overlay approach is one which allows pilots to use GPS equipment to fly existing non-precision instrument approach procedures. For the purpose of this document, this is restricted to overlay of approaches based on VOR, VOR/DME or VORTAC, NDB, NDB/DME and RNAV.

In addition to paragraphs 6.2 above, compliance with the published procedure will need to be checked against raw data from ground based nav aids, if

- (a) the integrity monitoring function (RAIM or equivalent) is not available or
- (b) for Class A1 equipment approved prior to this AMC the requirements of paragraph 5.4(a) are not satisfied.

The ground-based nav aids and the associated airborne equipment required for the published approach procedure, will need to be operational.

#### 6.2.2 GPS Stand-Alone Approaches

A GPS stand-alone approach refers to a non-precision approach procedure based solely on GPS without reference to conventional ground nav aids.

In addition to paragraphs 6.2 above, each of the following conditions apply:

- (a) the integrity monitoring function (RAIM or equivalent) is available,
- (b) Class A1 equipment complies with the requirements of paragraph 5.4(a) of this AMC;

- (c) the published approach procedure is identified as a GPS approach (e.g.: GPS RWY 27;
- (d) during the pre-flight planning stage for an IFR flight:
  - (i) where a destination alternate is required, a non-GPS based approach procedure is available at the alternate;
  - (ii) where a destination alternate is not required, at least one non-GPS based approach procedure is available at the destination aerodrome;
  - (ii) predictive RAIM or an equivalent prediction tool is used, and the monitoring capability (RAIM or equivalent) is available at the destination aerodrome at the expected time of arrival.
- (e) where a take off and/or en-route alternate is required, at least one non-GPS based approach procedure is available at the alternate(s).
- (f) a missed approach procedure is available based on traditional navigation.

## **7 CRITERIA FOR USE OF GPS IN OCEANIC/REMOTE OPERATIONS**

EASA recognises that this operation is a specific application for the use of GPS

FAA Notice 8110.60, titled „GPS as a Primary Means of Navigation for Oceanic/Remote Operations“ proposes interim guidance for approving the installation of GPS equipment to be used for oceanic/remote operations. The notice contains criteria for the GPS equipment in addition to that required for FAA TSO-C129( ) approval, including capability to automatically detect and exclude a GPS satellite failure by means of a fault detection and exclusion (FDE) algorithm. Guidance is included for the detection of a failure which causes a pseudorange step function and for monitoring the use of GPS navigation data. A prediction program to support operational departure restrictions, is defined.

Where GPS is to be used for oceanic/remote operations as an approved Long Range Navigation System (LRNS), then it should be installed in compliance with FAA Notice 8110.60.

For operations in airspace where an aircraft is required to be equipped with two independent LRNS (i.e. dual control display unit, dual GPS antenna, dual power sources, dual GPS sensors, etc.), such as in North Atlantic Minimum Navigation Performance Specification (MNPS) Airspace, both GPS installations should be approved in accordance with FAA Notice 8110.60.

Compliance with the guidance in this notice does not constitute an operational approval. Operators should apply to their Authority for this approval.

## Appendix A to AMC 20-5

*ED Decision 2003/12/RM*

### **A.1 Description of GPS**

- 1.1 The Navstar Global Positioning System (GPS) of the United States Department of Defence (DOD) is a satellite based radio navigation system. Today, twenty-four satellites are in various orbits approximately 11,000 nautical miles above the surface of the earth. Each satellite broadcasts a timing signal and data message. A portion of the data message gives a GPS receiver the orbital details of each satellite. The receiver measures the time taken for the signal to arrive from the satellites in view and from this information computes a position and velocity.
- 1.2 Three satellites are needed to determine a two dimensional position, and four for a three dimensional position. The elevation and geometry of each satellite relative to the receiver should satisfy certain criteria before the designed system accuracy can be achieved. Accuracy in predictable horizontal positions of 100 meters or better should be available on 95% of time and 300 meters or better on 99.99% of time.
- 1.3 The figures quoted for accuracy are based on the assumption that the position given is referenced to the World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS 84) Datum. This datum relates position on the earth's surface or in space to a mathematically defined ellipsoid that approximates the complex shape of the Earth. The point of origin of the WGS 84 Datum is the Earth's centre of mass. This allows position information to be derived for the world from one reference. ICAO adopted WGS 84 as a world standard, to be in use by 1998.
- 1.4 Currently, position information throughout the world is derived from local or regional datums; for example, European Datum 1950 and Nouvelle Triangulation de France (NTF) 1970. These datums use different ellipsoids that approximate the shape of the Earth over a selected area, but are not valid on a global scale. Conversion between datums is possible, but inherent inaccuracies present in National datums can result in large residual errors.
- 1.5 Consequently, a given position today could be referenced to one of many datums and that position may be significantly displaced from the co-ordinates of the same position when measured against WGS 84. Differences of several hundred meters are not uncommon. With the accuracy provided by today's ground based navigation aids - other than precision approach aids - these discrepancies in position between datums become important when flying a non-precision approach. The introduction of position information provided by satellites for more precise navigation changes this situation, but only when all positions world-wide are based on one datum can the full potential of satellite navigation be realised. Until this stage is reached it is necessary to place some restrictions on the airborne use of the Navstar GPS constellation.

### **A.2 Limitations of the GPS Constellation and Equipment**

- 2.1 Currently, this AMC is consistent with the use of GPS as authorised by the FAA in most areas, but certain differences in the characteristics of different airspace leads to differences in application.
- 2.2 Even with FOC, when flying under IFR, the system will not provide the continuity, availability and integrity needed for a Sole Means Air Navigation System. Continuity and availability can be forecast, but determining the integrity of the signals requires other means.
- 2.3 Most existing ground based navigation aids are flight calibrated and can signal an alarm if erroneous signals are being radiated. For example, VOR signal characteristics are monitored and where the set tolerances are not met the VOR automatically stops transmitting. The GPS constellation is monitored from the ground and it may take some considerable time before

users become aware of a malfunction within the system. Several possibilities for providing signal integrity equivalent to that obtained from conventional navigation aids are under consideration, but it will be some years before these possibilities are realised. At present, two methods exist within airborne equipment to provide the integrity of navigation when using GPS signals: Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) and that given by an integrated navigation system where other sensors are used in addition to GPS.

- 2.4 In airborne equipment incorporating both the GPS sensor and navigation capability, determination of a 3D position requires four satellites with adequate elevation and suitable geometry. An additional satellite is needed to perform the RAIM function. A sixth satellite is required to isolate a faulty satellite and to remove it from the navigation solution (FDE function). Where a GPS receiver uses barometric altitude or clock aiding as an augmentation to RAIM, the number of satellites needed for the receiver to perform the RAIM function may be reduced by one, given appropriate geometry. Not all GPS receivers possess RAIM, but in stand-alone GPS equipment this function is essential for airborne use when flying under IFR.
- 2.5 In airborne equipment where a GPS sensor provides data to an integrated navigation system, e.g. FMS or a multi-sensor navigation system, either the GPS sensor is required to provide RAIM, or the multi-sensor navigation system should possess a level of integrity equivalent to that provided by RAIM. This level of integrity is required when flying under IFR.
- 2.6 The availability of six satellites is less than 100%. Consequently, the RAIM function (including FDE) may be interrupted. However, predictive RAIM may be used to predict such interruptions and higher availability figures may be achieved by multi-sensor systems using certain equivalent integrity techniques.
- 2.7 Without proper airborne integrity monitoring implementations, potential for unannounced failures may exist.
- 2.8 At this time, the only GPS NOTAM system available is provided by US Government services.

### **A.3 The Future**

- 3.1 At present, GPS and GLONASS are the only satellite-based system capable of giving a usable service to aviation. It is anticipated that GLONASS, the Russian Global Navigation Satellite System, will provide the same service as GPS, in the future. Combinations of GPS and GLONASS plus other civil satellites and ground augmentation facilities are possible components for a civil Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS).
- 3.2 This AMC will be extended to the use of GLONASS as soon as applicable.
- 3.3 ICAO has established working groups to develop the principles governing the operation of GNSS. Many technical and institutional issues require resolution before GPS can be used without any restrictions. When GNSS as defined by ICAO becomes available (e.g. GPS augmented by other orbiting satellites, geostationary satellites, ground reference stations and differential techniques, either as individual items or in combination), additional applications will be defined.

## AMC 20-6

### AMC 20-6 Extended Range Operation with Two-Engine Aeroplanes ETOPS Certification and Operation

ED Decision 2010/012/R

#### Chapter I GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

##### SECTION 1: PURPOSE

This AMC states an acceptable means but not the only means for obtaining approval for two-engine aeroplanes intended to be used in extended range operations and for the performance of such operations.

An applicant may elect to use another means of compliance which should be acceptable to the Agency or the competent authority. Compliance with this AMC is not mandatory. Use of the terms *shall* and *must* apply only to an applicant who elects to comply with this AMC in order to obtain airworthiness approval or to demonstrate compliance with the operational criteria.

This AMC is structured in 3 chapters which contain the following information:

- Chapter I of this AMC provides general guidance and definitions related to extended range operations.
- Chapter II of this AMC provides guidance to (S)TC holders seeking ETOPS type design approval of an engine or a particular airplane-engine combination. These airplanes may be used in extended range operations.
- Chapter III of this AMC provides guidance to operators seeking ETOPS operational approval to conduct extended range operations under the requirements of the applicable operational regulations<sup>1</sup>.

The purpose of this revision No. 2 of AMC 20-6 is to develop guidance for obtaining approval for diversion times exceeding 180 minutes.

ETOPS type design approvals and operational approvals obtained before the issue of this revision remain valid. Extension of existing ETOPS type design approvals or operational approvals beyond 180 min should be issued in accordance with this revision.

New ETOPS type design approvals and operational approvals should be issued in accordance with this revision.

##### SECTION 2: RELATED REFERENCES

CS-Definitions: ED Decision No. 2003/011/RM as last amended.

CS-E: ED Decision No. 2003/9/RM, as last amended (CS-E 1040).

CS-25: ED Decision No. 2003/2/RM, as last amended, (CS 25.901, 25.903, 25.1309, 25.1351(d), 25.1419, 25.1535, CS-25 Subpart J).

EU-OPS: Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91, as last amended.

Part-21: Annex to Commission Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003, as last amended.

<sup>1</sup> EU-OPS until operational requirements Part-SPA Subpart-ETOPS are in force.

Part-M: Annex I to Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003, as last amended.

Part-145: Annex II to Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003, as last amended.

### **SECTION 3: ABBREVIATIONS**

**AFM:** Airplane Flight Manual

**ATS:** Air Traffic Services

**CAME:** Continuing Airworthiness Management Exposition

**CAMO:** Continuing Airworthiness Management Organisation approved pursuant to Part-M Subpart-G

**CG:** Centre of Gravity

**IFSD:** In-flight shut-down

**MCT:** Maximum Continuous Thrust

**MMEL:** Master Minimum Equipment List

**MEL:** Minimum Equipment List

**RFFS** Rescue and Fire Fighting Services

**(S)TC:** (Supplemental) Type Certificate

### **SECTION 4: TERMINOLOGY**

a. Approved One-Engine-Inoperative Cruise Speed

(1) The approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed for the intended area of operation must be a speed, within the certificated limits of the aeroplane, selected by the operator and approved by the competent authority.

(2) The operator must use this speed in

- (i) establishing the outer limit of the area of operation and any dispatch limitation,
- (ii) calculation of single-engine fuel requirements under [Appendix 4](#) section 4 of this AMC and,
- (iii) establishing the level off altitude (net performance) data. This level off altitude (net performance) must clear any obstacle en route by margins as specified in the operational requirements.

A speed other than the approved one-engine-inoperative-speed may be used as the basis for compliance with en-route altitude requirements.

The fuel required with that speed or the critical fuel scenario associated with the applicable ETOPS equal-time point, whichever is higher has to be uplifted..

(3) As permitted in [Appendix 4](#) of this AMC, based on evaluation of the actual situation, the pilot-in-command may deviate from the planned one-engine-inoperative cruise speed.

Note: The diversion distance based on the approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed may take into account the variation of the True Air Speed.

b. Dispatch

Dispatch is when the aircraft first moves under its own power for the purpose of taking-off.

c. ETOPS Configuration, Maintenance and Procedures (CMP)

The ETOPS CMP document contains the particular airframe-engine combination configuration minimum requirements, including any special inspection, hardware life limits, Master Minimum Equipment List (MMEL) constraints, operating and maintenance procedures found necessary by the Agency to establish the suitability of an airframe/engine combination for extended range operation.

d. ETOPS significant system

ETOPS Significant System means the aeroplane propulsion system and any other aeroplane systems whose failure could adversely affect the safety of an ETOPS flight, or whose functioning is important to continued safe flight and landing during an aeroplane diversion.

Each ETOPS significant system is either a Group 1 or Group 2 system based on the following criteria:

(1) *ETOPS Group 1 Systems:*

Group 1 Systems are ETOPS significant systems that, related to the number of engines on the aeroplane or the consequences of an engine failure, make the systems' capability important for an ETOPS flight. The following provides additional discriminating definitions of an ETOPS Group 1 Significant System:

- (i) A system for which the fail-safe redundancy characteristics are directly linked to the number of engines (e.g., hydraulic system, pneumatic system, electrical system).
- (ii) A system that may affect the proper functioning of the engines to the extent that it could result in an in-flight shutdown or uncommanded loss of thrust (e.g., fuel system, thrust reverser or engine control or indicating system, engine fire detection system).
- (iii) A system which contributes significantly to the safety of an engine inoperative ETOPS diversion and is intended to provide additional redundancy to accommodate the system(s) lost by the inoperative engine. These include back-up systems such as an emergency generator, APU, etc.
- (iv) A system essential for prolonged operation at engine inoperative altitudes such as anti-icing systems for a two-engine aeroplane if single engine performance results in the aeroplane operating in the icing envelope.

(2) *ETOPS Group 2 Systems:*

Group 2 Systems are ETOPS significant systems that do not relate to the number of engines on the aeroplane, but are important to the safe operation of the aeroplane on an ETOPS flight. The following provides additional discriminating definitions of an ETOPS Group 2 Significant System:

- (i) A system for which certain failure conditions would reduce the capability of the aeroplane or the ability of the crew to cope with an ETOPS diversion (e.g., long range navigation or communication, equipment cooling, or systems important to safe operation on a ETOPS diversion after a decompression such as anti-icing systems).
- (ii) Time-limited systems including cargo fire suppression and oxygen if the ETOPS diversion is oxygen system duration dependent.

- (iii) Systems whose failure would result in excessive crew workload or have operational implications or significant detrimental impact on the flight crew's or passengers' physiological well-being for an ETOPS diversion (e.g., flight control forces that would be exhausting for a maximum ETOPS diversion, or system failures that would require continuous fuel balancing to ensure proper CG, or a cabin environmental control failure that could cause extreme heat or cold to the extent it could incapacitate the crew or cause physical harm to the passengers).
- (iv) A system specifically installed to enhance the safety of ETOPS operations and an ETOPS diversion regardless of the applicability of paragraphs (2)(i), (2)(ii) and (2)(iii) above (e.g. communication means).

e. Extended Range Entry Point

The extended range entry point is the first point on the aeroplane's route which is:

- For two-engine aeroplanes with a maximum approved passenger seating configuration of 20 or more, or with a maximum take-off mass of 45360 kg or more, at 60 minutes flying time at the approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed (under standard conditions in still air) from an adequate aerodrome.
- For two-engine aeroplanes with a maximum approved passenger seating configuration of 19 or less and a maximum take-off mass of less than 45360 kg, at 180 minutes flying time at the approved one-engine-inoperative speed (in still air) from an adequate aerodrome.

f. In-flight Shutdown (IFSD)

In-flight shutdown (IFSD) means when an engine ceases to function and is shutdown, whether self-induced, flight crew initiated or caused by an external influence. For ETOPS, all IFSDs occurring from take-off decision speed until touch-down shall be counted.

The Agency considers IFSD for all causes, for example: flameout, internal failure, flight crew initiated shutdown, foreign object ingestion, icing, inability to obtain or control desired thrust or power, and cycling of the start control, however briefly, even if the engine operates normally for the remainder of the flight.

This definition excludes the cessation of the functioning of an engine when immediately followed by an automatic engine relight and when an engine does not achieve desired thrust or power but is not shutdown. These events as well as engine failures occurring before take-off decision speed or after touch-down, although not counted as IFSD, shall be reported to the competent authority in the frame of continued airworthiness for ETOPS.

g. Maximum Approved Diversion Time

A maximum approved diversion time(s) for the airframe/engine combination or the engine, established in accordance with the type design criteria in this AMC and Appendices 1 and 2 of this AMC. This Maximum Approved Diversion Time(s) is reflected in the aeroplane and engine Type Certificate Data Sheets or (S)TC and in the AFM or AFM-supplement.

Any proposed increase in the Maximum Approved Diversion Time(s), or changes to the aircraft or engine, should be re-assessed by the (S)TC holder in accordance with Part 21.A.101 to establish if any of the Type Design criteria in this AMC should be applied.

h. Operator's Approved Diversion Time

Operator's Approved Diversion Time is the maximum time authorised by the Competent Authority that the operator can operate a type of aeroplane at the approved one-engine-

inoperative cruise speed (under standard conditions in still air) from an adequate aerodrome for the area of operation.

i. System:

A system includes all elements of equipment necessary for the control and performance of a particular function. It includes both the equipment specifically provided for the function in question and other basic equipment such as that necessary to supply power for the equipment operation.

- (1) Airframe System. Any system on the aeroplane that is not part of the propulsion system.
- (2) Propulsion System. The aeroplane propulsion system includes the engine and each component that is necessary for propulsion; components that affect the control of the propulsion units; and components that affect the safe operation of the propulsion units.

## SECTION 5: CONCEPTS

Although it is self-evident that the overall safety of an extended range operation cannot be better than that provided by the reliability of the propulsion systems, some of the factors related to extended range operation are not necessarily obvious.

For example, cargo compartment fire suppression/containment capability could be a significant factor, or operational/maintenance practices may invalidate certain determinations made during the aeroplane type design certification or the probability of system failures could be a more significant problem than the probability of propulsion system failures. Although propulsion system reliability is a critical factor, it is not the only factor which should be seriously considered in evaluating extended range operation. Any decision relating to extended range operation with two-engine aeroplanes should also consider the probability of occurrence of any conditions which would reduce the capability of the aeroplane or the ability of the crew to cope with adverse operating conditions.

The following is provided to define the concepts for evaluating extended range operation with two-engine aeroplanes. This approach ensures that two-engine aeroplanes are consistent with the level of safety required for current extended range operation with three and four-engine turbine powered aeroplanes without unnecessarily restricting operation.

a. Airframe Systems

A number of airframe systems have an effect on the safety of extended range operation; therefore, the type design certification of the aeroplane should be reviewed to ensure that the design of these systems is acceptable for the safe conduct of the intended operation.

b. Propulsion Systems

In order to maintain a level of safety consistent with the overall safety level achieved by modern aeroplanes, it is necessary for two-engine aeroplanes used in extended range operation to have an acceptably low risk of significant loss of power/thrust for all design and operation related causes (see [Appendix 1](#)).

c. Maintenance and Reliability Programme Definition

Since the quality of maintenance and reliability programmes can have an appreciable effect on the reliability of the propulsion system and the airframe systems required for extended range operation, an assessment should be made of the proposed maintenance and reliability

programme's ability to maintain a satisfactory level of propulsion and airframe system reliability for the particular airframe/engine combination.

d. **Maintenance and Reliability Programme Implementation**

Following a determination that the airframe systems and propulsion systems are designed to be suitable for extended range operation, an in-depth review of the applicant's training programmes, operations and maintenance and reliability programmes should be accomplished to show ability to achieve and maintain an acceptable level of systems reliability to safely conduct these operations.

e. **Human Factors**

System failures or malfunctions occurring during extended range operation could affect flight crew workload and procedures. Since the demands on the flight crew may increase, an assessment should be made to ensure that more than average piloting skills or crew coordination is not required.

## **Chapter II TYPE DESIGN APPROVAL CONSIDERATIONS**

### **SECTION 1: APPLICABILITY**

This chapter is applicable to (S)TC applicants or holders seeking ETOPS type design approval for an engine or a particular airplane-engine combination.

### **SECTION 2: COMPETENT AUTHORITY**

The Competent Authority for the issue of an ETOPS type design approval is the Agency.

### **SECTION 3: GENERAL**

When a two-engine aeroplane is intended to be used in extended range operations, a determination should be made that the design features are suitable for the intended operation. The ETOPS significant system for the particular airframe/engine combination should be shown to be designed to fail-safe criteria and it should be determined that it can achieve a level of reliability suitable for the intended operation. In some cases modifications to systems may be necessary to achieve the desired reliability.

### **SECTION 4: ELIGIBILITY**

To be eligible for extended range operations (ETOPS), the specified airframe/engine combination, should have been certificated according to the airworthiness standards of large aeroplanes and engines.

The process to obtain a type design ETOPS approval requires the applicant to show that in accordance with the criteria established in this chapter II and Appendices 1 and 2:

- the design features of the particular airframe/engine combination are suitable for the intended operations; and,
- the particular airframe/engine combination, having been recognised eligible for ETOPS, can achieve a sufficiently high level of reliability.

The required level of reliability of the airframe/engine combination can be validated by the following methods:

- (1) METHOD 1: in-service experience for ETOPS Type Design Approval defined in section 6.1 and Appendices 1 and 2 of this AMC, or
- (2) METHOD 2: a programme of design, test and analysis agreed between the applicant and the Agency, (i.e. Approval Plan) for Early ETOPS Type Design Approval defined in Appendices 1 and 2 of this AMC.

#### **SECTION 5: REQUEST FOR APPROVAL**

An applicant for, and holders of a (S)TC requesting a determination that a particular airframe/engine combination is a suitable type design for extended range operation, should apply to the Agency. The Agency will then initiate an assessment of the engine and airframe/engine combination in accordance with the criteria laid down in this chapter II and [Appendix 1](#) & [2](#) of this AMC.

#### **SECTION 6: VALIDATION METHODS OF THE LEVEL OF RELIABILITY**

This chapter together with [Appendix 1](#) and [2](#) to this AMC should be followed to assess the reliability level of the propulsion system and airframe systems for which ETOPS type design approval is sought. [Appendix 1](#) and [2](#) describe both the in-service experience method and the early ETOPS method.

##### **6.1 METHOD 1: IN-SERVICE EXPERIENCE FOR ETOPS TYPE DESIGN APPROVAL**

Prior to the ETOPS type design approval, it should be shown that the world fleet of the particular airframe/engine combination for which approval is sought can achieve or has achieved, as determined by the Agency (see [Appendix 1](#) and [2](#)), an acceptable and reasonably stable level of propulsion system in-flight shutdown (IFSD) rate and airframe system reliability.

Engineering and operational judgement applied in accordance with the guidance outlined in [Appendix 1](#) will then be used to determine that the IFSD rate objective for all independent causes can be or has been achieved. This assessment is an integral part of the determination in section 7 paragraph (2) for type design approval. This determination of propulsion system reliability is derived from a world fleet data base containing, in accordance with requirements of [Appendix 1](#), all in-flight shutdown events, all significant engine reliability problems, design and test data and available data on cases of significant loss of thrust, including those where the propulsion system failed or the engine was throttled back or shut down by the pilot. This determination will take due account of the approved maximum diversion time, proposed rectification of all identified propulsion and ETOPS significant systems problems, as well as events where in-flight starting capability may be degraded.

##### **6.2 METHOD 2: EARLY ETOPS**

ETOPS approval is considered feasible at the introduction to service of an airframe/engine combination as long as the Agency is totally satisfied that all aspects of the approval plan have been completed. The Agency must be satisfied that the approval plan achieves the level of safety intended in this AMC and in the aeroplane and engine certification bases. Any non-compliance with the approval plan can result in a lesser approval than sought for.

(S)TC holders will be required to respond to any incident or occurrence in the most expeditious manner. A serious single event or series of related events could result in immediate revocation of ETOPS type design approval. Any isolated problem not justifying immediate withdrawal of approval, should be addressed within 30 days in a resolution plan approved by the Agency. (S)TC holders will be reliant on operators to supply incident and occurrence data.

**SECTION 7: EVALUATION CRITERIA of the ETOPS type design**

The applicant should conduct an evaluation of failures and failure combinations based on engineering and operational consideration as well as acceptable fail-safe methodology. The evaluation should consider effects of operations with a single engine, including allowance for additional stress that could result from failure of the first propulsion system. Unless it can be shown that equivalent safety levels are provided or the effects of failure are minor, failure and reliability analysis should be used as guidance in verifying that the proper level of fail-safe design has been provided. Excluding failures of the engine, any system or equipment failure condition, or combination of failures that affects the aeroplane or engine and that would result in a need for a diversion, should be considered a Major event (CS 25.1309) and therefore the probability of such should be compatible with that safety objective. The following criteria are applicable to the extended range operation of aeroplanes with two engines:

- (1) Airframe systems should be shown to comply with CS 25.1309 in accordance with section 7 and 8 of chapter II and [Appendix 2](#) to this AMC.
- (2) The propulsion systems should be shown to comply with CS 25.901.
  - (i) Engineering and operational judgement applied in accordance with the guidance outlined in section 6 and [Appendix 1](#) should be used to show that the propulsion system can achieve the desired level of reliability.
  - (ii) Contained engine failure, cascading failures, consequential damage or failure of remaining systems or equipment should be assessed in accordance with CS 25.901.
  - (iii) It should be shown during the type design evaluation that the approved engine limits at all approved power settings will not be exceeded when conducting an extended duration single-engine operation during the diversion in all expected environmental conditions. The assessment should account for the effects of additional engine loading demands (e.g., anti-icing, electrical, etc.) which may be required during the single-engine flight phase associated with the diversion
- (3) The safety impact of an uncontained engine failure should be assessed in accordance with CS 25.903.
- (4) The APU installation, if required for extended range operations, should meet the applicable CS-25 provisions (Subpart J, APU) and any additional requirements necessary to demonstrate its ability to perform the intended function as specified by the Agency following a review of the applicant's data. If certain extended range operation may necessitate in-flight start and run of the APU, it must be substantiated that the APU has adequate capability and reliability for that operation.

The APU should demonstrate the required in-flight start reliability throughout the flight envelope (compatible with overall safety objective but not less than 95%) taking account of all approved fuel types and temperatures. An acceptable procedure for starting and running the APU (e.g. descent to allow start) may be defined in order to demonstrate compliance to the required in-flight start reliability. If this reliability cannot be demonstrated, it may be necessary to require continuous operation of the APU.

- (5) Extended duration, single-engine operations should not require exceptional piloting skills and/or crew co-ordination. Considering the degradation of the performance of the aeroplane

type with an engine inoperative, the increased flight crew workload, and the malfunction of remaining systems and equipment, the impact on flight crew procedures should be minimised.

Consideration should also be given to the effects on the crew's and passengers' physiological needs (e.g., cabin temperature control), when continuing the flight with an inoperative engine or one or more inoperative airframe system(s).

The provision of essential services to ensure the continued safety of the aeroplane and safety of the passengers and crew, particularly during very long diversion times with depleted/degraded systems, should be assessed. The applicant should provide a list of aircraft system functions considered as necessary to perform a safe ETOPS flight. The applicants should consider the following examples:

- (i) Flight deck and cabin environmental systems integrity and reliability
  - (ii) The avionics/cooling and consequent integrity of the avionic systems
  - (iii) Cargo hold fire suppression capacity and integrity of any smoke/fire alerting system
  - (iv) Brake accumulator or emergency braking system capacity/integrity
  - (v) Adequate capacity of all time dependent functions
  - (vi) Pressurisation System integrity/reliability
  - (vii) Oxygen System integrity/reliability/capacity, if the Maximum Approved Diversion Time is based on the oxygen system capability
  - (viii) Integrity/reliability/capacity of back-up systems (e.g. electrical, hydraulic)
  - (ix) Fuel system integrity and fuel accessibility. Fuel consumption with engine failure and/or other system failures (see paragraph (11))
  - (x) Fuel quantity and fuel used, indications and alerts (see paragraph (10)).
- (6) It should be demonstrated for extended duration single-engine operation, that the remaining power (electrical, hydraulic, pneumatic) will continue to be available at levels necessary to permit continued safe flight and landing, and to provide those services necessary for the overall safety of the passengers and crew.

Unless it can be shown that cabin pressure can be maintained on single-engine operation at the altitude necessary for continued flight to an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome, oxygen should be available to sustain the passengers and crew for the maximum diversion time.

- (7) In the event of any single failure, or any combination of failures not shown to be Extremely Improbable, it should be shown that electrical power is provided for essential flight instruments, warning systems, avionics, communications, navigation, required route or destination guidance equipment, supportive systems and/or hardware and any other equipment deemed necessary for extended range operation to continue safe flight and landing at an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome. Information provided to the flight crew should be of sufficient accuracy for the intended operation.

Functions to be provided may differ between aeroplanes and should be agreed with the Agency. These should normally include:

- (i) attitude information;
- (ii) adequate radio communication (including the route specific long range communication equipment as required by the applicable operational regulations) and intercommunication capability;

- (iii) adequate navigation capability (including route specific long range navigation equipment as required by the applicable operational regulations and weather radar);
- (iv) adequate cockpit and instrument lighting, emergency lighting and landing lights;
- (v) sufficient captain and first officer instruments, provided cross-reading has been evaluated;
- (vi) heading, airspeed and altitude including appropriate pitot/static heating;
- (vii) adequate flight controls including auto-pilot;
- (viii) adequate engine controls, and restart capability with critical type fuel (from the stand-point of flame out and restart capability) and with the aeroplane initially at the maximum relight altitude;
- (ix) adequate fuel supply system capability including such fuel boost and fuel transfer functions that may be necessary;
- (x) adequate engine instrumentation;
- (xi) such warning, cautions, and indications as are required for continued safe flight and landing;
- (xii) fire protection (cargo, APU and engines);
- (xiii) adequate ice protection including windshield de-icing;
- (xiv) adequate control of cockpit and cabin environment including heating and pressurisation; and,
- (xv) ATC Transponder.

Note: For 90 minutes or less ETOPS operations, the functions to be provided must satisfy the requirements of CS 25.1351(d)(2) as interpreted by AMC 25.1351(d)(4) and (5).

- (8) Three or more reliable and independent electrical power sources should be available. As a minimum, following failure of any two sources, the remaining source should be capable of powering the items specified in paragraph (7). If one or more of the required electrical power sources are provided by an APU, hydraulic system, or ram air turbine, the following criteria apply as appropriate:
- (i) The APU, when installed, should meet the criteria in paragraph (4).
  - (ii) The hydraulic power source should be reliable. To achieve this reliability, it may be necessary to provide two or more independent energy sources (e.g., bleed air from two or more pneumatic sources).
  - (iii) The Ram Air Turbine (RAT) should be demonstrated to be sufficiently reliable in deployment and use. The RAT should not require engine dependent power for deployment.

If one of the required electrical power sources is provided by batteries, the following criteria apply:

- (iv) When one of the 3 independent electrical power sources is time-limited (e.g. batteries), such power source should have a capability to enable the items required in paragraph (7) to be powered for continued flight and landing to an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome and it will be considered as a time-limited system in accordance with paragraph (12).

- (9) For ETOPS approvals above 180 minutes, in addition to the criteria for electrical power sources specified in paragraph (8) above, the following criteria should also be applied:
- (i) Unless it can be shown that the failure of all 3 independent power sources required by paragraph (8) above is extremely improbable, following failure of these 3 independent power sources, a fourth independent power source should be available that is capable of providing power to the essential functions referred to in paragraph (7) for continued safe flight and landing to an adequate ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome
  - (ii) If the additional power source is provided by an APU, it should meet the criteria in paragraph (4).
  - (iii) If the additional power source is provided by a hydraulic system or ram air turbine, the provisions of paragraph (8) apply.
- (10) It should be shown that adequate status monitoring information and procedures on all ETOPS significant systems are available for the flight crew to make pre-flight, in-flight go/no-go and diversion decisions.

Adequate fuel quantity information should be available to the flight crew, including alerts, and advisories, that consider the fuel required to complete the flight, abnormal fuel management or transfer between tanks, and possible fuel leaks in the tanks, the fuel lines and other fuel system components and the engines.

- (11) Fuel system
- (i) The aeroplane fuel system should provide fuel pressure and flow to the engine(s) in accordance with CS 25.951 and 25.955 for any fuel pump power supply failure condition not shown to be extremely improbable.
  - (ii) The fuel necessary to complete the ETOPS mission or during a diversion should be available to the operating engine(s) under any failure condition, other than fuel boost pump failures, not shown to be extremely improbable<sup>1</sup> (e.g. crossfeed valve failures, automatic fuel management system failures).

(12) Time-limited system

In addition to the Maximum Approved Diversion Time, diversion time may also be limited by the capacity of the cargo hold fire suppression system or other ETOPS significant time-limited systems determined by considering other relevant failures, such as an engine inoperative, and combinations of failures not shown to be extremely improbable.

Time-limited system capability, if any, must be defined and stated in the Aeroplane Flight Manual or AFM-supplement and CMP document.

(13) Operation in icing conditions

Airframe and propulsion ice protection should be shown to provide adequate capability (aeroplane controllability, etc.) for the intended operation. This should account for prolonged exposure to lower altitudes associated with the single engine diversion, cruise, holding, approach and landing.

- (i) The aeroplane should be certified for operation in icing conditions in accordance with CS 25.1419.

---

<sup>1</sup> Extremely improbable is defined in CS25.1309 and AMC to CS 25.1309.

- (ii) The aeroplane should be capable of continued safe flight and landing in icing conditions at depressurisation altitudes or engine inoperative altitudes.

The extent of ice accumulation on unprotected surfaces should consider the maximum super cooled liquid water catch at one-engine inoperative and depressurisation cruise altitudes. Substantiated icing scenario(s) should be assumed to occur during the period of time when icing conditions are forecast. The icing episode(s) assumed should be agreed with the Agency. The probability of icing longer than that assumed, and agreed for the icing episode(s), in combination with the probability of the aeroplane having to operate in icing conditions (e.g. engine in-flight shut down or decompression) should be shown to be extremely improbable.

- (14) Solutions to achieve required reliability

The permanent solution to a problem should be, as far as possible, a hardware/design solution. However, if scheduled maintenance, replacement, and/or inspection are utilised to obtain type design approval for extended range operation, and therefore are required in the CMP standard document, the specific maintenance information should be easily retrievable and clearly referenced and identified in an appropriate maintenance document.

- (15) Engine Condition Monitoring.

Procedures for an engine condition monitoring process should be defined and validated for ETOPS. The engine condition monitoring process should be able to determine, if an engine is no longer capable of providing, within certified engine operating limits, the maximum thrust required for a single engine diversion. The effects of additional engine loading demands (e.g., anti-ice, electrical), which may be required during an engine inoperative diversion, should be accounted for.

## SECTION 8: ANALYSIS OF FAILURE EFFECTS AND RELIABILITY

### 8.1 General

The analysis and demonstrations of airframe and propulsion system level of reliability and failure effects required by section 6 and section 7 should be based on the expected longest diversion time for extended range routes likely to be flown with the aeroplane. However, in certain failure scenarios, it may be necessary to consider a shorter diversion time due to the time-limited systems.

### 8.2 Propulsion systems

- (i) An assessment of the propulsion system's reliability for particular airframe/engine combinations should be made in accordance with section 6 and [Appendix 1](#).
- (ii) The analysis should consider:
- (A) Effects of operation with a single-propulsion system (i.e., high-power demands including extended use of MCT and bleed requirements, etc.) and include possible damage that could result from failure of the first propulsion system.
  - (B) Effects of the availability and management of fuel for propulsion system operation (i.e., cross-feed valve failures, fuel mismanagement, ability to detect and isolate leaks, etc.).
  - (C) Effects of other failures, external conditions, maintenance and crew errors, that could jeopardise the operation of the remaining propulsion system, should be examined.

- (D) Effect of inadvertent thrust reverser deployment, if not shown to be extremely improbable (includes design and maintenance).

### 8.3 Airframe systems

An assessment of the airframe system's reliability for particular airframe/engine combinations should be made in accordance with section 7 and [Appendix 2](#).

The analysis should consider:

(i) Hydraulic Power and Flight Control

An analysis should be carried out taking into account the criteria detailed in paragraph section 7 paragraph (6).

Consideration of these systems may be combined, since many commercial aeroplanes have full hydraulically powered controls. For aeroplanes with all flight controls being hydraulically powered, evaluation of hydraulic system redundancy should show that single failures or failure combinations, not shown to be extremely improbable, do not preclude continued safe flight and landing at an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome. As part of this evaluation, the loss of any parts of the hydraulic systems and any engine should be assumed to occur unless it is established during failure evaluation that there are no sources of damage or the location of the damage sources are such that this failure condition will not occur.

Note: For 75 minutes or less ETOPS approval, additional analysis to show compliance with section 7 will not be required for airframe systems, where for basic (non-ETOPS) Type Design Approval compliance with CS 25.1309, or its equivalent, has already been shown.

(ii) Services Provided by Electrical Power

An analysis should show that the criteria detailed in section 7 paragraphs (6), (7) and (8) are satisfied taking into account the exposure times established in paragraph (1).

Note1: For 75 minutes or less ETOPS approval, additional analysis to show compliance with section 7 will not be required for airframe systems, where for basic (non-ETOPS) Type Design Approval (TDA), compliance with CS 25.1309, or its equivalent, has already been shown.

Note 2: For ETOPS approval above 180 minutes, the analysis should also show that the criteria detailed in section 7 paragraph (9) are satisfied.

(iii) Equipment Cooling

An analysis should establish that the equipment (including avionics) necessary for extended range operation has the ability to operate acceptably following failure modes in the cooling system not shown to be extremely improbable. Adequate indication of the proper functioning of the cooling system should be demonstrated to ensure system operation prior to dispatch and during flight.

Note: For 75 minutes or less ETOPS approval, additional analysis to show compliance with paragraph section 7 will not be required for airframe systems, where for basic (non-ETOPS) Type Design Approval (TDA), compliance with CS 25.1309, or its equivalent, has already been shown.

(iv) Cargo Compartment

It should be shown that the cargo compartment design and fire protection system capability (where applicable) is consistent with the following:

(A) Design

The cargo compartment fire protection system integrity and reliability should be suitable for the intended operation considering fire detection sensors, liner materials, etc.

(B) Fire Protection

The capacity/endurance of the cargo compartment fire suppression system should be established.

(v) Cabin Pressurisation

Authority/Agency approved aeroplane performance data should be available to verify the ability to continue safe flight and landing after loss of pressure and subsequent operation at a lower altitude (see also section 7 paragraph (6)).

(vi) Cockpit and Cabin Environment

The analysis should show that an adequate cockpit and cabin environment is preserved following all combinations of propulsion and electrical system failures which are not shown to be extremely improbable, e.g. when the aeroplane is operating on standby electrical power only.

Note: For 75 minutes or less ETOPS approval, additional analysis to show compliance with section 7 will not be required for airframe systems, where for basic (non-ETOPS) Type Design Approval (TDA), compliance with CS 25.1309, or its equivalent, has already been shown.

## SECTION 9: ASSESSMENT OF FAILURE CONDITIONS

In assessing the fail-safe features and effects of failure conditions, account should be taken of:

- (1) The variations in the performance of the system, the probability of the failure(s), the complexity of the crew action.
- (2) Factors alleviating or aggravating the direct effects of the initial failure condition, including consequential or related conditions existing within the aeroplane which may affect the ability of the crew to deal with direct effects, such as the presence of smoke, aeroplane accelerations, interruption of air-to-ground communication, cabin pressurisation problems, etc.
- (3) A flight test should be conducted by the (S)TC holders and witnessed by the Agency to validate expected aeroplane flying qualities and performance considering propulsion system failure, electrical power losses, etc. The adequacy of remaining aeroplane systems and performance and flight crew ability to deal with the emergency, considering remaining flight deck information, will be assessed in all phases of flight and anticipated operating conditions. Depending on the scope, content, and review by the Agency of the (S)TC holders data base, this flight test could also be used as a means for approving the basic aerodynamic and engine performance data used to establish the aeroplane performance identified in chapter III.
- (4) Safety assessments should consider the flight consequences of single or multiple system failures leading to a diversion, and the probability and consequences of subsequent failures or exhaustion of the capacity of time-limited systems that might occur during the diversion.

Safety assessments should determine:

- (i) The effect of the initial failure condition on the capability of the aeroplane to cope with adverse conditions at the diversion airport, and

- (ii) The means available to the crew to assess the extent and evolution of the situation during a prolonged diversion.

The aeroplane flight manual and the flight crew warning and alerting and displays systems should provide clear information to enable the flight crew to determine when failure conditions are such that a diversion is necessary.

The assessment of the reliability of propulsion and airframe systems for a particular airframe/engine combination will be contained in the Agency approved Aeroplane Assessment Report. In the case the Agency is validating the approval issued by a third country certification authority, the report may incorporate the assessment report established by the latter.

Following approval of the report, the propulsion and airframe system recommendations will be included in an Agency-approved CMP document that establishes the CMP standard requirements for the candidate engine or airframe/engine combination. This document will then be referenced in the Operation Specification and the Aircraft Flight Manual or AFM-Supplement.

#### SECTION 10: ISSUE OF THE ETOPS TYPE DESIGN APPROVAL

Upon satisfactory completion of the aeroplane evaluation through an engineering inspection and test programme consistent with the type certification procedures of the Agency and sufficient in-service experience data (see [Appendix 1](#) & [2](#)):

- (1) The type design approval, the Maximum Approved Diversion Time and demonstrated capability of any time-limited systems will be reflected in the approved AFM or AFM-Supplement, and the aeroplane and engine Type Certification Data Sheet or Supplemental Type Certificate which contain directly or by reference the following pertinent information, as applicable:
- (i) special limitations (if necessary), including any limitations associated with a maximum diversion time established in accordance with section 8 paragraph (1) and time-limited systems (for example, the endurance of cargo hold fire suppression systems);
  - (ii) additional markings or placards (if required);
  - (iii) revision to the performance section of the AFM to include the data required by [Appendix 4](#) paragraph 10;
  - (iv) the airborne equipment, installation, and flight crew procedures required for extended range operations;
  - (v) description or reference to the CMP document containing the approved aeroplane standards for extended range operations;
  - (vi) a statement to the effect that:  
  
“The Type design, systems reliability and performance of the considered airplane/engine models combinations have been evaluated by the Agency in accordance with CS-25, CS-E and AMC 20-6 and found suitable for ETOPS operations when configured, maintained and operated in accordance with this document. This finding does not constitute an approval to conduct ETOPS operations.”
- (2) The Engine ETOPS Type Design approval and Maximum Approved Diversion Time will be reflected in the engine Type Certification Data Sheet or Supplemental Type Certificate which contain directly or by referencing the following pertinent information, as applicable:
- (i) special limitations (if necessary), including any limitations associated with the Maximum Approved Diversion Time should be established;

- (ii) additional markings or placards (if required);
- (iii) description or reference to a document containing the approved engine configuration.

**SECTION 11: CONTINUED AIRWORTHINESS OF THE ETOPS TYPE DESIGN APPROVAL**

- (1) The Agency will include the consideration of extended range operation in its normal surveillance and design change approval functions.
- (2) The (S)TC holders whose approval includes a type design ETOPS approval, as well as the Agency should periodically and individually review the in-service reliability of the airframe/engine combination and of the engine. Further to these reviews and each time that an urgent problem makes it necessary, in order to achieve and maintain the desired level of reliability and therefore the safety of ETOPS, the Agency may:
  - require that the type design standard be revised, for example by the issuance of an Airworthiness Directive, or,
  - issue an Emergency Conformity Information<sup>1</sup>.
- (3) The Reliability Tracking Board will periodically check that the airframe/propulsion system reliability requirements for extended range operation are achieved or maintained. For mature ETOPS products the RTB may be replaced by the process to monitor their reliability as defined in [Appendix 1](#), section 6.b and [Appendix 2](#), section 5.c.  
Note: Periodically means in this context two years.
- (4) Any significant problems which adversely affect extended range operation will be corrected. Modifications or maintenance actions to achieve or maintain the reliability objective of extended range operations for the airframe/engine combination will be incorporated into the CMP document. The Agency will co-ordinate this action with the affected (S)TC holder.
- (5) The CMP document which establishes the suitability of an engine or airframe/engine combination for extended range operation defines the minimum standards for the operation.

**Chapter III OPERATIONAL APPROVAL CONSIDERATIONS****SECTION 1: APPLICABILITY**

This acceptable means of compliance is for operators seeking an ETOPS operational approval to operate:

- (1) Two-engine aeroplanes with a maximum passenger seating configuration of 20 or more, or with a maximum take-off mass of 45 360 kg or more, in excess of 60 minutes at the approved one-engine-inoperative speed (under standard conditions in still air) from an adequate aerodrome;
- (2) or Two-engine aeroplanes with a maximum passenger seating configuration of 19 or less and a maximum take-off mass of less than 45 360 kg, in excess of 180 minutes at the approved one-engine-inoperative speed (in still air) from an adequate aerodrome.

**SECTION 2: COMPETENT AUTHORITY**

The Competent Authority for the issue of an ETOPS operational approval to an operator is the authority that has issued its Air Operator Certificate.

---

<sup>1</sup> See EASA Airworthiness Directive Policy reference C.Y001-01 (28.07.08).

Nevertheless, as the operational approval requires the operator to comply with the continuing airworthiness requirements of Annex 8 of this AMC, the operator has to ensure that the specific ETOPS elements related to continuing airworthiness are approved by the Competent Authority designated in Annex I (Part-M) to Regulation (EC) 2042/2003.

### **SECTION 3: APPLICABLE OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

This chapter details the approval process required for ETOPS in accordance with the operational requirements<sup>1</sup>.

### **SECTION 4: METHODS for obtaining ETOPS Operations APPROVAL**

There are two methods for obtaining an ETOPS approval, depending on the availability and amount of prior experience with the candidate airframe/engine combination:

- “Accelerated ETOPS approval”, does not require prior in-service experience with the candidate airframe/engine combination;
- “In-service ETOPS Approval”, based on a pre-requisite amount of prior in-service experience with the candidate airframe/engine combination. Elements from the “accelerated ETOPS approval” method may be used to reduce the amount of prior in-service experience.

### **SECTION 5: ACCELERATED ETOPS APPROVAL**

The criteria defined in this section permit approval of ETOPS operations up to 180 minutes, when the operator has established that those processes necessary for successful ETOPS are in place and are proven to be reliable. The basis of the accelerated approval is that the operator will meet equivalent levels of safety and satisfy the objectives of this AMC.

The Accelerated ETOPS approval process includes the following phases:

- Application phase
- Validation of the operator’s ETOPS processes
- Validation of Operator ETOPS Continuing Airworthiness and Operations Capability
- Issue of ETOPS Operations Approval by the competent authority

#### **5.1 Application phase**

The operator should submit an Accelerated ETOPS Operations Approval Plan to the Authority six (6) months before the proposed start of ETOPS. This time will permit the competent authority to review the documented plans and ensure adequate ETOPS processes are in place.

##### **(A) Accelerated ETOPS Operations approval plan:**

The Accelerated ETOPS Operations approval plan should define:

1. the proposed routes and the ETOPS diversion time necessary to support those routes;
2. The proposed one-engine-inoperative cruise speed, which may be area specific depending upon anticipated aeroplane loading and likely fuel penalties associated with the planned procedures;

---

<sup>1</sup> EU-OPS until operational requirements Part-SPA Subpart-ETOPS are in force.

3. How to comply with the ETOPS Processes listed in paragraph (B);
4. The resources allocated to each ETOPS process to initiate and sustain ETOPS operations in a manner that demonstrates commitment by management and all personnel involved in ETOPS continuing airworthiness and operational support;
5. How to establish compliance with the build standard required for Type Design Approval, e.g. CMP document compliance;
6. Review Gates: A review gate is a milestone of the tracking plan to allow for the orderly tracking and documentation of specific provisions of this section. Normally, the review gate process will start six months before the proposed start of ETOPS and should continue until at least six months after the start of ETOPS. The review gate process will help ensure that the proven processes comply with the provisions of this AMC and are capable of continued ETOPS operations.

(B) Operator ETOPS process elements

The operator seeking Accelerated ETOPS Operations Approval should also demonstrate to the competent authority that it has established an ETOPS process that includes the following ETOPS elements:

1. Airframe/engine combination and engine compliance to ETOPS Type Design Build Standard (CMP);
2. Compliance with the continuing airworthiness requirements as defined in [Appendix 8](#), which should include:
  - a. A Maintenance Programme;
  - b. a proven ETOPS Reliability Programme;
  - c. A proven Oil Consumption Monitoring Programme;
  - d. A proven Engine Condition Monitoring and Reporting system;
  - e. A propulsion system monitoring programme;
  - f. An ETOPS parts control programme;
  - g. A proven plan for resolution of aeroplane discrepancies.
3. ETOPS operations manual supplement or its equivalent in the Operations Manual;
4. The operator should establish a programme that results in a high degree of confidence that the propulsion system reliability appropriate to the ETOPS diversion time would be maintained;
5. Initial and recurrent training and qualification programmes in place for ETOPS related personnel, including flight crew and all other operations personnel;
6. Compliance with the Flight Operations Programme as defined in this AMC;
7. Proven flight planning and dispatch programmes appropriate to ETOPS;
8. Procedures to ensure the availability of meteorological information and MEL appropriate to ETOPS; and
9. Flight crew and dispatch personnel familiar with the ETOPS routes to be flown; in particular the requirements for, and selection of ETOPS en-route alternate aerodromes.

(C) Process elements Documentation:

Documentation should be provided for the following elements:

1. Technology new to the operator and significant differences in ETOPS significant systems (engines, electrical, hydraulic and pneumatic), compared to the aeroplanes currently operated and the aeroplane for which the operator is seeking Accelerated ETOPS Operations Approval;
2. The plan to train the flight and continuing airworthiness personnel to the different ETOPS process elements;
3. The plan to use proven or manufacturer validated Training and Maintenance and Operations Manual procedures relevant to ETOPS for the aeroplane for which the operator is seeking Accelerated ETOPS Operations Approval;
4. Changes to any previously proven or manufacturer validated Training, Maintenance or Operations Manual procedures described above. Depending on the nature of any changes, the operator may be required to provide a plan for validating such changes;
5. The validation plan for any additional operator unique training and procedures relevant to ETOPS, if any;
6. Details of any ETOPS support programme from the airframe/engine combination or engine (S)TC holder, other operators or any third country authority or other competent authority; and
7. The control procedures when a contracted maintenance organisation or flight dispatch organisation is used.

5.2 Validation of the Operator's ETOPS Processes

This section identifies process elements that need to be validated and approved prior to the start of Accelerated ETOPS. For a process to be considered proven, the process should first be described, including a flow chart of process elements. The roles and responsibilities of the personnel managing the process should be defined including any training requirement. The operator should demonstrate that the process is in place and functions as intended. This may be accomplished by providing data, documentation and analysis results and/or by demonstrating in practise that the process works and consistently provides the intended results. The operator should also demonstrate that a feedback loop exists to facilitate the surveillance of the process, based on in-service experience.

If any operator is currently approved for conducting ETOPS with a different engine and/or airframe/engine combination, it may be able to document proven ETOPS processes. In this case only minimal further validation may be necessary. It will be necessary to demonstrate that processes are in place to assure equivalent results on the engine and/or airframe/engine combination being proposed for Accelerated ETOPS Operations Approval.

(A) Reduction in the validation requirements:

The following elements will be useful or beneficial in justifying a reduction by the competent authority in the validation requirements of ETOPS processes:

1. Experience with other airframes and/or engines;
2. Previous ETOPS experience;

3. Experience with long range, over-water operations with two, three or four engine aeroplanes;
4. Any experience gained by flight crews, continuing airworthiness personnel and flight dispatch personnel, while working with other ETOPS approved operators, particularly when such experience is with the same airframe or airframe/engine combination.

Process validation may be done on the airframe/engine combination, which will be used in Accelerated ETOPS operation or on a different aeroplane type than that for which approval is being sought.

(B) Validation programme:

A process could be validated by demonstrating that it produces equivalent results on a different aeroplane type or airframe/engine combination. In this case, the validation programme should address the following:

1. The operator should show that the ETOPS validation programme can be executed in a safe manner;
2. The operator should state in its application any policy guidance to personnel involved in the ETOPS process validation programme. Such guidance should clearly state that ETOPS process validation exercises should not be allowed to adversely impact the safety of actual operations, especially during periods of abnormal, emergency, or high cockpit workload operations. It should emphasise that during periods of abnormal or emergency operation or high cockpit workload ETOPS process validation exercises may be terminated;
3. The validation scenario should be of sufficient frequency and operational exposure to validate maintenance and operational support systems not validated by other means;
4. A means should be established to monitor and report performance with respect to accomplishment of tasks associated with ETOPS process elements. Any recommended changes resulting from the validation programme to ETOPS continuing airworthiness and/or operational process elements should be defined.

(C) Documentation requirements for the process validation

The operator should:

1. Document how each element of the ETOPS process was utilised during the validation;
2. Document any shortcomings with the process elements and measures in place to correct such shortcomings;
3. Document any changes to ETOPS processes, which were required after an in-flight shut down (IFSD), unscheduled engine removals, or any other significant operational events;
4. Provide periodic Process Validation reports to the competent authority (this may be addressed during Review Gates).

(D) Validation programme information

Prior to the start of the validation process, the following information should be submitted to the competent authority:

1. Validation periods, including start dates and proposed completion dates;
2. Definition of aeroplane to be used in the validation (List should include registration numbers, manufacturer and serial number and model of the airframe and engines);
3. Description of the areas of operation (if relevant to validation) proposed for validation and actual operations;
4. Definition of designated ETOPS validation routes. The routes should be of duration required to ensure necessary process validation occurs;
5. Process validation reporting. The operator should compile results of ETOPS process validation.

5.3 Validation of Operator ETOPS Continuing Airworthiness and Operations Capability

The operator should demonstrate competence to safely conduct and adequately support the intended operation. Prior to ETOPS approval, the operator should demonstrate that the ETOPS continuing airworthiness processes are being properly conducted.

The operator should also demonstrate that ETOPS flight dispatch and release practices, policies, and procedures are established for operations.

An operational validation flight may be required so that the operator can demonstrate dispatch and normal in-flight procedures. The content of this validation flight will be determined by the Competent Authority based on the previous experience of the operator.

Upon successful completion of the validation flight, when required, the operator should modify the operational manuals to include approval for ETOPS as applicable

5.4 ETOPS Operations Approval issued by the Competent Authority

Operations approvals granted with reduced in-service experience may be limited to those areas determined by the competent authority at time of issue. An application for a change is required for new areas to be added.

The approval issued by the Competent Authority for ETOPS up to 180 minutes should be based on the information required in [Appendix 3](#) section 3.

**SECTION 6: IN-SERVICE ETOPS APPROVAL**

Approval based on in-service experience on the particular airframe/engine combination.

6.1 Application

Any operator applying for ETOPS approval should submit a request, with the required supporting data, to the competent authority at least 3 months prior to the proposed start of ETOPS with the specific airframe/engine combination.

6.2 Operator Experience

Each operator seeking approval via the in-service route should provide a report to the competent authority, indicating the operator's capability to maintain and operate the specific airframe/engine combination for the intended extended range operation. This report should

include experience with the engine type or related engine types, experience with the aeroplane systems or related aeroplane systems, or experience with the particular airframe/engine combination on non-extended range routes. Approval would be based on a review of this information.

Each operator requesting Approval to conduct ETOPS beyond 180 minutes should already have ETOPS experience and hold a 180 minute ETOPS approval.

Note 1: The operator's authorised maximum diversion time may be progressively increased by the competent authority as the operator gains experience on the particular airframe/engine combination. Not less than 12 consecutive months experience will normally be required before authorisation of ETOPS up to 180 minutes maximum diversion time, unless the operator can demonstrate compensating factors. The factors to consider may include duration of experience, total number of flights, operator's diversion events, record of the airframe/engine combination with other operators, quality of operator's programmes and route structure. However, the operator will still need, in the latter case, to demonstrate his capability to maintain and operate the new airframe/engine combination at a similar level of reliability.

In considering an application from an operator to conduct extended range operations, an assessment should be made of the operator's overall safety record, past performance, flight crew training and experience, and maintenance programme. The data provided with the request should substantiate the operator's ability and competence to safely conduct and support these operations and should include the means used to satisfy the considerations outlined in this paragraph. (Any reliability assessment obtained, either through analysis or service experience, should be used as guidance in support of operational judgements regarding the suitability of the intended operation.)

### 6.3 Assessment of the Operator's Propulsion System Reliability

Following the accumulation of adequate operating experience by the world fleet of the specified airframe/engine combination and the establishment of an IFSD rate objective in accordance with [Appendix 1](#) for use in ensuring the propulsion system reliability necessary for extended range operations, an assessment should be made of the applicant's ability to achieve and maintain this level of propulsion system reliability.

This assessment should include trend comparisons of the operator's data with other operators as well as the world fleet average values, and the application of a qualitative judgement that considers all of the relevant factors. The operator's past record of propulsion system reliability with related types of power units should also be reviewed, as well as its record of achieved systems reliability with the airframe/engine combination for which authorisation is sought to conduct extended range operations.

Note: Where statistical assessment alone may not be applicable, e.g., when the fleet size is small, the applicant's experience will be reviewed on a case-by-case basis.

### 6.4 Validation of Operator ETOPS Continuing Airworthiness and Operations Capability

The operator should demonstrate competence to safely conduct and adequately support the intended operation. Prior to ETOPS approval, the operator should demonstrate that the ETOPS continuing airworthiness processes are being properly conducted.

The operator should also demonstrate that ETOPS flight dispatch and release practices, policies, and procedures are established for operations.

An operational validation flight may be required so that the operator can demonstrate dispatch and normal in-flight procedures. The content of this validation flight will be determined by the Authority based on the previous experience of the operator.

Upon successful completion of a validation flight, where required, the operational specifications and manuals should be modified accordingly to include approval for ETOPS as applicable.

#### 6.5 ETOPS Operations Approval issued by the Competent Authority

Operations approvals based on in-service experience are limited to those areas agreed by the Competent Authority at time of issue. Additional approval is required for new areas to be added.

The approval issued by the Competent Authority for ETOPS should specifically include provisions as described in [Appendix 3](#) section 4.

### SECTION 7: ETOPS APPROVAL CATEGORIES

There are 4 approval categories:

- Approval for 90 minutes or less diversion time
- Approval for diversion time above 90 minutes up to 180 minutes
- Approval for diversion time above 180 minutes
- Approval for diversion times above 180 minutes of operators of two-engine aeroplanes with a maximum passenger seating configuration of 19 or less and a maximum take-off mass less than 45 360 kg

An operator seeking ETOPS approval in one of the above categories should comply with the requirements common to all categories and the specific requirements of the particular category for which approval is sought.

#### 7.1 REQUIREMENTS COMMON TO ALL ETOPS APPROVAL CATEGORIES:

##### (i) Continuing Airworthiness

The operator should comply with the continuing airworthiness considerations of [Appendix 8](#).

##### (ii) Release Considerations

###### (A) Minimum Equipment List (MEL)

Aeroplanes should only be operated in accordance with the provisions of the approved Minimum Equipment List (MEL).

###### (B) Weather

To forecast terminal and en-route weather, an operator should only use weather information systems that are sufficient reliable and accurate in the proposed area of operation.

###### (C) Fuel

Fuel should be sufficient to comply with the critical fuel scenario as described in [Appendix 4](#) to this AMC.

##### (iii) Flight Planning

The effects of wind and temperature at the one-engine-inoperative cruise altitude should be accounted for in the calculation of equal-time point. In addition to the nominated

ETOPS en-route alternates, the operator should provide flight crews with information on adequate aerodromes on the route to be flown which are not forecast to meet the ETOPS en-route alternate weather minima. Aerodrome facility information and other appropriate planning data concerning these aerodromes should be provided before commencement of the flight to flight crews for use when executing a diversion.

(iv) Flight Crew Training

The operator's ETOPS training programme should provide initial and recurrent training for flight crew in accordance with [Appendix 6](#).

(v) En-route Alternate

[Appendix 5](#) to this AMC should be implemented when establishing the company operational procedures for ETOPS.

(vi) Communications Equipment (VHF/HF, Data Link, Satellite Communications)

For all routes where voice communication facilities are available, the communication equipment required by operational requirements should include at least one voice-based system.

## 7.2 SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS:

### 7.2.1 APPROVAL FOR 90 MINUTES OR LESS DIVERSION TIME

The Operator's Approved Diversion Time is an operational limit that should not exceed either:

- the Maximum Approved Diversion Time or,
- the time-limited system capability minus 15 minutes.

If the airframe/engine combination does not yet have a Type Design approval for at least 90 minutes diversion time, the aircraft should satisfy the relevant ETOPS design requirements.

Consideration may be given to the approval of ETOPS up to 90 minutes for operators with minimal or no in-service experience with the airframe/engine combination. This determination considers such factors as the proposed area of operations, the operator's demonstrated ability to successfully introduce aeroplanes into operations and the quality of the proposed continuing airworthiness and operations programmes.

Minimum Equipment List (MEL) restrictions for 120 minutes ETOPS should be used unless there are specific restrictions for 90 minutes or less.

### 7.2.2 APPROVAL FOR DIVERSION TIME ABOVE 90 MINUTES UP TO 180 MINUTES

Prior to approval, the operator's capability to conduct operations and implement effective ETOPS programmes, in accordance with the criteria detailed in this AMC and the relevant appendices, will be examined.

The Operator's Approved Diversion Time is an operational limit that should not exceed either:

- the Maximum Approved Diversion Time, or,
  - the time-limited system capability minus 15 minutes.
- i) Additional Considerations for aircraft with 120 minutes Maximum Approved Diversion Time

In the case of an aircraft approved for 120 minutes Maximum Approved Diversion Time, an operator may request an increase in the operator's approved diversion time for specific routes provided:

1. The requested Operator's Approved Diversion Time does not exceed either:
  - 115% of the Maximum Approved Diversion Time or,
  - the time-limited system capability minus 15 minutes.
2. The aeroplane fuel carriage supports the requested Operator's Approved Diversion Time.
3. It can be shown that the resulting routing will not reduce the overall safety of the operation.

Such increases will require:

- (A) the Agency to assess overall type design including time-limited systems, demonstrated reliability; and
- (B) the development of an appropriate MEL related to the diversion time required.

- ii) Additional Considerations for aircraft with 180 minutes Maximum Approved Diversion Time

In the case of an aircraft certified for 180 minutes Maximum Approved Diversion Time, an operator may request an increase in the operator's approved diversion time for specific routes provided:

1. The requested Operator's Approved Diversion Time does not exceed either:
  - 115% of the Maximum Approved Diversion Time or,
  - the time-limited system capability minus 15 minutes
2. The aeroplane fuel carriage supports the requested Operator's Approved Diversion Time diversion time
3. It can be shown that the resulting routing will not reduce the overall safety of the operation.

Such increases will require:

- (A) the Agency to assess overall type design including time-limited systems, demonstrated reliability; and
- (B) the development of an appropriate MEL related to the diversion time required.

### 7.2.3 APPROVAL FOR DIVERSION TIME ABOVE 180 MINUTES

Approval to conduct operations with diversion times exceeding 180 minutes may be granted to operators with previous ETOPS experience on the particular engine/airframe combination and an existing 180 minute ETOPS approval on the airframe/engine combination listed in their application.

Operators should minimise diversion time along the preferred track. Increases in diversion time by disregarding ETOPS adequate aerodromes along the route, should only be planned in the interest of the overall safety of the operation.

The approval to operate more than 180 minutes from an adequate aerodrome shall be area specific, based on the availability of adequate ETOPS en-route alternate aerodromes.

(i) Operating limitations

In view of the long diversion time involved (above 180 minutes), the operator is responsible to ensure at flight planning stage, that on any given day in the forecast conditions, such as prevailing winds, temperature and applicable diversion procedures, a diversion to an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome will not exceed the:

- (A) Engine-related time-limited systems capability minus 15 minutes at the approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed; and
- (B) Non engine-related time-limited system capability minus 15 minutes, such as cargo fire suppression, or other non engine-related system capability at the all engine operative cruise speed.

(ii) Communications Equipment (VHF/HF, Data Link and Satellite based communications)

Operators should use any or all of these forms of communications to ensure communications capability when operating ETOPS in excess of 180 minutes.

**7.2.4 APPROVAL FOR DIVERSION TIMES ABOVE 180 MINUTES OF OPERATORS OF TWO-ENGINE AEROPLANES WITH A MAXIMUM PASSENGER SEATING CONFIGURATION OF 19 OR LESS AND A MAXIMUM TAKE-OFF MASS LESS THAN 45 360 KG**

(i) Type Design

The airframe/engine combination should have the appropriate Type Design approval for the requested maximum diversion times in accordance with the criteria in CS 25.1535 and chapter II 'Type Design Approval Considerations' of this AMC.

(ii) Operations Approval

Approval to conduct operations with diversion times exceeding 180 minutes may be granted to operators with experience on the particular airframe/engine combination or existing ETOPS approval on a different airframe/engine combination, or equivalent experience. Operators should minimise diversion time along the preferred track to 180 minutes or less whenever possible. The approval to operate more than 180 minutes from an adequate aerodrome shall be area specific, based on the availability of alternate aerodromes, the diversion to which would not compromise safety.

Note: Exceptionally for this type of aeroplanes, operators may use the accelerated ETOPS approval method to gain ETOPS approval. This method is described in section 5.

**SECTION 8: ETOPS OPERATIONS MANUAL SUPPLEMENT**

The ETOPS operations manual supplement or its equivalent material in the operations manual, and any subsequent amendments, are subject to approval by the Competent Authority.

The Authority will review the actual ETOPS in-service operation. Amendments to the Operations Manual may be required as a result. Operators should provide information for and participate in such

reviews, with reference to the (S)TC holder where necessary. The information resulting from these reviews should be used to modify or update flight crew training programmes, operations manuals and checklists, as necessary.

An example outline of ETOPS Operations Manual Supplement content is provided in [Appendix 7](#) to this AMC.

#### **SECTION 9: FLIGHT PREPARATION AND IN-FLIGHT PROCEDURES**

The operator should establish pre-flight planning and dispatch procedures for ETOPS and they should be listed in the Operations Manual. These procedures should include, but not be limited to, the gathering and dissemination of forecast and actual weather information, both along the route and at the proposed ETOPS alternate aerodromes. Procedures should also be established to ensure that the requirements of the critical fuel scenario are included in the fuel planning for the flight.

The procedures and manual should require that sufficient information is available for the aeroplane pilot-in-command, to satisfy him/her that the status of the aeroplane and relevant airborne systems is appropriate for the intended operation. The manual should also include guidance on diversion decision-making and en-route weather monitoring.

Additional guidance on the content of the “Flight Preparation and In-Flight Procedures” section of the operations manual is provided in [Appendix 4](#) to this AMC.

#### **SECTION 10: OPERATIONAL LIMITATIONS**

The operational limitations to the area of operations and the Operator’s Approved Diversion Time are detailed in [Appendix 3](#) to this AMC – “Operational Limitations”.

#### **SECTION 11: ETOPS EN-ROUTE ALTERNATE AERODROMES**

An operator should select ETOPS en-route alternate aerodromes in accordance with the applicable operational requirements and [Appendix 5](#) to this AMC - Route Alternate.

#### **SECTION 12: INITIAL/RECURRENT TRAINING**

An operator should ensure that prior to conducting ETOPS, each crew member has completed successfully ETOPS training and checking in accordance with a syllabus compliant with [Appendix 7](#) to this AMC, approved by the Competent Authority and detailed in the Operations Manual.

This training should be type and area specific in accordance with the applicable operational requirements.

The operator should ensure that crew members are not assigned to operate ETOPS routes for which they have not successfully passed the training.

#### **SECTION 13: CONTINUING SURVEILLANCE**

The fleet-average IFSD rate for the specified airframe/engine combination will continue to be monitored in accordance with Appendices 1, 2 and 8. As with all other operations, the Competent Authority should also monitor all aspects of the extended range operations that it has authorised to ensure that the levels of reliability achieved in extended range operations remain at the necessary levels as provided in [Appendix 1](#), and that the operation continues to be conducted safely. In the event that an acceptable level of reliability is not maintained, if significant adverse trends exist, or if significant deficiencies are detected in the type design or the conduct of the ETOPS operation, then

---

the appropriate Competent Authority should initiate a special evaluation, impose operational restrictions if necessary, and stipulate corrective action for the operator to adopt in order to resolve the problems in a timely manner. The appropriate Authority should alert the Certification Authority when a special evaluation is initiated and make provisions for their participation.

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-6 – Propulsion System Reliability Assessment

*ED Decision 2010/012/R*

### 1. ASSESSMENT PROCESS

To establish by utilising service experience whether a particular airframe/engine combination has satisfied the propulsion systems reliability requirements for ETOPS, an engineering assessment will be made by the Agency, using all pertinent propulsion system data. To accomplish the assessment, the Agency will need world fleet data (where available), and data from various sources (the operator, the engine and aeroplane (S)TC holder) which should be extensive enough and of sufficient maturity to enable the Agency to assess with a high level of confidence, using engineering and operational judgement and standard statistical methods where appropriate, that the risk of total power loss from independent causes is sufficiently low. The Agency will state whether or not the current propulsion system reliability of a particular airframe/engine combination satisfies the relevant criteria. Included in the statement, if the operation is approved, will be the engine build standard, propulsion system configuration, operating condition and limitations required to qualify the propulsion system as suitable for ETOPS.

Alternatively, where type design approval for Early ETOPS is sought at entry into service, the engineering assessment can be based on substantiation by analysis, test, in-service experience or other means, to show that the propulsion system will minimise failures and malfunctions and will achieve an IFSD rate that is compatible with the specified safety target as associated with total loss of thrust.

If an approved engine CMP is maintained by the responsible engine Authority and is duly referenced on the engine Type Certificate Data Sheet or STC, then this shall be made available to the Agency conducting the aeroplane propulsion system reliability assessment. Such a CMP shall be produced taking into account all the requirements of chapter II and should be incorporated or referenced in the aeroplane CMP.

### 2. RELIABILITY VALIDATION METHODS

There are two extremes in the ETOPS process with respect to maturity; one is the demonstration of stable reliability by the accumulation of in-service experience and the other is by a programme of design, test and analysis, agreed between the (S)TC holders and the Agency. The extent to which a propulsion system is a derivative of previous propulsion systems used on an ETOPS approved airplane is also a factor of the level of maturity. When considering the acceptability of a propulsion system, maturity should be assessed not only in terms of total fleet hours but also taking account of fleet leader time over a calendar time and the extent to which test data and design experience can be used as an alternative.

#### a. Service Experience

There is justification for the view that modern propulsion systems achieve a stable reliability level by 100,000 engine hours for new types and 50,000 engine hours for derivatives. 3,000 to 4,000 engine hours is considered to be the necessary time in service for a specific unit to indicate problem areas.

Normally, the in-service experience will be:

- (1) For new propulsion systems: 100,000 engine hours and 12 months service. Where experience on another aeroplane is applicable, a significant portion of the 100,000 engine hours should normally be obtained on the candidate aeroplane;

On a case-by-case basis, relevant test and design experience, and maximum diversion time requested, could be taken into account when arriving at the in-service experience required;

- (2) For derivative propulsion systems: 50,000 engine hours and 12 months service. These values may vary according to the degree of commonality. To this end in determining the derivative status of a propulsion system, consideration should be given to technical criteria referring to the commonality with previous propulsion system used on an ETOPS approved aeroplane. Prime areas of concern include:
  - (i) Turbomachinery;
  - (ii) Controls and accessories and control logic;
  - (iii) Configuration hardware (piping, cables etc.);
  - (iv) Aeroplane to engine interfaces and interaction:
    - (A) Fire;
    - (B) Thrust reverser;
    - (C) Avionics;
    - (D) etc.

The extent to which the in-service experience might be reduced would depend upon the degree of commonality with previous propulsion system used on an ETOPS approved aeroplane using the above criteria and would be decided on a case-by-case basis.

Also on a case-by-case basis, relevant test and design experience and maximum diversion time requested could be taken into account when arriving at the in-service experience required.

Thus, the required experience to demonstrate propulsion system reliability should be determined by:

- (i) The extent to which previous service experience with a common propulsion system used on an ETOPS approved aeroplane systems can be considered;
- (ii) To what extent compensating factors, such as design similarity and test evidence, can be used;
- (iii) The two preceding considerations would then determine the amount of service experience needed for a particular propulsion system proposed for ETOPS.

These considerations would be made on a case-by-case basis and would need to provide a demonstrated level of propulsion system reliability in terms of IFSD rate. See paragraph 3 'Risk Management and Risk Model'.

- (3) Data Required for the Assessment
  - (i) A list of all engine shutdown events for all causes (excluding normal training events). The list should provide the following for each event:
    - (A) date;
    - (B) airline;
    - (C) aeroplane and engine identification (model and serial number);

- (D) power-unit configuration and modification history;
  - (E) engine position;
  - (F) symptoms leading up to the event, phase of flight or ground operation;
  - (G) weather/environmental conditions and reason for shutdown and any comment regarding engine restart potential;
- (ii) All occurrences where the intended thrust level was not achieved, or where crew action was taken to reduce thrust below the normal level (for whatever reason):
  - (iii) Unscheduled engine removals/shop visit rates;
  - (iv) Total engine hours and aeroplane cycles;
  - (v) All events should be considered to determine their effects on ETOPS operations;
  - (vi) Additional data as required;
  - (vii) The Agency will also consider relevant design and test data.
- b. Early ETOPS

(1) Acceptable Early ETOPS certification plan

Where type design approval for Early ETOPS is sought at the first entry into service, the engineering assessment can be based on substantiation by analysis, test, in-service experience, CS-E 1040 compliance or other means to show that the propulsion system will minimise failures and malfunctions, and will achieve an IFSD rate that is compatible with the specified safety target associated with catastrophic loss of thrust. An approval plan, defining the early ETOPS reliability validation tests and processes, must be submitted by the applicant to the Agency for agreement. This plan must be implemented and completed to the satisfaction of the Agency before an ETOPS type design approval will be granted for a propulsion system.

(2) Propulsion System Validation Test

The propulsion system for which approval is being sought should be tested in accordance with the following schedule. The propulsion system for this test should be configured with the aeroplane installation nacelle and engine build-up hardware representative of the type certificate standards.

Tests of simulated ETOPS service operation and vibration endurance should consist of 3,000 representative service start-stop cycles (take-off, climb, cruise, descent, approach, landing and thrust reverse), plus three simulated diversions at maximum continuous thrust for the Maximum Approved Diversion Time for which ETOPS eligibility is sought. These diversions are to be approximately evenly distributed over the cyclic duration of the test, with the last diversion to be conducted within 100 cycles of the completion of the test.

This test must be run with the high speed and low speed main engine rotors unbalanced to generate at least 90 percent of the applicant's recommended maintenance vibration levels. Additionally, for engines with three main engine rotors, the intermediate speed rotor must be unbalanced to generate at least 90 percent of the applicant's recommended acceptance vibration level. The vibration

level shall be defined as the peak level seen during a slow acceleration/deceleration of the engine across the operating speed range. Conduct the vibration survey at periodic intervals throughout the 3000 cycle test. The average value of the peak vibration level observed in the vibration surveys must meet the 90% minimum requirement. Minor adjustments in the rotor unbalance (up or down) may be necessary as the test progresses in order to meet the required average vibration level requirement. Alternatively, to a method acceptable to the Agency, an applicant may modify their test to accommodate a vibration level marginally less than 90% or greater than 100% of the vibration level required in lieu of adjusting rotor unbalance as the test progresses.

Each one hertz (60 rpm) bandwidth of the high speed rotor service start-stop cycle speed range (take-off, climb, cruise, descent, approach, landing and thrust reverse) must be subjected to  $3 \times 10^6$  vibration cycles. An applicant may conduct the test in any rotor speed step increment up to 200 rpm as long as the service start-stop cycle speed range is covered. For a 200 rpm step the corresponding vibration cycle count is to be 10 million cycles. In addition, each one hertz bandwidth of the high speed rotor transient operational speed range between flight idle and cruise must be subjected to  $3 \times 10^5$  vibration cycles. An applicant may conduct the test in any rotor speed step increment up to 200 rpm as long as the transient service speed range is covered. For a 200 rpm step the corresponding vibration cycle count is to be 1 million cycles.

At the conclusion of the test, the propulsion system must be:

- (i) Visually inspected according to the applicant's on-wing inspection recommendations and limits.
- (ii) Completely disassembled and the propulsion system hardware must be inspected in accordance with the service limits submitted in compliance with relevant instructions for continued airworthiness. Any potential sources of in-flight shutdown, loss of thrust control, or other power loss encountered during this inspection must be tracked and resolved in accordance with paragraph 5 of this Appendix 1.

### 3. RISK MANAGEMENT AND RISK MODEL

Propulsion systems approved for ETOPS must be sufficiently reliable to assure that defined safety targets are achieved.

- a. For ETOPS with a Maximum Approved Diversion Time of 180 minutes or less

An early review of information for modern fixed-wing jet-powered aircraft shows that the rate of fatal accidents for all causes is in the order of  $0.3 \times 10^{-6}$  per flying hour. The reliability of aeroplane types approved for extended range operation should be such that they achieve at least as good an accident record as equivalent technology equipment. The overall target of  $0.3 \times 10^{-6}$  per flying hour has therefore been chosen as the safety target for ETOPS approvals up to 180 minutes.

When considering safety targets, an accepted practice is to allocate appropriate portions of the total to the various potential contributing factors. By applying this practice to the overall target of  $0.3 \times 10^{-6}$  per flying hour, in the proportions previously considered appropriate, the probability of a catastrophic accident due to complete loss of thrust from independent causes must be no worse than  $0.3 \times 10^{-8}$  per flying hour.

Propulsion system related accidents may result from independent cause events but, based on historical evidence, result primarily from events such as uncontained engine failure events, common cause events, engine failure plus crew error events, human error related events and other. The majority of these factors are not specifically exclusive to ETOPS.

Using an expression developed by ICAO, (ref. AN-WP/5593 dated 15/2/84) for the calculation of engine in-flight shutdown rate, together with the above safety objective and accident statistics, a relationship between target engine in-flight shutdown rate for all independent causes and maximum diversion time has been derived. This is shown in Figure 1.

In order that type design approval may be granted for extended operation range, it will be necessary to satisfy the Agency that after application of the corrective actions identified during the engineering assessment (see Appendix 1, section 4: ENGINEERING ASSESSMENT. CRITERIA FOR ACCEPTABLE RELIABILITY VALIDATION METHODS), the target engine in-flight shutdown rates will be achieved. This will provide assurance that the probability objective for loss of all thrust due to independent causes will be met.

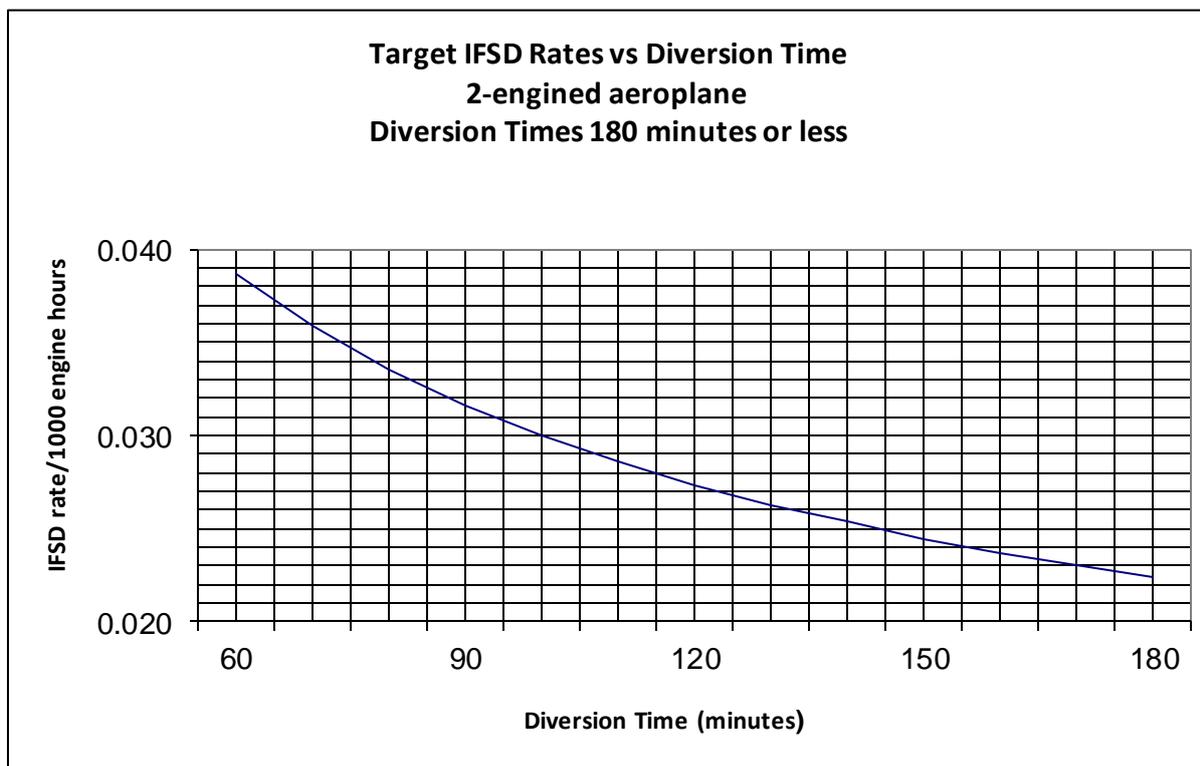


Figure 1

- b. For ETOPS with a Maximum Approved Diversion Time of greater than 180 minutes

The propulsion systems IFSD rate target should be compatible with the objective that the catastrophic loss of thrust from independent causes is no worse than extremely improbable, based on maximum ETOPS flight duration and maximum ETOPS rule time.

For ETOPS with Maximum Approved Diversion Times longer than 180 minutes, to meet this objective the powerplant installations must comply with the safety objectives of CS 25.1309, the goal should be that the catastrophic loss of thrust from independent

causes should be extremely improbable (see AMC 25.1309). The defined target for ETOPS approvals with diversion times of 180 minutes or less, for catastrophic loss of thrust from independent causes, is  $0.3 \times 10^{-8}$ /hr (see paragraph 3 of this Appendix). This target was based on engine IFSD rates that were higher than can be and are being achieved by modern ETOPS airframes/engines. To achieve the same level of safety for ETOPS approvals beyond 180 minutes as has been achieved for ETOPS approvals of 180 minutes or less, the propulsion system reliability IFSD rate target needs to be set and maintained at a level that is compatible with an Extremely Improbable safety objective (i.e.  $1.0 \times 10^{-9}$ /flight hr).

For example, a target overall IFSD rate of 0.01/1000 hr. (engine hours) that is maintained would result in the loss of all thrust on two engine aeroplanes being extremely improbable even assuming the longest time envisaged. The risk model formula summarised for a two-engine aeroplane is:

**p/flight hour =  $[2(Cr \times \{T-t\}) \times Mr(t)]$  divided by T**

- (1) p is the probability of a dual independent propulsion unit failure on a twin,
- (2) 2 is the number of opportunities for an engine failure on a twin (2),
- (3) Cr is cruise IFSD rate (0.5x overall rate), Mr is max continuous IFSD rate (2x overall rate), T is planned max flight duration in hours (departure to planned arrival airport), and t is the diversion or flight time in hours to a safe landing. IFSD rates, based on engine manufacturers' historical data from the last ten years of modern large turbofan engines, presented to the JAA/EASA and ARAC ETOPS working groups, have shown cruise IFSD rates to be of the order of 0.5x overall rate, and the max continuous IFSD rate (estimated from engine fleet analysis) to be 2x overall rate. Then, for an IFSD goal of .010/1000EFH overall, the cruise IFSD rate is .005/1000EFH, and the max continuous rate is .020/1000EFH.

- (4) Sample calculation (max flight case scenario): assume  $T = 20$  hour max flight duration, an engine failure after 10 hours, then continued flight time required is  $t = 10$  hours, using the ETOPS IFSD goal of  $.010/1000\text{EFH}$  or less, results in a probability of  $p=1\text{E-}9/\text{hour}$  (i.e. meets extremely improbable safety objective from independent causes).

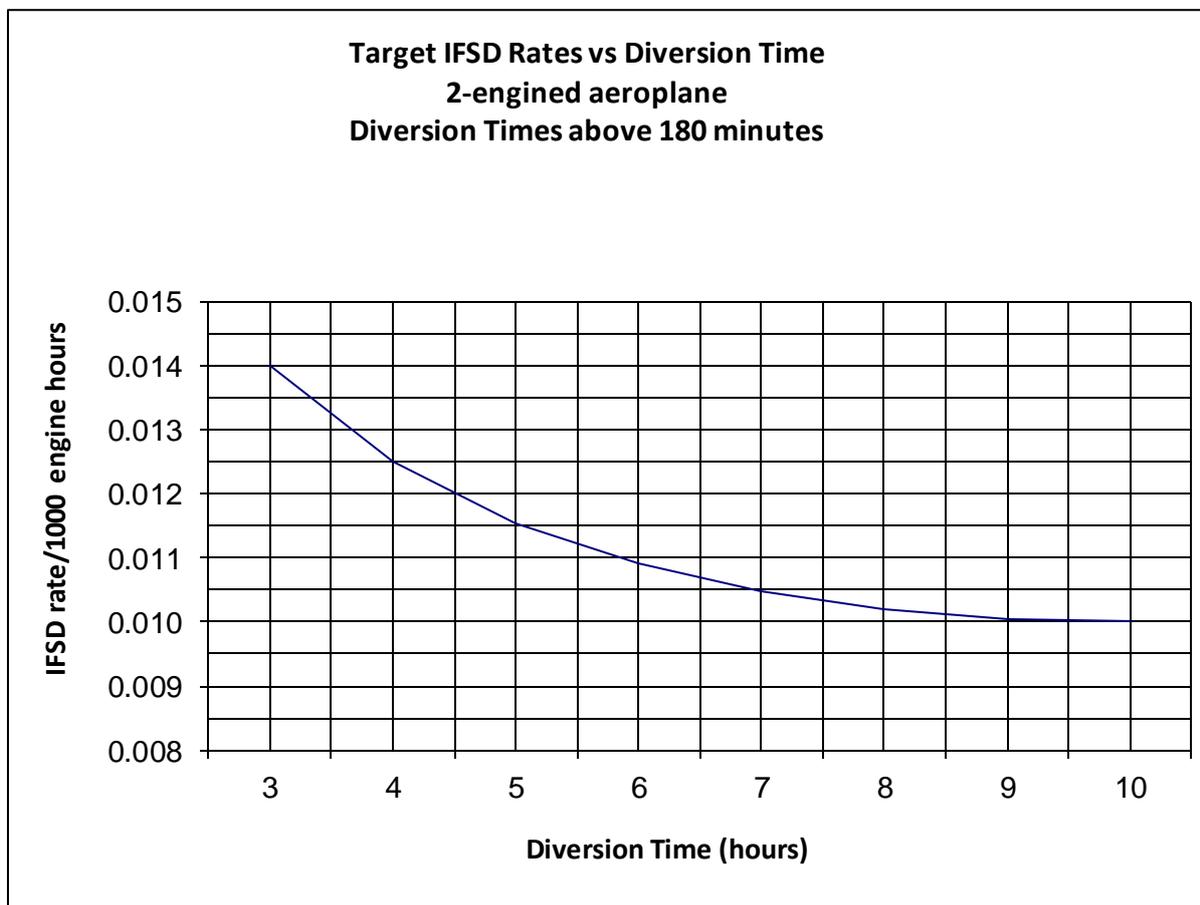


Figure 2

#### 4. ENGINEERING ASSESSMENT CRITERIA FOR ACCEPTABLE RELIABILITY VALIDATION METHODS

The following criteria identify some areas to be considered during the engineering assessment required for either reliability validation method.

- a. There are maintenance programmes, engine on-wing health monitoring programmes, and the promptness and completeness in incorporating engine service bulletins, etc., that influence an operator's ability to maintain a level of reliability. The data and information required will form a basis from which a world-fleet engine shut down rate will be established, for use in determining whether a particular airframe/engine combination complies with criteria for extended range operation.
- b. An analysis will be made on a case-by-case basis, of all significant failures, defects and malfunctions experienced in service or during testing, including reliability validation testing, for the particular airframe/engine combination. Significant failures are principally those causing or resulting in in-flight shut down or flameout of the engine(s), but may also include unusual ground failures and/or unscheduled removal of engines. In making the assessment, consideration should be given to the following:

- (1) The type of propulsion system, previous experience, whether the power-unit is new or a derivative of an existing model, and the operating thrust level to be used after one engine shutdown;
  - (2) The trends in the cumulative twelve month rolling average, updated quarterly, of in-flight shutdown rates versus propulsion system flight hours and cycles;
  - (3) The demonstrated effect of corrective modifications, maintenance, etc. on the possible future reliability of the propulsion system;
  - (4) Maintenance actions recommended and performance and their effect on propulsion system and APU failure rates;
  - (5) The accumulation of operational experience which covers the range of environmental conditions likely to be encountered;
  - (6) Intended maximum flight duration and maximum diversion in the ETOPS segment, used in the extended range operation under consideration.
- c. Engineering judgement will be used in the analysis of paragraph b. above, such that the potential improvement in reliability, following the introduction of corrective actions identified during the analysis, can be quantified.
- d. The resultant predicted reliability level and the criteria developed in accordance with section 3 (RISK MANAGEMENT AND RISK MODEL) should be used together to determine the maximum diversion time for which the particular airframe/engine combination qualifies.
- e. The type design standard for type approval of the airframe/engine combination, and the engine, for ETOPS will include all modifications and maintenance actions for which full or partial credit is taken by the (S)TC holder and other actions required by the Agency to enhance reliability. The schedule for incorporation of type design standard items should normally be established in the Configuration, Maintenance and Procedures (CMP) document, for example in terms of calendar time, hours or cycles.
- f. When third country (S)TC holders' and/or third country operator's data are evaluated, the respective foreign Authorities will be offered to participate in the assessment.
- g. ETOPS Reliability Tracking Board (RTB)'s Findings.  
Once an assessment has been completed and the RTB has documented its findings, the Agency will declare whether or not the particular airframe/engine combination and engine satisfy the relevant considerations of this AMC. Items recommended qualifying the propulsion system, such as maintenance requirements and limitations will be included in the Assessment Report (chapter II section 10 of this AMC).
- h. In order to establish that the predicted propulsion system reliability level is achieved and subsequently maintained, the (S) TC holder should submit to the Agency an assessment of the reliability of the propulsion system on a quarterly basis. The assessment should concentrate on the ETOPS configured fleet and should include ETOPS related events from the non-configured fleet of the subject airframe/engine combination and from other combinations utilising a related engine model.

## **5. EARLY ETOPS OCCURRENCES REPORTING & TRACKING**

- a. The holder of a (supplemental) type certificate of an engine, which has been approved for ETOPS without service experience in accordance with this AMC, should establish a

system to address problems and occurrences encountered on the engine that could affect the safety of operations and timely resolution.

- b. The system should contain a means for: the prompt identification of ETOPS related events, the timely notification of the event to the Agency, proposing a resolution of the event and obtaining Agency's approval. The implementation of the problem resolution can be accomplished by way of Agency approved change(s) to the type design, the manufacturing process, or an operating or maintenance procedure.
- c. The reporting system should be in place for at least the first 100,000 fleet engine hours. The reporting requirement remains in place until the fleet has demonstrated a stable in-flight shut down rate in accordance with the targets defined in this Appendix 1.
- d. For the early ETOPS service period, an applicant must define the sources and content of the service data that will be made available to them in support of their occurrence reporting and tracking system. The content of this data should be adequate to evaluate the specific cause of all service incidents reportable under Part 21A.3(c), in addition to the occurrences that could affect the safety of operations, and should be reported, including:
  - (1) In-flight shut down events and rates;
  - (2) Inability to control the engine or obtain desired power;
  - (3) Precautionary thrust reductions (except for normal troubleshooting as allowed in the aircraft flight manual);
  - (4) Degraded propulsion in-flight start capability;
  - (5) un-commanded power changes or surges.
  - (6) diversion or turn-back
  - (7) failures or malfunctions of ETOPS significant systems
  - (8) Unscheduled engine removals for conditions that could result in one of the reportable items listed above.

## 6. CONTINUED AIRWORTHINESS OF TYPE DESIGN

For ETOPS, the Agency will periodically review its original findings by means of a Reliability Tracking Board. In addition, the Agency document containing the CMP standard will be revised as necessary.

Note: The Reliability Tracking Board will usually comprise specialists from aeroplane and engine disciplines (see also [Appendix 2](#)).

Periodic meetings of the ETOPS Reliability Tracking Board are normally frequent at the start of the assessment of a new product. The periodicity is adjusted by the Agency upon accumulation of substantial service experience if there is evidence that the reliability of the product is sufficiently stable. The periodic meetings of the board are discontinued once an ETOPS product, or family of products, has been declared mature by the Agency.

Note: The overall engine IFSD rate should be viewed as a world-fleet average target figure of engine reliability (representative of the airframe/engine combination being considered) and if exceeded, may not, in itself, trigger action in the form of a change to the ETOPS design standard or a reduction in the ETOPS approval status of the engine. The actual IFSD rate and its causes should be assessed with considerable engineering judgement. For example, a high IFSD rate early after the commencement of the operation may be due to the limited number of hours

contributing to the high rate. There may have been only one shut down. The underlying causes have to be considered carefully. Conversely, a particular single event may warrant corrective action implementation, even though the overall IFSD rate objective is being achieved.

a. Mature ETOPS products

A family of ETOPS products with a high degree of similarity is considered as mature ones if:

- (1) The product family has accumulated at least 250,000 flight hours for an aeroplane family or 500,000 operating hours for an engine family;
- (2) The product family has accumulated service experience covering a comprehensive spectrum of operating conditions (e.g. cold, hot, high, and humid);
- (3) Each ETOPS approved model or variant in the family has achieved the reliability objectives for ETOPS and has remained stable at or below the objectives fleet-wide for at least two years;

New models or significant design changes may not be considered mature until they have individually satisfied the condition of paragraph 6.a above.

The Agency makes the determination of when a product or a product family is considered mature.

b. Surveillance of mature ETOPS products

The (S)TC holder of an ETOPS product which the Agency has found mature, should institute a process to monitor the reliability of the product in accordance with the objectives defined in this Appendix 1. In case of occurrence of an event or series of events or a statistical trend that implies a deviation of the reliability of the ETOPS fleet, or a portion of the ETOPS fleet (e.g. one model or a range of serial numbers), above the limits specified for ETOPS in this AMC, the (S)TC holder should:

- (1) Inform the Agency and define a means to restore the reliability through a Minor Revision of the CMP document, with a compliance schedule to be agreed with the Agency if the situation has no immediate safety impact;
- (2) Inform the Agency and propose an ad-hoc follow-up by the Agency until the concern has been alleviated or confirmed if the situation requires further assessment;
- (3) Inform the Agency and propose the necessary corrective action(s) to be mandated by the Agency through an AD if a direct safety concern exists.

In the absence of a specific event or trend requiring action, the (S)TC holder should provide the Agency with the basic statistical indicators prescribed in this Appendix 1 on a yearly basis.

c. Minor Revision of the ETOPS CMP Document

A Minor Revision of the ETOPS CMP document is one that contains only editorial adjustments, configurations, maintenance and procedures equivalent to those already approved by the Agency or new reliability improvements which have no immediate impact on the safety of ETOPS flights and which are introduced as a means to control the continued compliance with the reliability objectives of ETOPS.

Minor revisions of the ETOPS CMP document should be approved by authorised signatories personnel of the (S)TC holder under the provisions of its approved Design Organisation Handbook.

## **7. DESIGN ORGANISATION APPROVALS**

(S)TC holders of products approved for ETOPS should hold a Design Organisation Approval (DOA) conforming to EASA Part-21, with the appropriate terms of approval and privileges. Their approved Design Organisation Handbook (DOH) must contain an appropriate description of the organisation and procedures covering all applicable tasks and responsibilities of EASA Part-21 and this AMC.

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-6 – Aircraft Systems Reliability Assessment

*ED Decision 2010/012/R*

### 1. ASSESSMENT PROCESS

The intent of this Appendix is to provide additional clarification to sections 7 and 8 of chapter II of this AMC. Airframe systems are required to show compliance with CS 25.1309. To establish whether a particular airframe/engine combination has satisfied the reliability requirements concerning the aircraft systems for extended range operations, an assessment will be made by the Agency, using all pertinent systems data provided by the applicant. To accomplish this assessment, the Agency will need world-fleet data (where available) and data from various sources (operators, (S)TC holder, original equipment manufacturers (OEM)). This data should be extensive enough and of sufficient maturity to enable the Agency to assess with a high level of confidence, using engineering and operational judgement, that the risk of systems failures during a normal ETOPS flight or a diversion, is sufficiently low in direct relationship with the consequence of such failure conditions, under the operational environment of ETOPS missions.

The Agency will declare whether or not the current system reliability of a particular airframe/engine combination satisfies the relevant criteria.

Included in the declaration, if the airframe/engine combination satisfy the relevant criteria, will be the airframe build standard, systems configuration, operating conditions and limitations, required to qualify the ETOPS significant systems as suitable for extended range operations.

Alternatively, where type design approval for Early ETOPS is sought at first entry into service, the engineering assessment can be based on substantiation by analysis, test, in-service experience or other means to show that the airframe significant systems will minimise failures and malfunctions, and will achieve a failure rate that is compatible with the specified safety target.

### 2. SYSTEM SAFETY ASSESSMENT 'SSA' (including reliability analysis)

The System Safety Assessment (SSA) which should be conducted in accordance with CS 25.1309 for all ETOPS significant systems should follow the steps below:

- a. Conduct a (supplemental) Functional Hazard Assessment (FHA) considering the ETOPS missions. In determining the effect of a failure condition during an ETOPS mission, the following should also be reviewed:
  - (1) Crew workload over a prolonged period of time;
  - (2) Operating conditions at single engine altitude;
  - (3) Lesser crew familiarity with the procedures and conditions to fly to and land at diversion aerodromes.
- b. Introduce any additional failure scenario/objectives necessary to comply with this AMC.
- c. For compliance demonstration of ETOPS significant system reliability to CS 25.1309 there will be no distinction made between ETOPS group 1 and group 2 systems. For qualitative analysis (FHA), the maximum flight time and the maximum ETOPS diversion time should be considered. For quantitative analysis (SSA), the average ETOPS mission time and maximum ETOPS diversion time should be considered. Consideration should be given to how the particular airframe/engine combination is to be utilised, and analyse the potential route structure and city pairs available, based upon the range of the aeroplane.
- d. Consider effects of prolonged time and at single engine altitude in terms of continued operation of remaining systems following failures.

- e. Specific ETOPS maintenance tasks, intervals and specific ETOPS flight procedures necessary to attain the safety objectives, shall be included in the appropriate approved documents (e.g. CMP document, MMEL).
- f. Safety assessments should consider the flight consequences of single or multiple system failures leading to a diversion and the probability and consequences of subsequent failures or exhaustion of the capacity of time critical systems, which might occur during the diversion.

Safety assessments should determine whether a diversion should be conducted to the nearest aerodrome or to an aerodrome presenting better operating conditions, considering:

- (1) The effect of the initial failure condition on the capability of the aeroplane to cope with adverse conditions at the diversion aerodrome, and
- (2) The means available to the crew to assess the extent and evolution of the situation during a prolonged diversion.

The aircraft flight manual and the flight crew warning and alerting and display systems should provide clear information to enable the flight crew to determine when failure conditions are such that a diversion is necessary.

### 3. RELIABILITY VALIDATION METHODS

There are two extremes in the ETOPS process with respect to maturity; one is the demonstration of stable reliability by the accumulation of in-service experience and the other is by a design, analysis and test programmes, agreed between the (S)TC holders and the Agency/Authority.

#### a. *In-service Experience/Systems Safety Assessment (SSA)*

In-service experience should generally be in accordance with that identified in [Appendix 1](#) for each airframe/engine combination. When considering the acceptability of airframe systems for ETOPS, maturity should be assessed in terms of used technology and the particular design under review.

In performing the SSA's, defined in paragraph 2 of this Appendix 2, particular account will be taken of the following:

- (1) For identical or similar equipment to those used on other aeroplanes, the SSA failure rates should be validated by in-service experience:
  - (i) The amount of in-service experience (either direct or related) should be indicated for each equipment of an ETOPS significant system.
  - (ii) Where related experience is used to validate failure modes and rates, an analysis should be produced to show the validity of the in-service experience.
  - (iii) In particular, if the same equipment is used on a different airframe/engine combination, it should be shown that there is no difference in operating conditions (e.g., vibrations, pressure, temperature) or that these differences do not adversely affect the failure modes and rates.
  - (iv) If in-service experience with similar equipment on other aeroplanes is claimed to be applicable, an analysis should be produced substantiating the reliability figures used on the quantitative analysis. This substantiation

analysis should include details of the differences between the similar and new equipment, details of the in-service experience of the similar equipment and details of any "lessons learnt" from modifications introduced and included in the new equipment.

- (v) For certain equipment, (e.g., IDGs, TRUs, bleeds and emergency generators) this analysis may have to be backed up by tests. This should be agreed with the Agency.
- (2) For new or substantially modified equipment, account should be taken in the SSA for the lack of validation of the failure rates by service experience.

A study should be conducted to determine the sensitivity of the assumed SSA failure condition probabilities to the failure rates of the subject equipment.

Should a failure case probability be sensitive to this equipment failure rate and close to the required safety objective, particular provision precautions should be applied (e.g. temporary dispatch restrictions, inspections, maintenance procedures, crew procedures) to account for the uncertainty, until the failure rate has been appropriately validated by in-service experience.

b. *Early ETOPS*

Where type design approval for Early ETOPS is sought at the first entry into service of the airframe/engine combination, the engineering assessment can be based on substantiation by analysis, test, in-service experience (the same engine or airframe with different engines) or other means, to show that the ETOPS significant systems will achieve a failure rate that is compatible with the specified safety objective. An approval plan, defining the early ETOPS reliability validation tests and processes, should be submitted by the (S)TC's holders to the Agency for agreement. This certification plan should be completed and implemented to the satisfaction of the Agency before an ETOPS type design approval will be granted.

(1) Acceptable Early ETOPS approval plan

In addition to the above considerations, the following should be complied with for an Early ETOPS approval:

(i) Aeroplane Testing

For each airframe/engine combination that has not yet accumulated at least 15,000 engine hours in service, to be approved for ETOPS, one or more aeroplanes should conduct flight testing which demonstrates that the airframe/engine combination, its components and equipment are capable for, and function properly, during ETOPS flights and ETOPS diversions. These flight tests may be coordinated with, but they are not in place of flight testing required in Part 21.35(b)(2).

The flight test programme should include:

- (A) Flights simulating actual ETOPS operation, including normal cruise altitude, step climbs and APU operation if required for ETOPS;
- (B) Demonstration of the maximum normal flight duration with the maximum diversion time for which eligibility is sought;
- (C) Engine inoperative maximum time diversions to demonstrate the aeroplane and propulsion system's capability to safely conduct an

- ETOPS diversion, including a repeat of a MCT diversion on the same engine;
- (D) Non-normal conditions to demonstrate the aeroplane's capability to safely conduct an ETOPS diversion under worst case probable system failure conditions;
  - (E) Diversions into representative operational diversionary airports;
  - (F) Repeated exposure to humid and inclement weather on the ground followed by long range operations at normal cruise altitude;
  - (G) The flight testing should validate the adequacy of the aeroplane's flying qualities, performance and flight crew's ability to deal with the conditions of paragraphs (C)/(D)&(E) above.
  - (H) The engine-inoperative diversions must be evenly distributed among the number of engines in the applicant's flight test programme except as required by paragraph (C) above.
  - (I) The test aeroplane(s) must be operated and maintained using the recommended operations and maintenance manual procedures during the aeroplane demonstration test.
  - (J) At the completion of the aeroplane(s) demonstration testing, the ETOPS significant systems must undergo an operation or functional check per the Instructions for Continued Airworthiness of CS 25.1529. The engines must also undergo a gas path inspection. These inspections are intended to identify any abnormal conditions that could result in an in-flight shutdown or diversion. Any abnormal conditions must be identified, tracked and resolved in accordance with subpart (2) below. This inspection requirement can be relaxed for ETOPS significant systems similar in design to proven models.
  - (K) Maintenance and Operational Procedures. The applicant must validate all ETOPS significant systems maintenance and operational procedures. Any problems found as a result of the validation must be identified, tracked and resolved in accordance with paragraph subpart (2) below.
- (ii) APU Testing
- If an APU is required for ETOPS, one APU of the type to be certificated with the aeroplane should complete a test consisting of 3000 equivalent aeroplane operational cycles. Following completion of the demonstration test, the APU must be disassembled and inspected. Any potential sources of in-flight start and/or run events should be identified, tracked and resolved in accordance with paragraph subpart (2) below.
- (2) Early ETOPS Occurrence Reporting & Tracking
- (i) The holder of a (S)TC of an aeroplane which has been approved for ETOPS without service experience in accordance with this AMC, should establish a system to address problems and occurrences encountered on the airframe and propulsion systems that could affect the safety of ETOPS operations and timely resolution for these events;

- (ii) The system should contain a means for the prompt identification of ETOPS related events, the timely notification of the event to the Agency and proposing to, and obtaining Agency's approval for the resolution of this event. The implementation of the problem resolution can be accomplished by way of an Agency approved change(s) to the type design, the manufacturing process, or an operating or maintenance procedure.
- (iii) The reporting system should be in place for at least the first 100,000 flight hours. The reporting requirement remains in place until the airframe and propulsion systems have demonstrated stable reliability in accordance with the required safety objectives
- (iv) If the airframe/engine combination certified is a derivative of a previously certificated aeroplane, these criteria may be amended by the Agency, to require reporting on only those changed systems.
- (v) For the early ETOPS service period, an applicant must define the sources and content of in-service data that will be made available to them in support of their occurrence reporting and tracking system. The content of this data should be adequate to evaluate the specific cause of all service incidents reportable under Part 21.A.3(c), in addition to the occurrences that could affect the safety of ETOPS operations and should be reported, including:
  - (A) In-flight shutdown events;
  - (B) Inability to control the engine or obtain desired power;
  - (C) Precautionary thrust reductions (except for normal troubleshooting as allowed in the Aircraft Flight Manual);
  - (D) Degraded propulsion in-flight start capability;
  - (E) Inadvertent fuel loss or availability, or uncorrectable fuel imbalance in flight;
  - (F) Technical air turn-backs or diversions associated with an ETOPS Group 1 system;
  - (G) Inability of an ETOPS Group 1 system, designed to provide backup capability after failure of a primary system, to provide the required backup capability in-flight;
  - (H) Any loss of electrical power or hydraulic power system, during a given operation of the aeroplane;
  - (I) Any event that would jeopardise the safe flight and landing of the aeroplane during an ETOPS flight.

#### **4. CONTINUING SURVEILLANCE**

In order to confirm that the predicted system reliability level is achieved and maintained, the (S)TC holder should monitor the reliability of airframe ETOPS significant systems after entry into service. The (S)TC's holder should submit a report to the Agency, initially on a quarterly basis (for the first year of operation) and thereafter on a periodic basis and for a time to be agreed with the Agency. The monitoring task should include all events on ETOPS significant systems, from both the ETOPS and non-ETOPS fleet of the subject family of airframes. This additional reliability monitoring is required only for ETOPS Group 1 systems.

## 5. CONTINUED AIRWORTHINESS

### a. Reliability Tracking Board

The Agency will periodically review its original findings by means of a Reliability Tracking Board. In addition, the Agency document containing the CMP standard will be revised as necessary.

Note: The Reliability Tracking Board will usually comprise specialists from aeroplane and engine disciplines. (See also [Appendix 1](#)).

Periodic meetings of the ETOPS Reliability Tracking Board are normally frequent at the start of the assessment of a new product. The periodicity is adjusted by the Agency upon accumulation of substantial in-service experience if there is evidence that the reliability of the product is sufficiently stable. The periodic meetings of the board are discontinued once an ETOPS product, or family of products, has been declared mature by the Agency.

### b. Mature ETOPS products

A family of ETOPS products with a high degree of similarity is considered as mature when:

- (1) The product family has accumulated at least 250,000 flight hours for an aeroplane family;
- (2) The product family has accumulated service experience covering a comprehensive spectrum of operating conditions (e.g. cold, hot, high, humid);
- (3) Each ETOPS approved model or variant in the family has achieved the reliability objectives for ETOPS and has remained stable at or below the objectives fleet-wide for at least two years;

New models or significant design changes may not be considered mature until they have individually satisfied the conditions specified above.

The Agency makes the determination of when a product or a product family is considered mature.

### c. Surveillance of mature ETOPS products

The (S)TC holder of an ETOPS product which the Agency has found mature, should institute a process to monitor the reliability of the product in accordance with the objectives defined in this Appendix. In case of occurrence of an event, a series of events or a statistical trend that implies a deviation of the reliability of the ETOPS fleet, or a portion of the ETOPS fleet (e.g. one model or a range of serial numbers), above the limits specified for ETOPS, the (S)TC should:

- (1) Inform the Agency and define a means to restore the reliability through a Minor Revision of the CMP document, with a compliance schedule to be agreed with the Agency if the situation has no immediate safety impact;
- (2) Inform the Agency and propose an ad-hoc follow-up by the Agency until the concern has been alleviated, or confirmed if the situation requires further assessment;
- (3) Inform the Agency and propose the necessary corrective action(s) to be mandated by the Agency through an AD if a direct safety concern exists.

In the absence of a specific event or trend requiring action, the (S)TC holder should provide the Agency with the basic statistical indicators prescribed in this Appendix 2 on a yearly basis.

d. Minor Revision of the ETOPS CMP Document

A Minor Revision of the ETOPS CMP document is one that contains only editorial adjustments, configurations, maintenance and procedures equivalent to those already approved by the Agency, or new reliability improvements which have no immediate impact on the safety of ETOPS flights and which are introduced as a means to control the continued compliance with the reliability objectives of ETOPS.

Minor revisions of the ETOPS CMP document should be approved by authorised signatories of the Design Organisation and under the provisions of its approved Design Organisation Handbook.

**6. DESIGN ORGANISATION APPROVAL**

(S)TC holders of products approved for ETOPS should hold a Design Organisation Approval (DOA) conforming to EASA Part-21, with the appropriate terms of approval and privileges. Their approved Design Organisation Handbook (DOH) must contain an appropriate description of the organisation and procedures covering all applicable tasks and responsibilities of EASA Part-21 and this AMC.

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 3 to AMC 20-6 – Operational Limitations

*ED Decision 2010/012/R*

### 1. AREA OF OPERATION

An operator is, when specifically approved, authorised to conduct ETOPS flights within an area where the diversion time, at any point along the proposed route of flight, to an adequate ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome, is within the operator's approved diversion time (under standard conditions in still air) at the approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed.

### 2. OPERATOR'S APPROVED DIVERSION TIME

The procedures established by the operator should ensure that ETOPS is only planned on routes where the Operator's Approved Diversion Time to an Adequate ETOPS en-route alternate Aerodrome can be met.

### 3. ISSUE OF THE ETOPS OPERATIONS APPROVAL BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

The approval issued by the Competent Authority for ETOPS operations should be based on the following information provided by the operator:

- a. Specification of the particular airframe/engine combinations, including the current approved CMP document required for ETOPS as normally identified in the AFM;
- b. Authorised area of operation;
- c. Minimum altitudes to be flown along planned and diversionary routes;
- d. Operator's Approved Diversion Time;
- e. Aerodromes identified to be used, including alternates, and associated instrument approaches and operating minima;
- f. The approved maintenance and reliability programme for ETOPS;
- g. Identification of those aeroplanes designated for ETOPS by make and model as well as serial number and registration;
- h. Specification of routes and the ETOPS diversion time necessary to support those routes;
- i. The one-engine-inoperative cruise speed, which may be area specific, depending upon anticipated aeroplane loading and likely fuel penalties associated with the planned procedures;
- j. Processes and related resources allocated to initiate and sustain ETOPS operations in a manner that demonstrates commitment by management and all personnel involved in ETOPS continued airworthiness and operational support;
- k. The plan for establishing compliance with the build standard required for Type Design Approval, e.g. CMP document compliance.

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 4 to AMC 20-6 – Flight Preparation and In-flight Procedures

*ED Decision 2010/012/R*

### 1. GENERAL

The flight release considerations specified in this paragraph are in addition to the applicable operational requirements. They specifically apply to ETOPS. Although many of the considerations in this AMC are currently incorporated into approved programmes for other aeroplanes or route structures, the unique nature of ETOPS necessitates a re-examination of these operations to ensure that the approved programmes are adequate for this purpose.

### 2. MINIMUM EQUIPMENT LIST (MEL)

The system redundancy levels appropriate to ETOPS should be reflected in the Master Minimum Equipment List (MMEL). An operator's MEL may be more restrictive than the MMEL considering the kind of ETOPS operation proposed, equipment and in-service problems unique to the operator. Systems and equipment considered to have a fundamental influence on safety may include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. electrical;
- b. hydraulic;
- c. pneumatic;
- d. flight instrumentation, including warning and caution systems;
- e. fuel;
- f. flight control;
- g. ice protection;
- h. engine start and ignition;
- i. propulsion system instruments;
- j. navigation and communications, including any route specific long range navigation and communication equipment;
- k. auxiliary power-unit;
- l. air conditioning and pressurisation;
- m. cargo fire suppression;
- n. engine fire protection;
- o. emergency equipment;
- p. systems and equipment required for engine condition monitoring.

In addition, the following systems are required to be operative for dispatch for ETOPS with diversion times above 180 minutes:

- q. Fuel Quantity Indicating System (FQIS);
- r. APU (including electrical and pneumatic supply to its designed capability), if necessary to comply with ETOPS requirements;
- s. Automatic engine or propeller control system;

- t. Communication system(s) relied on by the flight crew to comply with the requirement for communication capability.

### **3. COMMUNICATION AND NAVIGATION FACILITIES**

For releasing an aeroplane on an ETOPS flight, the operators should ensure that:

- a. Communications facilities are available to provide under normal conditions of propagation at all planned altitudes of the intended flight and the diversion scenarios, reliable two-way voice and/or data link communications;
- b. Visual and non-visual aids are available at the specified alternates for the anticipated types of approaches and operating minima.

### **4. FUEL SUPPLY**

- a. General

For releasing an aeroplane on an ETOPS flight, the operators should ensure that it carries sufficient fuel and oil to meet the applicable operational requirements and any additional fuel that may be determined in accordance with this Appendix.

- b. Critical Fuel Reserve

In establishing the critical fuel reserves, the applicant is to determine the fuel necessary to fly to the most critical point (at normal cruise speed and altitude, taking into account the anticipated meteorological conditions for the flight) and execute a diversion to an ETOPS en-route alternate under the conditions outlined in this Appendix, the 'Critical Fuel Scenario' (paragraph c. below).

These critical fuel reserves should be compared to the normal applicable operational requirements for the flight. If it is determined by this comparison that the fuel to complete the critical fuel scenario exceeds the fuel that would be on board at the most critical point, as determined by applicable operational requirements, additional fuel should be included to the extent necessary to safely complete the Critical Fuel Scenario. When considering the potential diversion distance flown account should be taken of the anticipated routing and approach procedures, in particular any constraints caused by airspace restrictions or terrain.

- c. Critical Fuel Scenario.

The following describes a scenario for a diversion at the most critical point. The applicant should confirm compliance with this scenario when calculating the critical fuel reserve necessary.

Note 1: If an APU is one of the required power sources, then its fuel consumption should be accounted for during the appropriate phases of flight.

Note 2: Additional fuel consumptions due to any MEL or CDL items should be accounted for during the appropriate phases of flight, when applicable.

The aeroplane is required to carry sufficient fuel taking into account the forecast wind and weather to fly to an ETOPS route alternate assuming the greater of:

- (1) A rapid decompression at the most critical point followed by descent to a 10,000 ft or a higher altitude if sufficient oxygen is provided in accordance with the applicable operational requirements.
- (2) Flight at the approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed assuming a rapid decompression and a simultaneous engine failure at the most critical point

followed by descent to a 10,000 ft or a higher altitude if sufficient oxygen is provided in accordance with the applicable operational requirements.

- (3) Flight at the approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed assuming an engine failure at the most critical point followed by descent to the one-engine-inoperative cruise altitude.

Upon reaching the alternate, hold at 1500 ft above field elevation for 15 minutes and then conduct an instrument approach and landing.

Add a 5% wind speed factor (i.e., an increment to headwind or a decrement to tailwind) on the actual forecast wind used to calculate fuel in the greater of (1), (2) or (3) above to account for any potential errors in wind forecasting. If an operator is not using the actual forecast wind based on wind model acceptable to the competent authority, allow 5% of the fuel required for (1), (2) or (3) above, as reserve fuel to allow for errors in wind data. A wind aloft forecasting distributed worldwide by the World Area Forecast System (WAFS) is an example of a wind model acceptable to the competent authority.

d. Icing

Correct the amount of fuel obtained in paragraph c. above taking into account the greater of:

- (1) the effect of airframe icing during 10% of the time during which icing is forecast (including ice accumulation on unprotected surfaces, and the fuel used by engine and wing anti-ice during this period).
- (2) fuel for engine anti-ice, and if appropriate wing anti-ice for the entire time during which icing is forecast.

Note: Unless a reliable icing forecast is available, icing may be presumed to occur when the total air temperature (TAT) at the approved one-engine-inoperative cruise speed is less than +10°C, or if the outside air temperature is between 0°C and -20°C with a relative humidity (RH) of 55% or greater.

The operator should have a programme established to monitor aeroplane in-service deterioration in cruise fuel burn performance and including in the fuel supply calculations sufficient fuel to compensate for any such deterioration. If there is no data available for such a programme the fuel supply should be increased by 5% to account for deterioration in cruise fuel burn performance.

## 5. ALTERNATE AERODROMES

To conduct an ETOPS flight, the ETOPS en-route alternate aerodromes, should meet the weather requirements of planning minima for an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodromes contained in the applicable operational requirements. ETOPS planning minima apply until dispatch. The planned en-route alternates for using in the event of propulsion system failure or aeroplane system failure(s) which require a diversion should be identified and listed in the cockpit documentation (e.g. computerised flight plan) for all cases where the planned route to be flown contains an ETOPS point

See also Appendix 5 to this AMC 'ETOPS En-route Alternate Aerodromes'.

## 6. IN-FLIGHT RE-PLANNING AND POST-DISPATCH WEATHER MINIMA

An aeroplane whether or not dispatched as an ETOPS flight may not re-route post dispatch without meeting the applicable operational requirements and satisfy by a procedure that

dispatch criteria have been met. The operator should have a system in place to facilitate such re-routes.

Post-dispatch, weather conditions at the ETOPS en-route alternates should be equal to or better than the normal landing minima for the available instrument approach.

## **7. DELAYED DISPATCH**

If the dispatch of a flight is delayed by more than one hour, pilots and/or operations personnel should monitor weather forecasts and airport status at the nominated en-route alternates to ensure that they stay within the specified planning minima requirements until dispatch.

## **8. DIVERSION DECISION MAKING**

Operators shall establish procedures for flight crew, outlining the criteria that indicate when a diversion or change of routing is recommended whilst conducting an ETOPS flight. For an ETOPS flight, in the event of the shutdown of an engine, these procedures should include the shutdown of an engine, fly to and land at the nearest aerodrome appropriate for landing.

Factors to be considered when deciding upon the appropriate course of action and suitability of an aerodrome for diversion may include but are not limited to:

- a. Aircraft configuration/weight/systems status;
- b. Wind and weather conditions en route at the diversion altitude;
- c. Minimum altitudes en route to the diversion aerodrome;
- d. Fuel required for the diversion;
- e. Aerodrome condition, terrain, weather and wind;
- f. Runways available and runway surface condition;
- g. Approach aids and lighting;
- h. RFFS\* capability at the diversion aerodrome;
- i. Facilities for aircraft occupants - disembarkation & shelter;
- j. Medical facilities;
- k. Pilot's familiarity with the aerodrome;
- l. Information about the aerodrome available to the flight crew.

Contingency procedures should not be interpreted in any way that prejudices the final authority and responsibility of the pilot-in-command for the safe operation of the aeroplane.

Note: for an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome, a published RFFS category equivalent to ICAO category 4, available at 30 minutes notice, is acceptable.

## **9. IN-FLIGHT MONITORING**

During the flight, the flight crew should remain informed of any significant changes in conditions at designated ETOPS en-route alternate aerodromes. Prior to the ETOPS Entry Point, the forecast weather, established aeroplane status, fuel remaining, and where possible field conditions and aerodrome services and facilities at designated ETOPS en-route alternates are to be evaluated. If any conditions are identified which could preclude safe approach and landing on a designated en-route alternate aerodrome, then the flight crew should take appropriate action, such as re-routing as necessary, to remain within the operator's approved diversion time of an en-route alternate aerodrome with forecast weather to be at or above landing minima. In

the event this is not possible, the next nearest en-route alternate aerodrome should be selected provided the diversion time does not exceed the maximum approved diversion time. This does not override the pilot in command's authority to select the safest course of action.

#### **10. AEROPLANE PERFORMANCE DATA**

The operator should ensure that the Operations Manual contains sufficient data to support the critical fuel reserve and area of operations calculation.

The following data should be based on the information provided by the (S)TC holder. The requirements for one-engine-inoperative performance en-route can be found in the applicable operational requirements.

Detailed one-engine-inoperative performance data including fuel flow for standard and non-standard atmospheric conditions and as a function of airspeed and power setting, where appropriate, covering:

- a. drift down (includes net performance);
- b. cruise altitude coverage including 10,000 feet;
- c. holding;
- d. altitude capability (includes net performance);
- e. missed approach.

Detailed all-engine-operating performance data, including nominal fuel flow data, for standard and non-standard atmospheric conditions and as a function of airspeed and power setting, where appropriate, covering:

- a. Cruise (altitude coverage including 10,000 feet); and
- b. Holding.

It should also contain details of any other conditions relevant to extended range operations which can cause significant deterioration of performance, such as ice accumulation on the unprotected surfaces of the aeroplane, Ram Air Turbine (RAT) deployment, thrust reverser deployment, etc.

The altitudes, airspeeds, thrust settings, and fuel flow used in establishing the ETOPS area of operations for each airframe/engine combination should be used in showing the corresponding terrain and obstruction clearances in accordance with the applicable operational requirements.

#### **11. OPERATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN**

The type of operation (i.e. ETOPS, including the diversion time used to establish the plan) should be listed on the operational flight plan as required by the applicable operational requirements.

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 5 to AMC 20-6 – ETOPS En-Route Alternate Aerodromes

ED Decision 2010/012/R

### 1. SELECTION OF EN-ROUTE ALTERNATE AERODROMES

For an aerodrome to be nominated as an ETOPS en-route alternate for the purpose of this AMC, it should be anticipated that at the expected times of possible use it is an adequate ETOPS aerodrome that meets the weather and field conditions defined in the paragraph below titled ‘Dispatch Minima – En-Route Alternate Aerodromes’ or the applicable operational requirements.

To list an aerodrome as an ETOPS en-route alternate, the following criteria should be met:

- a. The landing distances required as specified in the AFM for the altitude of the aerodrome, for the runway expected to be used, taking into account wind conditions, runway surface conditions, and aeroplane handling characteristics, permit the aeroplane to be stopped within the landing distance available as declared by the aerodrome authorities and computed in accordance with the applicable operational requirements.
- b. The aerodrome services and facilities are adequate to permit an instrument approach procedure to the runway expected to be used while complying with the applicable aerodrome operating minima.
- c. The latest available forecast weather conditions for a period commencing at the earliest potential time of landing and ending one hour after the latest nominated time of use of that aerodrome, equals or exceeds the authorised weather minima for en-route alternate aerodromes as provided for by the increments listed in Table 1 of this Appendix. In addition, for the same period, the forecast crosswind component plus any gusts should be within operating limits and within the operators maximum crosswind limitations taking into account the runway condition (dry, wet or contaminated) plus any reduced visibility limits.
- d. In addition, the operator’s programme should provide flight crews with information on adequate aerodromes appropriate to the route to be flown which are not forecast to meet en-route alternate weather minima. Aerodrome facility information and other appropriate planning data concerning these aerodromes should be provided to flight crews for use when executing a diversion.

### 2. DISPATCH MINIMA – EN-ROUTE ALTERNATE AERODROMES

An aerodrome may be nominated as an ETOPS en-route alternate for flight planning and release purposes if the available forecast weather conditions for a period commencing at the earliest potential time of landing and ending one hour after the latest nominated time of use of that aerodrome, equal or exceed the criteria required by Table 1 below.

**Table 1. Planning Minima**

Approach Facility	Ceiling	Visibility
Precision Approach	Authorised DH/DA plus an increment of 200 ft	Authorised visibility plus an increment of 800 metres
Non-Precision Approach or Circling approach	Authorised MDH/MDA plus an increment of 400 ft	Authorised visibility plus an increment of 1500 metres

The above criteria for precision approaches are only to be applied to Category 1 approaches.

When determining the usability of an Instrument Approach (IAP), forecast wind plus any gusts should be within operating limits, and within the operators maximum crosswind limitations taking into account the runway condition (dry, wet or contaminated) plus any reduced visibility limits. Conditional forecast elements need not be considered, except that a PROB 40 or TEMPO condition below the lowest applicable operating minima should be taken into account.

When dispatching under the provisions of the MEL, those MEL limitations affecting instrument approach minima should be considered in determining ETOPS alternate minima.

### 3. EN-ROUTE ALTERNATE AERODROME PLANNING MINIMA – ADVANCED LANDING SYSTEMS

The increments required by Table 1 are normally not applicable to Category II or III minima unless specifically approved by the Authority.

Approval will be based on the following criteria:

- a. Aircraft is capable of engine-inoperative Cat II/III landing; and
- b. Operator is approved for normal Cat II/III operations.

The competent authority may require additional data (such as safety assessment or in-service records) to support such an application. For example, it should be shown that the specific aeroplane type can maintain the capability to safely conduct and complete the Category II/III approach and landing, in accordance with EASA CS-AWO, having encountered failure conditions in the airframe and/or propulsion systems associated with an inoperative engine that would result in the need for a diversion to the route alternate aerodrome.

Systems to support one-engine inoperative Category II or III capability should be serviceable if required to take advantage of Category II or III landing minima at the planning stage.

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 6 to AMC 20-6 – ETOPS Training Programme

*ED Decision 2010/012/R*

The operator's ETOPS training programme should provide initial and recurrent training for flight crew as follows:

### 1. INTRODUCTION TO ETOPS REGULATIONS

- a. Brief overview of the history of ETOPS;
- b. ETOPS regulations;
- c. Definitions;
- d. Approved One-Engine-Inoperative Cruise Speed;
- e. ETOPS Type Design Approval – a brief synopsis;
- f. Maximum approved diversion times and time-limited systems capability;
- g. Operator's Approved Diversion Time;
- h. Routes and aerodromes intended to be used in the ETOPS area of operations;
- i. ETOPS Operations Approval;
- j. ETOPS Area and Routes;
- k. ETOPS en-route alternates aerodromes including all available let-down aids;
- l. Navigation systems accuracy, limitations and operating procedures;
- m. Meteorological facilities and availability of information;
- n. In-flight monitoring procedures;
- o. Computerised Flight Plan;
- p. Orientation charts, including low level planning charts and flight progress charts usage (including position plotting);
- q. Equal Time Point;
- r. Critical fuel.

### 2. NORMAL OPERATIONS

- a. Flight planning and Dispatch
  - (1) ETOPS Fuel requirements
  - (2) Route Alternate selection - weather minima
  - (3) Minimum Equipment List – ETOPS specific
  - (4) ETOPS service check and Tech log
  - (5) Pre-flight FMS Set up
- b. Flight performance progress monitoring
  - (1) Flight management, navigation and communication systems
  - (2) Aeroplane system monitoring
  - (3) Weather monitoring
  - (4) In-flight fuel management – to include independent cross checking of fuel quantity

**3. ABNORMAL AND CONTINGENCY PROCEDURES:**

- a. Diversion Procedures and Diversion 'decision making'.  
Initial and recurrent training to prepare flight crews to evaluate potential significant system failures. The goal of this training should be to establish crew competency in dealing with the most probable contingencies. The discussion should include the factors that may require medical, passenger related or non-technical diversions.
- b. Navigation and communication systems, including appropriate flight management devices in degraded modes.
- c. Fuel Management with degraded systems.
- d. Initial and recurrent training which emphasises abnormal and emergency procedures to be followed in the event of foreseeable failures for each area of operation, including:
  - (1) Procedures for single and multiple failures in flight affecting ETOPS sector entry and diversion decisions. If standby sources of electrical power significantly degrade the cockpit instrumentation to the pilots, then training for approaches with the standby generator as the sole power source should be conducted during initial and recurrent training.
  - (2) Operational restrictions associated with these system failures including any applicable MEL considerations.

**4. ETOPS LINE FLYING UNDER SUPERVISION (LFUS)**

During the introduction into service of a new ETOPS type, or conversion of pilots not previously ETOPS qualified where ETOPS approval is sought, a minimum of two ETOPS sectors should be completed including an ETOPS line check.

ETOPS subjects should also be included in annual refresher training as part of the normal process.

**5. FLIGHT OPERATIONS PERSONNEL OTHER THAN FLIGHT CREW**

The operator's training programme in respect to ETOPS should provide training where applicable for operations personnel other than flight crew (e.g. dispatchers), in addition to refresher training in the following areas:

- a. ETOPS Regulations/Operations Approval
- b. Aeroplane performance/Diversion procedures
- c. Area of Operation
- d. Fuel Requirements
- e. Dispatch Considerations MEL, CDL, weather minima, and alternate airports
- f. Documentation

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 7 to AMC 20-6 – Typical ETOPS Operations Manual Supplement

*ED Decision 2010/012/R*

The ETOPS operations manual can take the form of a supplement or a dedicated manual, and it could be divided under these headings as follows:

### **PART A. GENERAL/BASIC**

- a. Introduction
  - (1) Brief description of ETOPS
  - (2) Definitions
- b. Operations approval
  - (1) Criteria
  - (2) Assessment
  - (3) Approved diversion time
- c. Training and Checking
- d. Operating procedures
- e. ETOPS operational procedures
- f. ETOPS Flight Preparation and Planning
  - (1) Aeroplane serviceability
  - (2) ETOPS Orientation charts
  - (3) ETOPS alternate aerodrome selection
  - (4) En-route alternate weather requirements for planning
  - (5) ETOPS computerised Flight Plans
- g. Flight Crew Procedures
  - (1) Dispatch
  - (2) Re-routing or diversion decision-making
  - (3) ETOPS verification (following maintenance) flight requirements
  - (4) En-route Monitoring

### **PART B. AEROPLANE OPERATING MATTERS**

This part should include type-related instructions and procedures needed for ETOPS.

- a. Specific type-related ETOPS operations
  - (1) ETOPS specific limitations
  - (2) Types of ETOPS operations that are approved
  - (3) Placards and limitations
  - (4) OEI speed(s)
  - (5) Identification of ETOPS aeroplanes

- b. Dispatch and flight planning, plus in-flight planning
  - (1) Type-specific flight planning instructions for use during dispatch and post dispatch
  - (2) Procedures for engine(s)-out operations, ETOPS (particularly the one-engine-inoperative cruise speed and maximum distance to an adequate aerodrome should be included)
- c. ETOPS Fuel Planning
- d. Critical Fuel Scenario
- e. MEL/CDL considerations
- f. ETOPS specific Minimum Equipment List items
- g. Aeroplane Systems
  - (1) Aeroplane performance data including speed schedules and power settings
  - (2) Aeroplane technical differences, special equipment (e.g. satellite communications) and modifications required for ETOPS

#### **PART C. ROUTE AND AERODROME INSTRUCTIONS**

This part should comprise all instructions and information needed for the area of operation, to include the following as necessary:

- a. ETOPS area and routes, approved area(s) of operations and associated limiting distances
- b. ETOPS an-route alternates
- c. Meteorological facilities and availability of information for in-flight monitoring
- d. Specific ETOPS computerised Flight Plan information
- e. Low altitude cruise information, minimum diversion altitude, minimum oxygen requirements and any additional oxygen required on specified routes if MSA restrictions apply
- f. Aerodrome characteristics (landing distance available, take off distance available) and weather minima for aerodromes that are designated as possible alternates

#### **PART D. TRAINING**

This part should contain the route and aerodrome training for ETOPS operations. This training should have twelve-months of validity or as required by the applicable operational requirements. Flight crew training records for ETOPS should be retained for 3 years or as required by the applicable requirements.

The operator's training programme in respect to ETOPS should include initial and recurrent training/checking as specified in this AMC.

[Amdt 20/7]

## Appendix 8 to AMC 20-6 – Continuing Airworthiness Considerations

*ED Decision 2010/012/R*

### 1. APPLICABILITY

The requirements of this Appendix apply to the continuing airworthiness management organisations (CAMO) managing the aircraft for which an ETOPS operational approval is sought, and they are to be complied with in addition to the applicable continuing airworthiness requirements of Part-M. They specifically affect:

- a. Occurrence reporting;
- b. Aircraft maintenance programme and reliability programme;
- c. Continuing airworthiness management exposition;
- d. Competence of continuing airworthiness and maintenance personnel.

### 2. OCCURRENCE REPORTING

In addition to the items generally required to be reported in accordance with AMC 20-8, the following items concerning ETOPS should be included:

- a. in-flight shutdowns;
- b. diversion or turn-back;
- c. un-commanded power changes or surges;
- d. inability to control the engine or obtain desired power; and
- e. failures or malfunctions of ETOPS significant systems having a detrimental effect to ETOPS flight.

Note: status messages, transient failures, intermittent indication of failure, messages tested satisfactorily on ground not duplicating the failure should only be reported after an assessment by the operator that an unacceptable trend has occurred on the system

The report should identify as applicable the following:

- a. aircraft identification;
- b. engine, propeller or APU identification (make and serial number);
- c. total time, cycles and time since last shop visit;
- d. for systems, time since overhaul or last inspection of the defective unit;
- e. phase of flight; and
- f. corrective action.

The Competent Authority and the (S)TC holder should be notified within 72 hours of events reportable through this programme.

### 3. MAINTENANCE PROGRAMME AND RELIABILITY PROGRAMME

The quality of maintenance and reliability programmes can have an appreciable effect on the reliability of the propulsion system and the ETOPS Significant Systems. The Competent Authority should assess the proposed maintenance and reliability programme's ability to maintain an acceptable level of safety for the propulsion system and the ETOPS Significant Systems of the particular airframe/engine combination.

### 3.1 MAINTENANCE PROGRAMME:

The maintenance programme of an aircraft for which ETOPS operational approval is sought, should contain the standards, guidance and instructions necessary to support the intended operation. The specific ETOPS maintenance tasks identified by the (S)TC holder in the Configuration, Maintenance and Procedures document (CMP) or equivalent should be included in the maintenance programme and identified as ETOPS tasks.

An ETOPS Maintenance task could be an ETOPS specific task or/and a maintenance task affecting an ETOPS significant system. An ETOPS specific task could be either an existing task with a different interval for ETOPS, a task unique to ETOPS operations, or a task mandated by the CMP further to the in-service experience review (note that in the case ETOPS is considered as baseline in the development of a maintenance program, no “ETOPS specific” task may be identified in the MRB).

The maintenance programme should include tasks to maintain the integrity of cargo compartment and pressurisation features, including baggage hold liners, door seals and drain valve condition. Processes should be implemented to monitor the effectiveness of the maintenance programme in this regard.

#### 3.1.1 PRE-DEPARTURE SERVICE CHECK

An ETOPS service check should be developed to verify the status of the aeroplane and the ETOPS significant systems. This check should be accomplished by an authorised and trained person prior to an ETOPS flight. Such a person may be a member of the flight crew.

### 3.2 RELIABILITY PROGRAMME:

#### 3.2.1 GENERAL

The reliability programme of an ETOPS operated aircraft should be designed with early identification and prevention of failures or malfunctions of ETOPS significant systems as the primary goal. Therefore the reliability programme should include assessment of ETOPS Significant Systems performance during scheduled inspection/testing, to detect system failure trends in order to implement appropriate corrective action such as scheduled task adjustment.

The reliability programme should be event-orientated and incorporate:

- a. reporting procedures in accordance with section 2: Occurrence reporting
- b. operator’s assessment of propulsion systems reliability
- c. APU in-flight start programme
- d. Oil consumption programme
- e. Engine Condition Monitoring programme
- f. Verification programme

#### 3.2.2 ASSESSMENT OF PROPULSION SYSTEMS RELIABILITY

- a. The operator’s assessment of propulsion systems reliability for the ETOPS fleet should be made available to the competent Authority (with the supporting data) on at least a monthly basis, to ensure that the approved

maintenance programme continues to maintain a level of reliability necessary for ETOPS operations as established in chapter II section 6.3.

- b. The assessment should include, as a minimum, engine hours flown in the period, in-flight shutdown rate for all causes and engine removal rate, both on a 12-months moving average basis. Where the combined ETOPS fleet is part of a larger fleet of the same aircraft/engine combination, data from the total fleet will be acceptable.
- c. Any adverse sustained trend to propulsion systems would require an immediate evaluation to be accomplished by the operator in consultation with the competent authority. The evaluation may result in corrective action or operational restrictions being applied.
- d. A high engine in-flight shutdown rate for a small fleet may be due to the limited number of engine operating hours and may not be indicative for an unacceptable trend. The underlying causes for such an increase in the rate will have to be reviewed on a case-by-case basis in order to identify the root cause of events so that the appropriate corrective action is implemented.
- e. If an operator has an unacceptable engine in-flight shutdown rate caused by maintenance or operational practices, then the appropriated corrective actions should be taken.

### 3.2.3 APU IN-FLIGHT START PROGRAMME

- a. Where an APU is required for ETOPS and the aircraft is not operated with this APU running prior to the ETOPS entry point, the operator should initially implement a cold soak in-flight starting programme to verify that start reliability at cruise altitude is above 95%.

Once the APU in-flight start reliability is proven, the APU in-flight start monitoring programme may be alleviated. The APU in-flight start monitoring programme should be acceptable to the competent authority.

- b. The Maintenance procedures should include the verification of in-flight start reliability following maintenance of the APU and APU components, as defined by the OEM, where start reliability at altitude may have been affected.

### 3.2.4 OIL CONSUMPTION MONITORING PROGRAMME

The oil consumption monitoring programme should reflect the (S)TC holder's recommendations and track oil consumption trends. The monitoring programme must be continuous and include all oil added at the departure station.

If oil analysis is recommended to the type of engine installed, it should be included in the programme.

If the APU is required for ETOPS dispatch, an APU oil consumption monitoring programme should be added to the oil consumption monitoring programme.

### 3.2.5 ENGINE CONDITION MONITORING PROGRAMME

The engine condition monitoring programme should ensure that a one-engine-inoperative diversion may be conducted without exceeding approved engine limits (e.g. rotor speeds, exhaust gas temperature) at all approved power levels and expected environmental conditions. Engine limits established in the monitoring

programme should account for the effects of additional engine loading demands (e.g. anti-icing, electrical, etc.), which may be required during the one-engine-inoperative flight phase associated with the diversion.

The engine condition monitoring programme should describe the parameters to be monitored, method of data collection and corrective action process. The programme should reflect manufacturer's instructions and industry practice. This monitoring will be used to detect deterioration at an early stage to allow for corrective action before safe operation of the aircraft is affected.

#### 3.2.6 VERIFICATION PROGRAMME

The operator should develop a verification programme to ensure that the corrective action required to be accomplished following an engine shutdown, any ETOPS significant system failure or adverse trends or any event which require a verification flight or other verification action are established. A clear description of who must initiate verification actions and the section or group responsible for the determination of what action is necessary should be identified in this verification programme. ETOPS significant systems or conditions requiring verification actions should be described in the Continuing Airworthiness Management Exposition (CAME). The CAMO may request the support of (S)TC holder to identify when these actions are necessary. Nevertheless the CAMO may propose alternative operational procedures to ensure system integrity. This may be based on system monitoring in the period of flight prior to entering an ETOPS area.

### 4. CONTINUING AIRWORTHINESS MANAGEMENT EXPOSITION

The CAMO should develop appropriate procedures to be used by all personnel involved in the continuing airworthiness and maintenance of the aircraft, including supportive training programmes, duties, and responsibilities.

The CAMO should specify the procedures necessary to ensure the continuing airworthiness of the aircraft particularly related to ETOPS operations. It should address the following subjects as applicable:

- a. General description of ETOPS procedures
- b. ETOPS maintenance programme development and amendment
- c. ETOPS reliability programme procedures
  - (1) Engine/APU oil consumption monitoring
  - (2) Engine/APU Oil analysis
  - (3) Engine conditioning monitoring
  - (4) APU in-flight start programme
  - (5) Verification programme after maintenance
  - (6) Failures, malfunctions and defect reporting
  - (7) Propulsion System Monitoring/Reporting
  - (8) ETOPS significant systems reliability
- d. Parts and configuration control programme
- e. Maintenance procedures that include procedures to preclude identical errors being applied to multiple similar elements in any ETOPS significant system

- f. Interface procedures with the ETOPS maintenance contractor, including the operator ETOPS procedures that involve the maintenance organisation and the specific requirements of the contract
- g. Procedures to establish and control the competence of the personnel involved in the continuing airworthiness and maintenance of the ETOPS fleet.

## **5. COMPETENCE OF CONTINUING AIRWORTHINESS AND MAINTENANCE PERSONNEL**

The CAMO organisation should ensure that the personnel involved in the continuing airworthiness management of the aircraft have knowledge of the ETOPS procedures of the operator.

The CAMO should ensure that maintenance personnel that are involved in ETOPS maintenance tasks:

- a. Have completed an ETOPS training programme reflecting the relevant ETOPS procedures of the operator, and,
- b. Have satisfactorily performed ETOPS tasks under supervision, within the framework of the Part-145 approved procedures for Personnel Authorisation.

### **5.1. PROPOSED TRAINING PROGRAMME FOR PERSONNEL INVOLVED IN THE CONTINUING AIRWORTHINESS AND MAINTENANCE OF THE ETOPS FLEET**

The operator's ETOPS training programme should provide initial and recurrent training for as follows:

1. INTRODUCTION TO ETOPS REGULATIONS
  - a. Contents of AMC 20-6
  - b. ETOPS Type Design Approval – a brief synopsis
2. ETOPS OPERATIONS APPROVAL
  - a. Maximum approved diversion times and time-limited systems capability
  - b. Operator's Approved Diversion Time
  - c. ETOPS Area and Routes
  - d. ETOPS MEL
3. ETOPS CONTINUING AIRWORTHINESS CONSIDERATIONS
  - a. ETOPS significant systems
  - b. CMP and ETOPS aircraft maintenance programme
  - c. ETOPS pre-departure service check
  - d. ETOPS reliability programme procedures
    - (1) Engine/ APU oil consumption monitoring
    - (2) Engine/APU Oil analysis
    - (3) Engine conditioning monitoring
    - (4) APU in-flight start programme
    - (5) Verification programme after maintenance
    - (6) Failures, malfunctions and defect reporting

- 
- (7) Propulsion System Monitoring/Reporting
  - (8) ETOPS significant systems reliability
  - e. Parts and configuration control programme
  - f. CAMO additional procedures for ETOPS
  - g. Interface procedures between Part-145 organisation and CAMO

[Amdt 20/7]

## AMC 20-8

### AMC 20-8 Occurrence Reporting

*ED Decision 2003/12/RM*

#### 1. INTENT

This AMC is interpretative material and provides guidance in order to determine which occurrences should be reported to the Agency, national authorities and to other organisations, and it provides guidance on the timescale for submission of such reports.

It also describes the objective of the overall occurrence reporting system including internal and external functions

#### 2. APPLICABILITY

- (a) This AMC only applies to occurrence reporting by persons/organisations regulated by Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 of the European Parliament and of the Council. It does not address reporting by aerodrome organisations, air navigation service providers and authorities themselves.
- (b) In most cases the obligation to report is on the holders of a certificate or approval, which in most cases are organisations, but in some cases can be a single person. In addition some reporting requirements are directed to persons. However, in order not to complicate the text, only the term 'organisation' is used.
- (c) The AMC also does not apply to dangerous goods reporting. The definition of reportable dangerous goods occurrences is different from the other occurrences and the reporting system is also separate. This subject is covered in specific operating requirements and guidance and ICAO Documents namely:
  - (i) ICAO Annex 18, The safe Transport of Dangerous Goods by Air, Chapter 12
  - (ii) ICAO Doc 9284-AN/905, Technical Instructions for the Safe Transport of Dangerous Goods by Air

#### 3. OBJECTIVE OF OCCURRENCE REPORTING

- (a) The occurrence reporting system is an essential part of the overall monitoring function. The objective of the occurrence reporting, collection, investigation and analysis systems described in the operating rules, and the airworthiness rules is to use the reported information to contribute to the improvement of aviation safety, and not to attribute blame, impose fines or take other enforcement actions.
- (b) The detailed objectives of the occurrence reporting systems are:
  - (i) To enable an assessment of the safety implications of each occurrence to be made, including previous similar occurrences, so that any necessary action can be initiated. This includes determining what and why it had occurred and what might prevent a similar occurrence in the future.
  - (ii) To ensure that knowledge of occurrences is disseminated so that other persons and organisations may learn from them.
- (c) The occurrence reporting system is complementary to the normal day to day procedures and 'control' systems and is not intended to duplicate or supersede any of them. The

occurrence reporting system is a tool to identify those occasions where routine procedures have failed.

- (d) Occurrences should remain in the database when judged reportable by the person submitting the report as the significance of such reports may only become obvious at a later date.

#### **4. REPORTING TO THE AGENCY AND NATIONAL AUTHORITIES**

- (a) Requirements
  - (i) As detailed in the operating rules, occurrences defined as an incident, malfunction, defect, to prevent similar occurrences in the future. Known and planned preventive actions should be included within the report.
  - (ii) The products and part and appliances design rules prescribe that occurrences defined as a failure, malfunction, defect or other occurrence which has resulted in or may result in an unsafe condition must be reported to the Agency.
  - (iii) According to the product and part and appliances production rules occurrences defined as a deviation which could lead to an unsafe condition must be reported to the Agency and the national authority.
  - (iv) The maintenance rules stipulate that occurrences defined as any condition of the aircraft or aircraft component that has resulted or may result in an unsafe condition that could seriously hazard the aircraft must be reported to the national authority.
  - (v) Reporting does not remove the reporter's or organisation's responsibility to commence corrective actions to prevent similar occurrences in the future. Known and planned preventive actions should be included within the report.
- (b) Paragraph 10.g. of this AMC provides guidance as to what should be reported by an organisation to the authority. The list of criteria provided may be used as guidance for establishing which occurrences shall be reported by which organisation. For example, the organisation responsible for the design will not need to report certain operational occurrences that it has been made aware of, if the continuing airworthiness of the product is not involved.

#### **5. NOTIFICATION OF ACCIDENTS AND SERIOUS INCIDENTS**

In addition to the requirement to notify the appropriate accident investigating authorities directly of any accident or serious incident, operators should also report to the national authority in charge of supervising the reporting organisation

#### **6. REPORTING TIME**

- (a) The period of 72 hours is normally understood to start from when the occurrence took place or from the time when the reporter determined that there was, or could have been, a potentially hazardous or unsafe condition.
- (b) For many occurrences there is no evaluation needed; it must be reported. However, there will be occasions when, as part of a Flight Safety and Accident Prevention programme or Quality Programme, a previously non-reportable occurrence is determined to be reportable
- (c) Within the overall limit of 72 hours for the submission of a report, the degree of urgency should be determined by the level of hazard judged to have resulted from the occurrence:

- (i) Where an occurrence is judged to have resulted in an immediate and particularly significant hazard the Agency and/or national authority expects to be advised immediately, and by the fastest possible means (e.g. telephone, fax, telex, e-mail) of whatever details are available at that time. This initial notification should then be followed up by a report within 72 hours.
- (ii) Where the occurrence is judged to have resulted in a less immediate and less significant hazard, report submission may be delayed up to the maximum of 72 hours in order to provide more details or more reliable information.

## **7. CONTENT OF REPORTS**

- (a) Notwithstanding other required reporting means as promulgated in national requirements (e.g. AIRPROX reporting), reports may be transmitted in any form considered acceptable to the Agency and/or national authority. The amount of information in the report should be commensurate with the severity of the occurrence. Each report should at least contain the following elements, as applicable to each organisation:
  - (i) Organisation name
  - (ii) Approval reference (if relevant)
  - (iii) Information necessary to identify the aircraft or part affected.
  - (iv) Date and time if relevant
  - (v) A written summary of the occurrence
  - (vi) Any other specific information required
- (b) For any occurrence involving a system or component, which is monitored or protected by a warning and/or protection system (for example: fire detection/extinguishing) the occurrence report should always state whether such system(s) functioned properly.

## **8. NOTIFICATION TO OTHER AGENCIES**

For approved operations organisations, in addition to reporting occurrences to the national authority, the following agencies should also be notified in specific cases:

- (a) Reports relating to 'security incidents' should also be notified to the appropriate local security agency
- (b) Reports relating to air traffic, aerodrome occurrences or bird strikes should also be notified to the appropriate air navigation, aerodrome or ground agency
- (c) Requirements for reporting and assessment of safety occurrences in ATM within the ECAC Region are harmonised within EUROCONTROL document ESARR 2.

## **9. REPORTING BETWEEN ORGANISATIONS**

- (a) Requirements exist that address the reporting of data relating to unsafe or unairworthy conditions. These reporting lines are:
  - (i) Production Organisation to the organisation responsible for the design;
  - (ii) Maintenance organisation to the organisation responsible for the design;
  - (iii) Maintenance organisation to operator;
  - (iv) Operator to organisation responsible for the design;

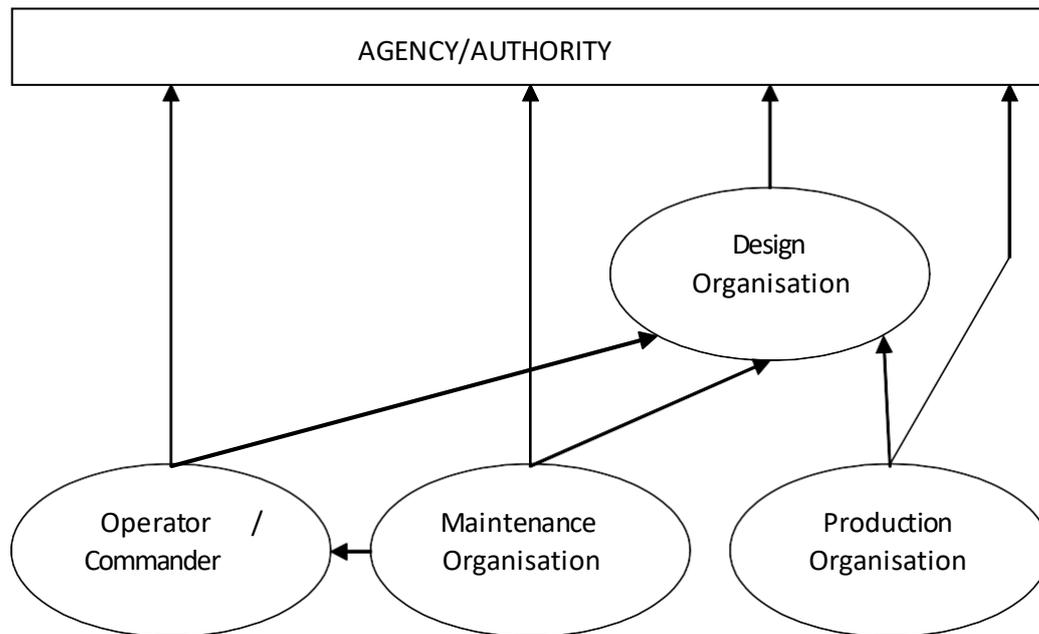
- (v) Production organisation to production organisation.
- (b) The 'Organisation responsible for the design' is a general term, which can be any one or a combination of the following organisations
  - (i) Holder of Type Certificate (TC) of an Aircraft, Engine or Propeller;
  - (ii) Holder of a Supplemental Type Certificate (STC) on an Aircraft, Engine or Propeller;
  - (iii) Holder of a European Technical Standard Order (ETSO) Authorisation; or
  - (iv) Holder of a European Part Approval (EPA)
- (c) If it can be determined that the occurrence has an impact on or is related to an aircraft component which is covered by a separate design approval (TC, STC, ETSO or EPA), then the holders of such approval/authorisation should be informed. If an occurrence happens on a component which is covered by an TC, STC, ETSO or EPA (e.g. during maintenance), then only that TC, STC, ETSO Authorisation or EPA holder needs to be informed.
- (d) The form and timescale for reports to be exchanged between organisations is left for individual organisations to determine. What is important is that a relationship exists between the organisations to ensure that there is an exchange of information relating to occurrences.
- (e) Paragraph 10.g. of this AMC provides guidance as to what should be reported by an organisation to the authority. The list of criteria provided may be used as guidance for establishing which occurrences shall be reported to which organisation. For example, certain operational occurrences will not need to be reported by an operator to the design or production organisation.

## **10. REPORTABLE OCCURRENCES**

- (a) General. There are different reporting requirements for operators (and/or commanders), maintenance organisations, design organisations and production organisations. Moreover, as explained in paragraph 4. and 9. above, there are not only requirements for reporting to the Agency and national authority, but also for reporting to other (private) entities. The criteria for all these different reporting lines are not the same. For example the authority will not receive the same kind of reports from a design organisation as from an operator. This is a reflection of the different perspectives of the organisations based on their activities.

Figure 1 presents a simplified scheme of all reporting lines.

Figure 1



- (b) Operations and Maintenance. The list of examples of reportable occurrences offered below under g. is established from the perspective of primary sources of occurrence information in the operational area (operators and maintenance organisations) to provide guidance for those persons developing criteria for individual organisations on what they need to report to the Agency and/or national authority. The list is neither definitive nor exhaustive and judgement by the reporter of the degree of hazard or potential hazard involved is essential.
- (c) Design. The list of examples will not be used by design organisations directly for the purpose of determining when a report has to be made to the authority, but it can serve as guidance for the establishment of the system for collecting data. After receipt of reports from the primary sources of information, designers will normally perform some kind of analysis to determine whether an occurrence has resulted or may result in an unsafe condition and a report to the authority should be made. An analysis method for determining when an unsafe condition exists in relation to continuing airworthiness is detailed in the AMC's regarding the issuance of Airworthiness Directives.
- (d) Production. The list of examples is not applicable to the reporting obligation of production organisations. Their primary concern is to inform the design organisation of deviations. Only in cases where an analysis in conjunction with that design organisation shows that the deviation could lead to an unsafe condition, should a report be made to the Agency and/or national authority (see also c. above).
- (e) Customised list. Each approval, certificate, authorisation other than those mentioned in sub paragraph c and d above, should develop a customised list adapted to its aircraft, operation or product. The list of reportable occurrences applicable to an organisation is usually published within the organisation's expositions/handbooks/manuals
- (f) Internal reporting. The perception of safety is central to occurrence reporting. It is for each organisation to determine what is safe and what is unsafe and to develop its reporting system on that basis. The organisation should establish an internal reporting system whereby reports are centrally collected and reviewed to establish which reports

meet the criteria for occurrence reporting to the Agency and/or national authority and other organisations, as required.

(g) List of examples of reportable occurrences

The following is a generic list. Not all examples are applicable to each reporting organisation. Therefore each organisation should define and agree with the Agency and/or national authority a specific list of reportable occurrences or a list of more generic criteria, tailored to its activity and scope of work (see also 10.e above). In establishing that customised list, the organisation should take into account the following considerations:

Reportable occurrences are those where the safety of operation was or could have been endangered or which could have led to an unsafe condition. If in the view of the reporter an occurrence did not hazard the safety of the operation but if repeated in different but likely circumstances would create a hazard, then a report should be made. What is judged to be reportable on one class of product, part or appliance may not be so on another and the absence or presence of a single factor, human or technical, can transform an occurrence into a serious incident or accident.

Specific operational approvals, e.g. RVSM, ETOPS, RNAV, or a design or maintenance programme, may have specific reporting requirements for failures or malfunctions associated with that approval or programme.

A lot of the qualifying adjectives like 'significant' have been deleted from the list. In stead it is expected that all examples are qualified by the reporter using the general criteria that are applicable in his field, and specified in the requirement. (e.g. for operators: 'hazards or could have hazarded the operation')

**CONTENTS:**

**I. AIRCRAFT FLIGHT OPERATIONS**

**II. AIRCRAFT TECHNICAL**

**III. AIRCRAFT MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR**

**IV. AIR NAVIGATION SERVICES, FACILITIES AND GROUND SERVICES**

**I. AIRCRAFT FLIGHT OPERATIONS**

**A. Operation of the Aircraft**

- (1)
  - (a) Risk of collision with an aircraft, terrain or other object or an unsafe situation when avoidance action would have been appropriate.
  - (b) An avoidance manoeuvre required to avoid a collision with an aircraft, terrain or other object.
  - (c) An avoidance manoeuvre to avoid other unsafe situations.
- (2) Take-off or landing incidents, including precautionary or forced landings. Incidents such as under-shooting, overrunning or running off the side of runways. Take-offs, rejected take-offs, landings or attempted landings on a closed, occupied or incorrect runway. Runway incursions.

- (3) Inability to achieve predicted performance during take-off or initial climb.
- (4) Critically low fuel quantity or inability to transfer fuel or use total quantity of usable fuel.
- (5) Loss of control (including partial or temporary loss of control) from any cause.
- (6) Occurrences close to or above V1 resulting from or producing a hazardous or potentially hazardous situation (e.g. rejected take-off, tail strike, engine power loss etc.).
- (7) Go-around producing a hazardous or potentially hazardous situation.
- (8) Unintentional significant deviation from airspeed, intended track or altitude. (more than 91 m (300 ft)) from any cause.
- (9) Descent below decision height/altitude or minimum descent height/altitude without the required visual reference.
- (10) Loss of position awareness relative to actual position or to other aircraft.
- (11) Breakdown in communication between flight crew (CRM) or between Flight crew and other parties (cabin crew, ATC, engineering).
- (12) Heavy landing - a landing deemed to require a 'heavy landing check'.
- (13) Exceedance of fuel imbalance limits.
- (14) Incorrect setting of an SSR code or of an altimeter subscale.
- (15) Incorrect programming of, or erroneous entries into, equipment used for navigation or performance calculations, or use of incorrect data.
- (16) Incorrect receipt or interpretation of radiotelephony messages.
- (17) Fuel system malfunctions or defects, which had an effect on fuel supply and/or distribution.
- (18) Aircraft unintentionally departing a paved surface.
- (19) Collision between an aircraft and any other aircraft, vehicle or other ground object.
- (20) Inadvertent and/or incorrect operation of any controls.
- (21) Inability to achieve the intended aircraft configuration for any flight phase (e.g. landing gear and doors, flaps, stabilisers, slats etc).
- (22) A hazard or potential hazard which arises as a consequence of any deliberate simulation of failure conditions for training, system checks or training purposes.
- (23) Abnormal vibration.
- (24) Operation of any primary warning system associated with manoeuvring of the aircraft e.g. configuration warning, stall warning (stick shake), over speed warning etc. unless:

- (a) the crew conclusively established that the indication was false. Provided that the false warning did not result in difficulty or hazard arising from the crew response to the warning; or
  - (b) operated for training or test purposes.
- (25) GPWS/TAWS 'warning' when:
- (a) the aircraft comes into closer proximity to the ground than had been planned or anticipated; or
  - (b) the warning is experienced in IMC or at night and is established as having been triggered by a high rate of descent (Mode 1); or
  - (c) the warning results from failure to select landing gear or land flap by the appropriate point on the approach (Mode 4); or
  - (d) any difficulty or hazard arises or might have arisen as a result of crew response to the 'warning' e.g. possible reduced separation from other traffic. This could include warning of any Mode or Type i.e. genuine, nuisance or false.
- (26) GPWS/TAWS 'alert' when any difficulty or hazard arises or might have arisen as a result of crew response to the 'alert'.
- (27) ACAS RAs.
- (28) Jet or prop blast incidents resulting in significant damage or serious injury.

## **B. Emergencies**

- (1) Fire, explosion, smoke or toxic or noxious fumes, even though fires were extinguished.
- (2) The use of any non-standard procedure by the flight or cabin crew to deal with an emergency when:
  - (a) the procedure exists but is not used; or
  - (b) a procedure does not exist; or
  - (c) the procedure exists but is incomplete or inappropriate; or
  - (d) the procedure is incorrect; or
  - (e) the incorrect procedure is used.
- (3) Inadequacy of any procedures designed to be used in an emergency, including when being used for maintenance, training or test purposes.
- (4) An event leading to an emergency evacuation.
- (5) Depressurisation.
- (6) The use of any emergency equipment or prescribed emergency procedures in order to deal with a situation.
- (7) An event leading to the declaration of an emergency ('Mayday' or 'Pan').

(8) Failure of any emergency system or equipment, including all exit doors and lighting, to perform satisfactorily, including when being used for maintenance, training or test purposes.

(9) Events requiring any emergency use of oxygen by any crew member.

**C. Crew Incapacitation**

(1) Incapacitation of any member of the flight crew, including that which occurs prior to departure if it is considered that it could have resulted in incapacitation after take-off.

(2) Incapacitation of any member of the cabin crew which renders them unable to perform essential emergency duties.

**D. Injury**

(1) Occurrences, which have or could have led to significant injury to passengers or crew but which are not considered reportable as an accident.

**E. Meteorology**

(1) A lightning strike which resulted in damage to the aircraft or loss or malfunction of any essential service.

(2) A hail strike which resulted in damage to the aircraft or loss or malfunction of any essential service.

(3) Severe turbulence encounter – an encounter resulting in injury to occupants or deemed to require a ‘turbulence check’ of the aircraft.

(4) A windshear encounter.

(5) Icing encounter resulting in handling difficulties, damage to the aircraft or loss or malfunction of any essential service.

**F. Security**

(1) Unlawful interference with the aircraft including a bomb threat or hijack.

(2) Difficulty in controlling intoxicated, violent or unruly passengers.

(3) Discovery of a stowaway.

**G. Other Occurrences**

(1) Repetitive instances of a specific type of occurrence which in isolation would not be considered 'reportable' but which due to the frequency at which they arise, form a potential hazard.

(2) A bird strike which resulted in damage to the aircraft or loss or malfunction of any essential service.

(3) Wake turbulence encounters.

(4) Any other occurrence of any type considered to have endangered or which might have endangered the aircraft or its occupants on board the aircraft or on the ground.

**II. AIRCRAFT TECHNICAL**

**A. Structural**

Not all structural failures need to be reported. Engineering judgement is required to decide whether a failure is serious enough to be reported. The following examples can be taken into consideration:

- (1) Damage to a Principal Structural Element that has not been qualified as damage tolerant (life limited element). Principal Structural Elements are those which contribute significantly to carrying flight, ground, and pressurisation loads, and whose failure could result in a catastrophic failure of the aircraft. Typical examples of such elements are listed for large aeroplanes in AC/AMC 25.571(a) "damage tolerance and fatigue evaluation of structure", and in the equivalent AMC material for rotorcraft.
- (2) Defect or damage exceeding admissible damages to a Principal Structural Element that has been qualified as damage tolerant.
- (3) Damage to or defect exceeding allowed tolerances of a structural element which failure could reduce the structural stiffness to such an extent that the required flutter, divergence or control reversal margins are no longer achieved.
- (4) Damage to or defect of a structural element, which could result in the liberation of items of mass that may injure occupants of the aircraft.
- (5) Damage to or defect of a structural element, which could jeopardise proper operation of systems. See paragraph II.B. below.
- (6) Loss of any part of the aircraft structure in flight.

**B. Systems**

The following generic criteria applicable to all systems are proposed:

- (1) Loss, significant malfunction or defect of any system, subsystem or set of equipment when standard operating procedures, drills etc. could not be satisfactorily accomplished.
- (2) Inability of the crew to control the system, e.g.:
  - (a) uncommanded actions;
  - (b) incorrect and or incomplete response, including limitation of movement or stiffness;
  - (c) runaway;
  - (d) mechanical disconnection or failure.
- (3) Failure or malfunction of the exclusive function(s) of the system (one system could integrate several functions).
- (4) Interference within or between systems.
- (5) Failure or malfunction of the protection device or emergency system associated with the system.
- (6) Loss of redundancy of the system.
- (7) Any occurrence resulting from unforeseen behaviour of a system.

- (8) For aircraft types with single main systems, subsystems or sets of equipment: Loss, significant malfunction or defect in any main system, subsystem or set of equipment.
- (9) For aircraft types with multiple independent main systems, subsystems or sets of equipment: The loss, significant malfunction or defect of more than one main system, subsystem or set of equipment
- (10) Operation of any primary warning system associated with aircraft systems or equipment unless the crew conclusively established that the indication was false provided that the false warning did not result in difficulty or hazard arising from the crew response to the warning.
- (11) Leakage of hydraulic fluids, fuel, oil or other fluids which resulted in a fire hazard or possible hazardous contamination of aircraft structure, systems or equipment, or risk to occupants.
- (12) Malfunction or defect of any indication system when this results in the possibility of misleading indications to the crew.
- (13) Any failure, malfunction or defect if it occurs at a critical phase of flight and relevant to the operation of that system.
- (14) Occurrences of significant shortfall of the actual performances compared to the approved performance which resulted in a hazardous situation (taking into account the accuracy of the performance calculation method) including braking action, fuel consumption etc.
- (15) Asymmetry of flight controls; e.g. flaps, slats, spoilers etc.

Annex 1 to this AMC gives a list of examples of reportable occurrences resulting from the application of these generic criteria to specific systems

**C. Propulsion (including Engines, Propellers and Rotor Systems) and APUs**

- (1) Flameout, shutdown or malfunction of any engine.
- (2) Overspeed or inability to control the speed of any high speed rotating component (for example: Auxiliary power unit, air starter, air cycle machine, air turbine motor, propeller or rotor).
- (3) Failure or malfunction of any part of an engine or powerplant resulting in any one or more of the following:
  - (a) non containment of components/debris;
  - (b) uncontrolled internal or external fire, or hot gas breakout;
  - (c) thrust in a different direction from that demanded by the pilot;
  - (d) thrust reversing system failing to operate or operating inadvertently;
  - (e) inability to control power, thrust or rpm;
  - (f) failure of the engine mount structure;
  - (g) partial or complete loss of a major part of the powerplant;

- (h) Dense visible fumes or concentrations of toxic products sufficient to incapacitate crew or passengers;
  - (i) inability, by use of normal procedures, to shutdown an engine;
  - (j) inability to restart a serviceable engine.
- (4) An uncommanded thrust/power loss, change or oscillation which is classified as a loss of thrust or power control (LOTTC) as defined in AMC 20-1:
- (a) for a single engine aircraft; or
  - (b) where it is considered excessive for the application, or
  - (c) where this could affect more than one engine in a multi-engine aircraft, particularly in the case of a twin engine aircraft; or
  - (d) for a multi engine aircraft where the same, or similar, engine type is used in an application where the event would be considered hazardous or critical.
- (5) Any defect in a life controlled part causing retirement before completion of its full life.
- (6) Defects of common origin which could cause an in flight shut down rate so high that there is the possibility of more than one engine being shut down on the same flight.
- (7) An engine limiter or control device failing to operate when required or operating inadvertently.
- (8) exceedance of engine parameters.
- (9) FOD resulting in damage.

#### Propellers and -transmission

- (10) Failure or malfunction of any part of a propeller or powerplant resulting in any one or more of the following:
- (a) an overspeed of the propeller;
  - (b) the development of excessive drag;
  - (c) a thrust in the opposite direction to that commanded by the pilot;
  - (d) a release of the propeller or any major portion of the propeller;
  - (e) a failure that results in excessive unbalance;
  - (f) the unintended movement of the propeller blades below the established minimum in-flight low-pitch position;
  - (g) an inability to feather the propeller;
  - (h) an inability to command a change in propeller pitch;
  - (i) an uncommanded change in pitch;
  - (j) an uncontrollable torque or speed fluctuation;
  - (k) The release of low energy parts.

#### Rotors and -transmission

- (11) Damage or defect of main rotor gearbox / attachment which could lead to in flight separation of the rotor assembly, and /or malfunctions of the rotor control.
- (12) Damage to tail rotor, transmission and equivalent systems.

#### APUs

- (13) Shut down or failure when the APU is required to be available by operational requirements, e.g. ETOPS, MEL.
- (14) Inability to shut down the APU.
- (15) Overspeed.
- (16) Inability to start the APU when needed for operational reasons.

#### **D. Human Factors**

- (1) Any incident where any feature or inadequacy of the aircraft design could have led to an error of use that could contribute to a hazardous or catastrophic effect.

#### **E. Other Occurrences**

- (1) Any incident where any feature or inadequacy of the aircraft design could have led to an error of use that could contribute to a hazardous or catastrophic effect.
- (2) An occurrence not normally considered as reportable (for example, furnishing and cabin equipment, water systems), where the circumstances resulted in endangering of the aircraft or its occupants.
- (3) A fire, explosion, smoke or toxic or noxious fumes.
- (4) Any other event which could hazard the aircraft, or affect the safety of the occupants of the aircraft, or people or property in the vicinity of the aircraft or on the ground.
- (5) Failure or defect of passenger address system resulting in loss or inaudible passenger address system.
- (6) Loss of pilots seat control during flight.

### **III. AIRCRAFT MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR**

- A. Incorrect assembly of parts or components of the aircraft found during an inspection or test procedure not intended for that specific purpose.
- B. Hot bleed air leak resulting in structural damage.
- C. Any defect in a life controlled part causing retirement before completion of its full life.
- D. Any damage or deterioration (i.e. fractures, cracks, corrosion, delamination, disbonding etc) resulting from any cause (such as flutter, loss of stiffness or structural failure) to:
  - (1) primary structure or a principal structural element (as defined in the manufacturers' Repair Manual) where such damage or deterioration

- exceeds allowable limits specified in the Repair Manual and requires a repair or complete or partial replacement of the element;
- (2) secondary structure which consequently has or may have endangered the aircraft;
  - (3) the engine, propeller or rotorcraft rotor system.
- E. Any failure, malfunction or defect of any system or equipment, or damage or deterioration found as a result of compliance with an Airworthiness Directive or other mandatory instruction issued by a Regulatory Authority, when:
- (1) it is detected for the first time by the reporting organisation implementing compliance;
  - (2) on any subsequent compliance where it exceeds the permissible limits quoted in the instruction and/or published repair/rectification procedures are not available.
- F. Failure of any emergency system or equipment, including all exit doors and lighting, to perform satisfactorily, including when being used for maintenance or test purposes.
- G. Non compliance or significant errors in compliance with required maintenance procedures.
- H. Products, parts, appliances and materials of unknown or suspect origin.
- I. Misleading, incorrect or insufficient maintenance data or procedures that could lead to maintenance errors.
- J. Failure, malfunction or defect of ground equipment used for test or checking of aircraft systems and equipment when the required routine inspection and test procedures did not clearly identify the problem when this results in a hazardous situation.

#### **IV. AIR NAVIGATION SERVICES, FACILITIES AND GROUND SERVICES**

##### **A. Air Navigation Services**

- (1) Provision of significantly incorrect, inadequate or misleading information from any ground sources, e.g. Air Traffic Control (ATC), Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS), Meteorological Services, navigation databases, maps, charts, manuals, etc.
- (2) Provision of less than prescribed terrain clearance.
- (3) Provision of incorrect pressure reference data (i.e. altimeter setting).
- (4) Incorrect transmission, receipt or interpretation of significant messages when this results in a hazardous situation.
- (5) Separation minima infringement.
- (6) Unauthorised penetration of airspace.
- (7) Unlawful radio communication transmission.
- (8) Failure of ANS ground or satellite facilities.

- (9) Major ATC/ Air Traffic Management (ATM) failure or significant deterioration of aerodrome infrastructure.
- (10) Aerodrome movement areas obstructed by aircraft, vehicles, animals or foreign objects, resulting in a hazardous or potentially hazardous situation.
- (11) Errors or inadequacies in marking of obstructions or hazards on aerodrome movement areas resulting in a hazardous situation.
- (12) Failure, significant malfunction or unavailability of airfield lighting.

**B. Aerodrome and Aerodrome Facilities**

- (1) Significant spillage during fuelling operations.
- (2) Loading of incorrect fuel quantities likely to have a significant effect on aircraft endurance, performance, balance or structural strength.
- (3) unsatisfactory ground de-icing / anti-icing

**C. Passenger Handling, Baggage and Cargo**

- (1) Significant contamination of aircraft structure, or systems and equipment arising from the carriage of baggage or cargo.
- (2) Incorrect loading of passengers, baggage or cargo, likely to have a significant effect on aircraft mass and/or balance.
- (3) Incorrect stowage of baggage or cargo (including hand baggage) likely in any way to hazard the aircraft, its equipment or occupants or to impede emergency evacuation.
- (4) Inadequate stowage of cargo containers or other substantial items of cargo.
- (5) Dangerous goods incidents reporting: see operating rules.

**D. Aircraft Ground Handling and Servicing**

- (1) Failure, malfunction or defect of ground equipment used for test or checking of aircraft systems and equipment when the required routine inspection and test procedures did not clearly identify the problem when this results in a hazardous situation.
- (2) Non compliance or significant errors in compliance with required servicing procedures.
- (3) Loading of contaminated or incorrect type of fuel or other essential fluids (including oxygen and potable water).

## Annex 1 to AMC 20-8 – Reportable occurrences to specific systems

*ED Decision 2003/12/RM*

The following subparagraphs give examples of reportable occurrences resulting from the application of the generic criteria to specific systems listed in paragraph 10.g. II.B of this AMC.

1. Air conditioning/ventilation
  - (a) complete loss of avionics cooling
  - (b) depressurisation
2. Autoflight system
  - (a) failure of the autoflight system to achieve the intended operation while engaged
  - (b) significant reported crew difficulty to control the aircraft linked to autoflight system functioning
  - (c) failure of any autoflight system disconnect device
  - (d) Uncommanded autoflight mode change
3. Communications
  - (a) failure or defect of passenger address system resulting in loss or inaudible passenger address
  - (b) total loss of communication in flight
4. Electrical system
  - (a) loss of one electrical system distribution system (AC or DC)
  - (b) total loss or loss or more than one electrical generation system
  - (c) failure of the back up (emergency) electrical generating system
5. Cockpit/Cabin/Cargo
  - (a) pilot seat control loss during flight
  - (b) failure of any emergency system or equipment, including emergency evacuation signalling system, all exit doors, emergency lighting, etc
  - (c) loss of retention capability of the cargo loading system
6. Fire protection system
  - (a) fire warnings, except those immediately confirmed as false
  - (b) undetected failure or defect of fire/smoke detection/protection system, which could lead to loss or reduced fire detection/protection
  - (c) absence of warning in case of actual fire or smoke
7. Flight controls
  - (a) Asymmetry of flaps, slats, spoilers etc.
  - (b) limitation of movement, stiffness or poor or delayed response in the operation of primary flight control systems or their associated tab and lock systems
  - (c) flight control surface run away
  - (d) flight control surface vibration felt by the crew

- (e) mechanical flight control disconnection or failure
  - (f) significant interference with normal control of the aircraft or degradation of flying qualities
8. Fuel system
- (a) fuel quantity indicating system malfunction resulting in total loss or erroneous indicated fuel quantity on board
  - (b) leakage of fuel which resulted in major loss, fire hazard , significant contamination
  - (c) malfunction or defects of the fuel jettisoning system which resulted in inadvertent loss of significant quantity, fire hazard, hazardous contamination of aircraft equipment or inability to jettison fuel
  - (d) fuel system malfunctions or defects which had a significant effect on fuel supply and/or distribution
  - (e) inability to transfer or use total quantity of usable fuel
9. Hydraulics
- (a) loss of one hydraulic system (ETOPS only)
  - (b) failure of the isolation system to operate
  - (c) loss of more than one hydraulic circuits
  - (d) failure of the back up hydraulic system
  - (e) inadvertent Ram Air Turbine extension
10. Ice detection/protection system
- (a) undetected loss or reduced performance of the anti-ice/de-ice system
  - (b) loss of more than one of the probe heating systems
  - (c) inability to obtain symmetrical wing de icing
  - (d) abnormal ice accumulation leading to significant effects on performance or handling qualities
  - (e) crew vision significantly affected
11. Indicating/warning/recording systems
- (a) malfunction or defect of any indicating system when the possibility of significant misleading indications to the crew could result in an inappropriate crew action on an essential system
  - (b) loss of a red warning function on a system
  - (c) for glass cockpits: loss or malfunction of more than one display unit or computer involved in the display/warning function
12. Landing gear system /brakes/tyres
- (a) brake fire
  - (b) significant loss of braking action
  - (c) unsymmetrical braking leading to significant path deviation
  - (d) failure of the L/G free fall extension system (including during scheduled tests)

- 
- (e) unwanted gear or gear doors extension/retraction
  - (f) multiple tyres burst
13. Navigation systems (including precision approaches system) and air data systems
- (a) total loss or multiple navigation equipment failures
  - (b) total failure or multiple air data system equipment failures
  - (c) significant misleading indication
  - (d) Significant navigation errors attributed to incorrect data or a database coding error
  - (e) Unexpected deviations in lateral or vertical path not caused by pilot input.
  - (f) Problems with ground navigational facilities leading to significant navigation errors not associated with transitions from inertial navigation mode to radio navigation mode.
14. Oxygen
- (a) for pressurised aircraft: loss of oxygen supply in the cockpit
  - (b) loss of oxygen supply to a significant number of passengers (more than 10%), including when found during maintenance or training or test purposes
15. Bleed air system
- (a) hot bleed air leak resulting in fire warning or structural damage
  - (b) loss of all bleed air systems
  - (c) failure of bleed air leak detection system

## AMC 20-9

### AMC 20-9 Acceptable Means of Compliance for the Approval of Departure Clearance via Data Communications over ACARS

*ED Decision 2006/012/R*

#### 1 PREAMBLE

- 1.1 This AMC is issued in response to the EUROCONTROL Convergence and Implementation Plan that recommends an interim deployment of air-to-ground and ground- to-air data link applications based on the existing airline ACARS technology. One such application is Departure Clearance (DCL) data link now operational at various airports in Europe (as indicated in AIPs). Aircraft operators, on a voluntary basis, may take advantage of DCL over ACARS where it is available, subject to any arrangements that may be required by their responsible operations authority.
- 1.2 The use of ACARS for data link purposes is a transitional step to data link applications that will use VDL Mode 2 and the Aeronautical Telecommunications Network (ATN), compliant with ICAO SARPS, as proposed in the EUROCONTROL LINK2000+ programme<sup>1</sup>.
- 1.3 Described in EUROCAE document ED-85A (hereafter “ED-85A”), Data Link Application System document (DLASD) for the “Departure Clearance” Data Link Service, DCL over ACARS is a control tower application providing direct communication between the flight crew and the air traffic controller. ED-85A addresses three domains: airborne, ground ATC, and communication service providers. It deals also with associated flight crew and controller procedures. ED-85A takes account of EUROCAE document ED-78 which describes the global processes including approval planning, co-ordinated requirements determination, development and qualification of a system element, entry into service, and operations.

#### 2 PURPOSE

- 2.1 This AMC is intended for operators seeking to use Departure Clearance via data link over ACARS as described in ED-85A. It may assist also other stakeholders such as airspace planners, air traffic service providers, ATS system manufacturers, communication service providers, aircraft and equipment manufacturers, and ATS regulatory authorities to advise them of the airborne requirements and procedures, and the related assumptions.
- 2.2 This AMC provides a method for evaluating compliance of a data link system to the requirements of ED-85A, and the means by which an aircraft operator can satisfy an authority that operational considerations have been addressed.

#### 3 SCOPE

- 3.1 This AMC addresses DCL over ACARS using the ARINC 623 protocol as elaborated in EUROCAE document ED-85A and promoted by the EUROCONTROL Convergence and Implementation Plan as an interim data link application pending maturity of the LINK2000+ programme. The AMC is not directly applicable to Pre-Departure Clearance (PDC) as used in the USA and some other states. For PDC approval, guidance may be found in FAA document Safety and Interoperability Requirements for Pre- Departure

<sup>1</sup> Information on LINK2000+ is available at web site [www.eurocontrol.int/link2000](http://www.eurocontrol.int/link2000)

Clearance, issued by AIR-100 on April 21, 1998. A comparison of PDC with DCL may be found in Appendix 1.

- 3.2 This AMC is not applicable to the phased implementation of data link services within the EUROCONTROL LINK2000+ programme, in particular, DCL over the Aeronautical Telecommunications Network via VHF Digital Data Link (VDL) Mode 2. In this case, the Safety and Performance Requirements (EUROCAE ED-120) and the Interoperability Requirements (EUROCAE ED-110) are established using EUROCAE document ED-78A, Guidelines for Approval of the Provision and use of Air Traffic Services supported by Data Communications. Guidance for the implementation of DCL over ATN may be found in EASA document AMC 20-11.
- 3.3 The operational requirements for the DCL application are published in the EUROCONTROL document OPR/ET1/ST05/1000, Edition 2, October 15, 1996, Transition guidelines for initial air ground data communication services. The EUROCONTROL document includes the re-issued clearance capability, however document ED-85A does not address this capability and it is not included in the scope of this AMC.
- 3.4 For the remainder of this document, the acronym DCL should be interpreted to mean DCL over ACARS using the ARINC 623 protocol unless stated otherwise.

## **4 REFERENCE DOCUMENTS**

### **4.1 Related Requirements**

CS/FAR 25.1301, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1322, 25.1431, 25.1581, or equivalent requirements of CS 23, 27 and 29 if applicable.

## 4.2 Related Standards and Guidance Material

ICAO	Doc 9694 AN/955	Manual of Air Traffic Services (ATS) Data Link Applications
	Doc 4444	Rules of the Air and Air Traffic Services
	Draft Proposal	PANS-Air Traffic Management
	Annex 11	Air Traffic Services
	Doc 8585	Designators for Aircraft Operating agencies, Aeronautical Authorities and Services
	Doc 8643	Aircraft Type Designators
EASA	AMC 25-11	Electronic Display Systems
EUROCONTROL	CIP: COM. ET2.SO4; 2.1.5	Implement Air/Ground Communication Services- Interim step on non-ATN (ACARS) services.
	OPR/ET1/ST05/1000	Transition guidelines for initial air ground data communication services
	ESARR 4	Risk assessment and mitigation in ATM
FAA	AC 25-11	Electronic Display Systems.
	AC 120-COM	Initial Air Carrier Operational Approval for use of Digital Communication Systems
	AC 20-140	Guidelines for design approval of aircraft data communications systems
	98-Air-PDC	Safety and Interoperability requirement for Pre-Departure-Clearance (PDC). (Air-100, April 21,1998)
EUROCAE	ED 78	Guidance material for the establishment of data link supported ATS Services
	ED-85A	Data Link Application System document (DLASD) for the “ departure Clearance” data link service
	ED-112	Minimum operational performance specification for Crash protected airborne recorder systems
RTCA	DO 224	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standards (MASPS) for Advanced VHF Digital Data Communications Including Compatibility with Digital Voice Techniques.
SAE	ARP 4791	Human Machine Interface on the flight deck

## 5 ASSUMPTIONS

Applicants should note that this AMC is based on the assumptions stated in Chapter 3 of ED-85A together with the following that concern the measures taken by the responsible airspace authorities to safeguard DCL operations.

### 5.1 ATS Provider

- 5.1.1 The data link service for DCL has been shown to satisfy applicable airspace safety regulations and the relevant ATS domain performance, safety and interoperability requirements of ED-85A.
- 5.1.2 Procedures for the use of DCL take account of the performance limitations of ACARS and the airborne implementation capabilities meeting at least the provisions of this AMC.

Note: Some aircraft ACARS installations approved to earlier standards are classified as “Non Essential” without guarantees of performance or integrity.

Consequently, procedures are necessary to compensate for any deficiency and to safeguard operations. ED-85A addresses this issue.

- 5.1.3 Appropriate procedures are established to minimise the possibility of failure to detect inconsistency in the case of a complex clearance.
- 5.1.4 Each ATS provider has published a list of communication service providers that may be used by aircraft operators for the DCL application. The list should take account of internetworking arrangements between service providers.
- 5.1.5 The procedures of the ATS provider state the actions that should be taken in the event of an inadequate communication service from the communications service provider (CSP).

## **5.2 Communications Service Provider**

The communications service provider does not modify the operational information (content and format) exchanged between the ATS provider and the airborne equipment.

## **5.3 Aeronautical Information Service**

Each State offering a DCL service by data link publishes in its AIP, or equivalent notification, availability of the service, relevant procedures, and confirmation of compliance with ED-85A.

## **5.4 Message Integrity**

The Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) is implemented as required by ED-85A and is providing integrity of the end-to-end data link transmission path. On this basis, Performance Technical Requirement PTR\_3 of ED-85A need not be demonstrated.

# **6 AIRWORTHINESS CONSIDERATIONS**

## **6.1 General**

- 6.1.1 The installation will need to be shown compliant with the airborne domain requirements allocated as per ED-85A (§7.1) covering the Interoperability Operational Requirements, the Interoperability Technical Requirements, the Performance Technical Requirements, the Safety Operational & Technical Requirements.
- 6.1.2 If multiple ATS data link applications are available to the aircraft, the crew interface and related crew procedures will need to be based on a common and compatible philosophy.

## **6.2 Required Functions**

An acceptable minimum airborne installation comprises the following functions:

- (a) A means of data communication appropriate to the area of operation, e.g. plain old ACARS over AVLC (Aviation VHF Link Control) through VHF or SATCOM;  
Note: VDL Mode 2 equipment can be used provided that radio transceiver is compliant with ED-92A.
- (b) A means to manage data communications and to control the data communications system;
- (c) A means to easily check and modify the parameters of the DCL request;
- (d) "Visual" alerting of an incoming message, visible to both pilots;

- (e) Means to display the text message, e.g. a single display readable by both crewmembers or a dedicated display for each pilot.
- (f) A means to accept the DCL delivered by the ATS.

### **6.3 Recommended Functions**

- (a) “Audible” alerting of an incoming message;
- (b) A means to print the messages;
- (c) Recording of DCL messages and flight crew responses on an accident flight recorder.

Note: Data Link recording may be required in accordance with OPS rules.

## **7 ACCEPTABLE MEANS OF AIRWORTHINESS COMPLIANCE**

### **7.1 Airworthiness**

7.1.1 When demonstrating compliance with this AMC, the following specific points should be noted:

- (a) Compliance with the airworthiness requirements for intended function and safety may be demonstrated by equipment qualification, safety analysis of the interface between the communications management system and data sources, structural analyses of new antenna installations, equipment cooling verification, and evidence of a suitable human to machine interface. The DCL function will need to be demonstrated by end-to-end ground testing that verifies system operation, either with an appropriate ATS unit, or by means of test equipment that has been shown to be representative of the actual ATS unit.

Note: This limited testing assumes that the communication systems (VHF or SATCOM) have been shown to satisfactorily perform their intended functions in the flight environment in accordance with applicable requirements.

- (b) The safety analysis of the interface between the communications management system and its data sources should show that, under normal or fault conditions, no unwanted interaction which adversely affects essential systems can occur.

7.1.2 To minimise the certification effort for follow-on installations credit may be granted for applicable certification and test data obtained from equivalent aircraft installations.

### **7.2 Performance**

The installation should be shown to meet the airborne domain performance requirements allocated by ED-85A (§7.1). Demonstration of Performance Technical Requirement PTR\_A1 may be difficult for some airborne installations. The applicant may choose an alternative acceptable means of compliance for PTR\_A1 consisting in an end-to-end demonstration of PTR\_5 & PTR-6 of ED-85A (§5.2) with an appropriate ATS unit and communication service provider.

### **7.3 Aircraft Flight Manual**

The Flight Manual should state the following limitation.

Note: This limited entry assumes that a detailed description of the installed system and related operating instructions are available in other operating or training manuals and that operating procedures take account of ED-85A.

Limitation: The Departure Clearance (DCL) over ACARS application has been demonstrated with data link services declared compliant with EUROCAE document ED-85A.

#### **7.4 Existing installations**

The applicant will need to submit a compliance statement that shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied for existing installations. Compliance may be established by inspection of the installed system to confirm the availability of required features and functionality.

Note: It is not intended that aircraft which have received airworthiness approval in compliance with ED-85 requirement should be reinvestigated where the installation is compliant with Section 6, 7 and 8 of this AMC.

### **8 OPERATIONAL CONSIDERATIONS**

#### **8.1 Flight Plan Information**

8.1.1 The Aircraft Identification transmitted by data link will need to conform to the ICAO format and correspond with the flight identity as entered in the applicable flight plan.

8.1.2 Aircraft type designator includes both Aircraft Type and Sub-type and shall be coded in accordance with the format described in ICAO document 8643 at its latest edition. However, certain ACARS equipment can be pre-programmed only with Aircraft Type with the possibility of manual insertion of Sub-type via the system control panel. Absence of the Sub-type information may lead either to a rejected departure clearance request at some airports, or the issue of an inappropriate clearance where the aircraft performance capability is not taken into account. Where, to obtain the DCL service, Sub-type needs to be entered manually, the entry should be verified.

#### **8.2 Operational Safety Aspects**

8.2.1 Failure Conditions are presented in ED-85A (§6) together with the resulting safety requirements and operational means of mitigation. Failure Condition FC3 (undetected erroneous SID) is discussed further in the following paragraphs.

8.2.2 When a SID construct is simple and unambiguous (e.g. only one SID for one runway magnetic orientation (QFU) and one destination) so allowing the flight crew and the ATS controller to independently detect any inconsistency in the DCL, then additional means of mitigation are not required.

8.2.3 For other, more complex cases where the SID construction prevents the flight crew and the controller from readily detecting any inconsistency, a specific flight crew to controller procedure will need to be implemented to verify the clearance. This may be stated in the AIP or other notification issued by the State where aircraft will operate and use DCL service.

Note (1): In some countries (e.g. United Kingdom, AIC 125/1999, France AIC A19/00), following the investigation of level violations, voice confirmation of cleared altitude or flight level and SID identification is already required even for

voice delivered departure clearance on the first contact with the approach control/departure radar. In such cases, no additional confirmation procedure is required.

Note (2): The ATS may agree that voice confirmation is not required where the data link function is certificated with an integrity level corresponding to the Essential category of CS25.1309.

8.2.4 In all cases, flight crews will need to comply with any mitigating procedures published by the States where aircraft will operate and use DCL service.

8.2.5 The assumptions of Section 5 need to be satisfied as a condition for operational use.

### **8.3 Operations Manual and Training**

8.3.1 The Operations Manual shall reflect the Flight Manual statement of paragraph 7.3 and define operating procedures for use of the DCL.

8.3.2 Flight crew training should address:

- (a) The different data link services available using the same airborne equipment (e.g. differences between DCL and PDC applications as described in Annex 1);
- (b) ATS procedures for DCL; and
- (c) The required format for the flight identification input.

8.3.3 Subject to any arrangements that may be required by the responsible operations authority in respect of amendments to the Operations Manual, and the approval of training programmes, the aircraft operator may implement operations using DCL over ACARS.

### **8.4 Incident reporting**

Significant incidents associated with a departure clearance transmitted by data link that affects or could affect the safe operation of the aircraft will need to be reported in accordance with applicable operational rules, and to the authority responsible for the airport where the DCL service was provided.

#### **AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS**

EUROCAE documents may be purchased from EUROCAE, 17 rue Hamelin, 75783 Paris Cedex 16, France, (Fax: 33 1 45 05 72 30). Web site: [www.eurocae.org](http://www.eurocae.org).

JAA documents are available from the JAA publisher Information Handling Services (IHS). Information on prices, where and how to order is available on both the JAA web site [www.jaa.nl](http://www.jaa.nl) and the IHS web site [www.avdataworks.com](http://www.avdataworks.com).

EUROCONTROL documents may be requested from EUROCONTROL, Documentation Centre, GS4, Rue de la Fusee, 96, B-1130 Brussels, Belgium; (Fax: 32 2 729 9109 or web site [www.eurocontrol.int](http://www.eurocontrol.int)).

ICAO documents may be purchased from Document Sales Unit, International Civil Aviation Organisation, 999 University Street, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7, (Fax: 1 514 954 6769, e-mail: [sales\\_unit@icao.org](mailto:sales_unit@icao.org)) or through national agencies.

FAA documents may be obtained from Department of Transportation, Subsequent Distribution Office SVC-121.23, Ardmore East Business Centre, 3341 Q 75th Avenue, Landover, MD 20785, USA. Web site [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov)

---

RTCA documents may be obtained from RTCA Inc, 1828 L Street, NW., Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036, USA., (Tel: 1 202 833 9339; Fax 1 202 833 9434). Web site: [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org).

SAE documents may be obtained from SAE World Headquarters, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA 15096-0001, USA. Telephone 1-877-606-7323 (U.S. and Canada only) or 724/776-4970 (elsewhere). Web site [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).

[Amdt 20/1]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-9 PDC versus DCL: A Comparison

ED Decision 2006/012/R

### The US Pre-Departure Clearance.

In the United States, the concept of Pre-departure Clearance is used where PDC messages are delivered via the airlines own ACARS network and operational host computer. The airline host, or the flight crew, initiates the process for the generation of the PDC by submitting the flight plan information to the air traffic service, which in turn forwards the flight strip information to the appropriate airport control tower. Approximately 30 minutes before the aircraft is scheduled to depart, the approved PDC is transmitted from the tower via ground-ground data link to the airline host computer. The airline host responds with an acknowledgement that ultimately feeds back to the tower PDC workstation. Depending upon the airline capabilities, the PDC may then be transmitted directly to the aircraft flight deck via the ACARS data link. If the aircraft is not equipped with ACARS, the approved PDC is sent to an airport gate printer for delivery by hand in printed format to the aircraft. For a clearance requested from the aircraft, the flight crew will initiate a PDC request via the ACARS data link network to the airline host computer. The host will then respond via the ACARS network with the approved PDC.

Thus, the airline is responsible for ensuring that the clearance is delivered to the flight crew. Without PDC, Instrument Flight Rule (IFR) clearances for departing aircraft are provided by the clearance-delivery controller via a tower voice channel.

The PDC is pre-formatted in an ARINC 620 free text message. The ARINC 623 standard also may be used but it is not required. All failures are classified Minor by the fact that flight crew has to follow a procedure to verify the information with the initial flight plan and, by voice communication, with departure control.

Guidance on the use of PDC may be found in FAA document *Safety and Interoperability Requirements for Pre-Departure Clearance*, issued by AIR-100 on April 21, 1998.

### The European Departure Clearance.

In Europe, departure clearance over ACARS is a direct ATC to pilot data link communication based on the EUROCAE ED-85A and ARINC 623 standards. The clearance delivered by data link is fully considered as an ATC departure clearance and it is not the responsibility of the airline to ensure delivery via its own facilities. ARINC 623 provides enhanced integrity of end-to-end communication, compared to ARINC 620 as used in the USA. However, flight crew verification procedures may still be required due to departure clearance options such as alternative SIDs, or to satisfy AIP requirements for local safety reasons.

Current operational implementation in Europe does not include a re-issued clearance capability, which is under study by some ATS providers.

[Amdt 20/1]

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-9 Common Terms

*ED Decision 2006/012/R*

Reference should be made to EUROCAE document ED-85A for definition of terms.

### Abbreviations

ACARS	Aircraft Communication, Addressing and Reporting System
AIP	Aeronautical Information Publication
ARINC	Aeronautical Radio Inc.
ATS	Air Traffic Services
CPDLC	Controller-Pilot Data Link Communication
DCL	Departure Clearance
ESARR	EUROCONTROL Safety Regulatory Requirement
EUROCAE	European Organisation for Civil Aircraft Equipment
PDC	Pre-departure Clearance (as used in USA)
PTR	Performance Technical Requirement
RTCA	RTCA Inc.
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SARPS	ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices
SID	Standard Instrument Departure
VDL	VHF Digital Link

[Amdt 20/1]

## AMC 20-10

### AMC 20-10 Acceptable Means of Compliance for the Approval of Digital ATIS via Data Link over ACARS

ED Decision 2006/012/R

#### 1 PREAMBLE

- 1.1 This AMC is issued in response to the EUROCONTROL Convergence and Implementation Plan that recommends an interim deployment of air-to-ground and ground-to-air data link applications based on the existing airline ACARS technology. One such application is Digital Automated Terminal Information Services (D-ATIS) now planned to be operational at various airports in Europe. Aircraft operators, on a voluntary basis, may take advantage of D-ATIS where it is available, provided the service is verified in accordance with operational procedures acceptable to the responsible operations authority.
- 1.2 The use of ACARS for data link purposes is a transitional step to data link applications that will use VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 2 and the Aeronautical Telecommunications Network (ATN), compliant with ICAO SARPS, as proposed in the EUROCONTROL LINK2000+ programme<sup>1</sup>.
- 1.3 Described in EUROCAE document ED-89A, *Data Link Application System document (DLASD) for the "ATIS" Data Link Service*, D-ATIS is a control tower application providing direct communication of ATIS information to the flight crew and, optionally automatic updating of this information. The ED-89A document addresses three domains: airborne, ground ATC, and communication service providers. It deals also with associated flight crew and air traffic service provider procedures. ED-89A incorporates the protocols and message formats formerly published in ARINC Specification 623, and takes account of EUROCAE document ED-78 which describes the global processes including approval planning, co-ordinated requirements determination, development and qualification of a system element, entry into service, and operations.

#### 2. PURPOSE

- 2.1 This AMC is intended for operators intending to use Digital ATIS over ACARS as described in document EUROCAE ED-89A. It may assist also other stakeholders such as airspace planners, air traffic service providers (ATSP), ATS system manufacturers, communication service providers (CSP), aircraft and equipment manufacturers, and ATS regulatory authorities to advise them of the airborne requirements and procedures, and the related assumptions.
- 2.2 This AMC provides a method for evaluating compliance of a data link system to the requirements of ED-89A, and the means by which an aircraft operator can satisfy an authority that operational considerations have been addressed.

#### 3 SCOPE

- 3.1 This AMC addresses D-ATIS over ACARS using the ARINC 623 protocol as elaborated in EUROCAE document ED-89A and promoted by the EUROCONTROL Convergence and Implementation Plan as an interim data link application pending maturity of the LINK 2000+ programme.

<sup>1</sup> Information on LINK2000+ is available at web site [www.eurocontrol.int/link2000](http://www.eurocontrol.int/link2000)

- 3.2 Other implementation of D-ATIS service may exist in the world. They are not necessarily identical to the service defined within this AMC and EUROCAE document ED-89A. For example, application message formats may differ. Similarly, the ATSP may send ATIS information to an ACARS communication service provider who then distributes it to subscriber operators. This should not be considered as an air traffic service offered directly by an ATSP. In the USA, guidance on ATIS data link approval for use in the US airspace, may be found in FAA document 98-AIR D-ATIS: *Safety and Interoperability Requirements for ATIS*.
- 3.3 This AMC is not applicable to the phased implementation of data link services within the EUROCONTROL LINK2000+ programme, in particular, D-ATIS over the Aeronautical Telecommunications Network via VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 2. In this case, the Safety and Performance Requirements (EUROCAE ED-120) and the Interoperability Requirements (EUROCAE ED-110) have been established using EUROCAE document ED-78A, *Guidelines for Approval of the Provision and use of Air Traffic Services supported by Data Communications*. Guidance for the implementation of data link over ATN may be found in EASA document AMC 20-11.
- 3.4 The operational requirements for the D-ATIS application are published in EUROCONTROL document OPR/ET1/ST05/1000, *Transition guidelines for initial air ground data communication services*.
- 3.5 For the remainder of this document, the acronym D-ATIS should be interpreted to mean D-ATIS over ACARS using the ARINC 623 protocol in accordance with ED-89A unless stated otherwise.

#### **4 REFERENCE DOCUMENTS**

##### **4.1 Related Requirements**

CS/FAR 25.1301, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1322, 25.1431, 25.1581, or equivalent requirements of CS 23, 27 and 29, if applicable.

## 4.2 Related Standards and Guidance Material

<b>ICAO</b>	Doc 9694 AN/955	Manual of Air Traffic Services (ATS) Data Link Applications
	Doc 4444	Rules of the Air and Air Traffic Services
	Annex 11	Air Traffic Services
	Doc 8585	Designators for Aircraft Operating agencies, Aeronautical Authorities and Services.
<b>EASA</b>	AMC 25-11	Electronic Display Systems
<b>EUROCONTROL</b>	CIP: COM. ET2.SO4; 2.1.5	Implement Air/Ground Communication Services - Interim step on non-ATN (ACARS) services.
	OPR/ET1/ST05/1000	Transition guidelines for initial airground data communication services
	ESARR 4	Risk assessment and mitigation in ATM
<b>FAA</b>	AC 25-11	Electronic Display Systems.
	AC 120-70	Initial Air Carrier Operational Approval for use of Digital Communication Systems
	AC 20-140	Guidelines for design approval of aircraft data communications systems
	98-Air-D-ATIS	Safety and Interoperability requirement for D-ATIS (Air-100, April 21,1998)
<b>EUROCAE</b>	ED 78	Guidance material for the establishment of data link supported ATS Services
	ED-89A	Data Link Application System document (DLASD) for the "ATIS" data link service
	ED-92A	Minimum Operational Performance specification for an airborne VDL Mode 2 Transceiver
	ED-112	Minimum operational performance specification for Crash protected airborne recorder systems Note: Includes criteria for recording of data link messages.
<b>RTCA</b>	DO-224	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standards (MASPS) for Advanced VHF Digital Data Communications Including Compatibility with Digital Voice Techniques.
<b>SAE</b>	ARP 4791	Human Machine Interface on the flight deck

## 5 ASSUMPTIONS

Applicants should note that this AMC is based on the assumptions stated in Chapter 3 of document ED-89A together with the following that concern the measures taken by the responsible airspace authorities to safeguard operations affected by the transmission of D-ATIS.

### 5.1 ATS Provider

5.1.1 The data link service for ATIS has been shown to satisfy applicable airspace safety regulations and the relevant ATS domain performance, safety and interoperability requirements of ED-89A.

5.1.2 The ATS Provider ensures that information provided through D-ATIS service is fully consistent with the voice information broadcast over VHF.

5.1.3 Appropriate procedures are established to minimise the possibility of failure to detect any inconsistency in ATIS information for approach, landing and take off.

5.1.4 Each ATS provider has published a list of communication service providers that may be used by aircraft operators for the D-ATIS application. The list should take account of internetworking arrangements between service providers.

5.1.5 The procedures of the ATS provider state the actions that should be taken in the event of an inadequate communication service from the communications service provider.

#### 5.2 Communications Service Provider

The communications service provider does not modify the operational information (content and format) exchanged between the ATS provider and the airborne equipment.

#### 5.3 Aeronautical Information Service

The availability of the D-ATIS service, a statement of compliance with ED-89A, and additional relevant procedures are published in the AIP or other notification issued by the States where D-ATIS is offered.

#### 5.4 Message Integrity

The Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) is implemented as required by ED-89A and is providing integrity of the end-to-end data link transmission path. On this basis, Performance Technical Objective PTO\_3 of ED-89A need not be demonstrated by end systems. The PTO\_3 requirement is applicable only to the Communication Service Provider and limits the amount of corrupted messages that would be detected and rejected by end-systems.

Note: The CRC is described in ARINC Specification 622 Chapter 5.

## 6 AIRWORTHINESS CONSIDERATIONS

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 The installation will need to meet the airborne domain requirements allocated as per ED-89A (§7.1) covering the Interoperability Operational Requirements, the Interoperability Technical Requirements, the Performance Technical Requirements, and the Safety Operational & Technical Requirements.

6.1.2 If multiple ATS data link applications are available to the aircraft, the crew interface and related crew procedures will need to be based on a common and compatible philosophy.

### 6.2 Required Functions

An acceptable minimum airborne installation comprises the following functions:

(a) A means of data communication appropriate to the area of operation, e.g. plain old ACARS over AVLC (Aviation VHF Link Control) through VHF or SATCOM;

Note: VDL Mode 2 equipment can be used provided that radio transceiver is compliant with ED-92A.

(b) A means to manage data communications and to control the data communications system.

(c) A means to easily check and modify the D-ATIS request parameters.

- (d) A means of attracting the attention of the flight crew to an incoming message.

Notes:

- (1) Activation of a printer may suffice to meet this need.
  - (2) The means used will need to be such as to avoid confusion with other, non-data link, flight deck alerting devices.
  - (3) The need for temporary suppression of the attention-getter during critical flight phases should be considered.
- (e) Means to display the text message, e.g. a single display readable by both pilots or a dedicated display for each pilot. For the interim deployment of D-ATIS over ACARS, a printer may serve as the primary display for messages subject to compliance with paragraph 7.3 of this AMC.

### 6.3 Recommended Functions

- (a) A means to print the message.
- (b) Recording of D-ATIS messages and flight crew requests on an accident flight recorder.

Note: Data Link recording may be required in accordance with OPS rules.

## 7 ACCEPTABLE MEANS OF AIRWORTHINESS COMPLIANCE

### 7.1 Airworthiness

7.1.1 When demonstrating compliance with this AMC, the following should be noted:

- (a) Compliance with the airworthiness requirements for intended function and safety may be demonstrated by equipment qualification, safety analyses of the interfaces between components of the airborne communications equipment, structural analyses of new antenna installations, equipment cooling verification, and evidence of a suitable human to machine interface. The D-ATIS function will need to be demonstrated by end-to-end ground testing that verifies system operation, either with an appropriate ATS unit, or by means of test equipment that has been shown to be representative of an actual ATS unit.

Note:

This limited testing assumes that the communication systems (VHF or SATCOM) have been shown to satisfactorily perform their intended functions in the flight environment in accordance with applicable requirements.

- (b) The safety analysis of the interface between the ACARS and other systems should show that, under normal or fault conditions, no unwanted interaction that adversely affects essential systems can occur.
- (c) Where a printer is used as the primary display of the ATIS message, its readability should be shown to be adequate for this purpose, and that it does not present an unacceptable risk of an erroneous display.

Note:

This does not preclude the use of a printer classified as non-essential provided it has demonstrated a satisfactory in-service record that supports compliance with paragraph 7.3 of this AMC.

7.1.2 To minimise the certification effort for follow-on installations, the applicant may claim credit, from the responsible authority, for applicable certification and test data obtained from equivalent aircraft installations.

## 7.2 Performance

The installation will need to be shown compliant with the airborne domain performance requirements allocated by ED-89A (§7.1). Demonstration of Performance Technical Requirement PTR\_A1 may be difficult for some airborne installations. The applicant may choose an alternative acceptable means of compliance for PTR\_A1 consisting in an end-to-end demonstration of PTR\_5 & PTR\_6 of ED-89A (§5.2) with an appropriate ATS unit and communication service provider.

## 7.3 Safety Objectives

7.3.1 Failure Conditions are presented in ED-89A (§6) together with the resulting safety objectives and operational means of mitigation. Failure Condition FC3 (Non-detected corrupted ATIS presented to an aircrew) requires that the occurrence of such a hazard at the aircraft level be demonstrated improbable.

7.3.2 ED-89A takes into account the possibility of using ACARS approved to earlier standards and classified as “non-essential” without guarantees of performance or integrity. Consequently, additional procedures are necessary to compensate for any deficiency and to safeguard operations. (See §8 of this AMC)

## 7.4 Aircraft Flight Manual

The Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or the Pilot’s Operating Handbook (POH), whichever is applicable, should identify the D-ATIS over ACARS application as having been demonstrated with data link services declared compliant with EUROCAE document ED-89A.

If certification was not achieved at the level “essential”, the AFM or POH, whichever is applicable, shall remind the crew that they are responsible for checking the D-ATIS information received over ACARS is consistent with their request, or revert to a voice ATIS.

## 7.5 Existing installations

The applicant will need to submit a compliance statement that shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied for existing installations. Compliance may be established by inspection of the installed system to confirm the availability of required features and functionality.

Note: It is not intended that aircraft which have received airworthiness approval in compliance with ED 89 requirement should be reinvestigated where the installation is compliant with Section 6, 7 and 8 of this AMC.

# 8 OPERATIONAL CONSIDERATIONS

## 8.1 Operational Safety Aspects

8.1.1 Failure Conditions are presented in ED-89A (§6) together with the resulting safety requirements and operational means of mitigation. Failure Condition FC3 (Non-

detected corrupted ATIS presented to an aircrew) is discussed further in the following paragraphs.

- 8.1.2 Applying existing ICAO operational procedures can independently verify the majority of ATIS parameters. Certain information may need to be verified by additional operational procedures. Examples include runway surface conditions, air and dew point temperatures, and other essential operational information.
- 8.1.3 If the aircraft system is classified and certified as “non-essential”, additional flight crew verification procedures will need to be defined to compensate for this deficiency.
- 8.1.4 When the airborne system is certified as “essential”, then integrity and performance can be considered as acceptable without a voice ATIS cross check unless otherwise required by the AIP.
- 8.1.5 It is important that crew are aware that they remain responsible for checking that received ATIS information corresponds to their request in terms of airfield name, date, type of ATIS (D or A) and type of contract. In case of inconsistency, reversion to voice ATIS is required.

Note: ED-89A (§6) SOR-A1 (check of name of airfield), SOR-A2 (ATIS letter acknowledgement at first contact) and SOR-A3 (check of global consistency of information) require checks irrespective of the level of classification of the data link system

- 8.1.6 Flight crews will need to comply with any additional mitigating procedures published by the States where aircraft will operate and use a D-ATIS service.
- 8.1.7 The assumptions of Section 5 of this AMC need to be satisfied as a condition for operational use.
- 8.2 Operations Manual and Training
  - 8.2.1 The Operations Manual shall reflect the Flight Manual statement of paragraph 7.4, and to define operating procedures for the use of D-ATIS via ACARS taking into account the Operational Considerations discussed in paragraph 8 of this AMC.
  - 8.2.2 Similarly, flight crew training shall address:
    - (a) The different data link services available using the same airborne equipment (e.g. differences between ATIS provided through D-ATIS service that are declared to conform to ED-89A requirements, and ATIS received through other means such as ACARS AOC).
    - (b) The procedures for safe use of D-ATIS over ACARS.
  - 8.2.3 Subject to any arrangements that may be required by the responsible operations authority in respect of amendments to the Operations Manual, and the approval of training programmes, the aircraft operator may implement operations using D-ATIS over ACARS without the need for further formal operational approval.

### 8.3 Incident reporting

Significant incidents associated with a D-ATIS transmitted by data link that affects or could affect the safe operation of the aircraft will need to be reported in accordance with applicable operational rules. The incident should be reported also to the ATS authority responsible for the airport where the D-ATIS service is provided.

---

**AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS**

EUROCAE documents may be purchased from EUROCAE, 17 rue Hamelin, 75783 Paris Cedex 16, France, (Fax: 33 1 45 05 72 30). Web site: [www.eurocae.org](http://www.eurocae.org)

JAA documents are available from the JAA publisher Information Handling Services (IHS). Information on prices, where and how to order is available on both the JAA web site: [www.jaa.nl](http://www.jaa.nl) and the IHS web site: [www.avdataworks.com](http://www.avdataworks.com). JAA documents transposed to publications of the European Aviation Safety Agency (EASA) are available on the EASA web site [www.easa.europa.eu](http://www.easa.europa.eu)

EUROCONTROL documents may be requested from EUROCONTROL, Documentation Centre, GS4, Rue de la Fusee, 96, B-1130 Brussels, Belgium; (Fax: 32 2 729 9109). Web site: [www.eurocontrol.int](http://www.eurocontrol.int)

ICAO documents may be purchased from Document Sales Unit, International Civil Aviation Organisation, 999 University Street, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7, (Fax: 1 514 954 6769, e-mail: [sales\\_unit@icao.org](mailto:sales_unit@icao.org)) or through national agencies.

FAA documents may be obtained from Department of Transportation, Subsequent Distribution Office SVC-121.23, Ardmore East Business Centre, 3341 Q 75<sup>th</sup> Avenue, Landover, MD 20785, USA.

RTCA documents may be obtained from RTCA Inc, 1828 L Street, NW. Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036, USA., (Tel: 1 202 833 9339; Fax 1 202 833 9434). Web site: [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org)

SAE documents may be obtained from SAE World Headquarters, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA 15096-0001, USA. Telephone 1-877-606-7323 (U.S. and Canada only) or 724/776-4970 (elsewhere). Web site: [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org)

[Amdt 20/1]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-10 Common Terms

*ED Decision 2006/012/R*

Reference should be made to EUROCAE document ED-89A for definition of terms.

### Abbreviations

ACARS	Aircraft Communication, Addressing and Reporting System
AIP	Aeronautical Information Publication
ATIS	Automatic Terminal Information Service
ATSP	Air Traffic Service Provider
D-ATIS	Digital ATIS
ARINC	Aeronautical Radio Inc.
ATS	Air Traffic services
CPDLC	Controller-Pilot Data Link Communication
ESARR	EUROCONTROL Safety Regulatory Requirement
EUROCAE	European Organisation for Civil Aircraft Equipment
NAS	National Airspace System (USA)
PTR	Performance Technical Requirement
PTO	Performance Technical Objective
RTCA	RTCA Inc.
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SARPS	ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices
VDL	VHF Digital Link

[Amdt 20/1]

# AMC 20-12

## AMC 20-12 Recognition of FAA Order 8400.12a for RNP-10 Operations

ED Decision 2006/012/R

### 1. PURPOSE

This AMC calls attention to the FAA Order 8400.12A "Required Navigation Performance 10 (RNP-10) Operational Approval", issued 9<sup>th</sup> February 1998. FAA Order 8400.12A addresses RNP-10 requirements, the operational approval process, application principles, continuing airworthiness and operational requirements. This AMC explains how the technical content and the operational principles of the Order may be applied as a means, but not the only means, to obtain EASA approval for RNP-10 operations.

### 2. REFERENCE DOCUMENTS

#### 2.1 Related Requirements

CS/FAR 25.1301, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1316, 25.1321, 25.1322, 25.1329, 25.1431, 25.1335 25.1581.

CS/FAR 23.1301, 23.1309, 23.1311, 23.1321, 23.1322, 23.1329, 23.1335, 23.1431, 23.1581.

#### 2.2 Related Guidance Material

##### 2.2.1 ICAO

ICAO Doc 7030/4	Regional Supplementary Procedures
ICAO Doc 9613-AN/937	Manual on Required Navigational Performance

##### 2.2.2 EASA/JAA

EASA AMC 25-11	Electronic Display Systems.
EASA AMC 20-5	Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for the use of the Navstar Global Positioning System (GPS).
JAA Leaflet No 9	Recognition of EUROCAE Document ED-76 (RTCA DO-200A): Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data.

##### 2.2.3 FAA

Order 8400.12A	Required Navigation Performance 10 (RNP-10) Operational Approval, issued February 1998.
Order 8110.60	GPS as Primary Means of Navigation for Oceanic/Remote Operations.
AC 25-4	Inertial Navigation Systems (INS).
AC 25-11	Electronic Display Systems.
AC 25-15	Approval of Flight Management Systems in Transport Category Airplanes.
AC 20-130A	Airworthiness Approval of Navigation or Flight Management Systems Integrating Multiple Navigation Sensors.

AC 20-138	Airworthiness Approval of NAVSTAR Global Positioning System (GPS) for use as a VFR and IFR Supplemental Navigation System.
14 CFR Part 121 Appendix G	Doppler Radar and Inertial Navigation System (INS): Request for Evaluation; Equipment and Equipment Installation; Training Program; Equipment Accuracy and Reliability; Evaluation Program.

### 2.2.4 Technical Standard Orders

ETSO-2C115() / TSO-C115()	Airborne Area Navigation Equipment Using Multi-sensor Inputs.
ETSO-C129a / TSO-C129()	Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS)
ETSO-C145/ TSO-C145()	Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS).
ETSO-C146/ TSO-C146()	Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS).

### 2.2.5 EUROCAE / RTCA and ARINC

ED-75A / DO-236A	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standards: Required Navigation Performance for Area Navigation.
ED-76 / DO-200A	Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data.
ED-77 / DO-201A	Standards for Aeronautical Information.
DO-229B	Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Global Positioning System/Wide Area Augmentation System Airborne equipment.
ARINC 424	Navigation System Data Base.

## 3. BACKGROUND

- 3.1 Airspace in various oceanic and remote regions of the world is being restructured progressively to provide capacity and operating benefits for the aircraft traffic. This restructuring involves reduced route spacing (e.g. 50NM in place of 100NM) that, in turn, demands improved aircraft navigational performance. Airspace for this purpose is designated as RNP-10 airspace.
- 3.2 The RNP-10 implementation is for the oceanic and remote phases of flight where ground based navigation aids do not exist except possibly at isolated locations. Hence aircraft navigation will need to be based on a long range navigation capability of acceptable performance using inertial navigation and/or global positioning systems.
- 3.3 Aircraft may qualify for RNP-10 airspace operational approval on the basis of compliance with an appropriate RNP build standard. The navigation performance of aircraft already in service also may qualify and this AMC provides a means of determining their eligibility.
- 3.4 It is not intended that RNP-10 operational approvals already granted by national authorities in compliance with FAA Order 8400.12A should be re-investigated.

## 4 CERTIFICATION CRITERIA

### 4.1 Airworthiness Approval

FAA Order 8400.12A discusses required system performance (paragraphs 10 and 15), certification actions (paragraph 16), continued airworthiness considerations (paragraph 14), and provides guidance (paragraph 12) for demonstrating eligibility for RNP-10 approval. Key aspects of the FAA Order are summarised in the following paragraphs of this AMC. These should be applied in conjunction with the technical content of the Order for the purposes of obtaining RNP-10 approval under EASA regulations.

### 4.2 Required Equipment and Performance

4.2.1 Aircraft operating in RNP-10 airspace shall have a 95% cross-track error of less than 10 NM. This includes positioning error, flight technical error (FTE), path definition error and display error. The aircraft shall have also a 95% along-track positioning error of less than 10 NM.

4.2.2 Loss of all long range navigation information should be Improbable (Remote), and displaying misleading navigational or positional information simultaneously on both pilot's displays should be Improbable (Remote). This requirement can be satisfied by the carriage of at least dual independent, long range navigation systems compliant with the criteria of this AMC and the FAA Order. See also EASA AMC 25-11.

### 4.3 Eligibility for RNP-10 Operations

In respect of system navigational performance, the Order defines three aircraft groups, which may be eligible for RNP-10 operations:

- Aircraft eligibility through RNP certification (Eligibility Group 1).
- Aircraft eligibility through prior navigation system certification (Eligibility Group 2).
- Aircraft eligibility through Data Collection (Eligibility Group 3).

In all cases, where navigation relies on inertial systems, a usage limit of 6.2 hours is set from the time the inertial system is placed into the navigation mode. The FAA Order explains, in paragraph 12d, the options available to extend the time limits for use of inertial systems.

RNP containment integrity/continuity, as defined in EUROCAE ED-75( ) (or RTCA DO-236( ) "MASPS for RNP Area Navigation"), are not required functions for RNP-10 operations.

#### 4.3.1 Aircraft eligibility through RNP certification (Eligibility Group 1).

Group 1 aircraft are those that have obtained formal certification and approval of RNP capable systems integrated in the aircraft.

If RNP compliance is stated in the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM), the operational approval of Group 1 aircraft will be based upon the performance defined in that statement.

Note: RNP value in AFM is typically not limited to RNP-10. The AFM will state RNP levels that have been demonstrated. An airworthiness approval specifically addressing only RNP-10 performance may be requested and granted.

#### 4.3.2 Aircraft eligibility through prior navigation system certification (Eligibility Group 2).

Group 2 represents aircraft that can equate their level of performance, certified against earlier standards, to the RNP-10 criteria. Group 2 aircraft are sub-divided into three parts:

(a) Aircraft equipped with Inertial Systems

These aircraft are considered to meet all of the RNP-10 requirements for up to 6.2 hours of flight time if the inertial systems have been shown to meet the intent of CFR Part 121, Appendix G<sup>1</sup>, or equivalent criteria. This time starts when the system is placed in the navigation mode and no en-route facility for radio updating is available. Operators may seek approval to extend this time limit by demonstrating inertial system accuracy, better than the assumed 2 NM per hour radial error, by means of an additional data collection.

If systems are updated en-route (radio navigation updating), the 6.2 hour limit can be extended taking account of the accuracy of the update. See paragraph 4.5 of this AMC.

(b) Aircraft where GPS provides the only means of long range navigation.

For aircraft in this group where GPS provides the only means of long range navigation (i.e. inertial systems are not carried) when out of range of conventional ground stations (VOR/DME), the aircraft flight manual should indicate that the GPS installation is approved as a primary means of navigation for oceanic and remote operations in accordance with FAA Notice 8110.60<sup>2</sup>. These aircraft are considered to meet the RNP-10 requirements without time limitations. At least dual GPS equipment, compliant with ETSO-C129a/TSO-C129(), are required, together with an approved availability prediction program for fault detection and exclusion (FDE) for use prior to dispatch. For RNP-10 operations, the maximum allowable period of time for which the FDE capability is predicted to be unavailable is 34 minutes.

(c) Multisensor Systems Integrating GPS with Inertial Data.

Multisensor systems integrating GPS with RAIM, FDE or an equivalent integrity method that are approved in accordance with FAA AC 20-130A are considered to meet RNP-10 requirements without time limitations. In this case, the inertial system will need to meet the intent of CFR Part 121, Appendix G, or equivalent criteria.

#### 4.3.3 Aircraft eligibility through Data Collection (Eligibility Group 3).

Group 3 represents older out-of-production aircraft that contain widely varying navigation capability.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Annex 2

<sup>2</sup> Notice 8110.60 is recognised by AMC 20-5. The material is now incorporated in AC 20-138A as Appendix 1

A data collection program, acceptable to the Agency, may be used by the applicant to demonstrate that the aircraft and navigation systems provide the flight crew with acceptable navigational situational awareness relative to the intended RNP-10 route. The Order describes the essential aspects of a data collection programme.

The Agency will accept as evidence, inertial system performance data obtained and analysed during previous programmes for RNP-10 approval including data that validates extended flight time.

#### 4.4 Operational Approval and Procedures.

The operational principles given in the FAA Order may be used as the basis for RNP-10 operational approval. To obtain approval, the applicant should address at least the following:

##### 4.4.1 Eligibility for RNP-10.

Evidence should be made available confirming that the aircraft has an approved RNP-10 navigation capability.

##### 4.4.2 Aircraft Equipment and Minimum Equipment List.

The applicant should provide a configuration list of equipment to be used for RNP-10 operations. The MEL(MMEL) should be reviewed to ensure its compatibility with RNP-10 operations. Specific attention should be directed to the need for three inertial navigation units for dispatch if RNP-10 approval is based on a triple-mix solution.

##### 4.4.3 Operational Procedures and Training.

4.4.3.1 Applicant should demonstrate to the responsible authority that the training items related to RNP-10 operations are incorporated into flight crew training. Training for other personnel should be included where appropriate (e.g., dispatchers and maintenance personnel).

4.4.3.2 Operating manuals and checklists should be revised to include information and guidance appropriate to RNP-10 operations. The manuals should include operating instructions for the navigation equipment, and RNP-10 operational procedures (see Appendix 4 of the Order).

4.4.3.3 Operating procedures will need to take account of the RNP-10 time limit declared for the inertial system, if applicable, considering also the effect of weather conditions that could affect flight duration in RNP-10 airspace. Where an extension to the time limit is permitted, the flight crew will need to ensure en-route radio facilities are serviceable before departure, and to apply radio updates in accordance with any Flight Manual limits.

4.4.3.4 Manuals and checklists will need to be submitted to the responsible authority for review as part of the approval process.

#### 4.5 Position Updating

Subject to approval, operators may extend their RNP-10 inertial navigation time by position updating as discussed in paragraph 12e and Appendix 7 of the Order. For position updating approval, aircraft operators will need to calculate, using statistically based

typical winds for each planned route, points at which updates can be made, and the points at which further updates will not be possible.

#### 4.5.1 Automatic radio position update.

Automatic radio position updating is acceptable for operations in RNP-10 airspace as discussed in paragraph 12f of the Order.

#### 4.5.2 Manual radio position update.

Subject to an approved procedure, manual radio updating is permitted as discussed in the paragraph 12g and Appendix 7, of the Order.

#### 4.6 Incident reporting.

Significant incidents associated with the operation of the aircraft that affect or could affect the safety of RNP-10 operations (i.e. navigation error) will need to be reported in accordance with applicable operational rules.

### 5. AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS

JAA documents are available from the JAA publisher Information Handling Services (IHS). Information on prices, where and how to order is available on the JAA website and at [www.avdataworks.com](http://www.avdataworks.com)).

EUROCAE documents may be purchased from EUROCAE, 17 rue Hamelin, 75783 Paris Cedex 16, France, (Fax: 33 1 45 05 72 30). Web site: [www.eurocae.org](http://www.eurocae.org)

FAA documents may be obtained from Department of Transportation, Subsequent Distribution Office SVC-121.23, Ardmore East Business Centre, 3341 Q 75th Avenue, Landover, MD 20785, USA. Web site [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov)

RTCA documents may be obtained from RTCA Inc, 1828 L Street, NW., Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036, USA., (Tel: 1 202 833 9339; Fax 1 202 833 9434). Web site [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org)

ICAO documents may be purchased from Document Sales Unit, International Civil Aviation Organisation, 999 University Street, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7, (Fax: 1 514 954 6769, e-mail: [sales\\_unit@icao.org](mailto:sales_unit@icao.org)) or through national agencies.

ARINC documents may be purchased from ARINC Incorporated; Document Section, 2551 Riva Road, Annapolis, MD 21401-7465, USA, web site [www.ARINC.com](http://www.ARINC.com)

[Amdt 20/1]

## AMC 20-15

### AMC 20-15 Airworthiness Certification Considerations for the Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS II) with optional Hybrid Surveillance

*ED Decision 2011/001/R*

#### 1 PREAMBLE

This Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) provides a means that can be used to obtain an airworthiness approval for the installation of ACAS II equipment which may include optional hybrid surveillance. It is issued to support the operational requirement that requires the carriage of ACAS II.

Hybrid Surveillance is an optional feature that allows ACAS II to use a combination of active surveillance, i.e. actively interrogating the Mode-S Transponders of surrounding aircraft, and passive surveillance, i.e. use of ADS-B position and altitude data (extended squitter), to update an ACAS II track.

An applicant may elect to use an alternative means of compliance. However, those alternative means of compliance must meet the relevant requirements and ensure a safety objectives as defined in paragraph 5 are met. Compliance with this AMC is not mandatory.

#### 2 RELEVANT REQUIREMENTS

The provisions to which this AMC applies are:

CS 25.1301, 1302, 1309, 1322, 1333, 1431, 1459, 1529 and 1581.

CS 23.1301, 1309, 1322, 1431, 1459, 1529 and 1581.

CS 27.1301, 1309, 1322, 1459, 1529 and 1581

CS 29.1301, 1309, 1322, 1333, 1431, 1459, 1529 and 1581

#### 3 REFERENCE MATERIAL

EU OPS<sup>1</sup> 1.160, 1.668, 1.1045, 1.398

AMC 25.1302, AMC 25.1309, AMC 25.1322 and AMC 25-11.

ETSO-C113 Airborne Multipurpose Electronic Displays

ETSO-C119c Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS) Airborne Equipment, TCAS II.

ETSO-2C112() Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System/Mode Select (ATCRBS/Mode S) Airborne Equipment

EUROCAE ED-143 including change 1 Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance Systems (TCAS) Airborne Equipment.

EUROCAE ED-112 Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems

<sup>1</sup> Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91 on the harmonisation of technical requirements and administrative procedures in the field of civil aviation. Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 1899/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 December 2006 (OJ L 377, 27.12.2006, p. 1).

RTCA DO-300 including change 1 Minimum Operational Performance Standards (MOPS) for Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System II (TCAS II) Hybrid surveillance.

#### **4 MINIMUM EQUIPMENT QUALIFICATION**

- 4.1 An acceptable minimum certification standard for the ACAS II equipment including optional hybrid surveillance is EASA ETSO-C119c.
- 4.2 An acceptable minimum certification standard for the associated Mode S transponder is EASA ETSO-2C112().

#### **5 SAFETY OBJECTIVES**

The applicant should perform a Functional Hazard Assessment (FHA) and System Safety Assessment (SSA) for the proposed ACAS II installation. For the purposes of this AMC, a system includes all airborne devices contributing to the ACAS II function. Guidance is provided in AMC 25.1309 or FAA AC 23-1309-1() or AC 27-1B or AC 29-2C. Acceptable probability levels for functionality and alerts are given below:

- 5.1 The probability of failure of the installed system to perform its intended function from a reliability and availability perspective should be shown to be no greater than  $1 \times 10^{-3}$  per flight hour.
- 5.2 The probability of failure of the system to provide the required RA aural or visual alert, when required, without a failure indication should be shown to be no greater than  $1 \times 10^{-4}$  per flight hour in the terminal environment and  $1 \times 10^{-5}$  per flight hour in the en-route environment. See note 1.
- 5.3 The probability of a false or misleading RA aural and visual alert due to a failure of the system should be shown to be no greater than  $1 \times 10^{-4}$  per flight hour in the terminal environment and  $1 \times 10^{-5}$  per flight hour in the en-route environment. See note 1.

Note: The definition of a 'misleading alert' is when an RA condition exists, and an RA is issued, but the RA gives incorrect guidance. The definition of a 'false alert' is when an RA is issued, but an RA condition does not exist.

- 5.4 Failure of the installed ACAS II must not degrade the integrity of any essential or critical system which has an interface with the ACAS II.

The use of Hybrid Surveillance including transitions from active to passive surveillance and vice versa, using a system that complies with the requirements of RTCA DO-300 including Change 1, is assumed not to compromise the safety of ACAS II.

Note 1: In terminal airspace the frequency of encounters, where another aircraft could be present, may be assumed to be once every 10 hours. In en-route airspace the frequency of encounters, where another aircraft could be present, may be assumed to be once every 200 hours. Different frequencies may be used if supported by operational data.

#### **6 HARDWARE AND INSTALLATION**

- 6.1 General Considerations:

The installation should include as a minimum a single ACAS II system and a single Mode S Transponder that meet the requirements of paragraph 4.

- 6.2 Aural Alerts:

- (a) TA and RA aural alerts should be presented by the prescribed voice announcements via flight deck loudspeakers.
- (b) Consideration should be given to presenting ACAS II voice announcements via headsets at a preset level.
- (c) A means for the pilot to cancel active voice announcements and visual indicators is permitted but should not be necessary where voice announcements have a specific duration.
- (d) The ACAS II voice announcements should be consistent with the general philosophy of other flight deck aural alerting systems. In particular, the prioritisation and compatibility of alerts and voice announcements from different warning systems should be consistent with each other. The alert priorities should be wind shear, TAWS and then ACAS II. Altitude callout advisories which occur simultaneously with ACAS II advisories are permitted, but the audibility of each voice alert will need to be understandable.
- (e) The adequacy of aural levels will need to be demonstrated.

Note: For rotorcraft, TA and RA aural alerts should be presented via headsets at a preset level

### 6.3 Displays & Indications

- (a) Warning and Caution alerts should comply with the guidance provided in AMC 25.1322 unless otherwise stated in this AMC.
- (b) The display of Traffic and Resolution Advisory information should be consistent with the guidance provided in AMC 25.1322 and with paragraph 5.4 of AMC 25.1302.
- (c) Resolution Advisory guidance should be presented at each pilot station in the pilot's primary field of view.  
  
Resolution Advisories may be presented on EFIS or IVSI displays provided their primary functions are not compromised.
- (d) A discrete red warning Resolution Advisory enunciator or an Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator (IVSI) with a lighted red indication or Primary Flight Display (PFD) with a lighted red indication or an electronic attitude display with an alphanumeric message should be located in each pilot's primary field of view.
- (e) A means to display traffic information to each flight crew member should be provided. Traffic information may be provided on weather radar (WXR), Electronic Flight Instrument System (EFIS), Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator (IVSI) or other compatible display screen which has been demonstrated to meet the guidance of AMC 25-11, provided their primary functions are not compromised. A separate dedicated traffic display, readily visible to both pilots, is an acceptable alternative. In case a Multi Function Display is used, the display should meet the requirements of ETSO-C113.
- (f) Discrete TA caution lights are optional.
- (g) ACAS II Resolution and Traffic Advisories which trigger the Master Warning System will not be accepted.

- (h) An indication of ACAS II system and sensor failures which prevents correct operation should be provided.
  - (i) An indication that the ACAS II system is operating in TA mode should be provided.
  - (j) ACAS II should be automatically switched to TA mode, if ACAS II and wind shear voice or ACAS II and TAWS voice announcements occur simultaneously.
  - (k) The adequacy of display visibility needs to be demonstrated.
  - (l) The flight crew should be aware, at all times, of the operational state of the ACAS II system. Any change of the operational state of the ACAS II system is to be enunciated to the flight crew via suitable means.
- 6.4 ACAS II Controls:
- (a) Control of the ACAS II should be readily accessible to the flight crew.
  - (b) A means to initiate the ACAS II Self Test function should be provided.
- 6.5 Antennas:
- (a) Either a directional antenna and an omni-directional antenna, or two directional antennas may be installed.  

Note: when installing a directional antenna and an omni-directional antenna the omni-directional antenna should be the lower antenna.
  - (b) The physical locations of the transponder antennas and the ACAS II antennas will need to satisfy isolation and longitudinal separation limits. The physical location should also ensure that propellers or rotors do not interfere with system operation, if applicable. ACAS II antennas may be installed with an angular offset from the aircraft centreline not exceeding 5 degrees.
- 6.6 Interfaces:
- (a) Pressure altitude information will need to be obtained from the same sensor source that supplies the Mode S Transponder(s) and the flight deck altitude display(s). This source should be the most accurate source available on the aircraft. Altitude information should be provided via a digital data bus. ICAO Gray (Gillham) code should not be used.
  - (b) An interface to a radio altimeter sensor should be provided.
  - (c) Inhibit logic selected for input to the ACAS II to take account of the aircraft performance limitations will need to be evaluated and justified unless accepted for an earlier ACAS II standard.
  - (d) Other interfacing for discrete data should be provided, as required.
  - (e) The ACAS II installation should provide an interface with the flight recorder(s).
  - (f) Recording of ACAS II data should be accomplished in accordance with EUROCAE ED-112.  

Note: Information necessary to retrieve and convert the stored data into engineering units should be provided.
  - (g) Interfaces between systems should be analysed to show no unwanted interaction under normal or fault conditions.

## 7 CERTIFICATION TESTING

Ground testing will need to be performed with due consideration of the possible risk of nuisance advisories in operating aircraft. The precautions provided in [Appendix 1](#) should be followed.

7.1 The bulk of testing for a modification to install ACAS II can be achieved by ground testing that verifies system operation and interfaces with aircraft systems.

7.2 The ground tests should include:

- (a) verification check of the ICAO 24 bit airframe address.;
- (b) bearing accuracy check of intruder. A maximum error of  $\pm 15$  degrees in azimuth should be demonstrated for each quadrant. Larger errors may be acceptable in the tail area of the aircraft;
- (c) failure of sensors which are interfaced to ACAS II. A test should be performed to ensure that the effect on ACAS II agrees with the predicted results;
- (d) correct warning prioritisation. The alert priorities should be wind shear, TAWS and then ACAS II;
- (e) electromagnetic interference evaluation to ensure that ACAS II does not cause interference with other aircraft systems;
- (f) the correct operation of any aircraft configurations which result in, by design, the inhibition of RAs.

7.3 Flight testing of an initial installation should evaluate overall operation including:

- (a) surveillance range;

Note: Surveillance range may vary depending on airspace conditions.

- (b) target azimuth reasonableness.
- (c) freedom from unwanted interference;
- (d) assessment, during adverse flight conditions, of instrument visibility, display lighting, sound levels and intelligibility of aural messages;
- (e) the effects of electrical transients;
- (f) validity and usability of Traffic information when the aircraft is subject to attitude changes of  $\pm 15$  degrees in pitch and  $\pm 30$  degrees in roll;
- (g) the correct operation of any aircraft configurations which result in, by design, the inhibition of RAs;

Note: these tests may be considered to be a subset of the ground tests performed in paragraph 7.2 (f). Only those aircraft configurations which are practical to perform in an airborne environment need to be assessed.

- (h) electromagnetic interference evaluation to ensure that ACAS II does not cause interference with other aircraft systems.

7.4 Flight testing to demonstrate RA performance in a planned encounter between aircraft will not normally be required for an ACAS II – Mode S equipment combination, previously demonstrated as performing correctly. Planned encounter flight testing should not be attempted without the agreement of the Agency.

- 7.5 To minimise the certification effort for ACAS II for additional aircraft types listed in the type certificate, the applicant may claim credit, for applicable certification and flight test data obtained from equivalent aircraft installations, including testing performed for ACAS II version 6.04A or 7.0. Flight Testing of ACAS II will not normally be required where acceptable evidence exists relating to the previous certification standard of ACAS II. This assumes the introduction ACAS II involves equipment replacements only.
- 7.6 Equipment that meets the acceptable minimum certification standard for the ACAS II equipment (see paragraph 4.1) has demonstrated that hybrid surveillance function does not degrade the performance of the ACAS II active surveillance. Therefore, when the optional hybrid surveillance function is enabled, specific installation testing of this function is not required.

## 8 MAINTENANCE

The Instructions for Continued Airworthiness (ICA) should include the following:

- 8.1 Maintenance instructions for on aircraft ACAS II testing including the precautions of [Appendix 1](#).
- 8.2 Maintenance instructions for the removal and installation of any directional antenna should include instructions to verify the correct display of ACAS II traffic in all four quadrants.

## 9 AIRCRAFT FLIGHT MANUAL/PILOT OPERATING HANDBOOK

The Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or the Pilots Operating Handbook (POH) should provide at least the following limited set of information. This limited set assumes that a detailed description of the installed system and related operating instructions are available in other operating or training manuals.

Note: Aircraft malfunctions which would prevent the aircraft from following ACAS II climb indication, and which do not automatically inhibit the ACAS II climb indication, should be addressed (e.g. as a cautionary note) in the AFM/POH.

- 9.1 Limitations Section: The following Limitations should to be included:
- (a) Deviation from the ATC assigned altitude is authorised only to the extent necessary to comply with an ACAS II Resolution Advisory (RA).
- 9.2 Emergency Procedures Section: none.
- 9.3 Normal Procedures Section: The ACAS II flight procedures should address the following:
- (a) For a non-crossing RA, to avoid negating the effectiveness of a coordinated manoeuvre by the intruder aircraft, advice that vertical speed should be accurately adjusted to comply with the RA.
  - (b) Non-compliance by one aircraft can result in reduced vertical separation with the need to achieve safe horizontal separation by visual means.
  - (c) A caution that under certain conditions, indicated manoeuvres may significantly reduce stall margins with the need to respect the stall warnings.
  - (d) Advice that evasive manoeuvring should be limited to the minimum required to comply with the RA.
  - (e) When a Climb RA is given with the aircraft in landing configuration, a normal go-around procedure should be initiated.

---

## **10 AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS**

EASA documents may be obtained from EASA (European Aviation Safety Agency), 101253, D50452 Koln Germany or via the Website:

[http://www.easa.europa.eu/ws\\_prod/g/rg\\_certspecs.php](http://www.easa.europa.eu/ws_prod/g/rg_certspecs.php).

EUROCAE documents may be purchased from EUROCAE, 102 rue Etienne Dolet, 92240 Malakoff, France, (Fax: +33 1 46 55 62 65), or website: [www.eurocae.net](http://www.eurocae.net).

RTCA documents may be obtained from RTCA Inc, 1828 L Street, NW., Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036, USA, (Tel.: +1 202 833 9339; Fax: +1 202 833 9434). Website: [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org).

FAA documents may be obtained from Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington DC, 20402-9325, USA. Website: [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-15 – ACAS II/Mode S Transponder Ground Testing Precautions

*ED Decision 2011/001/R*

Transponder/ACAS II system testing is a known source of 'nuisance' ACAS II warnings. The following information provides guidance which should be followed to minimise this risk:

- When not required, ensure all transponders are selected to 'OFF' or 'Standby'.
- Before starting any test, contact the local Air Navigation Service Provider (ANSP) or Air Traffic Service (ATS) and advise them of your intention to conduct transponder testing. Advise of your start time and test duration. Also inform them of the altitude(s) at which you will be testing, your intended Aircraft Identification (Flight Id) and your intended Mode A code.
- Set the Mode A code to 7776 (or other Mode A code agreed with Air Traffic Control Unit).  
Note: The Mode A code 7776 is assigned as a test code by the ORCAM Users Group, specifically for the testing of transponders.
- Set the Aircraft Identification (Flight Id) with the first 8 characters of the company name. This is the name of the company conducting the tests.
- Where possible, perform the testing inside a hangar to take advantage of any shielding properties it may provide.
- As a precaution, where practicable, use antenna transmission covers whether or not testing is performed inside or outside.
- When testing the altitude (Mode C or S) parameter, radiate directly into the ramp test set via the prescribed attenuator.
- In between testing, i.e. to transition from one altitude to another, select the transponder to 'standby' mode.
- If testing transponder/ACAS II system parameters that do not require 'altitude', set altitude to – 1000 feet (minus 1000 feet) or greater than 60,000 feet. This will minimise the possibility of ACAS II warning to airfield and over flying aircraft.
- When testing is complete select the transponder(s) to 'OFF' or 'Standby'.

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-15 – List of Acronyms

ED Decision 2011/001/R

ACAS	Airborne Collision Avoidance System
AMC	Acceptable Means of Compliance
ANSP	Air Navigation Service Provider
ATC	Air Traffic Control
ATCRBS	Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System
ATS	Air Traffic Service
CS	Certification Specifications
EASA	European Aviation Safety Agency
EFIS	Electronic Flight Instrument System
ETSO	European Technical Standard Order
EU	European Union
EUROCAE	European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment
FHA	Failure Hazard Analysis
ICA	Instructions for Continued Airworthiness
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization
IVSI	Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator
MEL	Minimum Equipment List
ORCAM	Originating Region Code Allocation Method
RA	Resolution Advisory
SSA	System Safety Assessment
TA	Traffic Advisory
TCAS	Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System
WXR	Weather Radar

[Amdt 20/8]

## AMC 20-20

### AMC 20-20 Continuing Structural Integrity Programme

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

#### 1. PURPOSE

- a) This Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) provides guidance to type-certificate holders, STC holders, repair approval holders, maintenance organisations, operators and competent authorities in developing a continuing structural integrity programme to ensure safe operation of ageing aircraft throughout their operational life, including provision to preclude Widespread Fatigue Damage.
- b) This AMC is primarily aimed at large aeroplanes that are operated in Commercial Air Transport or are maintained under Part-M. However, this material is also applicable to other aircraft types.
- c) The means of compliance described in this document provides guidance to supplement the engineering and operational judgement that must form the basis of any compliance findings relative to continuing structural integrity programmes.
- d) Like all acceptable means of compliance material, this AMC is not in itself mandatory, and does not constitute a requirement. It describes an acceptable means, but not the only means, for showing compliance with the requirements. While these guidelines are not mandatory, they are derived from extensive industry experience in determining compliance with the relevant requirements.

#### 2. RELATED REGULATIONS AND DOCUMENTS

- a) Implementing Rules and Certification Specifications:
  - Part 21.A.61 Instructions for continued airworthiness.
  - Part 21.A.120 Instructions for continued airworthiness.
  - Part 21.A
  - Part 21.A.433 Repair design
  - Part M.A.302 Maintenance programme
  - CS 25.571 Damage-tolerance and fatigue evaluation of structure
  - CS 25.903 Engines
  - CS 25.1529 Instructions for continued airworthiness
- b) FAA Advisory Circulars
  - AC 91-60 The Continued Airworthiness of Older Airplanes, June 13, 1983, FAA.
  - AC 91-56A Continuing Structural Integrity for Large Transport Category Airplanes April 29 1998 FAA (and later draft 91-56B)
  - AC 20-128A Design Considerations for Minimising Hazards Caused by Uncontained Turbine Engine and Auxiliary Power Unit Rotor Failure, March 25, 1997, FAA.
  - AC 120 – 73 Damage Tolerance Assessment of Repairs to Pressurised Fuselages, FAA. December 14, 2000

AC 25.1529-1 Instructions for continued airworthiness of structural repairs on Transport Airplanes, August 1, 1991 FAA.

c) Related Documents

“Recommendations for Regulatory Action to Prevent Widespread Fatigue Damage in the Commercial Aeroplane Fleet,” Revision A, dated June 29, 1999 [A report of the Airworthiness Assurance Working Group for the Aviation Rulemaking Advisory Committee Transport Aircraft and Engine Issues.]

AAWG Final Report on Continued Airworthiness of Structural Repairs, Dec 1996.

ATA report 51-93-01 structural maintenance programme guidelines for continuing airworthiness May 1993.

AAWG Report on Structures Task Group Guidelines, Rev 1 June 1996

AAWG Report: Recommendations concerning ARAC taskings FR Doc.04-10816 Re: Aging Airplane safety final rule. 14 CFR 121.370a and 129.16

### **3. BACKGROUND**

Service experience has shown there is a need to have continuing updated knowledge on the structural integrity of aircraft, especially as they become older. The structural integrity of aircraft is of concern because such factors as fatigue cracking and corrosion are time-dependent, and our knowledge about them can best be assessed based on real-time operational experience and the use of the most modern tools of analysis and testing.

In April 1988, a high-cycle transport aeroplane en-route from Hilo to Honolulu, Hawaii, suffered major structural damage to its pressurised fuselage during flight. This accident was attributed in part to the age of the aeroplane involved. The economic benefit of operating certain older technology aeroplanes has resulted in the operation of many such aeroplanes beyond their previously expected retirement age. Because of the problems revealed by the accident in Hawaii and the continued operation of older aircraft, both the competent authorities and industry generally agreed that increased attention needed to be focused on the ageing fleet and on maintaining its continued operational safety.

In June 1988, the FAA sponsored a conference on ageing aircraft. As a result of that conference, an ageing aircraft task force was established in August 1988 as a sub-group of the FAA's Research, Engineering, and Development Advisory Committee, representing the interests of the aircraft operators, aircraft manufacturers, regulatory authorities, and other aviation representatives. The task force, then known as the Airworthiness Assurance Task Force (AATF), set forth five major elements of a programme for keeping the ageing fleet safe. For each aeroplane model in the ageing transport fleet these elements consisted of the following:

- a) Select service bulletins describing modifications and inspections necessary to maintain structural integrity;
- b) Develop inspection and prevention programmes to address corrosion;
- c) Develop generic structural maintenance programme guidelines for ageing aeroplanes;
- d) Review and update the Supplemental Structural Inspection Documents (SSID) which describe inspection programmes to detect fatigue cracking; and
- e) Assess damage-tolerance of structural repairs.

Subsequent to these 5 major elements being identified, it was recognised that an additional factor in the Aloha accident was widespread fatigue cracking. Regulatory and Industry experts agreed that, as the transport aircraft fleet continues to age, eventually Widespread Fatigue Damage (WFD) is inevitable. Therefore the FAA determined, and the EASA concurred, that an additional major element of WFD must be added to the Ageing Aircraft programme. Structures Task Groups sponsored by the Task Force were assigned the task of developing these elements into usable programmes. The Task Force was later re-established as the AAWG of the ARAC. Although there was JAA membership and European Operators and Industry representatives participated in the AAWG, recommendations for action focussed on FAA operational rules which are not applicable in Europe. It was therefore decided to establish the EAAWG on this subject to implement Ageing Aircraft activities into the Agency's regulatory system, not only for the initial "AATF eleven" aeroplanes, but also other old aircraft and more recently certificated ones. This AMC is a major part of the European adoption and adaptation of the AAWG recommendations which it follows as closely as practicable.

It is acknowledged that the various competent authorities, type certificate holders and operators have continually worked to maintain the structural integrity of older aircraft on an international basis. This has been achieved through an exchange of in-service information, subsequent changes to inspection programmes and by the development and installation of modifications on particular aircraft. However, it is evident that with the increased use, longer operational lives and experience from in-service aircraft, there is a need for a programme to ensure a high level of structural integrity for all aircraft, and in particular those in the transport fleet. Accordingly, the inspection and evaluation programmes outlined in this AMC are intended to provide:

- a continuing structural integrity assessment by each type-certificate holder, and
- the incorporation of the results of each assessment into the maintenance programme of each operator.

#### **4. DEFINITIONS AND ACRONYMS**

a) For the purposes of this AMC, the following definitions apply:

- **Damage-tolerance (DT)** is the attribute of the structure that permits it to retain its required residual strength without detrimental structural deformation for a period of use after the structure has sustained a given level of fatigue, corrosion, and accidental or discrete source damage.
- **Design Approval Holder (DAH)** is the holder of any design approval, including type certificate, supplemental type certificate or repair approval.
- **Design Service Goal (DSG)** is the period of time (in flight cycles/hours) established at design and/or certification during which the principal structure will be reasonably free from significant cracking including widespread fatigue damage.
- **Fatigue Critical Structure (FCS)** is structure that is susceptible to fatigue cracking that could lead to a catastrophic failure of an aircraft. For the purposes of this AMC, FCS refers to the same class of structure that would need to be assessed for compliance with § 25.571(a) at Amendment 25-45, or later. The term FCS may refer to fatigue critical baseline structure, fatigue critical modified structure, or both.

- **Limit of validity (LOV)** is the period of time, expressed in appropriate units (e.g. flight cycles) for which it has been shown that the established inspections and replacement times will be sufficient to allow safe operation and in particular to preclude development of widespread fatigue damage.
- **Multiple Element Damage (MED)** is a source of widespread fatigue damage characterised by the simultaneous presence of fatigue cracks in similar adjacent structural elements.
- **Multiple Site Damage (MSD)** is a source of widespread fatigue damage characterised by the simultaneous presence of fatigue cracks in the same structural element (i.e., fatigue cracks that may coalesce with or without other damage leading to a loss of required residual strength).
- **Primary Structure** is structure that carries flight, ground, crash or pressurisation loads.
- **Repair Evaluation Guidelines (REG)** provide a process to establish damage-tolerance inspections for repairs that affect Fatigue Critical Structure.
- **Repair Assessment Programme (RAP)** is a programme to incorporate damage tolerance-based inspections for repairs to the fuselage pressure boundary structure (fuselage skin, door skin, and bulkhead webs) into the operator's maintenance and/or inspection programme.
- **Widespread Fatigue Damage (WFD)** in a structure is characterised by the simultaneous presence of cracks at multiple structural details that are of sufficient size and density whereby the structure will no longer meet its damage-tolerance requirement (i.e., to maintain its required residual strength after partial structural failure).

b) The following list defines the acronyms that are used throughout this AMC:

AAWG	Airworthiness Assurance Working Group
AC	Advisory Circular
AD	Airworthiness Directive
ALS	Airworthiness Limitations Section
AMC	Acceptable Means of Compliance
ARAC	Aviation Rulemaking Advisory Committee
BZI	Baseline Zonal Inspection
CPCP	Corrosion Prevention and Control Programme
CS	Certification Specification
DAH	Design Approval Holder
DSD	Discrete Source Damage
DSG	Design Service Goal
EAAWG	European Ageing Aircraft Working Group
EASA	European Aviation Safety Agency
ESG	Extended Service Goal
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FAR	Federal Aviation Regulation
FCBS	Fatigue Critical Baseline Structure
FCS	Fatigue Critical Structure
ICA	Instructions for Continued Airworthiness

ISP	Inspection Start Point
JAA	Joint Aviation Authorities
JAR	Joint Aviation Regulation
LDC	Large Damage Capability
LOV	Limit of Validity
MED	Multiple Element Damage
MRB	Maintenance Review Board
MSD	Multiple Site Damage
MSG	Maintenance Steering Group
NAA	National Airworthiness Authority
NDI	Non-Destructive Inspection
NTSB	National Transportation Safety Board
PSE	Principal Structural Element
RAP	Repairs Assessment Programme
REG	Repair Evaluation Guidelines
SB	Service Bulletin
SMP	Structural Modification Point
SRM	Structural Repair Manual
SSID	Supplemental Structural Inspection Document
SSIP	Supplemental Structural Inspection Programme
STG	Structural Task Group
TCH	Type-Certificate Holder
WFD	Widespread Fatigue Damage

## 5. WAY OF WORKING

### a) General

On the initiative of the TCH and the Agency, a STG should be formed for each aircraft model for which it is decided to put in place an ageing aircraft programme. The STG shall consist of the TCH, selected operator members and Agency representative(s). The objective of the STG is to complete all tasks covered in this AMC in relation to their respective model types, including the following:

- Develop model specific programmes
- Define programme implementation
- Conduct recurrent programme reviews as necessary.

It is recognised that it might not always be possible to form or to maintain an STG, due to a potential lack of resources with the operators or TCH. In this case the above objective would remain with the Agency and operators or TCH as applicable.

An acceptable way of working for STGs is described in “Report on Structures Task Group Guidelines” that was established by the AAWG with the additional clarifications provided in the following sub-paragraphs.

### b) Meeting scheduling

It is the responsibility of the TCH to schedule STG meetings. However if it is found by the Agency that the meeting scheduling is inadequate to meet the STG working objectives, the Agency might initiate themselves additional STG meetings.

c) Reporting

The STG would make recommendations for actions via the TCH to the Agency. Additionally, the STG should give periodic reports (for information only) to AAWG/EASA as appropriate with the objective of maintaining a consistent approach.

d) Recommendations and decision making

The decision making process described in the AAWG Report on Structures Task Group Guidelines paragraph 7 leads to recommendations for mandatory action from the TCH to the Agency. In addition it should be noted that the Agency is entitled to mandate safety measures related to ageing aircraft structures, in addition to those recommended by the STG, if they find it necessary.

e) Responsibilities

The TCH is responsible for developing the ageing aircraft structures programme for each aircraft type, detailing the actions necessary to maintain airworthiness. Other DAH should develop programmes or actions appropriate to the modification/repair for which they hold approval, unless addressed by the TCH. All DAHs will be responsible for monitoring the effectiveness of their specific programme, and to amend the programme as necessary.

The Operator is responsible for incorporating approved DAH actions necessary to maintain airworthiness into its aircraft specific maintenance programmes, in accordance with Part-M.

The competent authority of the state of registry is responsible for ensuring the implementation of the ageing aircraft programme by their operators.

The Agency will approve ageing aircraft structures programmes and may issue ADs to support implementation, where necessary. The Agency, in conjunction with the DAH, will monitor the overall effectiveness of ageing aircraft structures programmes.

## **6 SUPPLEMENTAL STRUCTURAL INSPECTION PROGRAMME (SSIP)**

In the absence of a damage-tolerance based structural maintenance inspection programme (e.g. MRB report, ALS), the TCH, in conjunction with operators, is expected to initiate the development of a SSIP for each aircraft model. Such a programme must be implemented before analysis, tests, and/or service experience indicates that a significant increase in inspection and/or modification is necessary to maintain structural integrity of the aircraft. This should ensure that an acceptable programme is available to the operators when needed. The programme should include procedures for obtaining service information, and assessment of service information, available test data, and new analysis and test data. A SSID should be developed, as outlined in Appendix 1 of this AMC, from this body of data. The role of the operator is principally to comment on the practicality of the inspections and any other procedures defined by the TCH and to implement them effectively.

The SSID, along with the criteria used and the basis for the criteria should be submitted to the Agency for review and approval. The SSIP should be adequately defined in the SSID. The SSID should include inspection threshold, repeat interval, inspection methods and procedures. The applicable modification status, associated life limitation and types of operations for which the SSID is valid should also be identified and stated. In addition, the inspection access, the type of damage being considered, likely damage sites and details of the resulting fatigue cracking scenario should be included as necessary to support the prescribed inspections.

The Agency's review of the SSID will include both engineering and maintenance aspects of the proposal. Because the SSID is applicable to all operators and is intended to address potential safety concerns on older aircraft, the Agency expects these essential elements to be included in maintenance programmes developed in compliance with Part-M. In addition, the Agency will issue ADs to implement any service bulletins or other service information publications found to be essential for safety during the initial SSID assessment process should the SSID not be available in time to effectively control the safety concern. Service bulletins or other service information publications revised or issued as a result of in-service findings resulting from implementation of the SSID should be added to the SSID or will be implemented by separate AD action, as appropriate.

In the event an acceptable SSID cannot be obtained on a timely basis, the Agency may impose service life, operational, or inspection limitations to assure structural integrity.

As a result of a periodic review, the TCH should revise the SSID whenever additional information shows a need. The original SSID will normally be based on predictions or assumptions (from analyses, tests, and/or service experience) of failure modes, time to initial damage, frequency of damage, typically detectable damage, and the damage growth period. Consequently, a change in these factors sufficient to justify a revision would have to be substantiated by test data or additional service information. Any revision to SSID criteria and the basis for these revisions should be submitted to the Agency for review and approval of both engineering and maintenance aspects.

## **7. SERVICE BULLETIN REVIEW and MANDATORY MODIFICATION PROGRAMME**

Service Bulletins issued early in the life of an aircraft fleet may utilise inspections (in some cases non-mandatory inspections) alone to maintain structural integrity. Inspections may be adequate in this early stage, when cracking is possible, but not highly likely. However, as aircraft age the probability of fatigue cracking becomes more likely. In this later stage it is not prudent to rely only on inspections alone because there are more opportunities for cracks to be missed and cracks may no longer occur in isolation. In this later stage in the life of a fleet it is prudent to reduce the reliance strictly on inspections, with its inherent human factors limitations, and incorporate modifications to the structure to eliminate the source of the cracking. In some cases reliance on an inspection programme, in lieu of modification, may be acceptable through the increased use of mandatory versus non-mandatory inspections.

The TCH, in conjunction with operators, is expected to initiate a review of all structurally related inspection and modification SBs and determine which require further actions to ensure continued airworthiness, including mandatory modification action or enforcement of special repetitive inspections

Any aircraft primary structural components that would require frequent repeat inspection, or where the inspection is difficult to perform, taking into account the potential airworthiness concern, should be reviewed to preclude the human factors issues associated with repetitive inspections

The SB review is an iterative process (see Appendix 5) consisting of the following items:

- a) The TCH should review all issued structural inspection - and modification SBs to select candidate bulletins, using the following 4 criteria:
  - i) There is a high probability that structural cracking exists
  - ii) Potential structural airworthiness concern.
  - iii) Damage is difficult to detect during routine maintenance

- iv) There is Adjacent Structural damage or the potential for it.  
This may be done by the TCH alone or in conjunction with the operators at a preliminary STG meeting.
- b) The TCH and operator members will be requested to submit information on individual fleet experience relating to candidate SBs. This information will be collected and evaluated by the TCH. The summarised results will then be reviewed in detail at a STG meeting (see c. below).
- c) The final selection of SBs for recommendation of the appropriate corrective action to assure structural continued airworthiness taking into account the in-service experience, will be made during an STG meeting by the voting members of the STG, either by consensus or majority vote, depending on the preference of the individual STGs.
- d) An assessment will be made by the TCH as to whether or not any subsequent revisions to SBs affect the previous decision made. Any subsequent revisions to SBs previously chosen by the STG for mandatory inspection or incorporation of modification action that would affect the previous STG recommended action should be submitted to the STG for review.
- e) The TCH should review all new structural SBs periodically to select further candidate bulletins. The TCH should schedule a meeting of the STG to address the candidates. Operator members and the competent authority will be advised of the candidate selection and provided the opportunity to submit additional candidates.

## **8. CORROSION PREVENTION AND CONTROL PROGRAMME**

A corrosion prevention and control programme (CPCP) is a systematic approach to prevent and to control corrosion in the aircraft's Primary Structure. The objective of a CPCP is to limit the deterioration due to corrosion to a level necessary to maintain airworthiness and where necessary to restore the corrosion protection schemes for the structure. A CPCP consists of a basic corrosion inspection task, task areas, defined corrosion levels, and compliance times (implementation thresholds and repeat intervals). The CPCP also includes procedures to notify the competent authority and TCH of the findings and data associated with Level 2 and Level 3 corrosion and the actions taken to reduce future findings to Level 1 or better. See Appendix 4 for definitions and further details.

As part of the ICA, the TCH should provide an inspection programme that includes the frequency and extent of inspections necessary to provide the continued airworthiness of the aircraft. Furthermore, the ICA should include the information needed to apply protective treatments to the structure after inspection. In order for the inspections to be effectively accomplished, the TCH should provide corrosion removal and cleaning procedures and reference allowable limits. The TCH should include all of these corrosion-related activities in a manual referred to as the Baseline Programme. This Baseline Programme manual is intended to form a basis for operators to derive a systematic and comprehensive CPCP for inclusion in the operator's maintenance programme. The TCH is responsible for monitoring the effectiveness of the Baseline Programme and, if necessary, to recommend changes based on operators reports of findings. In line with Part-M requirements, when the TCH publishes revisions to their Baseline Programme, these should be reviewed and the operator's programme adjusted as necessary in order to maintain corrosion to Level 1 or better.

An operator may adopt the Baseline Programme provided by the TCH or it may choose to develop its own CPCP, or may be required to if none is available from the TCH. In developing its own CPCP an operator may join with other operators and develop a Baseline Programme similar to a TCH developed Baseline Programme for use by all operators in the group.

Before an operator may include a CPCP in its maintenance or inspection programme, the competent authority should review and approve that CPCP. The operator should show that the CPCP is comprehensive in that it addresses all corrosion likely to affect Primary Structure, and is systematic in that it provides:

- a) Step-by-step procedures that are applied on a regular basis to each identified task area or zone, and
- b) These procedures are adjusted when they result in evidence that corrosion is not being controlled to an established acceptable level (Level 1 or better).

Note: For an aeroplane with an ALS, in addition to providing a suitable baseline programme in the ICA and to ensure compliance with CS 25.571 it is appropriate for the TCH to place an entry in the ALS stating that all corrosion should be maintained to Level 1 or better. (This practice is also described in ATA MSG-3)

## 9. REPAIR EVALUATION GUIDELINES AND REPAIR ASSESSMENT PROGRAMMES

Early fatigue or fail-safe requirements (pre-Amdt 45) did not necessarily provide for timely inspection of critical structure so that damaged or failed components could be dependably identified and repaired or replaced before a hazardous condition developed. Furthermore, it is known that application of later fatigue and damage tolerance requirements to repairs was not always fully implemented according to the relevant certification bases.

Repair Evaluation Guidelines (REG) are intended to assure the continued structural integrity of all relevant repaired and adjacent structure, based on damage-tolerance principles, consistent with the safety level provided by the SSID or ALS as applied to the baseline structure. To achieve this, the REG should be developed by the TCH and implemented by the Operator to ensure that an evaluation is performed of all repairs to structure that is susceptible to fatigue cracking and could contribute to a catastrophic failure.

Even the best maintained aircraft will accumulate structural repairs when being operated. The AAWG conducted two separate surveys of repairs placed on aircraft to collect data. The evaluation of these surveys revealed that 90% of all repairs found were on the fuselage, hence these are a priority and RAPs have already been developed for the fuselage pressure shell of many large transport aeroplanes not originally certificated to damage-tolerance requirements. 40% of the repairs were classified as adequate and 60% of the repairs required consideration for possible additional supplemental inspection during service. Nonetheless, following further studies by AAWG working groups it has been agreed that repairs to all structure susceptible to fatigue and whose failure could contribute to catastrophic failure will be considered. (Ref. AAWG Report: Recommendations concerning ARAC taskings FR Doc.04-10816 Re: Aging Airplane safety final rule. 14 CFR 121.370a and 129.16.)

As aircraft operate into high cycles and high times the ageing repaired structure needs the same considerations as the original structure in respect of damage-tolerance. Existing repairs may not have been assessed for damage-tolerance and appropriate inspections or other actions implemented. Repairs are to be assessed, replaced if necessary or repeat inspections determined and carried out as supplemental inspections or within the baseline zonal inspection programme. A damage-tolerance based inspection programme for repairs will be required to detect damage which may develop in a repaired area, before that damage degrades the load

carrying capability of the structure below the levels required by the applicable airworthiness standards.

The REG should provide data to address repairs to all structure that is susceptible to fatigue cracking and could contribute to a catastrophic failure. The REG may refer to the RAP, other existing approved data such as SRM and SBs or provide specific means for obtaining data for individual repairs.

Documentation such as the Structural Repair Manual and service bulletins needs to be reviewed for compliance with damage-tolerance principles and be updated and promulgated consistent with the intent of the REGs.

Where repair evaluation guidelines, repair assessment programmes or similar documents have been published by the TCH they should be incorporated into the aircraft's maintenance programme according to Part-M requirements.

This fatigue and damage-tolerance evaluation of repairs will establish an appropriate inspection programme or a replacement schedule if the necessary inspection programme is too demanding or not possible. Details of the means by which the REGs and the maintenance programme may be developed are incorporated in Appendix 3.

## **10. LIMIT OF VALIDITY OF THE MAINTENANCE PROGRAMME AND EVALUATION FOR WIDESPREAD FATIGUE DAMAGE**

### **a) Initial WFD Evaluation and LOV**

All fatigue and damage tolerance evaluations are finite in scope and also therefore in their long term ability to ensure continued airworthiness. The maintenance requirements that evolve from these evaluations have a finite period of validity defined by the extent of testing, analysis and service experience that make up the evaluation and the degree of associated uncertainties. Limit of validity (LOV) is the period of time, expressed in appropriate units (e.g. flight cycles) for which it has been shown that the established inspections and replacement times will be sufficient to allow safe operation and in particular to preclude development of widespread fatigue damage. The LOV should be based on fatigue test evidence.

The likelihood of the occurrence of fatigue damage in an aircraft's structure increases with aircraft usage. The design process generally establishes a design service goal (DSG) in terms of flight cycles/hours for the airframe. It is generally expected that any cracking that occurs on an aircraft operated up to the DSG will occur in isolation (i.e., local cracking), originating from a single source, such as a random manufacturing flaw (e.g., a mis-drilled fastener hole) or a localised design detail. It is considered unlikely that cracks from manufacturing flaws or localised design issues will interact strongly as they grow. The SSIP described in paragraph 6 and Appendix 1 of this AMC are intended to find all forms of fatigue damage before they become critical. Nonetheless, it has become apparent that as aircraft have approached and exceeded their DSG only some SSIPs have correctly addressed Widespread Fatigue Damage (WFD) as described below.

With extended usage, uniformly loaded structure may develop cracks in adjacent fastener holes, or in adjacent similar structural details. The development of cracks at multiple locations (both MSD and MED) may also result in strong interactions that can affect subsequent crack growth, in which case the predictions for local cracking would no longer apply. An example of this situation may occur at any skin joint where load transfer occurs. Simultaneous cracking at many fasteners along a common rivet line may reduce the residual strength of the joint below required levels before the cracks are detectable

under the maintenance programme established at time of certification. Furthermore, these cracks, while they may or may not interact, can have an adverse effect on the large damage capability (LDC) of the airframe before the cracks become detectable.

The TCH's role is to perform a WFD evaluation and, in conjunction with operators, is expected to initiate development of a maintenance programme with the intent of precluding operation with WFD. Appendix 2 provides guidelines for development of a programme to preclude the occurrence of WFD. Such a programme must be implemented before analysis, tests, and/or service experience indicates that widespread fatigue damage may develop in the fleet. The operator's role is to provide service experience, to help ensure the practicality of the programme and to ensure it is implemented effectively.

The results of the WFD evaluation should be presented for review and approval to the Agency for the aircraft model being considered. Since the objective of this evaluation is to preclude WFD from the fleet, it is expected that the results will include recommendations for necessary inspections or modification and/or replacement of structure, as appropriate to support the LOV. It is expected that the TCH will work closely with operators in the development of these programmes to assure that the expertise and resources are available when implemented.

The Agency's review of the WFD evaluation results will include both engineering and maintenance aspects of the proposal. The Agency expects any actions necessary to preclude WFD (including the LOV) to be incorporated in maintenance programmes developed in compliance with Part-M. Any service bulletins or other service information publications revised or issued as a result of in-service MSD/MED findings resulting from implementation of these programmes may require separate AD action.

In the event an acceptable WFD evaluation cannot be completed on a timely basis, the Agency may impose service life, operational, or inspection limitations to assure structural integrity of the subject type design.

b) Revision of WFD evaluation and LOV

New service experience findings, improvements in the prediction methodology, better load spectrum data, a change in any of the factors upon which the WFD evaluation is based or economic considerations, may dictate a revision to the evaluation. Accordingly, associated new recommendations for service action should be developed including a revised LOV, if appropriate, and submitted to the Agency for review and approval of both engineering and maintenance aspects.

In order to operate an individual aircraft up to the revised LOV, a WFD evaluation should also be performed for all applicable modified or repaired structure to determine if any new structure or any structure affected by the change is susceptible to WFD. This evaluation should be conducted by the DAH for the changed structure in conjunction with the operator prior to the aircraft reaching its existing LOV. The results together with any necessary actions required to preclude WFD from occurring before the aircraft reaches the revised LOV should be presented for review and approval by the Agency.

This process may be repeated such that, subject to Agency approval of the evaluations, a revised LOV may be established and incorporated in the operator's maintenance programme, together with any necessary actions to preclude WFD from occurring before the aircraft reaches the revised LOV.

The LOV and associated actions should be incorporated in the ALS. For an aircraft without an ALS, it may be appropriate for the DAH to create an ALS and to enter the LOV in the ALS, together with a clear identification of inspections and modifications required to allow safe operation up to that limit.

In any case, should instructions provided by the DAH in their ICA (e.g. maintenance manual revision) clearly indicate that the maintenance programme is not valid beyond a certain limit, this limit and associated instructions must be adhered to in the operator's maintenance programme as approved by the competent authority under Part-M requirements, unless an EASA approved alternative programme is incorporated and approved.

## 11. SUPPLEMENTAL TYPE-CERTIFICATES AND MODIFICATIONS

Any modification or supplemental type-certificates (STC) affecting an aircraft's structure could have an effect on one or all aspects of ageing aircraft assessment as listed above. Such structural changes will need the same consideration as the basic aircraft and the operator should seek support from the STC holder (who has primary responsibility for the design/certification of the STC), or an approved Design Organisation, where, for example an STC holder no longer exists. Appendix 3 provides further details.

STC holders are expected to review existing designs that may have implications for continued airworthiness in the context of ageing aircraft programmes and collaborate with operators and TCHs, where appropriate.

## 12. IMPLEMENTATION

In compliance with Part-M, operators must amend their current structural maintenance programmes to comply with and to account for new and/or modified maintenance instructions promulgated by the DAH.

From the industry/Agency discussions leading to the definition of the programmes detailed in paragraphs 6 to 10, above, appropriate implementation times have emerged. These programme implementation times are expressed as a fraction of the aircraft model's DSG.

Programme	Affected Structure*	Implementation
CPCP	All Primary Structure	½ DSG
SSID	PSEs as defined in CS25.571	½ DSG
SB-Review	SBs that address a potentially unsafe structural condition	¾ DSG
REGs and RAPs	Repairs to fatigue critical structure (FCS).	¾ DSG
WFD	Primary structure susceptible to WFD	1 DSG

\* Note: The certification philosophy for safe-life items under CS 25.571 necessitates no further investigation under ageing aircraft programmes that would provide damage tolerance based inspections. However, this does not exclude safe-life items such as landing gear from the CPCP and SB Review or from re-assessment of their safe-life if the aircraft usage or structural loading is known to have changed.

In the absence of other information prior to the implementation of these programmes the limit of validity of the existing maintenance programmes should be considered as the DSG.

Programme implementation times in flight hours, flight or landing cycles, or calendar period, as appropriate, should be established by the TC/STC Holder based on the above table.

A period of up to one year may be allowed to incorporate the necessary actions into the operator's maintenance programme once they become available from the DAH. Grace periods

for accomplishment of actions beyond threshold should address the level of risk and for large fleets the practicalities of scheduling maintenance activities. Typically, for maintenance actions beyond threshold, full implementation of these maintenance actions across the whole fleet should be accomplished within 4 years of the operator's programme being approved by the competent authority.

Unless data is available on the dates of incorporation of repairs and modifications [STCs] they will need to be assumed as having the same age as the airframe.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a Supplementary Structural Inspection Programme

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

### 1. GENERAL

#### 1.1 Purpose

This Appendix 1 gives interpretations, guidelines and acceptable means of compliance for the SSIP actions.

#### 1.2 Background

Service experience has demonstrated that there is a need to have continuing updated knowledge concerning the structural integrity of aircraft, especially as they become older. Early fatigue requirements, such as “fail safe” regulations did not provide for timely inspection of an aircraft’s critical structure to ensure that damaged or failed components could be dependably identified and then repaired or replaced before hazardous conditions developed.

In 1978 the damage-tolerance concept was adopted for transport category aeroplanes in the USA as Amendment 25-45 to FAR 25.571. This amended rule required damage-tolerance analyses as part of the type design of transport category aeroplanes for which application for type-certification was received after the effective date of the amendment. In 1980 the requirement for damage-tolerance analyses was also included in JAR 25.571 Change 7.

One prerequisite for the successful application of the damage tolerance approach for managing fatigue is that crack growth and residual strength can be anticipated with sufficient precision to allow inspections to be established that will detect cracking before it reaches a size that will degrade the strength below a specified level. When damage is discovered, airworthiness is ensured by repair or revised maintenance action. Evidence to date suggests that when all critical structure is included, fatigue and damage-tolerance based inspections and procedures (including modification and replacement when necessary) provide the best approach to address aircraft fatigue.

Pre FAR Part 25 Amendment 25-45 (JAR-25 Change 7) aeroplanes were built to varying standards that embodied fatigue and fail-safe requirements. These aeroplanes, as certified, had no specific mandated requirements to perform inspections for fatigue. Following the amendment of FAR 25 to embody damage-tolerance requirements, the FAA published Advisory Circular 91-56A. That AC was applicable to pre-Amendment 25-45 aeroplanes with a maximum gross weight greater than 75.000 pounds. According to the AC the TCH, in conjunction with operators, was expected to initiate development of a SSIP for each aeroplane model.

AC 91-56A provided guidance material for the development of such programmes based on damage-tolerance principles. Many TCH’s of large aeroplanes developed SSIPs for their pre-Amendment 25-45 aeroplanes. The documents containing the SSIP are designated Supplemental Structural Inspection Documents (SSID) or Supplemental Inspection Documents (SID)

The competent authorities have in the past issued a series of ADs requiring compliance with these SSIPs. Generally these ADs require the operators to incorporate the SSIPs into their maintenance programmes. Under Part-M requirements it is expected that an operator will automatically incorporate the SSID into their maintenance programme.

For post Amendment 25-45 aeroplanes, it was required that inspections or other procedures should be developed based on the damage-tolerance evaluations required by FAR 25.571, and included in the maintenance data. In Amendment 25-54 to FAR 25 and change 7 to JAR-25 it was required to include these inspections and procedures in the Airworthiness Limitations Section of the Instructions for Continued Airworthiness required by 25.1529. At the same amendment, 25.1529 was changed to require applicants for type-certificates to prepare Instructions for Continued Airworthiness in accordance with Appendix H of FAR/JAR-25. Appendix H requires that the Instructions for Continued Airworthiness must contain a section titled Airworthiness Limitations that is segregated and clearly distinguishable from the rest of the document. This section shall contain the information concerning inspections and other procedures as required by FAR/JAR/CS 25.571.

The content of the Airworthiness Limitations Section of the Instructions for Continued Airworthiness is designated by some TCH's as Airworthiness Limitations Instructions (ALI). Other TCH's have decided to designate the same items as Airworthiness Limitations Items (ALI).

Compliance with FAR/JAR 25.571 at Amendment 25-45 and Change 7 respectively, or later amendments, results in requirements to periodically inspect aeroplanes for potential fatigue damage in areas where it is most likely to occur.

## **2. SUPPLEMENTAL STRUCTURAL INSPECTION PROGRAMME (SSIP)**

Increased utilisation, longer operational lives, and the high safety demands imposed on the current fleet of transport aeroplanes indicate the need for a programme to ensure a high level of structural integrity for all aeroplanes in the transport fleet.

This AMC is intended to provide guidance to TCHs and other DAHs to develop or review existing inspection programmes for effectiveness. SSIPs are based on a thorough technical review of the damage-tolerance characteristics of the aircraft structure using the latest techniques and changes in operational usage. They lead to revised or new inspection requirements primarily for structural cracking and replacement or modification of structure where inspection is not practical.

Large transport aeroplanes that were certificated according to FAR 25.571 Amendment 25-45/54 or JAR 25 Change 7 are damage-tolerant. The fatigue requirements are part of the MRB Report, as required by ATA MSG-3. However, for pre ATA MSG-3 rev 2 aeroplanes there are no requirements for regular MRB Report review and for post ATA MSG-3 rev 2 aeroplanes there is only a requirement for regular MRB Report review in order to assess if the CPCP is effective. Concerning ageing aircraft activities, it is important to regularly review the part of the MRB Report containing the structural inspections resulting from the fatigue and damage-tolerance analysis for effectiveness.

### **2.1 Pre-Amendment 25-45 aeroplanes**

The TCH is expected to initiate development of a SSIP for each aeroplane model. Such a programme must be implemented before analysis, test and/or service experience indicate that a significant increase in inspection and or modification is necessary to maintain structural integrity of the aeroplane. This should ensure that an acceptable programme is available to the operators when needed. The programme should include procedures for obtaining service information, and assessment of service information, available test data, and new analysis and test data.

A SSID should be developed in accordance with Paragraph 3 of this Appendix 1. The recommended SSIP, along with the criteria used and the basis for the criteria, should be submitted by the TCH to the Agency for approval. The SSIP should be adequately defined in the SSID and presented in a manner that is effective. The SSID should include the type of damage being considered, and likely sites; inspection access, threshold, interval method and procedures; applicable modification status and/or life limitation; and types of operation for which the SSID is valid.

The review of the SSID by the Agency will include both engineering and maintenance aspects of the proposal. In the event an acceptable SSID cannot be obtained on a timely basis the competent authority may impose service life, operational, or inspection limitations to assure structural integrity

The TCH should check the SSID periodically against current service experience. This should include an evaluation of current methods and findings. Any unexpected defect occurring should be assessed as part of the continuing assessment of structural integrity to determine a need for revision to the document.

## 2.2. Post-Amendment 25-45 aeroplanes

Aeroplanes certificated to FAR 25.571 Amendment 25-45, JAR 25.571 Change 7 and CS-25 or later amendments are damage-tolerant. The airworthiness limitations including the inspections and procedures established in accordance with FAR/JAR/CS 25.571 shall be included in the Instructions for Continuing Airworthiness, ref. FAR/JAR/CS 25.1529. Further guidance for the actual contents is incorporated in FAR/JAR/CS-25 Appendix H.

To maintain the structural integrity of these aeroplanes it is necessary to follow up the effectiveness of these inspections and procedures. The DAH should therefore check this information periodically against current service experience. Any unexpected defect occurring should be assessed as part of the continuing assessment of structural integrity to determine a need for revision to this information. The revised data should be developed in accordance with the same procedures as at type-certification giving consideration to any additional test or service data available and changes to aeroplanes operating patterns.

## 3. GUIDELINES FOR DEVELOPMENT OF THE SUPPLEMENTAL STRUCTURAL INSPECTION DOCUMENT

This paragraph is based directly on Appendix 1 to FAA AC 91-56A which applies to transport category aeroplanes that were certificated prior to Amendment 25-45 of FAR 25 or equivalent requirement.

### 3.1. General

Amendment 25-45 to § 25.571 introduced wording which emphasises damage-tolerant design. However, the structure to be evaluated, the type of damage considered (fatigue, corrosion, service, and production damage), and the inspection and/or modification criteria should, to the extent practicable, be in accordance with the damage-tolerance principles of the current § 25.571 standards. An acceptable means of compliance can be found in AC 25.571-1C (“Damage-Tolerance and Fatigue Evaluation of Structure,” dated April 29, 1998) or the latest revision.

It is essential to identify the structural parts and components that contribute significantly to carrying flight, ground, pressure, or control loads, and whose failure could affect the structural integrity necessary for the continued safe operation of the aeroplane. The

damage-tolerance or safe-life characteristics of these parts and components must be established or confirmed.

Analyses made in respect to the continuing assessment of structural integrity should be based on supporting evidence, including test and service data. This supporting evidence should include consideration of the operating loading spectra, structural loading distributions, and material behaviour. An appropriate allowance should be made for the scatter in life to crack initiation and rate of crack propagation in establishing the inspection threshold, inspection frequency, and, where appropriate, retirement life. Alternatively, an inspection threshold may be based solely on a statistical assessment of fleet experience, if it can be shown that equal confidence can be placed in such an approach.

An effective method of evaluating the structural condition of older aeroplanes is selective inspection with intensive use of non-destructive techniques, and the inspection of individual aeroplanes, involving partial or complete dismantling (“teardown”) of available structure.

The effect of repairs and modifications approved by the TCH should be considered. In addition, it may be necessary to consider the effect of repairs and operator-approved or other DAH modifications on individual aircraft. The operator has the responsibility for ensuring notification and consideration of any such aspects in conjunction with the DAH.

### 3.2. Damage-tolerant structures

The damage-tolerance assessment of the aircraft structure should be based on the best information available. The assessment should include a review of analysis, test data, operational experience, and any special inspections related to the type design.

A determination should then be made of the site or sites within each structural part or component considered likely to crack, and the time or number of flights at which this might occur.

The growth characteristics of damage and interactive effects on adjacent parts in promoting more rapid or extensive damage should be determined. This determination should be based on study of those sites that may be subject to the possibility of crack initiation due to fatigue, corrosion, stress corrosion, disbonding, accidental damage, or manufacturing defects in those areas shown to be vulnerable by service experience or design judgement. The damage tolerance certification specification of CS 25.571 requires not only fatigue damage to be addressed but also accidental and environmental damage. Some types of accidental damage (e.g. scribe marks) can not be easily addressed by the MSG process and require specific inspections based on fatigue and damage tolerance analysis and tests. Furthermore, some applicants may choose to address other types of accidental damage and environmental damage in the SSID or ALS by modelling the damage as a crack and performing a fatigue and damage tolerance analysis. The resulting inspection programme may be tailored to look for the initial type of damage or the resulting fatigue cracking scenario, or both.

The minimum size of damage that is practical to detect and the proposed method of inspection should be determined. This determination should take into account the number of flights required for the crack to grow from detectable to the allowable limit, such that the structure has a residual strength corresponding to the conditions stated under CS 25.571.

Note: In determining the proposed method of inspection, consideration should be given to visual inspection, non-destructive testing, and analysis of data from built-in load and defect monitoring devices.

The continuing assessment of structural integrity may involve more extensive damage than might have been considered in the original fail-safe evaluation of the aircraft, such as:

- (a) A number of small adjacent cracks, each of which may be less than the typically detectable length, developing suddenly into a long crack;
- (b) Failures or partial failures in other locations following an initial failure due to redistribution of loading causing a more rapid spread of fatigue; and
- (c) Concurrent failure or partial failure of multiple load path elements (e.g., lugs, planks, or crack arrest features) working at similar stress levels.

### 3.3. Information to be included in the assessment

The continuing assessment of structural integrity for the particular aircraft type should be based on the principles outlined in paragraph 3.2 of this Appendix 1. The following information should be included in the assessment and kept by the TCH in a form available to the Agency:

- (a) The current operational statistics of the fleet in terms of hours or flights;
- (b) The typical operational mission or missions assumed in the assessment;
- (c) The structural loading conditions from the chosen missions; and
- (d) Supporting test evidence and relevant service experience.

In addition to the information specified in paragraph 3.3. above, the following should be included for each critical part or component:

- (a) The basis used for evaluating the damage-tolerance characteristics of the part or component;
- (b) The site or sites within the part or component where damage could affect the structural integrity of the aircraft;
- (c) The recommended inspection methods for the area;
- (d) For damage-tolerant structures, the maximum damage size at which the residual strength capability can be demonstrated and the critical design loading case for the latter; and
- (e) For damage-tolerant structures, at each damage site the inspection threshold and the damage growth interval between detectable and critical, including any likely interaction effect from the damage sites.

Note: Where re-evaluation of fail-safety or damage-tolerance of certain parts or components indicates that these qualities cannot be achieved, or can only be demonstrated using an inspection procedure whose practicability or reliability may be in doubt, replacement or modification action may need to be defined.

### 3.4. Inspection programme

The purpose of a continuing airworthiness assessment in its most basic terms is to adjust the current maintenance inspection programme, as required, to assure continued safety of the aircraft type.

In accordance with Paragraphs 1 and 2 of this Appendix 1, an allowable limit of the size of damage should be determined for each site such that the structure has a residual strength for the load conditions specified in CS 25.571. The size of damage that is practical to detect by the proposed method of inspection should be determined, along with the number of flights required for the crack to grow from detectable to the allowable limit.

The recommended inspection programme should be determined from the data described in paragraph 3.3 above, giving due consideration to the following:

- (a) Fleet experience, including all of the scheduled maintenance checks;
- (b) Confidence in the proposed inspection technique; and
- (c) The joint probability of reaching the load levels described above and the final size of damage in those instances where probabilistic methods can be used with acceptable confidence.

Inspection thresholds for supplemental inspections should be established. These inspections would be supplemental to the normal inspections, including the detailed internal inspections.

- (a) For structure with reported cracking, the threshold for inspection should be determined by analysis of the service data and available test data for each individual case.
- (b) For structure with no reported cracking, it may be acceptable, provided sufficient fleet experience is available, to determine the inspection threshold on the basis of analysis of existing fleet data alone. This threshold should be set such as to include the inspection of a sufficient number of high-time aircraft to develop added confidence in the integrity of the structure (see Paragraph 1 of this Appendix 1).

### 3.5. The supplemental structural inspection document

The SSID should contain the recommendations for the inspection procedures and replacement or modification of parts or components necessary for the continued safe operation of the aircraft up to the LOV. The document should be prefaced by the following information:

- (a) Identification of the variants of the basic aircraft type to which the document relates;
- (b) Reference to documents giving any existing inspections or modifications of parts or components;
- (c) The types of operations for which the inspection programme are considered valid;
- (d) A list of service bulletins (or other service information publication) revised as a result of the structural reassessment undertaken to develop the SSID, including a statement that the operator must account for these service bulletins.
- (e) The type of damage which is being considered (i.e., fatigue, corrosion and/or accidental damage).
- (f) Guidance to the operator on which inspection findings should be reported to the type-certificate holder.

The document should contain at least the following information for each critical part or component:

- (a) A description of the part or component and any relevant adjacent structure, including means of access to the part.
- (b) Relevant service experience.
- (c) Likely site(s) of damage.
- (d) Inspection method and procedure, and alternatives.
- (e) Minimum size of damage considered detectable by the method(s) of inspection.
- (f) Service bulletins (or other service information publication) revised or issued as a result of in-service findings resulting from implementation of the SSID (added as revision to the initial SID).
- (g) Initial inspection threshold.
- (h) Repeat inspection interval.
- (i) Reference to any optional modification or replacement of part or component as terminating action to inspection.
- (j) Reference to the mandatory modification or replacement of the part or component at given life, if fail-safety by inspection is impractical; and
- (k) Information related to any variations found necessary to “safe lives” already declared.

The SSID should be compared from time to time against current service experience. Any unexpected defect occurring should be assessed as part of the continuing assessment of structural integrity to determine the need for revision of the SSID. Future structural service bulletins should state their effect on the SSID.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a programme to preclude the occurrence of widespread fatigue damage

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

### 1. INTRODUCTION

The terminology and methodology in this appendix is based upon material developed by the AAWG.

### 2. DEFINITIONS

Extended Service Goal (ESG) is an adjustment to the design service goal established by service experience, analysis, and/or test during which the principal structure will be reasonably free from significant cracking including widespread fatigue damage.

Inspection Start Point (ISP) is the point in time when special inspections of the fleet are initiated due to a specific probability of having a MSD/MED condition.

Large Damage Capability (LDC) is the ability of the structure to sustain damage visually detectable under an operator's normal maintenance that is caused by accidental damage, fatigue damage, and environmental degradation, and still maintain limit load capability with MSD to the extent expected at SMP.

Monitoring period is the period of time when special inspections of the fleet are initiated due to an increased risk of MSD/MED (ISP) and ending when the SMP is reached.

Scatter Factor is a life reduction factor used in the interpretation of fatigue analysis and fatigue test results.

Structural Modification Point (SMP) is a point reduced from the WFD average behaviour (i.e., lower bound), so that operation up to that point provides equivalent protection to that of a two-lifetime fatigue test. No aircraft should be operated beyond the SMP without modification or part replacement.

Test-to-Structure Factor is a series of factors used to adjust test results to full-scale structure. These factors could include, but are not limited to, differences in:

- stress spectrum,
- boundary conditions,
- specimen configuration,
- material differences,
- geometric considerations, and
- environmental effects.

Teardown inspections can be destructive and can be performed on fatigue tested structural components or those that have been removed from service. Alternatively they involve local teardown (non-destructive) disassembly and subsequent refurbishment of specific areas of high-time aircraft in service. The liberated sections of structure are then inspected using visual and non-destructive inspection technology, to characterise the extent of damage within the structure with regard to corrosion, fatigue, and accidental damage.

WFD (average behaviour) is the point in time when 50% of the fleet is expected to reach WFD for a particular detail.

### **3. GENERAL**

The likelihood of the occurrence of fatigue damage in an aircraft's structure increases with aircraft usage. The design process generally establishes a design service goal (DSG) in terms of flight cycles/hours for the airframe. It is expected that any cracking that occurs on an aircraft operated up to the DSG will occur in isolation (i.e., local cracking), originating from a single source, such as a random manufacturing flaw (e.g., a mis-drilled fastener hole) or a localised design detail. It is considered unlikely that cracks from manufacturing flaws or localised design issues will interact strongly as they grow.

With extended usage, uniformly loaded structure may develop cracks in adjacent fastener holes, or in adjacent similar structural details. These cracks may or may not interact, and they can have an adverse effect on the LDC of the structure before the cracks become detectable. The development of cracks at multiple locations (both MSD and MED) may also result in strong interactions that can affect subsequent crack growth; in which case, the predictions for local cracking would no longer apply. An example of this situation may occur at any skin joint where load transfer occurs. Simultaneous cracking at many fasteners along a common rivet line may reduce the residual strength of the joint below required levels before the cracks are detectable under the routine maintenance programme established at the time of certification.

Because of the small probability of occurrence of MSD/MED in aircraft operation up to its DSG, maintenance programmes developed for initial certification have generally considered only local fatigue cracking. Therefore, as the aircraft reaches its DSG, it is necessary to take appropriate action in the ageing fleets to preclude WFD so that continued safe operation of the aircraft is not jeopardised. The DAH and/or the operator(s) should conduct structural evaluations to determine where and when MSD/MED may occur. Based on these evaluations the DAH and in some cases the operators would provide additional maintenance instructions for the structure, as appropriate. The maintenance instructions include, but are not limited to inspections, structural modifications, and limits of validity of the new maintenance instructions. In most cases, a combination of inspections and/or modifications/replacements is deemed necessary to achieve the required safety level. Other cases will require modification or replacement if inspections are not viable.

There is a distinct possibility that there could be a simultaneous occurrence of MSD and MED in a given structural area. This situation is possible on some details that were equally stressed. If this is possible, then this scenario should be considered in developing appropriate service actions for structural areas.

Before MSD/MED can be addressed, it is expected that the operators will incorporate an augmented structural maintenance programme that includes the Mandatory Modifications Programme, the CPCP, the SSIP and the Repair Assessment Programme.

There are alternative methods for accomplishing a WFD assessment other than that given in this AMC. For example, FAA AC 25-571-1C Paragraph 6.C or latest revision contains guidance material for the evaluation of structure using risk analysis techniques.

### **4. STRUCTURAL EVALUATION FOR WFD**

#### **4.1 General.**

The evaluation has three objectives:

- (a) Identify Primary Structure susceptible to MSD/MED, see paragraph 4.2.
- (b) Predict when it is likely to occur; see paragraph 4.3 and

- (c) Establish additional maintenance actions, as necessary, to ensure continued safe operation of the aircraft; see paragraph 4.4.

4.2 Structure susceptible to MSD/MED.

Susceptible structure is defined as that which has the potential to develop MSD/MED. Such structure typically has the characteristics of multiple similar details operating at similar stresses where structural capability could be affected by interaction of multiple cracking at a number of similar details. The following list provides examples of known types of structure susceptible to MSD/MED. (The list is not exhaustive):

STRUCTURAL AREA	SEE FIGURE
Longitudinal Skin Joints, Frames, and Tear Straps (MSD/MED)	A2-1
Circumferential Joints and Stringers (MSD/MED)	A2-2
Lap joints with Milled, Chem-milled or Bonded Radius (MSD)	A2-3
Fuselage Frames (MED)	A2-4
Stringer to Frame Attachments (MED)	A2-5
Shear Clip End Fasteners on Shear Tied Fuselage Frames (MSD/MED)	A2-6
Aft Pressure Dome Outer Ring and Dome Web Splices (MSD/MED)	A2-7
Skin Splice at Aft Pressure Bulkhead (MSD)	A2-8
Abrupt Changes in Web or Skin Thickness — Pressurised or Un-pressurised Structure (MSD/MED)	A2-9
Window Surround Structure (MSD, MED)	A2-10
Over Wing Fuselage Attachments (MED)	A2-11
Latches and Hinges of Non-plug Doors (MSD/MED)	A2-12
Skin at Runout of Large Doubler (MSD)—Fuselage, Wing or Empennage	A2-13
Wing or Empennage Chordwise Splices (MSD/MED)	A2-14
Rib to Skin Attachments (MSD/MED)	A2-15
Typical Wing and Empennage Construction (MSD/MED)	A2-16

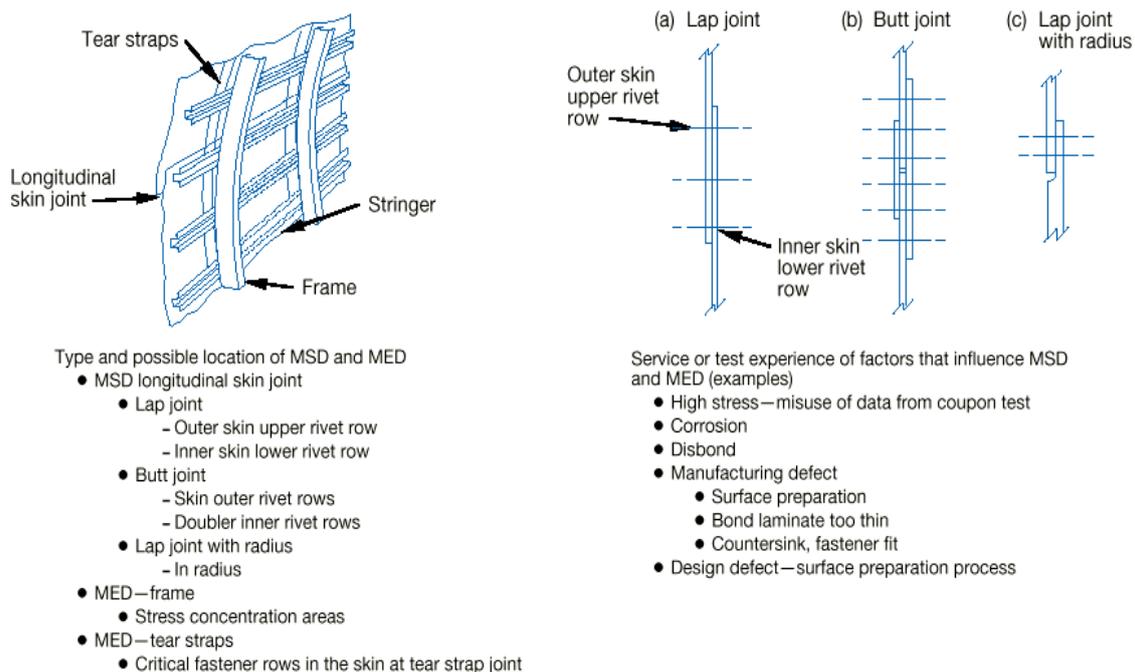
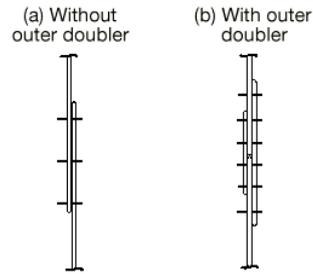
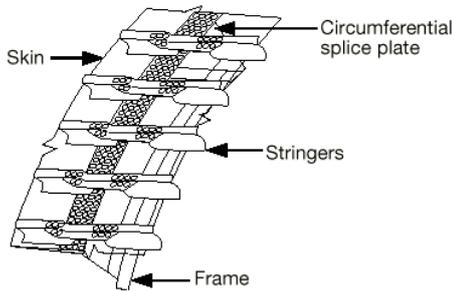


Figure A2-1 Longitudinal Skin Joints, Frames, and Tear Straps (MSD/MED)



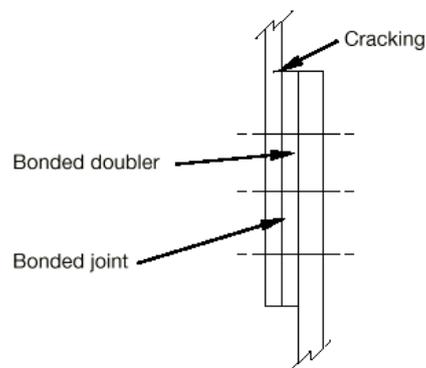
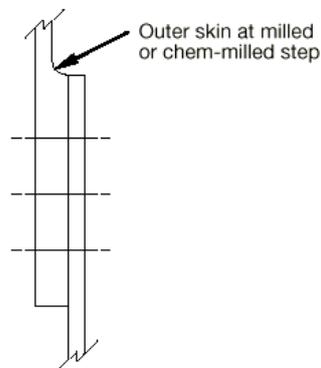
Type and possible location of MSD/MED

- MSD—circumferential joint
  - Without outer doubler
    - Splice plate—between and/or at the inner two rivet rows
    - Skin—forward and aft rivet row of splice plate
    - Skin—at first fastener of stringer coupling
  - With outer doubler
    - Skin—outer rivet rows
    - Splice plate/outer doubler—inner rivet rows
- MED—stringer/stringer couplings
  - Stringer—at first fastener of stringer coupling
  - Stringer coupling—in splice plate area

Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)

- High secondary bending
- High stress level in splice plate and joining stringers (misuse of data from coupon test)
- Poor design (wrong material)
- Underdesign (over-estimation of interference fit fasteners)

Figure A2-2 Circumferential Joints and Stringers (MSD/MED)



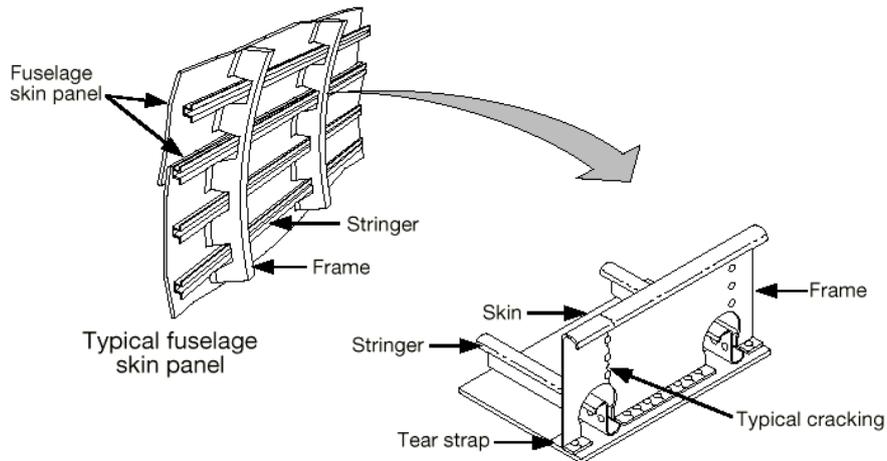
Type and possible location of MSD and MED

- MSD—abrupt cross section change
- Milled radius
- Chem-milled radius
- Bonded doubler runout

Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and MED (examples)

- High bending stresses due to eccentricity

Figure A2-3 Lap joints with Milled, Chem-milled or Bonded Radius (MSD)



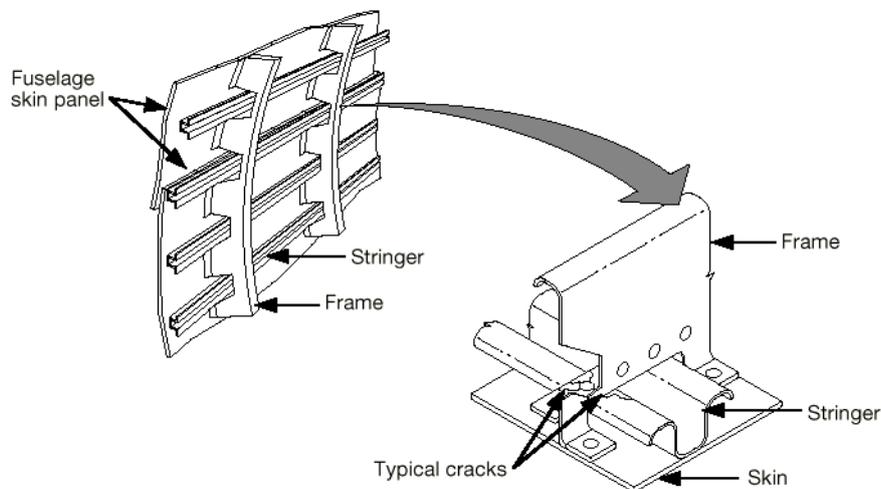
**Type and possible location of MSD/MED**

- MED—the cracking of frames at stringer cutouts at successive longitudinal locations in the fuselage. The primary concern is for those areas where noncircular frames exist in the fuselage structure. Fractures in those areas would result in panel instability.

**Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)**

- High bending—noncircular frames
- Local stress concentrations
  - Cutouts
  - Shear attachments

**Figure A2-4 Fuselage Frames (MED)**



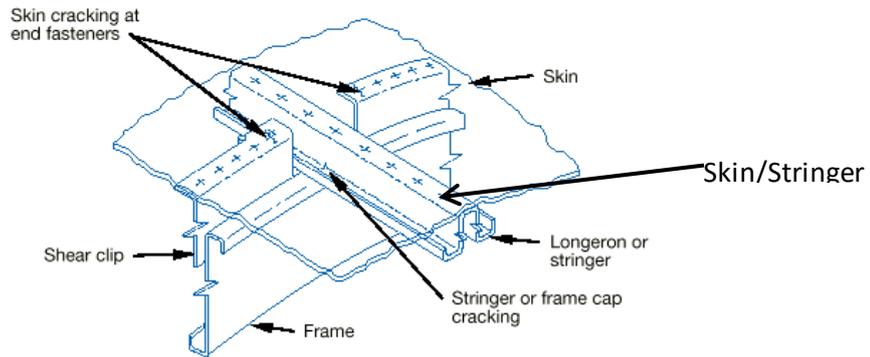
**Type and possible location of MED**

- MED—any combination of fracture of frames, clips, or stringers, including the attachments, resulting in the loss of the shear tie between the frame and stringer. This condition may occur at either circumferential or longitudinal locations at fuselage frame/stringer intersection.

**Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)**

- Poor load path connection

**Figure A2-5 Stringer to Frame Attachments (MED)**



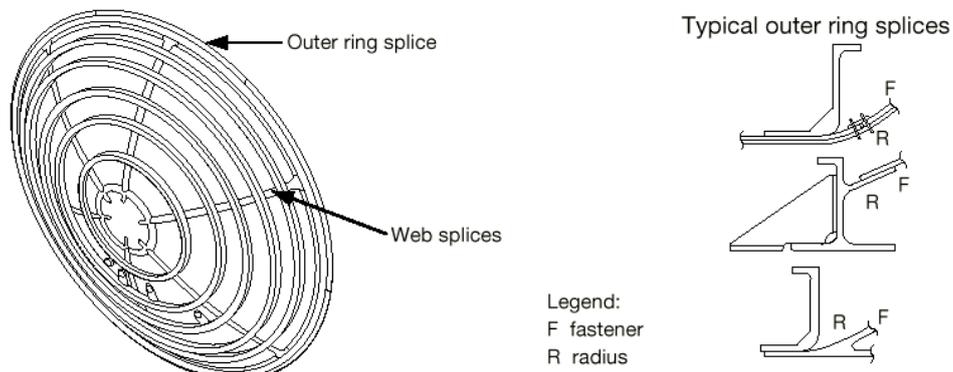
Type and possible location of MSD and MED

- MSD—skin at end fastener of shear clip
- MED—cracking in stringer or longeron at frame attachment
- MED—cracking in frame at stringer or longeron attachment

Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and MED (examples)

- Preload
- Localized bending due to pressure
- Discontinuous load path

Figure A2-6 Shear Clip End Fasteners on Shear Tied Fuselage Frame (MSD/MED)



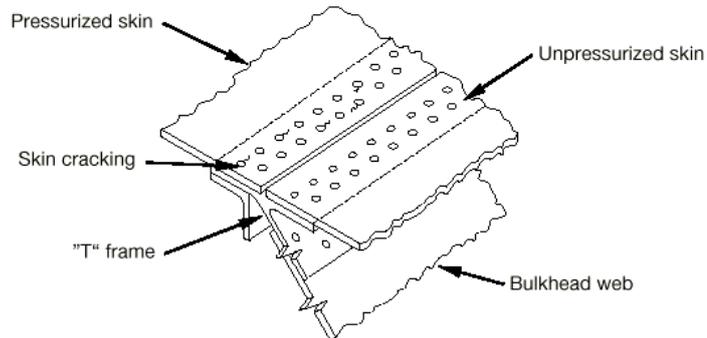
Type and possible location of MSD/MED

- MSD/MED—outer ring splice
  - Attachment profiles—at fastener rows and/or in radius area
- MED—web splices
  - Bulkhead skin and/or splice plates—at critical fastener rows

Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)

- Corrosion
- High stresses—combined tension and compression
- High induced bending in radius
- Inadequate finish in radius—surface roughness

Figure A2-7 Aft Pressure Dome Outer Ring and Dome Web Splices (MSD/MED)



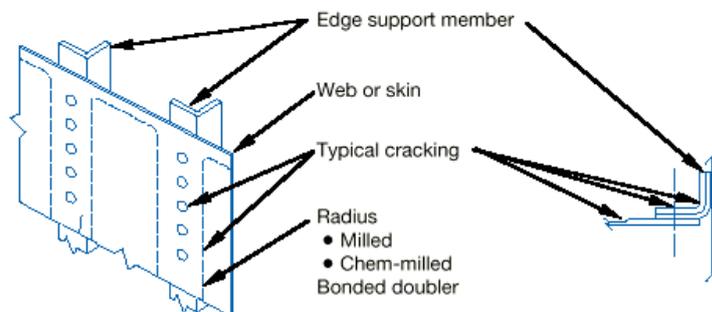
**Type and possible location of MSD and MED**

- MSD—skin at end fastener holes

**Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and MED (examples)**

- Shell discontinuous induced bending stresses
- High load transfer at fastener

Figure A2-8 Skin Splice at Aft Pressure Bulkhead (MSD)



**Type and possible location of MSD and MED**

**Abrupt change in stiffness\***

- Milled radius
- Chem-milled radius
- Bonded doubler
- Fastener row at edge support members

**Edge member support structure**

- Edge member - in radius areas

**Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and MED**

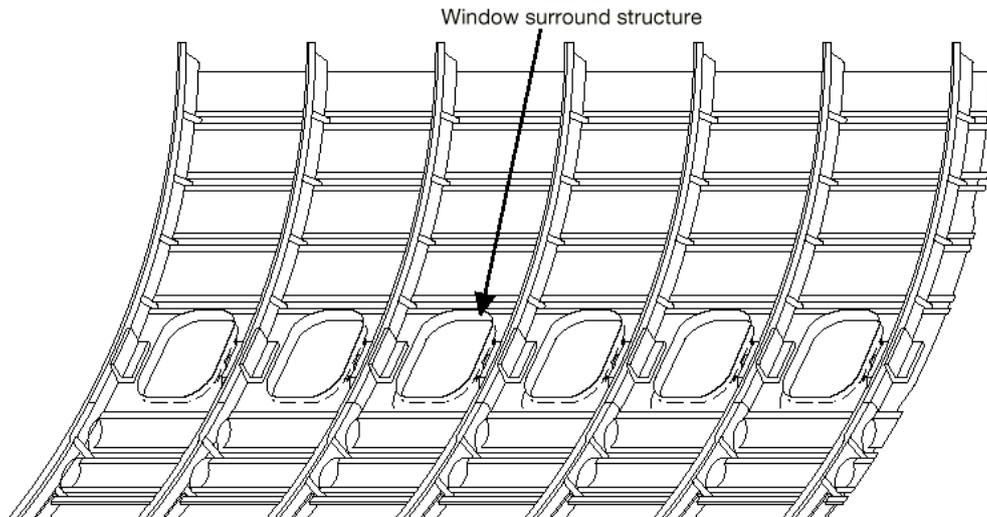
**Pressure structure**

- High bending stresses at edge support due to pressure

**Non-pressure structure**

- Structural deflections cause high stresses at edge supports

Figure A2-9 Abrupt Changes in Web or Skin Thickness — Pressurised or Unpressurised Structure (MSD/MED)



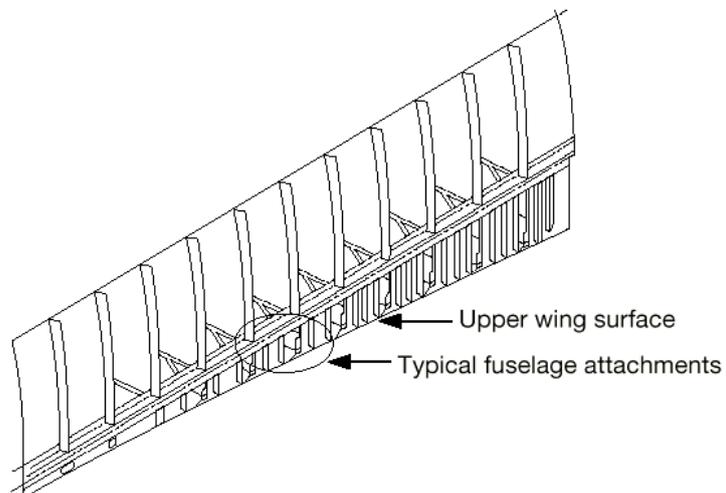
Type and possible location of MSD/MED

- MSD—skin at attachment to window surround structure
- MED—repeated details in reinforcement of window cutouts or in window corners

Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)

- High load transfer

**Figure A2-10 Window Surround Structure (MSD, MED)**



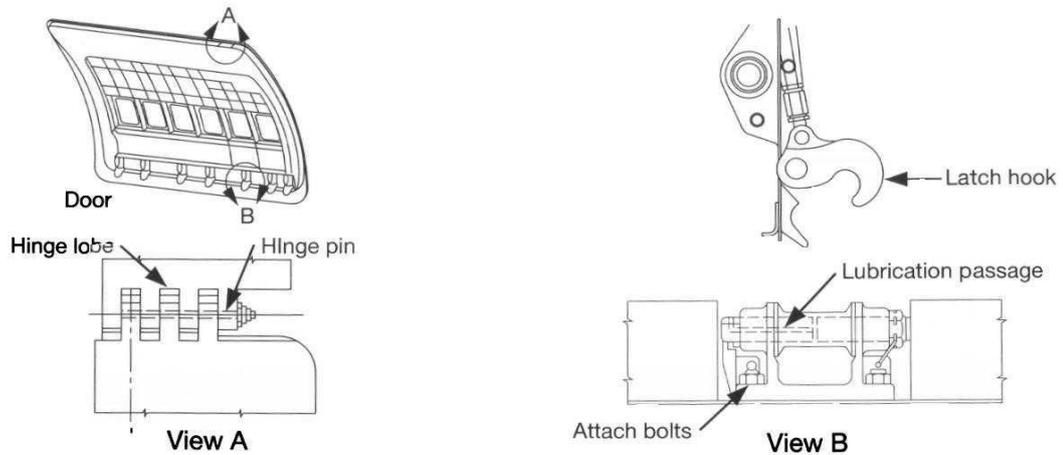
Type and possible location of MSD/MED

- MED—repeated details in overwing fuselage attachments

Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)

- Manufacturing defect—prestress
- Induced deflections

**Figure A2-11 Over Wing Fuselage Attachments (MED)**



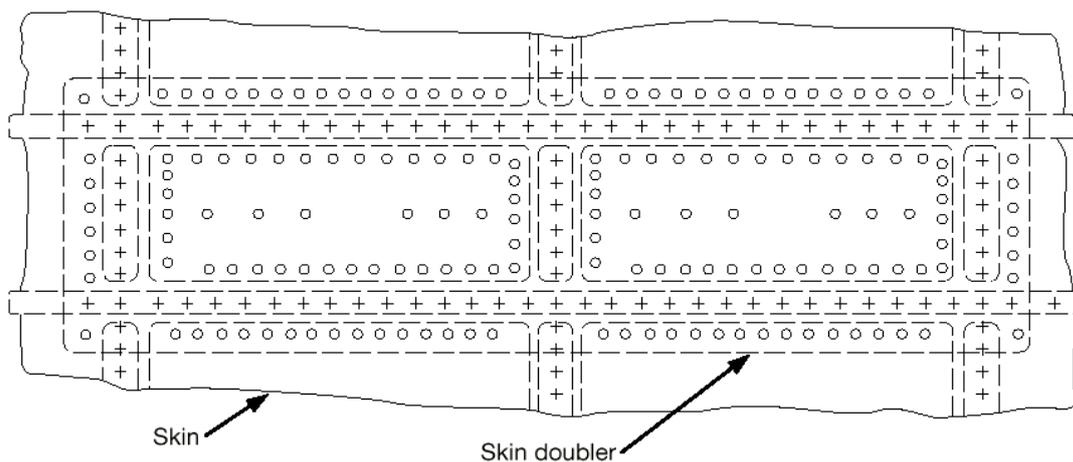
**Type and possible location of MSD/MED**

- MSD—piano hinge
  - At hinge fastener attachment row
  - In fillet radius
  - Emanating from hole in lobes
- MED—latches
  - In multiple latch hooks
  - At lube channel of latch spool
  - At spool bracket attach bolts (also corrosion)

**Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)**

- Bending stresses due to fuselage elongation
- High local stress
- Fretting

**Figure A2-12 Latches and Hinges of Non-plug Doors (MSD/MED)**



**Type and possible location of MSD/MED**

- MSD—cracks initiated at multiple critical fastener holes in skin at runout of doubler

**Service or test experience of factors that influence MSD and/or MED (examples)**

- High load transfer—high local stress

**Figure A2-13 Skin at Runout of Large Doubler (MSD) — Fuselage, Wing or Empennage**

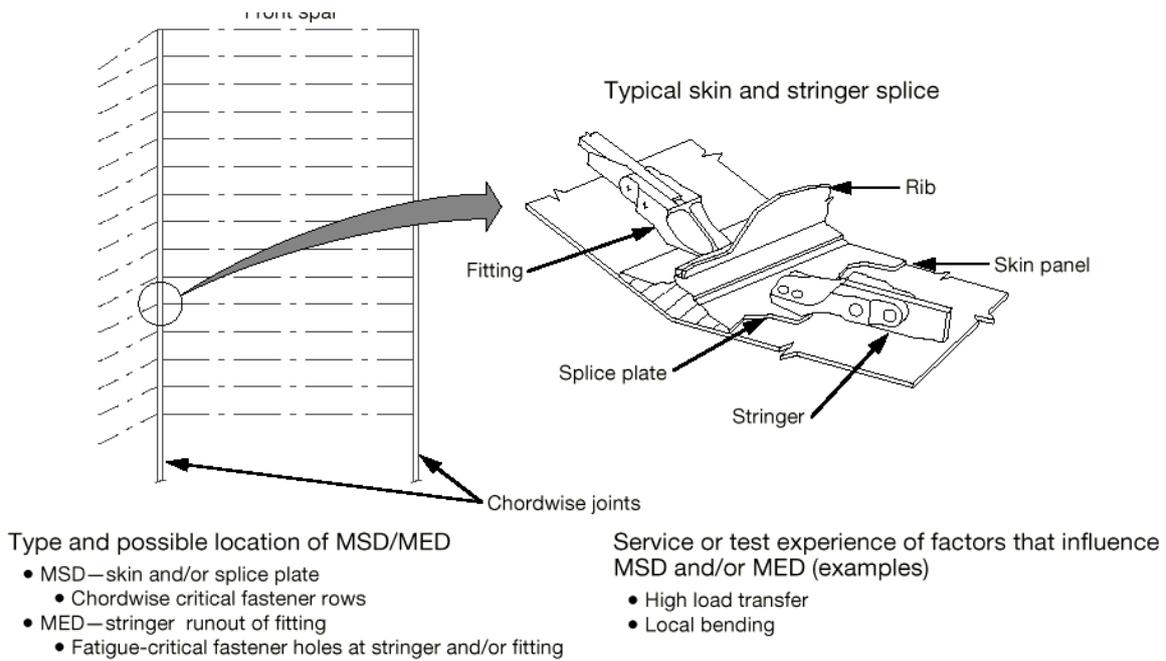


Figure A2-14 Wing or Empennage Chordwise Splices (MSD/MED)

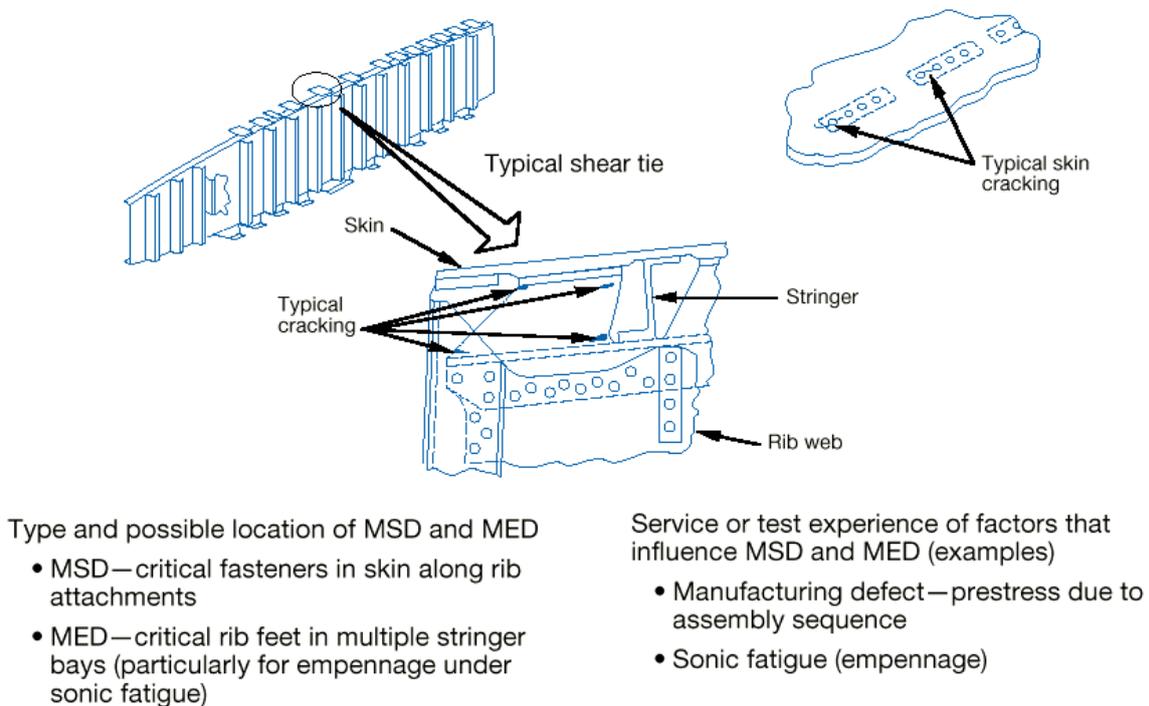
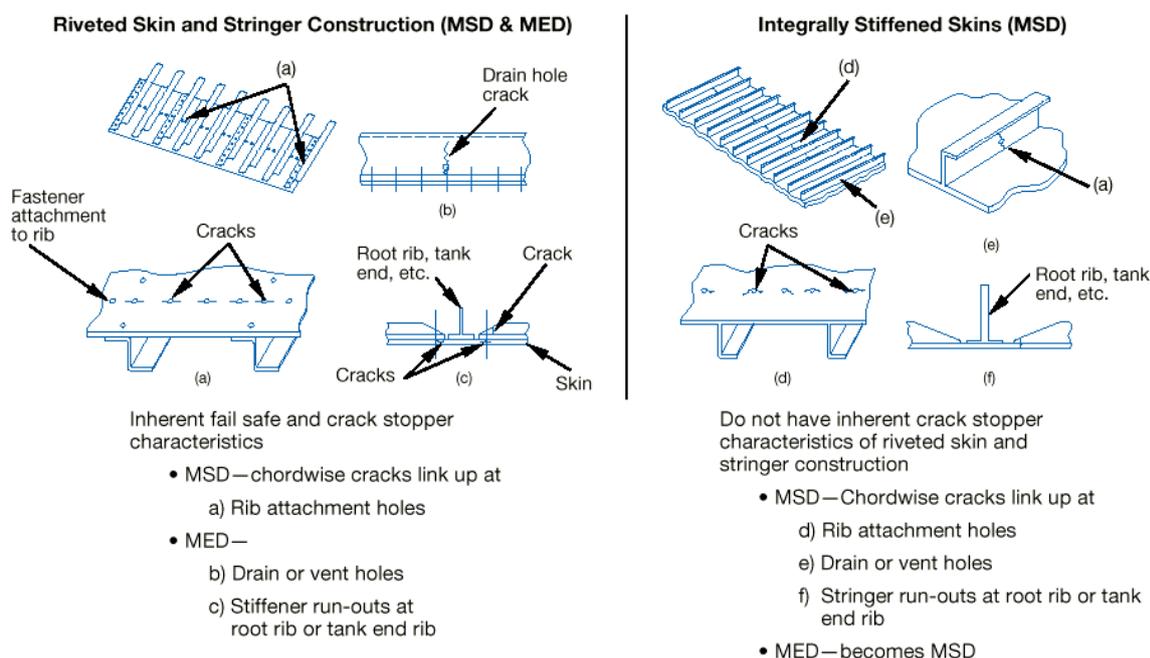


Figure A2-15 Rib to Skin Attachments (MSD/MED)



**Figure A2-16 Typical Wing and Empennage Construction (MSD/MED)**

### 4.3 WFD Evaluation

By the time the highest-time aircraft of a particular model reaches its DSG, the evaluation for each area susceptible to the development of WFD should be completed. A typical evaluation process is shown in Figure A2-17, below. This evaluation will establish the necessary elements to determine a maintenance programme to preclude WFD in that particular model's aircraft fleet. These elements are developed for each susceptible area and include:

#### 4.3.1 Identification of structure potentially susceptible to WFD

The TCH should identify each part of the aircraft's structure that is potentially susceptible to WFD for further evaluation. A justification should be given that supports selection or rejection of each area of the aircraft structure. DAHs for modified or repaired structure should evaluate their structure and its affect on existing structure.

Typical examples of structure susceptible to WFD are included in paragraph 4.2 of this appendix.

#### 4.3.2 Determination of WFD average behaviour in the fleet:

The time in terms of flight cycles/hours defining the WFD average behaviour in the fleet should be established. The data to be assessed in determining the WFD average behaviour includes:

- a review of the service history of the susceptible areas to identify any occurrences of fatigue cracking,
- evaluation of the operational statistics of the fleet in terms of flight hours and landings,
- significant production variants (material, design, assembly method, and any other change that might affect the fatigue performance of the detail),

- fatigue test evidence including relevant full-scale and component fatigue and damage tolerance test data (see sub-paragraph 4.3.10 for more details),
- teardown inspections, and
- any fractographic analysis available.

The evaluation of the test results for the reliable prediction of the time to when WFD might occur in each susceptible area should include appropriate test-to-structure factors. If full-scale fatigue test evidence is used, Figure A2-18, below, relates how that data might be utilised in determining WFD Average Behaviour. Evaluation may be analytically determined, supported by test and, where available, service evidence.

#### 4.3.3 Initial Crack/Damage Scenario

This is an estimate of the size and extent of multiple cracking expected at MSD/MED initiation. This prediction requires empirical data or an assumption of the crack/damage locations and sequence plus a fatigue evaluation to determine the time to MSD/MED initiation. Alternatively, analysis can be based on either:

- the distribution of equivalent initial flaws, as determined from the analytical assessment of flaws found during fatigue test and/or teardown inspections regressed to zero cycles; or
- a distribution of fatigue damage determined from relevant fatigue testing and/or service experience.

#### 4.3.4 Final Cracking Scenario

This is an estimate of the size and extent of multiple cracking that could cause residual strength to fall to certification levels. Techniques exist for 3-D elastic-plastic analysis of such problems; however, there are several alternative test and analysis approaches available that provide an equivalent level of safety. One such approach is to define the final cracking scenario as a sub-critical condition (e.g., first crack at link-up at limit load). Use of a sub-critical scenario reduces the complexity of the analysis and, in many cases, will not greatly reduce the total crack growth time.

#### 4.3.5 Crack Growth Calculation

Progression of the crack distributions from the initial cracking scenario to the final cracking scenario should be developed. These curves can be developed:

- analytically, typically based on linear elastic fracture mechanics, or
- empirically, from test or service fractographic data.

#### 4.3.6 Potential for Discrete Source Damage (DSD)

A structure susceptible to MSD/MED may also be affected by DSD due to an uncontained failure of high-energy rotating machinery (i.e., turbine engines). The approach described in this guidance material should ensure the MSD sizes and densities, that normally would be expected to exist at the structural modification point, would not significantly change the risk of catastrophic failure due to DSD.

#### 4.3.7 Analysis Methodology:

The evaluation methods used to determine the WFD average behaviour and associated parameters will vary. The report “Recommendations for Regulatory Action to Prevent Widespread Fatigue Damage in the Commercial Aeroplane Fleet”, Revision A, dated June 29, 1999 (a report of the AAWG for the ARAC’s Transport Aircraft and Engine Issues Group), discusses two Round Robin exercises developed by the TCHs to provide insight into their respective methodologies. One outcome of the exercises was an identification of key assumptions or methods that had the greatest impact on the predicted WFD behaviour. These assumptions were:

- the flaw sizes assumed at initiation of crack growth phase of analysis;
- material properties used (static, fatigue, fracture mechanics);
- ligament failure criteria;
- crack growth equations used;
- statistics used to evaluate the fatigue behaviour of the structure (e.g., time to crack initiation);
- methods of determining the structure modification point (SMP);
- detectable flaw size assumed;
- initial distribution of flaws; and
- factors used to determine bound behaviour as opposed to mean behaviour.
- The following parameters are developed from paragraphs 4.3.2 through 4.3.7 above, and are necessary to establish a MSD/MED maintenance programme for the area under investigation.

#### 4.3.8 Inspection Start Point (ISP):

This is the point at which inspection starts if a monitoring period is used. It is determined through a statistical analysis of crack initiation based on fatigue testing, teardown, or service experience of similar structural details. It is assumed that the ISP is equivalent to a lower bound value with a specific probability in the statistical distribution of cracking events. Alternatively, the ISP may be established by applying appropriate factors to the average behaviour.

#### 4.3.9 Considerations:

Due to the redundant nature of semi-monocoque structure, MED can be difficult to manage in a fleet environment. This stems from the fact that most aircraft structures are built-up in nature, and that makes the visual inspection of the various layers difficult. Also, visual inspections for MED typically rely on internal inspections, which may not be practical at the frequency necessary to preclude MED due to the time required to gain access to the structure. However, these issues are dependent on the specific design involved and the amount of damage being considered. In order to implement a viable inspection programme for MED, the following conditions must be met:

- a) Static stability must be maintained at all times.
- b) Large damage capability should be maintained.
- c) There is no concurrent MED with MSD in a given structural area.

#### 4.3.10 Structural Modification Point (SMP)

The applicant should demonstrate that the proposed SMP established during the evaluation has the same confidence level as current regulations require for new certification. In lieu of other acceptable methods, the SMP can be established as a point reduced from the WFD Average Behaviour, based on the viability of inspections in the monitoring period. The SMP can be determined by dividing the WFD Average Behaviour by a factor of 2 if there are viable inspections, or by a factor of 3 if inspections are not viable.

Whichever approach is used to establish the SMP, a study should be made to demonstrate that the approach ensures that the structure with the expected extent of MSD/MED at the SMP maintains a LDC.

An aircraft should not be operated past the SMP unless the structure is modified or replaced, or unless additional approved data is provided that would extend the SMP. However, if during the structural evaluation for WFD, a TCH/DAH finds that the flight cycles and/or flight hours SMP for a particular structural detail have been exceeded by one or more aircraft in the fleet, the TCH/DAH should expeditiously evaluate selected high time aircraft in the fleet to determine their structural condition. From this evaluation, the TCH/DAH should notify the competent authorities and propose appropriate service actions.

The initial SMP may be adjusted based on the following:

- (a) In some cases, the SMP may be extended without changing the required reliability of the structure, i.e. projection to that of a two life time full-scale fatigue test. These cases may generally be described under the umbrella of additional fatigue test evidence and include either or a combination of any or all of the following:

Additional fatigue and/or residual strength tests on a full-scale aircraft structure or a full-scale component followed by detailed inspections and analyses.

Testing of new or used structure on a smaller scale than full component tests (i.e., sub-component and/or panel tests).

Teardown inspections (destructive) that could be done on structural components that have been removed from service.

Local teardown by selected, limited (non-destructive) disassembly and refurbishment of specific areas of high-time aircraft.

In-service data from a statistically significant number of aircraft close to the original SMP showing no cracking compared with the predictions, taking into account future variability in service usage and loading compared to the surveyed aircraft. This data may be used to support increasing the original SMP by an amount that is agreed by the competent authority.

- (b) If cracks are found in the structural detail for which the evaluation was done during either the monitoring period or the modification programme, the SMP should be re-evaluated to ensure that the SMP does in fact provide the required confidence level. If it is shown that the required confidence level is not being met, the SMP should be adjusted and the adjustment reflected

in appropriate service bulletins to address the condition of the fleet. Additional regulatory action may be required.

#### 4.3.11 Inspection Interval and Method:

An interval should be chosen to provide a sufficient number of inspections between the ISP and the SMP so that there is a high confidence that no MSD/MED condition will reach the final cracking scenario without detection. The interval is highly dependent on the detectable crack size and the probability of detection associated with the specific inspection method. If the crack cannot be detected, the SMP must be re-evaluated to ensure there is a high confidence level that no aircraft will develop MSD/MED before modification.

#### 4.4 Evaluation of Maintenance Actions

For all areas that have been identified as susceptible to MSD/MED, the current maintenance programme should be evaluated to determine if adequate structural maintenance and inspection programmes exist to safeguard the structure against unanticipated cracking or other structural degradation. The evaluation of the current maintenance programme typically begins with the determination of the SMP for each area.

Each area should then be reviewed to determine the current maintenance actions and compare them to the maintenance needs established in this evaluation. Issues to be considered include the following:

- (a) Determine the inspection requirements (method, inspection start point, and repeat interval) of the inspection for each susceptible area (including that structure that is expected to arrest cracks) that is necessary to maintain the required level of safety.
- (b) Review the elements of the existing maintenance programmes already in place
- (c) Revise and highlight elements of the maintenance programme necessary to maintain safety.

For susceptible areas approaching the SMP, where the SMP will not be increased or for areas that cannot be reliably inspected, a programme should be developed and documented that provides for replacement or modification of the susceptible structural area.

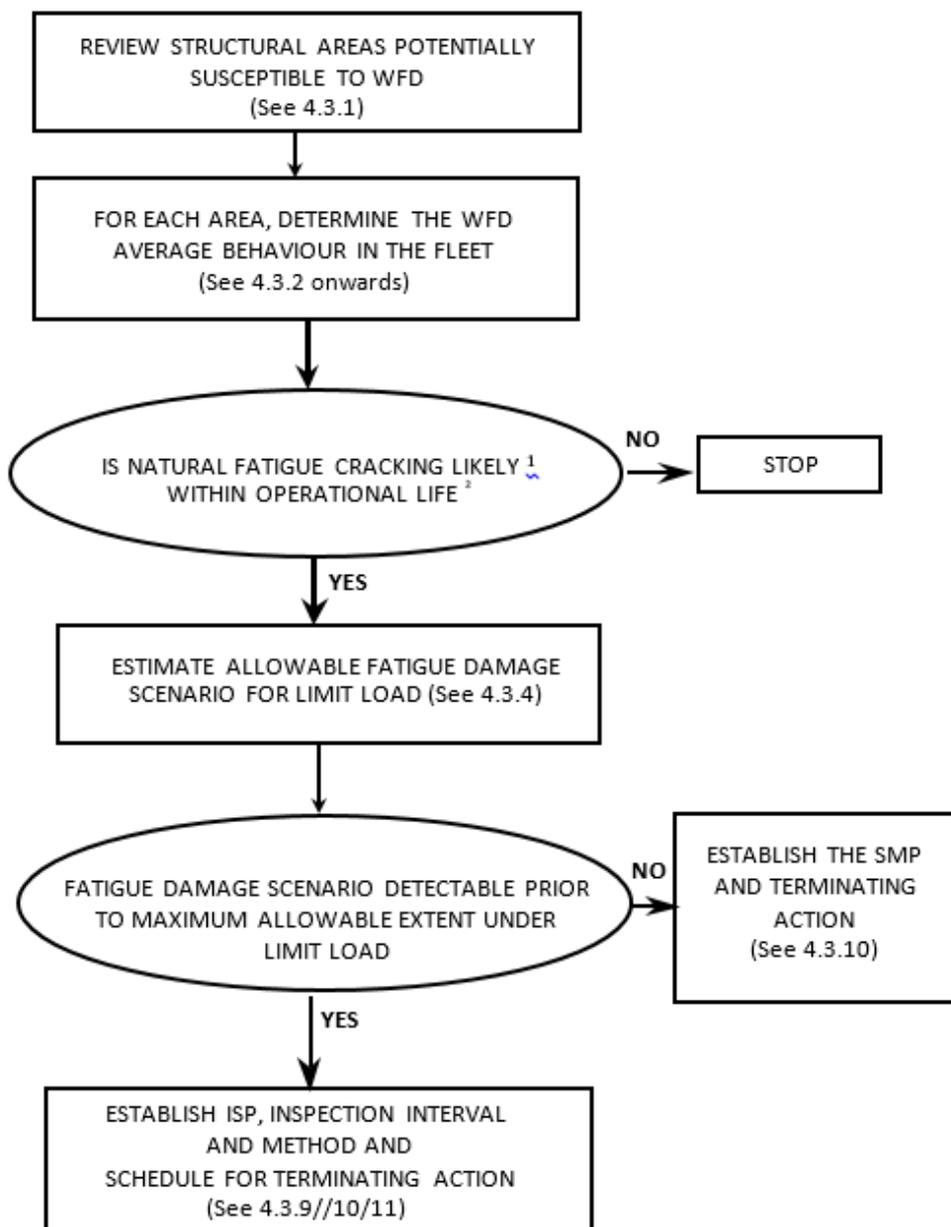
##### 4.4.1 Period of WFD Evaluation Validity:

At whatever point the WFD evaluation is made, it should support the limit of validity (LOV) of the maintenance programme. Consistent with the use of test evidence to support individual SMPs, as described above in paragraph 4.3.10, the LOV of the maintenance programme should be based on fatigue test evidence. The initial WFD evaluation of the complete airframe will typically cover a significant forward estimation of the projected aircraft usage beyond its DSG, also known as the “proposed ESG.” An evaluation through at least an additional twenty-five percent of the DSG would provide a realistic forecast, with reasonable planning time for necessary maintenance action. However, it may be appropriate to adjust the evaluation validity period depending on issues such as:

- (a) The projected useful life of the aircraft at the time of the initial evaluation;
- (b) Current non-destructive inspection (NDI) technology; and
- (c) Airline advance planning requirements for introduction of new maintenance and modification programmes, to provide sufficient forward projection to identify all likely maintenance/modification actions essentially as one package.

Upon completion of the evaluation and publication of the revised maintenance requirements, the “proposed ESG” becomes the Limit of Validity (LOV)

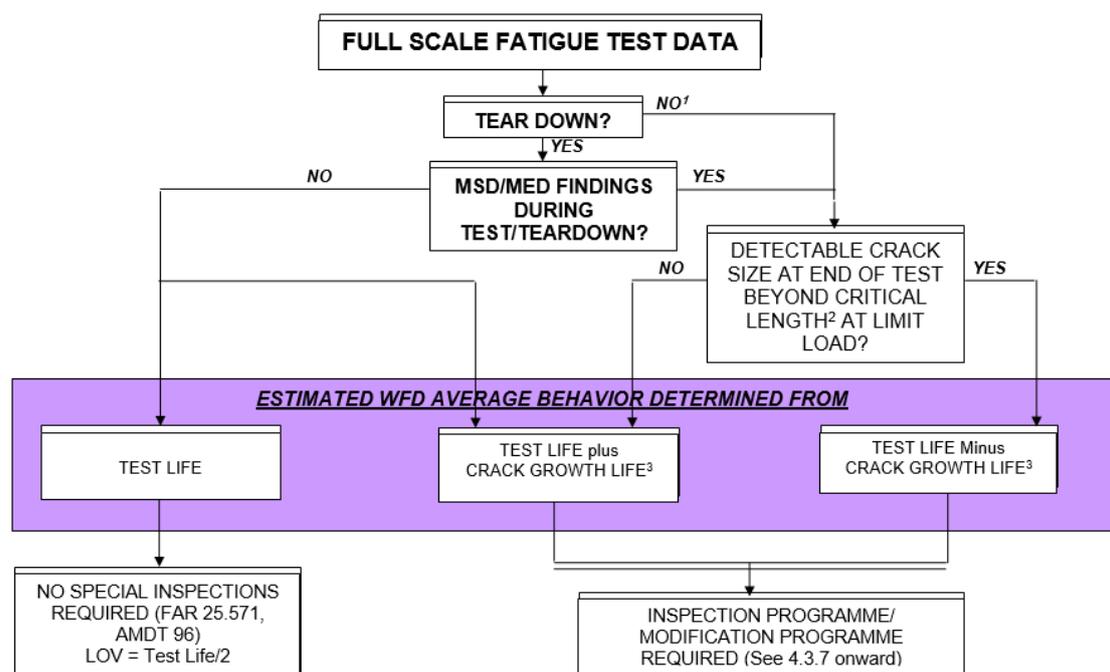
Note: This assumes that all other aspects of the maintenance programme that are required to support the LOV (such as SSID, CPCP, etc.) are in place and have been evaluated to ensure they too remain valid up to the LOV.



NOTES:

1. Fatigue cracking is defined as likely if the factored fatigue life is less than the projected ESG of the aircraft at time of WFD evaluation.
2. The operational life is the projected ESG of the aircraft at time of WFD Evaluation. (See 4.4.1).

Figure A2-17: Aircraft Evaluation Process



1 **ASSUMED STATE AT END OF TEST:** Best estimate of non-detected damage from inspection method used at end of test or during teardown.  
 2 **CRITICAL CRACK LENGTH:** First link-up of adjacent cracks at limit load (locally) or an adequate level of large damage capability.  
 3 **CRACK GROWTH LIFE:** Difference between assumed or actual state at end of test and critical crack length.

Figure A2-18 Use of Fatigue Test and Teardown Information to Determine WFD Average Behaviour

## 5. Documentation

Any person developing a programme should develop a document containing recommendations for inspection procedures and replacement or modification of parts or components necessary to preclude WFD, and establish the new limit of validity of the operator's maintenance programme. That person also must revise the SSID or ALS as necessary, and/or prepare service bulletins that contain the recommendations for inspection procedures and replacement or modification of parts or components necessary to preclude WFD. Since WFD is a safety concern for all operators of older aircraft, the Agency will make mandatory the identified inspection or modification programmes. In addition, the Agency may consider separate AD action to address any service bulletins or other service information publications revised or issued as a result of in-service MSD/MED findings resulting from implementation of these programmes.

The following items should be contained in the front of the approved document:

- Identification of the variants of the basic aircraft type to which the document relates;
- Summary of the operational statistics of the fleet in terms of hours and flights;
- Description of the typical mission, or missions;
- The types of operations for which the inspection programme is considered valid;
- Reference to documents giving any existing inspections, or modification of parts or components; and
- The LOV of the maintenance programme in terms of flight cycles or flight hours or both as appropriate to accommodate variations in usage.

The approved document should contain at least the following information for each critical part or component:

- (a) Description of the Primary Structure susceptible to WFD;
- (b) Details of the monitoring period (inspection start point, repeat inspection interval, SMP, inspection method and procedure (including crack size, location and direction) and alternatives) when applicable;
- (c) Any optional modification or replacement of the structural element as terminating action to inspection;
- (d) Any mandatory modification or replacement of the structural element;
- (e) Service bulletins (or other service information publications) revised or issued as a result of in-service findings resulting from the WFD evaluations (added as a revision to the initial WFD document); and
- (f) Guidance to the operator on which inspection findings should be reported to the TCH/DAH, and appropriate reporting forms and methods of submittal.

## **6. REPORTING REQUIREMENTS**

Operators, TCHs and STC Holders are required to report in accordance with various regulations, for example Part 21.3, Part 145.60. The regulations to which this AMC relates do not require any reporting requirements in addition to the current ones. Due to the potential threat to structural integrity, the results of inspections must be accurately documented and reported in a timely manner to preclude the occurrence of WFD. The current system of operator and TCH communication has been useful in identifying and resolving a number of issues that can be classified as WFD concerns. MSD/MED has been discovered via fatigue testing and in-service experience. TCHs have been consistent in disseminating related data to operators to solidify additional service experience. However, a more thorough means of surveillance and reporting is essential to preclude WFD.

When damage is found while conducting an approved MSD/MED inspection programme, or at the SMP where replacement or modification of the structure is occurring, the TCHs, STC Holders and the operators need to ensure that greater emphasis is placed on accurately reporting the following items:

- (a) A description (with a sketch) of the damage, including crack length, orientation, location, flight cycles/hours, and condition of structure;
- (b) Results of follow-up inspections by operators that identify similar problems on other aircraft in the fleet;
- (c) Findings where inspections accomplished during the repair or replacement/modification identify additional similar damage sites; and
- (d) Adjacent repairs.

Operators must report all cases of MSD/MED to the TCH, STC Holder or the competent authority as appropriate, irrespective of how frequently such cases occur. Cracked areas from in-service aircraft (damaged structure) may be needed for detailed examination. Operators are encouraged to provide fractographic specimens whenever possible. Aeroplanes undergoing heavy maintenance checks are perhaps the most useful sources for such specimens.

Operators should remain diligent in the reporting of potential MSD/MED concerns not identified by the TCH/DAH. Indications of a developing MSD/MED problem may include:

- (a) Damage at multiple locations in similar adjacent details;
- (b) Repetitive part replacement; or

- (c) Adjacent repairs.

Documentation will be provided by the TCH and STC Holder as appropriate to specify the required reporting format and time frame. The data will be reviewed by the TCH or STC Holder, operator(s), and the Agency to evaluate the nature and magnitude of the problem and to determine the appropriate corrective action.

## **7. STRUCTURAL MODIFICATIONS AND REPAIRS**

All major modifications (STCs) and repairs that create, modify, or affect structure that are susceptible to MSD/MED (as identified by the TCH) must be evaluated to demonstrate the same confidence level as the original manufactured structure. The operator is responsible together with the DAH for ensuring the accomplishment of this evaluation for each modified aircraft. The operator may first need to conduct an assessment on each of its aircraft to determine what modifications or repairs exist and would be susceptible to MSD/MED. The following are some examples of types of modifications and repairs that present such concerns:

- (a) Passenger-to-freighter conversions (including addition of main deck cargo doors);
- (b) Gross weight increases (increased operating weights, increased zero fuel weights, increased landing weights and increased maximum takeoff weights);
- (c) Installation of fuselage cutouts (passenger entry doors, emergency exit doors or crew escape hatches, fuselage access doors and cabin window relocations);
- (d) Complete re-engine and/or pylon modifications;
- (e) Engine hush-kits and nacelle modifications;
- (f) Wing modifications, such as the installation of winglets or changes in flight control settings (flap droop), and changes to wing trailing edge structure;
- (g) Modified, repaired, or replaced skin splice;
- (h) Any modification or repair that affects several frame bays; and
- (i) Multiple adjacent repairs.

Other potential areas that must be considered include:

- (a) A modification that covers structure requiring periodic inspection by the operator's maintenance programme (Modifications must be reviewed to account for the differences with TCH baseline maintenance programme requirements.);
- (b) A modification that results in operational mission change that significantly changes manufacturer's load/stress spectrum (for example, a passenger-to-freighter conversion); and
- (c) A modification that changes areas of the fuselage from being externally inspectable using visual means to being uninspectable (for example, a large external fuselage doubler that resulted in hidden details, rendering them visually uninspectable).

## **8. RESPONSIBILITY**

While the primary responsibility is with the DAH to perform the analyses and supporting tests, it is expected that the evaluation will be conducted in a cooperative effort between the operators and TCHs/DAHs, with participation by the Agency.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for establishing instructions for continued airworthiness of structural repairs and modifications

ED Decision 2007/019/R

### 1. INTRODUCTION

With an SSID, CPCP and LOV in place an individual aircraft may still not meet the intended level of airworthiness for ageing aircraft structures. Repairs and modifications to aircraft structure also require investigation. For large transport aeroplanes, all repairs and modifications that affect FCS should be assessed using some form of damage-tolerance based evaluation. A regulatory requirement for damage-tolerance was not applied to aeroplane designs type certificated before 1978, and even after this time, implementation of DTE on repairs and modifications was not consistent. Therefore the damage-tolerance characteristics of repairs and modifications may vary widely and are largely unknown. In view of these concerns it is necessary to perform an assessment of repairs and modifications on existing aircraft to establish their damage-tolerance characteristics.

### 2. DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this Appendix, the following definitions apply:

1. **Damage Tolerance Data** are damage tolerance evaluation (DTE) documentation and the damage tolerance inspections (DTIs).
2. **Damage Tolerance Evaluation (DTE)** is a process that leads to a determination of maintenance actions necessary to detect or preclude fatigue cracking that could contribute to a catastrophic failure. As applied to repairs and modifications, a DTE includes the evaluation of the repair or modification and the fatigue critical structure affected by the repair or modification. The process utilises the damage tolerance procedures as described in CS-25 AMC 25.571.
3. **Damage Tolerance Inspections (DTIs)** are the inspections developed as a result of a DTE. A DTI includes the areas to be inspected, the inspection method, the inspection procedures, including acceptance and rejection criteria, the threshold, and any repetitive intervals associated with those inspections. The DTIs may specify a time limit when a repair or modification needs to be replaced or modified. If the DTE concludes that DT-based supplemental structural inspections are not necessary, the DTI documentation should include a statement that the normal zonal inspection programme is sufficient.
4. **Fatigue Critical Baseline Structure (FCBS)** is the baseline structure of the aircraft that is classified as fatigue critical structure.

### 3. ESTABLISHMENT OF A DAMAGE-TOLERANT BASED INSPECTION PROGRAMME FOR REPAIRS AFFECTING FCS

Repairs are a concern on older aircraft because of the possibility that they may develop, cause, or obscure metal fatigue, corrosion, or other damage during service. This damage might occur within the repair itself or in the adjacent structure and might ultimately lead to structural failure.

In general, repairs present a more challenging problem to solve than the original structure because they are unique and tailored in design to correct particular damage to the original structure. Whereas the performance of the original structure may be predicted from tests and from experience on other aircraft in service, the behaviour of a repair and its effect on the fatigue characteristics of the original structure are generally known to a lesser extent than for the basic un-repaired structure.

Repairs may be of concern as time in service increases for the following reasons:

As aircraft age, both the number and age of existing repairs increase. Along with this increase is the possibility of unforeseen repair interaction, failure, or other damage occurring in the repaired area. The continued operational safety of these aircraft depends primarily on a satisfactory maintenance programme (inspections conducted at the right time, in the right place, using the most appropriate technique or in some cases replacement of the repair). To develop this programme, a damage-tolerance evaluation of repairs to aircraft structure is essential. The longer an aircraft is in service, the more important this evaluation and a subsequent inspection programme becomes.

The practice of repair justification has evolved gradually over the last 20 plus years. Some repairs described in the aircraft manufacturers' SRMs were not designed to fatigue and damage-tolerance principles. (Ref. AAWG Report: Recommendations concerning ARAC taskings FR Doc.04-10816 Re: Aging Aircraft Safety Final Rule. 14 CFR 121.370a and 129.16.) Repairs accomplished in accordance with the information contained in the early versions of the SRMs may require additional inspections if evaluated using the fatigue and damage-tolerance methodology.

Damage-tolerance is a structural design and inspection methodology used to maintain safety considering the possibility of metal fatigue or other structural damage (i.e., safety is maintained by adequate structural inspection until the damage is repaired). One prerequisite for the successful application of the damage tolerance approach for managing fatigue is that crack growth and residual strength can be anticipated with sufficient precision to allow inspections to be established that will detect cracking before it reaches a size that will degrade the strength below a specified level. A damage-tolerance evaluation entails the prediction of sites where fatigue cracks are most likely to initiate in the aircraft structure, the prediction of the crack path and rates of growth under repeated aircraft structural loading, the prediction of the size of the damage at which strength limits are exceeded, and an analysis of the potential opportunities for inspection of the damage as it progresses. This information is used to establish an inspection programme for the structure that will be able to detect cracking that may develop before it precipitates a major structural failure.

The evidence to date is that when all critical structure is included, damage-tolerant based inspections and procedures, including modification and replacement, provide the best assurance of continued structural integrity that is currently available. In order to apply this concept to existing transport aeroplanes, the competent authorities issued a series of ADs requiring compliance with the first supplemental inspection programmes resulting from application of this concept to existing aeroplanes. Generally, these ADs require that operators incorporate SSIDs into their maintenance programmes for the affected aeroplanes. These documents were derived from damage-tolerance assessments of the originally certificated type designs for these aeroplanes. For this reason, the majority of ADs written for the SSIP did not attempt to address issues relating to the damage-tolerance of repairs that had been made to the aeroplanes. The objective of this programme is to provide the same level of assurance for areas of the structure that have been repaired as that achieved by the SSIP for the baseline structure as originally certificated.

The fatigue and damage-tolerance evaluation of a repair would be used in an assessment programme to establish an appropriate inspection programme, or a replacement schedule if the necessary inspection programme is too demanding or not possible. The objective of the repair assessment is to assure the continued structural integrity of the repaired and adjacent structure based on damage-tolerance principles. Any identified supplemental inspections are intended to detect damage which may develop in a repaired area, before that damage degrades

the load carrying capability of the structure below the levels required by the applicable airworthiness standards.

The following guidance is intended to help TCHs and operators establish and implement a damage-tolerant based maintenance programme for repairs affecting FCBS. Additional guidance for repairs to modified structure is provided in paragraph 4.

### 3.1 Overview of the TCH tasks for repairs that may affect FCBS

- (a) Identify the affected aircraft model, models, aircraft serial numbers, and DSG stated as a number of flight cycles, flight hours, or both.
- (b) Identify the certification level.
- (c) Submit the list of FCBS to EASA for approval, and make it available to operators and STC holders.
- (d) Review and update published repair data as necessary.
- (e) Submit any new or updated published repair data to EASA for approval, and make it available to operators.
- (f) Develop Repair Evaluation Guidelines (REGs) and submit them to EASA for approval, and make the approved REGs available to operators.

### 3.2 Certification Level

In order to understand what data is required, the TCH should identify the amendment level of the original aircraft certification relative to CS 25.571. The amendment level is useful in identifying what DT Data may be available and what standard should be used for developing new DT Data. The two relevant aircraft groups are:

Group A - Aircraft certified to CAR 4b or § 25.571, prior to Amendment 25-45 or equivalent. These aircraft were not evaluated for damage tolerance as part of the original type certification. Unless previously accomplished, existing and future repairs to FCBS will need DT Data developed.

Group B - Aircraft certified to § 25.571, Amendment 25-45 or later. These aircraft were evaluated for damage tolerance as part of the original type certification. As noted in the introduction, some of these repairs may not have repair data that includes appropriate DTI and the TCH and operators may need to identify and perform a DTE of these repairs and develop DTI.

### 3.3 Identifying Fatigue Critical Baseline Structure (FCBS)

TC Holders should identify and make available to operators a list of baseline structure that is susceptible to fatigue cracking that could contribute to a catastrophic failure. The term "baseline" refers to the structure that is designed under the original type certificate or amended type certificate for that aircraft model (that is, the as delivered aircraft model configuration). Guidance for identifying this structure can be found in CS-25 AMC 25.571. This structure is referred to in this AMC as "fatigue critical baseline structure." The purpose of requiring identification and listing of fatigue critical structure (FCS) is to provide operators with a tool that will help in the evaluating existing and future repairs or modifications. In this context, fatigue critical structure is any structure that is susceptible to fatigue that could contribute to a catastrophic failure, and should be subject to a damage-tolerance evaluation (DTE). The DTE would determine if DTIs need to be established for the repaired or modified structure. For the purpose of this AMC,

structure that is modified after aircraft delivery from the TCH is not considered to be “baseline” structure.

CS 25.571(a) states “An evaluation of the strength, detail design, and fabrication must show that catastrophic failure due to fatigue...will be avoided throughout the operational life of the aircraft. This evaluation must be conducted...for each part of the structure which could contribute to a catastrophic failure (such as wing, empennage, control surfaces, fuselage, engine mounts, and their related primary attachments)....” When identifying FCBS, it is not sufficient to consider only that structure identified in the supplemental structural inspection document (SSID) or airworthiness limitation section (ALS). Some SSIDs or ALSs might only include supplemental inspections of the most highly stressed elements of the FCBS. A SSID and ALS often refer to this structure as a Principal Structural Element (PSE). If repaired, other areas of structure not identified as a PSE in the SSID or ALS may require supplemental inspections. The term PSE has, at times, been applied narrowly by industry. The narrow application of the term PSE could incorrectly limit the scope of the structure that would be considered relative to fatigue if repairs or modifications exist or are subsequently made. The relationship between PSE and FCS could vary significantly depending on the TCH’s working definition of PSE. In addition, there may be structure whose failure would be catastrophic, but due to low operational loads on the part, the part will not experience fatigue cracking. However, if the subject part is repaired or modified, the stresses in the part may be increased to a level where it is now susceptible to fatigue cracking. These types of parts should be considered as fatigue critical structure.

TC Holders should develop the list of FCBS and include the locations of FCS and a diagram showing the extent of FCS. TC Holders should make the list available to STC Holders and to operators.

#### 3.4. Certification Standard Applied When Performing a DTE

For Group A aircraft, the TC Holder should use the requirements of § 25.571, at Amendment 25-45, as a minimum standard. For Group B aircraft, the TC Holder should use the requirements that correspond to the original certification basis as a minimum standard. For each repair requiring a DTE, the DAH should apply not less than the minimum standard when developing new or revised DT Data. The certification standard applied by the TC Holder in performing a DTE for repairs should be included with the relevant approved documentation to the operator.

#### 3.5. Performing a DTE on a Repair That Affects FCBS

When performing a DTE on a repair that affects FCBS, the DTE would apply to the affected FCBS and repair. This may consist of an individual analysis or the application of a DT-based process such as RAGs that would be used by an operator. The result of the DTE should lead to developing DTI that address any adverse effects the repair may have on the FCBS. If the DTE results determine that DTIs are not required to ensure the continued airworthiness of the affected FCBS, the TC Holder should note that in the DTE documentation.

The term “adverse effects” refers to a degradation in the fatigue life or inspectability of the affected FCBS. Degradation in fatigue life (earlier occurrence of critical fatigue cracking) may result from an increase in internal loading, while degradation of inspectability may result from physical changes made to the structure. The DTE should be performed within a time frame that ensures the continued airworthiness of affected FCBS.

### 3.6. Review of Published Repair Data

Published repair data are generally applicable instructions for accomplishing repairs, such as those contained in SRMs and SBs. TCHs should review their existing repair data and identify each repair that affects FCBS. For each such repair, unless previously accomplished, the TCH must perform a DTE and develop any necessary DTI for the affected FCBS and repair data. For some repairs, the results of the DTE will conclude that no new DTI will be required for the affected FCBS or repair. For these cases, the TCH should provide a means that informs the operator a DTE was performed for the subject repair. This may be accomplished, for example, by providing a statement in a document, such as an SRM, stating that all repairs contained in this manual have had a DTE performed. This should preclude operators from questioning those repairs that do not have DTIs. TCHs should provide a list of its published repair data to operators and a statement that a DTE has been performed on this data. The following examples of published repair data developed by the TCH should be reviewed and included in this list:

- (a) SRMs,
- (b) SBs,
- (c) Documents containing AD mandated repairs, and
- (d) Other documents available to operators (for example, aircraft maintenance manuals and component maintenance manuals) containing approved repair data.

### 3.7. Developing DT Data for Existing Published Repair Data

#### 3.7.1. SRMs

The TCH should review the repair data contained in each SRM and identify repairs that affect FCBS. For these repairs, the TCH will need to determine if the SRM needs revising to provide adequate DTI. In determining the extent to which an SRM may need to be revised for compliance, consider the following:

- (a) Whether the existing SRM contains an adequate description of DTIs for the specific model.
- (b) Whether normal maintenance procedures (for example, the inspection threshold and/or existing normal maintenance inspections) are adequate to ensure the continued airworthiness (inspectability) equal to the unrepaired surrounding structure.
- (c) Whether SRM Chapter 51 standard repairs have a DT evaluation.
- (d) Whether all SRM specific repairs affecting FCBS have had a DTE performed.
- (e) Whether there is any guidance on proximity of repairs.
- (f) Whether superseded repairs are addressed and how a DTE is performed for future superseded repairs and how any DTI will be made available.

#### 3.7.2. SBs

The TCH should review the repair data contained in its SBs and identify those repairs that affect FCBS. For those repairs, the TCH should then determine if a new DTE will need to be performed. This review may be done in conjunction with the review of SBs for modifications that affect FCBS.

### 3.7.3. ADs

The TCH should review ADs that provide maintenance instructions to repair FCBS and determine if the instructions include any necessary DT Data. While the maintenance instructions supporting ADs are typically contained in SBs, other means of documentation may be used.

### 3.7.4. Other Forms of Data Transmittal

In addition to SRMs, SBs, and documentation for ADs, the TCH should review any other documents (for example, aircraft maintenance manuals and component maintenance manuals) that contain repair data. Individual repair data not contained in the above documents will be identified and DT Data obtained through the Repair Evaluation Guidelines process.

### 3.8. Developing DT Data for Future Published Repair Data

Following the completion of the review and revision of existing published data any subsequent repair data proposed for publication should also be subject to DTE and DTI provided.

### 3.9. Approval of DT Data Developed For Published Repair Data

For existing published repair data that requires new DT Data for repairs affecting FCBS, the TCH should submit the revised documentation to EASA for approval unless otherwise agreed. The DT Data for future published repair data may be approved according to existing processes.

### 3.10. Documentation of DT Data Developed for Published Repair Data

TCH should include the means used to document any new DTI developed for published repair data. For example, in lieu of revising individual SBs, the TCH may choose to establish a collector document that would contain new DTI developed and approved for specific repairs contained in various SBs.

### 3.11. Existing Repairs

TCHs should develop processes that will enable operators to identify and obtain DTI for existing repairs on their aircraft that affect FCBS. Collectively, these processes are referred to as the REGs and are addressed below.

### 3.12. Future Repairs

Repairs to FCBS conducted after the operator has incorporated the REGs into his maintenance programme must have a DTE performed. This includes blendouts, trim-outs, etc. that are beyond published TCH limits. For new repairs, the TCH may, in conjunction with an operator, use the three stage approval process provided in [Annex 1](#) of this Appendix. This process involves incremental approval of certain engineering data to allow an operator to return its aircraft to service before all the DT Data are developed and approved. The TCH should document this process for the operator's reference in their maintenance programme if it intends to apply it.

### 3.13. Repair Evaluation Guidelines

The REG provides instructions to the operator on how to survey aircraft, how to obtain DTI, and an implementation schedule that provides timelines for these actions. An effective REG may require that certain DT Data be developed by the TCH and made available to operators. Updated SRMs and SBs, together with the existing, expanded, or

new RAG documents, form the core of the information that will need to be made available to the operator to support this process. In developing the REG the TCH will need to determine what DT Data are currently available for repairs and what new DT Data will need to be developed to support operator compliance. The REG should include:

- (a) A process for conducting surveys of affected aircraft that will enable identification and documentation of all existing repairs that affect fatigue critical baseline structure;
- (b) A process for obtaining DTI for repairs affecting FCBS that are identified during an aircraft survey; and
- (c) An implementation schedule that provides timelines for:
  - (1) Conducting aircraft surveys,
  - (2) Obtaining DTI, and
  - (3) Incorporating DTI into the operator's maintenance programme.

#### 3.13.1. Implementation Schedule

The TCH should propose a schedule for Approval by EASA based on the guidance given in paragraph 12 of the main body of this AMC that takes into account the distribution of the fleet relative to  $\frac{3}{4}$  DSG, the extent of the work involved and the airworthiness risk. The Agency notes that many fleets are currently approaching or beyond DSG and these should be given priority in the implementation schedule.

#### 3.13.2. Developing a Process for Conducting Surveys of Affected Aircraft

The TCH should develop a process for use by operators to conduct aircraft surveys. These aircraft surveys are conducted by operators to identify and document repairs and repairs to modifications that may be installed on their aircraft. The survey is intended to help the operators determine which repairs may need a DTE in order to establish the need for DTI. Identification of repairs that need DTI should encompass only existing repairs that reinforce (for example, restore strength) the FCBS. This typically excludes maintenance actions such as blend-outs, plug rivets, trim-outs, etc. unless there are known specific risks associated with these actions in specific locations. The process the TCH develops to conduct surveys should include:

- (a) A survey schedule.
- (b) Areas and access provisions for the survey.
- (c) A procedure for repair data collection that includes:
  - (1) Repair Dimensions,
  - (2) Repair Material,
  - (3) Repair Fastener Type,
  - (4) Repair Location,
  - (5) Repair Proximity to other repairs,
  - (6) Repairs covered by Published Repair Data, and
  - (7) Repairs requiring DTI.
- (d) A means to determine whether or not a repair affects FCBS.

### 3.13.3. Developing a Process to Obtain DT Data for Repairs.

- (a) The TCH must develop a process that operators can use to obtain DTIs that address the adverse effects repairs may have on FCBS. In developing this process, TCHs will need to identify all applicable DTIs they have developed that are available to operators. This may include updated SRMs and SBs, existing RAGs, expanded or new RAGs, and other sources of DTIs developed by the TCH. For certain repairs, the process may instruct the operators to obtain direct support from the TCH. In this case, the TCH evaluates the operator's request and makes available DTI for a specific repair or group of repairs, as needed. These may include operator or third-party developed/approved repairs, and repairs that deviate from approved published repair data.
- (b) The process should state that existing repairs that already have DTIs developed and in place in the maintenance programme require no further action. For existing repairs identified during an individual aircraft survey that need DTIs established, the process may direct the operators to obtain the required DTIs from the following sources:
  - (1) TCH published service information such as DT-based SRMs, SBs, or other documents containing applicable DT Data for repairs.
  - (2) Existing approved RAG documents (developed for compliance with § 121.107).
  - (3) Expanded or newly developed RAG documents. In order to expedite the process for an operator to obtain DTI necessary to address the adverse affects repairs may have on FCBS, the TCH may determine that the existing RAG document should be expanded to address other FCBS of the aircraft pressure boundary. In addition, for aircraft that do not currently have a RAG, the TCH may determine that in order to fully support operators in obtaining DTI, a new RAG document may need to be developed. General guidance for developing this material can be found in [Annex 2](#) below, which is similar to AC 120-73, Damage Tolerance Assessment of Repairs to Pressurised Fuselages. The RAGs or any other streamlined process developed to enable operators to obtain DTI without having to go directly to the TCH.
  - (4) Procedures developed to enable operators to establish DTIs without having to contact the TCH for direct support. These procedures may be similar in concept to the RAG documents.
  - (5) Direct support from the TCH for certain repairs. The operator directly solicits DTIs from a TCH for certain individual repairs as those repairs are identified during the survey.

### 3.14 Repairs to Removable Structural Components

Fatigue critical structure may include structure on removable structural parts or assemblies that can be exchanged from one aircraft to another, such as door assemblies and flight control surfaces. In principle, the DT Data development and implementation process also applies to repairs to FCS on removable components. During their life history, however, these parts may not have had their flight times recorded on an individual component level because of removal and reinstallation on different aircraft multiple

times. These actions may make it impossible to determine the component's age or total flight hours or total flight cycles. In these situations, guidance for developing and implementing DT Data for existing and new repairs is provided in [Annex 3](#) of this Appendix.

### 3.15 Training

The complexity of the repair assessment and evaluation may require adequate training for proper implementation. In that case, it is necessary that each TCH considers providing training for all operators of the aircraft considered by this AMC

## 4. MODIFICATIONS AND REPAIRS TO MODIFICATIONS

### 4.1. TCH and STC Holder Tasks – Modifications and Repairs to Modifications

The following is an overview of the TCH and STC Holder tasks necessary for modifications that affect FCBS. This overview also includes TCH and STC Holder tasks necessary for repairs that may affect any FCS of the subject modifications. These tasks are applicable to those modifications that have been developed by the TCH or STC Holder.

- (a) Establish a list of modifications that may affect FCBS. From that list establish a list of modifications that may contain FCS.
- (b) In consultation with operators, determine which aircraft have the modification(s) installed.
- (c) STC Holders should obtain a list of FCBS from the TCH for the aircraft models identified above.
- (d) STC Holders should identify:
  - Modifications that affect FCBS, or
  - Modifications that contain FCS.
- (e) Determine if DT Data exist for the identified modifications.
- (f) Develop additional DT Data, if necessary.
- (g) Establish an implementation schedule for modifications.
- (h) Review existing DT Data for repairs made to modifications that affect FCBS.
- (i) Develop additional DT Data for repairs made to modifications that affect FCBS.
- (j) Establish an implementation schedule for repairs made to modifications.
- (k) Prepare documentation, submit it to EASA for approval, and make it available to operators.

### 4.2. Specific Modifications to be Considered

The TCH should consider modifications and any STCs it owns for modifications that fall into any of the categories listed in [Annex 5](#) of this Appendix. STC Holders should do the same for their STC modifications. For modifications that are not developed by a TCH or STC Holder the operator should consider whether the modification falls into any of the categories listed in [Annex 5](#) of this Appendix.

### 4.3. Modifications that need DT data

Using the guidance provided in AMC 25.571 and the detailed knowledge of the modification and its affect on the FCBS, the TCH and STC Holder, and in certain cases the

operator, should consider the following situations in determining what DT data need to be developed

#### 4.3.1. Modifications that affect FCBS

Any modification identified in Annex 5 that is installed on FCBS should be evaluated regardless of the size or complexity of the modification. In addition, any modification which indirectly affects FCBS (for example, modifications which change the fatigue loads environment, or affect the inspectability of the structure, etc.) must also have a DT evaluation performed to assess its impact.

#### 4.3.2. Modifications that contain new FCS

For any modification identified in [Annex 5](#) of this appendix that affects FCBS, the TCH or STC Holder should identify any FCS of the modification. Any modification that contains new FCS should be evaluated regardless of the size or complexity of the modification. Examples of this type of modification may be a modification that adds new structural splices, or increases the operational loads causing existing structure to become fatigue critical. If a modification does not affect FCBS, then it can be assumed that this modification does not contain FCS.

#### 4.4. Reviewing Existing DT Data for Modifications that Affect FCBS

Based on the CS 25.571 certification amendment level and other existing rules, the modification's approval documentation may already provide appropriate DT data.

The TCH or STC Holder should identify modifications that have existing approved DT data. Acceptable DT data contain a statement of DTE accomplishment and are approved. Confirmation that approved DT data exists should be provided to the operators.

Modifications that have been developed by a TCH may affect FCBS. These include ATCs and in some cases STCs. These changes to type design also require review for appropriate DT data.

#### 4.5. Developing Additional DT Data for Modifications that Affect FCBS

The DT data may be published as follows:

- (a) STC modifications – The additional DT data for existing modifications may be published in the form of an amended STC, a supplemental compliance document, or an individual approval.
- (b) TC Holder modifications – The additional DT data for existing modifications may be published in the form of an amended TC, TCH service information, etc.
- (c) Modifications not developed by a TCH or STC Holder – For modifications identified in [Annex 5](#) of this appendix that affect FCBS and were not developed by a TCH or STC Holder, the operator is responsible for obtaining DT data for those modifications. For those existing individual modifications that do not have DT data or other procedures implemented, establish the DT data according to an implementation plan approved by the Competent Authority.

NOTE: The TCH and STC Holder should submit data that describes and supports the means used to determine if a modification affects FCBS, and the means used for establishing FCS of a modification.

#### 4.6. DT Data Implementation Schedule then the TCH or STC Holder is no longer in business or a TC or STC is surrendered

For those modifications where the TCH or STC Holder is no longer in business or the TC or STC is surrendered, this paragraph provides guidance for an operator to produce a DT data implementation schedule for that modification. The operator's DT Data Implementation Schedule should contain the following information:

- (a) A description of the modification;
- (b) The affected aircraft and the affected FCS
- (c) The DSG of the affected aircraft;
- (d) A list of the modification FCS (if it exists);
- (e) The 25.571 certification level for determining the DT data;
- (f) A plan for obtaining the DT data for the modification; and
- (g) A DT Data Implementation Schedule for incorporating the DT data once they are received.

#### **5. DEVELOPMENT OF TCH AND STC HOLDER DOCUMENTATION AND EASA APPROVAL**

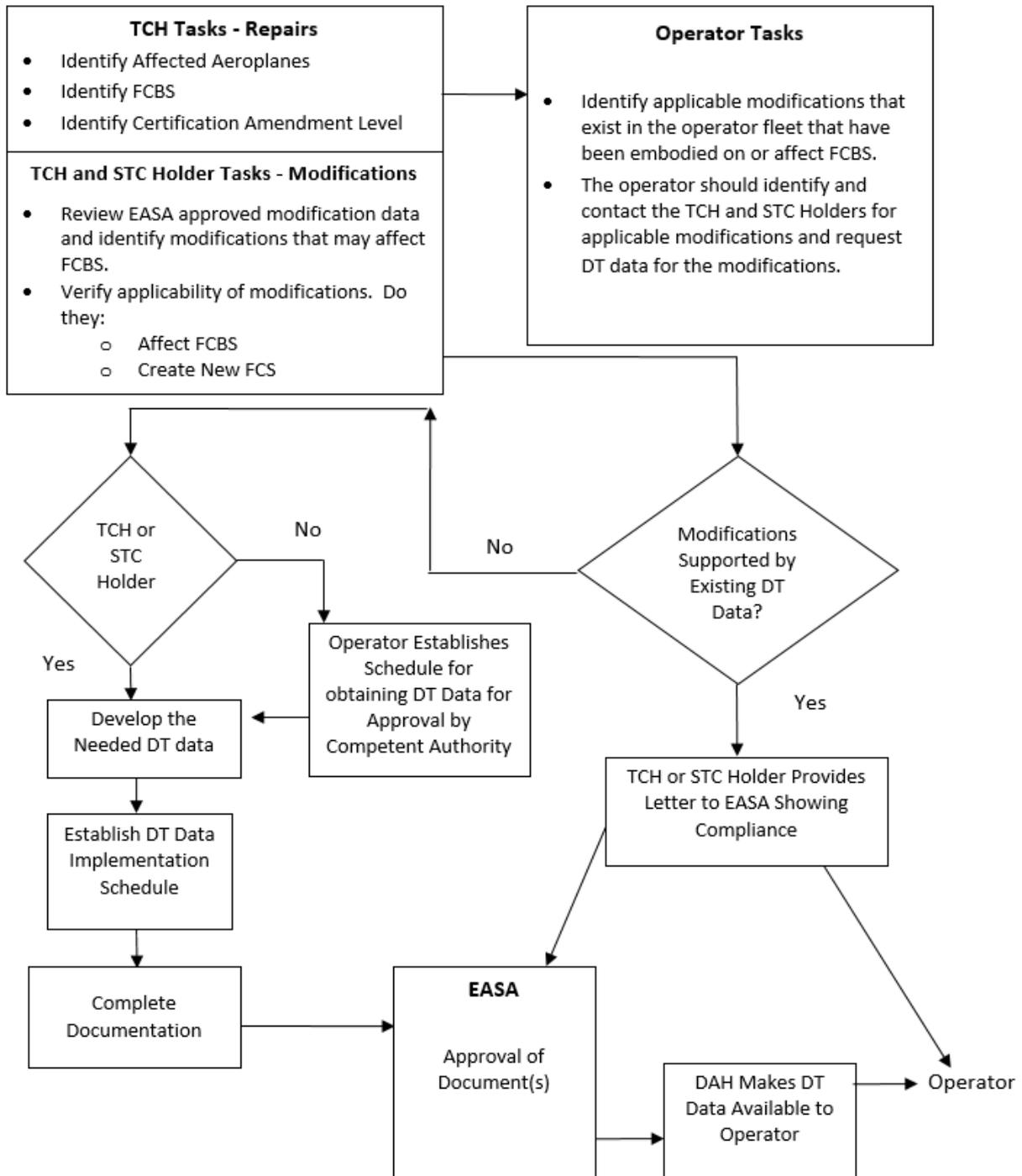
TCH, STC Holders, operators and the airworthiness authorities should work together to develop model-specific documentation with oversight provided by those authorities and assistance from the ARAC AAWG. It is anticipated that TCHs will utilise structural task groups (STG) to support their development of model-specific documents. EASA will approve the TCH or STC Holder submissions of the REGs and any other associated documentation required by the operator to provide appropriate DTI to all repairs and modifications to FCS whether submitted as separate documents or in a consolidated document.

#### **6. OPERATOR TASKS – REPAIRS, MODIFICATIONS AND REPAIRS TO MODIFICATIONS.**

- (a) Review the applicable Documents supplied by TCH and STC Holders.
- (b) Identify modifications that exist in the operators' fleet that affect FCBS.
- (c) Obtain or develop additional DT data for modifications not addressed by the TCH or STC Holder's documents.

NOTE: If the TCH or STC Holder no longer exists or is unwilling to comply with this request it becomes the responsibility of the operator to develop or obtain approved DT data. The data should be provided by a Design Organisation with an appropriate DOA.

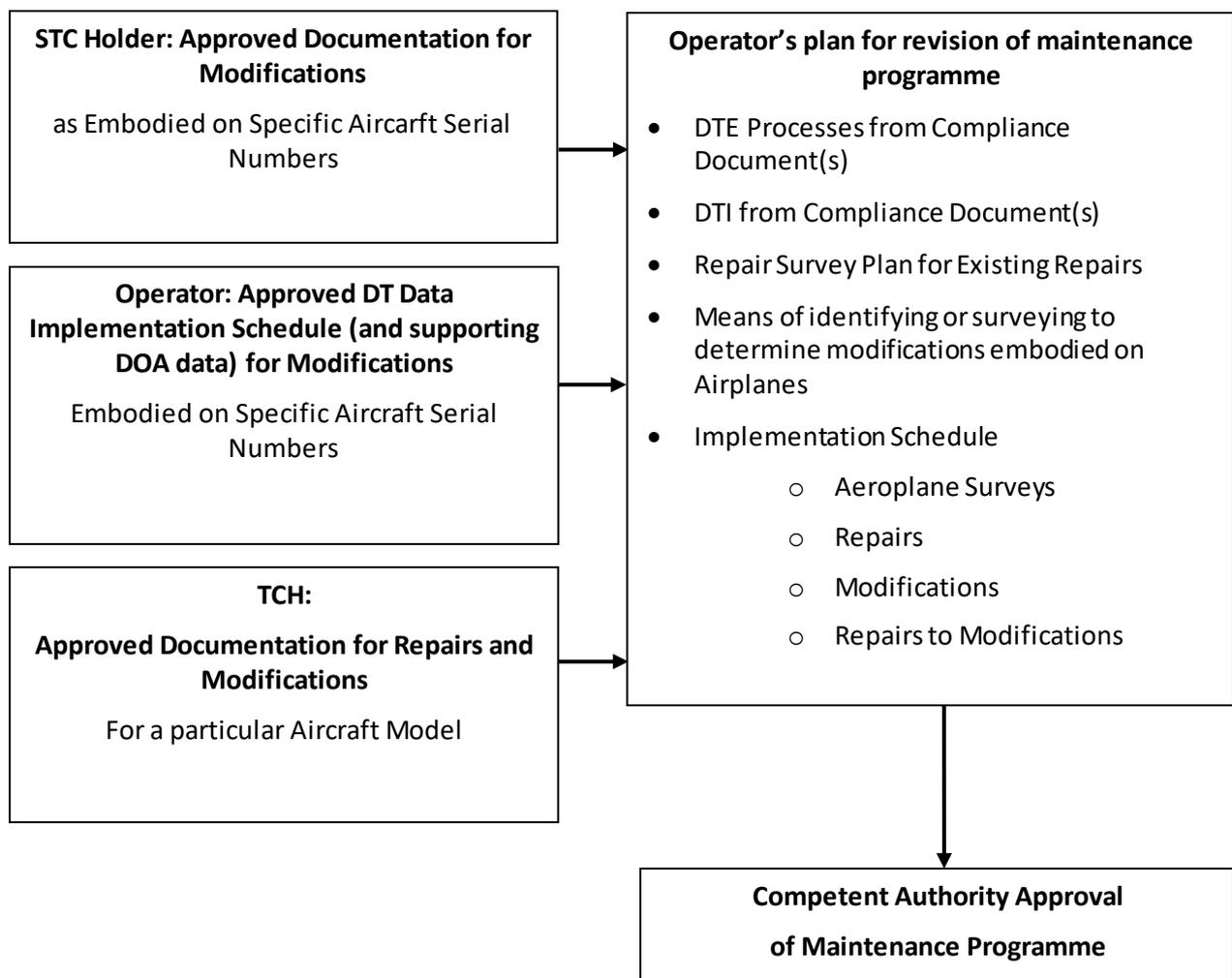
- (d) Incorporate the necessary actions into the Maintenance programme for Approval by the Competent Authority.



**Figure A3-1 – Developing a Means of Compliance for Modifications**

## 6.1. Contents of the Maintenance Programme

- (a) The operator should include the following in their Maintenance Programme:
  - (1) A process to ensure that all new repairs and modifications that affect FCBS will have DT data and DTI or other procedures implemented.
  - (2) A process to ensure that all existing repairs and modifications to FCBS are evaluated for damage tolerance and have DTI or other procedures implemented. This process includes:
    - (i) A review of operator processes to determine if DT data for repairs and modifications affecting FCBS have been developed and incorporated into the operator's maintenance programme for the operational life of the aircraft. If an operator is able to demonstrate that these processes ensure that DT data are developed for all repairs and modifications affecting FCBS, then no further action is required for existing repairs and modifications.
    - (ii) A process to identify or survey existing repairs (using the survey parameters from [Annex 3](#) of this Appendix) and modifications that affect FCBS and determine DTI for those repairs and modifications. This should include an implementation schedule that provides timing for incorporation of the DT data into the operator's maintenance programme, within the timeframe given in the applicable TCH or STC Holder's approved documentation.
- (b) Figure A3-2, below, outlines one possible means an operator can use to develop an implementation plan for aircraft in its fleet.



*Figure A3-2 - Operator's Maintenance Programme Approval Process*

#### 6.1.1. Implementation Plan for Repairs

Repair Survey Plan. The maintenance programme should include a repair survey schedule to identify repairs that may need DT data developed. The TCH's REG may be used as a basis for this plan. (See Paragraph 3 above and [Annex 2](#) for further information)

#### 6.1.2. Implementation Plan for Modifications:

- (a) The plan should include a process for producing a list of modifications that affect FCBS on an operator's aircraft. The list may be developed by obtaining data through a review of aircraft records and by a survey of the aircraft. If the means for identifying the subject modifications is by a records review, the operator will need to show its competent authority that the aircraft records are a reliable means for identifying modifications that affect the FCBS. Per the guidance in paragraph (3), below, the operator may identify modifications developed by TCH and STC Holders by performing a records review. A records review, however, may not be adequate to identify modifications not developed by a TCH or STC Holder. An aircraft survey may need to be conducted to identify such modifications. For each modification that affects FCBS, the process should document the means of compliance for incorporating DT data associated with that modification, whether through a TCH or STC Holder Compliance Document, an operator's DT data implementation schedule, or existing DT-based ICA.
- (b) The plan should:
  - (1) Include the process for when and how to obtain DT data for those modifications included in a DT data implementation schedule,
  - (2) Include a means of ensuring that the aircraft will not be operated past the time limit established for obtaining DT data,
  - (3) Include DT data associated with an modification that is provided in a Compliance Document, and
  - (4) Identify how DT data will be incorporated into the operator's maintenance programme.
- (c) To support identification of modifications that TCH and STC Holders need to address the operators should, concurrent with the TC and STC Holders' tasks, identify the TCH or STC Holder-developed modifications that exist in its fleet of aircraft. This may be done by reviewing the operator's aircraft configuration records, if record keeping is complete. During the review the TCH and STC Holder of each specific modification should be identified. The operator should then establish which modifications have been installed on or are likely to affect FCBS and prepare a list of modifications by aircraft. Modifications not developed by a TCH or STC Holder that affect FCBS should be identified at the time the operator conducts its aircraft survey for repairs.
  - (1) Compile a listing of all TCH and STC Holder developed modifications that are currently installed on its active fleet;

- (2) Delete from the listing those modifications that do not affect FCBS. Documents from the TCH may be used to identify the FCBS.
  - (3) The remaining modifications that affect FCBS on this list require a DTE and DT data, unless previously accomplished.
  - (4) The operator must review each modification to determine whether:
    - (i) The DT data already exist; or
    - (ii) The DT data need to be developed.
  - (5) Notify both the STC Holder and the Competent Authority and EASA when STCs owned by the STC Holder are identified on the operator's fleet and that DT data are required.

NOTE: The operator should begin developing this modifications list as soon as the TCHs make their FCBS listing available.
- (d) The operator should consider the list of modifications contained in [Annex 5](#) of this AMC in determining which modifications may affect FCBS on a model-specific basis.
  - (e) The operator should submit a letter that provides a list of modifications it has on its active fleet to the Competent Authority and a status on the TCH or STC Holders' support for developing required DT data.
  - (f) The operator should also contact the TCH or STC Holder for the applicable modification to determine if DT data are available for that modification. If the data do not exist, and the TCH or STC Holder intends to support the development of DT data, and this modification is likely to exist on other operators' fleets, the group of affected operators may wish to collectively meet with the TCH or STC Holder. If the TCH or STC Holder no longer exists, or is unwilling to support the modification, or if an modification affecting FCBS has not been approved under a TC or STC, it is the responsibility of the operator(s) to develop the data, either internally, or by using a third party with the appropriate design approval.
  - (g) Some individual modifications may not be easily identified through a review of aircraft maintenance records. In these situations, the means of compliance is a plan to survey the aircraft for modifications in the similar manner as repairs and repairs to modifications as given in paragraph 3 of this Appendix. The DT data for those modifications identified in the survey should be developed and implemented into an operator's maintenance programme. It is anticipated that most aircraft will need to be surveyed in order to ensure all modifications are identified. This survey can be conducted at the same time the survey for repairs is performed.

#### 6.1.3. DT Data Implementation Process

- (a) Use the regular maintenance or inspection programme for repairs where the inspection requirements utilise the chosen inspection

method and interval. Repairs or modifications added between the predetermined maintenance visits, including Category B and C repairs (see [Annex 2](#) of this Appendix) installed at remote locations, should have a threshold greater than the predetermined maintenance visit. Repairs may also be individually tracked to account for their unique inspection method and interval requirements. This ensures the airworthiness of the structure until the next predetermined maintenance visit, when the repair or modification will be evaluated as part of the repair maintenance programme.

- (b) Where inspection requirements are not fulfilled by the chosen inspection method and interval, Category B or C repairs will need additional attention. These repairs will either require upgrading to allow utilising the chosen inspection method and interval, or individual tracking to account for the repair's unique inspection method and interval requirements.

- 6.2 Maintenance programme changes When a maintenance or inspection programme interval is revised, the operator should evaluate the impact of the change on the repair assessment programme. If the revised maintenance or inspection programme intervals are greater than those in the BZI, the previous classification of Category A repairs may become invalid. The operator may need to obtain approval of an alternative inspection method, upgrade the repair to allow utilisation of the chosen inspection method and interval, or re-categorise some repairs and establish unique supplemental inspection methods and intervals for specific repairs. Operators using the "second technique" of conducting repetitive repair assessments at predetermined maintenance visits would evaluate whether the change to the predetermined maintenance visit continues to fulfil the repair inspection requirements in accordance with the guidance provided in [Annex 2](#) of this AMC.

## 7. THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

The competent authority is responsible for approving the means for incorporating the Agency Approved DT data for repairs and modifications into the operator's maintenance programme.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Annex 1 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Approval Process for New Repairs

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

In the past, FAA AC 25.1529-1, Instructions for Continued Airworthiness of Structural Repairs on Transport Aircraft, August 1, 1991, described a two-stage approach for approving repairs to principal structural elements. The two-stage approach consisted of:

- Evaluating type design strength requirements per CS 25.305 before return to service.
- Performing a damage tolerance evaluation and developing DT Data to demonstrate compliance with CS 25.571 within 12 months of return to service.

The FAA guidance material in AC 25.1529-1 is now embodied in this AMC, and is modified to describe a three-stage approach now commonly used in the aviation industry. The three-stage approach is in lieu of the two-stage approach discussed above.

The DT Data include inspection requirements, such as inspection threshold, inspection method, and inspection repetitive interval, or may specify a time limit when a repair or modification needs to be replaced or modified. The required data may be submitted all at once, prior to the aircraft return to service, or it may be submitted in stages. The following three-stage approval process is available, which involves incremental approval of engineering data to allow an aircraft to return to service before all the engineering data previously described are submitted. The three stages are described as follows:

- (a) The first stage is approval of the static strength data and the schedule for submittal of the DT Data. This approval is required prior to returning an aircraft to service.
- (b) The second stage is approval of the DT Data. This should be submitted no later than 12 months after the aircraft was returned to service. At this stage the DT Data need only contain the threshold when inspections are required to begin as long as a process is in place to develop the required inspection method and repetitive intervals before the threshold is reached. In this case, the submittal and approval of the remaining DT Data may be deferred to the third stage.
- (c) The third stage is approval of the inspection method and the repetitive intervals. This final element of the repair certification data in compliance with CS 25.571 must be submitted and approved prior to the inspection threshold being reached.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Annex 2 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Assessment of Existing Repairs

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

A DTI assessment process consists of an aircraft repair survey, identification and disposition of repairs requiring immediate action and development of damage tolerance based inspections, as described below:

### 1. AIRCRAFT REPAIR SURVEY

A survey will be used to identify existing repairs and repair configurations on FCBS and provide a means to categorise those repairs. The survey would apply to all affected aircraft in an operator's fleet, as defined in the maintenance programme, using the process contained in the REG or similar document. The procedure to identify repairs that require DTE should be developed and documented using CS 25.571 and AMC 25.571 (dependent on aircraft certification level), together with additional guidance specific to repairs, such as:

- (a) Size of the repair,
- (b) Repair configuration,
  - (1) SRM standards
  - (2) Other
- (c) Proximity to other repairs, and
- (d) Potential affect on FCBS
  - (1) Inspectability (access and method)
  - (2) Load distribution.

See Paragraph 4 of this Annex for more details.

### 2. IDENTIFICATION AND DISPOSITION OF REPAIRS REQUIRING IMMEDIATE ACTION

Certain repairs may not meet minimum requirements because of cracking, corrosion, dents, or inadequate design. The operator should use the guidance provided in the Compliance Document to identify these repairs and, once identified, take appropriate corrective action. In some cases, modifications may need to be made before further flight. The operator should consider establishing a fleet campaign if similar repairs may have been installed on other aircraft.

### 3. DAMAGE TOLERANCE INSPECTION DEVELOPMENT

This includes the development of the appropriate maintenance plan for the repair under consideration. During this step determine the inspection method, threshold, and repetitive interval. Determine this information from existing guidance information as documented in the RAG (see Paragraph 4), or from the results of an individual damage tolerance evaluation performed using the guidance in AMC 25.571. Then determine the feasibility of an inspection programme to maintain continued airworthiness. If the inspection programme is practical, incorporate the DTI into the individual aircraft maintenance programme. If the inspection is either impractical or impossible, incorporate a replacement time for the repair into the individual aircraft maintenance programme. The three-stage approach discussed in [Annex 1](#) of this AMC may be used, if appropriate.

### 4. Repair Assessment guidelines

- 4.1. Criteria to assist in developing the repair assessment guidelines

The following criteria are those developed for the fuselage pressure boundary, similar to those found in FAA AC 120-73 and previous JAA and EASA documentation. DAHs may find it appropriate to develop similar practices for other types of aircraft and areas of the structure.

The purpose is to develop repair assessment guidelines requiring specific maintenance programmes, if necessary, to maintain the damage-tolerance integrity of the repaired airframe. The following criteria have been developed to assist in the development of that guidance material:

- (a) Specific repair size limits for which no assessment is necessary may be selected for each model of aircraft and structural location. This will enable the burden on the operator to be minimised while ensuring that the aircraft's baseline inspection programme remains valid.
- (b) Repairs that are not in accordance with SRM must be reviewed and may require further action.
- (c) Repairs must be reviewed where the repair has been installed in accordance with SRM data that have been superseded or rendered inactive by new damage-tolerant designs.
- (d) Repairs in close proximity to other repairs or modifications require review to determine their impact on the continued airworthiness of the aircraft.
- (e) Repairs that exhibit structural distress should be replaced before further flight.

#### 4.2. Repair assessment methodology.

The next step is to develop a repair assessment methodology that is effective in evaluating the continued airworthiness of existing repairs for the fuselage pressure boundary. Older aircraft models may have many structural repairs, so the efficiency of the assessment procedure is an important consideration. In the past, evaluation of repairs for damage-tolerance would require direct assistance from the DAH. Considering that each repair design is different, that each aircraft model is different, that each area of the aircraft is subjected to a different loading environment, and that the number of engineers qualified to perform a damage-tolerance assessment is small, the size of an assessment task conducted in that way would be unmanageable. Therefore, a new approach has been developed as an alternative.

Since repair assessment results will depend on the model specific structure and loading environment, the DAHs should create an assessment methodology for the types of repairs expected to be found on each affected aircraft model. Since the records on most of these repairs are not readily available, locating the repairs will necessitate surveying the structure of each aircraft. A survey form is created by DAH that may be used to record key repair design features needed to accomplish a repair assessment. Airline personnel not trained as damage-tolerance specialists can use this form to document the configuration of each observed repair.

Some DAH have developed simplified methods using the information from the survey form as input data, to determine the damage-tolerance characteristics of the surveyed repairs. Although the repair assessments should be performed by well trained personnel familiar with the model specific repair assessment guidelines, these methods enable appropriate staff, not trained as a damage-tolerance specialist, to perform the repair assessment without the assistance of the TCH. This methodology should be generated by

the aircraft TCH. Model specific repair assessment guidelines will be prepared by the TCHs.

From the information on the survey form, it is also possible to classify repairs into one of three categories:

- Category A: A permanent repair for which the baseline zonal inspection (BZI), (typical maintenance inspection intervals assumed to be performed by most operators), is adequate to ensure continued airworthiness.
- Category B: A permanent repair that requires supplemental inspections to ensure continued airworthiness.
- Category C: A temporary repair that will need to be reworked or replaced prior to an established time limit. Supplemental inspections may be necessary to ensure continued airworthiness prior to this limit.

When the LOV of the maintenance programme is extended the initial Categorisation of Repairs may need review by the TCH and operator to ensure these remain valid up until the new LOV.

#### 4.3. Repair assessment process

There are two principal techniques that can be used to accomplish the repair assessment. The first technique involves a three-stage procedure. This technique could be well suited for operators of small fleets. The second technique involves the incorporation of the repair assessment guidelines as part of an operator's routine maintenance programme. This approach could be well suited for operators of large fleets and would evaluate repairs at predetermined planned maintenance visits as part of the maintenance programme. DAHs and operators may develop other techniques, which would be acceptable as long as they fulfil the objectives of this proposed rule, and are approved by the Agency.

The first technique generally involves the execution of the following three stages. (See Figure.A3(2)-1):

##### **Stage 1 Data Collection**

This stage specifies what structure should be assessed for repairs and collects data for further analysis. If a repair is on a structure in an area of concern, the analysis continues, otherwise the repair does not require classification per this programme.

Repair assessment guidelines for each model will provide a list of structure for which repair assessments are required. Some DAHs have reduced this list by determining the inspection requirements for critical details. If the requirements are equal to normal maintenance checks (e.g., BZI checks), those details were excluded from this list.

Repair details are collected for further analysis in Stage 2. Repairs that do not meet the minimum design requirements or are significantly degraded are immediately identified, and corrective actions must be taken before further flight.

##### **Stage 2 Repair Categorisation**

The repair categorisation is accomplished by using the data gathered in Stage 1 to answer simple questions regarding structural characteristics.

If the maintenance programme is at least as rigorous as the BZI identified in the

TCH's model specific repair assessment guidelines, well designed repairs in good condition meeting size and proximity requirements are Category A. Simple condition and design criteria questions are provided in Stage 2 to define the lower bounds of Category B and Category C repairs. The process continues for Category B and C repairs.

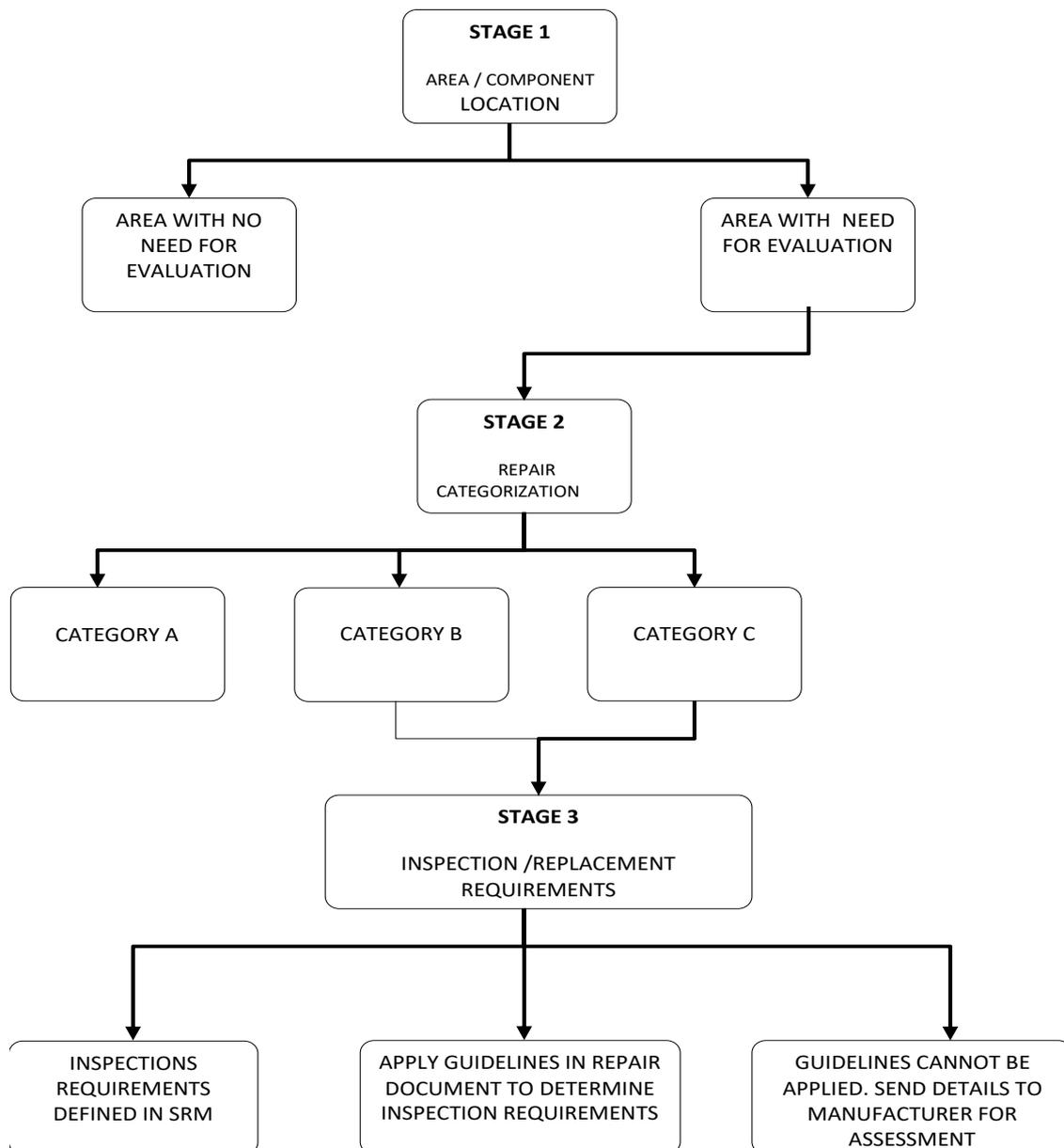


Figure A3(2)-1. Repair Assessment Stages

### Stage 3 Determination of Structural Maintenance Requirements

The specific supplemental inspection and/or replacement requirements for Category B and C repairs are determined in this stage. Inspection requirements for the repair are determined by calculation or by using predetermined values provided by the DAH, or other values obtained using an Agency approved method.

In evaluating the first supplemental inspection, Stage 3 will define the inspection threshold in flight cycles measured from the time of repair installation. If the time of installation of the repair is unknown and the aircraft has exceeded the assessment implementation times or has exceeded the time for first inspection, the first inspection should occur by the next "C-check" interval, or equivalent cycle limit after the repair data is gathered (Stage 1).

An operator may choose to accomplish all three stages at once, or just Stage 1. In the latter case, the operator would be required to adhere to the schedule specified in the Agency approved model specific repair assessment guidelines for completion of Stages 2 and 3. Incorporating the maintenance requirements for Category B and C repairs into an operator's individual aircraft maintenance or inspection programme completes the repair assessment process for the first technique.

The second technique would involve setting up a repair maintenance programme to evaluate all applicable structure as detailed in paragraph 2.6 at each predetermined maintenance visit to confirm that they are permanent. This technique would require the operator to choose an inspection method and interval in accordance with the Agency approved repair assessment guidelines. The repairs whose inspection requirements are fulfilled by the chosen inspection method and interval would be inspected in accordance with the approved maintenance programme. Any repair that is not permanent, or whose inspection requirements are not fulfilled by the chosen inspection method and interval, would either be:

- (a) Upgraded to allow utilisation of the chosen inspection method and interval, or
- (b) Individually tracked to account for the repair's unique inspection method and interval requirements.

This process is then repeated at the chosen inspection interval.

Repairs added between the predetermined maintenance visits, including interim repairs installed at remote locations, would be required either to have a threshold greater than the length of the predetermined maintenance visit or to be tracked individually to account for the repair's unique inspection method and interval requirements. This would ensure the airworthiness of the structure until the next predetermined maintenance visit, at which time the repair would be evaluated as part of the repair maintenance programme.

## **5. Maintenance programme changes**

When a maintenance or inspection programme interval is revised, the operator should evaluate the impact of the change on the repair assessment programme. If the revised maintenance or inspection programme intervals are greater than those in the BZI, the previous classification of Category A repairs may become invalid. The operator may need to obtain approval of an alternative inspection method, upgrade the repair to allow utilisation of the chosen inspection method and interval, or re-categorise some repairs and establish unique supplemental inspection methods and intervals for specific repairs. Operators using the "second technique" of conducting repetitive repair assessments at predetermined maintenance visits would evaluate whether the change to the predetermined maintenance visit continues to fulfil the repair inspection requirements.

## **6. SRM update**

The general section of each SRM will contain brief descriptions of damage-tolerance considerations, categories of repairs, description of baseline zonal inspections, and the repair

assessment logic diagram. In updating each SRM, existing location specific repairs should be labelled with appropriate repair category identification (A, B, or C), and specific inspection requirements for B and C repairs should also be provided as applicable. SRM descriptions of generic repairs will also contain repair category considerations regarding size, zone, and proximity. Detailed information for determination of inspection requirements will have to be provide in for each model. Repairs which were installed in accordance with a previous revision of the SRM, but which have now been superseded by a new damage-tolerant design, will require review. Such repairs may be reclassified to Category B or C, requiring additional inspections and/or rework.

#### **7. Structure modified by a STC**

The current repair assessment guidelines provided by the TCH do not generally apply to structure modified by a STC. Nonetheless it is expected that all structure modified by STC should be evaluated by the operator in conjunction with the STC holder. The STC holder should develop, submit, and gain Agency approval of guidelines to evaluate repairs to such structure or conduct specific damage-tolerance assessments of known repairs and provide appropriate instructions to the operator.

It is expected that the STC holder will assist the operators by preparing the required documents. If the STC holder is out of business, or is otherwise unable to provide assistance, the operator would have to acquire the Agency approved guidelines independently. To keep the aircraft in service, it is always possible for operators, individually or as a group, to hire the necessary expertise to develop and gain approval of repair assessment guidelines and the associated DSG. Ultimately, the operator remains responsible for the continued safe operation of the aircraft.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Annex 3 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Repairs and Modifications to Removable Structural Components

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

### 1. DETERMINING THE AGE OF A REMOVABLE STRUCTURAL COMPONENT

Determining an actual component age or assigning a conservative age provides flexibility and reduces operator burden when implementing DT data for repairs and modifications to structural components. In some cases, the actual component age may be determined from records. If the actual age cannot be determined this way, the component age may be conservatively assigned using one of the following fleet leader concepts, depending upon the origin of the component:

- (a) If component times are not available, but records indicate that no part changes have occurred, aircraft flight cycles or flight hours can be used.
- (b) If no records are available, and the parts could have been switched from one or more older aircraft under the same maintenance programme, it should be assumed that the time on any component is equal to the oldest aircraft in the programme. If this is unknown, the time should be assumed equal to the same model aircraft that is the oldest or has the most flight cycles or flight hours in the world fleet.
- (c) A manufacturing date marked on a component may also be used to help establish the component's age in flight cycles or flight hours. This can be done by using the above reasoning and comparing it to aircraft in the affected fleet with the same or older manufacturing date.

If none of these options can be used to determine or assign a component age or total number of flight cycles or flight hours, a conservative implementation schedule can be established by using the guidelines applied in paragraph 3. of this appendix, for the initial inspection, if required by the DT data.

### 2. TRACKING

An effective, formal, control or tracking system should be established for removable structural components that are identified as FCBS or that contain FCS. This will help ensure compliance with maintenance programme requirements specific to repairs and modifications installed on an affected removable structural component. Paragraph 4 of this appendix, provides options that could be used to alleviate some of the burdens associated with tracking all repairs to affected removable structural components.

### 3. DEVELOPING AND IMPLEMENTING DT DATA

#### (a) Repairs

Accomplish the initial repair assessment of the affected structural component at the same time as the aircraft level repair survey for the aircraft on which the component is installed. Develop the DT data per the process given in Step 3 of Appendix 6 and incorporate the DTI into the maintenance programme.

#### (b) Modifications

Accomplish the initial modification assessment of the affected structural component at the same time as the aircraft level modification assessment for the aircraft on which the component is installed. Develop the DT data and incorporate the DTI into the maintenance programme.

If the actual age of the repairs or modifications installation, or the total number of flight cycles or flight hours is known, use that information to establish when the initial inspection of the component should be performed. Repeat the inspection at the intervals provided by the TCH or STC Holder for the repair or modification installed on the component.

If the actual age of the repairs or modifications installation, or the total number of flight cycles or flight hours is unknown, but the component age or total number of flight cycles or flight hours is known, or can be assigned conservatively, use the component age, or total number of flight cycles or flight hours to establish when the initial inspection of the component should be performed. Repeat the inspection at the intervals provided by the TCH or STC Holder for the repairs and modifications against the component.

As an option, accomplish the initial inspection on the affected component at the next C-check (or equivalent interval) following the repair assessment. Repeat the inspection at the intervals provided by the TCH or STC Holder for the repairs and modifications against the component.

#### **4. EXISTING REPAIRS AND MODIFICATIONS – COMPONENTS RETRIEVED FROM STORAGE.**

- (a) If the time on the component (in flight cycles or flight hours) is known, or can be conservatively assigned, perform the following:
- (1) Survey the component,
  - (2) Disposition the repairs and modifications,
  - (3) Implement any DTI in accordance with the approved schedule,
  - (4) Accomplish the initial inspection using the actual age of the repairs or modifications, or total number of flight cycles or flight hours, if known. If the age of the repairs or modifications is not known, use the component age. Repeat the inspection at the intervals given for the repairs or modifications against the component.
- (b) If the time on the component (in flight cycles or flight hours) is unknown and cannot be conservatively assigned, perform the initial repair or modification assessment of the affected component prior to installation, perform the following actions:
- (1) Develop the DT data per the process given in paragraph 3 or 4 of [Appendix 3](#) of this AMC as applicable.
  - (2) Incorporate any DTI into the maintenance programme.
  - (3) Accomplish the first inspection on the affected component at the next C-check (or equivalent interval) following the repair or modification assessment.
  - (4) Repeat the inspection at the intervals given for the repair or modification against the component.

#### **5. IMPLEMENTATION OPTIONS TO HELP REDUCE TRACKING BURDEN**

The following implementation techniques could be used to alleviate some of the burdens associated with tracking repairs to affected removable structural components. These techniques, if used, would need to be included in the Maintenance Programme and may require additional EASA approval and TCH or STC Holder input for DTI.

- (a) Upgrading Existing Repairs

As an option, existing repairs may be removed and replaced to zero time the DTI requirements of the repair and establish an initial tracking point for the repair. Normally, this would be done at or before the survey for maximum benefit. The initial and repetitive inspections for the upgraded repair would then be accomplished at the intervals given for the repair against the component.

A repair could also be upgraded to one whose inspection requirements and methods are already fulfilled by an operator's maintenance or inspection programme. That repair would then be repetitively inspected at each routine inspection interval applicable to the repair. Specific tracking would not be required because that area of the aircraft would already be normally inspected on each aircraft in the fleet as part of the existing approved maintenance programme. If the operator's programme intervals were changed, the affect on requirements for specific tracking would have to be re-evaluated.

(b) Special Initial and/or Routine Inspections

As an option, existing repairs may have special initial inspections accomplished during the component survey. This initial inspection establishes an initial tracking point for the repair. Following this initial inspection, the DTI requirements (e.g., repetitive inspections) of the repair would be implemented.

In addition, special routine inspections could be defined for typical repairs that could be applied at a normal interval. In this case, an operator could check the affected components on each aircraft for this type of a repair at the defined interval. If the repair were found, the special inspection would be applied to ensure its airworthiness until the next scheduled check. This alleviates the need to specifically track affected components for every repair, especially typical ones.

The development of inspection processes, methods, applicability and intervals will probably require the assistance of the TCH or STC Holder for the FCS in question.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Annex 4 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: Service Bulletin Review Process

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

### Guidelines for Following the Service Bulletin (SB) Flow Chart

NOTE: While it is believed that this guidance is fairly comprehensive, it may not address every possible situation. It is therefore incumbent on the user to use good judgment and rationale when making any determination.

Screening SBs to determine which ones require DT data is primarily a TCH responsibility.

The result of this screening is a list of SBs which require special directed inspections to ensure continued airworthiness. The SBs included on the list will be grouped into Type I and Type II SBs. Type I SBs have existing DT data and Type II SBs require developing DT data. The list is not comprehensive and will not include all of the SBs associated with an aircraft. Specifically, the list will not include those SBs where a BZI programme developed for the Repair Assessment Programme has been determined to be sufficient to meet the damage tolerance requirements for the FCBS that is affected by the SB. A note should be prominently placed somewhere in the Compliance Document stating that SBs not included in the list satisfy the DT data requirement.

**“ALL SBs HAVE BEEN EVALUATED FOR DAMAGE TOLERANCE INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS; SERVICE BULLETINS NOT INCLUDED IN THIS LIST HAVE BEEN DETERMINED TO SATISFY THE DAMAGE-TOLERANCE REQUIREMENT BY INSPECTIONS COVERED IN THE BZI. THE BZI IS DOCUMENTED IN SECTION X.XXX.XX.X OF THE MAINTENANCE PLANNING DOCUMENT.”**

**Query 1** Does the SB address a structural repair or a modification to FCS?

Historically, any SB, service letter or other document that lists ATA chapters 51 through 57 could provide repair or modification instructions that may require DT data. In addition, certain repairs or modifications accomplished under other ATA chapters may affect FCS. The first step in the screening process is to identify all such service instructions and develop a list of candidates for review (Q2).

**Query 2** Does the service instruction specify either a repair or modification that creates or affects FCS?

If it does, then the service instruction requires further review (Q3). If it does not, then the service instruction does not require further review.

**Query 3** Is the service instruction mandated?

Service bulletins and other service instructions that are mandated by an AD have requirements to ensure inspection findings (e.g., detected cracks or other structural damage/degradation) are addressed in an approved manner. If the TCH can demonstrate that it applies a process for developing inspection programmes for mandated SBs using DT data and/or service-based inspection results, and for continuously reviewing the SBs for their adequacy to detect cracks in a timely manner, the mandated SBs should then be considered as compliant with the intent of this process. Otherwise, the TCH will need to demonstrate the inspection programme in the mandated SB has been developed using DT data and/or appropriate service-based inspection results. The outcomes of Query 3 branch to two unrelated boxes (Q4 – if mandated by an AD) or (Q7 – if not mandated by an AD).

**Query 4** Does the SB or service instruction contain terminating action?

Query 3 established that the inspection programme for the baseline configuration is acceptable.

**Query 5** Does the terminating action have DT data?

If the terminating action has a documented continuing airworthiness inspection programme based on damage tolerance principals, then no further review is required. The SB should be documented in the list. If the terminating action does not have DT data, or the status of the inspection programme cannot be verified, then further review is necessary (Q6).

**Query 6** Does the SB address a safe-life part?

If it does no further action is required. Otherwise, damage-tolerance based inspections will need to be developed and provided to the operators. The SB should be included in the list along with where to find the required continued airworthiness inspection programme.

**Query 7** In Query 3 a structural SB that was mandated by AD was identified.

Query 7 asks if a one-time inspection is required to satisfy the intent of the requirement. If it does, it is deemed that this is being done to verify that a condition does not exist and, on finding that condition, correct that condition to baseline configuration. As such, normal SSID programmes would then be expected to cover any required continued airworthiness inspections. If a repair is necessary, it is further assumed that this was done by reference to the SRM or other suitable means. No further action is required if this is the case and, if a repair was necessary, other means exist to determine the required DT data. If no inspections or multiple inspections are required, additional evaluation is required (Q8).

**Query 8** Is this a major structural design change (e.g., modification)?

This is a TCH decision that is part of the original certification process and is not a major/minor repair decision. If it is not a major design change then proceed to Q10, if not, proceed to Q9.

**Query 9** Does the change require non-destructive inspections to verify the integrity of the structure or are normal routine maintenance inspections (as delineated in the BZI) sufficient?

This is a subjective question and may require re-evaluating the change and determining where specific fatigue cracking might be expected. If normal maintenance inspections are adequate, no further action is required. Otherwise, proceed to Q10.

**Query 10** Does the SB contain DT data for both the baseline and modified aircraft configurations?

If so, the SB is satisfactory. Otherwise, damage tolerance-based inspections will need to be developed and provided to the operators. The SB should be documented in the list along with where to find the required continued airworthiness inspection programme.

### **Service Bulletin Screening Procedure**

1. The TCH will perform the screening and the Structures Task Group will validate the results.
2. A list of all SBs requiring action will be included in the TCH Compliance Document. Those not requiring action will not be in the list.
3. Service Bulletins included on the list will fall into one of two general types:

- 
- **Type I** – SBs which have existing DT data.
  - **Type II** – Service Bulletins that require developing DT data.
4. TCH actions:
- **Type I** – No action required.
  - **Type II** – Develop DT data and make it available to operators.
5. Operator actions (apply to both SB Types):
- Review SB incorporation on a tail number basis.
  - For incorporated SBs that rely on BZI (i.e., no special inspections required based on DTE performed), reconcile any maintenance planning document structural inspection escalations.
  - For incorporated SBs that require DTI, verify that DTI has been included in the operations specification and include it if it is missing.

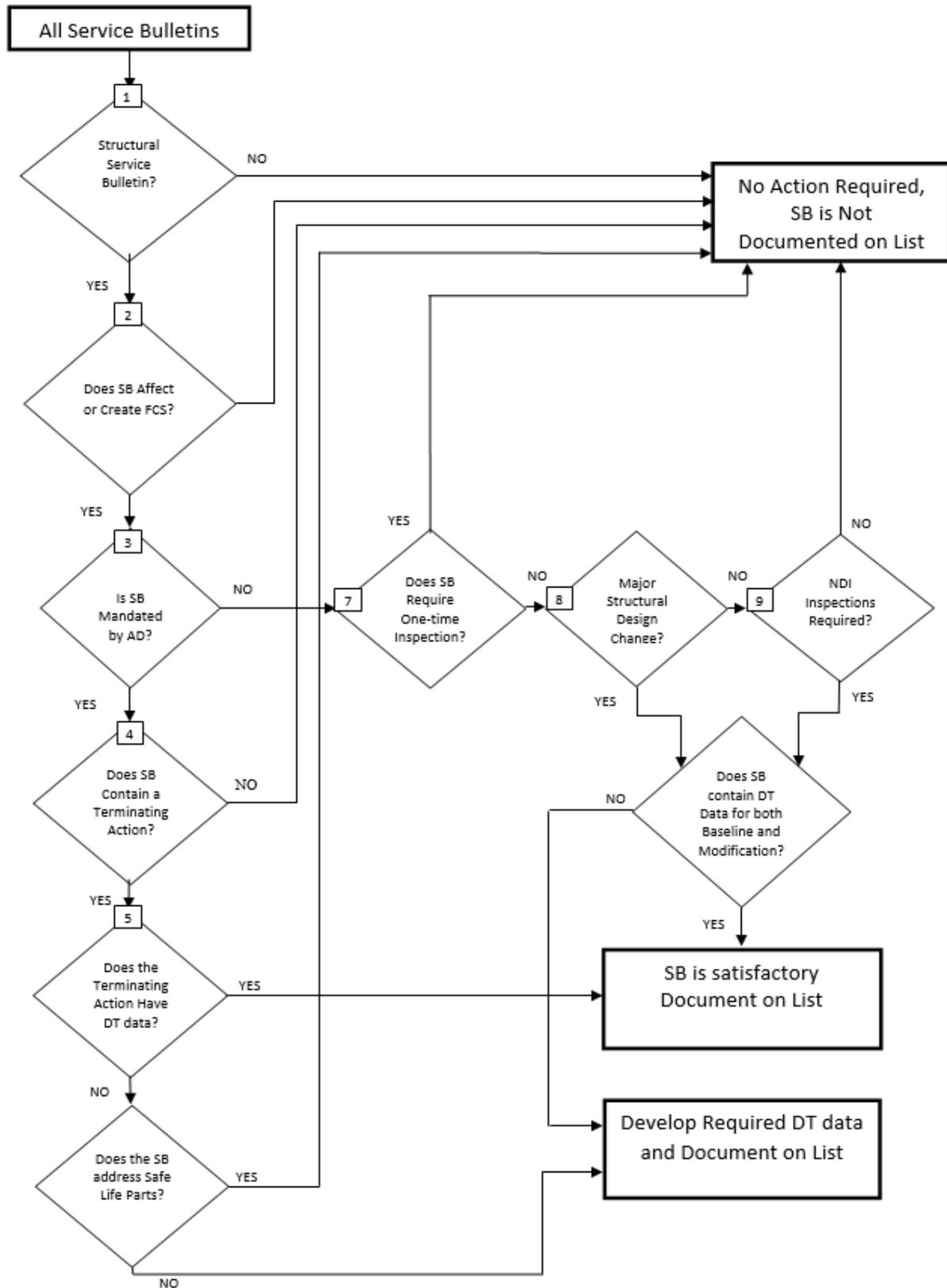


Figure A3(4)-1. Service Bulletin (SB) Flow Chart

[Amdt 20/2]

## Annex 5 to Appendix 3 to AMC 20-20: List of Significant STCs that may Adversely Affect Fatigue Critical Structure

*ED Decision 2017/019/R*

1. Passenger-to-freighter conversions (including addition of main deck cargo doors).
2. Gross weight increases (increased operating weights, increased zero fuel weights, increased landing weights, and increased maximum takeoff weights).
3. Installation of fuselage cutouts (passenger entry doors, emergency exit doors or crew escape hatches, fuselage access doors, and cabin window relocations).
4. Complete re-engine or pylon modifications.
5. Engine hush-kits.
6. Wing modifications such as installing winglets or changes in flight control settings (flap droop), and modification of wing trailing edge structure.
7. Modified skin splices.
8. Antenna Installations.
9. Any modification that affects several stringer or frame bays.
10. An modification that covers structure requiring periodic inspection by the operator's maintenance programme.
11. An modification that results in operational mission change that significantly changes the manufacturer's load or stress spectrum (e.g., passenger-to-freighter conversion).
12. An modification that changes areas of the fuselage that prevents external visual inspection (e.g., installation of a large external fuselage doubler that results in hiding details beneath it).
13. In general, attachment of interior monuments to FCS. Interior monuments include large items of mass such as galleys, closets, and lavatories.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Appendix 4 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a corrosion control programme

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

### 1. GENERAL

Before an operator may include a CPCP in its maintenance or inspection programme, the Agency should review and approve that CPCP. The Agency review is intended to ensure that the CPCP is comprehensive and systematic. The operator should show that the CPCP is comprehensive in that it addresses all corrosion likely to affect Primary Structure and is systematic in that it provides:

- (a) Step-by-step procedures that are applied on a regular basis to each identified task area or zone, and
- (b) These procedures are adjusted when they result in evidence that corrosion is not being controlled to an established acceptable level (Level 1 or better).

#### 1.1 Purpose

This appendix gives guidance to operators and DAHs who are developing and implementing a Corrosion Prevention and Control Programme (CPCP) for aeroplanes maintained in accordance with a maintenance programme developed in compliance with Part M M.A.302.

CPCPs have been developed by the DAH with the assistance of aircraft operators and competent authorities. They relied heavily on service experience to establish CPCP implementation thresholds and repeat intervals. Since that time a logical evaluation process has been developed to ensure environmental damage is considered in the evaluation of aircraft structure. This process is identified in ATA MSG-3 Scheduled Maintenance Development document, which introduced the CPCP concept in revision 2, circa 1993. The Agency will accept a CPCP based on this document and the information in this advisory circular. The Agency will also accept any other process that follows the guidelines in this AMC.

### 2. DEFINITIONS

- **Allowable Limit.** The allowable limit is the amount of material (usually expressed in material thickness) that may be removed or blended out without affecting the ultimate design strength capability of the structural member. Allowable limits may be established by the TCH/DAH. The Agency may, also, establish allowable limits. The DAH normally publishes allowable limits in the SRM or in SBs.
- **Baseline Programme.** A baseline programme is a CPCP developed for a specific model aeroplane. The TCH typically, develops the baseline programme. (See TCH Developed Baseline Programme, below) However, it may be developed by a group of operators who intend to use it in developing their individual CPCP (See Operator Developed Programme, below). It contains the corrosion inspection tasks, an implementation threshold, and a repeat interval for task accomplishment in each area or zone. Development of a systematic and comprehensive CPCP for inclusion in the operator's maintenance programme.
- **Basic Task(s).** The basic task is a specific and fundamental set of work elements that should be performed repetitively in all task areas or zones to successfully control corrosion. The contents of the basic task may vary depending upon the specific

requirements in an aeroplane area or zone. The basic task is developed to protect the Primary Structure of the aeroplane.

- **Corrosion Prevention and Control Programme (CPCP).** A Corrosion Prevention and Control Programme (CPCP) is a comprehensive and systematic approach to controlling corrosion such that the load carrying capability of an aircraft structure is not degraded below a level necessary to maintain airworthiness. It contains the basic corrosion inspection task, a definition of corrosion levels, an implementation threshold and a repeat interval for task accomplishment in each area or zone, and specific procedures if corrosion damage exceeds Level 1 in any area or zone. A CPCP consists of a basic corrosion inspection task, task areas, defined corrosion levels, and compliance times (implementation thresholds and repeat intervals). The CPCP also includes procedures to notify the competent authority of the findings and data associated with Level 2 and Level 3 corrosion and the actions taken to reduce future findings to Level 1.
- **Implementation Threshold (IT).** The implementation threshold is the aircraft age associated with the first time the basic corrosion inspection task should be accomplished in an area or zone.
- **Level 1 Corrosion.** Level 1 corrosion is:
  - (1) **Corrosion, occurring between successive corrosion inspection tasks that is local and can be reworked or blended out within the allowable limit; or**
  - (2) **Corrosion damage that is local and exceeds the allowable limit, but can be attributed to an event not typical of operator's usage of other aircraft in the same fleet (e.g. mercury spill); or**
  - (3) **Operator experience has demonstrated only light corrosion between each successive corrosion inspection task inspection; and, the latest corrosion inspection task results in rework or blend out that exceeds the allowable limit.**
- **Level 2 Corrosion.** Level 2 corrosion is that corrosion occurring between any two successive corrosion inspections task that requires a single rework or blend out which exceeds the allowable limit.

OR,

Corrosion occurring between successive inspections that is widespread and requires a single blend-out approaching allowable rework limits. i.e. it is not light corrosion as provided for in Level 1, definition (3).

A finding of Level 2 corrosion requires repair, reinforcement, or complete or partial replacement of the applicable structure.

**Note:** A statement of fact in previously mandated CPCPs states: corrosion findings that were discovered during the corrosion inspection task accomplished at the implementation threshold, and which require repair, reinforcement, or complete or partial replacement of the applicable structure, should not be used as an indicator of the effectiveness of the operators CPCP. The argument is that an operator's corrosion programme effectiveness can only be determined after a repeat inspection has been performed in a given inspection task area. This argument is valid for aircraft with mandated corrosion prevention and control programmes introduced after the aircraft has been in service for a number of years without a CPCP. This argument, however, may not be valid for aircraft that have been maintained using a design approval holders CPCP. Consequently, corrosion

findings exceeding level 1 found on the corrosion inspection task implementation threshold may have been set too high by the design approval holder and action should be taken to readjust the implementation threshold.

- **Level 3 Corrosion.** Level 3 corrosion is that corrosion occurring during the first or subsequent accomplishments of a corrosion inspection task that the operator determines to be an urgent airworthiness concern.

**Note:** If level 3 corrosion is determined at the implementation threshold or any repeat inspection then it should be reported. Any corrosion that is more than the maximum acceptable to the design approval holder or the Agency must be reported in accordance with current regulations. This determination should be conducted jointly with the DAH.

- **Light Corrosion.** Light corrosion is corrosion damage so slight that removal and blend-out over multiple repeat intervals (RI) may be accomplished before material loss exceeds the allowable limit.
- **Local Corrosion.** Generally, local corrosion is corrosion of a skin or web (wing, fuselage, empennage or strut) that does not exceed one frame, stringer, or stiffener bay. Local corrosion is typically limited to a single frame, chord, stringer or stiffener, or corrosion of more than one frame, chord, stringer or stiffener where no corrosion exists on two adjacent members on each side of the corroded member.
- **Operator Developed Programme.** In order to operate an aeroplane in compliance with the maintenance programme of Part-Man operator should include in its maintenance or inspection programme an approved CPCP. An operator may adopt the baseline programme provided by the DAH or it may choose to develop its own CPCP, or may be required to if none is available from the DAH. In developing its own CPCP an operator may join with other operators and develop a baseline programme similar to a TCH developed baseline programme for use by all operators in the group. The advantages of an operator developed baseline programme are that it provides a common basis for all operators in the group to develop their CPCP and it provides a broader experience base for development of the corrosion inspection tasks and identification of the task areas.
- **Repeat Interval (RI).** The repeat interval is the calendar time between the accomplishment of successive corrosion inspection tasks for a task area or zone.
- **Task Area.** The task area is a region of aircraft structure to which one or more corrosion inspection tasks are assigned. The task area may also be referred to as a zone.
- **TCH Developed Baseline Programme.** As part of the ICA, the TCH should provide an inspection programme that includes the frequency and extent of inspections necessary to provide the continued airworthiness of the aircraft. Furthermore, the ICA should include the information needed to apply protective treatments to the structure after inspection. In order for the inspections to be effectively accomplished, the TCH should include, in the ICA, corrosion removal and cleaning procedures and reference allowable limits. The TCH should include all of these corrosion-related activities in a manual, referred to as the Baseline Programme. The Baseline Programme manual is intended to facilitate operator.
- **Urgent Airworthiness Concern.** An urgent airworthiness concern is damage that could jeopardise continued safe operation of any aircraft. An urgent airworthiness concern typically requires correction before the next flight and expeditious action to inspect the other aircraft in the operator's fleet.

- **Widespread Corrosion.** Widespread corrosion is corrosion of two or more adjacent skin or web bays (a web bay is defined by frame, stringer or stiffener spacing). Or, widespread corrosion is corrosion of two or more adjacent frames, chords, stringers, or stiffeners. Or, widespread corrosion is corrosion of a frame, chord, stringer, or stiffener and an adjacent skin or web bay.
- **Zone.** (See task area)

### 3. DEVELOPMENT OF A BASELINE PROGRAMME

#### 3.1. Baseline Programme.

The objective of a baseline programme is to establish requirements for control of corrosion of aircraft structure to Level 1 or better for the operational life of the aircraft. The baseline programme should include the basic task, implementation thresholds, and repeat intervals. The baseline programme should also include procedures to notify the competent authority of the findings and data associated with Level 2 and Level 3 corrosion and the actions taken to reduce future findings to Level 1.

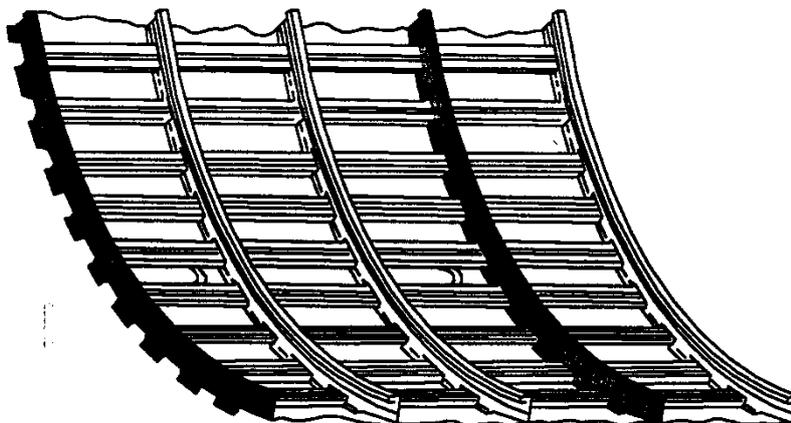
##### 3.1.1. Baseline Programme considerations.

To establish an effective baseline programme consideration of the following is necessary:

- (a) The flight and maintenance history of the aircraft model and perhaps similar models;
- (b) The corrosion properties of the materials used in the aircraft structure;
- (c) The protective treatments used;
- (d) The general practices applied during construction and maintenance; and
- (e) Local and widespread corrosion (See Figure A4-1).

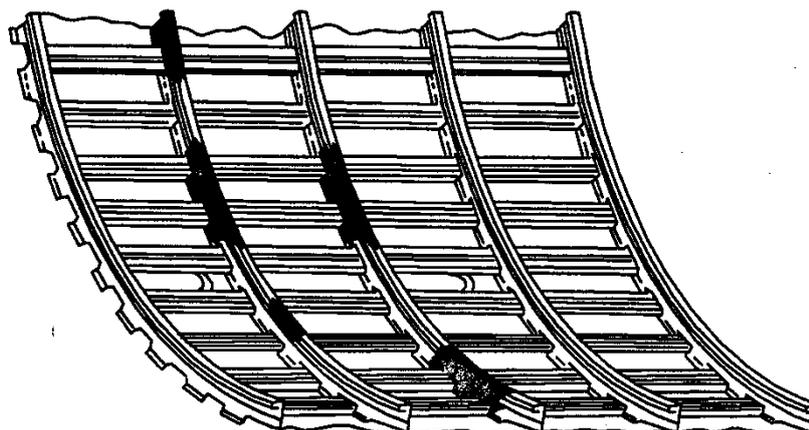
When determining the detail of the corrosion inspection tasks, the implementation threshold, and the repeat interval, a realistic operational environment should be considered. Technical representatives of both the TCH and the operators should participate in evaluating the service history and operational environment for the aircraft model. For new aircraft models and for aircraft models that have been in operation for only a short time, technical representatives of operators of similar aircraft models should be invited to participate.

**EXAMPLES OF LOCAL AND WIDESPREAD CORROSION IN FUSELAGE FRAMES**



**LOCAL CORROSION**

(Corrosion occurring in non-adjacent frames)



**WIDESPREAD CORROSION**

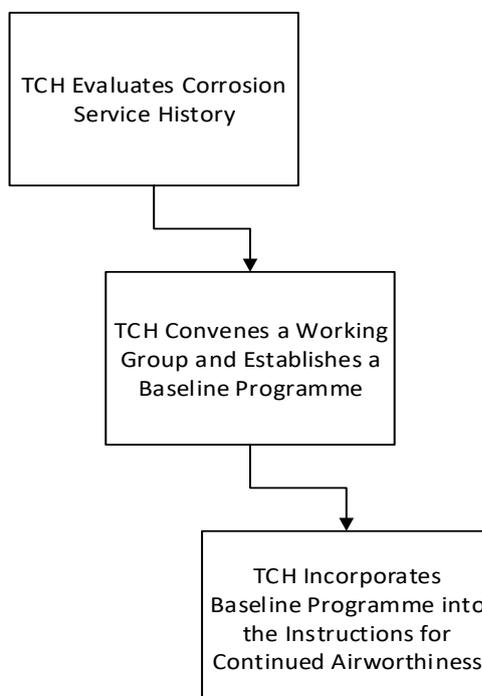
(Corrosion occurring in adjacent frames)

Figure A4-1

**3.1.2. TCH developed Baseline Programme**

During the design development process, the TCH should provide a baseline programme as a part of the instructions for continued airworthiness. The TCH initially evaluates service history of corrosion available for aircraft of similar design used in the same operational environment. Where no similar design with service experience exists those structural features concerned should be assessed using the environmental damage approach of ATA MSG-3. The TCH develops a preliminary baseline programme based on this evaluation. The TCH then convenes a working group consisting of operator technical representatives and representatives of the participating competent authorities. The working group reviews the preliminary baseline programme to assure that the tasks, implementation thresholds, and

repeat intervals are practical and assure the continued airworthiness of the aircraft. Once the working group review is complete, the TCH incorporates the baseline programme into the instructions for continued airworthiness. (See Figure A4-2)



**Figure A4-2: Type-Certificate Holder Developed Baseline Programme**

### **3.1.3 Operator Developed Programme.**

There may be instances where the TCH does not provide a baseline programme. In such instances, an operator may develop its CPCP without using a baseline programme, as long as the operator developed CPCP is consistent with the requirements.. It would be beneficial for an operator developing its own CPCP to consult other operators of the same or similar aircraft models in order to broaden the service experience available for use in preparing its programme. When a TCH prepared baseline programme is unavailable, a group of operators may prepare a baseline programme from which each operator in the group will develop its CPCP.

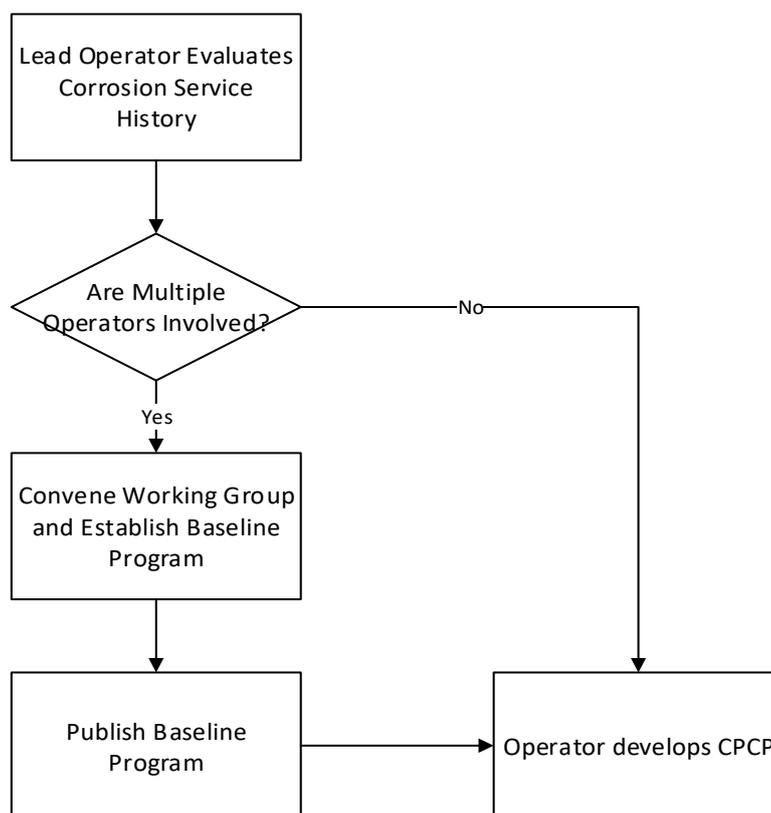
(a) **Operator Developed Baseline Programme**

An operator-developed baseline programme should pay particular attention to corrosion prone areas of the aircraft such as:

- (i) Exhaust trail areas,
- (ii) Battery compartments and battery vent openings,
- (iii) Areas surrounding lavatories, buffets, and galleys,
- (iv) Bilges,
- (v) Fuselage internal lower structure,

- (vi) Wheel wells and landing gear,
- (vii) External skin areas,
- (viii) Water entrapment areas,
- (ix) Engine frontal areas and cooling air vents,
- (x) Electronic or avionics compartments, and
- (xi) Flight control cavities open during takeoff and landing.

**Note:** Corrosion Prevention and Control Programmes for large transports were developed based on a triad amongst the Airworthiness Authorities, design approval holders, and the operators for the particular model aeroplane. If operator(s) were to develop a CPCP they may want to follow the example of the large transports.



(b) Individual Operator Developed CPCP.

An operator may develop its CPCP without reference to a baseline programme; so long as the CPCP is consistent with the requirements of the applicable operating rules. Any operator who develops its own CPCP without a baseline programme, should review all available corrosion related service data on the individual aircraft model and on like design details in similar

aircraft models when the operator's data and the Service Difficulty Report data shows no entries.

#### **3.1.4. Continuous Analysis and Surveillance.**

The operator's continuous analysis and surveillance system should contain procedures to review corrosion inspection task findings and establish corrosion levels. These procedures should provide criteria for determining if findings that exceed allowable limits are an isolated incident not typical of the operator's fleet. The operator's programme should also provide for notifying the competent authority whenever a determination of Level 2 or Level 3 corrosion is made. Due to the potential urgent airworthiness concern associated with a Level 3 finding, the operator's procedures should provide for notification as soon as possible but not later than 3 calendar days after the Level 3 determination has been made.

### **3.2. Baseline Programme Manual.**

The baseline programme manual should include instructions to implement the baseline CPCP. It may be in a printed form or other form acceptable to the competent authority. It should, also, be in a form that is easy to revise. The date of the last revision should be entered on each page. The baseline programme manual should clearly be identified as a baseline CPCP programme. The aircraft make, model and the person who prepared the manual should also be identified.

#### **3.2.1. Purpose and Background.**

This section of the manual should state the purpose of the baseline programme which is, to establish minimum requirements for preventing and controlling corrosion that may jeopardise continuing airworthiness of the aircraft model fleet. The section should further state that an operator should include an effective CPCP in its maintenance or inspection programme.

#### **3.2.2. Introduction.**

The introduction should include a general statement that corrosion becomes more widespread as aircraft age and that it is more likely to occur in conjunction with other damage such as fatigue cracking. The introduction should also indicate that it is not the intent of a CPCP to establish rigid requirements to eliminate all corrosion in the fleet, but to control corrosion at or below levels that do not jeopardise continued airworthiness. However, due to the unpredictability of corrosion it must be removed and the structure repaired and corrosion prevention treatment reapplied.

#### **3.2.3. Programme Application.**

For a programme to be fully effective, it is essential that a corrosion inspection task be applied to all areas where corrosion may affect Primary Structure. This section should recommend that priority for implementing the CPCP be given to older aeroplanes and to areas requiring significant changes to previous maintenance procedures in order to meet corrosion prevention and control requirements. This section should allow an operator to continue its current corrosion control procedures in a given task area or zone where there is documentation to show that corrosion is being consistently controlled to level 1.

#### 3.2.4. Baseline Programme.

This section should fully describe the baseline programme. It should include the basic task, corrosion inspection task areas, implementation thresholds, and repeat intervals.

#### 3.2.5. Reporting System.

Procedures to report findings of Level 2 and 3 corrosion to the competent authority should be clearly established in this section. All Level 2 and Level 3 findings should be reported in accordance with the applicable AD, operator's service difficulty reporting procedures or reporting required by other competent authorities. Additional procedures for alerting the competent authority of level 3 findings should be established that expedite such reporting. This report to the competent authority shall be made after the determination of the corrosion level.

#### 3.2.6. Periodic Review.

This section should establish a period for the TCH (or lead operator) and participating operators to meet with the competent authority and review the reported Level 2 and 3 findings. The purpose of this review is to assess the baseline programme and make adjustments if necessary.

#### 3.2.7. Corrosion Related Airworthiness Directives.

This section should include a list of all ADs that contain requirements related to known corrosion related problems. This section should state that these ADs are in addition to and take precedence over the operator's CPCP.

#### 3.2.8. Development of the Baseline Programme.

This section should identify the actions taken in preparing the baseline programme. It should include a description of the participants, the documents (e.g., SBs, service letters, ADs, service difficulty reports, accident and incident reports) reviewed, and the methodology for selecting and categorising the corrosion prone areas to be included in the baseline programme. Selection criteria for corrosion prone areas should be based on areas having similar corrosion exposure characteristics and inspection access requirements. Some corrosion prone areas that should be considered are the main wing box, the fuselage crown, the bilge, areas under lavatories and galleys, etc. This section should state that the implementation threshold was selected to represent the typical aircraft age beyond which an effective corrosion inspection task should be implemented for a given task area.

#### 3.2.9. Procedures for Recording Corrosion Inspection Findings.

The Agency has not imposed a requirement for additional record keeping for an operator's CPCP. However, the operator should maintain adequate records to substantiate any proposed programme adjustments. For example, an operator should maintain records to enable the operator to determine the amount of damage that has occurred during the repeat interval for each corrosion inspection task. Such data should be maintained for multiple repeat intervals in order to determine whether the damage remains constant or is increasing or decreasing. Such records are necessary

when an operator is seeking approval for Interval extension or task reduction.

#### 3.2.10. Glossary.

This section should define all terms specifically used in the baseline manual.

#### 3.2.11. Application of the Basic Task.

This section should describe in detail the basic task. It should provide procedures describing how to accomplish the following actions:

- (a) Removal of all systems equipment and interior furnishings to allow access to the area.
- (b) Cleaning of the area as required.
- (c) Visual inspection of all task areas and zones listed in the baseline programme.
- (d) Removal of all corrosion, damage evaluation, and repair of structure as necessary.
- (e) Unblocking holes and gaps that may hinder drainage.
- (f) Application of corrosion protective compounds.
- (g) Reinstallation of dry insulation blankets, if applicable.

#### 3.2.12. Determination of Corrosion Levels Based on Findings.

This section should describe how the corrosion level definitions are used in evaluating the corrosion findings and assigning a corrosion level. This section should also instruct the operator to consult the DAH or the competent authority for advice in determining corrosion levels.

#### 3.2.13. Typical Actions Following Determination of Corrosion Levels.

This section should establish criteria for evaluating whether or not the Level 2 or 3 corrosion is occurring on other aircraft in the operator's fleet. Criteria to be considered include: cause of the corrosion problem, past maintenance history, operating environment, production build standard, years in service, and inspectability of the corroded area. These and any other identified criteria should be used in identifying those aircraft that should be included in a fleet campaign. The results of the fleet campaign should be used to determine necessary adjustments in the operator's CPCP. The following instructions should also be included in this section:

- (a) If corrosion exceeding the allowable limit is found during accomplishment of the corrosion inspection task implementation threshold for a task area, it may be necessary to adjust the CPCP. (see NOTE under level 2 corrosion definition)
- (b) A single isolated occurrence of corrosion between successive inspections that exceeds Level 1 does not necessarily warrant a change in the operators CPCP. If the operator experiences multiple occurrences of Level 2 or Level 3 corrosion for a specific task area, then the operator should implement a change to the CPCP.

- (c) The operator should not defer maintenance actions for Level 2 and Level 3 corrosion. These maintenance actions should be accomplished in accordance with the operator's maintenance manual.
- (d) The operator may implement changes such as the following to improve the programme effectiveness:
  - (i) Reduction of the repeat interval,
  - (ii) Multiple applications of corrosion treatments, or
  - (iii) Additional drainage provisions.
  - (iv) Incorporation of design approval holders service information, such as service bulletins and service letters.

#### 3.2.14. Programme Implementation.

This section should state that each task is to be implemented on each aircraft when the aircraft reaches the age represented by the implementation threshold for the task. It should, also, describe procedures to be used for establishing a schedule for implementation where the aircraft age exceeds the implementation threshold for individual tasks. It should state that once a task is implemented in an area, subsequent tasks are to be accomplished at the repeat interval in that task area.

## 4. DEVELOPMENT OF OPERATORS PROGRAMME

### 4.1. Baseline Programme available

If a baseline programme is available, the operator should use that baseline programme as a basis for developing its CPCP. In addition to adopting the basic task, task areas, implementation thresholds and repeat intervals of the baseline programme, the operator should make provisions for:

- (a) **Aeroplanes that have exceeded the implementation threshold for certain tasks,**
- (b) **Aeroplanes being removed from storage,**
- (c) **Unanticipated scheduling adjustments,**
- (d) **Corrosion findings made during non CPCP inspections,**
- (e) **Adding newly acquired aircraft, and**
- (f) **Modifications, configuration changes, and operating environment,**

#### 4.1.1. Provisions for aircraft that have exceeded the implementation threshold

The operator's CPCP must establish a schedule for accomplishing all corrosion inspection tasks in task areas where the aircraft age has exceeded the implementation threshold (see main text of AMC paragraph 12). Repeat paragraph 12 text on implementation.

#### 4.1.2. Aeroplanes being removed from storage

Corrosion inspection task intervals are established based on elapsed calendar time. Elapsed calendar time includes time out of service. The operators CPCP should provide procedures for establishing a schedule for accomplishment of corrosion inspection tasks that have accrued during the storage period.

The schedule should result in accomplishment of all accrued corrosion inspection tasks before the aircraft is placed in service.

#### **4.1.3. Unanticipated scheduling adjustments**

The operators CPCP should include provisions for adjustment of the repeat interval for unanticipated schedule changes. Such provisions should not exceed 10% of the repeat interval. The CPCP should include provisions for notifying the competent authority when an unanticipated scheduling adjustment is made.

#### **4.1.4. Corrosion findings made during non-CPCP inspections**

Corrosion findings that exceed allowable limits may be found during any scheduled or unscheduled maintenance or inspection activities. These findings may be indicative of an ineffective CPCP. The operator should make provision in its CPCP to evaluate these findings and adjust its CPCP accordingly.

#### **4.1.5. Adding newly acquired aircraft**

Before adding any aircraft to the fleet, the operator should establish a schedule for accomplishing all corrosion inspection tasks in all task areas that are due. This schedule should be established as follows:

- (a) For aircraft that have previously operated under an approved maintenance programme, the initial corrosion inspection task for the new operator must be accomplished in accordance with the previous operator's schedule or in accordance with the new operator's schedule, whichever would result in the earliest accomplishment of the corrosion inspection task.
- (b) For aircraft that have not previously been operated under an approved maintenance programme, each initial corrosion task inspection must be accomplished either before the aircraft is added to the operator's fleet, or in accordance with schedule approved by the competent authority. After each corrosion inspection task has been performed once, the subsequent corrosion task inspections should be accomplished in accordance with the new operator's schedule.

#### **4.1.6. Modifications, configuration changes and operating environment**

The operator must ensure that their CPCP takes account of any modifications, configurations changes and the operating environment applicable to them, that were not addressed in the Baseline Programme Manual.

### **4.2. Baseline Programme not available.**

If there is no baseline programme available for the operator to use in developing its CPCP, the operator should develop its CPCP using the provisions listed in Paragraph 3 of this appendix for a baseline programme as well as the provisions listed in sub-paragraphs 4.1.1 through 4.1.6 of this paragraph.

[Amdt 20/2]

## Appendix 5 to AMC 20-20 Guidelines for the development of a SB review and mandatory modification programme

*ED Decision 2007/019/R*

### 1. GENERAL

This appendix provides interpretation, guideline and Agency accepted means of compliance for the review of Structural Service Bulletins including a procedure for selection, assessment and related recommended corrective action for ageing aircraft structures.

### 2. SB SELECTION PROCESS

The SB selection, review, assessment and recommendation process within the Structural Task group (STG) is summarised in Figure A5-1. For the first SB review within STG meeting, all inspection SB should be selected. Afterwards, the TCH should update periodically a list of SB which were already selected for a review with all decisions made, and add to this list all new and revised SB. Moreover, some specific modification SB not linked to an inspection SB may also be selected for review.

Operators information input should address the points as detailed in Figure A5-2. This information should be collected and analysed by the TCH for the STG meeting.

If for a given selected SB there is not sufficient in-service data available before the STG meeting that would enable a recommendation to be made, its review may be deferred until enough data are available. The TCH should then check periodically until these data become available.

The operators and the Agency should be advised by the TCH of the SB selection list and provided the opportunity to submit additional SB. For this purpose, the TCH should give the operators enough information in advance (e.g. 2 months), for them to be able to properly consider the proposed selection and to gather data.

When an SB is selected, it is recommended to select also, in the same package, inspection SB that interact with it and all related modification SB. The main criteria for selecting SBs are defined in the following sub-paragraphs.

#### 2.1 High probability that structural cracking exists

Related to the number and type of finding in service and from fatigue testing.

A “no finding” result should be associated to the number of performed inspections.

The type of finding should include an analysis of its criticality.

#### 2.2 Potential structural airworthiness concern

Structural airworthiness of the aircraft is dependent on repeat inspections to verify structural condition and therefore on inspection reliability.

A short repeat inspection interval (e.g. short time to grow from detectable crack to a critical length divided by a factor) will lead to increased work load for inspectors and possible increased risk of missing damage.

Special attention should be paid to any single inspection tasks involving multiple repeat actions needed to verify the structural condition that may increase the risk of missing damage (e.g. lap splice inspections).

#### 2.3 Damage is difficult to detect during regular maintenance

The areas to inspect are difficult to access;

NDI methods are unsuitable;

Human factors associated with the inspection technique are so adverse that crack detection may not be sufficiently dependable to assure safety.

2.4 There is adjacent structural damage or the potential for it

Particular attention should be paid to areas susceptible to Widespread Fatigue Damage (WFD) and also to potential interaction between corrosion and fatigue cracking e.g. between fastener damage (due to stress corrosion or other factors) and fatigue cracking.

It is recommended to consider the potential interaction of modifications or repairs usually implemented in the concerned areas to check whether the inspections are still reliable or not (operators input)

### **3. STG MEETING, SB REVIEW AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

It is recommended to review at the same time all the SBs that can interact, the so-called SB package in the selection process. The meeting should start with an STG agreement on the selected SB list and on those deferred. At the meeting the TCH should present its analysis of each SB utilising the collection of operator input data. The STG should then collectively review the ratings (Figure A5-2) against each criteria to come to a consensus recommendation. Such a STG recommendation for a selected SB shall consider the following options:

- (a) To mandate a structural modification at a given threshold
- (b) To mandate selected inspection SB
- (c) To revise modification or repair actions
- (d) To revise other SB in the same area concerned by damages
- (e) To review inspection method and related inspection intervals
- (f) To review ALI/MRB or other maintenance instructions
- (g) To defer the review to the next STG and request operators reports on findings for a specific SB or request an inspection sampling on the oldest aircraft

STG recommendations for mandatory action are the responsibility of the TCH to forward to the Agency for appropriate action. Other STG recommendations are information provided to the STG members. It is their own responsibility to carry them out within the appropriate framework.

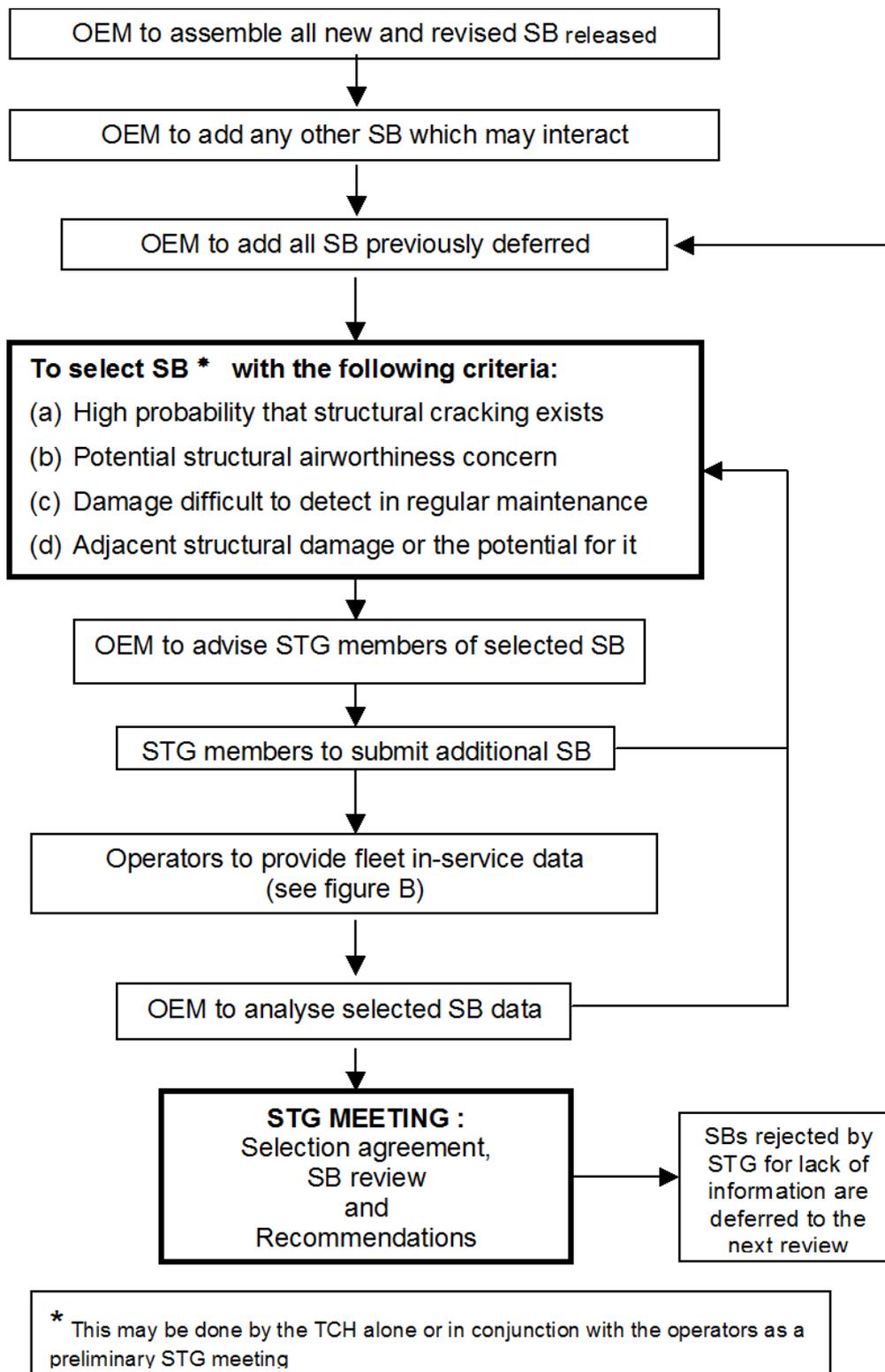


Figure A5-1: SB Selection Process and SB Review

**FIGURE A5-2: OPERATORS FLEET EXPERIENCE**

## IN-SERVICE DATA / SECTION 1

NAME OF THE OPERATOR _____
AIRCRAFT MODEL/SERIES _____
SERVICE BULLETIN (SB) NUMBER _____
TITLE _____
RELATED INSPECTION/MODIFICATION SB :
1/ _____
2/ _____
3/ _____
SB MANDATED? <input type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO
IF NOT, SB IMPLEMENTED IN MAINTENANCE PROGRAMME? <input type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO
NUMBER OF AIRCRAFT TO WHICH SB APPLIES (INCLUDING ALL A/C IN THE SB EFFECTIVITY) _____
NUMBER OF AIRCRAFT EXCEEDING SB INSPECTION THRESHOLD (IF APPLICABLE) _____
NUMBER OF AIRCRAFT INSPECTED PER SB (IF APPLICABLE) ? _____
SPECIFY TYPE OF INSPECTION USED _____
NUMBER OF AIRCRAFT WITH REPORTED FINDINGS _____

## TYPE OF FINDINGS

NUMBER OF FINDINGS DUE TO OTHER INSPECTIONS THAN THE ONE PRESCRIBED IN SB (IF APPLICABLE) _____
SPECIFY TYPE OF INSPECTION USED _____
NUMBER OF AIRCRAFT EXCEEDING SB TERMINATING MODIFICATION THRESHOLD (IF APPLICABLE) _____
NUMBER OF AIRCRAFT IN WHICH TERMINATING MODIFICATION HAS BEEN ACCOMPLISHED (IF APPLICABLE) _____
NEED THIS SB (OR RELATED SB) BE IMPROVED? <input type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO
COMMENTS: _____

IN-SERVICE DATA / SECTION 2

	(A)	(B)	(C)	(D)	(E)
CRITERIA	INSPECT-ABILITY ACCESS	FREQUENCY REPETITIVE INSPECTION	FREQUENCY OF DEFECTS	SEVERITY RATING	ADJACENT STRUCTURE DAMAGE
RATING					

(A) INSPECTABILITY/ACCESS RATING

OK ♦ Inspection carried out with little or no difficulty.

Acceptable ♦ Inspection carried out with some difficulty.

Difficulty ♦ Inspection carried out with significant difficulty.

Note: Rating should consider difficulty of access as well as inspection technique and size of inspection area.

(B) FREQUENCY OF REPETITIVE INSPECTIONS RATING

OK ♦ Greater than 6 years.

Acceptable ♦ Between 2 and 6 years.

Difficulty ♦ Less than 2 years.

(C) FREQUENCY OF DEFECTS NOTED RATING = % OF THOSE AEROPLANES BEYOND THRESHOLD ON WHICH DEFECTS HAVE BEEN FOUND

OK ♦ No defect noted.

Acceptable ♦ Defects noted but not of a significant amount (less than 10%).

Difficulty ♦ Substantial defects noted (greater than 10%).

(D) FINDING SEVERITY RATING

OK ♦ Airworthiness not affected.

Acceptable ♦ Damage not of immediate concern, but could progress or cause secondary damage.

Difficulty ♦ Airworthiness affected. Damage requires immediate repair.

(E) ADJACENT STRUCTURE DAMAGE RATING (MULTIPLE SITE DAMAGE, MULTIPLE ELEMENT DAMAGE, CORROSION, ETC.)

OK ♦ Low rate of adjacent structural damage.

Acceptable ♦ Medium rate of adjacent structural damage.

Difficulty ♦ High rate of adjacent structural damage/Multiple service actions in area.

[Amdt 20/2]

## AMC 20-21

### AMC 20-21 Programme to enhance aeroplane Electrical Wiring Interconnection System (EWIS) maintenance

ED Decision 2008/007/R

#### 1 PURPOSE

This AMC provides acceptable means of compliance for developing enhanced EWIS maintenance for operators, holders of type certificates (TC), holders of supplemental type certificates (STC) and maintenance organisations. The information in this AMC is derived from the maintenance, inspection, and alteration best practices identified through extensive research. This AMC provides an acceptable means of compliance with the appropriate certification, maintenance and operating rules. This AMC promotes a housekeeping philosophy of “protect, clean as you go” when performing maintenance, repair, or alterations on or around aircraft EWIS.

#### 2 OBJECTIVE

The objective of this AMC is to enhance the maintenance of aircraft EWIS through adoption by the aviation industry of the following:

- a. Enhanced Zonal Analysis Procedure (EZAP). This AMC presents an “enhanced zonal analysis procedure” and logic that will benefit all aircraft regardless of whether they currently have a structured Zonal Inspection Programme (ZIP), (see [Appendix A](#). Enhanced Zonal Analysis Logic Diagram and Steps and [Appendix B](#). EZAP Worksheets). Application of this procedure will ensure that appropriate attention is given to wiring installations. Using EZAP it will be possible to select stand-alone inspections (either general or detailed) and tasks to minimise the presence of combustible material. The procedure and logic in this AMC complement existing zonal analysis procedures and will also allow the identification of new wiring tasks for those aircraft that do not have a structured ZIP.
- b. Guidance for General Visual Inspection (GVI). This AMC provides clarification of the definition for a GVI as well as guidance on what is expected from such an inspection, whether performed as a stand-alone GVI or as part of a zonal inspection. It is assumed this new inspection standard will be the standard applied by operators, or their maintenance provider, when the new tasks are incorporated in to their maintenance programme.
- c. Protection and Caution. This AMC identifies protection and caution to be added to maintenance instructions, thereby enhancing procedures that will lead to minimisation of contamination and accidental damage while working on the aircraft.

The enhanced aircraft wiring maintenance information described in this AMC is intended to improve maintenance and inspection programmes for all aircraft systems. This information, when used appropriately, will improve the likelihood that wiring system degradation, including age-related problems, will be identified and corrected. Therefore, the goal of enhanced wiring maintenance information is to ensure that maintenance actions, such as inspection, repair, overhaul, replacement of parts, and preservation, do not cause a loss of wiring system function, do not cause an increase in the potential for smoke and fire in the aircraft, and do not inhibit the safe operation of the aircraft.

In order to fully realise the objectives of this AMC, operators, TC holders, STC holders and maintenance providers, will need to rethink their current approach to maintaining and modifying aircraft wiring and systems. This may require more than simply updating maintenance manuals and work cards and enhancing training. Maintenance personnel need to be aware that aircraft EWIS should be maintained with the same level of intensity as any other system in the aircraft. They also need to recognise that visual inspection of wiring has inherent limitations. Small defects such as breached or cracked insulations, especially in small gauge wire may not always be apparent. Therefore effective wiring maintenance combines visual inspection techniques with improved wiring maintenance practices and training.

Good wiring maintenance practices should contain a "protect, clean as you go" housekeeping philosophy. In other words, care should be taken to protect wire bundles and connectors during work, and to ensure that all shavings, debris and contamination are cleaned up after work is completed. This philosophy is a proactive approach to wiring system health. Wiring needs to be given special attention when maintenance is being performed on it, or around it. This is especially true when performing structural repairs, work under STCs or field approvals, or other modifications.

To fully achieve the objectives of this AMC it is imperative that all personnel performing maintenance on or around EWIS receive appropriate training (see [AMC 20-22](#): Aeroplane EWIS training programme).

### **3 APPLICABILITY**

- a. The guidance provided in this document is directed to operators, TC applicants and holders, STC applicants and maintenance organisations:
- b. The guidance provided in this AMC can be applied to all aeroplane maintenance or inspection programmes. The EZAP in [Appendix A](#) of this AMC is specifically directed towards enhancing the maintenance programmes for aircraft whose current programme does not include tasks derived from a process that specifically considers wiring in all zones as the potential source of ignition of a fire.
- c. This AMC, when followed in its entirety, outlines an acceptable means of compliance to the requirement for the development of enhanced scheduled maintenance tasks for the EWIS for the aircraft mentioned in 3a. above.
- d. Similarly, it also provides an acceptable means of compliance for CS 25.1739 and 25.1529 Appendix H25.5 for new designs.

### **4 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- Regulation (EC) No 216/2008<sup>1</sup>
- Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/EC (OJ L 79, 19.3.2008, p.1).

<sup>2</sup> Commission Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 of 24 September 2003 laying down implementing rules for the airworthiness and environmental certification of aircraft and related products, parts and appliances, as well as for the certification of design and production organisations (OJ L 243, 27.9.2003, p. 6). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 287/2008 (OJ L 87, 29.3.2008, p.3).

- Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003<sup>1</sup>
- EASA Certification Specification CS-25 Large Aeroplanes<sup>2</sup>
- EU-OPS Commercial Air Transportation (Aeroplanes)<sup>3</sup>

## 5 RELATED READING MATERIAL

- a. EASA AMC 20
  - [AMC 20-22](#) Aeroplane EWIS training
  - [AMC 20-23](#) Development of electrical standard wiring practices documentation
- b. FAA Advisory Circulars (AC).
  - AC 25-16 Electrical Fault and Fire Protection and Prevention
  - AC 25.981-1B Fuel Tank Ignition Source Prevention Guidelines
  - AC 43-12A Preventive Maintenance
  - AC 43.13-1B Acceptable Methods, Techniques and Practices for Repairs and Alterations to Aircraft
  - AC 43-204 Visual Inspection For Aircraft
  - AC 43-206 Avionics Cleaning and Corrosion Prevention/Control
  - AC 65-15A Airframe and Powerplant Mechanics Airframe Handbook, Chapter 11, Aircraft Electrical Systems
  - AC 120-YYY Training modules for wiring maintenance
- c. Reports
  - Transport Aircraft Intrusive Inspection Project, (An Analysis of the Wire Installations of Six Decommissioned Aircraft), Final Report, The Intrusive Inspection Working Group, December 29, 2000.  
[http://www.mitrecaasd.org/atsrac/intrusive\\_inspection.html](http://www.mitrecaasd.org/atsrac/intrusive_inspection.html)
  - FAA Aging Transport Non-Structural Systems Plan, July 1998.
  - National Transportation Safety Board, Safety Recommendation, September 19, 2000, A-00-105 through -108.  
[http://www.nts.gov/recs/letters/2000/A00\\_105\\_108.pdf](http://www.nts.gov/recs/letters/2000/A00_105_108.pdf)
  - Wire System Safety Interagency Working Group, National Science and Technology Council, Review of Federal Programmes for Wire System Safety 46 (2000).
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 1 and 2, Aging Systems, Final Report.

<sup>1</sup> Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 of 20 November 2003 on the continuing airworthiness of aircraft and aeronautical products, parts and appliances, and on the approval of organisations and personnel involved in these tasks (OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 376/2007 of (OJ L 94, 4.4.2007, p. 18).

<sup>2</sup> Executive Director Decision No 2003/2/RM of 14 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for large aeroplanes («CS-25»). Decision as last amended by Executive Director Decision No 2008/006/R of 29 August 2008 (CS-25 Amendment 5).

<sup>3</sup> Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91 of 16 December 1991 on the harmonisation of technical requirements and administrative procedures in the field of civil aviation (OJ L 373, 31.12.1991, p. 4). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 8/2008 of 11 December 2007 (OJ L 10, 12.1.2008, p. 1).

[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_1&2\\_Final%20August\\_2000.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final_reports/Task_1&2_Final%20August_2000.pdf)

- Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 3, Final Report.  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_3\\_Final.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final_reports/Task_3_Final.pdf)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 4, Final Report, Standard Wiring Practices.  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_4\\_Final\\_Report\\_Sept\\_2000.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final_reports/Task_4_Final_Report_Sept_2000.pdf)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 5, Final Report, Aircraft Wiring Systems Training Curriculum and Lesson Plans.  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_5\\_Final\\_March\\_2001%20.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atsrac/final_reports/Task_5_Final_March_2001%20.pdf)
  - ATA Specification 117 (Wiring Maintenance Practices/Guidelines).
- d. Other Documents
- Operator/Manufacturer Scheduled Maintenance Development, ATA Maintenance Steering Group (MSG-3). May be obtained from the Air Transport Association of America; Suite 1100, 1301 Pennsylvania Ave, NW, Washington, DC 20004-1707.

## 6 DEFINITIONS

**Arc tracking:** A phenomenon in which a conductive carbon path is formed across an insulating surface. This carbon path provides a short circuit path through which current can flow. Normally a result of electrical arcing. Also referred to as "Carbon Arc Tracking," "Wet Arc Tracking," or "Dry Arc Tracking."

**Combustible:** For the purposes of this AMC the term combustible refers to the ability of any solid, liquid or gaseous material to cause a fire to be sustained after removal of the ignition source. The term is used in place of inflammable/flammable. It should not be interpreted as identifying material that will burn when subjected to a continuous source of heat as occurs when a fire develops.

**Contamination:** For the purposes of this AMC, wiring contamination refers to either of the following:

- The presence of a foreign material that is likely to cause degradation of wiring;
- The presence of a foreign material that is capable of sustaining combustion after removal of ignition source.

**Detailed Inspection (DET):** An intensive examination of a specific item, installation or assembly to detect damage, failure or irregularity. Available lighting is normally supplemented with a direct source of good lighting at an intensity deemed appropriate. Inspection aids such as mirrors, magnifying lenses or other means may be necessary. Surface cleaning and elaborate access procedures may be required.

**Electrical Wiring Interconnection System (EWIS):** See CS 25.1701.

**Functional Failure:** Failure of an item to perform its intended function within specified limits.

**General Visual Inspection (GVI):** A visual examination of an interior or exterior area, installation or assembly to detect obvious damage, failure or irregularity. This level of inspection is made from within touching distance unless otherwise specified. A mirror may be necessary to enhance visual access to all exposed surfaces in the inspection area. This level of inspection is

made under normally available lighting conditions such as daylight, hangar lighting, flashlight or droplight and may require removal or opening of access panels or doors. Stands, ladders or platforms may be required to gain proximity to the area being checked.

Lightning/High Intensity Radiated Field (L/HIRF) protection: The protection of aeroplane electrical systems and structure from induced voltages or currents by means of shielded wires, raceways, bonding jumpers, connectors, composite fairings with conductive mesh, static dischargers, and the inherent conductivity of the structure; may include aircraft specific devices, e.g., RF Gaskets.

Maintenance: As defined in Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 Article 2(h) “maintenance means inspection, overhaul, repair, preservation, and the replacement of parts, but excludes preventive maintenance.” For the purposes of this advisory material, it also includes preventive maintenance.

Maintenance Significant Item (MSI): Items identified by the manufacturer whose failure could result in one or more of the following:

- could affect safety (on ground or in flight);
- is undetectable during operations;
- could have significant operational impact;
- could have significant economic impact.

Needling: The puncturing of a wire’s insulation to make contact with the core to test the continuity and presence of voltage in the wire segment.

Stand-alone GVI: A GVI which is not performed as part of a zonal inspection. Even in cases where the interval coincides with the zonal inspection, the stand-alone GVI shall remain an independent step within the work card.

Structural Significant Item (SSI): Any detail, element or assembly that contributes significantly to carrying flight, ground, pressure or control loads and whose failure could affect the structural integrity necessary for the safety of the aircraft.

Swarf: A term used to describe the metal particles, generated from drilling and machining operations. Such particles may accumulate on and between wires within a wire bundle.

Zonal Inspection: A collective term comprising selected GVI and visual checks that are applied to each zone, defined by access and area, to check system and powerplant installations and structure for security and general condition.

## 7 BACKGROUND

Over the years there have been a number of in-flight smoke and fire events where contamination sustained and caused the fire to spread. Regulators and Accident Investigators have conducted aircraft inspections and found wiring contaminated with items such as dust, dirt, metal shavings, lavatory waste water, coffee, soft drinks, and napkins. In some cases dust has been found completely covering wire bundles and the surrounding area.

Research has also demonstrated that wiring can be harmed by collateral damage when maintenance is being performed on other aircraft systems. For example a person performing an inspection of an electrical power centre or avionics compartment may inadvertently cause damage to wiring in an adjacent area.

In recent years regulator and industry groups have come to the realisation that current maintenance practices may not be adequate to address aging non-structural systems. While age

is not the sole cause of wire degradation, the probability that inadequate maintenance, contamination, improper repair or mechanical damage has caused degradation to a particular EWIS increases over time. Studies by industry and regulator working groups have found that although EWIS management is an important safety issue, there has been a tendency to be complacent about EWIS. These working groups have concluded that there is a need to better manage EWIS so that they continue to function safely.

## **8 WIRE DEGRADATION**

Normal maintenance actions, even using acceptable methods, techniques and practices, can over time be a contributing factor to wire degradation. Zones that are subject to a high level of maintenance activity display more deterioration of the wiring insulation than those areas not subject to frequent maintenance. Degradation of wiring is further accelerated when inappropriate maintenance practices are used. Examples include the practice of needling wires to test the continuity or voltage, and using a metal wire or rod as a guide to feed new wires into an existing bundle. These practices could cause a breach in the wiring insulation that can contribute to arcing.

Over time, insulation can crack or breach, thereby exposing the conductor. This breakdown, coupled with maintenance actions, can exacerbate EWIS malfunction. Wiring that is undisturbed will have less degradation than wiring that is disturbed during maintenance.

For additional information on the principle causes of wire degradation see [Appendix E](#).

## **9 INSPECTION OF EWIS**

Typical analytical methods used for the development of maintenance programmes have not provided a focus on wiring. As a result most operators have not adequately addressed deterioration of EWIS in their programmes. EASA has reviewed the current inspection philosophies with the objectives of identifying improvements that could lead to a more consistent application of the inspection requirements, whether they are zonal, stand-alone GVI, or DET inspections.

EASA believes that it would be beneficial to provide guidance on the type of deterioration that a person performing a GVI, DET, or zonal inspection would be expected to discover. Though it may be realistically assumed that all operators provide such guidance to their inspectors, it is evident that significant variations exist and, in certain areas of the world, a significant enhancement of the inspection could be obtained if internationally agreed guidance material could be produced. The guidance provided by this AMC assumes each operator will adopt recent improvements made to the definitions of GVI and DET inspections. This information should be incorporated in operators' training material and in the introductory section of maintenance planning documentation.

This section is divided into three parts. The first part addresses the levels of inspection applicable to EWIS, the second part provides guidance for performing zonal inspections, and the third part provides lists of installations and areas of concern.

### **a. Levels of inspection applicable to EWIS**

#### **(1) Detailed Inspection (DET)**

An intensive examination of a specific item, installation or assembly to detect damage, failure or irregularity. Available lighting is normally supplemented with a direct source of good lighting at an intensity deemed appropriate. Inspection aids such as mirrors, magnifying lenses or other means may be necessary. Surface cleaning and elaborate access procedures may be required.

A DET can be more than just a visual inspection since it may include tactile assessment in which a component or assembly is checked for tightness/security. This is of particular significance when identifying applicable and effective tasks to ensure the continued integrity of installations such as bonding jumpers, terminal connectors, etc.

Though the term Detailed Visual Inspection remains valid for DET using only eyesight, it should be recognised that this may represent only part of the inspection called for in the source documents used to establish an operator's Maintenance Programme. For this reason it is recommended that the acronym "DVI" not be used since it excludes tactile examination from this level of inspection.

(2) General Visual Inspection (GVI).

A visual examination of an interior or exterior area, installation or assembly to detect obvious damage, failure or irregularity. This level of inspection is made from within touching distance unless otherwise specified. A mirror may be necessary to enhance visual access to all exposed surfaces in the inspection area. This level of inspection is made under normally available lighting conditions such as daylight, hangar lighting, flashlight or droplight and may require removal or opening of access panels or doors. Stands, ladders or platforms may be required to gain proximity to the area being checked.

Recent changes to this definition have added proximity guidance (within touching distance) and the allowance to use a mirror to enhance visual access to exposed surfaces when performing a GVI. These changes should result in more consistent application of GVI and support the expectations of what types of EWIS discrepancies should be detected by a GVI.

Though flashlights and mirrors may be required to provide an adequate view of all exposed surfaces, there is no requirement for equipment removal or displacement unless this is specifically called for in the access instructions. Paint and/or sealant removal is not necessary and should be avoided unless the observed condition is suspect. Should unsatisfactory conditions be suspected, items may need to be removed or displaced in order to permit proper assessment.

It is expected that the area to be inspected is clean enough to minimise the possibility that accumulated dirt or grease might hide unsatisfactory conditions that would otherwise be obvious. Any cleaning that is considered necessary should be performed in accordance with accepted procedures in order to minimise the possibility of the cleaning process itself introducing anomalies.

In general, the person performing a GVI is expected to identify degradation due to wear, vibration, moisture, contamination, excessive heat, aging, etc., and make an assessment as to what actions are appropriate to address the noted discrepancy. In making this assessment, any potential effect on adjacent system installations should be considered, particularly if these include wiring. Observations of discrepancies, such as chafing, broken clamps, sagging, interference, contamination, etc., need to be addressed.

(3) Zonal Inspection

A collective term comprising selected GVI and visual checks that are applied to each zone, defined by access and area, to check system and powerplant installations and structure for security and general condition.

A zonal inspection is essentially a GVI of an area or zone to detect obvious unsatisfactory conditions and discrepancies. Unlike a stand-alone GVI, it is not directed to any specified component or assembly.

b. Guidance for zonal inspections

The following EWIS degradation items are typical of what should be detectable and subsequently addressed as a result of a zonal inspection (as well as a result of a stand-alone GVI). It is also recommended that these items be included in maintenance and training documentation. This list is not intended to be exhaustive and may be expanded as considered appropriate.

(1) Wire/Wire Harnesses

- Wire bundle/wire bundle or wire bundle/structure contact/chafing
- Wire bundle sagging or improperly secured
- Wires damaged (obvious damage due to mechanical impact, overheating, localised chafing, etc.)
- Lacing tape and/or ties missing/incorrectly installed
- Wiring protection sheath/conduit deformity or incorrectly installed
- End of sheath rubbing on end attachment device
- Grommet missing or damaged
- Dust and lint accumulation
- Surface contamination by metal shavings/swarf
- Contamination by liquids
- Deterioration of previous repairs (e.g., splices)
- Deterioration of production splices
- Inappropriate repairs (e.g., incorrect splice)
- Inappropriate attachments to or separation from fluid lines

(2) Connectors

- External corrosion on receptacles
- Backshell tail broken
- Rubber pad or packing on backshell missing
- No backshell wire securing device
- Foolproofing chain broken
- Missing or broken safety wire
- Discoloration/evidence of overheating on terminal lugs/blocks
- Torque stripe misalignment

(3) Switches

- Rear protection cap damaged

- 
- (4) Ground points
    - Corrosion
  - (5) Bonding braid/bonding jumper
    - Braid broken or disconnected
    - Multiple strands corroded
    - Multiple strands broken
  - (6) Wiring clamps or brackets
    - Corroded
    - Broken/missing
    - Bent or twisted
    - Faulty attachment (bad attachment or fastener missing)
    - Unstuck/detached
    - Protection/cushion damaged
  - (7) Supports (rails or tubes/conduit)
    - Broken
    - Deformed
    - Fastener missing
    - Missing edge protection on rims of feed through holes
    - Racetrack cushion damaged
    - Obstructed drainage holes (in conduits)
  - (8) Circuit breakers, contactors or relays
    - Signs of overheating
    - Signs of arcing
- c. Wiring installations and areas of concern

Research has shown that the following installations and areas need to be addressed in existing maintenance material.

(1) Wiring installations

Clamping points – Wire chafing is aggravated by damaged clamps, clamp cushion migration, or improper clamp installations. Aircraft manufacturers specify clamp type and part number for EWIS throughout the aircraft. When replacing clamps use those specified by the aircraft manufacturer. Tie wraps provide a rapid method of clamping especially during line maintenance operations. Improperly installed tie wraps can have a detrimental effect on wire insulation. When new wiring is installed as part of a STC or any other modification the drawings will provide wiring routing, clamp type and size, and proper location. Examples of significant wiring modifications are the installation of new avionics systems, new galley installations and new instrumentation. Wire routing, type of clamp and clamping location should conform to the approved drawings. Adding new wire to existing wire

bundles may overload the clamps causing wire bundle to sag and wires to chafe. Raceway clamp foam cushions may deteriorate with age, fall apart, and consequently would not provide proper clamping.

Connectors – Worn environmental seals, loose connectors, missing seal plugs, missing dummy contacts, or lack of strain relief on connector grommets can compromise connector integrity and allow contamination to enter the connector, leading to corrosion or grommet degradation. Connector pin corrosion can cause overheating, arcing and pin-to-pin shorting. Drip loops should be maintained when connectors are below the level of the harness and tight bends at connectors should be avoided or corrected.

Terminations – Terminations, such as terminal lugs and terminal blocks, are susceptible to mechanical damage, corrosion, heat damage and contamination from chemicals, dust and dirt. High current-carrying feeder cable terminal lugs can over time lose their original torque value due to vibration. One sign of this is heat discoloration at the terminal end. Proper build-up and nut torque is especially critical on high current carrying feeder cable lugs. Corrosion on terminal lugs and blocks can cause high resistance and overheating. Dust, dirt and other debris are combustible and therefore could sustain a fire if ignited from an overheated or arcing terminal lug. Terminal blocks and terminal strips located in equipment power centres (EPC), avionics compartments and throughout the aircraft need to be kept clean and free of any combustibles.

Backshells – Wires may break at backshells, due to excessive flexing, lack of strain relief, or improper build-up. Loss of backshell bonding may also occur due to these and other factors.

Sleeving and Conduits – Damage to sleeving and conduits, if not corrected, may lead to wire damage. Therefore, damage such as cuts, dents and creases on conduits may require further investigation for condition of wiring within.

Grounding Points – Grounding points should be checked for security (i.e., finger tightness), condition of the termination, cleanliness, and corrosion. Any grounding points that are corroded or have lost their protective coating should be repaired.

Splices – Both sealed and non-sealed splices are susceptible to vibration, mechanical damage, corrosion, heat damage, chemical contamination, and environmental deterioration. Power feeder cables normally carry high current levels and are very susceptible to installation error and splice degradation. All splices should conform to the TC or STC holder's published recommendations. In the absence of published recommendations, environmental splices are recommended to be used.

(2) Areas of concern

Wire Raceways and Bundles – Adding wires to existing wire raceways may cause undue wear and chafing of the wire installation and inability to maintain the wire in the raceway. Adding wire to existing bundles may cause wire to sag against the structure, which can cause chafing.

Wings – The wing leading and trailing edges are areas that experience difficult environments for wiring installations. The wing leading and trailing edge wiring is exposed on some aircraft models whenever the flaps or slats are extended. Other potential damage sources include slat torque shafts and bleed air ducts.

Engine, Pylon, and Nacelle Area – These areas experience high vibration, heat, frequent maintenance, and are susceptible to chemical contamination.

Accessory compartment and equipment bays – These areas typically contain items such as electrical components, pneumatic components and ducting, hydraulic components and plumbing, and may be susceptible to vibration, heat, and liquid contamination.

Auxiliary Power Unit (APU) – Like the engine/nacelle area, the APU is susceptible to high vibration, heat, frequent maintenance, and chemical contamination.

Landing Gear and Wheel Wells – This area is exposed to severe external environmental conditions in addition to vibration and chemical contamination.

Electrical Panels and Line Replaceable Units (LRU) – Panel wiring is particularly prone to broken wires and damaged insulation when these high density areas are disturbed during troubleshooting activities, major modifications, and refurbishments. Wire damage may be minimised by tying wiring to wooden dowels to reduce wire disturbance during modification. There may be some configurations where connector support brackets would be more desirable and cause less disturbance of the wiring than removal of individual connectors from the supports.

Batteries – Wires in the vicinity of all aircraft batteries are susceptible to corrosion and discoloration. These wires should be inspected for corrosion and discoloration. Discoloured wires should be inspected for serviceability.

Power Feeders – High current wiring and associated connections have the potential to generate intense heat. Power feeder cables, terminals, and splices may be subject to degradation or loosening due to vibration. If any signs of overheating are seen, splices or termination should be replaced. Depending on design, service experience may highlight a need to periodically check for proper torque of power feeder cable terminal ends, especially in high vibration areas. This applies to galley and engine/APU generator power feeders.

Under Galleys, Lavatories, and Cockpit – Areas under the galleys, lavatories, and cockpit, are particularly susceptible to contamination from coffee, food, water, soft drinks, lavatory fluids, dust, lint, etc. This contamination can be minimised by adherence to proper floor panel sealing procedures in these areas.

Fluid Drain plumbing – Leaks from fluid drain plumbing may lead to liquid contamination of wiring. In addition to routine visual inspections, service experience may highlight a need for periodic leak checks or cleaning.

Fuselage Drain provisions – Some installations include features designed to catch leakage that is plumbed to an appropriate exit. Blockage of the drain path can result in liquid contamination of wiring. In addition to routine visual inspections, service experience may highlight that these installations and associated plumbing should be periodically checked to ensure the drain path is free of obstructions.

Cargo Bay/Underfloor – Damage to wiring in the cargo bay underfloor can occur due to maintenance activities in the area.

Wiring subject to movement – Wiring that is subject to movement or bending during normal operation or maintenance access should be inspected at locations such as doors, actuators, landing gear mechanisms, and electrical access panels.

Access Panels – Wiring near access panels may receive accidental damage as a result of repetitive maintenance access and thus may warrant special attention.

Under Doors – Areas under cargo, passenger and service entry doors are susceptible to fluid ingress from rain, snow and liquid spills. Fluid drain provisions and floor panel sealing should be periodically inspected and repaired as necessary.

Under Cockpit Sliding Windows – Areas under cockpit sliding windows are susceptible to water ingress from rain and snow. Fluid drain provisions should be periodically inspected and repaired as necessary.

Areas where wiring is difficult to access – Areas where wiring is difficult to access (e.g., flight deck instrument panels, cockpit pedestal area) may accumulate excessive dust and other contaminants as a result of infrequent cleaning. In these areas it may be necessary to remove components and disassemble other systems to facilitate access to the area.

## **10 ENHANCED ZONAL ANALYSIS PROCEDURE (EZAP)**

The EZAP identified in [Appendix A](#) of this AMC is designed to permit appropriate attention to be given to electrical wiring installations. This is achieved by providing a means to identify applicable and effective tasks to minimise accumulation of combustible materials and address wiring installation discrepancies that may not otherwise be reliably detected by inspections contained in existing maintenance programmes.

For aircraft models operating on maintenance programmes that already include a dedicated ZIP, the logic described in this AMC will result in enhancements to those programmes, and the zonal inspection requirements may not differ greatly from the existing ZIP.

In analysis conducted under the EZAP, items such as plumbing, ducting, systems installations, etc., should be evaluated for possible contribution to wiring failures. In cases where a GVI is required to assess degradation of these items, a zonal GVI within a ZIP may be considered appropriate.

For those operators that do not have a dedicated ZIP, application of the logic is likely to result in identification of a large number of wiring-related tasks that will need to be consolidated within the existing Systems/Powerplant Programme.

In either case, any new tasks identified by the logic may be compared with existing tasks and credit given for equivalent tasks already contained in the maintenance programme. For operators with ZIP that already contain zonal GVI, the number of new tasks that must be added to the programme may be significantly fewer than for an operator without a dedicated ZIP. Therefore, operators without a ZIP may find it beneficial to develop a ZIP in accordance with an industry-accepted methodology in conjunction with application of the EZAP.

The logic and procedures identified in this AMC apply to TC, STC and other modifications. It is expected that the TC and STC holders would use the logic and procedures to identify any need for additional instructions for continued airworthiness. However, the operator may be required to ensure the logic is used to identify such instructions for modifications or STC where they are no longer supported by the design organisation or STC holder.

## **11 MAINTENANCE PRACTICES: PROTECTION AND CAUTION RECOMMENDATIONS**

EASA has identified some specific maintenance and servicing tasks for which more robust practices are recommended to be adopted by operators, and/or maintenance providers. These recommendations apply to all tasks, including those performed on an unscheduled basis without an accompanying routine job instruction card. Performance of these maintenance

practices will help prevent contamination of EWIS that result from contact with harmful solids (such as metal shavings) or fluids during maintenance, modifications, and repairs of aeroplane structures, and components. In addition, the training of maintenance and servicing personnel should address the potential consequences of their actions on the wiring in the work vicinity.

a. Item 1: Installation, repair, or modification to wiring.

Wiring and its associated components (protective coverings, connectors, clamping provisions, conduits, etc.) often comprise the most delicate and maintenance-sensitive portions of an installation or system. Extreme care should be exercised and proper procedures used during installation, repair, or modification of wiring to ensure safe and reliable performance of the function supplied by the wiring.

Proper wire selection, routing/separation, clamping configurations, use of splices, repair or replacement of protective coverings, pinning/de-pinning of connections, etc., should be performed in accordance with the applicable sections of the Aircraft Maintenance Manual (AMM), Wiring Practices Manual (WPM), or other documents authorised for maintenance use. In addition, special care should be taken to minimise disturbance of existing adjacent wiring during all maintenance activities. When wiring is displaced during a maintenance activity, special attention should be given to returning it to its normal configuration in accordance with the applicable maintenance instructions.

b. Item 2: Structural repairs, STC, modifications.

Structural repair, STC or modification activity inherently introduces tooling and residual debris that is harmful to aircraft wiring. Structural repairs or modifications often require displacement (or removal) of wiring to provide access to the work area. Even minor displacement of wiring, especially while clamped, can damage wire insulation, which can result in degraded performance, arcing, or circuit failure.

Extreme care should be exercised to protect wiring from mechanical damage by tools or other equipment used during structural repairs, STC or modifications. Drilling blindly into the aircraft structure should be avoided. Damage to wire installation could cause wire arcing, fire and smoke. Wiring located adjacent to drilling or riveting operations should be carefully displaced or covered to reduce the possibility of mechanical damage.

Debris such as drill shavings, liberated fastener pieces, broken drill bits, etc., should not be allowed to contaminate or penetrate wiring or electrical components. This can cause severe damage to insulation and potential arcing by providing a conductive path to ground or between two or more wires of different loads. Once contaminated, removal of this type of debris from wire bundles is extremely difficult. Therefore, precautions should be taken to prevent contamination of any kind from entering the wire bundle.

Before initiating structural repair, STC or modification activity, the work area should be carefully surveyed to identify all wiring and electrical components that may be subject to contamination. All wiring and electrical components in the debris field should be covered or removed to prevent contamination or damage. Consideration should be given to using drills equipped with vacuum aspiration to further minimise risk of metallic debris contaminating wire bundles. Clean electrical components and wiring after completion of work per applicable maintenance instructions.

c. Item 3: Aircraft De-Icing or Anti-Icing.

In order to prevent damage to exposed electrical components and wiring in areas such as wing leading and trailing edges, wheelwells, and landing gear, care should be exercised

when spraying de/anti-icing fluids. Direct pressure spray onto electrical components and wiring can lead to contamination or degradation and thus should be avoided.

d. Item 4: Inclement weather.

EWIS in areas below doorways, floors, access panels, and servicing bays are prone to corrosion or contamination due to their exposure to the elements. Snow, slush, or excessive moisture should be removed from these areas before closing doors or panels. Remove deposits of snow/slush from any items (e.g. cargo containers) before loading in the aircraft. During inclement weather, keep doors/panels closed as much as possible to prevent ingress of snow, slush, or excessive moisture that could increase potential for EWIS degradation.

e. Item 5: Component removal/installation (relating to attached wiring).

Excessive handling and movement during removal and installation of components may be harmful to aircraft wiring. Use appropriate connector pliers (e.g. soft jawed) to loosen coupling rings that are too tight to be loosened by hand. Alternately, pull on the plug body and unscrew the coupling ring until the connector is separated. Do not use excessive force, and do not pull on attached wires. When reconnecting, special care should be taken to ensure the connector body is fully seated, the jam nut is fully secured, and no tension is on the wires.

When equipment is disconnected, use protective caps on all connectors (plug or receptacle) to prevent contamination or damage of the contacts. Sleeves or plastic bags may be used if protective caps are not available. Use of sleeves or plastic bags should be temporary because of the risk of condensation. It is recommended to use a humidity absorber with sleeves or plastic bags.

f. Item 6: Pressure Washing.

In order to prevent damage to exposed electrical components and wiring in areas such as wing leading and trailing edges, wheelwells, and landing gear, care should be exercised when spraying water or cleaning fluids. Direct high-pressure spraying onto electrical components and wiring can lead to contamination or degradation and should be avoided. When practical, wiring and connectors should be protected before pressure washing. Water rinse should be used to remove cleaning solution residue after washing. Breakdown of wire insulation may occur with long term exposure of wiring to cleaning solutions. Although these recommendations are good practice and technique, the aeroplane maintenance manual or STC holder's instructions should be consulted for additional detailed instructions regarding pressure washing.

g. Item 7: Cleaning of EWIS (in situ).

Extreme care should be exercised and proper procedures used during cleaning to ensure safe and reliable performance of the function supplied by the wiring.

Care should be taken to avoid displacement or disturbance of wiring during cleaning of non-aggressive contamination. However, in the event of contamination by aggressive contaminants (e.g. livestock waste, salt water, battery electrolyte, etc.) such displacement may be necessary. In these cases wiring should be released from its installation so as to avoid undue stress being induced in wiring or connectors. Similarly, if liquid contamination enters the bundle, then ties should be removed before separating the wires. Although these recommendations for cleaning of EWIS are considered good practice and technique, the aeroplane maintenance manual or STC holder's instructions should be consulted for additional detailed instructions.

Clean only the area and items that have contamination. Before cleaning, make sure that the cleaning materials and methods will not cause more contamination. If a cloth is used, make sure that it is clean, dry, and lint-free. A connector should be completely dry before mating. Any fluids remaining on a connector can have a deteriorating effect on the connector or the system or both.

- h. Item 8: Servicing, modifying, or repairing waste/water systems.

EWIS in areas adjacent to waste/water systems are prone to contamination from those systems. Care should be exercised to prevent any fluids from reaching electrical components and wiring while servicing, modifying, or repairing waste/water systems. Cover exposed electrical components and wiring during waste/water system modification or repair. Operator practice may call for a weak acid solution to be periodically flushed through lavatory systems to enhance reliability and efficiency of operation. In view of the effect of acid contamination on systems and structure, the system should be confirmed to be free of leaks before using such solutions.

- i. Item 9: Servicing, modifying, or repairing oil systems.

Electrical wiring interconnections in areas adjacent to oil systems are prone to contamination from those systems. To minimise the attraction and adhesion of foreign material, care should be exercised to avoid any fluids from reaching electrical components and wiring while servicing, modifying, or repairing oil systems. Oil and debris in combination with damaged wiring can present a fire hazard.

- j. Item 10: Servicing, modifying, or repairing hydraulic systems.

EWIS in areas adjacent to hydraulic systems are prone to contamination from those systems. To minimise the attraction and adhesion of foreign material, care should be exercised to avoid any fluids from reaching electrical components and wiring while servicing, modifying, or repairing hydraulic systems.

- k. Item 11: Gaining access (entering zones).

When entering or working on the aircraft, care should be exercised to prevent damage to adjacent or hidden electrical components and wiring, including wiring that may be hidden from view (e.g., covered by insulation blankets). Use protective boards or platforms for adequate support and protection. Avoid using wire bundles as handholds, steps and supports. Work lights should not be hung or supported by wiring. If wiring must be displaced (or removed) for work area access, it should be adequately released from its clamping (or other restraining provisions) to allow movement without damage and returned after work is completed.

- l. Item 12: Application of Corrosion Preventions Compounds (CPC).

When applying CPC in aeroplane zones containing wire and associated components (i.e. clamps, connectors and ties), care should be taken to prevent CPC from coming in contact with the wire and components. Dust and lint is more likely to collect on wire that has CPC on it. Application of CPC should be done in accordance with the aircraft manufacturer's recommendations.

## 12 CHANGES

The programme to enhance EWIS maintenance also applies to EWIS installed, modified, or affected by changes or STC. Changes that could affect EWIS include, but are not limited to, those that install new equipment in close proximity to wiring, introduce a heat source in the zone, or introduce potential sources of combustible material or harmful contamination into the zone.

---

The owner/operator is responsible for determining if the EWIS has been changed (or affected by a change) and ensuring that their maintenance programme is enhanced as appropriate.

[Amdt 20/4]

## Appendix A to AMC 20-21 Enhanced Zonal Analysis Logic Diagram and Steps

ED Decision 2008/007/R

Figure 1. Enhanced Zonal Analysis Procedure

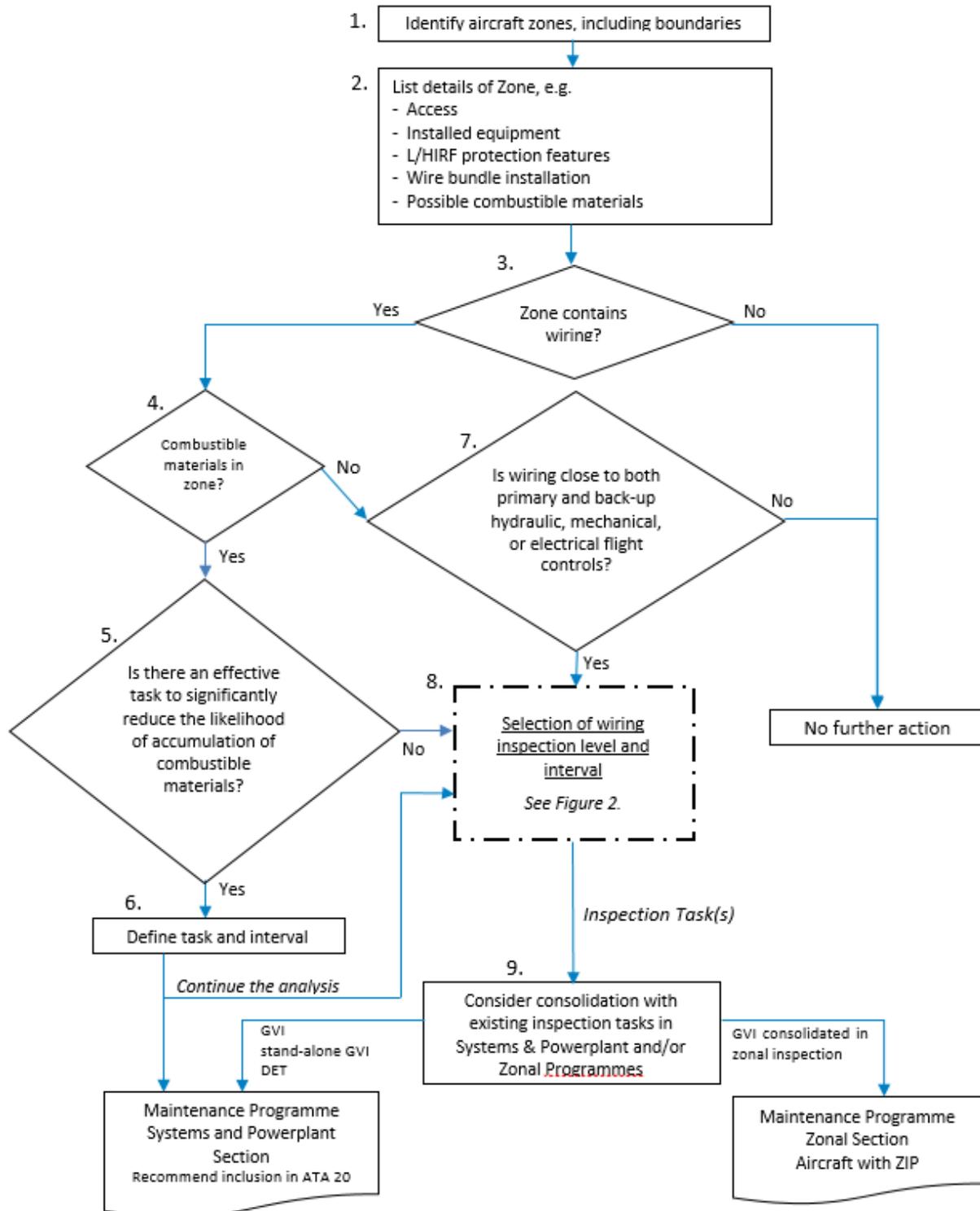
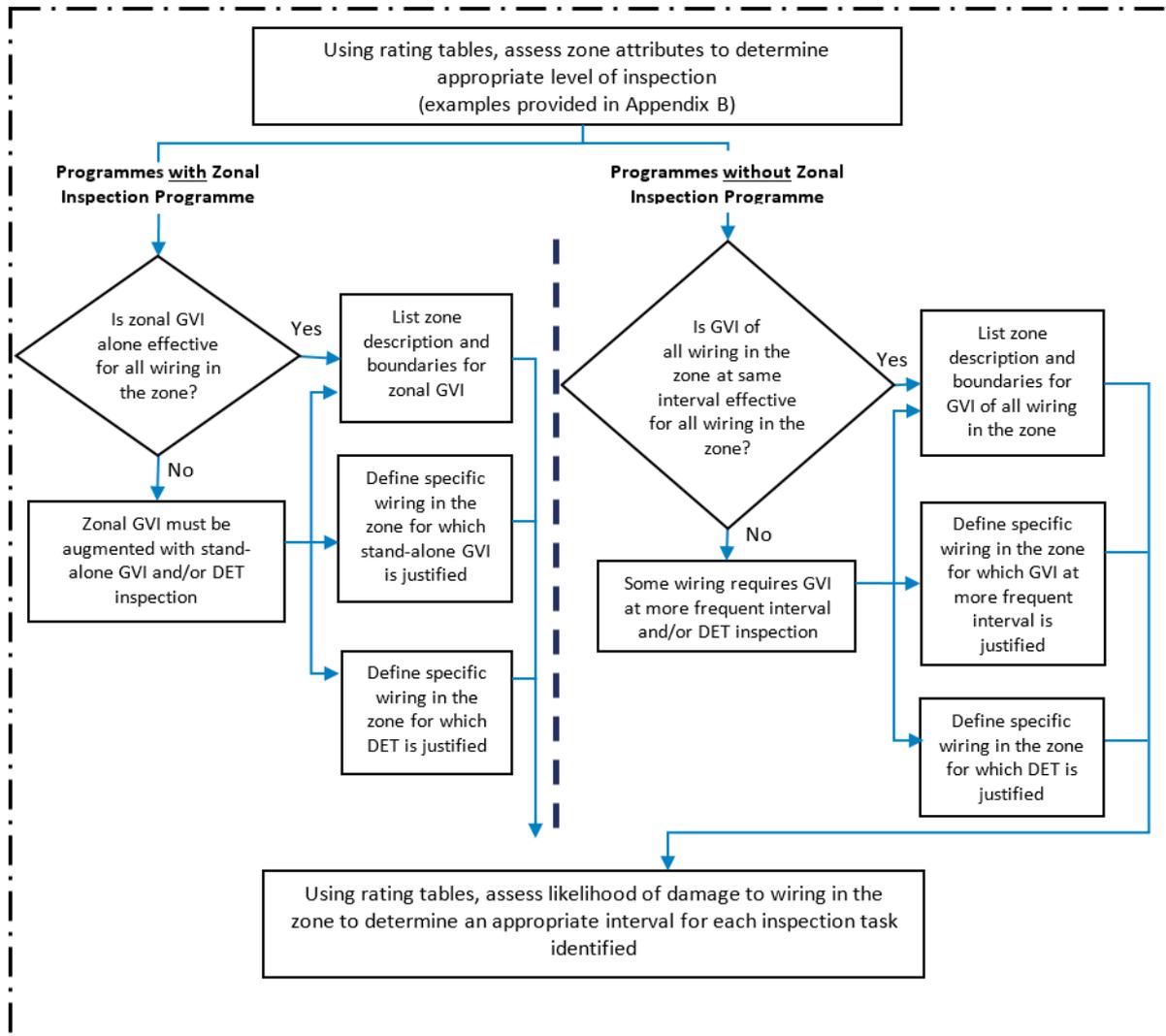


Figure 2. Step 8 - Wiring Inspection Level and Interval Selection



### Explanation for Steps in Enhanced Zonal Analyses Procedure Logic Diagram

The following paragraphs provide further explanation of each step in the Enhanced Zonal Analyses Procedure logic, (Figures 1 and 2). It is recommended that, where possible, the analysts utilise the availability of actual aircraft to ensure they fully understand the zones being analysed. This will aid in determination of density, size, environmental issues, and accidental damage issues.

#### Step 1 “Identify aircraft zones, including boundaries”

The system consists of Major Zones, Major Sub Zones and Zones.

The zones, wherever possible, shall be defined by actual physical boundaries such as wing spars, major bulkheads, cabin floor, control surface boundaries, skin, etc. and include access provisions for each zone.

If the type design holder or operator has not yet established aircraft zones, it is recommended that it does so. Whenever possible, zones should be defined using a consistent method such as ATA iSpec 2200 (formerly ATA Spec 100), varied only to accommodate particular design constructional differences.

Step 2 “List of details of zone”

An evaluation will be carried out to identify system installations, significant components, L/HIRF protection features, typical power levels in any installed wiring bundles, combustible materials (present or possible accumulation), etc.

With respect to power levels the analyst should be aware whether the bundle consists primarily of main generator feeder cables, low voltage instrumentation wiring or standard bus wiring. This information will later be used in determining the potential effects of deterioration.

The reference to combustible materials highlights the need to assess whether the zone might contain material/vapour that could cause a fire to be sustained in the event of an ignition source arising in adjacent wiring. Examples include the possible presence of fuel vapours, dust/lint accumulation and contaminated insulation blankets. See also under Step 4 for further information.

For aircraft types whose design directives may not have excluded the possibility of inadequate segregation between systems, the analyst should identify locations where both primary and back-up flight controls are routed within 2 inches/50 mm of a wiring harness. This information is required to answer the question in Step 7.

Step 3 “Zone contains wiring?”

This question serves as a means to eliminate from the EZAP those zones that do not contain any wiring.

Step 4 “Combustible materials in zone?”

This question requires an evaluation of whether the zone might contain combustible material that could cause a fire to be sustained in the event of an ignition source arising in adjacent wiring. Examples include the possible presence of fuel vapours, dust/lint accumulation, and contaminated insulation blankets.

With respect to commonly used liquids (e.g., oils, hydraulic fluids, corrosion prevention compounds) the analyst should refer to the product specification in order to assess the potential for combustibility. The product may be readily combustible only in vapour/mist form and thus an assessment is required to determine if conditions might exist in the zone for the product to be in this state.

Although liquid contamination of wiring by most synthetic oil and hydraulic fluids (e.g. skydrol) may not be considered combustible, it is a cause for concern if it occurs in a zone where it causes significant adherence of dust and lint.

The analyst should assess what sources of combustible products may contaminate the zone following any single failure considered likely from in-service experience. Unshrouded pipes having connections within the zone should be considered as potential contamination sources. Inherent ventilation in the zone should be taken into account when determining the potential for subsequent combustion. This influences the response to the question of how near to the harness the source should be for there to be a concern.

Avionics and instruments located in the flight compartment and equipment bays tend to attract dust, etc. In view of the heat generated by these components and the relatively tightly packed installations, the analyst should consider these zones as having potential for combustible material. Thus, the enhanced logic should always be used for these zones.

Note: Although moisture (whether clean water or otherwise) is not combustible, its presence on wiring is a cause for concern because it may increase the probability of arcing from small breaches in the insulation, which could cause a localised fire in the wire bundle. The risk of a sustained fire caused by moisture induced arcing is mitigated in Step 5 by identification of a task to reduce the likelihood of accumulation of combustible material on or adjacent to the wiring.

Step 5 “Is there an effective task to significantly reduce the likelihood of accumulation of combustible materials?”

Most operator maintenance programmes have not included tasks directed towards removal or prevention of significant accumulations of combustible materials on or adjacent to wiring.

This question requires an evaluation of whether the accumulation on or adjacent to wiring can be significantly reduced. Task effectiveness criteria should include consideration of the potential for damaging the wiring.

Though restoration tasks (e.g., cleaning) are the most likely applicable tasks, the possibility to identify other tasks is not eliminated. A detailed inspection of a hydraulic pipe might be assessed as appropriate if high-pressure mist from pinhole corrosion could impinge a wire bundle and the inherent zone ventilation is low.

Step 6 “Define task and interval”

This step will define an applicable task and an effective interval. It should be included as a dedicated task in the Systems and Powerplant section. Within Maintenance Review Board (MRB) Reports, this may be introduced under ATA 20 with no Failure Effect Category quoted.

It is not the intent that restoration tasks should be so aggressive as to damage the wiring, but should be applied to a level that significantly reduces the likelihood of combustion.

Step 7 “Is wiring close to primary and back-up hydraulic, mechanical, or electrical flight controls?”

Where wiring is close (i.e. within 5 cm (2 inches)) to both primary and back-up hydraulic, mechanical, or electrical flight controls, this question is asked to ensure that Step 8 logic is applied even in the absence of combustible materials in the zone.

For zones where combustible materials are present (as determined in Step 4), proximity is addressed in the inspection level definition portion of Step 8 and this question need not be asked.

It addresses the concern that segregation between primary and back-up flight controls may not have been consistently achieved. Even in the absence of combustible material, a localised wire arcing could impact continued safe flight and landing if hydraulic pipes, mechanical cables, or wiring for fly-by-wire controls are routed in close proximity (i.e. within 5 cm (2 inches)) to a wiring harness. In consideration of the redundancy in flight control systems, the question needs to be answered ‘Yes’ only if both the primary and back-up system might be affected by wire arcing. Note that in zones where a fire might be sustained by combustible material the enhanced logic will automatically be followed.

On all aircraft type designs, irrespective of TC date, modifications may not have taken into account the TC holder’s design and installation criteria. It is thus recommended that STC holders assess their design changes with this question included in the logic unless they can demonstrate that they followed equivalent installation criteria. Similarly, air

carriers and air operators will have to assess modifications that have been accomplished on their aircraft.

**Step 8** “Selection of Wiring Inspection Level and Interval”

a. Inspection Level.

At this point in the analysis, it is already confirmed that wiring is installed in a zone where the presence of combustible materials is possible and/or the wiring is in close proximity to primary and back-up hydraulic or mechanical flight controls. Therefore, some level of inspection of the wiring in the zone is required, and this step details how the proper level of inspection and interval can be selected.

One method of selecting the proper inspection level and interval is through the use of ratings tables which rate attributes of the zone and how the wiring is affected by, or can affect those attributes. The precise format of this will be determined by the analyst, but example rating tables appear in [Appendix B](#) and may be referred to for clarity.

The inspection level characteristics that may be included in the rating system are:

- Zone size (volume);
- Density of installed equipment within the zone;
- Potential effects of fire on adjacent wiring and systems.

Zone size will be assessed relative to the size of the aircraft, typically identified as small, medium or large. The smaller the zone and the less congested it is, the more likely it is that wiring degradation will be identified by GVI.

Density of installed equipment, including wiring, within the zone will be assessed relative to the size of the zone. The density of the zone is typically identified as low, medium or high.

Potential effects of fire on adjacent wiring and systems requires the analyst to assess the potential effect of a localised fire on adjacent wiring and systems by considering the potential for loss of multiple functions to the extent that continued safe operation may not be possible.

Consideration of potential effect must also include whether wiring is in close proximity (i.e. within 5 cm (2 inches)) to both primary and back-up flight controls. A GVI alone may not be adequate if a fire caused by failure of the wiring poses a risk to aircraft controllability.

At minimum, all wiring in the zone will require a GVI at a common interval. For operators with a ZIP, this may be defined as a zonal GVI. For operators without ZIP, it shall be defined as a GVI of all wiring in the zone.

The question is asked, "Is a GVI (or zonal GVI) of all wiring in the zone at the same interval effective for all wiring in the zone?" This is to consider if there are specific items/areas in the zone that are more vulnerable to damage or contamination and thus may warrant a closer or more frequent inspection.

This determination could result in the selection of a more frequent GVI, a stand-alone GVI (for operators with a ZIP), or even a DET inspection. The intention is to select a DET of wiring only when justified by consideration of all three characteristics of the zone (size, density, and potential effect of fire). The analyst

should be cautious to avoid unnecessary selection of DET where GVI is adequate. Over-use of DET dilutes the effectiveness of the inspection.

Note: The level of inspection required may be influenced by tasks identified in Steps 5 and 6. For example, if a cleaning task was selected in Step 5 and 6 that will minimise the accumulation of combustible materials in the zone, this may justify selection of a GVI in lieu of a DET for the wiring in the zone.

b. Inspection Interval.

The selection of an effective interval can also be accomplished using a rating system. The characteristics for wiring to be rated should include the following:

- Possibility of Accidental Damage;
- Environmental factors.

The rating tables should be designed to define increasing inspection frequency with increasing risk of accidental damage and increasing severity of the local environment within the zone. Examples are provided in [Appendix E](#).

The selection of inspection tasks possible in this step is specific to whether the maintenance programme includes a dedicated ZIP or not.

For ZIP programmes, the possible inspection tasks are:

- Zonal GVI;
- Stand-alone GVI;
- DET.

For non-ZIP programmes, the possible inspection tasks are:

- GVI;
- DET.

Note: At this point the analyst will have determined the required inspection level and interval for wiring in the zone. Task consolidation in Step 9 allows consideration as to whether an inspection selected as a result of this analysis can be considered accomplished as part of the existing maintenance programme.

Step 9 “Task Consolidation”

This step in the procedure examines the potential for consolidation between the tasks derived from the EZAP and inspections that already exist in the Maintenance Programme. Consolidation requires that the inspections in the existing maintenance programme are performed in accordance with the inspection definitions provided in this AMC.

For programmes that include a ZIP:

Some GVI identified by application of the EZAP may be adequately covered by existing zonal GVI in the zone and no change or addition to the existing zonal GVI is required. This should reduce the number of new GVI that must be introduced into a programme that already includes a ZIP.

The consolidation of GVI tasks has to take into account the access requirements and the interval of each task. The Working Group may conclude that a stand-alone GVI of the wiring may be justified if the zonal GVI of the other systems within the same zone does not need to have such a frequent inspection.

Stand-alone GVI and DET identified by application of EZAP cannot be consolidated into the ZIP and must be introduced and retained as dedicated tasks in the scheduled maintenance programme under ATA 20. These tasks, along with tasks identified to reduce the accumulation of combustible materials, shall be uniquely identified to ensure they are not consolidated in the zonal programme nor deleted during future programme development. Within MSG-3 based MRB Reports, these may be introduced under ATA 20 with no Failure Effect Category quoted.

For programmes without a ZIP:

Although non-ZIP programmes may already include some dedicated inspections of wiring that may be reviewed for equivalency to new tasks identified by application of the EZAP, it is expected that a significant number of new wiring inspections will be identified for introduction as dedicated tasks in the System and Powerplant programme. All new tasks identified by application of EZAP shall be uniquely identified to ensure they are not deleted during future programme development.

The following guide can be used to determine proper consolidation between EZAP derived inspections and existing inspections that have not been specifically identified as stand-alone tasks, of the same item or area:

- a. Where the EZAP inspection interval and existing inspection interval are equal, but the inspection levels are different, the more intense inspection will take precedent (i.e. a 1C DET takes precedent over a 1C GVI).
- b. Where the EZAP inspection interval and existing inspection interval are different, but the inspection levels are equal, the more frequent inspection will take precedent (i.e. a 1C GVI takes precedent over a 2C GVI).
- c. Where the EZAP inspection interval and level are different from the existing inspection interval and level, these tasks may be consolidated only when the more frequent inspection is also the more intense (i.e. a 1C DET takes precedent over a 2C GVI). When the more frequent inspection is less intense, the tasks should not be consolidated.

For all programmes, these tasks shall be uniquely identified in the programme for future development consideration.

For EZAP-derived STC tasks, it may not be possible for the STC holder to determine whether a ZIP exists on specific aircraft that will utilise the STC. Therefore, where a ZIP exists, consolidation of EZAP-derived STC tasks into a specific operator's ZIP will be the responsibility of the operator and subject to approval by the competent authority.

In cases where the STC holder determines a requirement for a GVI that should not be consolidated into a ZIP, this stand-alone GVI should be specifically identified as such in the EZAP derived ICAW for the STC.

[Amdt 20/4]

## Appendix B to AMC 20-21 Examples of Typical EZAP Worksheets

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

The following worksheets are provided as an example to assist implementation of the EZAP logic explained in this AMC. These may be adjusted by the analyst to suit specific applications.

1. Details of Zone.
2. Assessment of Zone Attributes.
- 3A. Inspection Level Determination based on Rating Tables (for use where a dedicated ZIP exists).
- 3B. Inspection Level Determination based on Rating Tables (for use where no dedicated ZIP exists).
4. Interval Determination based on Rating Tables.
5. Task Summary.

In particular, the interval ranges quoted in the rating table on Sheet 4 are solely to explain a typical arrangement of values. For a particular application, these must be compatible with the interval framework used in the existing maintenance or inspection programme. They may be expressed in terms of usage parameter (e.g. flight hours or calendar time) or in terms of letter check (as in the example).

Enhanced Zonal Analysis - Details of Zone		Sheet 1 of 5
ZONE NO:	ZONE DESCRIPTION:	
1. Zone Details (Boundaries, Access):		
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>2. EQUIPMENT INSTALLED</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Hydraulic Plumbing</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Hydraulic Components (valves, actuators, pumps)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Pneumatic Plumbing</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Pneumatic Components (valves, actuators)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Electrical Wiring - Power Feeder (high voltage, high amperage)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Electrical Wiring - Motor Driven Devices</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Electrical Wiring - Instrumentation, and Monitoring</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Electrical Wiring - Data Bus</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Electrical Components</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Primary Flight Control Mechanisms</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Secondary Flight Control Mechanisms</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Engine Control Mechanisms</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Fuel Components</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Insulation</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Oxygen</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Potable Water</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Waste Water</li> </ul>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>COMMENTS</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: 80%;"> <p><i>This sheet is used to comply with Steps 1 and 2 of the Enhanced Zonal Analysis Procedure:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>1. Describe the zone (location, access, boundaries)</i></li> <li><i>2. List the content of the zone; installed equipment, wiring, plumbing, components, etc.</i></li> </ol> <p><i>In the comments section on this sheet, it would be appropriate to note significant wire related items such as "Wire bundle routed within 2" of high-temp anti-ice ducting". The intent is to provide the analyst with a clear understanding of what's in the zone and how it could potentially affect wiring.</i></p> </div>	
Sample EZAP Worksheet	Date:	Page 1 of 5

Enhanced Zonal Analysis - Assessment of Zone Attributes		Sheet 2 of 5
<b>ZONE NO:</b>	<b>ZONE DESCRIPTION:</b>	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">Steps 1 and 2 completed on Sheet 1.</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">           3. Zone contains wiring? <span style="float: right;">N Y</span> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">             4. Combustible materials in zone? <span style="float: right;">N Y</span> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">             5. Is there an effective task to significantly reduce the likelihood of accumulation of combustible materials? <span style="float: right;">N Y</span> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">             6. Define task and interval. List on Sheet 5, Task Summary.           </div> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">             7. Is wiring close to both primary and back-up hydraulic, mechanical, or electrical flight controls? <span style="float: right;">N Y</span> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">             8. Wiring inspection task determination. See Sheet 3.           </div> </div> </div> <div style="width: 45%; text-align: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">No further action.</div> </div> </div> <p style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"><i>Continue the analysis</i></p> </div>		
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Answers and Explanation to Questions</b> (Note: Steps 1 &amp; 2 completed on Sheet 1.)</p> <p>3. <i>This sheet is used to answer Questions 3 thru 7 of the Enhanced Zonal Analysis Procedure.</i></p> <p>4. <i>If the answer to Questions 3 and 7 is 'NO', then no further action is required in this analysis which is designed to address only wiring systems.</i></p> <p>5. <i>If the answer to Question 5 is 'YES', and a task is identified that can significantly reduce the likelihood of accumulation of combustible materials, the task and interval must be defined in Step 6. If the task identified is a cleaning task to remove dust/lint accumulation from wiring, the interval for the task must be frequent enough to keep the wiring relatively clean based on the expected rate of accumulation of dust/lint on the wiring in the zone.</i></p> <p>6. <i>In all cases, after Step 5 and/or Step 6, the analysis is continued to Step 8.</i></p> <p>7.</p> </div>		
Sample EZAP Worksheet	Date:	Page 2 of 5

Enhanced Zonal Analysis - Inspection Level Determination based on Zone Size, Density, Potential Impact of Fire		Sheet 3A of 5																									
For Programs with dedicated Zonal Inspection Program (ZIP)																											
ZONE NO:	ZONE DESCRIPTION																										
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr style="background-color: #e0f2f1;"> <th colspan="4">Zone Size/Density Assessment</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2" rowspan="2"></th> <th colspan="3">Zone Size</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Small</th> <th>Medium</th> <th>Large</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <th rowspan="3" style="writing-mode: vertical-rl; transform: rotate(180deg);">Density</th> <th>Low</th> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <th>Medium</th> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <th>High</th> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Circle appropriate result and insert below.</i></p> <p>RESULT: <span style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 50px; height: 20px;"></span></p>			Zone Size/Density Assessment						Zone Size			Small	Medium	Large	Density	Low	1	2	3	Medium	2	2	3	High	2	3	3
Zone Size/Density Assessment																											
		Zone Size																									
		Small	Medium	Large																							
Density	Low	1	2	3																							
	Medium	2	2	3																							
	High	2	3	3																							
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr style="background-color: #e0f2f1;"> <th colspan="4">Inspection Level Determination Based on Potential Effect of Fire in Zone</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2" rowspan="2">Size/Density Factor</th> <th>1</th> <th>2</th> <th>3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <th>Potential Effects of Fire in Zone</th> <th>Low</th> <td>Zonal GVI</td> <td>Zonal GVI</td> <td>Zonal GVI</td> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Medium</th> <td>Zonal GVI</td> <td>Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring</td> <td>Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring</td> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>High</th> <td>Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring</td> <td>Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI and/or DET of some wiring</td> <td>Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI and/or DET of some wiring</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Circle appropriate result and answer questions in Boxes below.</i></p>			Inspection Level Determination Based on Potential Effect of Fire in Zone				Size/Density Factor		1	2	3	Potential Effects of Fire in Zone	Low	Zonal GVI	Zonal GVI	Zonal GVI		Medium	Zonal GVI	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring		High	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI and/or DET of some wiring	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI and/or DET of some wiring	
Inspection Level Determination Based on Potential Effect of Fire in Zone																											
Size/Density Factor		1	2	3																							
		Potential Effects of Fire in Zone	Low	Zonal GVI	Zonal GVI	Zonal GVI																					
	Medium	Zonal GVI	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring																							
	High	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI of some wiring	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI and/or DET of some wiring	Zonal GVI + Stand-alone GVI and/or DET of some wiring																							
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p><b>1. Is a Zonal GVI alone effective for the entire Zone?</b></p> <p>Yes → <b>2. List zone description and boundaries for Zonal GVI.</b></p> <p>No → <b>Zonal GVI must be augmented with Stand-alone GVI, and/or DET Inspection.</b></p> <p>→ <b>3. Define specific items/areas in the zone for which Stand-alone GVI is justified</b></p> <p>→ <b>4. Define specific item/areas in the zone for which DET is justified</b></p> <p><small>If answer to Box 1 is "Yes" . answer Box 2 only. If answer to Box 1 is "No", answer Boxes 2, 3, &amp; 4.</small></p> </div> <div style="width: 50%;"> <p><b>Answers &amp; Explanation:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The tables on this Sheet are used to select the appropriate level of inspection for the wiring in the zone based on an assessment of zone size, density, and potential effects of fire in the zone.</li> <li>This worksheet is designed for operators whose existing maintenance program already includes a dedicated Zonal Inspection Program. It is assumed that an existing ZIP already includes a Zonal GVI of all zones that contain wiring, and that the wiring is included in the Zonal GVI.</li> <li>The minimum outcome of this analysis will always be a Zonal GVI of any zone where the presence of combustible materials is possible and/or wiring is located in close proximity to both primary and backup hydraulic or mechanical flight controls.</li> <li>The Inspection Level Determination Table allows the Analyst to determine if a Zonal GVI alone is adequate for all wiring in the zone, or if the Zonal GVI must be augmented with a Stand-alone GVI and/or a DET inspection of some portion of the wiring.</li> </ol> <p>If a Zonal GVI is adequate for all wiring in the zone, the analyst must identify the inspection area as the zone itself (Box 2). Interval selection will be made on Sheet 4.</p> <p>If a Zonal GVI is not adequate for all wiring in the zone, in addition to identifying the Zonal GVI (Box 2), the analyst must also any identify the specific items/areas in the zone where a Stand-alone GVI (Box 3) and/or a DET inspection (Box 4) is justified.</p> <p><i>Note: While it is useful to know the existing Zonal GVI interval while conducting this analysis, it is not assumed that the Zonal GVI interval selected during this analysis with respect to wiring will be the same as the existing interval. During task consolidation after completion of the analysis, the most frequent Zonal GVI interval for the zone will take precedent.</i></p> </div> </div>																											
Sample EZAP Worksheet	Date:	Date:																									

**Enhanced Zonal Analysis - Inspection Level Determination based on Zone Size, Density, Potential Impact of Fire** Sheet 3B of 5

For Programs without dedicated Zonal Inspection Program (ZIP)

ZONE NO: \_\_\_\_\_ ZONE DESCRIPTION: \_\_\_\_\_

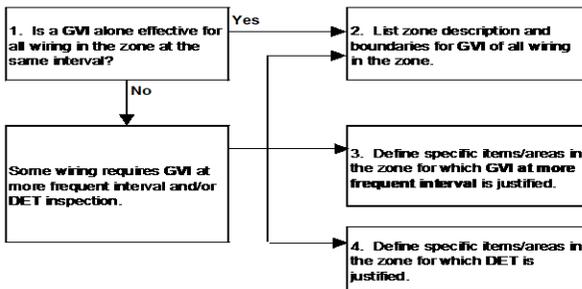
Zone Size/Density Assessment				
		Zone Size		
		Small	Medium	Large
Density	Low	1	2	3
	Medium	2	2	3
	High	2	3	3

Circle appropriate result and insert below.

RESULT: \_\_\_\_\_

Inspection Level Determination Based on Potential Effect of Fire in Zone				
Size/Density Factor		1	2	3
Potential Effects of Fire in Zone	Low	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval
	Medium	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval + GVI of some wiring at more frequent interval	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval + GVI of some wiring at more frequent interval
	High	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval + GVI of some wiring at more frequent interval	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval + GVI of some wiring at more frequent interval and/or DET of some wiring	GVI of all wiring in zone at same interval + GVI of some wiring at more frequent interval and/or DET of some wiring

Circle appropriate result and answer questions in Boxes below.



If answer to Box 1 is "Yes", answer Box 2 only. If answer to Box 1 is "No", answer Boxes 2, 3, & 4.

**Answers & Explanation:**

1. The tables on this sheet are used to select an Inspection Level based on zone size, density, and potential effect of fire in the zone. These factors are used to determine if a GVI of all wiring in the zone at the same interval is adequate, or if some wiring requires a more frequent GVI, or even a DET inspection.
2. This worksheet is designed for operators whose existing maintenance program does not include a dedicated Zonal Inspection Program. The minimum outcome of this analysis will always be a GVI of all wiring in any zone where the presence of combustible materials is possible and/or wiring is located in close proximity to both primary and backup hydraulic or mechanical flight controls.
3. If a GVI of all wiring in the zone at the same interval is adequate, the analyst must identify the inspection requirement as "GVI of all wiring in the zone" (Box 2) and proceed to Sheet 4 to determine the GVI interval.
4. If a GVI of all wiring in the zone at the same interval is not adequate, then the analyst must identify the specific items/areas in the zone where a more frequent GVI (Box 3) and/or a DET inspection (Box 4) is justified.

Enhanced Zonal Analysis - Interval Determination Based on Hostility of Environment and Likelihood of Accidental Damage		Sheet 4 of 5																																																																							
ZONE NO:	ZONE DESCRIPTION:																																																																								
<p>Interval selection is specific to each task identified on Sheet 3A or 3B. For GVI of entire zone, consider overall zone environment and likelihood of damage. For Stand-alone GVI or DET, consider environment and likelihood of damage only in respect to the specific item/area defined for inspection.</p>																																																																									
Item/Area Defined for Inspection:																																																																									
Inspection Level:																																																																									
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: center;">Hostility of Environment</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: center;">1 - Passive, 2 - Moderate, 3 - Severe</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Temperature</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Vibration</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Chemicals (toilet fluids, etc.)</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Humidity</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Contamination</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Other -</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>Highest Result</b></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostility of Environment		1 - Passive, 2 - Moderate, 3 - Severe		Temperature		Vibration		Chemicals (toilet fluids, etc.)		Humidity		Contamination		Other -		<b>Highest Result</b>		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: center;">Likelihood of Accidental Damage</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: center;">1 - Low, 2 - Medium, 3 - High</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Ground Handling Equipment</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>F. O. D.</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Weather Effects (hail, etc.)</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Frequency of Maintenance Activities</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Fluid Spillage</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Passenger Traffic</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Other -</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>Highest Result</b></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Likelihood of Accidental Damage		1 - Low, 2 - Medium, 3 - High		Ground Handling Equipment		F. O. D.		Weather Effects (hail, etc.)		Frequency of Maintenance Activities		Fluid Spillage		Passenger Traffic		Other -		<b>Highest Result</b>		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5" style="text-align: center;">Interval Determination</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2"></th> <th colspan="3" style="text-align: center;">Likelihood of Accidental Damage</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2"></th> <th style="text-align: center;">1</th> <th style="text-align: center;">2</th> <th style="text-align: center;">3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <th rowspan="3" style="text-align: center;">Hostility of Environment</th> <th style="text-align: center;">1</th> <td style="text-align: center;">4C-6C</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2C-4C</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1C-2C</td> </tr> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">2</th> <td style="text-align: center;">2C-6C</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1C-4C</td> <td style="text-align: center;">A-1C</td> </tr> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">3</th> <td style="text-align: center;">1C-6C</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1C-4C</td> <td style="text-align: center;">A-1C</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="text-align: center;"><b>RESULT</b></td> <td colspan="3"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Interval Determination							Likelihood of Accidental Damage					1	2	3	Hostility of Environment	1	4C-6C	2C-4C	1C-2C	2	2C-6C	1C-4C	A-1C	3	1C-6C	1C-4C	A-1C	<b>RESULT</b>				
Hostility of Environment																																																																									
1 - Passive, 2 - Moderate, 3 - Severe																																																																									
Temperature																																																																									
Vibration																																																																									
Chemicals (toilet fluids, etc.)																																																																									
Humidity																																																																									
Contamination																																																																									
Other -																																																																									
<b>Highest Result</b>																																																																									
Likelihood of Accidental Damage																																																																									
1 - Low, 2 - Medium, 3 - High																																																																									
Ground Handling Equipment																																																																									
F. O. D.																																																																									
Weather Effects (hail, etc.)																																																																									
Frequency of Maintenance Activities																																																																									
Fluid Spillage																																																																									
Passenger Traffic																																																																									
Other -																																																																									
<b>Highest Result</b>																																																																									
Interval Determination																																																																									
		Likelihood of Accidental Damage																																																																							
		1	2	3																																																																					
Hostility of Environment	1	4C-6C	2C-4C	1C-2C																																																																					
	2	2C-6C	1C-4C	A-1C																																																																					
	3	1C-6C	1C-4C	A-1C																																																																					
<b>RESULT</b>																																																																									
<p>Upon completion, enter all task and interval selections onto Sheet 5, Task Summary.</p>																																																																									
Sample EZAP Worksheet	Date:	Sheet 4 of 5																																																																							

Enhanced Zonal Analysis - Task Summary			Sheet 5 of 5
<b>ZONE NO:</b>	<b>ZONE DESCRIPTION:</b>		
Zone Description:			
TASK SUMMARY			
Task Number	Access	Interval	Task Description
			<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;"> <p><i>This Sheet is used to list all tasks and intervals selected as a result of EZAP analysis.</i></p> </div>
Sample EZAP Worksheet		Date:	Sheet 5 of 5

[Amdt AMC/4]

## Appendix C to AMC 20-21 Determination if a major change to an aircraft should be specifically subjected to an EZAP

ED Decision 2008/007/R

The EZAP provides a means for TC and STC holders to develop improvements to EWIS maintenance programs. These improvements will be in the form of new inspections and other tasks designed to prevent significant accumulation of combustible materials on or adjacent to EWIS components that would be added to the Instructions for Continued Airworthiness or Service Bulletins (SB) for the aircraft and STC.

While TC holders are required to conduct the EZAP for all zones in an aircraft, it may be determined that EZAP for an SB or STC is not necessary where the modification does not appreciably affect the zones where it is installed. The “Determination if SB modification or STC requires EZAP” procedure was developed to identify modifications that sufficiently affect zone attributes to warrant re-application of EZAP to the entire zone.

This logic assumes that the aircraft TC holder has accomplished the EZAP on each zone of the aircraft without consideration of the SB modification or STC installation. The objective of this analysis is to assess whether the modification itself has affected wiring or certain zone attributes that could change the outcome of the EZAP performed by the aircraft TC holder.

The determination if the SB or STC requires EZAP, and re-application of the EZAP to SB or STC affected zones, is the responsibility of the respective holder of the SB or STC. It is expected that the TC and STC holders will collaborate with each other and operators as necessary to obtain information required to conduct the analysis. The TC or STC holder should communicate the results of the procedure, including the cases when no new tasks are identified. The method of communication may be via SB, Service Letter, ICAW Revision, or other means acceptable to EASA.

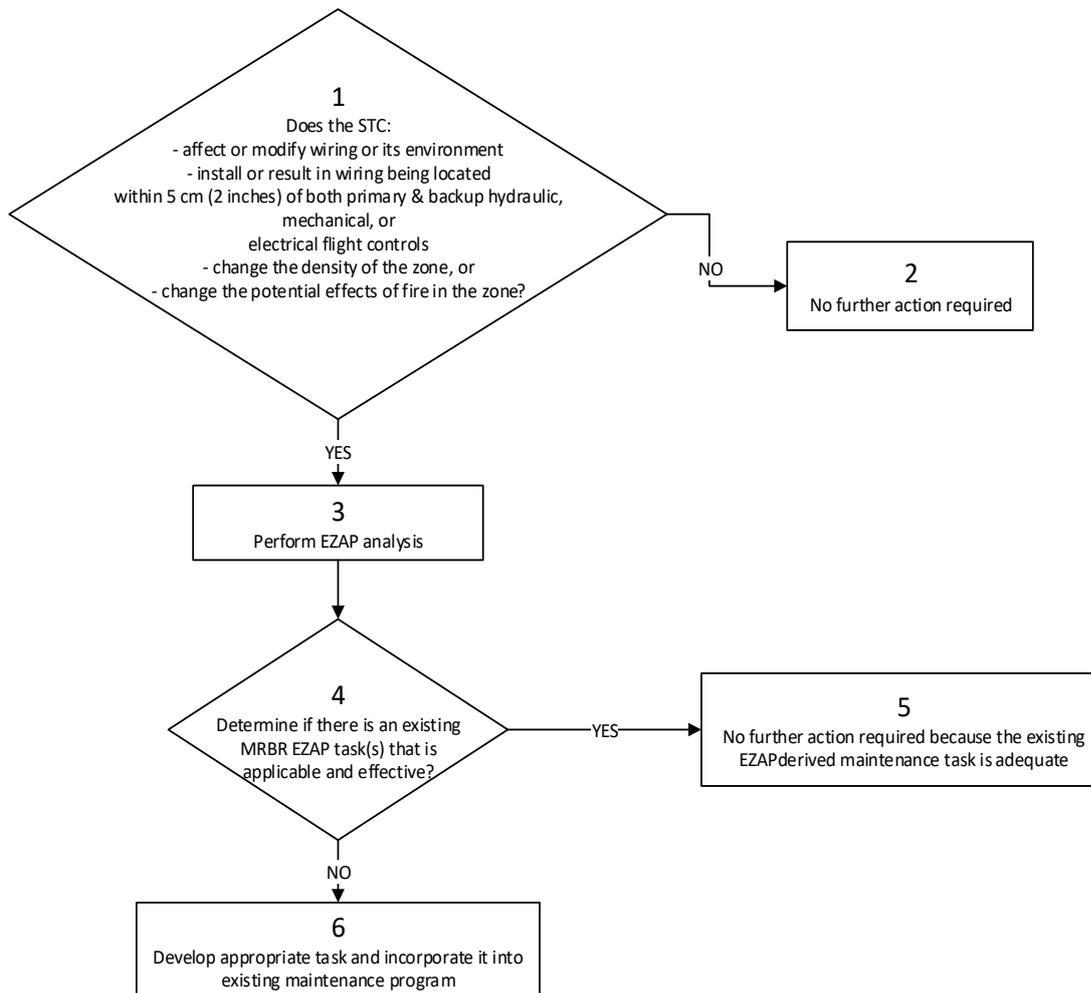
In situations where a previously installed STC is no longer supported by a viable STC holder (e.g. STC holder defunct), the responsibility for determining if the STC requires EZAP, and re-application of EZAP to any affected zones, is assigned to the individual operators who utilise the STC on their aircraft. In cases where the operator does not have experience in application of analytical logic processes, it will be necessary for the operator to gain competence in, or seek external assistance in conducting the analysis.

A record of the outcome of operator accomplished analysis for STC (even if no tasks are identified) should be permanently retained by the operator. A copy of the record should be included in the aircraft records normally transferred upon change of aircraft operator.

The attached logic chart provides a means to assess whether an SB modification or STC has sufficiently affected wiring or certain other zone attributes as to require reapplication of the EZAP to the entire zone with consideration of the modification present. The section following the chart provides detailed explanations of each step in the “Determination if SB modification or STC requires EZAP” with appropriate examples.

It is recommended that, where possible, the analyst should utilise the availability of actual aircraft to ensure they fully understand the zones being analysed. Specifically, it must be determined how installation of the modification could affect zone attributes such as density, environment, proximity of wiring to primary and back-up flight controls, presence of combustible materials, and potential for accidental damage to wiring.

Appendix C. Figure 1. Determination if SB modification or STC requires EZAP



### Explanation of Steps

**Step 1:** Does the SB or STC affect or modify wiring or it's environment?

The question asks whether the STC affects or modifies wiring. Modifications to wiring or other EWIS components include, but are not limited to removal, addition, relocation, etc.

Does the SB or STC install or result in wiring being located within 5 cm (2 inches) of primary and back-up hydraulic, mechanical or electric flight controls, change the density of the zone or change the potential effects of fire in the zone?

Does the SB or STC affect zone density? If the STC includes the addition or deletion of numerous components in a small area, the density of the zone could be changed even if wire bundles are untouched. A significant change in the zone density should warrant re-analysis of the zone.

Potential effects of fire on adjacent wiring and systems require the analyst to assess the potential effect of a localised fire on adjacent wiring and systems by considering the potential for loss of multiple functions to the extent that a hazard could be introduced.

Consideration of potential effect must also include whether wiring is in close proximity (i.e. within 5 cm (2 inches)) to both primary and back-up flight controls.

Additionally, this question requires an evaluation of whether the zone might contain combustible material that could cause a fire to be sustained in the event of an ignition source arising in adjacent wiring. Examples include the possible presence of fuel vapours, dust/lint accumulation, and contaminated insulation blankets.

With respect to commonly used liquids (e.g. oils, hydraulic fluids, and corrosion prevention compounds), the analyst should refer to the product specification in order to assess the potential for combustibility. The product may be readily combustible only in vapour/mist form and thus an assessment is required to determine if conditions might exist in the zone for the product to be in this state.

Although liquid contamination of wiring by most synthetic oil and hydraulic fluids (e.g. skydrol) may not be considered combustible, it is a cause for concern if it occurs in a zone where contamination causes significant adherence of dust and lint.

If the answer to this question is 'No', then no further action is required (Step 2), since the density of the zone or the potential effects of fire in the zone has not changed.

Step 2: No further action is required.

Step 3: Perform an EZAP analysis.

If the answer to question 1 is 'Yes', then the only way to determine if existing EWIS maintenance tasks are sufficient is to perform the EZAP for the SB or STC and compare the results with the existing EWIS maintenance tasks (see Step 4).

Step 4: Is there an existing MRBR EZAP task(s) that is applicable and effective?

Once the SB or STC EZAP has been accomplished, a comparison of the derived maintenance tasks can be made with the existing EWIS maintenance tasks. If the existing tasks are adequate, then no further action regarding EWIS maintenance actions for the STC is necessary.

Step 5: No further action is required since the existing EZAP-derived maintenance task is adequate.

Step 6: Develop an appropriate task and incorporate it into the existing maintenance programme.

These tasks should be incorporated into the operator's existing maintenance programme.

[Amdt 20/4]

## Appendix D to AMC 20-21

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

(RESERVED)

## Appendix E to AMC 20-21 Causes of Wire Degradation

ED Decision 2008/007/R

The following items are considered principal causes of wiring degradation and should be used to help focus maintenance programmes:

Vibration - High vibration areas tend to accelerate degradation over time, resulting in “chattering” contacts and intermittent symptoms. High vibration of tie-wraps or string-ties can cause damage to insulation. In addition, high vibration will exacerbate any existing problem with wire insulation cracking.

Moisture - High moisture areas generally accelerate corrosion of terminals, pins, sockets, and conductors. It should be noted that wiring installed in clean, dry areas with moderate temperatures appears to hold up well.

Maintenance - Scheduled and unscheduled maintenance activities, if done improperly, may contribute to long-term problems and wiring degradation. Certain repairs may have limited durability and should be evaluated to ascertain if rework is necessary. Repairs that conform to manufacturers recommended maintenance practices are generally considered permanent and should not require rework. Furthermore, care should be taken to prevent undue collateral damage to EWIS while performing maintenance on other systems.

Metal shavings and debris have been discovered on wire bundles after maintenance, repairs, modifications, or STC have been performed. Care should be taken to protect wire bundles and connectors during modification work. The work areas should be cleaned while the work progresses to ensure that all shavings and debris are removed; the work area should be thoroughly cleaned after the work is complete; and the work area should be inspected after the final cleaning.

Repairs should be performed using the most effective methods available. Since wire splices are more susceptible to degradation, arcing, and overheating, the recommended method of repairing a wire is with an environmental splice.

Indirect Damage - Events such as pneumatic duct ruptures or duct clamp leakage can cause damage that, while not initially evident, can cause wiring problems at a later stage. When events such as these occur, surrounding EWIS should be carefully inspected to ensure that there is no damage or no potential for damage is evident. The indirect damage caused by these types of events may be broken clamps or ties, broken wire insulation, or even broken conductor strands. In some cases the pressure of the duct rupture may cause wire separation from the connector or terminal strip.

Contamination - Wire contamination refers to either of the following situations:

- a. The presence of a foreign material that is likely to cause degradation of wiring.
- b. The presence of a foreign material that is capable of sustaining combustion after removal of ignition source.

The contaminant may be in solid or liquid form. Solid contaminants such as metal shavings, swarf, debris, livestock waste, lint and dust can accumulate on wiring and may degrade or penetrate wiring or electrical components.

Chemicals in fluids such as hydraulic fluid, battery electrolytes, fuel, corrosion inhibiting compounds, waste system chemicals, cleaning agents, de-icing fluids, paint, soft drinks and coffee can contribute to degradation of wiring.

Hydraulic fluids, de-icing fluids and battery electrolyte require special consideration. These fluids, although essential for aircraft operation, can damage connector grommets, wire bundle clamps, wire ties and wire lacing, causing chafing and arcing. Wiring exposed to these fluids should be given special

attention during inspection. Contaminated wire insulation that has visible cracking or breaches to the core conductor can eventually arc and cause a fire. Wiring exposed to, or in close proximity to, any of these chemicals may need to be inspected more frequently for damage or degradation.

When cleaning areas or zones of the aircraft that contain both wiring and chemical contaminants, special cleaning procedures and precautions may be needed. Such procedures may include wrapping wire and connectors with a protective covering prior to cleaning. This would be especially true if pressure-washing equipment is utilised. In all cases the aircraft manufacturer recommended procedures should be followed.

Waste system spills also require special attention. Service history has shown that these spills can have detrimental effects on aircraft EWIS and have resulted in smoke and fire events. When this type of contamination is found all affected components in the EWIS should be thoroughly cleaned, inspected and repaired or replaced if necessary. The source of the spill or leakage should be located and corrected.

Heat - Exposure to high heat can accelerate degradation of wiring by causing insulation dryness and cracking. Direct contact with a high heat source can quickly damage insulation. Burned, charred or even melted insulation are the most likely indicators of this type of damage. Low levels of heat can also degrade wiring over a longer period of time. This type of degradation is sometimes seen on engines, in galley wiring such as coffee makers and ovens, and behind fluorescent lights, especially the ballasts.

[Amdt 20/4]

## AMC 20-22

### AMC 20-22 Aeroplane Electrical Wiring Interconnection System Training Programme

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

#### 1 PURPOSE

This AMC provides acceptable means of compliance for developing an enhanced Electrical Wiring Interconnection System (EWIS) training programme. The information in this AMC is derived from the best practices training developed through extensive research. This AMC is an effort by the Agency to officially endorse these best practices and to dispense this information industry-wide so that the benefits of this information can be effectively realised. Following this AMC will result in a training programme that will improve the awareness and skill level of the aviation personnel in EWIS production, modification, maintenance, inspection, alterations and repair. This AMC promotes a philosophy of training for all personnel who come into contact with aeroplane EWIS as part of their job and tailors the training for each workgroup to their particular needs.

#### 2 OBJECTIVE

This AMC has been published in order to provide the approved organisations with acceptable means of compliance to comply with their training obligations as required in paragraphs 21.A.145 and 21.A.245 of Part-21, 145.A.30 and 145.A.35 of Part-145 and M.A.706 of Part-M with respect to EWIS.

To fully realise the objectives of this AMC, operators, holders of type certificates (TC), holders of supplemental type certificates (STC), maintenance organisations and persons performing modifications or repairs, will need to rethink their current approach to maintaining and modifying aeroplane wiring and systems. This may require more than simply updating maintenance manuals and work cards and enhancing training. Maintenance personnel need to be aware that aeroplane EWIS should be maintained with the same level of intensity as any other system in the aeroplane. They also need to recognise that visual inspection of wiring has inherent limitations. Small defects such as breached or cracked insulation, especially in small gage wire may not always be apparent. Therefore, effective wiring maintenance combines visual inspection techniques with improved wiring maintenance practices and training.

The objective of this EWIS training programme is to give operators, holders of TC, holders of STC, maintenance organisations and persons performing field approval modifications or repairs a model for the development of their own EWIS training programme. This will ensure that proper procedures, methods techniques, and practices are used when performing maintenance, preventive maintenance, inspection, alteration, and cleaning of EWIS.

The training syllabus and curriculum for those personnel directly involved in the maintenance and inspection of EWIS, identified as Target Group 1 and 2, are in [Appendix A](#) and [C](#) to this AMC.

This AMC also provides guidance on the development of EWIS training programmes for personnel who are not directly involved in the maintenance and inspection of EWIS. Although there is no direct regulatory requirement for EWIS training of these personnel, operators may choose to provide EWIS training. The training syllabus and curriculum for these personnel, identified as Target Groups 3 through 8, are in [Appendix B](#) and [C](#) to this AMC.

It is believed that training personnel in these groups would greatly enhance awareness of the importance of EWIS safety in the overall safe operation of aeroplanes. Although these groups are not directly involved in the maintenance of EWIS, they have the potential to have an adverse impact on EWIS. This can occur through inadvertent contact with EWIS during aeroplane cleaning or when individuals perform unrelated maintenance that could impact the integrity of EWIS. Mechanics leaving drill shavings on wire bundles is one example of how this could occur. Some people prepare paperwork that guides mechanics, training this target group in EWIS should help to ensure that proper attention is paid to EWIS issues.

This programme was developed for eight different target groups and may be used for the minimum requirements for initial and recurrent training (see training matrix). Depending on the duties, some may fall into more than one target group and, therefore, must fulfil all objectives of the associated target groups. The target groups are:

- a. Qualified staff performing EWIS maintenance.  
These staff members are personnel who perform wiring systems maintenance and their training is based on their job description and the work being done by them (e.g. avionics skilled workers or technicians cat B2).
- b. Qualified staff performing maintenance inspections on wiring systems.  
These staff members are personnel who perform EWIS inspections (but not maintenance), and their training is based on their job description and the work being done by them (e.g. inspectors/technicians cat B2).
- c. Qualified staff performing electrical/avionic engineering on in-service aeroplane.  
These staff members are personnel who are authorised to design EWIS installations, modifications and repairs (e.g. electric/avionic engineers).
- d. Qualified staff performing general maintenance/inspections not involving wire maintenance (LRU change is not considered wire maintenance).  
These staff members are personnel who perform maintenance on aeroplane that may require removal/reconnection of electrical connective devices (e.g. inspectors/technicians cat A or B1).
- e. Qualified staff performing other engineering or planning work on in-service aeroplane.  
These staff members are personnel who are authorised to design mechanical/structure systems installations, modifications and repairs, or personnel who are authorised to plan maintenance tasks.
- f. Other service staff with duties in proximity to EWIS.  
These staff members are personnel whose duties would bring them into contact/view of aeroplane wiring systems. This would include, but not be limited to: Aeroplane cleaners, cargo loaders, fuelers, lavatory servicing personnel, de-icing personnel, push back personnel.
- g. Flight Deck Crew.  
(E.g. Pilots, Flight Engineers)
- h. Cabin Crew.

### **3 APPLICABILITY**

This AMC describes acceptable means, but not the only means, of compliance with the appropriate certification, maintenance and operating regulations.

The information in this AMC is based on lessons learned by Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee (ATSRAC) Harmonised Working Groups, regulatory authorities, manufacturers, airlines and repair stations. This AMC can be applied to any aeroplane training programme.

#### **4 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- Regulation (EC) No 216/2008<sup>1</sup>
- Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003<sup>2</sup>
- Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003<sup>3</sup>
- EASA Certification Specification CS-25 Large Aeroplanes<sup>4</sup>
- EU-OPS Commercial Air Transportation (Aeroplanes)<sup>5</sup>

#### **5 RELATED READING MATERIAL**

- a. EASA AMC-20
  - [AMC 20-21](#) Programme to Enhance Aeroplane Electrical Wiring Interconnection System Maintenance
  - [AMC 20-23](#) Development of Electrical Standard Wiring Practices Documentation
- b. FAA 14 CFR Parts
  - Part 21, Certification Procedures for Products and Parts
  - Part 25, Airworthiness Standards, Transport Category Aeroplanes
  - Part 43, Maintenance, Preventive Maintenance, Rebuilding, and Alteration
  - Part 91, General Operating and Flight Rules
  - Part 119, Certification: Air Carriers and Commercial Operators
  - Part 121, Operating Requirements: Domestic, Flag, and Supplemental Operations
  - Part 125, Certification and Operations: Aeroplanes Having a Seating Capacity of 20 or More Passengers or a Maximum Payload Capacity of 6,000 pounds or More

---

<sup>1</sup> Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/EC (OJ L 79, 19.3.2008, p. 1).

<sup>2</sup> Commission Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 of 24 September 2003 laying down implementing rules for the airworthiness and environmental certification of aircraft and related products, parts and appliances, as well as for the certification of design and production organisations (OJ L 243, 27.9.2003, p. 6). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 287/2008 (OJ L 87, 29.3.2008, p. 3).

<sup>3</sup> Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 of 20 November 2003 on the continuing airworthiness of aircraft and aeronautical products, parts and appliances, and on the approval of organisations and personnel involved in these tasks (OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 376/2007 of (OJ L 94, 4.4.2007, p. 18).

<sup>4</sup> Executive Director Decision No 2003/2/RM of 14 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for large aeroplanes («CS-25»). Decision as last amended by Executive Director Decision No 2008/006/R of 29 August 2008 (CS-25 Amendment 5).

<sup>5</sup> Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91 of 16 December 1991 on the harmonisation of technical requirements and administrative procedures in the field of civil aviation (OJ L 373, 31.12.1991, p. 4). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 8/2008 of 11 December 2007 (OJ L 10, 12.1.2008, p. 1).

- Part 129, Operations: Foreign Air Carriers and Foreign Operators of U.S.-Registered Aircraft Engaged in Common Carriage
- Part 135, Operating Requirements: Commuter and On-demand Operations
- Part 145, Repair Stations
- c. FAA Advisory Circulars (AC)
  - AC 20-13, Protection of Aircraft Electrical/Electronic Systems against the Indirect Effects of Lightning
  - AC 20-53A, Protection of Aeroplane Fuel Systems against Fuel Vapour Ignition due to Lightning AC 25-16, Electrical Fault and Fire Protection and Prevention
  - AC 25.981-1B, Fuel Tank Ignition Source Prevention Guidelines
  - AC 25.17YY Development of Standard Wiring Practices Documentation
  - AC 43-3, Non-destructive Testing in Aircraft
  - AC 43-4A, Corrosion Control for Aircraft
  - AC 43-7, Ultrasonic Testing for Aircraft
  - AC 43-12A, Preventive Maintenance
  - AC 43.13-1A, Acceptable Methods, Techniques and Practices - Aircraft Inspection and Repair
  - AC 43.13-1B, Acceptable Methods, Techniques and Practices for Repairs and Alterations to Aircraft
  - AC 43-204, Visual Inspection for Aircraft
  - AC 43-206, Avionics Cleaning and Corrosion Prevention/Control
  - AC 65-15A, Airframe and Powerplant Mechanics Airframe Handbook, Chapter 11. Aircraft Electrical Systems
  - AC 120-XX, Programme to enhance aircraft Electrical Wiring Interconnection System maintenance
  - AC 120-YY Aircraft Electrical Wiring Interconnection System training programme
- d. Reports
  - Transport Aircraft Intrusive Inspection Project, (An Analysis of the Wire Installations of Six Decommissioned Aircraft), Final Report, The Intrusive Inspection Working Group, December 29, 2000.  
[http://www.mitrecaasd.org/atrac/intrusive\\_inspection.html](http://www.mitrecaasd.org/atrac/intrusive_inspection.html)
  - FAA Aging Transport Non-Structural Systems Plan, July 1998.
  - National Transportation Safety Board, Safety Recommendation, September 19, 2000, A-00-105 through -108.  
[http://www.nts.gov/recs/letters/2000/A00\\_105\\_108.pdf](http://www.nts.gov/recs/letters/2000/A00_105_108.pdf)
  - Wire System Safety Interagency Working Group, National Science and Technology Council, Review of Federal Programmes for Wire System Safety 46 (2000).

- Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 1 and 2, Aging Systems, Final Report.  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_1&2\\_Final%20August\\_2000.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_1&2_Final%20August_2000.pdf)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 3, Final Report.  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_3\\_Final.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_3_Final.pdf)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 4, Final Report, Standard Wiring Practices.  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_4\\_Final\\_Report\\_Sept\\_2000.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_4_Final_Report_Sept_2000.pdf)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 5, Final Report, Aircraft Wiring Systems Training Curriculum and Lesson Plans.  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_5\\_Final\\_March\\_2001%20.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_5_Final_March_2001%20.pdf)
  - ATA Specification 117 (Wiring Maintenance Practices/Guidelines).
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 6, Task 7 and Task 9 Working Group Final Reports  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports.html](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports.html)
- e. Other Documents
- ATA Operator/Manufacturer Scheduled Maintenance Development as revised, ATA Maintenance Steering Group (MSG-3), may be obtained from the Air Transport Association of America; Suite 1100: 1301 Pennsylvania Ave, NW, Washington, DC 20004-1707.
- FAA Handbook Bulletin 91-15 "Origin and propagation of inaccessible aircraft fire under in-flight airflow conditions".

## 6 DEFINITIONS

**Arc tracking:** A phenomenon in which a conductive carbon path is formed across an insulating surface. This carbon path provides a short circuit path through which current can flow. Normally, a result of electrical arcing. Also referred to as "Carbon Arc Tracking", "Wet Arc Tracking", or "Dry Arc Tracking".

**Combustible:** For the purposes of this AMC, the term combustible refers to the ability of any solid, liquid or gaseous material to cause a fire to be sustained after removal of the ignition source. The term is used in place of inflammable/flammable. It should not be interpreted as identifying material that will burn when subjected to a continuous source of heat as occurs when a fire develops.

**Contamination:** For the purposes of this AMC, wiring contamination refers to either of the following:

- The presence of a foreign material that is likely to cause degradation of wiring.
- The presence of a foreign material that is capable of sustaining combustion after removal of ignition source.

**Detailed Inspection (DET):** An intensive examination of a specific item, installation, or assembly to detect damage, failure or irregularity. Available lighting is normally supplemented with a direct source of good lighting at an intensity deemed appropriate. Inspection aids such as

mirrors, magnifying lenses or other means may be necessary. Surface cleaning and elaborate access procedures may be required.

Electrical Wiring Interconnection System (EWIS): See CS 25.1701.

Functional Failure: Failure of an item to perform its intended function within specified limits.

General Visual Inspection (GVI): A visual examination of an interior or exterior area, installation, or assembly to detect obvious damage, failure or irregularity. This level of inspection is made from within touching distance unless otherwise specified. A mirror may be necessary to enhance visual access to all exposed surfaces in the inspection area. This level of inspection is made under normally available lighting conditions such as daylight, hangar lighting, flashlight or droplight and may require removal or opening of access panels or doors. Stands, ladders or platforms may be required to gain proximity to the area being checked.

Lightning/High Intensity Radiated Field (L/HIRF) protection: The protection of aeroplane electrical systems and structure from induced voltages or currents by means of shielded wires, raceways, bonding jumpers, connectors, composite fairings with conductive mesh, static dischargers, and the inherent conductivity of the structure; may include aeroplane specific devices, e.g., RF Gaskets.

Maintenance: As defined in Regulation (EC) 2042/2003 Article 2(h) “maintenance means inspection, overhaul, repair, preservation, and the replacement of parts, but excludes preventive maintenance.” For the purposes of this advisory material, it also includes preventive maintenance.

Maintenance Significant Item (MSI): Items identified by the manufacturer whose failure:

- could affect safety (on ground or in flight).
- is undetectable during operations.
- could have significant operational impact.
- could have significant economic impact.

Needling: The puncturing of a wire’s insulation to make contact with the core to test the continuity and presence of voltage in the wire segment.

Stand-alone General Visual Inspection (GVI): A GVI which is not performed as part of a zonal inspection. Even in cases where the interval coincides with the zonal inspection, the stand-alone GVI shall remain an independent step within the work card.

Structural Significant Item (SSI): Any detail, element or assembly that contributes significantly to carrying flight, ground, pressure, or control loads and whose failure could affect the structural integrity necessary for the safety of the aeroplane.

Swarf: A term used to describe the metal particles, generated from drilling and machining operations. Such particles may accumulate on and between wires within a wire bundle.

Zonal Inspection: A collective term comprising selected GVI and visual checks that are applied to each zone, defined by access and area, to check system and powerplant installations and structure for security and general condition.

## **7 BACKGROUND**

Over the years there have been a number of in-flight smoke and fire events where contamination sustained and caused the fire to spread. Regulators and Accident Investigators have conducted aircraft inspections and found wiring contaminated with items such as dust,

dirt, metal shavings, lavatory waste water, coffee, soft drinks, and napkins. In some cases, dust has been found completely covering wire bundles and the surrounding area.

Research has also demonstrated that wiring can be harmed by collateral damage when maintenance is being performed on other aircraft systems. For example, a person performing an inspection of an electrical power centre or avionics compartment may inadvertently cause damage to wiring in an adjacent area.

Aviation Accident Investigators have specifically cited the need for improved training of personnel to ensure adequate recognition and repair of potentially unsafe wiring conditions.

This AMC addresses only the training programme. It does not attempt to deal with the condition of the fleet's wiring, or develop performance tests for wiring.

This AMC captures, in EASA guidance form, the aeroplane EWIS training programme developed by ATSRAC. This includes a training syllabus, curriculum, training target groups and a matrix outlining training for each training group.

## **8 ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS FOR A TRAINING PROGRAMME**

### **a. Initial Training.**

Initial training should be conducted for each designated work group. The initial training for each designated work group is outlined in EWIS Minimum Initial Training Programme - [Appendix A](#) and [B](#). Curriculum and Lesson Plans for each dedicated module are included in [Appendix C](#).

The most important criteria are to meet the objectives of the Lesson Plans – [Appendix C](#) (using classroom discussion, computer-based training or hands-on practical training).

Assessment or achieving the objectives should be at the discretion of the training organisation (such as written test, oral test or demonstration of skills).

Supporting documentation such as AMC is an integral part of training and should be used to support development of the Curriculum and Lesson Plans.

### **b. Refresher Training.**

Refresher training should be conducted in a period not exceeding two years. It could consist of a review of previously covered material plus any new material or revisions to publications. Refresher training will follow the EWIS Minimum Initial Training Programme - [Appendix A](#) or [B](#) for that particular target group.

[Amdt 20/4]

## Appendix A to AMC 20-22 – EWIS Minimum Initial Training Programme for Group 1 and 2

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

Target Group 1: Qualified staff performing EWIS maintenance.

Target Group 2: Qualified staff performing maintenance inspections on EWIS.

TARGET GROUP	1	2
<b>A – GENERAL ELECTRICAL WIRING INTERCONNECTION SYSTEM PRACTICES</b> <b>Know or demonstrate safe handling of aeroplane electrical systems, line replaceable units (LRU), tooling, troubleshooting procedures, and electrical measurement.</b>		
1. Safety practices	X	X
2. Electrostatic discharge sensitive (ESDS) device handling and protection	X	X
3. Tools, special tools, and equipment	X	
4. Verifying calibration/certification of instruments, tools, and equipment	X	
5. Required wiring checks using the troubleshooting procedures and charts	X	
6. Measurement and troubleshooting using meters	X	
7. LRU replacement general practices	X	X
<b>B – WIRING PRACTICES DOCUMENTATION</b> <b>Know or demonstrate the construction and navigation of the applicable aeroplane wiring system overhaul or practices manual.</b>		
8. Standard wiring practices manual structure/overview	X	X
9. Chapter cross-reference index	X	X
10. Important data and tables	X	X
11. Wiring diagram manuals	X	X
12. Other documentation as applicable	X	X
<b>C – INSPECTION</b> <b>Know the different types of inspections, human factors in inspections, zonal areas and typical damages.</b>		
13. General visual inspection (GVI), detailed inspection (DET), special detailed inspection (SDI), and zonal inspection, and their criteria and standards	X	X
14. Human factors in inspection		X
15. Zonal areas of inspection		X
16. Wiring system damage	X	X
<b>D – HOUSEKEEPING</b> <b>Know the contamination sources, materials, cleaning and protection procedures.</b>		
17. Aeroplane external contamination sources	X	X
18. Aeroplane internal contamination sources	X	X
19. Other contamination sources	X	X
20. Contamination protection planning	X	
21. Protection during aeroplane maintenance and repair	X	
22. Cleaning processes	X	
<b>E – WIRE</b> <b>Know or demonstrate the correct identification of different wire types, their inspection criteria and damage tolerance, repair and preventative maintenance procedures.</b>		
23. Wire identification, type and construction	X	X
24. Insulation qualities and damage limits	X	X

25.	Inspection criteria and standards for wire and wire bundles		X
26.	Wire bundle installation practices	X	X
27.	Typical damage and areas found (aeroplane specific)	X	X
28.	Maintenance and repair procedures	X	X
29.	Sleeving	X	X
30.	Unused wires - termination and storage	X	X
31.	Electrical bonding and grounds	X	X
<b>F – CONNECTIVE DEVICES</b> <b>Know or demonstrate the procedures to identify, inspect, and find the correct repair for typical types of connective devices found on the applicable aeroplane.</b>			
32.	General connector types and identification	X	X
33.	Cautions and protections	X	X
34.	Visual inspection procedures	X	X
35.	Typical damage found	X	X
36.	Repair procedures	X	X
<b>G – CONNECTIVE DEVICE REPAIR</b> <b>Demonstrate the procedures for replacement of all parts of typical types of connectors found on the applicable aeroplane.</b>			
37.	Circular connectors	X	
38.	Rectangular connectors	X	
39.	Terminal blocks - modular	X	
40.	Terminal blocks - non-modular	X	
41.	Grounding modules	X	
42.	Pressure seals	X	

[Amdt 20/4]

## Appendix B to AMC 20-22 – EWIS Minimum Initial Training Programme for Group 3 through 8

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

- Target Group 3: Qualified staff performing electrical/avionic engineering on in-service aeroplane.
- Target Group 4: Qualified staff performing general maintenance/inspections not involving wire maintenance (LRU change is not considered wire maintenance)
- Target Group 5: Qualified staff performing other engineering or planning work on in-service aeroplane
- Target Group 6: Other service staff with duties in proximity to electrical wiring interconnection systems
- Target Group 7: Flight Deck Crew
- Target Group 8: Cabin Crew

TARGET GROUPS	3	4	5	6	7	8
<b>A – GENERAL ELECTRICAL WIRING INTERCONNECTION SYSTEM PRACTICES</b> Know or demonstrate the safe handling of aeroplane electrical systems, line replaceable units (LRU), tooling, troubleshooting procedures, and electrical measurement.						
1. Safety practices		X		X	X	X
2. Electrostatic discharge sensitive (ESDS) device handling and protection		X				
7. LRU replacement general practices		X				
<b>B – WIRING PRACTICES DOCUMENTATION</b> Know or demonstrate the construction and navigation of the applicable aeroplane wiring system overhaul or practices manual.						
8. Standard wiring practices manual structure/overview	X					
9. Chapter cross-reference index	X					
10. Important data and tables	X					
11. Wiring diagram manuals	X					
12. Other documentation as applicable	X					
<b>C – INSPECTION</b> Know the different types of inspections, human factors in inspections, zonal areas and typical damages.						
13. General visual inspection (GVI), detailed inspection (DET), special detailed inspection (SDI), and zonal inspection, and their criteria and standards		X	X			
14. Human factors in inspection			X			
15. Zonal areas of inspection			X			
16. Wiring system damage		X	X	Low level	Low level	Low level
<b>D – HOUSEKEEPING</b> Know the contamination sources, materials, cleaning and protection procedures.						

17.	Aeroplane external contamination sources		X		X	X	X
18.	Aeroplane internal contamination sources		X		X	X	X
19.	Other contamination sources		X		X	X	X
20.	Contamination protection planning	X	X	X			
21.	Protection during aeroplane maintenance and repair	X	X	X			
22.	Cleaning processes	X	X	X	X		
<b>E – WIRE</b> <b>Know or demonstrate the correct identification of different wire types, their inspection criteria and damage tolerance, repair and preventative maintenance procedures.</b>							
23.	Wire identification, type and construction	X					
24.	Insulation qualities and damage limits	X					
25.	Inspection criteria and standards of wire and wire bundles	X					
26.	Wire bundle installation practices	X					
27.	Typical damage and areas found (aeroplane specific)	X	X	X	Low level	Low level	Low level
28.	Maintenance and repair procedures	X					
29.	Sleeving	X					
30.	Unused wires - termination and storage	X					
31.	Electrical bonding and grounds	X	X Bond	X			
<b>F – CONNECTIVE DEVICES</b> <b>Know or demonstrate the procedures to identify, inspect, and find the correct repair for typical types of connective devices found on the applicable aeroplane.</b>							
32.	General connector types and identification	X					
33.	Cautions and protections	X					
34.	Visual inspection procedures	X					
35.	Typical damage found	X					
36.	Repair procedures	X					

[Amdt 20/4]

## Appendix C to AMC 20-22 – Curriculum and Lessons Plan

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

### Electrical Wiring Interconnection System Curriculum

#### 1 OVERVIEW

This training is targeted at each person who performs aeroplane maintenance, inspections, alterations or repairs on EWIS and/or structure. After training, the person is able to properly evaluate the EWIS and effectively use the manufacturers Chapter 20 Wiring System overhaul manual for that aeroplane. The training programme must include: wiring system condition, applicable repair schemes, wiring modifications and ancillary repairs to wiring systems and components. All of the training components are integrated to maintain wiring system quality and airworthiness of the aeroplane.

#### 2 OBJECTIVES

Depending on the modules taught, the person shows competency in the following skills:

- a. Know or demonstrate the safe handling of aeroplane electrical systems, Line Replaceable Units (LRU), tooling, troubleshooting procedures, and electrical measurement.
- b. Know or demonstrate the construction and navigation of the applicable aeroplane wiring system overhaul or wiring practices manual.
- c. Know the different types of inspections, human factors in inspections, zonal areas and typical damages.
- d. Know the contamination sources, materials, cleaning and protection procedures.
- e. Know or demonstrate the correct identification of different wire types, their inspection criteria, and damage tolerance, repair and preventative maintenance procedures.
- f. Know or demonstrate the procedures to identify, inspect and find the correct repair for typical types of connective devices found on the applicable aeroplane.
- g. Demonstrate the procedures for replacement of all parts of typical types of connective devices found on the applicable aeroplane.

#### 3 SCOPE

The course is to be used by training providers for all maintenance persons at any stage in their careers. The person can be trained to the appropriate level using the applicable modules, depending on the person's experience, work assignment and operator's policy.

#### MODULE A – GENERAL ELECTRICAL WIRING INTERCONNECTION SYSTEM PRACTICES:

- (1) Safety practices
- (2) ESDS device handling and protection
- (3) Tools, special tools and equipment
- (4) Verify calibration/certification of instruments, tools, and equipment
- (5) Required wiring checks using the Troubleshooting Procedures and charts
- (6) Measurement and troubleshooting using meters
- (7) LRU replacement general practices

#### MODULE B – WIRING PRACTICES DOCUMENTATION:

- (1) Chapter 20 structure/overview
- (2) Chapter 20 cross-reference index
- (3) Chapter 20 important data and tables
- (4) Wiring Diagram Manual
- (5) Other documentation (as applicable)

**MODULE C – INSPECTION:**

- (1) Special inspections
- (2) Criteria and standards
- (3) Human factors in inspection
- (4) Zonal areas of inspection
- (5) Wiring system damage

**MODULE D – HOUSEKEEPING:**

- (1) Aeroplane external contamination sources
- (2) Aeroplane internal contamination sources
- (3) Other contamination sources
- (4) Contamination protection planning
- (5) Protection during aeroplane maintenance and repair
- (6) Cleaning processes

**MODULE E – WIRE:**

- (1) Identification, type and construction
- (2) Insulation qualities
- (3) Inspection criteria and standards of wire and wire bundles
- (4) Wire bundle installation practices
- (5) Typical damage and areas found (aeroplane specific)
- (6) Maintenance and repair procedures
- (7) Sleeving
- (8) Unused wires - termination and storage
- (9) Electrical bonding and grounds

**MODULE F – CONNECTIVE DEVICES:**

- (1) General types and identification
- (2) Cautions and protections
- (3) Visual inspection procedures
- (4) Typical damage found
- (5) Repair procedures

**MODULE G – CONNECTIVE DEVICE REPAIR:**

- (1) Circular connectors
- (2) Rectangular connectors
- (3) Terminal blocks - modular
- (4) Terminal blocks - non-modular
- (5) Grounding modules
- (6) Pressure seals

**MODULE A: GENERAL ELECTRICAL WIRING INTERCONNECTION SYSTEM PRACTICE**

**1 OVERVIEW**

Through Module A, the instructor lays the groundwork of safe, effective maintenance and repair of the aeroplane EWIS and LRU removal and replacement, including BITE test, without damage to the aeroplane or injury to the student.

The instructor may vary the depth and scope of the topics to be covered, depending on the type of aeroplane to be maintained and skills of the persons.

**2 OBJECTIVES**

After this module is complete, the student is able to demonstrate the following skills:

- a. Know the safety procedures of normal and non-normal maintenance procedures so that the person can protect himself/herself and the aeroplane.
- b. Recognise ESDS equipment and demonstrate standard anti-static procedures so that no damage occurs to that equipment.
- c. Demonstrate the correct use of hand tools including specialised and automated tools and equipment.
- d. Verify the calibration of electrical measuring instruments, tools and equipment so that correct maintenance procedures may be carried out.
- e. Demonstrate the process and procedures to successfully use the troubleshooting procedures and charts of current aeroplane faults and know re-occurring problems causing “No Fault Found” on removed LRU.
- f. Demonstrate the correct use of electrical meters for measuring voltage, current, resistance, continuity, insulation and short to ground.
- g. Know the removal and replacement techniques so that no damage will occur to the LRU or aeroplane connector.

**3 STRATEGIES**

Normal classroom lecture can be used for the majority of the training. The following strategies can be used to expedite learning and are recommended to the instructor:

ESDS handling and protection	Multimedia/training aids
Calibration/certification of instruments, tools, and equipment	Company policy
Wiring checks using the Troubleshooting Procedures and charts	Aeroplane manuals
Measurement and troubleshooting using meters	Meters and circuits
LRU removal and replacement	Aeroplane manuals

---

**MODULE A – GENERAL ELECTRICAL WIRING INTERCONNECTION SYSTEM PRACTICES:**

- 1 Safety Practices
  - a. Current is lethal - First aid
  - b. Applying power to the aeroplane
  - c. Isolating the circuit
  - d. Aeroplane warnings
  - e. Human factors
- 2 ESDS Device Handling and Protection
  - a. Sources of electrostatic discharge
  - b. Soft and hard failures
  - c. ESDS safety procedures
  - d. ESDS handling/packing procedures
- 3 Tools, Special Tools and Equipment
  - a. General hand tools
  - b. Specialised tools
  - c. Automated tools and equipment
- 4 Verify Calibration/Certification of Instruments, Tools and Equipment
  - a. Tools requiring certification
  - b. Determining certification requirements
  - c. Typical problems
- 5 Required Wiring Checks Using the Troubleshooting Procedures and charts
  - a. Troubleshooting procedures manual (all chapters)
  - b. Aeroplane Maintenance Manual/Illustrated Parts Catalogue
  - c. Wiring schematics/troubleshooting graphics
  - d. Wiring diagrams
  - e. The process of troubleshooting
  - f. Testing of LRU connectors
  - g. Troubleshooting exercises
  - h. Company “No Fault Found” policy and data
- 6 Measurement and Troubleshooting Using Meters
  - a. Voltage, current and resistance
  - b. Continuity
  - c. Insulation
  - d. Short to ground
  - e. Loop impedance

- 7 LRU Replacement - General Practices
  - a. Different retention devices
  - b. Certification considerations (e.g. CAT 2/CAT3 Landing)
  - c. LRU re-racking procedures
  - d. "No Fault Found" data (aeroplane specific)
  - e. Built-in test equipment (BITE)

## **MODULE B: WIRING PRACTICES DOCUMENTATION**

### **1 OVERVIEW**

Through Module B, the instructor lays the groundwork for safe, effective maintenance and repair of aeroplane EWIS. The intent of this module is to teach the person how to locate desired information in the Chapter 20 Wiring System overhaul manual, Wiring Diagram Manual and other applicable documentation. The instructor may vary the depth and scope of the topics to be covered, depending on the type of aeroplane to be maintained and skills of the persons.

### **2 OBJECTIVES**

After this module is complete, the person is able to demonstrate the following skills:

- a. Know the applicable Sub-Chapters and Section to follow during normal and non-normal electrical maintenance procedures.
- b. Demonstrate the use of the Cross-Reference Index, Chapter Table of Contents, and Subject Tables of Contents so as to find specific material within each Sub-Chapter and Section.
- c. Demonstrate the use of the associated tables for replacement of wire, connective devices and contacts, and associated components, including approved replacements.
- d. Demonstrate the use of the Wiring Diagram Manual.
- e. Demonstrate the use of other documentation (as applicable).

### **3 STRATEGIES**

Normal classroom lecture can be used for the majority of the training. The Chapter 20 Wiring Practices Manual, Wiring Diagram Manual, and other applicable documentation should be made available to the class so that hands-on exploration of the material can be achieved.

## **MODULE B – WIRING PRACTICES DOCUMENTATION:**

- 1 Chapter 20 Structure/Overview
  - a. Table of contents
  - b. Sub-chapter titles
  - c. Section structure
  - d. General procedures

- 2 Chapter 20 Cross-Reference Index
  - a. Cross-reference index – Alphanumeric
  - b. Cross-reference index – Standard Part number
  - c. Cross-reference index – Suppliers
  - e. Equivalence tables – Std Part Numbers EN-ASN-NSA
- 3 Chapter 20 Important Data and Tables
  - a. Contact crimp tools, insertion/extraction tools
  - b. Wire Insulation removal tools
  - c. Electrical cable binding
  - d. Wire type codes and part numbers identification
  - e. Connective devices types and contacts
  - f. Terminal blocks and terminations
  - g. Terminal blocks modules, grounding modules and contacts
  - h. Cleaning procedures
  - i. Repair procedures
- 4 Wiring Diagram Manual (WDM)
  - a. Front matter
  - b. Diagrams
  - c. Charts
  - d. Lists
- 5 Other documentation (as applicable)

## **MODULE C: INSPECTION**

### **1 OVERVIEW**

Through Module C, the instructor lays the groundwork for safe, effective maintenance and repair of aeroplane wiring systems, by teaching the skills of inspection so as to identify wiring system damage. The instructor may vary the depth and scope of the topics to be covered, depending on the type of aeroplane to be maintained and skills of the persons.

### **2 OBJECTIVES**

After this module is complete, the person is able to demonstrate the following skills:

- a. Know the different types of inspections: General Visual Inspection (GVI), Detailed Inspection (DET), Zonal Inspection and Enhanced Zonal Analysis Procedure (EZAP).
- b. Know the criteria and standards of inspection so that the person knows which tools are used to ensure inspection procedures and standards are achieved, which leads to all defects being found.
- c. Know the effects of fatigue and complacency during inspection and how to combat these effects (Human Factors).

- d. Know the specific zonal inspection requirements related to system affiliation and environmental conditions.
- e. Recognise typical wiring system damage, such as hot gas, fluid contamination, external mechanically induced damage, chafing, corrosion, signs of overheating of wire, wire bundles, connective and control device assemblies.

### **3 STRATEGIES**

Normal classroom lecture can be used for the majority of the training. ATA 117 video and colour photos of actual wiring system damage could be used to show typical problems found on the aeroplane. Examples of discrepancies should be made available to the student. [AMC 20-21](#), Programme to Enhance Aeroplane EWIS Maintenance is recommended as a source of typical aeroplane wiring installations and areas of concern.

## **MODULE C – INSPECTION**

1. Special Inspections
  - a. General Visual Inspection (GVI)
  - b. Detailed Inspection (DET)
  - c. Zonal Inspection
  - d. Enhanced Zonal Analysis Procedure (EZAP)
2. Criteria and Standards
  - a. Tools
  - b. Criteria/standards
  - c. Procedures of inspection
3. Human Factors in Inspection
  - a. Fatigue
  - b. Complacency
4. Zonal Areas of Inspection
  - a. Zonal areas of inspection
  - b. Zonal inspection procedures and standards
5. Wiring System Damage
  - a. Swarf/FOD/metal shavings
  - b. External mechanically induced damage
  - c. Hot gas
  - d. Fluid contamination
  - e. Vibration/chafing
  - f. Corrosion
  - g. Signs of overheating

---

**MODULE D: HOUSEKEEPING****1 OVERVIEW**

Through Module D, the instructor lays the groundwork for safe, effective maintenance and repair of aeroplane EWIS, by teaching housekeeping strategies, so as to keep the EWIS free of contamination. The Instructor may vary the depth and scope of the topics to be covered, depending on the type of aeroplane to be maintained and skills of the persons.

**2 OBJECTIVES**

After this module is complete, the person is able to demonstrate the following skills:

- a. Recognise external contamination and other damage due to external environmental conditions.
- b. Know the aeroplane internal contamination sources so that inspection processes can be effectively carried out and contamination damage easily recognised.
- c. Recognise other possible contamination sources.
- d. Know the planning procedures to be followed, on EWIS areas in different parts of the aeroplane.
- e. Know the protection procedures and processes to protect the EWIS during maintenance and repair.
- f. Know the process of cleaning wiring systems during maintenance and repair.

**3 STRATEGIES**

Normal classroom lecture can be used for the majority of the training. ATA 117 video and colour photos of actual EWIS contamination could be used to show typical problems found on the aeroplane. Relevant Aeroplane Maintenance Manual and/or Chapter 20 Wiring Practices procedures should be used. The ATSRAC Task Group 1, Non-Intrusive Inspection Final Report could be used to identify typical housekeeping issues. [AMC 20-21](#), Programme to Enhance Aeroplane EWIS Maintenance is recommended as a source of typical aeroplane wiring installations and areas of concern.

**MODULE D – HOUSEKEEPING****1 Aeroplane External Contamination Sources**

- a. De-ice fluids
- b. Water and rain
- c. Snow and ice
- d. Miscellaneous (e.g. cargo/beverage spillage)
- e. Air erosion

**2 Aeroplane Internal Contamination Sources**

- a. Hydraulic oils
- b. Engine and APU oils
- c. Fuel
- d. Greases

- 
- e. Galleys and toilets
  - f. Lint/Dust
  - g. Bleed air and hot areas
  - h. Hazardous materials
- 3 Other Contamination Sources
- a. Paint
  - b. Corrosion inhibitor
  - c. Drill shavings/Swarf
  - d. Foreign objects (screws, washers, rivets, tools, etc.)
  - e. Animal waste
- 4 Contamination Protection Planning
- a. Have a plan/types of plan/area mapping
  - b. Protection and Caution Recommendations
  - c. Procedures
  - d. Keep cleaning
- 5 Protection during Aeroplane Maintenance and Repair
- a. Recommended general maintenance protection procedures
  - b. Recommended airframe repair protection procedures
  - c. Recommended powerplant repair protection procedures
- 6 Cleaning Processes
- a. Fluid contamination
    - (1) Snow and ice
    - (2) De-ice fluid
    - (3) Cargo spillage
    - (4) Water and rain
    - (5) Galleys
    - (6) Toilets water waste
    - (7) Oils and greases
    - (8) Pressure washing
  - b. Solid contamination
    - (1) Drill shavings/Swarf
    - (2) Foreign objects (screws, washers, rivets, tools, etc.)
  - c. Environmental contamination
    - (1) Lint and dust
    - (2) Paint

- (3) Corrosion inhibitor
- (4) Animal waste

## **MODULE E: WIRE**

### **1 OVERVIEW**

Through Module E, the instructor lays the groundwork for safe, effective maintenance, alteration and repair of aeroplane EWIS by teaching wire selection and inspection strategies. The Instructor may vary the depth and scope of the topics to be covered, depending on the type of aeroplane to be maintained and skills of the persons.

### **2 OBJECTIVES**

After this module is complete, the person is able to demonstrate the following skills:

- a. Demonstrate the procedure used to identify specific wire types using the aeroplane manuals.
- b. Know from approved data different insulation types and their relative qualities.
- c. Know the inspection criteria for wire and wire bundles.
- d. Know the standard installation practices for wire and wire bundles (aeroplane specific).
- e. Know typical damage that can be found (aeroplane specific).
- f. Demonstrate the repair procedures for typical damage found on the student's type of aeroplane.
- g. Demonstrate the procedures to fitting differing types of sleeving (aeroplane specific).
- h. Know the procedures for termination and storage of unused wires.
- i. Know the correct installation practices for electrical bonds and grounds (aeroplane specific).

### **3 STRATEGIES**

Normal classroom lecture can be used for the majority of the training with hands-on practice for Section 6. Chapter 20 Wiring Practices, Wiring Diagram Manual and WDM Lists should be made available to the class to ensure hands-on use of the manual so that wire identification, inspection, installation and repair procedures can be fully explored. Examples of wire discrepancies should be made available to the student. The ATSRAC Task Group 1, Intrusive Inspection Final Report could be used to identify typical wire issues. [AMC 20-21](#), Programme to Enhance Aeroplane EWIS Maintenance is recommended as a source of typical aeroplane wiring installations and areas of concern.

---

**MODULE E – WIRE**

- 1 Identification, Type and Construction
  - a. Wire type codes – alphanumeric
  - b. Wire type codes – specification and standard part number
  - c. Wire type codes – specified wire and alternate
  - d. Manufacturer identification
- 2 Insulation Qualities
  - a. Types of insulation
  - b. Typical insulation damage and limitations
  - c. Carbon arcing
- 3 Inspection Criteria and Standards of Wire and Wire Bundles
  - a. Inspection of individual wiring
  - b. Inspection of wire bundles
- 4 Wire Bundle Installation Practices
  - a. Routing
  - b. Segregation rules
  - c. Clearance
  - d. Clamp inspection
  - e. Clamp removal and fitting
  - f. Conduit types and fitting
  - g. Raceways
  - h. Heat shields and drip shields
- 5 Typical Damage and Areas Found (aeroplane specific)
  - a. Vibration
  - b. Heat
  - c. Corrosion
  - d. Contamination
  - e. Personnel traffic passage
- 6 Maintenance and Repair Procedures
  - a. Wire damage assessment and classification
  - b. Approved repairs - improper repairs
  - c. Shielded wire repair
  - d. Repair techniques
  - e. Terminals and splices
  - f. Preventative maintenance procedures

- 
- 7 Sleeving
    - a. Identification sleeves
    - b. Shrink sleeves
    - c. Screen braid grounding crimp sleeves
    - d. Screen braid grounding solder sleeves
  - 8 Unused Wires - Termination and Storage
    - a. Termination – end caps
    - b. Storage and attachment
  - 9 Electrical Bonding and Grounds
    - a. Inspection standards
    - b. Primary Bonding (HIRF protection)
    - c. Secondary Bonding (System grounding)
    - d. Lightning strikes

## **MODULE F: CONNECTIVE DEVICES**

### **1 OVERVIEW**

Through Module F, the instructor lays the groundwork for safe, effective maintenance, alteration and repair of aeroplane EWIS by teaching the identification, inspection and repair of connective devices found on the aeroplane. The instructor may vary the depth and scope of the topics to be covered, depending on the type of aeroplane to be maintained and skills of the persons.

### **2 OBJECTIVES**

After this module is complete, the person is able to demonstrate the following skills:

- a. Know the general types and positive identification of connective devices (aeroplane specific).
- b. Know the various safety procedures, cautions and warnings prior to inspection.
- c. Know the relevant visual inspection procedures for each type of connector so that any internal or external damage can be found.
- d. Recognise typical external and internal damage to the connector.
- e. Demonstrate where to find the relevant repair schemes from Chapter 20 for connector repair.

### **3 STRATEGIES**

Normal classroom lecture can be used for the majority of the training. The Chapter 20 Wiring Practices manual should be made available to the class so that hands-on use of the manual can be ensured. Connector identification, inspection and repair procedures should be fully explored. Colour photographs of typical external damage and internal damage could be used to show problems on the aeroplane. The ATSRAC Task Group 1, Non-Intrusive Inspection and Intrusive Inspection Final Report, Chapter 7, could be used to identify typical connector issues. [AMC 20-](#)

[21](#), Programme to Enhance Aeroplane EWIS Maintenance is recommended as a source of typical aeroplane wiring installations and areas of concern.

## **MODULE F – CONNECTIVE DEVICES**

- 1 General Types and Identification
  - a. Part number identification
  - b. Reference tables
  - c. Specific connective devices chapters
- 2 Cautions and Protections
  - a. Safety precautions
  - b. Maintenance precautions
- 3 Visual Inspection Procedures
  - a. Installed inspection criteria
  - b. Removed inspection criteria
- 4 Typical Damage Found
  - a. Exterior damage
  - b. Internal damage
- 5 Repair Procedures
  - a. Finding the correct section
  - b. Finding the correct part
  - c. Finding the correct tooling
  - d. Confirming the correct repair

## **MODULE G: CONNECTIVE DEVICES REPAIR**

### **1 OVERVIEW**

Through Module G, the instructor lays the groundwork for safe, effective maintenance, alteration and repair of aeroplane EWIS. This module is primarily a hands-on class, emphasising the repair and replacement of connective devices found on the aeroplane. This list can be used to cover typical connectors for aeroplanes and can be adjusted to suit training requirements. The instructor may vary the depth and scope of the topics to be covered, depending on the type of aeroplane to be maintained and skills of the persons.

### **2 OBJECTIVE**

After this module is complete, the person will have the following skills:

- a. Demonstrate the replacement of components for circular connectors.
- b. Demonstrate the replacement of components for rectangular connectors.
- c. Demonstrate the replacement of components for terminal blocks - modular.
- d. Demonstrate the replacement of components for terminal blocks - non-modular.

- e. Demonstrate the replacement of components for grounding modules.
- f. Demonstrate the replacement of pressure seals.

### **3 STRATEGIES**

This class is primarily a hands-on class to give the student motor skills in the repair of connective devices from their aeroplane. The Chapter 20 Wiring Practices Manual and the appropriate connective devices should be made available to the class so that repair procedures can be fully explored. Photographs of typical internal conditions and external damage could be made available. It is recommended that **MODULE F: CONNECTORS** should precede this module. [AMC 20-21](#), Programme to Enhance Aeroplane EWIS Maintenance is recommended as a source of typical aeroplane wiring installations and areas of concern.

## **MODULE G – CONNECTIVE DEVICES REPAIR**

- 1 Circular Connectors
  - a. Disassembly
  - b. Back-shell maintenance
  - c. Contact extraction and insertion
  - d. Contact crimping
  - e. Assembly and strain relief
- 2 Rectangular Connectors
  - a. Disassembly
  - b. Back-shell maintenance
  - c. Contact extraction and insertion
  - d. Contact Crimping
  - e. Assembly and strain relief
- 3 Terminal Blocks - Modular
  - a. Disassembly
  - b. Contact extraction and insertion
  - c. Contact Crimping
  - d. Assembly and strain relief
- 4 Terminal Block – Non-modular
  - a. Disassembly
  - b. Terminal Lug Crimping
  - c. Terminal Lug Stacking
  - d. Assembly, torque and strain relief

- 
- 5 Grounding Modules
    - a. Disassembly
    - b. Contact extraction and insertion
    - c. Contact Crimping
    - d. Assembly and strain relief
  - 6 Pressure Seals
    - a. Disassembly
    - b. Maintenance
    - c. Assembly and strain relief

[Amdt 20/4]

## AMC 20-23

### AMC 20-23 Development of Electrical Standard Wiring Practices documentation

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

#### 1 PURPOSE

This AMC provides acceptable means of compliance for developing an electrical standard wiring practices document for operators, holders of and applicants for type certificates (TC), applicants for supplemental type certificates (STC) and maintenance organisations. The information in this AMC is based on recommendations submitted to the FAA from the Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee (ATSRAC). JAA and latterly EASA are participating members of ATSRAC. The information in this AMC is derived from the maintenance, inspection, and alteration best practices identified through extensive research by ATSRAC working groups and Federal government working groups. This AMC provides a means, but not the only means of creating a document that meets the expectations of CS 25.1529 and Appendix H.

#### 2 OBJECTIVE

The objective of this AMC is to promote a common format for documents containing standard practices for electrical wiring, and to provide a summary of the minimum content expected to be contained within that document. Although the title of the document or manual is left to the discretion of the organisation, such a document will be referred to in this AMC as the Electrical Standard Wiring Practices Manual (ESWPM).

Titles in other organisations for such document may be Standard Wiring Practices Manual (SWPM) or Electrical Standard Practices Manual (ESPM).

#### 3 APPLICABILITY

The guidance provided in this AMC is applicable to all operators, holders of and applicants for TC, applicants for STC and maintenance organisations.

#### 4 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- Regulation (EC) No. 216/2008<sup>1</sup>
- Regulation No. 1702/2003<sup>2</sup>
- Regulation No. 2042/2003<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/EC (OJ L 79, 19.3.2008, p.1).

<sup>2</sup> Commission Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 of 24 September 2003 laying down implementing rules for the airworthiness and environmental certification of aircraft and related products, parts and appliances, as well as for the certification of design and production organisations (OJ L 243, 27.9.2003, p. 6). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 287/2008 (OJ L 87, 29.3.2008, p.3).

<sup>3</sup> Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 of 20 November 2003 on the continuing airworthiness of aircraft and aeronautical products, parts and appliances, and on the approval of organisations and personnel involved in these tasks (OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 376/2007 of (OJ L 94, 4.4.2007, p. 18).

- EASA Certification Specification CS-25 Large Aeroplanes<sup>1</sup>
- EU-OPS Commercial Air Transportation (Aeroplanes)<sup>2</sup>

## 5 RELATED READING MATERIAL

### a. EASA AMC-20

- [AMC 20-21](#), Programme to Enhance Aircraft Electrical Wiring Interconnection System Maintenance
- [AMC 20-22](#), Aircraft Electrical Wiring Interconnection System Training Programme

### b. FAA 14 CFR Parts

- Part 21, Certification Procedures for Products and Parts
- Part 25, Airworthiness Standards, Transport Category Airplanes
- Part 43, Maintenance, Preventive Maintenance, Rebuilding, and Alteration
- Part 91, General Operating and Flight Rules
- Part 119, Certification: Air Carriers and Commercial Operators
- Part 121, Operating Requirements: Domestic, Flag, and Supplemental Operations
- Part 125, Certification and Operations: Airplanes Having a Seating Capacity of 20 or More Passengers or a Maximum Payload Capacity of 6,000 pounds or More
- Part 129, Operations: Foreign Air Carriers and Foreign Operators of U.S.-Registered Aircraft Engaged in Common Carriage
- Part 135, Operating Requirements: Commuter and On-demand Operations and Rules Governing Persons on Board such Aircraft
- Part 145, Repair Stations

### c. FAA Advisory Circulars (AC)

- AC 25-16, Electrical Fault and Fire Protection and Prevention
- AC 25.981-1B, Fuel Tank Ignition Source Prevention Guidelines
- AC 43-12A, Preventive Maintenance
- AC 43.13-1B, Acceptable Methods, Techniques and Practices for Repairs and Alterations to Aircraft
- AC 43-204, Visual Inspection for Aircraft
- AC 43-206, Avionics Cleaning and Corrosion Prevention/Control
- AC 65-15A, Airframe and Powerplant Mechanics Airframe Handbook, Chapter 11. Aircraft Electrical Systems

<sup>1</sup> Executive Director Decision No 2003/2/RM of 14 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for large aeroplanes («CS-25»). Decision as last amended by Executive Director Decision No 2008/006/R of 29 August 2008 (CS-25 Amendment 5).

<sup>2</sup> Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91 of 16 December 1991 on the harmonisation of technical requirements and administrative procedures in the field of civil aviation (OJ L 373, 31.12.1991, p. 4). Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 8/2008 of 11 December 2007 (OJ L 10, 12.1.2008, p. 1).

- AC 25.17XX Certification of EWIS on Transport Category Airplanes
- d. Reports
- Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 1 and 2, Aging Systems, Final Report  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_1&2\\_Final%20August\\_2000.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_1&2_Final%20August_2000.pdf)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 3, Final Report  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_3\\_Final.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_3_Final.pdf)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee, Task 4, Final Report, Standard Wiring Practices  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_4\\_Final\\_Report\\_Sept\\_2000.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_4_Final_Report_Sept_2000.pdf)
  - Transport Aircraft Intrusive Inspection Project, (An Analysis of the Wire Installations of Six Decommissioned Aircraft), Final Report, The Intrusive Inspection Working Group, December 29, 2000  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/intrusive\\_inspection.html](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/intrusive_inspection.html)
  - Aging Transport Systems Rulemaking Advisory Committee Task 7, Final Report, Electrical Standard Wire Practices Manual (ESWPM)  
[http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final\\_reports/Task\\_7\\_Final\\_Report-10-31-2002.pdf](http://www.mitreaasd.org/atrac/final_reports/Task_7_Final_Report-10-31-2002.pdf)
- e. Other Documents
- ATA Specification 117 (Wiring Maintenance Practices/Guidelines)
  - FAA Policy Statement Number ANM-01-04: System Wiring Policy for Certification of Part 25 Airplanes, June 25, 2001

## 6 DEFINITIONS

Consumable materials: Materials consumed during the maintenance or repair of EWIS which are not an eventual component of the EWIS.

Drip loop: The practice of looping a wire or wire bundle to provide a point lower than the adjacent connector for moisture to collect.

Electrical Wiring Interconnection System (EWIS): See CS 25.1701.

Legacy document: An organisation's ESWPM existing prior to the adoption of the requirements of H25.5(a)(2) of Appendix H to CS-25.

Master Breakdown Index (MBI): An index developed to supplement a legacy document. An MBI provides a means of finding information without the need for reformatting the legacy SWPM. An example of an MBI is presented at the end of paragraph 9 of this AMC.

Separation: Defined as either spatial distance, or physical barrier, between wiring from adjacent structure, systems or wiring; or the practice of installing wiring supporting redundant or multi-channel systems.

Standard practices: Industry-wide methods for repair and maintenance of electrical wire, cable bundles and coaxial cables. Procedures and practices for the inspection, installation and removal of electrical systems components including, but not limited to: wire splices, bundle attachment methods, connectors and electrical terminal connections, bonding/grounding, etc.

## **7 STANDARDISED ESWPM FORMAT**

A representative example of the standard format and sequence of major topics included within an ESWPM is contained within [Appendix A](#) of this AMC.

## **8 MINIMUM ESWPM CONTENT**

A definition and description of ESWPM minimum content is necessary to ensure that operators and repair stations have at their disposal the information necessary to properly maintain their airplanes. Although the original airframe manufacturer's electrical installation design philosophy concerning components, installation procedures, segregation rules, etc. need not be included within the ESWPM, sufficient minimum information should be provided to enable the end-user to maintain the aircraft in a condition that conforms to the electrical installation design philosophy of the original manufacturer.

The content of any ESWPM should include, at a minimum, the following:

a. Front Matter

Provide information regarding the content and use of the ESWPM. Describe changes to the document in a record of revisions. Ensure the document contains a table of contents or index to allow the user to readily retrieve necessary information.

b. Safety Practices

Provide general instruction, cautions and warnings which describe safe practices implemented prior to the start of any or all of the specific standard electrical practices contained within the core of the ESWPM. Safety cautions, warnings or notes specific to the procedure shall be placed within the body of the procedure.

c. Cleaning Requirements and Methods

"Protect, clean as you go" philosophy.

Non-destructive methods for cleaning dust, dirt, foreign object debris (FOD), lavatory fluid, and other contaminants produced by an aircraft environment from wiring systems.

Wire replacement guidelines when an accumulation of contaminants, either on the surface and/or imbedded in the wire bundle, cannot be safely removed.

d. Wire and Cable Identification

(1) Specify requirements for wire and cable identification and marking to provide safety of operation, safety to maintenance personnel, and ease of maintenance.

(2) Specify methods of direct wire marking. Also, identify specific requirements and cautions associated with certain types of wire marking.

e. Wire and Cable Damage Limits

Specify limits to positively identify the thresholds where damaged wire/cable replacement may be necessary and where repairs can be safely accomplished. Establish limits for each applicable wire/cable type, if necessary.

(1) Include damage limits for terminals, studs, connectors, and other wiring system components, as necessary.

f. Installation Clamping and Routing Requirements

(1) Specify the requirements for the installation of wiring systems with respect to physical attachment to the aircraft structure. These requirements must be

compatible with the different environments applicable to aircraft and aircraft systems.

- (2) Specify applicable methods of clamping, support, termination, and routing to facilitate installation, repair, and maintenance of wires, wire bundles, and cabling.
- (3) Specify minimum bend radii for different types of wire and cable.
- (4) Specify minimum clearance between wiring and other aircraft systems and aircraft structure.
- (5) Include the requirements for the installation of wiring conduit with respect to physical attachment, routing, bend radii, drain holes, and conduit end coverings.
- (6) Emphasise special wiring protective features, such as spatial separation, segregation, heat shielding, and moisture protection that are required to be maintained throughout the life of the aircraft.
- (7) Ensure necessary information for the maintenance of bonding, grounding and lightning, high-intensity radio frequency (L/HIRF) provisions is included.
- (8) Include information on the use and maintenance of wire protective devices, conduits, shields, sleeving etc. (this bullet is deleted in the FAA AC).

g. Repair and Replacement Procedures

Describe methods to safely repair and/or replace wiring and wiring system components.

- (1) Include types and maximum numbers of splice repairs for wiring and any limitations on the use of splices. When splicing wire, environmental splices are highly recommended over non-environmental splices. Guidance should be provided on how long a temporary splice may be left in the wire.
- (2) Specify procedures for the repair, replacement, and maintenance of connectors, terminals, modular terminal blocks, and other wiring components.

h. Inspection Methods

In wiring inspection methods, include a general visual inspection (GVI), or a detailed inspection (DET), as determined by the Enhanced Zonal Analysis Procedure (EZAP). Typical damage includes heat damage, chafing, cracked insulation, arcing, insulation delaminating, corrosion, broken wire or terminal, loose terminals, incorrect bend radii, contamination, and deteriorated repairs.

- (1) Identify detailed inspections and, where applicable, established and emerging new technologies non-destructive test methods to complement the visual inspection process.

Whenever possible, ensure that inspection methods can detect wiring problems without compromising the integrity of the installation.

i. Customised data

Provide a location and procedures that allow users to include customised or unique data such as that relating to STC, operator-unique maintenance procedures, etc.

A comprehensive listing of the typical content included within an ESWPM, including the minimum required content described above, is contained within [Appendix A](#) of this AMC.

## 9 ALTERNATIVE PROCEDURE FOR LEGACY DOCUMENTS

The definition of a new layout and chapter format may require each organisation with an existing ESWPM to reformat and to republish using the standardised format. Whether the organisation produces a stand-alone manual or provides the electrical standard practices as Chapter 20 of a wiring diagram manual, the resultant reorganisation would cause a significant economical impact for both the authoring organisation and their end-users.

To address this concern, a conversion tool, identified in the last paragraph of this chapter, was devised which takes the following variables into account:

- Effects on manufacturers’ current technical document editorial policy as it exists in current legacy documents.
- Costs resulting from an immediate major manual overhaul.
- Inconvenience to end-users who are accustomed to the format they are currently using.

When using a traditional paper format ESWPM, the most efficient method of retrieving standard procedures and maintenance information has traditionally been to search in:

- the table of contents (TOC) and/or
- the indexes (i.e., alphanumerical index and/or numerical index, as available).

The ease and speed with which information may be found with these methods relies heavily on the quality of the TOC and/or the indexes. For aircraft maintenance technicians needing to locate and extract the pertinent and applicable data necessary to perform a satisfactory design modification or maintenance action, finding relevant data may be time-consuming.

When using an electronic format, a search engine can often be used. This allows the user to bypass the TOC or indexes in finding the needed procedure or data. By searching with such alternative methods, a user can find information without needing to know the rules, such as ATA references, governing assignment of the subject matter to its place in the TOC.

The use of a conversion tool, identified as a Master Breakdown Index (MBI) is one method of achieving a common format until existing legacy documents can be physically altered or digitised to an electronic format. The intent of the MBI is to supplement the TOC and existing indexes by providing to users a method of searching existing documents using topical information rather than by part number, alphabetic subject, or Chapter-Section-Subject reference. The arrangement of the MBI duplicates the standardised format described in Paragraph 7 of this AMC, but does not require complete rearrangement of legacy documents to achieve a common format. The MBI acts as a conversion key used to effectively convert an existing document arrangement into the proposed arrangement. In essence the MBI duplicates in paper form for legacy documents the electronic search engine for HTML-based documents.

This is an example of an MBI which could be used to mitigate the need for legacy documents to be reformatted to achieve the standardised format described above:

GROUP	MAJOR TOPIC	APPEARS IN THIS DOCUMENT AS SUBJECT
GENERAL DATA	SAFETY PRACTICES	20-10-10
	AIRPLANE ENVIRONMENTAL AREAS	20-20-12
	CONSUMABLE MATERIALS	20-00-11
	WIRING MATERIALS	20-10-13
	COMMON TOOLS	20-00-13
ELECTRICAL WIRING INTERCONNECT	EWIS PROTECTION DURING MAINTENANCE	20-10-20
	EWIS CLEANING	20-10-20

SYSTEM (EWIS) MAINTENANCE	EWIS INSPECTION	20-10-20
	EWIS TESTING	20-10-13
	EWIS DISASSEMBLY	20-10-19
	EWIS REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT	20-20-00
WIRING INSTALLATION	WIRE SEPARATION / SEGREGATION	20-10-11 20-10-12
	ELECTRICAL BONDS AND GROUNDS	20-30-60
	WIRE HARNESS INSTALLATION	20-10-17 20-10-18 Installation of Sleeves on Wiring
WIRING ASSEMBLY	WIRE AND CABLE TYPES	20-00-15
	WIRE MARKING	20-60-01
	WIRE HARNESS ASSEMBLY	20-50-01
	WIRE INSULATION AND CABLE JACKET REMOVAL	20-90-12
	TERMINATION TYPE (SPECIFICS OF TERMINATIONS)	20-61-44
ELECTRICAL DEVICES	DEVICE TYPE (SPECIFICS OF ELECTRICAL DEVICE)	20-80-09 Assembly of Leach Relay Sockets
SPECIFIC SYSTEM WIRING	UNIQUE WIRING ASSEMBLIES/INSTALLATIONS	20-73-00 Fuel Quantity Indicating System
AIRLINE CUSTOMISED DATA	AIRLINE SPECIFIED	20-91-00

[Amdt 20/4]

## Appendix A: Groups, Major Topics, Standardised Sequence and Description of Minimum Content

*ED Decision 2008/007/R*

GROUP	MAJOR TOPIC	DESCRIPTION
GENERAL DATA	SAFETY PRACTICES	Safety regulations and general safety precautions to prevent injury to personnel and damage to the airplane
	AIRPLANE ENVIRONMENTAL AREAS	Definition of types of areas upon which wiring configuration and wiring component selection is constrained
	CONSUMABLE MATERIALS	Wiring maintenance processing materials (solvents, aqueous cleaners, lubricants, etc.)
	WIRING MATERIALS	Materials that become an integral part of the wiring configuration excluding wire and cable, e.g., sleeves, shield material, tie material, sealants, etc.
	COMMON TOOLS	Description and operation of common tools
EWIS MAINTENANCE	EWIS PROTECTION DURING MAINTENANCE	Procedures to protect EWIS during airplane maintenance and modification
	EWIS CLEANING	In support of inspection as well as prevention of degradation and preparation for repair; recommended cleaning materials and procedures based on type of contamination
	EWIS INSPECTION	Criteria for correct installation, correct wiring assembly configuration; damage conditions and limits for wiring components (wire and cable, termination types, electrical devices); factors that warrant disassembly for inspection; determination of cause of damage
	EWIS TESTING	Wiring integrity testing
	EWIS DISASSEMBLY	Data and procedures in support of inspection, cleaning when applicable; also supports new wiring installation
	EWIS REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT	Repair of wiring installation, wiring assembly configuration, wiring components (wire and cable, wiring terminations, electrical devices); wire and cable replacement; wiring functional identification
WIRING INSTALLATION	WIRE SEPARATION/ SEGREGATION	Explanation of separation/segregation categories, separation/segregation identification, and necessary conditions for maintaining separation/segregation
	ELECTRICAL BONDS AND GROUNDS	Bond surface preparation, ground hardware configurations, bond integrity testing
	WIRE HARNESS INSTALLATION	Routing, supports; wiring protection, factors affecting wiring assembly configuration; connection to equipment, new wiring, removal from service
WIRING ASSEMBLY	WIRE AND CABLE TYPES	The principal material component of airplane wiring; includes type identification and basic description; alternative wire types (replacements, substitutions)
	WIRE MARKING	Marking; applicable conditions
	WIRE HARNESS ASSEMBLY	Wiring assembly configuration: Assembly materials, layout, overall protection; factors affecting wiring installation

GROUP	MAJOR TOPIC	DESCRIPTION
	WIRE INSULATION AND CABLE JACKET REMOVAL	Wire and cable: Insulation removal, jacket removal; associated damage limits, tool description and operation
	<<TERMINATION TYPE>> e.g., SOURIAU 8950 SERIES CONNECTORS	Wiring terminations and accessories (connectors, terminal lugs, splices, backshells, etc.) grouped by termination type from simple to complex: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Common data or procedures by group (if any), e.g., tool description and operation, definition of internal damage and limits, internal cleaning, accessories</li> <li>b. By individual type - part numbers and description, definition of internal damage and limits (if not specified by common data), disassembly, assembly, installation</li> </ul>
ELECTRICAL DEVICES	<<DEVICE TYPE>> e.g., KLIXON 7274 SERIES CIRCUIT BREAKER	Electrical devices (circuit breakers, relays, switches, filters, lamps, etc.) grouped by device type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Common data or procedures by group (if any), e.g., tool description and operation, definition of internal damage and limits, internal cleaning, accessories</li> <li>b. By individual type - part numbers and description, definition of internal damage and limits (if not specified by common data), disassembly, assembly, installation</li> </ul>
SPECIFIC SYSTEM WIRING	SPECIFIC WIRING ASSEMBLY	For wiring that has a necessarily specific configuration (e.g. Primary Flight Control, Fuel Quantity Indicator System, etc.): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Applicable conditions for repair and replacement</li> <li>– Disassembly, assembly, installation, assembly integrity testing</li> </ul>
AIRLINE CUSTOMISED DATA	AIRLINE SPECIFIED	Reserved for airline use

[Amdt 20/4]

## AMC 20-24

### AMC 20-24 Certification Considerations for the Enhanced ATS in Non-Radar Areas using ADS-B Surveillance (ADS-B-NRA) Application via 1090 MHz Extended Squitter.

*ED Decision 2008/004/R*

#### 1 PREAMBLE

- 1.1 The scope of this Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) is the airworthiness and operational approval of the “Enhanced Air Traffic Services in Non-Radar Areas using ADS-B Surveillance” (ADS-B-NRA) application.
- 1.2 Operational benefits of the ADS-B-NRA application include the enhancement of the Air Traffic Control Service in current non-radar airspace. ADS-B-NRA would provide controllers with improved situational awareness of aircraft positions, and in consequence appropriate separation minima could be applied depending on the environment and the approval of the competent authority. Current non-radar airspace is controlled using procedural methods which demand large separations. ADS-B-NRA separation minima would be smaller than that used in current non-radar airspace. Alerting Services in non-radar airspace will be enhanced by more accurate information on the latest position of aircraft.  
  
Hence, it is expected that in areas where radar coverage is not feasible or not economically justified this application will provide benefits to capacity, efficiency and safety in a way similar to what would be achieved by use of SSR radar.
- 1.3 The European CASCADE programme is the mechanism for co-ordination of the European implementation of ADS-B (ADS-B-NRA and other ADS-B based ground and airborne surveillance applications). One of the programme’s aims is to ensure harmonisation and efficiency of implementation.
- 1.4 CASCADE uses the globally interoperable 1090 MHz Extended Squitter (ES) data link technology, compliant with ICAO SARPS in Annex 10 and in line with the recommendations of the Conference ICAO ANC-11.
- 1.5 In parallel, the FAA Airservices Australia and Nav Canada plan to deploy ADS-B using the same data link technology. It is assumed that aircraft will be interoperable with all implementation programmes using the EUROCAE/RTCA ADS-B-NRA standard (ED126, DO-303).
- 1.6 The meaning of abbreviations may be found in [Appendix 1](#).

#### 2 PURPOSE

- 2.1 This AMC is for operators seeking to operate in airspace classifications A to E where ADS-B-NRA services have been implemented by the Air Navigation Service Provider. It provides the basis for approval of aircraft systems and identifies operational considerations.

It may also assist other stakeholders by alerting them to aircraft requirements, operator procedures and related assumptions. These other stakeholders could include airspace planners, air traffic service providers, ATS system manufacturers, surveillance data

processing system manufacturers, communication service providers, aircraft and avionics equipment manufacturers and ATS regulatory authorities.

- 2.2 Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) illustrate a means, but not the only means, by which a requirement contained in an EASA airworthiness code or an implementing rule of the Basic Regulation, can be met.

An applicant correctly implementing this AMC in its entirety is assured of acceptance of compliance with the airworthiness considerations prior to use of the automatic dependent surveillance broadcast equipment. The operational considerations in this AMC are consistent with the operational considerations in the position paper 039 revision 8, that is endorsed by the JAA Operations Sectorial Team (OST). An Operator that, in conjunction with the airworthiness considerations, has correctly implemented this AMC should be ensured of acceptance of compliance with the operations rules applicable in JAA Member States.

### **3 SCOPE**

- 3.1 This AMC is applicable to the various ATS services contained in the ADS-B-NRA application, including separation services. This AMC fulfils the ADS-B-NRA Safety, Performance Requirements and Interoperability Requirements as established in EUROCAE ED-126<sup>1</sup>, using the methodology described in EUROCAE document ED-78A<sup>2</sup>.

AMC requirements are driven by the ED-126 requirements for a 5NM separation service (applicable to both en-route and TMA airspace).

Note: the actual choice of ADS-B-NRA ATC service provision, including of the applicable separation minima, is at the discretion of the implementing Air Traffic Service Provider, and should be based on local safety cases.

- 3.2 The AMC addresses the 1090 MHz Extended Squitter (ES) data link technology as the ADS-B transmit technology.<sup>3</sup>

### **4 REFERENCE DOCUMENTS**

#### **4.1 Related Regulatory Requirements**

- CS/FAR 25.1301, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1322, 25.1431, 25.1581, or equivalent requirements of CS 23, 27 and 29, if applicable.
- EU-OPS 1.230, 1.420, 1.845, 1.865, 1040, 1.1045 and 1.1060, as amended, or, if applicable, equivalent requirements of JAR-OPS 3.
- National operating regulations.

#### **4.2 Related EASA/JAA TGL/NPA/AMC (and FAA TSO) Material**

- ETSO-2C112b: Minimum Operational Performance Specification for SSR Mode S Transponders (adopts ED-73B)
- ETSO-129A (TSO-129/TSO-129A): Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS)

<sup>1</sup> ED-126: "Safety, Performance and Interoperability Requirements Document for ADS-B-NRA" Application

<sup>2</sup> ED-78A: Guidelines for approval of the provision and use of Air Traffic Services supported by Data communications

<sup>3</sup> Other, requirements compliant, ADS-B transmit systems (e.g. VDL Mode 4) are expected to be covered through separate regulatory material, as appropriate.

- ETSO-145/ETSO-146 (TSO-145/TSO-146; TSO-145A/TSO-146A): Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
  - AMC 20-13 Certification of Mode S Transponder Systems for Enhanced Surveillance
  - JAA Temporary Guidance leaflet (TGL) 13, Revision 1: Certification of Mode S Transponder Systems for Elementary Surveillance
- 4.3 Related FAA Advisory Circular Material
- FAA AC20-138A: Airworthiness Approval of Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) Equipment
- 4.4 Related EUROCAE/RTCA Standards
- ED-126 (DO-303): Safety, Performance and Interoperability Requirements Document for ADS-B-NRA Application (December 2006)
  - ED78A (DO-264): Guidelines for Approval of the Provision and Use of Air Traffic Services Supported by data communications;
  - ED-102 (DO-260): MOPS for 1090MHz for ADS-B
  - DO-260A: MOPS for 1090MHz for ADS-B
  - ED-73B (DO-181C): Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Secondary Surveillance Radar Mode S Transponders
  - ED-26: MPS for airborne altitude measurements and coding systems
- 4.5 Related ICAO Standards and Manuals
- PANS-ATM, Doc 4444, Amendment 4: Procedures for Air Navigation Services – Air Traffic Management
  - Annex 10 (Volume III & IV): Aeronautical Telecommunications

## 5 ASSUMPTIONS

Applicants should note that this AMC is based on the following assumptions.

### 5.1 Air Traffic Service Provider (ATSP)

ATSP implements the ADS-B-NRA application compliant with relevant requirements of the safety, performance and interoperability requirements of EUROCAE standard ED-126. Deviations from, or supplements to the established standards are assessed by the ATSP. Deviations that potentially impact the airborne domain should be assessed in coordination with relevant stakeholders as per ED78A.

Section 8 of this document, “Airworthiness Considerations”, lists permissible deviations from the target requirements related to the use of existing aircraft installations in support of initial implementations<sup>1</sup>. These deviations are currently considered operationally acceptable under the assumption that ground mitigation means as discussed in the following subsections, are implemented, at the discretion of the ATSP.

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer to sections 8.3.3, 8.3.5 and 8.8.2.

#### 5.1.1 Consistency of position quality indicators with associated position information at time of transmission

In cases where position quality indicators are not consistent with actual position quality (e.g., due to uncompensated latency in position transmissions), the implementing ATSP might:

- treat the higher quality indicator encodings as an advised lower one (e.g. NUC=7 may be treated as NUC=5) or,
- consider, for separation purpose, a quality indicator more stringent than the one stated in ED-126 (e.g. NUC =5 rather than NUC=4).

#### 5.1.2 Encoding of NUC Quality Indicator (DO-260 compliant transponders)

In order to mitigate the encoding of the NUC quality indicator based on accuracy quality information (HFOM) in the case of the unavailability of the GPS RAIM function (i.e. unavailability of HPL information), the implementing ATSP may, for instance, rely on the analysis of the frequency and duration of the unavailability of the RAIM function (as part of the local safety assessment).

#### 5.1.3 Transmission of generic emergency indicator only

In order to mitigate the transmission of only the generic emergency indicator (and not also the discrete codes selected by the flight crew), It is assumed that appropriate operational procedures have been established by the implementing ATSP and that pilots and controllers have been trained in their use.

#### 5.1.4 Communications Service Provider (CSP)

In case of CSPs providing (part of) the ground surveillance data communication services (operation of ADS-B ground stations and/or surveillance data networks), the CSP is committed to provide communication services to ATSPs with the expected Quality of Service as defined in a specific Service Level Agreement.

The Service Level Agreement is bilaterally agreed between the CSP and an ATSP. The terms of reference of the Service Level Agreement are consistent with the performance requirements of the ED-126 document.

### 5.2 Aeronautical Information Service

Each State publishes in its AIP/NOTAM, or equivalent notification, information related to the surveillance provisions, schedule, relevant procedures and confirmation of compliance with ED-126.

## 6 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The basic concept of ADS-B involves the broadcasting of surveillance information from aircraft via a data link.

To support the ADS-B-NRA application, the overall ADS-B avionics system (in the following referred to as “ADS-B System”) would need to provide the following functions:

- Adequate surveillance data provision capability;
- ADS-B message processing (encoding and generation);
- ADS-B message transmission (1090 MHz ES airborne surveillance data-link);

Whereas the latter two functions are incorporated in the 1090 MHz ES ADS-B transmit system, the surveillance data provision is realised through various on-board surveillance data sources (e.g. horizontal position source, barometric altimetry, ATC transponder control panel).

The horizontal position accuracy and integrity requirements of the ADS-B-NRA application are associated with quality indicators which form part of the air-to-ground ADS-B message exchange. The interconnecting avionics architecture is part of the ADS-B System.

## 7 FUNCTIONAL CRITERIA

Note: ICAO and EUROCAE/RTCA interoperability references, including aspects of range and resolution of the various data items listed hereafter, for both ED-102/DO-260 and DO-260A equipment-based ADS-B transmit systems, are presented in [Appendix 4](#).

7.1 In line with ED-126 (section 4), the ADS-B System needs to meet the following surveillance data transmission requirements, as a minimum:

- A unique ICAO 24 bit aircraft address (contained within each ADS-B message transmission);
- Horizontal Position (latitude and longitude);
- Horizontal Position Quality Indicator(s) (position integrity for both ED-102/DO-260 and DO-260A based ADS-B transmit systems, as well as accuracy for DO-260A based ADS-B transmit systems);
- Barometric Altitude;
- Aircraft Identification;
- Special Position Identification (SPI);
- Emergency Status and Emergency Indicator;
- Version Number (in aircraft operational status message, if avionics are DO-260A compliant).

7.2 In line with ED-126 (section 4), it is recommended that the ADS-B System meets the following optional surveillance data transmission requirement:

- Ground Velocity.

## 8 AIRWORTHINESS CONSIDERATIONS

### 8.1 Airworthiness Certification Objectives

For the purposes of the ADS-B-NRA application, the ADS-B System installed in the aircraft needs to be designed to deliver data that satisfy the airborne domain requirements in line with ED-126 Section 3.4, ([Appendix 3](#) provides a summary for information purposes).

### 8.2 ADS-B System

8.2.1 The (overall) ADS-B System integrity level with respect to the processing of horizontal position data and horizontal position quality indicators, covering the processing (and data exchange) chain from horizontal position data source(s) to ADS-B transmit data string encoding) needs to be 10<sup>-5</sup>/fh (refer also to Table 1 in [Appendix 3](#)).

*Note 1: this integrity level is required to adequately protect against the corruption of horizontal position data and horizontal position quality indicators when applying separation.*

*Note 2: These performance figures have been set for the “ADS-B out” function, to be used in ADS-B NRA operations as laid down by the Operational Safety Assessment in Annex C of ED 126.*

*Note 3: Compliance with these performance figures do not constitute per se a demonstration that the safety objectives of ADS-B NRA operations allocated to avionics are achieved.*

*Note 4: Also refer to § 3.1.*

- 8.2.2 The (overall) ADS-B System continuity level needs to be  $2 \cdot 10^{-4}/\text{fh}$  (refer also to Table 1 in [Appendix 3](#)).

*Note 1: These performance figures have been set for the “ADS-B out” function, to be used in ADS-B NRA operations as laid down by the Operational Safety Assessment in Annex C of ED 126;*

*Note 2: Compliance with these performance figures do not constitute per se a demonstration that the safety objectives of ADS-B NRA operations allocated to avionics are achieved;*

*Note 3: Also refer to § 3.1.*

- 8.2.3 The latency of the horizontal position data, including any uncompensated latency, introduced by the (overall) ADS-B System does not exceed 1.5 second in 95% and 3 seconds in 99.9% of all ADS-B message transmission cases (refer also to Table 1 in [Appendix 3](#)).

### 8.3 ADS-B Transmit System

- 8.3.1 Compliance with the air-ground interoperability requirements, as specified in ED-126 and presented in Section 7.1 and [Appendix 4](#), needs to be demonstrated.

- 8.3.2 For 1090 MHz Extended Squitter ADS-B transmit systems, this should be demonstrated by the relevant tests documented in:

- ED-73B/ETSO-2C112b (or DO-181C);
- ED-102, as a minimum, or an equivalent standard which is acceptable to the Agency (e.g. DO-260 or DO-260A).

- 8.3.3 ADS-B transmit systems need to transmit horizontal position quality indicators consistent with the associated position information at the time of transmission.

For the expression of the position accuracy quality, the related indicator should therefore reflect:

- The quality (in terms of both integrity and accuracy) of the position measurement itself; and
- Any (uncompensated) latency incurring prior to transmission.

Note: guidance on the quality indicators is provided in [Appendix 4](#).

The applicant needs to demonstrate the correctness of consistent quality indicator encodings in line with (minimum) position source quality and any (uncompensated) maximum latency as expressed in 8.2.3.

Permissible deviation for initial implementations:

For initial implementations, some aircraft installations may not take into account any (uncompensated) latency in the encoding of the position accuracy quality indicator as applicable at the time of transmission. Hence, such installations might transmit horizontal position quality indicators that are consistent with the associated position information only for lower quality indicator encodings<sup>1</sup> (e.g. NUC=5 or NAC=5) but not higher ones (e.g. NUC=7 or NAC=7). Such deviation from the above target requirement need to be listed in the Aircraft Flight Manual (refer to Section 9.3).

- 8.3.4 The value of the horizontal position quality indicators need to be based on the integrity information for the encoding of the ED-102/DO-260 related NUC and the DO-260A related NIC quality indicator, as related to the horizontal position sources.

In addition, the encoding of the DO-260A NAC quality indicator needs to be based on the accuracy information of the horizontal position sources.

- 8.3.5 In case of ED-102/DO-260 based ADS-B transmit systems, the NUC Quality Indicator value need to be encoded based on the integrity containment radius<sup>2</sup> only.

Permissible deviation for initial implementations:

For initial implementations, some GNSS position source based aircraft installations may encode the NUC Quality Indicator on accuracy quality information (HFOM) under rare satellite constellation circumstances leading to the temporary unavailability of the integrity monitoring (RAIM) function (i.e. unavailability of integrity containment radius calculation). Such deviation from the above target requirement need to be listed in the Aircraft Flight Manual (refer to Section 9.3).

- 8.3.6 If the ADS-B transmit system does not have a means to determine an appropriate integrity containment radius and a valid position is reported, then the Quality Indicator (i.e. NUC or NIC) need to be encoded to indicate that the integrity containment radius is unknown (i.e. NUC/NIC should be set to 'zero').
- 8.3.7 Transmitter antenna installation needs to comply with guidance for installation of ATC transponders to ensure satisfactory functioning. (Also refer to ED-73B)
- 8.3.8 If more than one ADS-B transmit system is installed, simultaneous operation of both transmit systems needs to be prevented.

#### 8.4 Horizontal Position Data Sources

- 8.4.1 The requirements on horizontal position data sources are based on the ED-126 safety and performance assessments.
- 8.4.2 Components of horizontal position data sources external to the aircraft ADS-B system (such as the GNSS space segment) fall outside these airworthiness

<sup>1</sup> This is a consequence of the definition of the quality indicator encoding describing an interval of values between a lower and an upper bound (refer also to Appendix 4.2). For instance, a NUC=5 encoding expresses an upper bound of position accuracy quality indication of 0.3NM whilst a NUC=7 encoding expresses an upper bound of 0.05NM. Therefore, in case of e.g. the actual GNSS position source performance, a NUC=5 encoding provides sufficient margin to also correctly express the effects of on-board uncompensated latency whilst this is not the case for a NUC=7 encoding any more.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. GNSS conformant HPL/HIL information.

considerations. Such external components are assumed to operate in accordance with their specified nominal performance<sup>1</sup>.

Nevertheless, failures of the external data source components are required to be detected through on-board monitoring (as expressed in section 8.4.3).

8.4.3 Any eligible horizontal position data source needs to meet the following minimum requirements (refer also to Table 2 in [Appendix 3](#)):

- Correct encoding of quality indicator information in line with the actual performance of the selected horizontal position data source(s), i.e. in relation to position integrity containment bound (ED-102/DO-260 and DO-260A ADS-B transmit systems) and position accuracy (DO-260A ADS-B transmit systems);
- Position source failure probability:  $10^{-4}$  per hour<sup>2</sup>;
- Position integrity alert failure probability, commensurate with the performance characteristics of GNSS integrity monitoring<sup>3</sup>:  $10^{-3}$  (per position source failure event);
- Position integrity time to alert: 10 seconds.

8.4.4 If available and valid, integrity containment radius information should be provided to the ADS-B transmit system from the position data source, or equivalent, on the same interface as and together with each positional data.

8.4.5 If the integrity containment radius is not provided by the horizontal position data source, the ADS-B transmit system may use other means to establish an appropriate integrity containment radius<sup>4</sup>, provided a requirements compliant integrity alert mechanism is available.

8.4.6 Use of GNSS Systems as Primary Position Data Source

8.4.6.1 GNSS is considered as primary horizontal position data source for the provision of an acceptable accuracy and integrity performance in support of the ATC separation services contained within the ADS-B-NRA application.

The ED-126 safety and performance assessments are based on the specified performance and characteristics of GNSS systems, including receiver autonomous integrity monitoring. Therefore, for GNSS systems as specified in section 8.4.6.2, a safety and performance demonstration is not required.

8.4.6.2 If GNSS is used as a positional source, the GNSS system should be either compatible with:

- ETSO C-129A, TSO C-129 or TSO C-129A; or
- ETSO C-145/C-146 or TSO C-145A/C-146A,

<sup>1</sup> For GNSS based systems, this includes satellite constellation aspects.

<sup>2</sup> For GNSS based position sources, the failure occurs outside the aircraft system and is therefore expressed as per ATSU-hour. Proof of compliance of alternative solely aircraft based sources should take this into account and might have to express the requirement as  $10^5$  per flight hour (i.e. for the en-route environment).

<sup>3</sup> As realised through receiver autonomous integrity monitoring (RAIM), including its characteristics of increasingly less likely to fail for position errors beyond the horizontal protection limit. Within ED-126, the position source failure is modelled as a bias error that equals the integrity containment radius.

<sup>4</sup> E.g. HPL/HIL based upon known RAIM protection threshold.

capable of delivering position data with a periodic interval of at least 1.2 s<sup>1</sup>.

8.4.6.3 For GNSS systems compatible with (E)TSO C-129 (any revision), it is highly desired that the system incorporates Fault Detection and Exclusion capability as defined in AC 20-138A, Appendix 1, “GPS as a Primary Means of Navigation for Oceanic/Remote Operations”.

#### 8.4.7 Use of Alternative Compliant Position Data Sources

As the ED-126 safety and performance assessments are based on the performance and characteristics of GNSS systems, for alternative position sources a dedicated safety and performance assessment is required to demonstrate compliance with the ED-126 requirements.

#### 8.4.8 Use of Temporary Back-up Position Data Sources

Back-up position data sources not complying with the requirements referred to in section 8.4.3 may prove very useful in enhancing the continuity of ADS-B surveillance provision during temporary outages of the primary (or equivalent alternative) position data sources.

Any such back-up position data source needs to report its accuracy and integrity performance to the ADS-B transmit system, in a format compliant with ED-102/DO-260 or DO-260A, as appropriate.

### 8.5 Barometric Altitude Data Sources

8.5.1 Pressure altitude provided to the ADS-B transmit system needs to be in accordance with existing requirements for ATC transponders.

8.5.2 The digitizer code selected needs to correspond to within plus or minus 38.1 m (125 ft), on a 95% probability basis, with the pressure-altitude information (referenced to the standard pressure setting of 1013.25 hectopascals), used on board the aircraft to adhere to the assigned flight profile. (ICAO Annex 10, Vol IV, 3.1.1.7.12.2.4. See also EUROCAE ED-26).

The performance of the encoders and of the sensors needs to be independent from the pressure setting selected.

8.5.3 The transponder should indicate correctly the altitude resolution (quantisation) used, i.e. 25ft (from an appropriate source, default resolution) or 100ft (Gillham's coded source, permissible alternative resolution).

The conversion of Gillham's coded data to another format before inputting to the transponder is not permitted unless failure detection<sup>2</sup> can be provided and the resolution (quantisation) is set in the transmitted data to indicate 100ft.

8.5.4 In case more stringent barometric altimetry requirements are applicable in line with e.g. airspace requirements (e.g. RVSM) or other function requirements (e.g. ACAS II), then these requirements and their related regulation take precedence.

### 8.6 Aircraft Identification

<sup>1</sup> ETSO C-145/C146 provides additional capabilities compared with ETSO C129A such as: processing of GPS without Selective Availability, processing of SBAS signals when available and Fault Detection Exclusion as a basic function. Therefore ETSO C145/146 usually provides higher quality integrity values than ETSO C-129A equipment.

<sup>2</sup> For instance, this need can be satisfied by means of dual independent altitude corrected sensors together with an altitude data comparator (which may be incorporated and enabled in the ADS-B transmit system).

8.6.1 Identification needs to be provided to the ADS-B transmit system so that the information is identical to the filed ICAO flight plan. This information may be provided from:

- A flight management system; or
- A pilot control panel; or
- For aircraft, which always operate with the same flight identification (e.g. using registration as the flight identification) it may be programmed into equipment at installation.

8.6.2 In case no ICAO flight plan is filed, the Aircraft Registration needs to be provided to the ADS-B transmit system.

#### 8.7 Special Position Identification (SPI)

For ATC transponder-based ADS-B transmit systems, the SPI capability needs to be provided. The SPI capability should be integrated into the transponder functionality and should be controlled from the transponder control panel.

#### 8.8 Emergency Status/Emergency Indicator

8.8.1 When an emergency status (i.e. discrete emergency code) has been selected by the flight crew, the emergency indicator needs to be set by the ADS-B transmit system.

8.8.2 For ATC transponder-based ADS-B transmit systems, the discrete emergency code declaration capability should be integrated into the transponder functionality and should be controlled from the transponder control panel.

##### Permissible deviation for initial implementations:

For initial implementations, instead of the required transmission of the discrete emergency codes 7500, 7600 and 7700 when selected by the flight crew, the transmission of only the generic emergency indicator can satisfy this requirement. Such deviation from the above target requirement needs to be listed in the Aircraft Flight Manual (refer to Section 9.3).

#### 8.9 Airworthiness Considerations regarding Optional Provisions

##### 8.9.1 Ground Velocity (OPTIONAL)

Ground velocity, e.g. from an approved GNSS receiver, in the form of East/West and North/South Velocity (including a velocity quality indicator) is recommended to be provided.

##### 8.9.2 Special Position Identification (SPI) (OPTIONAL)

For non-ATC transponder-based ADS-B transmit systems (i.e. installations based on dedicated ADS-B transmitters), a discrete input or a control panel should be provided to trigger the SPI indication.

##### 8.9.3 Emergency Status/Emergency Indicator (OPTIONAL)

For non-ATC transponder-based ADS-B transmit systems (i.e. installations based on dedicated ADS-B transmitters), a discrete input or a control panel should be provided to indicate the emergency status (discrete emergency code).

##### 8.9.4 Flight Deck Control Capabilities (OPTIONAL)

8.9.4.1 Means should be provided to the flight crew to modify the Aircraft Identification information when airborne.

8.9.4.2 Means should be provided to the flight crew to disable the ADS-B function on instruction from ATC without disabling the operation of the ATC transponder function.

*Note: It is recommended to implement an independent ADS-B disabling function. For future ADS-B application such flight deck capability may become mandatory. It should be recalled that disabling the operation of the transponder will disable also the ACAS function.*

8.9.4.3 Means should be provided to the flight crew to disable the transmission of the barometric altitude.

## 9 COMPLIANCE WITH THIS AMC

### 9.1 Airworthiness

9.1.1 When showing compliance with this AMC, the following points should be noted:

- a) The applicant will need to submit, to the Agency, a certification plan and a compliance statement that shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied, together with evidence resulting from the activities described in the following paragraphs.
- b) Compliance with the airworthiness requirements (e.g. CS-25) for intended function and safety may be demonstrated by equipment qualification, safety analysis of the interface between the ADS-B equipment and data sources, structural analyses of new antenna installations, equipment cooling verification, evidence of a human to machine interface, suitable for ADS-B-NRA.
- c) The safety analysis of the interface between the ADS-B transmit system and its data sources should show no unwanted interaction under normal or fault conditions.
- d) The functionality for ADS-B-NRA application may be demonstrated by testing that verifies nominal system operation, the aircraft derived surveillance data contained in the ADS-B messages, and the functioning of system monitoring tools/fault detectors (if any).

9.1.2 The functionality for ADS-B-NRA application may be further demonstrated by ground testing, using ramp test equipment where appropriate, that verifies nominal system operation, the aircraft derived surveillance data contained in the ADS-B messages, and the functioning of system monitoring tools/fault detectors (if any).

*Note: this limited testing assumes that the air-ground surveillance systems have been shown to satisfactorily perform their intended functions in the flight environment in accordance with applicable requirements.*

To minimise the certification effort for follow-on installations, the applicant may claim credit, from the Agency, for applicable certification and test data obtained from equivalent aircraft installations.

### 9.2 Performance

Where compliance with a performance requirement cannot readily be demonstrated by a test, then the performance may be verified by an alternative method such as analysis, including statistical analysis of measurements under operational conditions.

### 9.3 Aircraft Flight Manual

9.3.1 The Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or the Pilot's Operating Handbook (POH), whichever is applicable, needs to provide at least a statement of compliance that the ADS-B System complies with this AMC20-24 and if deviations are applicable. Deviations,<sup>1</sup> including those stated in this document, as appropriate may be included or referred to.

### 9.4 Existing installations

9.4.1 The applicant will need to submit, to the Agency, a compliance statement, which shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied for existing installations.

Compliance may be supported by design review and inspection of the installed system to confirm the availability of required features, functionality and acceptable human-machine interface.

9.4.2 Where this design review finds items of non-compliance, the applicant may offer mitigation that demonstrates an equivalent level of safety and performance. Items presented by the applicant which impact safety, performance and interoperability requirements allocation will need to be coordinated in accordance with ED-78A.

## 10 OPERATIONAL CONSIDERATIONS

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 The installation should be certified according to airworthiness considerations in section 8 prior to operational approval.

10.1.2 The assumptions in section 5, concerning Air Traffic and Communications Services Providers, and Aeronautical Information Services, should have been satisfied.

10.1.3 A unique ICAO 24 bit aircraft address should be assigned by the responsible authority to each airframe.

### 10.2 Operational Safety Aspects

10.2.1 In all cases, flight crews should comply with the surveillance provisions, schedules and relevant procedures contained in the Aeronautical Information Publications (AIP) published by the appropriate authorities.

10.2.2 Direct controller-pilot VHF voice communications should be available at all times.

10.2.3 If flight crew receive equipment indications showing that position being broadcast by the ADS-B system is in error (e.g. GPS anomaly), they should inform the ATSP, as appropriate, using any published contingency procedures.

10.2.4 When there is not an independent Flight Deck Control selection between the ADS-B function (ADS-B on/off) and the ATC transponder function, the crew must be fully aware that disabling the ADS B function will also lead to disable the ACAS function.

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer to sections 8.3.3, 8.3.5 and 8.8.2.

## 10.3 Operations Manual and Training

### 10.3.1 Operations Manual

10.3.1.1 The Operations Manual should include a system description, operational and contingency procedures and training elements for use of the ADS-B-NRA application.

10.3.1.2 The Operations Manual, preferably section B, should contain the operational aspects described in this guidance material.

10.3.1.3 Operators operating under the provisions of ICAO Annex 6 Part II “International General Aviation – Aeroplanes” are not required to have an operations manual.

However, in order to use ADS-B applications, the operator should develop similar training and operational procedures to the ones described in this guidance material. This material may need to be approved by the State of Registry of the operator in accordance with national practice and sight of this approval may be required by the ADS-B navigation service provider.

### 10.3.2 Flight Crew Training

10.3.2.1 Aircraft operators should ensure that flight crew are thoroughly familiar with all relevant aspects of ADS-B applications.

10.3.2.2 Flight crew training should address the:

- a) General understanding of ADS-B-NRA operating procedures;
- b) Specific ADS-B associated phraseology;
- c) General understanding of the ADS-B technique and technology;
- d) Characteristics and limitations of the flight deck human-machine interface, including an overview of ADS-B environment and system descriptions;
- e) Need to use the ICAO defined format for entry of the Aircraft Identification or Aircraft Registration marking as applicable to the flight;

*Note 1: ICAO Document 8168-OPS/611 Volume I (Procedures for Air Navigation Services) requires that flight crew of aircraft equipped with Mode “S” having an aircraft identification feature should set the aircraft identification into the transponder. This setting is required to correspond to the aircraft identification that has been specified at Item 7 of the ICAO flight plan and consists of no more than seven characters. If the aircraft identification consists of less than seven characters, no zeros, dashes or spaces should be added. If no flight plan has been filed, the setting needs to be the same as the aircraft’s registration, again, up to a maximum of seven characters.*

*Note 2: The shortened format commonly used by airlines (a format used by International Airlines Transport Association (IATA)) is not compatible with ICAO provisions for the flight planning and ATC services used by ATC ground systems.*

- f) Operational procedures regarding the transmission of solely the generic emergency flag in cases when the flight crew actually selected a discrete emergency code (if implemented, refer to section 8.8) and SPI;
- g) Indication of ADS-B transmit capability within the ICAO flight plan but only when the aircraft is certified according to this AMC;
- h) Handling of data source errors (e.g. discrepancies between navigation data sources) (refer to 10.2.3);
- i) Incident reporting procedures;
- j) Crew Resources Management and associated human factors issues.

#### 10.4 Incident reporting

Significant incidents associated with ATC surveillance information transmitted by the ADS-B data link that affects or could affect the safe operation of the aircraft will need to be reported in accordance with EU-OPS 1.420 (or national regulations, as applicable).

#### 10.5 Minimum Equipment List

The MEL will need to be revised to indicate the possibility of despatch of aircraft with the ADS-B system unserviceable or partially unserviceable.

### 11 MAINTENANCE

11.1 Maintenance tests should include a periodic verification check of aircraft derived data including the ICAO 24 bit aircraft address using suitable ramp test equipment. The check of the 24 bit aircraft address should be made also in the event of a change of state of registration of the aircraft.

11.2 Maintenance tests should check the correct functioning of system fault detectors (if any).

11.3 Maintenance tests at ADS-B transmit system level for encoding altitude sensors with Gillham's code output should be based on the transition points defined in EUROCAE ED-26, Table 13.

11.4 Periodicity for the check of the ADS-B transmitter should be established.

### 12 AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS

EASA documents are available from <http://www.easa.europa.eu>.

JAA documents are available from the JAA publisher Information Handling Services (IHS). Information on prices, where and how to order is available on both the JAA web site [www.jaa.nl](http://www.jaa.nl) and the IHS web site [www.avdataworks.com](http://www.avdataworks.com).

ICAO documents may be purchased from Document Sales Unit, International Civil Aviation Organisation, 999 University Street, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7, (Fax: 1 514 954 6769, e-mail: [sales\\_unit@icao.org](mailto:sales_unit@icao.org)) or through national agencies.

EUROCAE documents may be purchased from EUROCAE, 102 rue Etienne Dolet, 92240 MALAKOFF, France, (Fax: 33 1 46556265). Web site: [www.eurocae.org](http://www.eurocae.org).

RTCA documents may be purchased from RTCA, Incorporated, 1828 L Street, Northwest, Suite 820, Washington, D.C. 20036-4001 U.S.A. Web site: [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org).

---

EUROCONTROL documents may be requested from EUROCONTROL, Documentation Centre, GS4, Rue de la Fusee, 96, B-1130 Brussels, Belgium; (Fax: 32 2 729 9109 or web site [www.eurocontrol.int](http://www.eurocontrol.int)).

FAA documents may be obtained from Department of Transportation, Subsequent Distribution Office SVC-121.23, Ardmore East Business Centre, 3341 Q 75<sup>th</sup> Avenue, Landover, MD 20785, USA.

Australia CASA documents are available from <http://www.casa.gov.au/>.

[Amdt 20/3]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-24

ED Decision 2008/004/R

### Appendix 1.1: Common Terms

Reference should be made to EUROCAE document ED-126 for the definitions of terms.

### Appendix 1.2: Abbreviations

ADS-B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast
ADS-B-NRA	Enhanced ATS in Non-Radar Areas using ADS-B Surveillance
AFM	Aircraft Flight Manual
ANC	Air Navigation Commission (ICAO)
ATSP	Air Traffic Service Provider
ATC	Air Traffic Control
ATS	Air Traffic Services
ATSU	Air Traffic Service Unit
ATM	Air Traffic Management
CASCADE	Co-operative ATS through Surveillance and Communication Applications Deployed in ECAC
EUROCONTROL	European Organisation for the Safety of Air Navigation
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System
HPL	Horizontal Protection Limit
HIL	Horizontal Integrity Limit
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organisation
INTEROP	Interoperability Requirements
MEL	Minimum Equipment List
NIC	Navigation Integrity Category
NACp	Navigation Accuracy Category
NUC	Navigation Uncertainty Category
POH	Pilots Operating Handbook
RFG	Requirement Focus Group
SIL	Surveillance Integrity Level
SPI	Special Position Identifier
SPR	Safety and Performance Requirements
SSR	Secondary Surveillance Radar
OSD	Operational Services and Environment Definition
Rc	Horizontal Position Integrity Containment Radius
TMA	Terminal Manoeuvring Area

[Amdt 20/3]

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-24

*ED Decision 2008/004/R*

### **Appendix 2.1: Summary of core ADS-B-NRA Operational Assumptions**

- The ADS-B-NRA application assumes implementation of the procedures contained in the PANS-ATM ADS-B amendment. Fallback procedures from the radar environment apply to ADS-B-NRA when necessary. For example, ATC could apply alternate procedural separation (e.g., a vertical standard) during degraded modes.
- En route traffic density is assumed to be the same as in the current environment in which single radar coverage would enable the provision of a 5NM separation service for en route regions. This corresponds to low or medium density.
- Direct Controller-Pilot Communication (VHF) is assumed to be available at all times.
- It is assumed that the ADS-B coverage is known to the Controller in the controlled airspace.

### **Appendix 2.2: Summary of core ADS-B-NRA Ground Domain Assumptions**

- Controller operating procedures are assumed to be unaffected by the selection of an ADS-B data link, i.e., the ADS-B data link is assumed to be transparent to the controller.
- Air Traffic Controllers are assumed to follow existing procedures for coordination and transfer of aircraft. This applies to coordinating appropriate information with downstream units and complying with local agreements established between ATC units regarding separation standards to be established prior to entry into a bordering ATC unit.
- Appropriate ATS authorities are assumed to provide controllers with adequate contingency procedures in the event of ADS-B failures or degradation.
- It is assumed that there is a monitoring capability in the ADS-B Receive Subsystem that monitors the health and operation of the equipment and sends alerts and status messages to the Air Traffic Processing Subsystem.

[Amdt 20/3]

## Appendix 3 to AMC 20-24

ED Decision 2008/004/R

### Summary of ADS-B-NRA Airborne Safety and Performance Requirements

Parameter	Requirement
Horizontal Position and Horizontal Position Quality Indicator(s)	$10^{-5}/\text{fh}$
ADS-B System Continuity	$2 \cdot 10^{-4}/\text{fh}$
Horizontal Position Latency <sup>1</sup>	1.5 sec/95%

**Table 1: Overall Minimum Airborne ADS-B System<sup>2</sup> Requirements**

Parameter	Requirement
Horizontal Position Source	
– Accuracy (95%)	– 5 NM Sep: 926 m
– Integrity	
– Containment Radius (Rc)	– 5 NM Sep: Rc=2 NM
– Source Failure Probability	$10^{-4}/\text{h}^3$
– Alert Failure Probability	$10^{-3}$ (per position source failure event)
– Time to Alert	– 5 NM Sep: 10 sec

**Table 2: Minimum Horizontal Position Source Requirements**

Note: for DO-260 based ADS-B transmit systems, the related encoding of the horizontal position quality indicator through the Navigation Uncertainty Category (NUC) effectively leads to a containment radius requirement of 1NM for a 5 NM separation service.

Note: accuracy and integrity containment radius requirements are expressed here as guidance to related horizontal position source regulation (refer to section 8.4).

Note: the containment bound requirements reflect the outcomes of both the collision risk assessment (CAP) and time-to-alert assessment.

Note: the accuracy and integrity containment radius requirements have to be met by the horizontal position source, taking into account the effects of on-board latency (if not compensated for).

An uncompensated latency of 1.5 seconds translates into a dilution in the order of 450 metres (assuming an aircraft speed of 600 knots in en-route airspace). This value of 450 metres has to be added to the actual performance of the horizontal position source(s), the sum of which has to be within the required bounds.

The GNSS equipment specified in 8.4.6 meets the overall accuracy and integrity requirements, including the effects of an uncompensated latency of maximum 1.5 second accumulated up to the time of transmission.

<sup>1</sup> Uncompensated delay measured from to the time of validity of position measurement until ADS-B transmission (i.e. at RF level).

<sup>2</sup> As defined in section 6.

<sup>3</sup> For GNSS based functions, expressed as an assumption of GNSS performance.

Parameter	Requirement
Barometric Altitude	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Accuracy: as per the installed sensors (refer to section 8.5.2)</li> <li>– Maximum Latency: 1 sec (as for SSR)</li> </ul>
Aircraft Identification, SPI, Emergency Status	As for SSR [AMC20-13].

**Table 3: Other Minimum ADS-B Surveillance Data Requirements**

Parameter	Loss	Corruption	Note
Barometric Altitude	Minor	Minor	As for SSR [AMC20-13].
Aircraft Identification	Minor	Minor	As for SSR.[AMC20-13]

**Table 4: Failure Condition Categories**

[Amdt 20/3]

## Appendix 4 to AMC 20-24

ED Decision 2008/004/R

### Appendix 4.1: Summary of ADS-B-NRA Air-to-ground Interoperability Requirements

The minimum set of parameters that should be provided to support the ADS-B-NRA application are summarised in the following table extracted from ED-126:<sup>1</sup>

Parameter	BDS register	Version 0		Version 1
		ICAO Annex 10 Amendment 79, VOL III, App to chap 5	DO-260/ED102	DO-260A
Aircraft identification	0.8	§2.3.4	§2.2.3.2.5	§2.2.3.2.5
SPI <sup>2</sup>	0.5	§2.3.2.6	§2.2.3.2.3.2	§2.2.3.2.3.2
Emergency indicator	0.5	§2.3.2.6	§2.2.3.2.3.2	§2.2.3.2.3.2
Barometric altitude	0.5	§2.3.2.4	§2.2.3.2.3.4	§2.2.3.2.3.4
Quality indicator (NUC/NIC)	0.5	§2.3.1	§2.2.3.2.3.1	§2.2.3.2.3.1
Airborne Position	Latitude	0.5	§2.3.2.3	§2.2.3.2.3.7
	Longitude	0.5	§2.3.2.3	§2.2.3.2.3.8
Emergency status <sup>3 4</sup>	6.1	Table 2-97	§2.2.3.2.7.9	§2.2.3.2.7.8
Quality indicator (NACp)	6.5	No definition	No definition	§2.2.3.2.7.2.7
Quality indicator (SIL)	6.5	No definition	No definition	§2.2.3.2.3.1.1
Version Indicator <sup>5</sup>	6.5	No definition	No definition	§A.1.4.10.5

Table 5: Mandatory ADS-B-NRA Parameters

The minimum set of parameters that should be provided to support the ADS-B-NRA application are summarised in the following table extracted from ED-126:

Parameter	BDS register	Version 0		Version 1
		ICAO Annex 10 Amendment 79, VOL III, App to chap 5	DO-260/ED102	DO-260A
Airborne Ground Velocity	0.9	§2.3.5	§2.2.3.2.6	§2.2.3.2.6

Table 6: Optional ADS-B-NRA Parameters

### Appendix 4.2: Guidance on Encoding of Positional Quality Indicators

In order to be able to check the compliance of the actually transmitted ADS-B data with the required quality on the recipient side, ADS-B message transmissions contain “Quality Indicators”. These are expressed for ED-102/DO-260 and DO-260A compliant ADS-B transmit systems as follows:

- ED-102/DO-260: Navigation Uncertainty Category (NUC), a combined expression of (accuracy and) integrity requirements through a single parameter;

<sup>1</sup> The notion of version “0” and “1” differentiates between DO-260/ED-102 and DO-260A transponders.

<sup>2</sup> If provided by flight deck controls.

<sup>3</sup> If provided by flight deck controls.

<sup>4</sup> For special conditions under which the non-transmission of selected discrete emergency codes is allowed, refer to Section 8.8.2.

<sup>5</sup> Only for DO-260A based ADS-B transmit systems.

- DO-260A: Navigation Accuracy Category (NACp) to express the position accuracy (as a 95 percentile), Navigation Integrity Category (NIC) to express the integrity containment radius and Surveillance Integrity Level (SIL) to specify the probability of the true position lying outside that containment radius without alerting.

Minimum acceptable NUC and NIC/NACp values in support of 5 NM ADS-B-NRA separation services, based on the requirements summarised in Table 2 of Appendix 4, are as follows in line with the “NIC/NACp to NUC” conversion table below.

NUC values (encoding based on HPL, with the accuracy requirements met by GNSS systems by design and in line with the related NACp values in below conversion table):

- 5 NM separation: NUC = 4;

The corresponding NIC/NACp values are as follows.

- 5 NM separation: NIC = 4, NACp = 5,

The SIL value is established to  $SIL \geq 2$  in line with the combination of the position source failure and position integrity alert failure requirements, as summarised in Table 2 of Appendix 4.

*Note 1: In case the SIL value is not output by the position data sources, it is recommended that the ADS-B transmit system provides for the static setting of SIL as part of the installation procedure and as demonstrated for the applicable position data source configuration.*

*Note 2: ED-126 provides, based on its reference collision risk analysis only, arguments for an equally appropriate encoding of a  $SIL=2$  as a matter of expressing the system integrity as well. As for the presentation of the values presented in this document, it is at the discretion of the ATSP to decide upon the appropriate threshold values required in support of the separation services in its airspace.*

NUC (max Rc NM)		NIC (max Rc NM)		NACp (95% bound)	
9	(0.003)	11	(0.004)	11	(3 m)
8	(0.01)	10	(0.013)	10	(10 m)
-		9	(0.04)	9	(30 m)
7	(0.1)	8	(0.1)	8	(0.05 NM)
6	(0.2)	7	(0.2)	7	(0.1 NM)
5	(0.5)	6	(0.6)	6	(0.3 NM)
4	(1.0)	5	(1.0)	5	(0.5 NM)
3	(2.0)	4	(2.0)	4	(1 NM)
-		3	(4.0)	3	(2 NM)
-		2	(8.0)	2	(4 NM)
2	(10)	1	(20)	1	(10 NM)
1	(20)	1	(20)	1	(10 NM)
0	(no integrity)	0	(> 20)	0	(unknown)

**Table 7: NUC conversion to NIC and NACp**

[Amdt 20/3]

## AMC 20-25

### AMC 20-25 Airworthiness and operational consideration for Electronic Flight Bags (EFBs)

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

#### 1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

This Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) is one, but not the only, means to obtain airworthiness approval and to satisfactorily assess the operational aspects for the use of Electronic Flight Bags (EFBs).

It is considered an acceptable means of complying with the requirements contained in CAT.GEN.MPA.180 concerning carriage of electronic documents and manuals, Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 and Commission Regulation (EU) No 748/2012.

Traditionally, some of the documentation and information available to flight crew for use on the flight crew compartment has been in paper format. Much of this information is now available in electronic format. In addition, many non-required information services, data, and company procedures may also be made available to flight or cabin crew electronically. Operators have long recognised the benefit of hosting these materials on the flight crew's EFBs.

This AMC does not contain additional or double set requirements to those already contained in the operational requirements for the basic information, documentation and data sources that would need to be carried on board. The operator remains responsible for ensuring the accuracy of the information used and that it is derived from verifiable sources. The use of EFBs was initially intended to cover an alternative method of storing, retrieving, and using the manuals and information required to be on board by the applicable operational requirements. Subsequent technical development has led to potentially hosting on EFBs even applications using computational software (e.g. for performances), databases (e.g. digital navigation data) or real-time data coming from the avionics (e.g. Airport Moving Map Display).

The evaluation of an EFB may have both an airworthiness and an operational aspect depending on the category/type of EFB/application used and, therefore, where necessary, to make a complete evaluation of an EFB system, there is a need for close coordination between the two processes.

In harmonisation with FAA, this AMC does not include a Type C software application classification as a potential EFB application. The Agency's policy is that any non-Type A (please refer to paragraph 5.2.1) or non-Type B (please refer to paragraph 5.2.2) software application, unless it is miscellaneous (non-EFB) application, should undergo a full airworthiness approval and so become a certified avionics function. A non-exhaustive list of examples of Type A and B applications is provided in Appendices A and B.

#### 2 APPLICABILITY

This AMC is to be used by:

- (a) Commercial Air Transport operators by aeroplane or by helicopter;
- (b) applicants or holders of an aircraft Type Certificate (TC) or Supplemental TC; and
- (c) applicants or holders of ETSO authorisations covering software applications hosted in EFBs.

### **3 REFERENCE DOCUMENTS**

#### **3.1 Related Requirements**

From Annexes III and IV to Commission Regulation (EU) No 965/2012 ('Part ORO' and 'Part-CAT')<sup>1</sup>, the following articles are to be used as references:

CAT.GEN.MPA.140, CAT.GEN.MPA.180, ORO.GEN.130, ORO.GEN.140, ORO.GEN.200, ORO.MLR.100, CAT.POL.MAB.105, ORO.FC.230.

#### **3.2 Related Certification Specifications**

CS 25.561, 25.777, 25.789, 25.1301, 25.1302, 25.1309, 25.1316, 25.1321, 25.1322, 25.1357, 25.1431, 25.1529, 25.1581

CS 23.561, 23.1301, 23.1309, 23.1321, 23.1322, 23.1357, 23.1431, 23.1581

CS 29.1301, 29.1309, 29.1321, 29.1322, 29.1431, 29.1581

CS 27.1301, 27.1309, 27.1321, 27.1322, 27.1581

EASA CS-MMEL (Draft) Master Minimum Equipment List

Appendix G to CS-23, Appendix H to CS-25, and Appendices A to CS-27 and CS-29: Instructions for Continued Airworthiness

ETSO-C165a: Electronic map systems for graphical depiction of aircraft position

EASA Special Condition on Information Security (Network Security)

#### **3.3 Related Guidance Material**

##### **3.3.1 Europe**

EASA AMC 25.1581 Appendix 1 – Computerised Aeroplane Flight Manual

EASA AMC 25.1309 System Design and Analysis

EASA AMC 25-11 Electronic Flight Deck Displays

EUROCAE ED-130() Guidance for the Use of Portable Electronic Devices (PEDs) on Board Aircraft

EUROCAE ED-12() Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification

EUROCAE ED-14() Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment

EUROCAE ED-76() Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data

EUROCAE ED-80() Design Assurance Guidance for Airborne Electronic hardware

UL 1642 Underwriters Laboratory Inc. (UL) Standard for Safety for Lithium Batteries

<sup>1</sup> Commission Regulation (EU) No 965/2012 of 05 October 2012 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures related to air operations pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council. (OJ L 296, 25.10.2012, p.1).

### 3.3.2 USA

FAA AC 20-159	Obtaining Design and Production Approval of Airport Moving Map Display Applications Intended for Electronic Flight Bag Systems
FAA AC 120-74A	Parts 91, 121, 125, and 135 Flight crew Procedures during Taxi Operations
FAA AC 120-76()	Guidelines for the Certification, Airworthiness, and Operational Approval of Electronic Flight Bag Computing Devices
FAA AC 120-78	Acceptance and use of Electronic Signatures
FAA AC 20-173	Installation of Electronic Flight Bag Components
FAA TSO-C165A	Electronic Map Display Equipment for Graphical Depiction of Aircraft Position
RTCA DO-160()	Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment
RTCA DO-178()	Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification
RTCA DO-200()	Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data
RTCA DO-254()	Design Assurance Guidance for Airborne Electronic Hardware
RTCA DO-257()	Minimum Operation Performance Standards for the Depiction of Navigational Information on Electronic Maps
RTCA DO-294()	Guidance on Allowing Transmitting Portable Electronic Devices (T-PEDs) on Aircraft
RTCA DO-311()	Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Rechargeable Lithium Battery Systems

## 4 GLOSSARY OF TERMS IN THE CONTEXT OF THIS AMC

### 4.1 Aircraft Administrative Communications (AAC)

AAC data link receive/transmit information that includes, but is not limited to, the support of applications identified in Appendices A and B of this AMC. Aircraft Administrative Communications (AAC) are defined by ICAO as communications used by aeronautical operating agencies related to the business aspects of operating their flights and transport services. The airlines use the term Airline Operational Communication (AOC) for this type of communication.

### 4.2 Airport Moving Map Display (AMMD)

A software application displaying airport maps and using a navigation source to depict the aircraft current position on this map while on ground.

### 4.3 Consumer device

Electronic equipment primarily intended for non-aeronautical use.

#### **4.4 Controlled Portable Electronic Device (C-PED)**

A controlled PED is a PED subject to administrative control by the operator using it. This will include, inter alia, tracking the allocation of the devices to specific aircraft or persons and ensuring that no unauthorised changes are made to the hardware, software, or databases.

#### **4.5 Data connectivity for EFB systems**

Data connectivity for EFB system supports either uni- or bi-directional data communication between the EFB and other aircraft systems (e.g. avionics).

Direct interconnectivity between EFBs or direct connectivity between EFBs and ground systems as with T-PED (e.g. GSM, Bluetooth) are not covered by this definition.

#### **4.6 Electronic Flight Bag (EFB)**

An information system for flight deck crew members which allows storing, updating, delivering, displaying, and/or computing digital data to support flight operations or duties.

#### **4.7 EFB administrator**

An EFB administrator is a person appointed by the operator, held responsible for the administration of the EFB system within the company. The EFB administrator is the primary link between the operator and the EFB system and software suppliers.

#### **4.8 EFB host platform**

When considering an EFB system, the EFB host platform is the equipment (i.e. hardware) in which the computing capabilities and basic software (e.g. operating system, input/output software) reside.

#### **4.9 EFB risk assessment and mitigation**

A process that considers an EFB system, its software applications, and its integration inside a specific aircraft, to identify the potential malfunctions and failure scenarios, analyse their operational repercussions, and, if necessary, propose mitigation means.

#### **4.10 EFB software application**

Software installed on an EFB system that allows specific operational functionality.

#### **4.11 EFB system**

An EFB system comprises the hardware (including any battery, connectivity provision, I/O devices) and software (including databases) needed to support the intended EFB function(s).

#### **4.12 EFB system supplier**

The company responsible for developing, or for having developed, the EFB system or part of it. The EFB system supplier is not necessarily a host platform or aircraft manufacturer.

#### **4.13 Minor failure conditions**

Failure conditions which would not significantly reduce aeroplane safety, and which involve crew actions that are well within their capabilities. Minor failure conditions may include, for example, a slight reduction in safety margins or functional capabilities, a slight increase in crew workload, such as routine flight plan changes, or some physical discomfort to passengers or cabin crew. Further guidance can be found in AMC 25.1309.

**4.14 Mounting device**

A mounting device is an aircraft certified part which secures portable or installed EFB, or EFB system components.

**4.15 No safety effect**

Failure conditions that would have no effect on safety: for example, failure conditions that would not affect the operational capability of the aeroplane or increase crew workload. Further guidance can be found in AMC 25.1309.

**4.16 Portable Electronic Device (PED)**

PEDs are typically consumer electronic devices, which have functional capability for communications, entertainment, data processing, and/or utility. There are two basic categories of PEDs – those with and those without intentional transmitting capability; please refer to ED-130/RTCA DO-294().

**4.17 Software application developer**

The company responsible for developing, or for having developed a particular software application.

**4.18 Transmitting PED (T-PED)**

PEDs that have intended radio frequency (RF) transmission capabilities.

**4.19 Viewable stowage**

A device that is secured on the flight crew (e.g. kneeboard) or in/to an existing aircraft part (e.g. suction cups) with the intended function to hold charts or to hold acceptable light mass portable devices (for example an EFB of no more than 1 Kg) viewable to the pilot at her/his required duty station. The device is not necessarily part of the certified aircraft configuration.

**5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION AND CLASSIFICATION OF EFB Systems**

This section is divided into two parts. The first part deals with the host platform (e.g. the hardware and operating system) used to run the EFB software suite. The second part deals with this software suite which includes the EFB applications installed to provide the relevant functionality.

**5.1 EFB systems hardware**

This AMC defines two possibilities for the hardware of EFB systems: portable and installed.

**5.1.1 Portable EFB**Definition

A portable EFB is a portable EFB host platform, used on the flight deck, which is not part of the certified aircraft configuration.

Complementary characteristics

A portable EFB can be operated inside and outside the aircraft.

A portable EFB hosts type A and/or type B EFB software applications. In addition, it may host miscellaneous (non-EFB) software applications (see 6.2.2.3).

A portable EFB is a portable electronic device (PED) as defined in GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.140<sup>1</sup>.

The mass, dimensions, shape, and position of the portable EFB should not compromise flight safety.

A portable EFB may be provided with aircraft power through a certified power source (see 6.1.1.1.3).

If mounted, the portable EFB is easily removable from its mounting device or attached to it, without the use of tools by the flight crew. If mounted, the attachment or removal does not constitute a maintenance action.

A portable EFB may be part of a system containing EFB installed resources which are part of the certified aircraft configuration.

The installed EFB components are part of the certified aircraft configuration with the intended function to mount (see 6.1.1.1.1) the EFB to the aircraft and/or connect to other systems (see 6.1.1.1.4).

When a portable EFB is a T-PED, the conditions for use of its transmitting capability are established in the approved Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM). In absence of information in the AFM, the EFB transmitting capability may be allowed during non-critical phases of the flight (see 6.2.1.1.2).

Portable EFBs may be used in all phases of the flight if secured to a certified mount or securely attached to a viewable stowage device in a manner which allows its normal use (see 6.1.1.1.1, 6.1.1.1.2, and 6.2.1.6).

Portable EFBs not meeting the above characteristic, should be stowed during critical phases of the flight.

Portable EFBs are controlled PEDs (see paragraph 4.4).

Any EFB component that is either not accessible in the flight crew compartment by the flight crew members or not removable by the flight crew, should be installed as 'certificated equipment' covered by a Type Certificate (TC), changed TC or Supplemental (S)TC.

### 5.1.2 Installed EFB

#### Definition

An EFB host platform installed in the aircraft and considered as an aircraft part, covered, thus, by the aircraft airworthiness approval.

#### Complementary characteristics

An installed EFB is managed under the aircraft type design configuration.

In addition to hosting Type A and B applications, an installed EFB may host certified applications, provided the EFB meets the certification requirements for hosting such applications, including assurance that the non-certified software applications do not adversely affect the certified application(s). For example, a robust

---

<sup>1</sup> PEDs are any kind of electronic device, typically but not limited to consumer electronics, brought on board the aircraft by crew members, passengers, or as part of the cargo and that are not included in the approved aircraft configuration. All equipment that is able to consume electrical energy falls under this definition. The electrical energy can be provided from internal sources as batteries (chargeable or non-rechargeable) or the devices may also be connected to specific aircraft power sources.

partitioning mechanism is one possible means to ensure the independence between certified applications and the other types of applications.

## 5.2 Software applications for EFB systems

The functionality associated with the EFB system depends, in part, upon the applications loaded on the host platform. The classification of the applications, based on respective safety effects, is intended to provide clear divisions among such applications and, therefore, the assessment process applied to each.

Appendices A and B provide support regarding the classification of traditional EFB software applications. They may be used for justifying a classification provided that the application does not feature design or functional novelties introducing new ways of interaction or unusual procedures.

If an application is not listed in the appendices or presents a high degree of novelty, the classification should be established using the definitions provided hereafter and the guidance in [Appendix C](#).

For the purpose of the following definitions, ‘malfunction or misuse’ means any failure, malfunction of the application, or design-related human errors that can be reasonably expected in service.

### 5.2.1 Type A

#### Definition

Type A applications are EFB applications whose malfunction or misuse have no safety effect.

#### Complementary characteristics

Type A applications:

- (a) may be hosted on either portable or installed EFBs;
- (b) do not require any approval (see paragraph 6.2.2.1); and
- (c) should follow guidance provided in [Appendix D](#), paragraph D.2.

Examples of Type A applications can be found in [Appendix A](#).

### 5.2.2 Type B

#### Definition

Type B applications are applications:

- (a) whose malfunction or misuse are limited to a minor failure condition; and
- (b) which do neither substitute nor duplicate any system or functionality required by airworthiness regulations, airspace requirements, or operational rules<sup>1</sup>.

#### Complementary characteristics

Type B applications:

- (a) may be hosted on either portable or installed EFBs;

<sup>1</sup> This does not preclude Type B software applications from being used to present the documents, manuals, and information required by CAT.GEN.MPA.180.

- (b) require an operational assessment as described in paragraph 6.2.2.2; and
- (c) do not require an airworthiness approval.

Examples of Type B applications can be found in [Appendix B](#).

#### 5.2.2.1 Airport Moving Map Display (AMMD) application with own-ship position

AMMD with own-ship position is a Type B application that is subject to the specific conditions described in [Appendix H](#) of this AMC.

### 5.2.3 Miscellaneous (non-EFB) software applications

Miscellaneous software applications are non-EFB applications, supporting function(s) not directly related to operations conducted by the flight crew on the aircraft.

## 6 HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE PROCESSES

The table below provides a summary of the different processes presented in this chapter.

EFB constituent		Portable EFB paragraph 5.1.1		Installed EFB paragraph 5.1.2	
		Assessment	Records or approvals	Assessment	Records or approvals
Hardware	EFB Installed resources mounting device	EASA Airworthiness process and approval paragraph 6.1.1.1		EASA Airworthiness process and approval paragraph 6.1.1.1	
	EFB host platform	Evaluation paragraph 6.2.1	As a minimum, operations Manual amended as required	EASA Airworthiness process and approval paragraph 6.1.1.2	
Software	Miscellaneous software Paragraph 6.2.2.3	Operator evaluation paragraph 6.2.2.3	Operations Manual amended as required	Operator evaluation paragraph 6.2.2.3	Operations Manual amended as required
	Software Type A Paragraph 5.2.1	Operator evaluation paragraph 6.2.2.1	Operations Manual amended as required	Operator evaluation paragraph 6.2.2.1	Operations Manual amended as required
	Software Type B Paragraph 5.2.2	Evaluation Paragraph 6.2.2.2	As a minimum, operations Manual amended as required	Evaluation Paragraph 6.2.2.2	As a minimum, operations Manual amended as required

### 6.1 Airworthiness approval

The airworthiness approval is necessary for installed EFB systems (see paragraph 5.1.2), as well as EFB installed resources and mounting device.

A portable EFB device does not require an airworthiness approval but its presence and use in the cockpit needs to be evaluated (see paragraph 6.2.1).

## 6.1.1 Hardware airworthiness approval

### 6.1.1.1 Installed resources

Installed resources are the input/output components external to the EFB host platform itself, such as an installed remote display, a control device (e.g. a keyboard, pointing device, switches, etc.) or a docking station.

The installed resources should be dedicated to EFB functions only, or in the case of use of resources shared with avionics, this possibility shall be part of the approved type design. It should be demonstrated, using the appropriate level of assessment, that the integration in the aircraft of the EFB and the EFB software applications does not jeopardise the compliance of the aircraft installed systems and equipment (including the shared resources) to airworthiness requirements such as CS 25.1302 or 25.1309.

Installed resources require an airworthiness approval.

#### 6.1.1.1.1 Mounting device

The mounting device (or other securing mechanism) attaches or allows mounting of the EFB system. The EFB system may include more than one mounting device if it consists of separate items (e.g. one docking station for the EFB host platform and one cradle for the remote display).

The mounting device should not be positioned in such a way that it obstructs visual or physical access to aircraft controls and/or displays, flight crew ingress or egress, or external vision. The design of the mounting device should allow the user easy access to any item of the EFB system, even if stowed, and notably to the EFB controls and a clear view of the EFB display while in use. The following design practices should be considered:

- (a) The mounting device and associated mechanisms should not impede the flight crew in the performance of any task (normal, abnormal, or emergency) associated with operating any aircraft system.
- (b) When the mounting device is used to secure an EFB display (e.g. portable EFB, installed EFB side display), the mount should be able to be locked in position easily. If necessary, selection of positions should be adjustable enough to accommodate a range of flight crew member preferences. In addition, the range of available movement should accommodate the expected range of users' physical abilities (i.e. anthropometrics constraints). Locking mechanisms should be of the low-wear types that will minimise slippage after extended periods of normal use.
- (c) Crashworthiness considerations should be taken into account in the design of this device. This includes the appropriate restraint of any device when in use.
- (d) When the mounting device is used to secure an EFB display (e.g. portable EFB, installed EFB side display), a provision should be provided to secure or lock the mounting device in a position out

of the way of flight crew operations when not in use. When stowed, the device and its securing mechanism should not intrude into the flight crew compartment space to the extent that they cause either visual or physical obstruction of flight controls/displays and/or egress routes.

- (e) Mechanical interference issues of the mounting device, either on the side panel (side stick controller) or on the control yoke in terms of full and free movement under all operating conditions and non-interference with buckles, etc. For yoke mounted devices, (Supplemental) Type Certificate holder data should be obtained to show that the mass inertia effect on column force has no adverse effect on the aircraft handling qualities.
- (f) Adequate means should be provided (e.g. hardware or software) to shut down the portable EFB when its controls are not accessible by the pilot strapped in the normal seated position. This objective can be achieved through a dedicated installed resource certified according to 6.1.1.1 (e.g. button accessible from pilot seated position).

#### 6.1.1.1.2 Characteristics and placement of the EFB display

- (a) Placement of the display

The EFB display and any other element of the EFB system should be placed in such a way that they do not unduly impair the pilot's external view during all phases of the flight. Equally, they should not impair the view and access to any cockpit control or instrument.

The location of the display unit and the other EFB system elements should be assessed for impact on egress requirements.

When the EFB is in use (intended to be viewed or controlled), its display should be within 90 degrees on either side of each pilot's line of sight.

Glare and reflection on the EFB display should not interfere with the normal duties of the flight crew or unduly impair the legibility of the EFB data.

The EFB data should be legible under the full range of lighting conditions expected on a flight crew compartment, including use in direct sunlight.

In addition, consideration should be given to the potential for confusion that could result from presentation of relative directions when the EFB is positioned in an orientation inconsistent with that information. For example, it may be misleading if the aircraft heading is pointed to the top of the display and the display is not aligned with the aircraft longitudinal axis. This does not apply to charts that are presented in a static way (e.g. with no HMI mechanisation such

like automatic repositioning), and that can be considered as similar to paper charts.

(b) Display characteristics

Consideration should be given to the long-term display degradation as a result of abrasion and ageing. AMC 25-11 (paragraph 3.16a) can be used as an appropriate guidance material to assess luminance and legibility aspects.

Users should be able to adjust the screen brightness of an EFB independently of the brightness of other displays on the flight crew compartment. In addition, when incorporating an automatic brightness adjustment, it should operate independently for each EFB in the flight crew compartment. Brightness adjustment using software means may be acceptable providing that this operation does not affect adversely the crew workload.

Buttons and labels should have adequate illumination for night use. 'Buttons and labels' refers to hardware controls located on the display itself.

The 90-degree viewing angle on either side of each pilot's line of sight, may be unacceptable for certain EFB applications if aspects of the display quality are degraded at large viewing angles (e.g. the display colours wash out or the displayed colour contrast is not discernible at the installation viewing angle).

(c) Applicable specifications

Each EFB system should be evaluated with regard to the requirements in this section 6.1.1.1.2: see CS 23.1321, CS 25.1321, CS 27.1321, and CS 29.1321.

If the display is an installed resource, it should be assessed against CS 25.1302 or in accordance with the applicable certification basis.

#### 6.1.1.1.3 Power Source

This section applies to design considerations for installing dedicated power port and cabling provisions for EFBs. EFB power provisions should comply with the applicable airworthiness specifications.

Connection of EFB power provisions to a non-essential, or to the least critical power bus, is recommended, so failure or malfunction of the EFB, or power supply, will not affect safe operation of aircraft critical or essential systems.

Connection to more critical aircraft power buses is, however, permitted if appropriate, taking into account the intended function of the EFB. Further considerations can be found in [Appendix J](#) of this AMC.

In all cases, an electrical load analysis should be conducted to replicate a typical EFB system to ensure that powering or charging the EFB will

not adversely affect other aircraft systems and that power requirements remain within power-load budgets.

The aircraft power source delivering power supply to the EFB system should be demonstrated to protect the aircraft electrical network from EFB system failures or malfunctions (e.g. short-circuit, over-voltages, over-load, electrical transients or harmonics, etc.).

- (a) A placard should be mounted beside the power outlet, containing the information needed by the flight or maintenance crews (e.g. 28 VDC, 115 VAC, 60 or 400 Hz, etc.).
- (b) The EFB power source should be designed so that it may be deactivated at any time. If the flight crew cannot quickly remove the plug, which is used to connect the EFB to the aircraft electrical network, an alternate means should be provided to quickly stop powering and charging the EFB. Circuit breakers are not to be used as switches; their use for this purpose is prohibited.
- (c) If a manual means (e.g. on/off switch) is used, this means should be clearly labelled and be readily accessible.
- (d) If an automatic means is used, the applicant should describe the intended function and the design of the automatic feature and should substantiate that the objective of deactivating the EFB power source, when required to maintain safety, is fulfilled.

Further considerations can be found in 6.1.1.1.5 which deals with connecting cables.

#### 6.1.1.1.4 EFB data connectivity

Portable EFB having data connectivity to aircraft systems, either wired or wireless, may receive or transmit data to and from aircraft systems, provided the connection (hardware and software for data connection provisions) and adequate interface protection devices are incorporated into the aircraft type design.

A portable EFB can receive any data from aircraft systems, but data transmission from EFB is limited to:

- (a) systems whose failures have no safety effect or minor safety effect at aircraft level (e.g. printer or ACARS);
- (b) aircraft systems which have been certified with the purpose of providing connectivity to PEDs (e.g. SATCOM with a router) in accordance with the limitations established in the AFM;
- (c) systems which are completely isolated (in both directions) from the certified aircraft systems (e.g. a transmission media that receives and transmits data for Aircraft Administrative Communications (AAC) purposes on the ground only); and
- (d) EFB system installed resources according to section 6.1.1.1.

EFB data connectivity should be validated and verified to ensure non-interference and isolation from certified aircraft systems during data transmission and reception.

The safety assessment of the EFB data connectivity installation should include an analysis of vulnerabilities to new threats that may be introduced by the connection of the EFB to the aircraft systems (malware and unauthorised access) and their effect on safety. This assessment is independent and does not take any credit from the operational assessment of EFB System Security (see section 7.9), which is intended to protect EFB systems themselves.

Certified aircraft systems should not be adversely affected by EFB system failures.

Any consequent airworthiness limitations should be included in the AFM (please refer to 6.1.2.1).

#### 6.1.1.1.5 Connecting cables

If cabling is installed to mate aircraft systems with an EFB,

- (a) if the cable is not run inside the mount, the cable should not hang loosely in a way that compromises task performance and safety. Flight crew should be able to easily secure the cables out of the way during operations (e.g., cable tether straps);
- (b) cables that are external to the mounting device should be of sufficient length in order not to obstruct the use of any movable device on the flight crew compartment; and
- (c) for Part-25 airplanes, installed cables are considered electrical wiring interconnection systems and, therefore, need to comply with CS 25 subpart H.

#### 6.1.1.2 Installed EFB

An installed EFB is considered as part of the aircraft and, therefore, requires a full airworthiness approval. This host platform includes the Operating System (OS).

The assessment of compliance with the airworthiness requirements would typically include two specific areas:

- (a) the safety assessment addressing failure conditions of the EFB system hardware, of any certified application (or applications ineligible as Type A and/or Type B) installed on the EFB and the partition provided for uncertified applications and miscellaneous non-EFB applications; and
- (b) hardware and operating system software qualification conducted in accordance with the necessary Development Assurance Level (DAL) for the system and its interfaces.

## 6.1.2 Certification documentation

### 6.1.2.1 Aircraft flight manual

For installed EFB and certified installed resources, the AFM section or an Aircraft Flight Manual Supplement (AFMS) should contain:

- (a) a statement of the limited scope of the airworthiness approval of EFBs provisions (e.g. these EFB provisions are only intended for Type A and Type B applications in accordance with this AMC 20-25. The airworthiness approval does not replace the operational assessment for the use of the EFB system).
- (b) identification of the installed equipment which may include a very brief description of the installed system or resources; and
- (c) appropriate amendments or supplements to cover any limitations concerning:
  - (1) the use of the EFB host platform for installed EFB system; and
  - (2) the use of the installed EFB provisions/resources for portable EFB system.

For this purpose, the AFM(S) should make reference to any guidelines (relevant to the airworthiness approval), intended primarily for EFB software application developers or EFB system suppliers.

### 6.1.2.2 Guidelines for EFB software application developers (Installed EFB and certified installed resources)

TC/STC holders for EFB installed resources or installed EFBs should compile and maintain a guidelines document to provide a set of limitations, considerations, and guidelines to design, develop, and integrate software applications into the installed EFB or with certified resources for portable EFB. The guideline should address, at least, the following:

- (a) a description of the architecture for the EFB installed components;
- (b) The EFB component Development Assurance Level (DAL) and any assumptions, limitations, or risk mitigations means necessary to support this;
- (c) information necessary to ensure development of a software application consistent with the avionics interface and the human machine interface, that is also accurate, reliable, secure, testable, and maintainable;
- (d) integration procedures between any new software application with those already approved; and
- (e) guidelines on how to integrate any new software application into the installed platform or installed resources.

The guidelines document should be available, at least, to the aircraft operator, to the competent authority, and to the Agency.

### 6.1.2.3 Guidelines for EFB system suppliers (installed resources for portable EFBs)

TC/STC holders for installed resources of portable EFBs should provide a set of requirements and guidelines to integrate the portable EFB in the installed provisions, and to design and develop EFB software applications.

Guidelines intended primarily for use by the EFB system supplier, should address, at least, the following:

- (a) A description of the installed EFB resources and associated limitations, if any. For example:
  - (1) intended function, limitations of use, etc.;
  - (2) characteristics of the mounting devices, display units, control and pointing devices, printer, etc.;
  - (3) maximum authorised characteristics (dimensions, weight, etc.) of the portable parts of the EFB system supported by the mounting devices;
  - (4) EFB provisions architecture description, including normal/abnormal/manual/ automatic reconfigurations; and
  - (5) normal/abnormal/emergency/maintenance procedures including allowed phases of the flight.
- (b) Characteristics and limitations, including safety and security considerations concerning:
  - (1) power supply;
  - (2) laptop battery; and
  - (3) data connectivity.

The guidelines document should be available at least to the operator, the competent authority and the Agency.

## 6.2 Operational assessment

### 6.2.1 Hardware operational assessment

The hardware operational assessment is focussed on the portable EFB platforms which do not require an airworthiness approval.

Paragraphs 6.2.1.1 through 6.2.1.6 need to be assessed where applicable prior to the operational use of the portable EFB.

Additionally, paragraph 6.1.1.1 contains considerations for installed resources. When any of those resources are not certified but are parts of the portable EFB, relevant criteria need to be assessed prior to the operational use.

#### 6.2.1.1 Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) demonstrations

It is the user's/operator's responsibility to determine that the operation of a PED will not interfere in any way with the operation of aircraft equipment which remain on (or in standby mode) during critical phases of the flight, require the additional guidance for non-interference testing contained in subparagraph 6.2.1.1.1 and if applicable 6.2.1.1.2. Further considerations can be found in CAT.GEN.MPA.140.

If some part of the testing (for example 6.2.1.1.2(i) Test Requirement 1) has been completed during the certification of the aircraft, the corresponding TC or STC data can be used as supporting material to demonstrate safe operational use.

#### 6.2.1.1.1 PED non-interference compliance test method

In order to operate a PED during all phases of the flight, the user/operator is responsible for ensuring that the PED will not interfere in any way with the operation of aircraft equipment. The following methods are applicable to portable EFBs which remain 'on' (or in standby mode) during critical phases of the flight. The user/operator may use either Method 1 or Method 2 for non-interference testing.

- (a) The two following steps complete Method 1 for compliance with PED non-interference testing for all phases of the flight.
  - (1) Step 1 is to conduct an EMI test in accordance with ED-14()/DO-160(), section 21, category M. An EFB vendor or other source can conduct this Step 1 test for an EFB user/operator. An evaluation of the results of the ED-14()/DO-160() EMI test can be used to determine if an adequate margin exists between the EMI emitted by the PED and the interference susceptibility threshold of aircraft equipment. If Step 1 testing determines that adequate margins exist for all interference (both front door and back door susceptibility), then Method 1 is complete. It is necessary to complete Step 2 testing if Step 1 testing identifies inadequate margins for interference, or either front door or back door susceptibility. (Front door emissions couple to aircraft system antennas by means of propagation through aircraft apertures such as doors and windows. Back door emissions couple to aircraft equipment, wires, and cables.).
  - (2) Step 2 testing is specific to each aircraft model in which the PED will be operated. Test the specific PED equipment in operation on the aircraft to show that no interference of aircraft equipment occurs from the operation of the PED. Step 2 testing is conducted in an actual aircraft, and credit may be given to other similarly equipped aircraft of the same make and model as the one tested.
- (b) Method 2 for compliance with PED non-interference testing for all phases of the flight is a complete test in each aircraft using standard industry practices. This should be to the extent normally considered acceptable for non-interference testing of a PED in an aircraft for all phases of the flight. Credit may be given to other aircraft of the same make and model equipped with the same avionics as the one tested.

#### 6.2.1.1.2 Additional T-PED non-interference compliance test method

In order to activate the transmitting capability of the EFB during flight in other conditions than those certified at aircraft level (e.g. tolerance to specific T-PED models) and, hence, documented in the AFM, or equivalent document, the user/operator is responsible to ensure that the T-PED will not interfere with the operation of the aircraft equipment in any way.

Non-interference testing for T-PEDs consists of two separate test requirements:

- (a) Test Requirement 1. Each T-PED model should have an assessment of potential electro-magnetic interferences (EMI) based on a representative sample of the frequency and power output of the T-PED. This EMI assessment should be in accordance with applicable processes set forth in ED-130()/DO-294(). The applicable DO-160() section 21 Category to be considered in the ED-130() process for an EFB used as a T-PED, is Cat M. This EMI assessment should confirm that no interference with aircraft equipment will occur as a result of intentional transmissions from these devices.
- (b) Test Requirement 2. Once an EMI assessment determines there will be no interference from the T-PED's intentional transmissions, test each T-PED model while powered but not deliberately transmitting using either Method 1 or Method 2 for basic non-interference testing requirements. This basic non-interference testing is applicable to both an EFB-integrated T-PED and a T-PED that is remote to an EFB. When an EFB has an integrated T-PED, complete the basic non-interference testing both with and without the T-PED transmit function being operative. If a T-PED is located remotely from the EFB, the T-PED basic non-interference testing is independent from the EFB non-interference testing. T-PED position is very critical to T-PED non-interference testing. Clearly define and adhere to the operating/testing locations of a T-PED in T-PED operating procedures.

Any restriction in the use of the transmitting capability should be documented in the operator manual.

#### 6.2.1.2 Batteries

Due to their proximity to the flight crew and potential hazard to safe operation of the aircraft, the use of rechargeable lithium-type batteries in portable EFBs located in the aircraft cockpit call for the following standards. Operators should collect and retain evidence of the following testing standards to determine whether rechargeable lithium-type batteries used to power EFBs are acceptable for use and for recharging. Operators should collect and retain evidence of the standards in subparagraphs (a) and either (b) or (c) or (d). Refer to the following current editions:

- (a) United Nations (UN) Transportation Regulations. UN ST/SG/AC.10/11/Rev.5-2009, Recommendations on the Transport of Dangerous Goods-Manual of Tests and Criteria.
- (b) Underwriters Laboratory (UL). UL 1642, Lithium Batteries; UL 2054, Household and Commercial Batteries; and UL 60950-1, Information Technology Equipment - Safety.

NOTE: Compliance with UL 2054 indicates compliance with UL 1642.

- (c) International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC). International Standard IEC 62133, Secondary cells and batteries containing alkaline or other non-acid electrolytes - Safety requirements for portable sealed secondary cells, and for batteries made from them, for use in portable applications.
- (d) RTCA/DO-311, Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Rechargeable Lithium Battery Systems. An appropriate airworthiness testing standard such as RTCA/DO-311 can be used to address concerns regarding overcharging, over-discharging, and the flammability of cell components. RTCA/DO-311 is intended to test permanently installed equipment; however, these tests are applicable and sufficient to test EFB rechargeable lithium-type batteries.

#### 6.2.1.3 Power source

- (a) Portable EFB system design must consider the source of electrical power, the independence of the power sources for multiple EFBs, and the potential need for an independent battery source. A non-exhaustive list of factors to be considered includes:
  - (1) The possibility to adopt operational procedures to assure an adequate level of safety (for example minimum level of charge at pre-flight);
  - (2) The possible redundancy of portable EFBs to reduce the risk of exhausted batteries;
  - (3) The availability of back up battery packs to assure an alternative source of power.
- (b) Battery-powered EFBs that have aircraft power available for recharging the internal EFB battery (see also 6.1.1.1.3) are considered to have a suitable backup power source.
- (c) For EFBs having an internal battery power source and that are used in place of paper products required by the operating rules, the operator should either have at least one EFB connected to an aircraft power bus or established and documented mitigation means and procedures to ensure that sufficient power will be available during the whole flight with acceptable margins.
- (d) For guidance on the design and installation of aircraft electrical power sources see section 6.1.1.1.3.
- (e) If the aircraft is equipped with electrical power outlet(s) in the cockpit, the operator should ensure that their certified characteristics are

compatible with the intended use for the EFB system. The powering or charging of the EFB system should be compatible with the electrical characteristics of the power supplied by the outlets in terms of power consumption, voltage, frequency, etc. in order not to impair the EFB system or other aircraft systems.

#### 6.2.1.4 Environmental testing

Environmental testing, in particular testing for rapid depressurisation, may need to be performed when the EFB host applications that are required to be used during flight following a rapid depressurisation, and/or when the EFB environmental operational range is potentially insufficient with respect to the foreseeable cockpit operating conditions. However, since many portable EFB devices were originally consumer electronic systems accepted for aviation use, testing done on a specific EFB model configuration may be applied to other aircraft installations and these generic environmental tests may not need to be duplicated. The operator should collect and retain:

- (a) evidence of these tests that have already been accomplished; or
- (b) suitable alternate procedures to deal with the total loss of the EFB system.

Further considerations can be found in [Appendix K](#) of this AMC.

Testing for rapid depressurisation may need to be repeated when the EFB model identification changes, or the battery type is changed.

This testing is not equivalent to a full environmental qualification. Operators should account for the possible loss or erroneous functioning of the EFB in abnormal environmental conditions (see 7.2.2).

The safe stowage and the use of the EFB under any foreseeable cockpit environmental conditions, including turbulences, should be evaluated.

#### 6.2.1.5 Display characteristics

Even though a portable EFB is not certified, the display characteristics should be considered during the operational assessment process. For that purpose, the material from 6.1.1.1.2 (a) and (b) apply.

For a portable EFB which is neither mounted nor stowed (e.g. handheld, or sitting on the pilot tray), the considerations on the location of the display proposed in 6.1.1.1.2 should apply at the proposed location of the display when the EFB is in use.

#### 6.2.1.6 Viewable stowage

The viewable stowage should comply to 6.1.1.1.1.

The evaluation of the viewable stowage should be performed for a given location in the flight deck. This location should be documented and this information should be part of the EFB policy.

Some types of viewable stowage securing means may have characteristics that degrade sensibly with ageing or due to various environmental factors. In that case, the documentation should include procedures (e.g. crew procedures, checks, or maintenance actions) to ensure that the stowage

characteristics remain within acceptable limits for the proposed operations. Securing means based on vacuum (e.g. suction cups) have a holding capacity that decreases with pressure. It should be demonstrated that they will still perform their intended function at operating cabin altitudes or in case of rapid depressurisation.

In addition, it should be demonstrated that if the EFB moves or is separated from its stowage, or if the viewable stowage is unsecured from the aircraft (as a result of turbulence, manoeuvring, or other action), it will not jam flight controls, damage flight deck equipment, or injure flight crew members.

## 6.2.2 Software operational assessment

### 6.2.2.1 Type A software applications

Type A software applications never require an operational approval, but should follow the HMI and human factors guidance material provided in [Appendix D](#).

Type A applications hosted in portable EFB can be used by properly trained pilots when exercising their privileges.

### 6.2.2.2 Type B software applications

Type B software applications do not require airworthiness approval, but should be assessed through the process presented in section 7.2. The operator responsible for the evaluation should collect and retain the documentation listed in [Appendix F](#).

The list of Type B software application that require a documented evaluation is provided in [Appendix B](#).

### 6.2.2.3 Miscellaneous (non-EFB) software applications

The use of miscellaneous software applications is out of the scope of this document, but is subject to the applicable operational rules.

The EFB administrator should ensure that miscellaneous software applications do not adversely impact the operation of the EFB (refer to paragraph 7.11) and include miscellaneous software in the scope of EFB configuration management. The configuration of those applications (e.g. applications updates, installation of new applications) has to be managed by the EFB administrator.

This does not preclude that EFB devices from being allocated to specific crew members.

However, and only in the cases where it is demonstrated that miscellaneous software applications run in a fully segregated and partitioned way compared to EFB or avionics applications (e.g. on a separate Operating System on a distinct 'personal' hard drive partition that is selected at the boot), the administration of these miscellaneous applications can be exercised by the flight crew and not by the EFB administrator.

Examples of miscellaneous software applications are: web browser (not used for operational purposes), e-mail client, picture management application, or even applications used by ground crews (e.g. for maintenance purposes).

## **7 OPERATIONAL ASSESSMENT PROCESSES**

The operator should ensure the continued compliance of the EFB software package with this AMC.

When an aircraft manufacturer is seeking an operational evaluation of an EFB system or component of an EFB system prior to an operator carrying out the operational assessment, the manufacturer may file an application for an evaluation by the Agency.

The operator may demonstrate the fidelity and reliability of the system in different ways, but a detailed EFB risk assessment and suitable means of mitigation against failure or malfunction are required. Operators or EFB system suppliers, if deemed appropriate, may ask evaluations by the Agency. Those evaluations will assess compliance with this AMC.

The operator may choose to keep the paper backup as a cross-check against the EFB information and as a means of mitigation against failure. A combination of solutions, with limited on board paper backup, may also be used.

The scope of the final operational evaluation test (see paragraph 7.14) will depend on the selected solutions.

The air operations requirements do not foresee a prior approval of EFB. However, the competent authority may, through the change management procedure, require the operator to notify any change concerning EFB<sup>1</sup>.

Modifications and amendments of database and/or software may also be required by the competent authority. The operator should ensure that these modifications and amendments are incorporated and they follow the revision control procedures specified in paragraph 7.11.1.

### **7.1 Role of the EFB system supplier**

As stated in paragraph 7, the operator should ensure as well the compliance of the initial EFB software package (batch) with this AMC at the time it is delivered.

However, an EFB system supplier may apply for an Agency evaluation to assess conformity against this AMC, to simplify the operator's assessment process.

### **7.2 Risk assessment for EFB systems**

#### **7.2.1 General**

Prior to the entry into operation of any EFB system, the operator should carry out a risk assessment as part of its hazard identification and risk management process required by ORO.GEN.200.

The risk assessment should:

- (a) evaluate the risks associated with the use of an EFB and to define the appropriate mitigation;
- (b) identify potential losses of function or malfunction (detected and undetected erroneous output) and associated failure scenarios;
- (c) analyse the operational consequences of these failure scenarios;
- (d) establish mitigating measures; and

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer to ORO.GEN.130.

- (e) ensure that the EFB system (hardware and software) achieves at least the same level of accessibility, usability, and reliability as the means of presentation it replaces.

In considering the accessibility, usability, and reliability of the EFB system, the operator should ensure that the failure of the complete EFB system as well as individual applications, including corruption or loss of data and erroneously displayed information, has been assessed and that the risks have been mitigated to an acceptable level.

This risk assessment should be defined before the beginning of the trial period and should be amended accordingly, if necessary, at the end of this trial period. The results of the trial should establish the configuration and use of the system.

When the EFB system is intended for introduction alongside a paper-based system, only the failures that would not be mitigated by the use of the paper-based system need to be addressed. In all other cases, and especially when an accelerated introduction with a reduced trial period (as defined in 7.14) or paperless entry-into-service of a new EFB system is intended, a complete risk assessment should be carried out.

### 7.2.2 Assessing and mitigating the risks

Some EFB applications parameters may depend on crew/dispatchers entries whereas others may be parameters defaulted from within the system and subject to an administration process (e.g. the runway line-up allowance in an aircraft performance application). In the first case, mitigation means would concern mainly training and crew procedures aspects whereas in the second case, mitigation means would more likely focus on administrator and data management aspects.

The analysis should be specific to the operator concerned and should address at least the following points:

- (a) Minimisation of undetected erroneous application output and assessment of worst case scenario;
- (b) Erroneous outputs from the software application including:
  - (1) description of corruption scenarios; and
  - (2) description of mitigation means.
- (c) Upstream processes including:
  - (1) reliability of root data used in applications (qualified/verified input data);
  - (2) software application validation and verification checks according to appropriate industry standards; and
  - (3) independence between application software, e.g. robust partitioning between Type A, B and other certified SW applications.
- (d) Description of the mitigation means following detected loss of application, or detected erroneous output due to internal EFB error;
- (e) Need to access to an alternate power supply, in order to achieve an acceptable level of safety for certain software applications, especially if used as a source of required information.

As part of the mitigation means, the operator should consider establishing a reliable alternative means of providing the information available on the EFB system.

The mitigation means could be, for example, one or a combination of the following:

- (a) system design (including hardware and software);
- (b) alternative EFB possibly supplied from a different power source;
- (c) EFB applications hosted on more than one platform;
- (d) paper backup (e.g. Quick Reference Handbook (QRH));
- (e) procedural means;
- (f) training; and
- (g) administration.

EFB system design features such as those assuring data integrity and the accuracy of performance calculations (e.g. a 'reasonableness' or 'range' check) may be integrated in the risk assessment performed by the operator.

When relevant, the EFB system supplier may also apply this risk assessment methodology to allow the operational environment to be taken into account and to support the development of the risk assessment by the operator.

### 7.3 Changes to EFB

Modifications to an EFB may have to be introduced, either by the EFB system suppliers, the EFB applications developers, or by the operator itself.

The modifications which:

- (a) do not bring any change to the calculation algorithm and/or to the HMI of a type B application,
- (b) introduce a new Type A application or modify an existing one (provided its software classification remains Type A),
- (c) do not introduce any additional functionality to an existing Type B application, or
- (d) update an existing database necessary to use an existing Type B,

may be introduced by the operator without the need to notify the competent authority.

These changes should, nevertheless, be controlled and properly tested prior to use in flight.

The modifications in the following non-exhaustive list are considered to meet these criteria:

- (a) Operating system updates;
- (b) Chart or airport database update;
- (c) Update to introduce fixes (patch); and
- (d) Type A application installation and modification.

For all other types of modification, the operator should apply the change management procedure approved by the competent authority in accordance with rule ARO.GEN.310(c).

## 7.4 Dispatch considerations

The operator should establish dispatch criteria for EFB system. The operator should ensure that the availability of the EFB system is confirmed by pre-flight checks. Instructions to flight crew should clearly define the actions to be taken in the event of any EFB system deficiency.

Mitigation may be in the form of maintenance and/or operational procedures such as:

- (a) replacement of batteries at defined intervals as required;
- (b) fully charged backup battery on board;
- (c) procedures for the flight crew to check the battery charging level before departure; and
- (d) procedures for the flight crew to switch off the EFB in a timely manner when the aircraft power source is lost.

### 7.4.1 Dispatch with inoperative EFB elements

In case of partial or complete failure of the EFB, alternative dispatch procedures should be followed. These procedures should be included either in the Minimum Equipment List (MEL) or in the Operations Manual and ensure an acceptable level of safety.

MEL coverage can be granted only when the corresponding item exists in the applicable Master Minimum Equipment List (MMEL) or MMEL supplement of the aircraft type.

Guidance for MMEL is provided in Appendix 1 to GM1 MMEL.145 of the CS-MMEL.

Particular attention should be paid to alternative dispatch procedures to obtain operational data (e.g. performance data) in case of a failure of an EFB hosting applications providing such calculated data.

When data input and output integrity is obtained by cross-checking and gross error checks, the same checking principle should apply to alternative dispatch procedures to ensure equivalent protection.

## 7.5 Human factors assessment

The operator should carry out an assessment of the human machine interface, installation, and aspects governing Crew Resource Management (CRM) when using the EFB system. Elements to be assessed are provided in [Appendix D](#).

In addition to any possible already performed Agency assessment for which the operator may take credit, the human machine interface assessment should be carried by each operator for each kind of device and application installed on the EFB. Each operator should assess the integration of the EFB into the flight deck environment, considering both physical integration (anthropometrics, physical interferences, etc.) and cognitive ergonomics (compatibility of look and feel, workflows, alerting philosophy, etc.).

## 7.6 Specific Considerations for mass and balance and performance applications

A specific part of the evaluation will be dedicated to the verification that aircraft performance or mass and balance data provided by the application are correct in comparison with data derived from the AFM (or other appropriate sources) under a representative cross check of conditions (e.g. for performance applications: take-off and

landing performance data on a dry, wet and contaminated runway, different wind conditions and aerodrome pressure altitudes, etc.).

Further considerations regarding the assessment can be found in [Appendix F](#).

The HMI training and crew procedures should as well be part of the evaluation.

Where there is already a certified mass and balance and performance application (e.g. hosted in the FMS), the operator should ensure independence of EFB and avionics based algorithms or other appropriate means.

## **7.7 Flight crew operating procedures**

### **7.7.1 Procedures for using EFB systems with other flight crew compartment systems**

Procedures should be established to ensure that the flight crew know which aircraft system to use for a given purpose, including the EFB system. Procedures should define the actions to be taken by the flight crew when information provided by an EFB system is not consistent with that from other flight crew compartment sources, or when one EFB system shows different information than the other. If an EFB system generates information similar to that generated by existing automation, procedures should clearly identify which information source will be the primary, which source will be used for backup information, and under which conditions the backup source should be used.

### **7.7.2 Flight crew awareness of EFB software/database revisions**

The operator should have a procedure in place to verify that the configuration of the EFB, including software application versions and, where applicable, database versions, are up to date. Flight crews should have the ability to easily verify database version effectivity on the EFB. Nevertheless, flight crews should not be required to confirm the revision dates for other databases that do not adversely affect flight operations, such as maintenance log forms or a list of airport codes. An example of a date-sensitive revision is that applied to an aeronautical chart database. Procedures should specify what actions should be taken if the software applications or databases loaded on the EFB system are out of date.

### **7.7.3 Procedures to mitigate and/or control workload**

Procedures should be designed to mitigate and/or control additional workload created by using an EFB system. The operator should implement procedures that, while the aircraft is in flight or moving on the ground, flight crew members do not become preoccupied with the EFB system at the same time. Workload should be allocated between flight crew members to ensure ease of use and continued monitoring of other flight crew functions and aircraft equipment. These procedures should be strictly applied in flight and should specify the times at which the flight crew may not use the EFB system.

### **7.7.4 Defining flight crew responsibilities for performance calculations**

Procedures should be established to define any new roles that the flight crew and dispatch office may have in creating, reviewing, and using performance calculations supported by EFB systems.

## **7.8 Compliance monitoring**

The operator should include the EFB system in its compliance monitoring programme that is required in accordance with ORO.GEN.200. The purpose is to provide confidence that EFB operations and administration are conducted in accordance with all applicable requirements, standards, and operational procedures.

## **7.9 EFB system security**

The EFB system (including any means used for its updating) should be secure from unauthorised intervention (e.g. malicious software). The operator should ensure that adequate security procedures are in place to protect the system at software level and to manage hardware (e.g. identification of the person to whom the hardware is released, protected storage when the hardware is not in use). These procedures should guarantee that prior to each flight the EFB operational software works as specified and the EFB operational data is complete and accurate. Moreover, a system should be in place to ensure that the EFB does not accept a data load that contains corrupted contents. Adequate measures should be in place for compilation and secure distribution of the data to the aircraft.

The procedures should be transparent, easy to understand to follow and to oversee:

- (a) if an EFB is based on consumer electronics, e.g. a laptop, which can be easily removed, manipulated, or replaced by a similar component, then special consideration should be shown to the physical security of the hardware;
- (b) portable EFB platforms should be subject to allocation tracking to specific aircraft or persons;
- (c) where a system has input ports and especially if widely known protocols are using these ports or internet connections are offered, then special consideration should be shown to the risks associated with these ports;
- (d) where physical media is used to update the EFB system and especially if widely known types of physical media are used, then the operator should use technologies and/or procedures to assure that unauthorised content cannot enter the EFB system through these media.

The required level of EFB security depends on the criticality of the used functions (e.g. an EFB which only holds a list of fuel prices may require less security than an EFB used for performance calculations).

Beyond the level of security required to assure that the EFB can properly perform its intended functions, the level of security ultimately required depends on the abilities of the EFB.

Examples of typical safety and security defences are contained in the following non exhaustive list:

- (a) Individual system firewalls;
- (b) Clustering of systems with similar safety standards into domains;
- (c) Data encryption & authentication;
- (d) Virus scans;
- (e) Keeping the OS up to date;
- (f) Initiating air/ground connections only when required and always from the aircraft;

- (g) 'Whitelists' for allowed Internet domains;
- (h) VPNs;
- (i) Granting of access rights on a need-to-have basis;
- (j) Troubleshooting procedures should consider as well security threats as potential root cause of EFB misbehaviour, and responses should be developed to prevent future successful attacks when relevant;
- (k) Virtualisation; and
- (l) Forensic tools and procedures.

The EFB administrator should not only keep the EFB system, but also his/her knowledge about security of EFBs systems up to date.

### 7.10 Electronic signatures

Part-CAT, Part-M, and other regulations may require a signature to signify either acceptance or to confirm the authority (e.g. load sheet, technical logbook, NOTOC). In order to be accepted as an equivalent to a handwritten signature, electronic signatures used in EFB applications need, as a minimum, to fulfil the same objectives and should, as a minimum, assure the same degree of security as the handwritten or any other form of signature it intends to replace. AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(c) provides a means to comply with the required handwritten signature or equivalent for the mass and balance documentation.

In the case of legally required signatures, an operator should have in place procedures for electronic signatures, acceptable to the competent authority, that guarantee:

- (a) **the uniqueness:** A signature should identify a specific individual and be difficult to duplicate;
- (b) **the significance:** An individual using an electronic signature should take deliberate and recognisable action to affix his or her signature;
- (c) **the scope:** The scope of information being affirmed with an electronic signature should be clear to the signatory and to subsequent readers of the record, record entry, or document;
- (d) **the signature security:** The security of an individual's handwritten signature is maintained by ensuring that it is difficult for another individual to duplicate or alter it;
- (e) **the non-repudiation:** An electronic signature should prevent a signatory from denying that he or she affixed a signature to a specific record, record entry, or document. The more difficult it is to duplicate a signature, the likelier the signature was created by the signatory; and
- (f) **the traceability:** An electronic signature should provide positive traceability to the individual who signed a record, record entry, or any other document.

An electronic signature should retain those qualities of a handwritten signature that guarantee its uniqueness. Systems using either a PIN or a password with limited validity (time-wise) may be appropriate in providing positive traceability to the individual who appended it. Advanced electronic signatures, qualified certificates and secured signature-creation devices needed to create them are typically not required for EFBs operations.

Note: The provision of secure access to EFB functions is outside the scope of this section, which only addresses the replacement of handwritten signature by an electronic one.

### **7.11 Role of the EFB administrator**

The role of the EFB administrator is a key factor in the management of the EFB system of an operator. Complex EFB systems may require more than one individual to conduct the administration process, but one person should be designated as the EFB administrator responsible for the complete system with appropriate authority within the operator's management structure.

The EFB administrator will be the person in overall charge of the EFB system, and will be responsible for ensuring that any hardware conforms to the required specification, and that no unauthorised software is installed. He/she will also be responsible for ensuring that only the current version of the application software and data packages are installed on the EFB system.

The EFB administrator is responsible:

- (a) for all the applications installed, and for providing support to the EFB users on these applications;
- (b) to check potential security issues associated with the application installed;
- (c) for hardware and software configuration management and for ensuring, in particular, that no unauthorised software is installed;
- (d) for ensuring that only a valid version of the application software and current data packages are installed on the EFB system; and
- (e) for ensuring the integrity of the data packages used by the applications installed.

The operator should make arrangements to ensure the continuity of the management of the EFB system in the absence of the EFB administrator.

EFB administration should be subject to independent routine audits and inspections as part of the operator's compliance monitoring programme (see paragraph 7.8).

Each person involved in EFB administration should receive appropriate training in their role and should have a good working knowledge of the proposed system hardware, operating system, and relevant software applications, and also of the appropriate regulatory requirements related to the use of EFB. The content of this training should be determined with the aid of the EFB system supplier or application supplier.

The administrator training material should be made available on request to the competent authority.

#### **7.11.1 The EFB policy and procedures manual**

The (S)TC holder, the EFB system supplier or the operator in the case of consumer device should clearly identify those parts of the EFB system that can be accessed and modified by the operator's EFB administration process and those parts that are only accessible by the EFB system supplier. The EFB administrator should establish procedures, documented in an EFB policy and procedures manual, to ensure that no unauthorised changes take place. The EFB policy and procedures manual may be fully or partly integrated in the Operations Manual.

The EFB policy and procedures manual should also address the validity and currency of EFB content and databases, ensuring, thus, the integrity of EFB data.

This may include establishing revision control procedures so that flight crews and others can ensure that the contents of the system are current and complete. These revision control procedures may be similar to the revision control procedures used for paper or other storage means.

For data that is subject to a revision cycle control process, it should be readily evident to the user which revision cycle has been incorporated in the information obtained from the system. Procedures should specify what action to take if the applications or databases loaded on the EFB are out of date. This manual may include, but is not limited to, the following:

- (a) Document changes to content/databases;
- (b) Notification to crews of updates;
- (c) If any applications use information that is specific to the aircraft type or tail number, ensuring that the correct information is installed on each aircraft;
- (d) Procedures to avoid corruption/errors during changes to the EFB system; and
- (e) In case of multiple EFBs in the flight crew compartment, procedures to ensure that they all have the same content/databases installed.

The EFB administrator should be responsible for the procedures and systems, documented in the EFB policy and procedures manual that maintain EFB security and integrity. This includes system security, content security, access security, and protection against harmful software (see paragraph 7.9).

Note: An example of the subjects relevant for inclusion in the EFB policy and procedures manual is included at [Appendix G](#).

#### **7.12 EFB system maintenance**

Procedures should be established for the routine maintenance of the EFB system and how unserviceability and failures are to be dealt with to ensure that the integrity of the EFB system is assured. Maintenance procedures may also need to include the secure handling of updated information and how it is accepted and then promulgated in a timely and complete format to all users and aircraft platforms.

The operator is responsible for the maintenance of EFB system batteries, and should ensure that they are periodically checked and replaced as required.

Should a fault or failure of the system come to light, it is essential that such failures are brought to the immediate attention of the flight crew and that the system is isolated until rectification action is taken. In addition to backup procedures, to deal with system failures, a reporting system will need to be in place so that the necessary action, either to a particular EFB system, or to the whole system, is taken in order to prevent the use of erroneous information by flight crews.

#### **7.13 Flight crew training**

Flight crew should be given specific training on the use of the EFB system before it is operationally used.

Training should include at least the following:

- (a) An overview of the system architecture;
- (b) Pre-flight checks of the system;

- (c) Limitations of the system;
- (d) Specific training on the use of each application and the conditions under which the EFB may and may not be used;
- (e) Restrictions on the use of the system, including where some or the entire system is not available;
- (f) Procedures for normal operations, including cross-checking of data entry and computed information;
- (g) Procedures to handle abnormal situations, such as a late runway change or diversion to an alternate aerodrome;
- (h) Procedures to handle emergency situations;
- (i) Phases of the flight when the EFB system may and may not be used;
- (j) CRM and human factor considerations on the use of the EFB; and
- (k) Additional training for new applications or changes to the hardware configuration.

As far as practicable, it is recommended that the training simulators' environments include the EFBs in order to offer a higher level of representativeness.

Consideration should also be shown to the role that the EFB system plays in operator proficiency checks as part of recurrent training and checking, and to the suitability of the training devices used during training and checking.

EFB training should be included in the relevant training programme established and approved in accordance with ORO.FC

Note: Further guidance and means of compliance are provided in [Appendix E](#).

#### **7.14 Operational evaluation test**

The operator should conduct an operational evaluation test which should allow verifying that the above elements have been satisfied before final decision on the operational use of the EFB.

The operator should notify its competent authority of its intention to conduct an operational evaluation test by sending a plan which should contain at least the following information:

- (a) starting date of the operational evaluation test;
- (b) duration;
- (c) aircraft involved;
- (d) EFB hardware and type(s) of software(s); and
- (e) when no paper backup is retained:
  - (1) EFB detailed risk assessment,
  - (2) simulator LOFT session programme, and
  - (3) proposed flights for the competent authority observation flights.

##### **7.14.1 Applications replacing paper products with an initial retention of paper backup**

Where paper is initially retained as backup, the operational evaluation test should consist of an in-service proving period no longer than six months. A reduction to

no less than three months may be considered taking into account the following criteria:

- (a) the operator's previous experience with EFBs,
- (b) the intended use of the EFB system, and
- (c) the mitigation means defined by the operator.

An operator wishing to reduce the six months operational evaluation test should submit to its competent authority a request with justification in its operational evaluation plan.

The competent authority may ask for an operational evaluation test lasting more than six months if the number of flights operated in this period is not considered sufficient to evaluate the EFB system.

The purpose of the in-service proving period is for the operator to demonstrate that the EFB system provides an acceptable level of accessibility; usability and reliability to those required by the applicable operational requirements (see AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180 and AMC1 ORO.MLR.100). In particular that:

- (a) the flight crews are able to operate the EFB applications without reference to paper;
- (b) the operator's administration procedures are in place and function correctly;
- (c) the operator is capable of providing timely updates to the applications on the EFB, where a database is involved;
- (d) the introduction of the EFB without paper backup does not adversely affect the operator's operating procedures and alternative procedures for use when the EFB system is not available provide an acceptable equivalent;
- (e) for a system including uncertified elements (hardware or software), that the system operates correctly and reliably; and
- (f) the EFB risk assessment, as required under 7.2, is adequate to the type of operations intended after the operational evaluation test (with or without paper backup).

The results of the demonstration may be documented in the form of a report from the in-service proving period on the performance of the EFB system.

The operator may remove the paper backup once it has shown that the EFB system is sufficiently robust.

#### **7.14.2 Applications replacing paper products without paper backup at commencement of operations and other applications**

Where an operator seeks to start operations without paper backup, the operational evaluation test should consist of the following elements:

- (a) a detailed review of the EFB risk assessment;
- (b) a simulator LOFT session to verify the use of the EFB under operational conditions including normal, abnormal, and emergency conditions; and
- (c) observation by the competent authority of the initial operator's line flights.

---

The operator should demonstrate that they will be able to continue to maintain the EFB to the required standard through the actions of the Administrator and Compliance Monitoring Programme.

#### **7.15 Final operational report**

The operator should produce and retain a final operational report, which summarises all activities conducted and the means of compliance used, supporting the operational use of the EFB system. An example of typical items that the operator should include in this report is provided in [Appendix I](#).

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix A to AMC 20-25 – Examples of Type A Software Applications

ED Decision 2014/001/R

Type A applications are EFB applications whose malfunction or misuse would have no adverse effect on the safety of any flight operation, i.e. a hazard level defined as no greater than a 'no safety effect' failure condition classification.

Such applications might typically be, but not limited to:

- (a) browser displaying:
  - (1) the certificates and other documents required to be carried by the applicable operational regulations and where copies are acceptable such as:
    - (i) the noise certificate, and its English translation if applicable;;
    - (ii) the air operator certificate (AOC);
    - (iii) the operations specifications relevant to the aircraft type, issued with the AOC; and
    - (iv) the Third-Party Liability Insurance Certificate(s);
  - (2) some manuals and additional information and forms required to be carried by the applicable operational regulations such as:
    - (i) notification of special categories of passenger (SCPs) and special loads; and
    - (ii) passenger and cargo manifests, if applicable; and
  - (3) other information within the operator's aircraft library such as:
    - (i) airport diversion policy guidance, including a list of special designated airports and/or approved airports with emergency medical service (EMS) support facilities;
    - (ii) maintenance manuals;
    - (iii) Emergency response guidance for aircraft incidents involving dangerous goods (ICAO Doc 9481-AN/928);
    - (iv) aircraft parts manuals;
    - (v) service bulletins/published Airworthiness Directives, etc.;
    - (vi) current fuel prices at various airports;
    - (vii) trip scheduling and bid lists;
    - (viii) passenger information requests;
    - (ix) check airman and flight instructor records; and
    - (x) Flight crew currency requirements.
- (b) interactive applications for crew rest calculation in the framework of flight time limitation;
- (c) interactive forms to comply with the reporting requirements of the competent authority and the operator.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix B to AMC 20-25 – Type B Software Applications

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

A non-exhaustive list of possible Type B software applications, that are to be evaluated, is provided in this Appendix.

- Document Browser displaying the following documents, interactive or not, or not in pre-composed format, and not driven by sensed aircraft parameters:
  - The manuals and additional information and forms required to be carried by Regulations such as:
    - The Operations Manual (including the MEL and CDL);
    - The Aircraft Flight Manual;
    - The Operational Flight Plan;
    - The aircraft continuing airworthiness records, including the technical Log;
    - Meteorological information including with graphical interpretation;
    - ATS Flight Plan;
    - notices to airmen (NOTAMs) and aeronautical information service (AIS) briefing documentation;
- Electronic aeronautical chart applications including en route, area, approach, and airport surface maps; these applications may offer features such as panning, zooming, scrolling, and rotation, centring and page turning, but without display of aircraft/own-ship position.
- Use of Airport Moving Map Displays (AMMD) applications that are compliant with the means set forth in [Appendix H](#) paragraph H.2, in particular with the ETSO-C165a approval.
- Applications that make use of the internet and/or other aircraft operational communications (AAC) or company maintenance-specific data links to collect, process, and then disseminate data for uses such as spare parts and budget management, spares/inventory control, unscheduled maintenance scheduling, etc.
- Cabin-mounted video and aircraft exterior surveillance camera displays;
- Aircraft performance calculation application that uses algorithmic data or calculates using software algorithms to provide:
  - take-off, en route, approach and landing, missed approach, etc. performance calculations providing limiting masses, distances, times and/or speeds;
  - power settings, including reduced take-off thrust settings;
  - mass and balance calculation application used to establish the mass and centre of gravity of the aircraft and to determine that the load and its distribution is such that the mass and balance limits of the aircraft are not exceeded.
- Airport Moving Map Displays (AMMD) applications not covered by an ETSO-C165a approval;
- Other Type B applications not listed in this appendix.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix C to AMC 20-25 – Process for the Classification of Software Applications

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

### 1. Purpose

As described in 5.2, the classification of the Type A and Type B EFB applications is based on the severity of failure conditions resulting from malfunctions and misuse (hereinafter referred to as 'failures') of the EFB applications.

It is not required to perform a full system safety assessment (as defined in AMC 25.1309) in order to classify EFB applications.

In practice, the assessment of these failure conditions can be achieved through the application at software level of the process described in chapter 2 of this Appendix.

The severity of the failure conditions will determine the classification of the EFB applications.

### 2. Process

As a first step, it should be verified that the application does not belong to the following list of applications that are not eligible for classification as either type A or B:

Applications:

- (a) displaying information which may be tactically used by the flight-crew members to check, control, or deduce the aircraft position or trajectory, either to follow the intended navigation route or to avoid adverse weather, obstacles or other traffic, in flight or on ground;
- (b) displaying information which may be directly used by the flight crew to assess the real-time status of aircraft critical and essential systems, as a replacement for existing installed avionics, and/or to manage aircraft critical and essential systems following failure;
- (c) communications with air traffic services;
- (d) sending data to the certified aircraft systems other than the EFB installed/shared resources.

Then, this process should:

- (a) identify failure conditions resulting from potential losses of function or malfunction (detected and undetected erroneous output) with consideration of any relevant factors (aircraft/system failures, flight crew procedures, operational or environmental conditions, etc.) which would alleviate or intensify the effects; and
- (b) classify the failure conditions according to the severity of their effects (using AMC 25.1309 definitions).

Failure conditions classified as minor should then be verified through a qualitative appraisal of the integrity and safety of the system design and installation. Software involved in Minor Failure Condition should be classified as level D according to the relevant industry standard (e.g. those referenced in AMC/AC 20-115()).

Software applications with failure conditions classified above minor are ineligible as EFB Type A or B applications.

Notes:

1. The severity of the failure conditions linked to displaying a function already existing in the certified type design, or already authorised through an ETSO, and used with same concept of operation, cannot be less than already assessed for this function;
2. The data resulting from this process may be reused by the operators in the context of the EFB risk assessment process described in chapter 7.2.2.

Further guidance material concerning hazard analysis process can be found in section 10 of AMC 25.1309.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix D to AMC 20-25 – Human Machine Interface Assessment and Human Factors Considerations

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

### D.1 General principles

This Appendix provides Guidance Material for the assessment of the human machine interface associated with the EFB system. It provides general criteria that may be applied during assessments conducted during both the airworthiness approval and operational assessment and is restricted to human factors assessment techniques and means of compliance. The process for division of responsibilities and who does what is contained within the main body of the AMC.

Note: Where an assessment is conducted as part of an airworthiness approval e.g. for an installed EFB system or installed resources for portable EFB, CS 25.1302 titled 'Installed systems and equipment for use by the flight crew' or applicable airworthiness basis should be applied.

### D.2 Common considerations

#### D.2.1 Human machine interface

The EFB system should provide a consistent and intuitive user interface, within and across the various hosted applications. This should include, but not be limited to, data entry methods, colour-coding philosophies, and symbology.

#### D.2.2 Legibility of text

Text displayed on the EFB should be legible to the typical user at the intended viewing distance(s) and under the full range of lighting conditions expected on a flight crew compartment, including use in direct sunlight. Users should be able to adjust the screen brightness of an EFB independently of the brightness of other displays on the flight crew compartment. In addition, when automatic brightness adjustment is incorporated, it should operate independently for each EFB in the flight crew compartment. Buttons and labels should be adequately illuminated for night use. All controls should be properly labelled for their intended function. Consideration should be given to the long-term display degradation as a result of abrasion and ageing.

#### D.2.3 Input devices

In choosing and designing input devices such as keyboards or cursor control devices, applicants should consider the type of entry to be made and flight crew compartment environmental factors, such as turbulence, that could affect the usability of that input device. Typically, the performance parameters of cursor control devices should be tailored for the intended application function as well as for the flight crew compartment environment.

#### D.2.4 General EFB design guidelines

##### D.2.4.1 Consistency

##### D.2.4.1.1 Consistency between EFBs and applications

Particular attention should be paid to the consistency of all interfaces, in particular when a provider develops the software application and a different organisation integrates it into the EFB.

#### D.2.4.1.2 Consistency with flight deck applications

Whenever possible and without compromising innovation in design/use, EFB user interfaces should be consistent with the other flight deck avionics applications with regard to design philosophy, look and feel, interaction logics and workflows.

#### D.2.4.2 Messages and the use of colours

For any EFB system, EFB messages and reminders should meet the requirements in CS 23.1322, 25.1322 or applicable certification basis, as is appropriate for the intended aircraft. While the regulations refer to lights, the intent should be generalised to extend to the use of colours on displays and controls. That is, colour 'red' is to be used only to indicate a warning level condition. 'Amber' is to be used to indicate a caution level condition. Red and amber colours should be limited and considerate. Any other colour may be used for items other than warnings or cautions, providing that the colours used, differ sufficiently from the colours prescribed to avoid possible confusion. EFB messages and reminders should be integrated with (or compatible with) presentation of other flight crew compartment system alerts. EFB messages, both visual and auditory, should be inhibited during critical phases of the flight.

Flashing text or symbols should be avoided in any EFB application. Messages should be prioritised and the message prioritisation scheme evaluated and documented.

Additionally, during critical phases of the flight, required flight information should be continuously presented without un-commanded overlays, pop-ups, or pre-emptive messages, excepting those indicating the failure or degradation of the current EFB application. However, if there is a regulatory or Technical Standard Order (TSO) requirement that is in conflict with the recommendation above, those should have precedence.

#### D.2.4.3 System error messages

If an application is fully or partially disabled, or is not visible or accessible to the user, it may be desirable to have a positive indication of its status available to the user upon request. Certain non-essential applications such as e-mail connectivity and administrative reports may require an error message when the user actually attempts to access the function rather than an immediate status annunciation when a failure occurs. EFB status and fault messages should be prioritised and the message prioritisation scheme evaluated and documented.

#### D.2.4.4 Data entry screening and error messages

If user-entered data is not of the correct format or type needed by the application, the EFB should not accept the data. An error message should be provided that communicates which entry is suspect and specifies what type of data is expected. The EFB system should incorporate input error checking that detects input errors at the earliest possible point during entry, rather than on completion of a possibly lengthy invalid entry.

### D.2.5 Error and failure modes

#### D.2.5.1 Flight crew error

The system should be designed to minimise the occurrence and effects of flight crew error and maximise the identification and resolution of errors. For example,

terms for specific types of data or the format in which latitude/longitude is entered should be the same across systems. Data entry methods, colour-coding philosophies, and symbology should be as consistent as possible across the various hosted EFB applications. These applications should also be compatible with other flight crew compartment systems.

#### D.2.5.2 Identifying failure modes

The EFB system should be capable of alerting the flight crew of probable EFB system failures.

### D.2.6 Responsiveness of application

The system should provide feedback to the user when user input is accepted. If the system is busy with internal tasks that preclude immediate processing of user input (e.g. calculations, self-test, or data refresh), the EFB should display a 'system busy' indicator (e.g. clock icon) to inform the user that the system is occupied and cannot process inputs immediately.

The timeliness of system response to user input should be consistent with an application's intended function. The feedback and system response times should be predictable to avoid flight crew distractions and/or uncertainty.

### D.2.7 Off-screen text and content

If the document segment is not visible in its entirety in the available display area, such as during 'zoom' or 'pan' operations, the existence of off-screen content should be clearly indicated in a consistent way. For some intended functions it may be unacceptable if certain portions of documents are not visible. This should be evaluated based on the application and intended operational function. If there is a cursor, it should be visible on the screen at all times while in use.

### D.2.8 Active regions

Active regions are regions to which special user commands apply. The active region can be text, a graphic image, a window, frame, or other document object. These regions should be clearly indicated.

### D.2.9 Managing multiple open applications and documents

If the electronic document application supports multiple open documents, or the system allows multiple open applications, indication of which application and/or document is active should be continuously provided. The active document is the one that is currently displayed and responds to user actions. Under non-emergency, normal operations, the user should be able to select which of the open applications or documents is currently active. In addition, the user should be a

ble to find which flight crew compartment applications are running and switch to any one of these applications easily. When the user returns to an application that was running in the background, it should appear in the same state as when the user left that application, with the exception of differences stemming from the progress or completion of processing performed in the background.

### D.2.10 Flight crew workload

The positioning and procedures associated with the use of the EFB should not result in unacceptable flight crew workload. Complex, multi-step data entry tasks should be avoided during take-off, landing, and other critical phases of the flight. An evaluation of

the EFB intended functions should include a qualitative assessment of incremental pilot workload, as well as pilot system interfaces and their safety implications.

### **D.3 Specific application considerations**

#### **D.3.1 Approach/departure and navigation chart display**

The approach, departure, and navigation charts that are depicted should contain the information necessary, in appropriate form, to conduct the operation to at least a level of safety equivalent to that provided by paper charts. It is desirable that the EFB display size is at least as large as current paper approach charts and that the format be consistent with current paper charts.

The HMI assessment is key to identifying acceptable mitigation means, e.g.:

- (a) to establish procedures to reduce the risk of making errors;
- (b) to control and mitigate additional workload related to EFB use;
- (c) to ensure consistency of colour coding and symbology philosophies, between EFB applications and their compatibility with other flight crew compartment applications; and
- (d) to consider aspects of Crew Resource Management (CRM) when using an EFB system.

#### **D.3.2 Performance applications and mass & balance calculations**

Input data and output data (results) shall be clearly separated from each other. All the information necessary for a given calculation task should be presented together or easily accessible.

All data required for the performance and mass & balance applications should be asked for or displayed, including correct and unambiguous terms (names), units of measurement (e.g. kg or lbs), and when applicable index system and CG-position declaration (e.g. Arm/%MAC). The units should match the ones from the other cockpit sources for the same kind of data.

Airspeeds should be provided in a way directly useable in the cockpit unless the unit clearly indicates otherwise (e.g. KCAS). Any difference in the type of airspeed provided by the EFB application and the type provided by the AFM or FCOM performance charts should be mentioned in the pilot guides and training material.

If the application allows to compute both dispatch (regulatory, factored) and other results (e.g. in-flight or unfactored), the flight crew should be made aware of the active mode.

##### Inputs

The application should allow to clearly distinguish user entries from default values or entries imported from other aircraft systems.

Performance applications should offer to the flight crew the ability to check whether a certain obstacle is included in the performance calculation and/or to include revised or new obstacle information in the performance calculation.

##### Outputs

All critical performance calculation assumptions (e.g. use of thrust reversers, full or reduced thrust/power rating) should be clearly displayed. The assumptions made about

any calculation should be at least as clear to pilots as similar information would be on a tabular chart.

All output data should be available in numbers.

The application should indicate if a set of entries results in an unachievable operation (for instance a negative stopping margin) with a specific message or colour scheme. This should be done in accordance with D.2.4.2 (Messages and the use of colours).

In order to allow a smooth workflow and to prevent data entry errors, the layout of the calculation outputs should be such that it is not inconsistent with the data entry interface of the aircraft applications in which the calculation outputs are used (e.g. Flight Management Systems).

#### Modifications

The user should be able to modify performance calculations easily, especially when making last minute changes.

Calculation results and any outdated input fields should be deleted:

- (a) when modifications are entered;
- (b) when the EFB is shut down or the performance application is closed; and
- (c) when the EFB or the performance application have been in a standby or 'background' mode long enough, i.e. such that it is likely that when it is used again the inputs or outputs are outdated.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix E to AMC 20-25 – Flight Crew Training

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

The purpose of this Appendix is to describe considerations for training and checking when Standard Operating Procedures (SOP) are dependent on the use of an EFB system.

### **E.1 EFB training and checking**

#### **E.1.1 Assumptions regarding flight crew previous experience**

Training for the use of the EFB should be for the purpose of operating the EFB itself and the applications hosted on it, and should not be intended to provide basic competence in areas such as aircraft performance, etc. Initial EFB training, therefore, should assume basic competence in the functions addressed by the software applications installed.

Training should be adapted to the crew experience and knowledge.

#### **E.1.2 Programmes crediting previous EFB experience**

Training programmes for the EFB may take credit for previous EFB experience. For example, previous experience of an aircraft performance application hosted on a portable EFB and using similar software may be credited toward training on an installed EFB with a performance application.

#### **E.1.3 Initial EFB training**

Training required for the grant of an aircraft type rating may not recognise variants within the type nor the installation of particular equipment. Any training for the grant of a type qualification need not, therefore, recognise the installation or use of an EFB unless it is installed equipment across all variants of the type. However, where training for the issue of the type rating is combined with the operator's conversion course required by ORO.FC.220, the training syllabus should recognise the installation of the EFB where the operator's SOPs are dependent on its use.

Initial EFB Training may consist of both ground-based and in-flight training depending on the nature and complexity of the EFB system. An operator or approved training organisation (ATO) may use many methods for ground-based EFB training including written hand-outs or FCOM material, classroom instruction, pictures, videotape, ground training devices, computer-based instruction, FSTD, and static aircraft training. Ground-based training for a sophisticated EFB lends itself particularly to CBT-based instruction. In-flight EFB training should be conducted by a suitably qualified person during Line Flying Under Supervision or during Differences, Conversion or Familiarisation Training.

##### **E.1.3.1 Areas of emphasis during initial EFB training**

- (a) The use of the EFB hardware and the need for proper adjustment of lighting, etc. when the system is used in-flight;
- (b) The intended use of each software application together with limitations and prohibitions on their use;
- (c) If an aircraft performance application is installed, proper cross-checking of data input and output;
- (d) If a terminal chart application is installed, proper verification of the applicability of the information being used;
- (e) If a moving map display is installed, the need to avoid fixation on the map display; and

- (f) Failure of component(s) of the EFB.

#### E.1.3.2 Typical initial EFB training

The following might be a typical training syllabus, if not contrasting with the operational suitability data provided by the aircraft manufacturer.

##### E.1.3.2.1 Ground-based training

- (a) System architecture overview;
- (b) Display Unit features and use;
- (c) Limitations of the system;
- (d) Restrictions on the use of the system;
  - (1) Phases of the flight;
  - (2) Alternate procedures (e.g. MEL).
- (e) Applications as installed;
- (f) Use of each application;
- (g) Restrictions on the use of each application;
  - (1) Phases of the flight;
  - (2) Alternate procedures (e.g. MEL).
- (h) Data input;
- (i) Cross-checking data input and output; and
- (j) Use of data output.

##### E.1.3.2.2 Flight training

- (a) Practical use of the Display Unit;
- (b) Display Unit Controls;
- (c) Data input devices;
- (d) Selection of applications;
- (e) Practical use of applications;
- (f) CRM and human factor considerations;
- (g) Situational awareness;
- (h) Avoidance of fixation;
- (i) Cross-checking data input and output; and
- (j) Practical integration of EFB procedures into SOPs.

#### E.1.4 Initial EFB checking

##### E.1.4.1 Initial ground EFB checking

The check conducted following the ground-based element of Initial EFB Training may be accomplished by questionnaire (oral or written) or as an automated component of EFB computer-based training depending on the nature of the training conducted.

#### E.1.4.2 Skill test & proficiency check

Proficiency in EFB use is not shown in the required items in Appendix 9 to Annex I (Part-FCL) to Commission Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 for the Skill Test for the issue of a type rating following type conversion training or for the Proficiency Check for the renewal or revalidation of a type rating. Where the operator's SOPs are dependent on the use of the EFB on the particular type or variant, proficiency in the use of the EFB should be assessed in the appropriate areas (e.g. item 1.1, item 1.5, etc. in Appendix 9 to Annex I (Part-FCL) to Commission Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011.

#### E.1.4.3 Operator proficiency check

ORO.FC.230(b)(1) requires that flight crew demonstrate their competence in carrying out normal procedures during the Operator Proficiency Check (OPC). Therefore, where an operator's SOPs are dependent on the use of an EFB, proficiency in its use should be assessed during the OPC. Where the OPC is performed on an FSTD not equipped with the operator's EFB, proficiency should be assessed by another acceptable means.

#### E.1.4.4 Line check

ORO.FC.230 (c) requires that flight crew demonstrate their competence in carrying out normal procedures during the line check. Therefore, where an operator's SOPs are dependent on the use of an EFB, proficiency in its use should be assessed during line check.

#### E.1.4.5 Areas of emphasis during EFB checking

- (a) Proficiency in the use of each EFB application installed;
- (b) Proper selection and use of EFB displays;
- (c) Where an aircraft performance application is installed, proper cross-checking of data input and output;
- (d) Where a terminal chart application is installed, proper check of the validity of the information and the use of the chart clip function;
- (e) Where a moving map display is installed, maintenance of a proper outside visual scan without prolonged fixation on EFB operation, especially during the taxiing operations; and
- (f) Actions following the failure of component(s) of the EFB, including hot EFB battery.

## **E.2 Differences or familiarisation training**

When the introduction of the use of an EFB requires Differences or Familiarisation Training to be carried out under ORO.FC.125, the elements of Initial EFB Training should be used, as described above.

## **E.3 Recurrent EFB training and checking**

### **E.3.1 Recurrent EFB training**

Recurrent training is normally not required for the use of an EFB, provided the functions are used regularly in line operations. Operators should be encouraged, however, to include normal EFB operations as a component of the annual ground and refresher training required by AMC1 ORO.FC.230.

In the case of mixed fleet flying, or where the EFB is not installed across the fleet, additional recurrent training should be applied. Initial training programme developed under E.1.3 is considered to be sufficient.

### **E.3.2 Recurrent EFB Checking**

Recurrent EFB checking should consist of those elements of the licence proficiency check, the operator proficiency check and the line check applicable to the use of an EFB as described in paragraphs E.1.4.2, E.1.4.3, and E.1.4.4. Areas of emphasis are as described in paragraph E.1.4.5.

### **E.4 Suitability of training devices**

Where the operator's SOPs are dependent on the use of an EFB, it is recommended that the EFB is present during the operator's training and checking. Where present, the EFB should be configured and operable in all respects as per the relevant aircraft. This should apply to:

- (a) the operator's conversion course required by ORO.FC.220;
- (b) Differences or familiarisation training required by ORO.FC.125; and
- (c) Recurrent training and checking required by ORO.FC.230.

Where the EFB system is based on a portable device used without any installed resources, it is recommended that the device is present and operable and used during all phases of the flight during which it would be used under the operator's SOPs.

For all other types of EFB system, it is recommended that the device is installed and operable in the training device (FFS) and used during all phases of the flight during which it would be used under the operator's SOPs. However, an operator may define an alternative means of compliance when the operator's EFB system is neither installed nor operable in the training device.

Note: It is not necessary for the EFB to be available for that training and checking which is not related to the operator and the operator's SOPs.

Where the EFB is installed equipment in the basic aircraft type or variant, the installation and use of the EFB in the training device is required for the training and checking for the issue of the type rating and for the checking for the renewal or revalidation of the type rating.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix F to AMC 20-25 – Software Application Documentation

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

The operator should retain the following documentation:

- (a) Functional description document (for the initial assessment and any subsequent functional change);
- (b) Release notes (for both initial and all subsequent software releases) or equivalent;
- (c) Version description document (for both initial and all subsequent releases);
- (d) First article inspection report (refers to quality controlled release of the EFB Software Application);
- (e) Ground viewer (to enable user validation of the software releases and data base releases and updates);
  - (1) Viewers should use the same software components as the airborne application; and
  - (2) Viewers should enable user validity checking of airborne data bases before installation on an aircraft.

### **F.1 Additional requirements for performance applications for take-off, landing and mass & balance calculations**

#### **F.1.1 General**

The performance and mass & balance applications should be based on existing published data found in the AFM or performance manual, and deliver results that allow the crew to operate in compliance with the appropriate OPS regulations. The applications may use algorithms or data spread sheets to determine results. They may have the ability to interpolate within but should not extrapolate beyond the information contained in the published data for the aircraft.

If the program is designed to be used by operators under different regulation frameworks and allows to choose between Agency and other reference regulations, this choice should be protected so that it is accessible only to the administrator.

To protect against intentional and unintentional modifications, the database files related to performance and mass & balance (performance database, airport database, etc.) integrity should be checked by the program before performing calculation. This check can be run once at the start-up of the application.

Each software version should be identified by a unique version number. Only specific modules of the performance or M&B software application are approved, for a specific software revision and on a specific host (e.g. computer model). The performance and mass & balance applications should keep a trace of each computation performed (inputs and outputs) and the airline should have procedures in place to retain this information.

#### **F.1.2 Testing**

The demonstration of the compliance of a performance or mass & balance application should include evidence of the software testing activities performed with the software version candidate for operational use.

The testing can be performed either by the operator or a third party, as long as the testing process is documented and the responsibilities identified.

The testing activities should include HMI testing, reliability testing, and accuracy testing. HMI testing should demonstrate that the application is not error-prone and that calculation errors can be detected by the crew with the proposed procedures. The testing should demonstrate that the applicable HMI guidelines are followed and that the HMI is implemented as specified by the application developer and this AMC. Refer to Appendix D.3.2 for further information.

Reliability testing should show that the application in its operating environment (OS and hardware included) is stable and deterministic, i.e. identical answers are generated each time the process is entered with identical parameters.

#### F.1.2.1 Accuracy testing

Accuracy testing should demonstrate that the aircraft performance or mass & balance computations provided by the application are correct in comparison with data derived from the AFM or other appropriate sources, under a representative cross section of conditions (e.g. for performance applications: runway state and slope, different wind conditions and pressure altitudes, various aircraft configuration including failures with a performance impact, etc.).

The demonstration should include a sufficient number of comparison results from representative calculations throughout the entire operating envelope of the aircraft, considering corner points, routine and break points.

Operators are expected to justify that they covered a sufficient number of testing points with respect to the design of their software application and databases.

Any difference compared to the reference data that is judged significant should be examined and explained. When differences come from a reduced conservatism or reduced margins that were purposely built into the approved data, this approach should be clearly mentioned and motivated. Compliance to the certification and operational rules need to be demonstrated in any case.

The testing method should be described. The testing may be automated when all the required data is available in appropriate electronic format, but in addition to a thorough monitoring of the correct functioning and design of the testing tools and procedures, it is strongly suggested to perform additional manual verification. It could be based on a few scenarios for each chart or table of the reference data, including both operationally representative scenarios and 'corner-case' scenarios.

The testing of a software revision should, in addition, include non-regression testing and testing of any fix or change.

Furthermore, an operator should conduct testing related to its customisation of the applications and to any element proper to its operation that was not covered at an earlier stage (e.g. airport database verification).

### F.1.3 Procedures

In addition to the provisions of chapter 7.6, specific care is needed regarding the crew procedures concerning performance or mass and balance applications:

- (a) Crew procedures should ensure that calculations are conducted independently by each crew member before data outputs are accepted for use.

- (b) Crew procedures should ensure that a formal cross-check is made before data outputs are accepted for use. Such cross-checks should utilise the independent calculations described above, together with the output of the same data from other sources on the aircraft.
- (c) Crew procedures should ensure that a gross-error check is conducted before data outputs are accepted for use. Such a gross-error check may use either a 'rule of thumb' or the output of the same data from other sources on the aircraft.
- (d) Crew procedures should ensure that, in the event of loss of functionality by an EFB through either the loss of a single application, or the failure of the device hosting the application, an equivalent level of safety can be maintained. Consistency with the EFB Risk Assessment assumptions should be confirmed.

#### **F.1.4 Training**

In addition to the provisions of chapter 7.13, the training should emphasise the importance of executing all performance calculations in accordance with the SOPs to assure fully independent calculations.

Furthermore, due to the optimisation at different levels brought by performance applications, the crew may be confronted with new procedures and different aircraft behaviour (e.g. use of multiple flaps settings for take-off). The training should be designed and provided accordingly.

Where an application allows computing both dispatch (regulatory calculations, factored calculations) and other results, the training should highlight the specificities of those results. Depending of the representativeness of the calculation, the crew should be trained on the operational margin that might be required. (refer to Part-CAT requirements).

The training should also address the identification and the review of default values, if any, and assumptions about the aircraft status or environmental conditions made by the application.

#### **F.1.5 Additional considerations for mass & balance applications**

The basic data used for the mass & balance calculation should be modifiable by the EFB Administrator himself/herself or by the software application provider on behalf of the EFB Administrator.

In addition to the figures, a graph should visualise the mass and its associated CG-position.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix G to AMC 20-25 – EFB Policy and Procedures Manual

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

These are the typical contents of an EFB policy and procedures manual that can be part of the Operation Manual. The proposed outline is very extensive. It may be adapted to the specific EFBs system and to the size and complexity of the operations in which the operator is involved.

### **EFB policy & procedures Manual**

#### **Typical Contents**

- 1. Revision history**
- 2. List of effective pages or paragraphs**
- 3. Table of contents**
- 4. Introduction**
  - Glossary of terms and acronyms
  - EFB general philosophy, environment and dataflow
  - EFB system architecture
  - Limitations of the EFB system
  - Hardware description
  - Operating system description
  - Detailed presentation of the EFB applications
  - EFB application customisation
  - Data management:
    - Data administration
    - Organisation & workflows
    - Data loading
    - Data revision mechanisms
    - Approval workflow
    - Data publishing & dispatch
    - Customisation
    - How to manage the airline specific documents
    - Airport data management
    - Aircraft fleet definition
  - Data authoring
    - Navigation and customisation
- 5. Hardware and operating system control and configuration**
  - Purpose and scope
  - Description of the following processes:

- Hardware configuration and part No control
- Operating system configuration and control
- Accessibility control
- Hardware maintenance
- Operating system updating
- Responsibilities and accountabilities
- Records and filing
- Documentary references

#### **6. Software application control and configuration**

- Purpose and scope
- Description of the following processes:
  - Part No control
  - Software configuration management
  - Application updating process
- Responsibilities and accountabilities
- Records and filing
- Documentary references

#### **7. Flight crew**

- Training
- Operating procedures (normal, abnormal, and emergency)

#### **8. Maintenance considerations**

#### **9. EFB security policy**

- Security solutions and procedures

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix H to AMC 20-25 – Airport Moving Map Display (AMMD) Application with Own-Ship Position

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

### H.1 General considerations

#### H.1.1 Preamble

This Appendix guides the applicant in how to demonstrate the safe operational use for AMMD applications as a Type B software application to be hosted in EFBs.

It is recognised that an AMMD can aid pilot positional awareness on the airport manoeuvring area and the Agency proposes to allow AMMDs to be Type B application under the conditions established in this Appendix H.

#### H.1.2 Assumptions of intended use of an AMMD

An AMMD application is not used as the primary means of taxiing navigation and is only used in conjunction with other materials and procedures identified within the Operating Concept – see paragraph H.3.

Note: When an AMMD is in use, the primary means of taxiing navigation remains the use of normal procedures and direct visual observation out of the cockpit window.

Thus, as recognised in ETSO-C165a, an AMMD application with display of own-ship position is considered as having a minor safety effect for malfunctions causing the incorrect depiction of aircraft position (own-ship), and the failure condition for the loss of function is classified as ‘no safety effect.’

### H.2 Approval of AMMD in EFBs

#### H.2.1 Minimum requirements

The AMMD software and database that is compliant with the Agency’s European Technical Standard Order ETSO-C165a, or an equivalent standard, with following AMMD system features implemented, is considered acceptable:

- (a) The system provides means to display the revision number of the software installed.
- (b) The system is capable of accepting updated airport mapping information and provides means to display the validity period of the database to the flight crew. The flight crew should be able to easily ascertain the validity of the on-board map database. The application should provide an indication when the AMMD database is no longer valid. Refer to section 2.2.5 of RTCA DO-257A as per section 3.1.1 of ETSO-C165a.
- (c) The Total System Accuracy of the end-to-end system is specified and characterised, and does not exceed 50 meters (95 %).

Note: An airworthiness-approved sensor using the Global Positioning System (GPS) in combination with a RTCA DO-272 medium accuracy compliant database is considered one acceptable means to satisfy this requirement.

- (d) The system automatically removes the own-ship position when the aircraft is in flight (using e.g. weight on wheels discrete or speed monitoring) and when the estimated position uncertainty exceeds the maximum value. Refer to sections 3 and 4 in Appendix 1 of ETSO-C165a.

- (e) It is recommended that the AMMD detects, annunciates to the flight crew, and fully removes depiction of own-ship data, in case of any loss or degradation of AMMD functions due to failures such as memory corruption, frozen system, latency, etc. Refer to section 1 in Appendix 1 of ETSO-C165a.
- (f) Data Quality Requirements (DQRs) for the AMMD data base.

### **H.2.2 Data provided by the AMMD software application developer**

The AMMD software application developer should provide the appropriate data to each integrator in an EFB:

- (a) The executable object code in an acceptable transferring medium;
- (b) Installation instructions or equivalent as per ETSO-C165a section 2.2. addressing:
  - (1) identification of each target EFB system computing platform (including hardware platform and operating system version) with which this AMMD software application and database was demonstrated to be compatible;
  - (2) installation procedures and limitations to address the AMMD installation requirements for each applicable platform such as target computer resource requirements (e.g. memory resources) to ensure the AMMD will work properly when integrated and installed;
  - (3) interface description data including the requirements for external sensors providing data inputs; and
  - (4) verification means required to verify proper integration of the AMMD in the target platform environment, including identification of additional activities that the integrator of an EFB must perform to ensure the AMMD meets its intended function, such as testing in the aircraft.
- (c) Any AMMD limitations, and known installation, operational, functional, or performance issues on the AMMD.

### **H.2.3 AMMD software installation in the EFB**

The operator should review the documents and the data provided by the AMMD developer, and ensure that the installation requirements of the AMMD software in the specific EFB platform and aircraft are addressed. The following activities are required:

- (a) Ensure that the software and database are compatible with the EFB system computing platform on which they are intended to function, including the analysis of compatibility of the AMMD with other EFB Type A and B software applications residing in the same platform. Follow the programme installation instructions provided by the software supplier, as applicable to the compatible EFB computer.
- (b) Check that the objectives for installation, assumptions, limitations and requirements for the AMMD, as part of the data provided by the AMMD software application developer (see H.2.2), are satisfied.
- (c) Perform any verification activities proposed by the AMMD software application developer, as well as identify and perform additional integration activities to be completed.
- (d) Ensure the compatibility and the compliance with requirements for data provided by other installed systems, such as a GNSS sensor and latency assumptions.

### **H.3 Operating concept**

The operating concept should include, as minimum,:

- (a) pilot operation, including confirmation of effectivity;
- (b) handling of updates;
- (c) quality assurance function;
- (d) handling of NOTAMS; and
- (e) the provision of current maps and charts to cover the intended operation of the aeroplane.

Changes to operational or procedural characteristics of the aircraft (e.g. Flight crew procedures) are documented in the Operations Manual or user's guide as appropriate. In particular, the following text is required:

This EFB airport moving map display (AMMD) with own-ship position symbol is designed to assist flight crews in orienting themselves on the airport surface to improve pilot positional awareness during taxi operations. The AMMD function is not to be used as the basis for ground manoeuvring. This application is limited to ground operations only.

### **H.4 Training requirements**

The operator may use flight crew procedures to mitigate some hazards. This will include limitations on the use of the AMMD function. As the AMMD could be a compelling display and the procedural restrictions are a key component of the mitigation, training should be provided in support of an AMMD's implementation.

Any mitigation to hazards that are mitigated by flight crew procedures should be included in flight crew training. Details of AMMD training should be included in the operator's overall EFB training (refer to [Appendix E](#)).

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix I to AMC 20-25 – Example of Final Operational Report

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

### **System description and classification of EFB system**

- A general description of the proposed EFB system
- EFB system (hardware and software applications) proposed (paragraph 5.1)

### **Software applications**

- List of Type A applications installed (paragraph 5.2.1)
- List of Type B applications installed (paragraph 5.2.2)
- List of miscellaneous (non-EFB) software applications installed (paragraph 6.2.2.3)

### **Hardware (relevant information or references)**

For portable EFB used without installed resources:

- EMI compliance demonstration (paragraph 6.2.1.1)
- Lithium battery compliance demonstration (paragraph 6.2.1.2)
- Depressurisation compliance demonstration (paragraph 6.2.1.4)
- Details of the power source (paragraph 6.2.1.3)

For portable EFB served by installed resources:

- Details of the airworthiness approval for the mounting device (paragraph 6.1.1.1.1)
- Description of the placement of the EFB display (paragraph 6.1.1.1.2)
- Details of the use of installed resources (paragraph 6.1.1.1)
- EMI compliance demonstration (paragraph 6.2.1.1)
- Lithium battery compliance demonstration (paragraph 6.2.1.2)
- Depressurisation compliance demonstration (paragraph 6.2.1.4)
- Details of the power source (paragraph 6.1.1.1.3)
- Details of any data connectivity (paragraph 6.1.1.1.4)

For installed EFB:

- Details of the airworthiness approval as installed equipment (paragraph 6.1.1.2)

### **Certification documentation**

- Limitations contained within the AFM (paragraph 6.1.2.1)
- Guidelines for EFB application developers (paragraph 6.1.2.2)
- Guidelines for EFB system suppliers (paragraph 6.1.2.3)

### **Specific considerations for performance applications**

- Details of performance data validation conducted (paragraph 7.5)

### **Operational assessment**

- Details of the EFB risk assessment conducted (paragraph 7.2)

- Details of the human machine interface assessment conducted for Type A and B Software applications (paragraph 7.4)
- Details of flight crew operating procedures (paragraph 7.6):
  - Procedures for using EFB systems with other flight crew compartment systems (paragraph 7.6.1)
  - Flight crew awareness of EFB software/database revisions (paragraph 7.6.2)
  - Procedures to mitigate and/or control workload (paragraph 7.6.3)
  - Flight crew responsibilities for performance calculations (paragraph 7.6.4)
- Details of proposed compliance monitoring oversight of the EFB system (paragraph 7.7)
- Details of EFB system security measures (paragraph 7.8)
- Details of EFB administration procedures including provision of the EFB policy and procedures manual (paragraph 7.10 & paragraph 7.10.1)
- Details of the electronic signatures procedure (paragraph 7.9)
- Details of the system for routine EFB System maintenance (paragraph 7.11)
- Details of flight crew training (paragraph 7.12):
  - Initial training
  - Differences training
  - Recurrent training
- Report of the operational evaluation test (paragraph 7.13):
  - Proposals for the initial retention of paper backup (paragraph 7.13.1)
  - Proposals for the commencement of operations without paper backup (paragraph 7.13.2)
- EFB platform/hardware description;
- Description of each software application to be included in the assessment (see Appendix F);
- Risk assessment summary for each application and mitigation means put in place;
- Human factors assessment for the complete EFB system, human machine interface and all software applications;
- Pilot workload in both single-pilot and multi-crew flown aircraft
- Size, resolution, and legibility of symbols and text
- For navigation chart display: access to desired charts, access to information within a chart, grouping of information, general layout, orientation (e.g., track-up, north-up), depiction of scale information
- Operator training;
- EFB administrator qualification.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix J to AMC 20-25 – Power Supply Considerations for Portable EFBs

*ED Decision 2014/001/R*

If an EFB is permanently attached to the essential power network, it could affect the essential generation system (emergency generator and/or battery, bus bars, distribution system) to which it is connected.

Certification specifications require that an alternate high integrity electrical power supply system, independent of the normal electrical power system, be provided to power those services necessary for continued safe flight and landing, in case of loss of the normal system. Adding other unnecessary services/loads will affect the integrity of this alternate power system. Portable and installed EFBs are considered non-essential equipment and, therefore, not considered necessary for continued safe flight and landing. It is, hence, not recommended to connect the EFB to an essential power bus.

[Amdt 20/12]

## Appendix K to AMC 20-25 – Considerations for Rapid Depressurisation Test

ED Decision 2014/001/R

When the EFB system hosts applications that are required to be used during flight following a rapid depressurisation, testing is required to determine an EFB device's functional capability. The information from the rapid depressurisation test is used to establish the procedural requirements for the use of that EFB device in a pressurised aircraft. Rapid decompression testing should follow the EUROCAE ED-14G/RTCA DO-160F guidelines for rapid decompression testing up to the maximum operating altitude of the aircraft on which the EFB is to be used. The EFB should be operative for at least 10 minutes after the start of the decompression.

- (a) **Pressurised aircraft:** When a portable EFB has successfully completed rapid depressurisation testing, then no mitigating procedures for the depressurisation event need to be developed. When a portable EFB has failed the rapid depressurisation testing while turned ON, but successfully completed it when OFF, then procedures will need to ensure that at least one EFB on board the aircraft remains OFF during the applicable flight phases or configured so that no damage will be incurred should rapid decompression occur in flight above 10 000 ft AMSL.

If the EFB system has not been tested or has failed the rapid depressurisation test, then alternate procedures or paper backup should be available.

- (b) **Non-Pressurised aircraft:** Rapid decompression testing is not required for an EFB used in a non-pressurised aircraft. The EFB should be demonstrated to reliably operate up to the maximum operating altitude of the aircraft. If EFB operation at maximum operating altitude is not attainable, procedures should be established to preclude operation of the EFB above the maximum demonstrated EFB operation altitude while still maintaining availability of the required aeronautical information.

[Amdt 20/12]

## AMC 20-26

### AMC 20-26 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP Authorisation Required (RNP AR) Operations

*ED Decision 2009/019/R*

This AMC provides a means of compliance for applicants for an airworthiness approval to conduct Required Navigation Performance Authorisation Required (RNP AR) Operations and the applicable criteria to obtain an operational approval. It relates to the implementation of area navigation within the context of the Single European Sky<sup>1</sup>, in particular in relation to the verification of conformity of the airborne constituents, per Article 5 of EC Regulation 552/2004. Additional guidance material can be found in the ICAO Performance Based Navigation Manual, Document 9613, Volume II, Chapter 6, as contained in ICAO State Letter AN 11/45-07/22.

#### 1 PREAMBLE

In order to ensure an increased availability, enhanced safety and reduced operating minima over and above that provided from traditional non-precision and conventional Area Navigation (RNAV) approaches, the concept of area navigation within the European Region, RNP should be implemented on instrument approach procedures

This AMC provides a means of compliance for the airworthiness approval of area navigation systems and their use for RNP AR operations that range from nominal (i.e. where general aircraft qualification is matched to standard AR procedure design) to those more demanding in operational and performance requirements. The assurance of consistency with and conformance to the target level of safety (TLS) objectives for RNP AR operations results from the specific compliance criteria of this AMC and the associated standard RNP AR procedure design.

This AMC is generally consistent with the Single European Sky legislation and with material in the ICAO Performance-Based Navigation Manual, as well as in EUROCONTROL publications dealing with related operational and functional requirements for area navigation. The material contained in this AMC reflects the fundamental change associated with RNP in the roles, responsibilities and requirements for the regulator, manufacturer, operator and procedure designer.

This AMC is based on barometric-vertical navigation (BARO-VNAV) and RNAV multi-sensor navigation systems, as well as the system concepts, guidance and standards defined in the RTCA DO-236()/EUROCAE ED-75() MASPS. RNP AR builds on the RNP concept that requires the ability of the aircraft navigation system to monitor its achieved navigation performance, and to identify to the pilot whether the operational requirement is or is not being met during an operation.

This AMC addresses general certification considerations, including functional requirements, accuracy, integrity, continuity of function and system limitations.

This AMC introduces some provisions for aircraft qualification to RNP AR Departure protected with customised procedure design criteria. These provisions will be completed in a next issue of the AMC, once ICAO has published public procedure design criteria for departures.

<sup>1</sup> Regulation (EC) No 549/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 10 March 2004 laying down the framework for the creation of the single European sky (the framework Regulation).

This AMC is based on the criteria developed in FAA AC 90-101, with inclusion of more stringent criteria (see [Appendix 6](#)), including notably a focus on aircraft performance in Non-Normal conditions.

Compliance with this AMC provides, but by itself does not constitute, a basis for an operational approval to conduct RNP operations. The special procedure design criteria contained in the RNP AR procedure design manual may necessitate additional operational evaluation depending upon the operator needs or operating conditions.

Aircraft operators should apply to their competent authority for such an approval. Since this AMC has been harmonised with other RNP implementation and operations approval criteria outside of Europe i.e. USA/FAA, it is expected to facilitate interoperability and ease the effort in obtaining operational approval by airline operators.

### 1.1 PURPOSE

This AMC establishes an acceptable means of compliance for an applicant to obtain airworthiness approval of an RNP system and the operational criteria for use in designated European airspace blocks where RNP AR operations have been implemented by the competent aviation authority. An applicant may elect to use an alternative means of compliance. However, those alternative means of compliance must meet safety objectives that are acceptable to the Agency. Compliance with this AMC is not mandatory hence the use of the terms *shall* and *must* apply only to an applicant who elects to comply with this AMC in order to obtain airworthiness approval.

### 1.2 BACKGROUND

The application of RNP AR to terminal area and approach operations provides an opportunity to utilise modern aircraft capability and performance to improve safety, efficiency and capacity. Safety is improved when RNP AR procedures replace visual procedures or non-precision approaches, and efficiency is improved through more repeatable and optimum flight paths. Capacity can be improved by de-conflicting traffic during instrument conditions.

RNP AR includes unique capabilities that require aircraft and aircrew authorisation similar to Category (CAT) II/III ILS operations. All RNP AR procedures have reduced lateral obstacle evaluation areas and vertical obstacle clearance surfaces predicated on the aircraft and aircrew performance requirements of this AMC. In general, RNP AR procedures are expected to be developed to not only address specific operational needs or requirements but also to enable benefits to the broadest segment of the RNP AR aircraft population possible. As a result, there are some aspects of RNP AR approach procedure design that will be used only as necessary.

A critical component of RNP is the ability of the aircraft navigation system to monitor its achieved navigation performance, and to identify to the pilot whether the operational requirement is or is not being met during an operation.

The criteria (both procedure design and certification) may take account of the fact that aircraft with different flight guidance capabilities will be used to fly the procedures. However, the procedure design criteria do reflect specific levels of aircraft performance and capability for the barometric VNAV aspects of the operation. The operator authorisation may be extended where the operational requirements can be met by aircraft but require more stringent performance criteria.

## 2 SCOPE

This material provides airworthiness approval criteria related to RNAV systems with lateral navigation (LNAV) and BRAO-VNAV capabilities, intended to be used under Instrument Flight Rules, including Instrument Meteorological Conditions, in designated European airspace blocks where RNP Authorisation Required (AR) operations have been implemented per a decision of the competent aviation authorities. It addresses general certification requirements, including functional requirements, accuracy, integrity, continuity of function, and system limitations.

The material contained in this AMC is unique and represents the fundamental change associated with RNP in the roles, responsibilities and requirements for the regulator, manufacturer, air operator and procedure designer. The assurance of consistency with and conformance to the target level of safety (TLS) objectives for RNP AR operations results from the specific compliance criteria of this AMC, a flight operational safety assessment and the associated standard RNP AR procedure design.

The material and criteria contained herein also provide a means for development and approval of an RNP AR capability consistent with the RNP AR procedures implemented using the ICAO PBN RNP AR Procedure Design Manual. However, it should be recognised that in order to perform RNP AR operations there are three key aspects of this AMC that must be considered. The first is that where an operator/manufacturer satisfies all criteria contained herein, they should be considered operationally ready to conduct RNP AR operations using procedure design and alternatives defined by the ICAO PBN RNP AR Procedure Design Manual. The second is that there are three elements of the procedure design criteria that will only be used on the occasions where there is a specific operational need or benefit. As a result, operators can be authorised for all or any subset of these types of procedures:

- Reduced lateral obstacle evaluation area on the missed approach or departure (also referred to as a procedure requiring RNP less than 1.0) or
- When conducting a RNP AR approach using a line of minima less than RNP 0.3 and/or a missed approach or departure that requires RNP less than 1.0. and
- Ability to fly a published ARC (also referred to as a RF leg)

These aspects of instrument procedures are reflected in the guidance and criteria of the ICAO PBN RNP AR procedure design manual. Therefore, an operator/manufacturer with aircraft lacking some or all of these capabilities should recognise that this will result in operational limitations, i.e. the more complex or demanding operations using these procedure criteria may not be performed. The third aspect is that there will be specific situations where even full compliance to the AMC may be insufficient to conduct procedures that are tailored to aircraft specific performance

This AMC recognises that published criteria for demonstrated aircraft performance may be insufficient to enable RNP AR operations where the performance required is less than 0.3 NM. Consequently, this AMC provides the criteria necessary to support airworthiness approval to these lower values and criteria including guidance for the assessment of:

- Training and Crew Qualification (see [Appendix 2](#))
- RNP Operational Considerations (see [Appendix 3](#))
- Flight Technical Error (see [Appendix 4](#))
- Flight Operation Safety Assessment (see [Appendix 5](#))

**This AMC also contains criteria reflecting the Agency's opinion that parts of the ICAO PBN Navigation Specification for RNP AR APCH are not appropriate for the RNP AR operations that the Agency will authorise. As a result, select criteria in the AMC are different and are clearly noted as such.**

Section 3.2 of this AMC refers to documents which contribute to the understanding of the RNP concept and which may support an application for approval. However, it is important that an applicant evaluates his aircraft system against the criteria of this AMC.

Compliance with this AMC provides, but by itself does not constitute, a basis for, an operational approval to conduct RNP operations. Aircraft operators should apply to their national authority for such an approval. While an objective of this AMC is interoperability and to ease operator operational approvals, some operators and manufacturers will need to consider the noted differences in requirements from the ICAO PBN Manual and FAA AC 90-101 to determine what additional aircraft or system changes are necessary, or what operational limitations must be implemented.

A glossary of terms and acronyms used in this AMC is given in [Appendix 1](#).

### **3 REFERENCE DOCUMENTS**

#### **3.1 Related Requirements**

CS 25.1301, 25.1302, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1316, 25.1321, 25.1322, 25.1329, 25.1431, 25.1581.

CS 23.1301, 23.1309, 23.1311, 23.1321, 23.1322, 23.1329, 23.1335, 23.1431, 23.1581.

EU-OPS<sup>1</sup> 1.243, 1.420, 1.845, 1.865, 1.873

National operational regulations

#### **3.2 Related Material**

##### **3.2.1 ICAO**

Doc 8168-OPS/611 Aircraft Operations (PANS OPS)

Doc 9613 Performance Based Navigation Manual

Doc 9881 Guidelines for Electronic Terrain, Obstacle and Aerodrome Mapping Information

Doc 9905 Required Navigation Performance Authorization Required (RNP AR) Procedure Design Manual

##### **3.2.2 EASA**

AMC 20-5 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for the use of the Navstar Global Positioning System (GPS)

AMC 25-11 Electronic Display Systems

AMC 20-27 AMC 20-27 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP APPROACH (RNP APCH) Operations Including APV BARO-VNAV Operations

EASA Opinion Nr. 01/2005 The Acceptance of Navigation Database Suppliers

<sup>1</sup> REGULATION (EC) No 1899/2006 OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL of 12 December 2006 amending Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91 on the harmonisation of technical requirements and administrative procedures in the field of civil aviation.

### 3.2.3 EUROCONTROL

NAV.ET1.ST16-001( ) Navigation Strategy for ECAC

Document 003-93( ) Area Navigation Equipment: Operational Requirements and Functional Requirements

### 3.2.4 FAA

AC 25-11( ) Electronic Display Systems

AC 20-129 Airworthiness Approval of Vertical Navigation (VNAV) Systems for Use in the U.S. National Airspace System (NAS) and Alaska

AC 20-130( ) Airworthiness Approval of Navigation or Flight Management Systems Integrating Multiple Navigation Sensors

AC 20-138( ) Airworthiness Approval of NAVSTAR Global Positioning System (GPS) for use as a VFR and IFR Supplemental Navigation System

AC 25-4 Inertial Navigation Systems (INS)

AC 25-15 Approval of Flight Management Systems in Transport Category Airplanes

AC 90-97 Use of Barometric Vertical Navigation (VNAV) for Instrument Approach Operations using Decision Altitude

Order 8260.52 United States Standard for Required Navigation Performance (RNP) Approach Procedures with Special Aircraft and Aircrew Authorization Required (SAAAR)

AC 90-101 Approval for Required Navigation Performance (RNP) Procedures with Special Aircraft and Aircrew Authorisation Required (SAAAR)

AC 120-29A Criteria for Approval of Category I and Category II Weather Minima for Approach

AC 20-153 Acceptance of Data Processes and Associated Navigation Databases

### 3.2.5 Technical Standard Orders

ETSO-C115( )/TSO-C115( ) Airborne Area Navigation Equipment Using Multi-sensor Inputs.

ETSO-C129( )/TSO-C129( ) Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS)

ETSO-C145( )/TSO-C145( ) Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)

ETSO-C146( )/TSO-C146( ) Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)

ETSO-C151( )/TSO-C151( ) Terrain Awareness and Warning System (TAWS)

### 3.2.6 EUROCAE/RTCA and ARINC

---

ED-75( )/DO-236( )	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standards: Required Navigation Performance for Area Navigation
DO-283A	Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Required Navigation Performance for Area Navigation
ED-76 / DO-200A	Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data
ED-77 / DO-201A	Standards for Aeronautical Information
DO-229( )	Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Global Positioning System/Wide Area Augmentation System Airborne equipment
ARINC 424	Navigation System Data Base

#### **4 ASSUMPTIONS**

Applicants should note that this AMC is based on the following assumptions concerning the measures taken by the responsible airspace authorities and service providers to safeguard RNP AR operations in the European region:

##### **4.1 Navaid Infrastructure Considerations**

RNP AR approaches are only authorised based on GNSS as the primary Navaid infrastructure. The use of DME/DME as a reversionary capability (e.g. extraction when on an approach or continuation for departures) is only authorised for individual operators where the infrastructure supports the required performance. RNP AR operations should not be used in areas of known navigation signal (GNSS) interference.

Note 1: Most modern RNAV systems will prioritise inputs from GNSS and then DME/DME positioning. Although VOR/DME positioning is usually performed within a flight management computer when DME/DME positioning criteria do not exist, avionics and infrastructure variability pose serious challenges to standardisation.

Note 2: Procedure validation will entail use of an infrastructure navigation performance tool that is capable of analysing the flight procedure path and profile relative to the ground navigation aid infrastructure. This type of tool is likely to only approximate results for the actual procedure. However, due to the cost of flight checking, increased efficiency is anticipated in flight checking when augmented with an infrastructure navigation performance tool.

Note 3: With or without an infrastructure navigation performance tool, a flight check aircraft is expected to be used. Where State flight check aircraft systems do not reflect the types of aircraft or systems intending to conduct the RNP AR procedure, use of operator aircraft with systems that also provides real time calculations of their achieved performance along the procedure flight path and profile should also be used to evaluate a procedure. The selected aircraft are intended to provide confidence in the interoperability of differing systems and implementations.

Note 4: For procedures that allow aircraft to rely only on GNSS, (see paragraph 8.3), the acceptability of the risk of degraded navigation performance beyond the requirements for the operation for multiple aircraft due to satellite failure or RAIM holes, has been considered by the responsible airspace authority.

## **4.2 Communication & ATS Surveillance Considerations**

RNP AR operations described herein do not require any unique communication or ATS Surveillance considerations.

## **4.3 Obstacle Clearance and Route Spacing**

All RNP AR procedures:

- (1) are published by an Aeronautical Information Service Provider certified according to article 7 of Regulation 550/2004<sup>1</sup>; or
- (2) are consistent with the relevant parts of ICAO Doc 8168 PANS OPS and ICAO PBN RNP AR Procedure Design Manual;
- (3) take account of the functional and performance capabilities of RNP systems and their safety levels as detailed in this AMC;

Note: Particular attention should be given to the constraints implied by the Airworthiness Certification objectives of paragraph 6.

- (4) require that barometric vertical navigation capability be used;
- (5) support reasonableness checking by the flight crew by including, on the charts, fix data (e.g. range and bearing to navigational aids or waypoint to waypoint);
- (6) terrain and obstacle data in the vicinity of the approach is published in accordance with ICAO Annex 15 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation and Doc 9881, Guidelines for Electronic Terrain, Obstacle and Aerodrome Mapping Information;
- (7) if the contingency procedure allows a reversion in aircraft use of navigation infrastructure, e.g. GNSS to DME/DME, the obstacle clearance assessment is based on an RNP that allows either infrastructure;
- (8) barometric altitude compensation for low temperature effects is accounted for in the procedure design, and any necessary limitations are specified in the AIP;
- (9) the Safety Case assessment for RNP AR operations accounts for the regulatory determination and documentation of compliance to the AMCs detailed requirements for the navigation system, aircraft operational capability, crew procedures and continuing airworthiness, as meeting or exceeding their TLS objectives for the procedure and/or spacing;
- (10) are designated RNAV e.g. RNAV(RNP) and throughout the AIP and on aeronautical charts, will specify either the sensors allowed or the RNP value required;
- (11) may have attributes that depart from the standard applications of procedures described in the ICAO RNP AR Procedure Design Manual.

## **4.4 Additional Considerations**

- a) Guidance in this chapter does not supersede the applicable operational requirements for equipage.

---

<sup>1</sup> Regulation (EC) No 550/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 10 March 2004 on the provision of air navigation services in the single European sky (the service provision Regulation).

- b) Current local pressure setting must be provided to support RNP AR approaches, where the aircraft's achieved vertical path is dependent on that setting. Failure to report a correct setting can lead to aircraft leaving the obstacle clearance area.

#### **4.5 Flight Evaluation**

- a) As RNP AR approaches do not have a specific underlying navigation facility, there is no requirement for flight inspection of navigation signals. However, due to the importance of publishing correct data, it is recommended that flight evaluation be used prior to publication for procedure validation and obstacle validation. Flight evaluation can be accomplished through ground evaluation (e.g. simulator assessment) and actual flight.
- b) Procedure validation includes confirmation of the basic flyability of the procedure in accordance with the procedure design. A thorough flyability assessment is not required prior to publication, since flyability is individually assessed by the operator as part of their database updating and maintenance process due to the unique nature of RNP AR approaches. The flight evaluation prior to publication should confirm track lengths, bank angles, descent gradients, runway alignment and compatibility with predictive terrain hazard warning functions (e.g. ETSO-C151( )/TSO-C151( ) compliant Terrain Awareness and Warning Systems). A Flight Inspection Truth System is typically not required. Due to variations in aircraft speeds, flight control system design, and navigation system design this flight evaluation does not confirm flyability for all of the various aircraft conducting RNP AR approaches.
- c) Obstacle validation through flight evaluation may be used to validate the obstacle data used to design the procedure. An obstacle flight evaluation may not be necessary if obstacle validation can be accomplished through ground inspection or validated survey techniques to the appropriate accuracy.

#### **4.6 Publication**

- a) The AIP clearly indicates the navigation application is RNP AR approach and specific authorisation is required.
- b) All procedures are based upon WGS 84 coordinates.
- c) The navigation data published in the relevant AIP for the procedures and supporting navigation aids must meet the requirements of Annex 15 and Annex 4 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation (as appropriate). The original data defining the procedure should be available to the operators in a manner suitable to enable the operator to verify their navigation data.
- d) The navigation accuracy for all RNP AR approach procedures is clearly published in the AIP.
- e) The navigation data for the procedure(s) to be loaded into the flight management system is from database supplier holds a Type 2 Letter of Acceptance (LoA) or equivalent and has been independently validated by the operator.
- f) Where reliance is placed on the use of radar to assist contingency procedures, its performance has been shown to be adequate for that purpose, and the requirement for a radar service is identified in the AIP.

#### **4.7 Controller Training**

Air traffic controllers, who will provide control services at airports where RNP approaches have been implemented, have completed the appropriate training

#### **4.8 Status Monitoring**

The Navaid infrastructure is monitored and, where appropriate, maintained by a service provider certified for navigation services according to article 7 of EC regulation 550/2004. For the use of non EU navigation service providers, timely warnings of outages (NOTAM) should be issued. Also status information should be provided to Air Traffic Services in accordance with ICAO Annex 11 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation for navigation facilities or services that may be used to support the operation.

#### **4.9 ATS System Monitoring**

When available, radar observations of each aircraft's proximity to track and altitude are typically noted by Air Traffic Service (ATS) facilities and aircraft track-keeping capabilities are analysed. If an observation/analysis indicates that a loss of separation or obstacle clearance has occurred, the reason for the apparent deviation from track or altitude should be determined and steps taken to prevent a recurrence.

### **5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

#### **5.1 Lateral Navigation (LNAV)**

5.1.1 For lateral navigation, the RNAV equipment enables the aircraft to be navigated in accordance with appropriate routing instructions along a path defined by waypoints held in an on-board navigation database.

Note: LNAV is typically a flight guidance systems mode, where the RNAV equipment provides path steering commands to the flight guidance system, which then controls flight technical error through either manual pilot control with a path deviation display or through coupling to the flight director or autopilot.

5.1.2 For the purposes of this AMC, RNP AR operations are based upon the use of RNAV equipment that automatically determines aircraft position in the horizontal plane using inputs from the following types of positioning sensor (in no specific order of priority or combination) but whose primary basis for positioning is GNSS:

- (a) Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS).
- (b) Inertial Navigation System (INS) or Inertial Reference System (IRS).
- (c) Distance Measuring Equipment giving measurements from two or more ground stations (DME/DME).

Additional information and requirements are in paragraphs 8.3 through 8.5.

#### **5.2 Vertical Navigation**

5.2.1 For Vertical Navigation, the system enables the aircraft to fly level and descend relative to a linear, point to point vertical profile path that is held in an on-board navigation database. The vertical profile will be based upon altitude constraints or vertical path angles where appropriate, associated with the LNAV path waypoints.

Note 1: VNAV is typically a flight guidance systems mode, where the RNAV equipment containing VNAV capability provides path steering commands to the flight guidance system, which then controls flight technical error through

either manual pilot control with a vertical deviation display or through coupling to the flight director or autopilot.

Note 2: The ARINC 424 specification data allows the definition of a vertical angle, however some system implementations preclude the specification of a vertical angle on a flight leg. In such a case it may be necessary to examine the leg types available that do and determine if the resulting lateral path is acceptable for the surrounding airspace.

Note 3: The specification of vertical angles on multiple path fixes in descent may lead to possible vertical path discontinuities (e.g. temperature effect). This type of procedure should be assessed to determine if the system response and performance can be accommodated in this situation and for other systems, or if the procedure must be changed. Climb paths are typically not included in a vertical profile e.g. departure or missed approach.

Note 4: Additionally, some system implementations may allow the manual specification of a vertical angle for a path or path segment. This capability may need to be evaluated to determine if it has the potential to alter or impact a VNAV procedure and the possible means of mitigating the potential condition e.g. design change or operational procedure.

Note 5: The system may provide the capability to determine performance optimised paths. A performance optimised path is defined by a series of straight line path segments that are designed to hold an aircraft at a specified speed while holding thrust to a constant value (e.g. typically near idle for descent) and guiding to the series of straight line paths. The elements required for the determination of the performance optimised path include gross weight, lift, drag and speed. This path capability and aircraft operation may be acceptable where the vertical path is specified with flexibility (e.g. altitude windows, AT/ABOVE). However, in the case where a linear point to point path, or flight path angle is specified, this type of systems capability with its associated vertical path errors may be unacceptable for the required operations.

Note 6: Systems may implement vertical profiles specified by AT/ABOVE constraints as a point to point path defined by AT constraints. This type of characteristic in system path definition may be acceptable.

Note 7: Systems that allow vertical paths to be defined by a combination of altitude constraints, and flight path angles, may be subject to vertical discontinuities, where a smooth or continuous vertical path is not possible. System responses to this condition may vary from possible level off manoeuvres to vertical speed captures of the flight path. The aircraft system performance must be assessed on a case by case basis for its acceptability for the required operation, and still may not be acceptable.

5.2.2 Temperature Compensation Systems: Systems that provide temperature-based corrections to the barometric VNAV guidance must comply with EUROCAE ED-75B, Appendix H.2. This applies to the final approach segment. Compliance to this standard should be documented to enable the operator to conduct RNP approaches when the actual temperature is below or above the published procedure design limit.

## 6 AIRWORTHINESS CERTIFICATION OBJECTIVES

The following performance certification criteria are defined for the airborne systems on the basis that the Assumptions of Section 4 are valid.

### 6.1 Accuracy

Aircraft performance is evaluated around the path defined by the published procedure and EUROCAE/ED-75B, Section 3.2. All vertical paths used in conjunction with the final approach segment will be defined by a Flight Path Angle (EUROCAE/ED-75B, Section 3.2.8.4.3) as a straight line emanating from a fix and altitude.

#### 6.1.1 Lateral

During operations on approaches notified exclusively for RNP equipped aircraft, the lateral track keeping accuracy and along-track positioning error of the on-board navigation system shall be equal to or better than the RNP for 95% of the flight time.

Note 1: The lateral track keeping accuracy is dependent on the navigation total system error (a combination of path definition error, position estimation error, display error and Flight Technical Error (FTE)).

- a) Refer to [Appendix 4](#) for the assessment of FTE for RNP AR operations authorised with RF legs, reduced lateral obstacle evaluation, e.g. less than 0.3 NM in final approach, less than 1.0 NM for missed approach.

Note 2: Provided that paragraph 8.3(b) has been shown to be valid in respect of typical GNSS performance, then, for RNAV systems that have been declared (e.g. in the Aircraft Flight Manual) to be compliant with the navigation accuracy criteria of FAA AC 20-130(), or FAA AC 20-138() or [AMC 20-5](#) or [AMC 20-27](#) and the accuracy requirements of this AMC including a statement of the operational RNP capability, the intent of this paragraph is considered as satisfied and no further accuracy demonstration is required. However, such a Flight Manual statement, by itself, does not constitute an airworthiness approval for RNP AR operations and compliance with all other criteria of this AMC will need to be shown.

Note 3: Some RNP system implementations may provide for multi-sensor mixing in the calculation of aircraft position. While this is not required, it provides for smoothing when positioning sources change and a means to optimise the calculation of aircraft position that is not possible for single source systems. Manufacturers should consider the effects of sensor failure or errors on lateral position during the conduct of RNP AR operations, and the potential departure, approach and missed approach RNP, in implementing system architecture, sensor switching, and redundancy.

#### 6.1.2 Vertical

During operations on instrument approach procedures notified exclusively for RNP aircraft and where the Vertical Error Budget (VEB) applies, the vertical system error includes altimetry error (assuming the temperature and lapse rates of the International Standard Atmosphere), the effect of along-track error, system computation error, data resolution error, and flight technical error. The 99.7% of system error in the vertical direction during the stabilised constant descent path must be less than the following (in feet):

$$\sqrt{((6076.115)(1.225)RNP \cdot \tan\theta)^2 + (60\tan\theta)^2 + 75^2 + ((-8.8 \cdot 10^{-8})(h + \Delta h)^2 + (6.5 \cdot 10^{-3})(h + \Delta h) + 50)^2}$$

Where  $\theta$  the vertical navigation (VNAV) path angle,  $h$  is the height of the local altimetry reporting station and  $\Delta h$  is the height of the aircraft above the reporting station.

The 99.7% altimetry system error for each aircraft (assuming the temperature and lapse rates of the ISA) shall be less or equal to than the following with the aircraft in the approach configuration:

$$ASE = -8.8 \cdot 10^{-8} \cdot H^2 + 6.5 \cdot 10^{-3} \cdot H + 50 \text{ (ft)}$$

Where  $H$  is the true altitude of the aircraft.

Note 1: Current guidance for VNAV such as AC20-129, and AC90-97 has less stringent performance requirements. A supplemental analysis, assessment and regulatory approval (i.e. airworthiness) will be necessary in meeting the requirements.

Note 2: For the vertical system error above, vertical angle error is not included and is not considered since data and database processes associated with DO-200A and DO-201A are required. In addition ATIS, automatic terminal information service temperature error is not included and is accounted for in the procedure design.

### 6.1.3 RNP System Performance

The required demonstration of RNP system performance, including lateral and vertical path steering performance (FTE), will vary according to the type of AR operation being considered e.g. low RNP for obstacle clearance or separation in an obstacle rich environment or high density air traffic environment. It will be for the competent Authority, responsible for the approval of the procedure, to assess the RNP level for the considered operation in accordance with the Flight Operations Safety Assessment (FOSA) see [Appendix 5](#).

In supporting the FOSA exercise, the applicant will be required to demonstrate the aircraft capability in terms of RNP system performance under a variety of operational conditions, rare normal conditions and non-normal conditions – see also [Appendix 4](#). For the non-normal conditions the applicant should conduct a safety impact assessment, which identifies from the existing aircraft System Safety Assessments (SSA), those Failure Conditions that have an impact on the RNP system performance. This safety assessment process should encompass the additional Failure Conditions introduced by any specific feature designed and implemented as mitigation for RNP AR operations (e.g. lateral deviation display) and also identify and document any additional flight crew procedures and training, necessary to support the overall safety of the operation.

Specific evaluations should be conducted to assess the path excursions upon failures and the resulting RNP levels. Results should be documented in the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM), AFM Supplement or appropriate aircraft operational support document and made available to the operator, thereby alleviating the need for similar operational evaluations.

Acceptable criterion to be used for assessing RNP significant failures under limit performance conditions (see [Appendix 4](#) Para 4) is as follows:

- a) The lateral excursions observed as a result of Probable failures should be documented against an objective of containment within 1xRNP.

Note 1: The System Safety Assessment of the aircraft systems supporting RNP AR operations (RNAV systems, Flight Controls Systems, Flight Guidance Systems, etc.) should therefore be revisited to identify these Probable failures. Probable failures are failures with a probability greater than  $10^{-5}$  per operation.

Note 2: This demonstration can rely on crew action to intervene and place the aircraft back on the target track, or apply a contingency procedure when the guidance is lost.

- b) The lateral excursions observed as a result of One Engine Inoperative (OEI) should be documented against an objective of containment within 1xRNP.

Note 1: This demonstration can rely on crew action to intervene and place the aircraft back on the target track.

- c) The lateral excursions observed as a result of Remote failures should be documented against an objective of containment within 2xRNP.

Note 1: The demonstration should evaluate the contributions of:

- (i) Remote systems failures that may impact the RNP capability
- (ii) GNSS satellite outages

Note 2: Remote system failures should include latent failures (integrity) and detected failures (continuity). For the detected failures, the monitor limit of the alert, the time to alert, the crew reaction time, and the aircraft response should all be considered when ensuring that the aircraft does not exit the obstacle clearance volume. Remote failures are failures with a probability between  $10^{-5}$  and  $10^{-7}$  per operation.

- d) A demonstration should be made that the aircraft remains manoeuvrable and a safe extraction may be flown for all Extremely Remote failures.

Note 1: Extremely Remote failures are failures with a probability between  $10^{-7}$  and  $10^{-9}$ .

For conditions a, b and c above, the vertical excursion should not exceed 75 feet below the desired path.

## 6.2 Integrity

### 6.2.1 System

- a) RNP and Barometric VNAV aircraft (e.g. FMS RNAV/VNAV equipped). This AMC provides a detailed acceptable means of compliance for aircraft that use an RNP system based primarily on GNSS and a VNAV system based on barometric altimetry. Aircraft complying with this AMC provide the requisite airspace containment (i.e. satisfactory assurance that the aircraft will remain within the obstacle clearance volume) through a variety of monitoring and alerting (e.g. 'Unable RNP', GNSS alert limit, path deviation monitoring).

- b) Other systems or alternate means of compliance. For other systems or alternate means of compliance, the probability of the aircraft exiting the lateral and vertical extent of the obstacle clearance volume (defined in ICAO PBN RNP AR Procedure Design Manual) must not exceed  $10^{-7}$  per operation, including the departure, approach and missed approach. The use of such alternatives may be satisfied by the flight operational safety assessment (see [Appendix 5](#)).

Note 1: The  $10^{-7}$  requirement applies to the total probability of excursion outside the obstacle clearance volume, including events caused by latent conditions (integrity) and by detected conditions (continuity) if the aircraft does not remain within the obstacle clearance volume after annunciation of the failure. The monitor limit of the alert, the latency of the alert, the crew reaction time, and the aircraft response should all be considered when ensuring that the aircraft does not exit the obstacle clearance volume. The requirement applies to a single approach, considering the exposure time of the operation and the Navaid geometry and navigation performance available for each published approach.

Note 2: This containment requirement derives from the operational requirement. This requirement is notably different than the containment requirement specified in RTCA/DO-236B (EUROCAE ED-75B). The requirement in RTCA/DO-236B (EUROCAE ED-75B) was developed to facilitate airspace design and does not directly equate to obstacle clearance.

#### 6.2.2 Display

The system design must be consistent with at least a major failure condition for the display of misleading lateral or vertical guidance on an RNP AR approach.

Note: The display of misleading lateral or vertical RNP guidance is considered a hazardous (severe-major) failure condition for RNP AR approaches with an RNP value less than RNP 0.3. Systems designed consistent with this effect should be documented as it may eliminate the need for some operational mitigations for the aircraft.

### 6.3 Continuity of Function

With respect to the airborne systems, it shall be shown that:

- a) The probability of loss of all navigation information is Remote.
- b) The probability of non-restorable loss of all navigation and communication functions is Extremely Improbable.

Note 1: In addition to the equipment required by EU-OPS 1, Sub-part L for IFR flight (or equivalent national requirements), at least one area navigation system is required. Where continued operation is required for a procedure with RNP on either the approach or missed approach, dual systems will be needed (see 7.2).

Note 2: Systems approved for RNP operations may have to comply with additional continuity requirements to ensure that the RNP capability is available for a specified RNP and operational environment e.g. dual equipage, independent systems for cross checking, etc.

Note 3: Probability terms are defined in CS AMC 25.1309, AC 23.1309-1( ) AC 27-1B or AC 29-2C.

## 7 FUNCTIONAL CRITERIA

### 7.1 Minimum Required Functions for RNP AR Operations

Table 1 lists and describes the system functions and features required where RNP AR operations are predicated on nominal RNP AR procedure design criteria e.g. FAA Notice 8260.52, ICAO RNP AR Procedure Design Manual.

Item	Function/Feature
	<b>Displays</b>
1	<p>Continuous Display of Deviation. The navigation system must provide the capability to continuously display to the pilot flying, on the primary flight instruments for navigation of the aircraft, the aircraft position relative to the defined lateral and vertical path (both lateral and vertical deviation) and manoeuvre anticipation. The display must allow the pilot to readily distinguish if the cross-track deviation exceeds the RNP (or a smaller value) or if the vertical deviation exceeds 75 feet (or a smaller value). Where the minimum flight crew is two pilots, means for the pilot not flying must be provided to verify the desired path and the aircraft position relative to the path.</p> <p>To achieve this, an appropriately scaled non-numeric deviation display (i.e. lateral deviation indicator and vertical deviation indicator) located in the pilot's primary field of view may be provided.</p> <p>Alternatively:</p> <p>For lateral data presentation only</p> <p>For RNP 0.3 and above,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– a navigation map display, readily visible to the flight crew, with appropriate map scales, giving equivalent functionality to an appropriately scaled non-numeric lateral deviation display, except that scaling may be set manually by the flight crew or</li> <li>– a numeric display of the lateral deviation, readily visible to the flight crew, with a minimum resolution of 0.1 NM and direction relative to the track</li> </ul> <p>For RNP &lt;0.3</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– a numeric display of the lateral deviation, in the primary field of view, with a resolution of 0.01 NM and direction relative to the track</li> </ul> <p>Note 1: A fixed-scale CDI is acceptable as long as the CDI demonstrates appropriate scaling and sensitivity for the intended navigation accuracy and operation. With a scalable CDI, the scale should be derived from the selection of RNP, and shall not require the separate selection of a CDI scale. Where a CDI is relied upon, alerting and annunciation limits must also match the scaling values. If the equipment uses default navigation accuracy to describe the operational mode (e.g. en-route, terminal area and approach), then displaying the operational mode is an acceptable means from which the flight crew may derive the CDI scale sensitivity.</p>
2	Identification of the Active (To) Waypoint. The navigation system must provide a display identifying the active waypoint either in the pilot's primary field of view, or on a readily accessible and visible display to the flight crew.
3	Display of Distance and Bearing. The navigation system should provide a display of distance and bearing to the active (To) waypoint in the pilot's primary field of view. Where not viable, a readily accessible page on a control display unit, readily visible to the flight crew, may display the data.
4	Display of Groundspeed and Time. The navigation system should provide the display of groundspeed and either estimated time of arrival or time to the active (To) waypoint in the pilot's primary field of view. Where not viable, a readily accessible page on a control display unit, readily visible to the flight crew, may display the data.
5	Display of To/From the active fix. The navigation system must provide a To/From display in the pilot's primary field of view. Systems with electronic map display in the pilot's primary field of view having designation of the active waypoint fulfil this requirement.

6	Desired Track Display. The navigation system must have the capability to continuously display to the pilot flying the aircraft the RNAV desired track. This display must be on the primary flight instruments for navigation of the aircraft.
7	Display of Aircraft Track. The navigation system must provide a display of the actual aircraft track (or track angle error) either in the pilot's primary field of view, or on a readily accessible and visible display to the flight crew.
8	Slaved Course Selector. The navigation system must provide a course selector automatically slaved to the RNAV computed path. As an acceptable alternative is an integral navigation map display.
9	RNAV Path Display. Where the minimum flight crew is two pilots, the navigation system must provide a readily visible means for the pilot not flying to verify the aircraft's RNAV defined path and the aircraft's position relative to the defined path.
10	Display of Distance to Go. The navigation system must provide the ability to display distance to go to any waypoint selected by the flight crew.
11	Display of Distance Between Flight Plan Waypoints. The navigation system must provide the ability to display the distance between flight plan waypoints.
12	Display of Barometric Altitude. The aircraft must display barometric altitude from two independent altimetry sources, one in each pilots' primary field of view. The altimeter setting input must be used simultaneously by the aircraft altimetry system and by the RNAV system. Note 1: This display supports an operational cross-check (comparator monitor) of altitude sources. If the aircraft altitude sources are automatically compared, the output of the independent altimetry sources, including independent aircraft static air pressure systems, must be analysed to ensure that they can provide an alert in the pilot's primary field of view when deviations between the sources exceed $\pm 75$ feet. Such comparator monitor function should be documented as it may eliminate the need for an operational mitigation.  Note 2: A single input is necessary to prevent possible crew error. Separate altimeter setting for the RNAV system is prohibited.
13	Display of Active Sensors. The aircraft must display the current navigation sensor(s) in use that are readily accessible to the flight crew.
<b>Performance, Monitoring and Alerting</b>	
14	Navigation performance: The system should include a capability to monitor for its achieved lateral navigation performance (e.g. EPU, EPE, ACTUAL or equivalent), and to identify for the flight crew whether the operational requirement is or is not being met during an operation (e.g. 'UNABLE RNP', 'Nav Accur Downgrad', path deviation monitoring, GNSS alert limit). For vertical navigation, this may be achieved by system vertical monitoring and alerting or by a combination of indications such as barometric altitude display and vertical deviation display in combination with procedural crosschecks. Signals radiated by GNSS augmentation systems managed by certified navigation service providers may be taken into account.
15	For multi-sensor systems, automatic reversion to an alternate navigation sensor if the primary navigation sensor fails. Note: This does not preclude means for manual navigation source selection.
16	When DME is used in RNP AR operations, automatic tuning of DME navigation aids used for position updating together with the capability to inhibit individual navigation aids from the automatic selection process. Note: Further guidance may be found in EUROCAE ED-75B / RTCA DO-236B, Section 3.7.3.1.
17	Capability for the RNAV system to perform automatic selection (or de-selection) of navigation sources, a reasonableness check, an integrity check, and a manual override or deselect. Note 1: The reasonableness and integrity checks are intended to prevent navigation aids being used for navigation update in areas where the data can lead to radio position fixing errors due to co-channel interference, multipath, stations in test, changes in station location and direct signal screening. In lieu of using radio navigation aid designated operational coverage (DOC),

	<p>the navigation system should provide checks which preclude use of duplicate frequency nav aids within range, over-the-horizon nav aids, and use of nav aids with poor geometry.</p> <p>Note 2: Further guidance may be found in EUROCAE ED-75B/RTCA DO-236B, Section 3.7.3.1.</p>
18	<p>Failure Annunciation. The aircraft must provide a means to announce failures of any aircraft component of the RNAV system, including navigation sensors. The annunciation must be visible to the pilot and located in the primary field of view.</p>
19	<p>Navigation Database status: The system should provide the means to display the validity period of the navigation database to the flight crew.</p>
<b>Path Definition and Flight Planning</b>	
20	<p>Maintaining Track and Leg Transitions. The aircraft must have the capability to execute leg transitions and maintain tracks consistent with the following paths:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) A geodesic line between two fixes (TF)</li> <li>ii) A direct path to a fix (DF)</li> <li>iii) A specified track to a fix, defined by a course (CF)</li> </ul> <p>Note 1: Industry standards for these paths can be found in RTCA DO-236B and ARINC Specification 424, which refer to them as TF, DF, CF path terminators. EUROCAE ED-75A/RTCA DO-236B and EUROCAE ED-77/RTCA DO-201A describe the application of these paths in more detail.</p> <p>Note 2: Use of CF may be acceptable in missed approach only, subject to local approval.</p>
21	<p>Fly-By and Fly-Over Fixes. The aircraft must have the capability to execute fly-by and fly-over fixes. The fly-over turn does not provide for repeatable paths, and is not compatible with RNP flight tracks. The fly-by turn may be used for limited RNP AR path changes under TF-TF or DF-TF transitions subject to procedure design requirements.</p> <p>When fly-by turns are required for specific RNP AR operations, the navigation system must limit the path definition within the theoretical transition area defined in RTCA DO-236B under the wind conditions identified in the ICAO PBN RNP AR Procedure Design Manual Doc 9905.</p>
22	<p>Waypoint Resolution Error. The navigation database must provide sufficient data resolution to ensure the navigation system achieves the required accuracy. Waypoint resolution error must be less than or equal to 60 feet, including both the data storage resolution and the RNAV system computational resolution used internally for construction of flight plan waypoints. The navigation database must contain vertical angles (flight path angles) stored to a resolution of hundredths of a degree, with equivalent computational resolution.</p>
23	<p>Capability for a "Direct-To" Function. The navigation system must have a "Direct-To" function the flight crew can activate at any time. This function must be available to any fix. The navigation system must also be capable of generating a geodesic path to the designated "To" fix, without "S-turning" and without undue delay.</p>
24	<p>Capability to define a vertical path. The navigation system must be capable of defining a vertical path by a flight path angle to a fix. The system must also be capable of specifying a vertical path between altitude constraints at two fixes in the flight plan. Fix altitude constraints must be defined as one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) An "AT or ABOVE" altitude constraint (for example, 2400A, may be appropriate for situations where bounding the vertical path is not required);</li> <li>(ii) An "AT or BELOW" altitude constraint (for example, 4800B, may be appropriate for situations where bounding the vertical path is not required);</li> <li>(iii) An "AT" altitude constraint (for example, 5200); or</li> <li>(iv) A "WINDOW" constraint (for example, 2400A3400B);</li> </ul> <p>Note: For RNP AR procedures, any segment with a published vertical path will define that path based on an angle to the fix and altitude.</p>
25	<p>Altitudes and/or speeds associated with published terminal procedures must be extracted from the navigation database.</p>

26	The system must be able to construct a path to provide guidance from current position to a vertically constrained fix.
27	Capability to Load Procedures from the Navigation Database. The navigation system must have the capability to load the entire procedure(s) to be flown into the RNAV system from the onboard navigation database. This includes the approach (including vertical angle), the missed approach and the approach transitions for the selected airport and runway.
28	Means to Retrieve and Display Navigation Data. The navigation system must provide the ability for the flight crew to verify the procedure to be flown through review of the data stored in the onboard navigation database. This includes the ability to review the data for individual waypoints and for navigation aids.
29	Magnetic Variation. For paths defined by a course (CF path terminator), the navigation system must use the magnetic variation value for the procedure in the navigation database.
30	Changes in Navigation accuracy. RNP changes to lower navigation accuracy must be complete by the fix defining the leg with the lower navigation accuracy, considering the alerting latency of the navigation system. Any operational procedures necessary to accomplish this must be identified.
31	Automatic Leg Sequencing. The navigation system must provide the capability to automatically sequence to the next leg and display the sequencing to the flight crew in a readily visible manner.
32	A display of the altitude restrictions associated with flight plan fixes must be available to the pilot. If there is a specified navigation database procedure with a flight path angle associated with any flight plan leg, the equipment must display the flight path angle for that leg.
<b>Navigation Database</b>	
33	<p>The aircraft navigation system must use an on-board navigation database containing current navigation data officially promulgated for civil aviation by a certified AIS provider, which can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) be updated in accordance with the AIRAC cycle and</li> <li>b) from which terminal airspace procedures can be retrieved and loaded into the RNAV system.</li> </ul> <p>The resolution to which the data is stored must be sufficient to ensure that the assumption of no path definition error is satisfied.</p> <p>The database must be protected against flight crew modification of the stored data.</p> <p>Note: When a procedure is loaded from the database, the RNAV system is required to fly it as published. This does not preclude the flight crew from having the means to modify a procedure or route already loaded into the RNAV system. However, the procedure stored in the database must not be modified and must remain intact within the database for future use and reference.</p>

**Table 1: Required Functions**

## 7.2 Additional Required Functions Supporting RNP AR operations

Table 2 lists and describes the system functions and features required for more demanding operations e.g. where RNP AR operations are predicated on use of RF legs, RNP less than 0.3 or RNP less than 1.0 on missed approach.

Item	Operation/Function
<b>Where RNP AR Operations use RF Legs:</b>	
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The navigation system must have the capability to execute leg transitions and maintain tracks consistent with an RF leg between two fixes.</li> <li>(2) The aircraft must have an electronic map display of the selected procedure.</li> <li>(3) The navigation system, the flight director system and autopilot must be capable of commanding a bank angle up to 25 degrees at or above 400 feet AGL and up to 8 degrees below 400 feet AGL. (These values are consistent with those published in the ICAO Doc 9905).</li> <li>(4) Upon initiating a go-around or missed approach (through activation of TOGA or other means), the flight guidance mode should remain in LNAV to enable continuous track guidance during</li> </ul>

	<p>an RF leg. Other means or mitigations may be acceptable depending on the aircraft, demonstrated path tracking performance, procedures and associated FOSA for go-around and missed approach procedures that require an RNP 0.3 or greater.</p> <p>(5) When evaluating flight technical error on RF legs, the effect of rolling into and out of the turn should be considered. The procedure is designed to provide 5 degrees of manoeuvrability margin, to enable the aircraft to get back on the desired track after a slight overshoot at the start of the turn.</p> <p>Note: It should be noted that a radius to fix (RF) leg is considered a procedure design tool that is available to solve a specific operational requirement or problem. As such it may be considered a highly desired option for select RNP AR operations. In some instances, the RF will be applied in the final or missed approach, requiring additional consideration in a FOSA. Systems lacking such capability should have sufficient means to ensure that operators are aware of this limitation and that it precludes the conduct of RNP AR procedures containing an RF leg.</p>
<b>Where RNP AR Operations are less than RNP 0.3:</b>	
2	<p>(1) No single-point-of-failure. No single-point-of-failure can cause the total loss of guidance compliant with the navigation accuracy associated with the approach. Typically, the aircraft must have at least the following equipment: dual GNSS sensors, dual flight management systems, dual air data systems, dual autopilots, and a single inertial reference unit (IRU). A single autopilot is acceptable provided dual independent flight directors are available and the approach permits use of the flight directors to either continue the approach or execute a missed approach.</p> <p>Note: If automatic switching is not available, it must be demonstrated that the time required to switch to an alternate system does not result in the aircraft exceeding the RNP value.</p> <p>(2) Hazardous Failure. The system design must be consistent with at least a hazardous failure condition (as per AMC 25-1309) for the loss or display of misleading of lateral or vertical guidance.</p> <p>(3) Go-around guidance. Upon initiating a go-around or missed approach (through activation of TOGA or other means), the flight guidance mode should remain in LNAV to enable continuous track guidance during an RF leg.</p> <p>(4) Loss of GNSS. After initiating a go-around or missed approach following loss of GNSS, the aircraft must automatically revert to another means of navigation that complies with the navigation accuracy for the time necessary to fly the go-around or the missed approach.</p>
<b>Where Missed Approach are less than RNP 1.0</b>	
3	<p>(1) Single-point-of-failure. No single-point-of-failure can cause the total loss of guidance compliant with the navigation accuracy associated with a missed approach procedure. Typically, the aircraft must have at least the following equipment: dual GNSS sensors, dual flight management systems, dual air data systems, dual autopilots, and a single inertial reference unit (IRU). A single autopilot is acceptable provided dual independent flight directors are available and the approach permits use of the flight directors to either continue the approach or execute a missed approach.</p> <p>Note: If automatic switching is not available, it must be demonstrated that the time required to switch to an alternate system does not result in the aircraft exceeding the RNP value.</p> <p>(2) Major Failure. The system design assurance must be consistent with at least a major failure condition (as per AMC 25.1309) for the loss of lateral or vertical guidance.</p> <p>(3) Go-Around Guidance. Upon initiating a go-around or missed approach (through activation of TOGA or other means), the flight guidance mode should remain in LNAV to enable continuous track guidance during an RF leg. For go-around and missed approach procedures that require</p>

- an RNP 0.3 or greater other means and/or mitigations may be acceptable depending on the aircraft, demonstrated path tracking performance, procedures and associated FOSA.
- (4) Loss of GNSS. After initiating a go-around or missed approach following loss of GNSS, the aircraft must automatically revert to another means of navigation that complies with the navigation accuracy for the time necessary to fly the go-around or the missed approach.

**Table 2: Procedure Specific Required Functions**

## 8 AIRWORTHINESS COMPLIANCE

### 8.1 General

The following compliance guidelines assume that the aircraft is equipped in accordance with EU-OPS 1 Sub-part L for IFR flight for aeroplanes involved in commercial air transportation, or equivalent national requirements for aircraft outside the scope of EU-OPS.

Due to the unique requirements for RNP AR operations and the need for crew procedures that are specific to each particular aircraft and navigation system, RNP AR operational support documentation is required from the manufacturer. The document(s) should describe the navigation capabilities of applicant's aircraft in the context of RNP AR operations, and provide all the assumptions, limitations and supporting information necessary for the safe conduct of RNP AR operations.

It is expected that operators will use the manufacturer recommendations when developing their procedures and application for approval. Installation of equipment is not sufficient by itself to obtain approval for use on RNP AR.

#### 8.1.1 New or Modified Installations

In demonstrating compliance with this AMC, the following specific points should be noted:

- a) The applicant will need to submit, to the Agency, a compliance statement which shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied in establishing aircraft eligibility. The statement should be based on a certification plan, agreed by the Agency at an early stage of the implementation programme. The plan should identify the data to be submitted which should include, as appropriate, a system description together with evidence resulting from the activities defined in the following paragraphs.
- b) Aircraft Qualification
  - (1) Compliance with the airworthiness requirements for intended function and safety may be demonstrated by equipment qualification, system safety analysis, confirmation of appropriate software design assurance level (i.e. consistent with paragraph 6.2.2 and if applicable paragraph 7.2), performance analyses, and a combination of ground and flight tests. To support the approval application, design data will need to be submitted showing that the objectives and criteria of Sections 6 and 7 of this AMC have been satisfied.

- (2) Use of the RNAV systems and the manner of presentation of lateral and vertical guidance information on the flight deck must be evaluated to show that the risk of flight crew error has been minimised. In particular, during the transition to the final approach, the display of ILS or other approved landing system information simultaneously with RNAV information to a flight crew member will need careful consideration.
- (3) Equipment failure scenarios involving conventional navigation sensors and the RNAV system(s) must be evaluated to demonstrate that adequate alternative means of navigation are available following failure of the RNAV system, and that reversionary switching arrangements do not lead to misleading or unsafe display configurations. The evaluation must consider also the probability of failures within the switching arrangements.
- (4) The coupling arrangements for the RNAV system to flight director/automatic pilot must be evaluated to show compatibility and that operating modes, including RNAV system failures modes and RNP alerts, are clearly and unambiguously indicated to the flight crew.
- (5) To comply with Section 7, Table 1, item 20. (in particular when intercepting a CF leg) must be shown to be possible without the need for manual intervention, i.e. without disengaging the RNAV mode, and then a manual course selection. This does not preclude means for manual intervention when needed.
- (6) MEL requirements and maintenance procedures should be consistent with the aircraft RNP systems availability and performance requirements.

#### 8.1.2 Existing Installations

The applicant will need to submit to the Agency, a compliance statement which shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied for existing installations. Compliance may be established by inspection of the installed system to confirm the availability of required features and functionality. The performance and integrity criteria of Section 6 and 7 may be confirmed by reference to statements in the Aircraft Flight Manual or to other applicable approvals and supporting certification data. In the absence of such evidence, supplementary analyses and/or tests will be required. Paragraph 9 addresses Aircraft Flight Manual changes that might be necessary.

### 8.2 Database Integrity

The navigation database should be shown to comply with EUROCAE ED-76/RTCA DO-200A, or equivalent approved procedures.

### 8.3 Use of GPS

- a) The sensor must comply with the guidelines in AC 20-138(). For systems that comply with AC 20-138(), the following sensor accuracies can be used in the total system accuracy analysis without additional substantiation: GPS sensor accuracy is better than 36 meters (95%), and augmented GPS (GBAS or SBAS) sensor accuracy is better than 2 meters (95%).

- b) In the event of a latent GPS satellite failure and marginal GPS satellite geometry (e.g. Horizontal Integrity Limit (HIL) equal to the horizontal alert limit), the probability that the aircraft remains within the obstacle clearance volume used to evaluate the procedure must be greater than 95% (both laterally and vertically).

Note: GNSS-based sensors output a HIL, also known as a Horizontal Protection Level (HPL) (see FAA AC 20-138A Appendix 1 and RTCA/DO-229C for an explanation of these terms). The HIL is a measure of the position estimation error assuming a latent failure is present. In lieu of a detailed analysis of the effects of latent failures on the total system error, an acceptable means of compliance for GNSS-based systems is to ensure the HIL remains less than twice the navigation accuracy, minus the 95% of FTE, during the RNP AR operation.

#### **8.4 Use of Inertial Reference System (IRS)**

An inertial reference system must satisfy the criteria of US 14 CFR part 121, Appendix G, or equivalent. While Appendix G defines the requirement for a 2 NM per hour drift rate (95%) for flights up to 10 hours, this rate may not apply to an RNAV system after loss of position updating. Systems that have demonstrated compliance with FAR Part 121, Appendix G can be assumed to have an initial drift rate of 8 NM/hour for the first 30 minutes (95%) without further substantiation. Aircraft manufacturers and applicants can demonstrate improved inertial performance in accordance with the methods described in Appendix 1 or 2 of FAA Order 8400.12A.

Note 1: Integrated GPS/INS position solutions reduce the rate of degradation after loss of position updating. For “tightly coupled” GPS/IRUs, RTCA/DO-229C, Appendix R, provides additional guidance.

Note 2: INS/IRS by itself is not considered suitable for the types of RNP applications described herein. However, it is recognised that many multi-sensor navigation systems utilise INS/IRS within their navigation calculations to provide continuity when the other higher accuracy sensor(s) are momentarily unavailable.

#### **8.5 Use of Distance Measuring Equipment (DME).**

Initiation of all RNP AR procedures is based on GNSS updating. Except where specifically designated on a procedure as Not Authorised, DME/DME updating can be used as a reversionary mode during the approach or missed approach when the system complies with the RNP. Aircraft manufacturer and applicants should identify any constraints on the DME infrastructure or the procedure for a given aircraft to comply with this requirement.

Note 1: In general, Distance Measurement Equipment (DME) (i.e. position updating from two or more ground stations, DME/DME) will not be sufficient to achieve RNP AR operations where the performance required is less than 0.3 NM. However, where DME is sufficient, it is expected that they meet ICAO Annex 10 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation and are listed in the AIP.

#### **8.6 Use of VHF Omni-directional Range station (VOR)**

For the initial RNP AR implementation, the RNAV system may not use VOR updating. The manufacturer should identify any constraints on the VOR infrastructure or the procedure for a given aircraft to comply with this requirement.

Note: This requirement does not imply an equipment capability must exist providing a direct means of inhibiting VOR updating. A procedural means for the flight crew to inhibit VOR updating or executing a missed approach if reverting to VOR updating may meet this requirement.

### **8.7 Intermixing of Equipment**

Installation of area navigation systems with different crew interfaces can be very confusing and can lead to problems when they have conflicting methods of operation and conflicting display formats. There can be problems even when intermixing different versions of the same equipment. For approach operations, intermixing of RNAV equipment will only be permitted when specific factors have been addressed satisfactorily. As a minimum, consideration must be given to the following potential incompatibilities particularly where the flight deck architecture includes cross coupling capabilities (e.g. GNSS-2 switched to drive the number 1 displays).

- a) Data entry: The two systems must have consistent methods of data entry, and similar pilot procedures for accomplishing common tasks. Any differences should be evaluated for pilot workload. If the wrong procedures are used, (for example, the data entry procedures for the offside system are used by mistake for the onside), there must be no misleading information and it must be easy to identify and recover from the mistake.
- b) CDI scaling: Sensitivity must be consistent or annunciated.
- c) Display symbology and mode annunciation: There must be no conflicting symbols or annunciation (e.g. a common symbol used for two different purposes), and differences should be specifically evaluated to evaluate the potential confusion they may cause.
- d) Mode logic: The modes internal to the equipment and their interface to the rest of the aircraft must be consistent.
- e) Equipment failure: The effect of failure of one unit must not result in misleading information.
- f) Displayed data: The display of primary navigation parameters must use consistent units and a consistent notation.
- g) Database differences: Due to the inherent data conflict, differences in the area navigation database will not be permitted.

## **9 AIRCRAFT FLIGHT MANUAL/pilot operating handbook**

For new or modified aircraft, the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or the Pilot's Operating Handbook (POH), whichever is applicable, should provide at least the following information:

- a) A statement which identifies the equipment and aircraft build or modification standard certificated for RNP operation or having specific statement of RNP capability. This may include a very brief description of the RNAV/GNSS system, including the RNAV/GNSS airborne equipment software version, CDI/HSI equipment and installation and a statement that it is suitable for RNP operations.
- b) Appropriate amendments or supplements to cover RNP operations in the following sections:

- Limitations – including use of FD and AP; currency of navigation database; crew verification of navigation data; availability of RAIM or equivalent function; restrictions on use of GNSS for conventional Non Precision Approaches.
- Normal Procedures
- Abnormal Procedures – including actions in response to a Loss of Integrity (e.g. ‘RAIM Position Warning’, (or equivalent) message or a ‘RAIM not available’, (or equivalent) message or ‘UNABLE REQ NAV PERF’, ‘NAV ACCUR DOWNGRAD’, (or equivalent) or other RNP messages).

Note: This limited set assumes that a detailed description of the installed system and related operating instructions and procedures are available in other approved operational or training manuals.

## **10 OPERATIONAL CRITERIA**

### **10.1 General**

This section plus the considerations provided in [Appendix 3](#) are provided to assist an operator in developing the necessary processes and materials supporting their application for an operational approval to conduct RNP AR operations. This includes standard operating procedures, flight operations documentation and training package. The operational criteria assume that the corresponding installation/airworthiness approval has been granted by the Agency.

Operations of the RNAV system should be in accordance with the AFM or AFM supplement. The (Master) Minimum Equipment List (MMEL/MEL) should be amended to identify the minimum equipment necessary to satisfy operations using the RNAV system.

### **10.2 Flight Operations Documentation**

The relevant parts and sections of the Operations Manual and check lists must be revised to take account of the operating procedures detailed below (Normal Procedures and Abnormal Procedures). The operator must make timely amendments to the Operations Manual to reflect relevant RNAV AR procedure and database checking strategies. Manuals and check lists need to be submitted for review by the responsible authority as part of the approval process.

The aircraft operator should propose an amendment to the Minimum Equipment List (MEL) appropriate to RNP AR operations.

### **10.3 Qualification and Training**

Each pilot should receive appropriate training, briefings and guidance material in order to safely conduct RNP AR procedures. The material and training should cover the normal and abnormal procedures. Standard training and checking such as recurrent training and proficiency checks should include RNP procedures. Based on this, the operator should determine what constitutes a qualified crew.

The operator should ensure that effective methods are used to implement applicable RNP AR procedures to ensure that in line operations each pilot can perform assigned duties reliably and expeditiously for each procedure to be flown, both in normal circumstances, and for probable non-normal circumstances. Additional guidance is provided in [Appendix 2](#) and [3](#), as well as the RNP AR APCH navigation specification contained in the ICAO Performance Based Navigation Manual, Volume II.

## 10.4 Navigation Database Management

### 10.4.1 Initial Data Validation

The operator must validate every RNP AR procedure before flying the procedure in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) to ensure compatibility with their aircraft and to ensure the resulting path matches the published procedure. As a minimum, the operator must:

- a) Compare the navigation data for the procedure(s) to be loaded into the flight management system with the published procedure.
- b) Validate the loaded navigation data for the procedure, either in a simulator or in the actual aircraft in visual meteorological conditions (VMC). The depicted procedure on the map display must be compared to the published procedure. The entire procedure must be flown to ensure the path is flyable, does not have any apparent lateral or vertical path disconnects, and is consistent with the published procedure.
- c) Once the procedure is validated, retain and maintain a copy of the validated navigation data for comparison to subsequent data updates.

### 10.4.2 Operator involved in the operation of aeroplanes for commercial air transportation

EU-OPS 1.873 for the management of navigation database applies.

### 10.4.3 Operator not involved in the operation of aeroplanes for commercial air transportation

The operators should not use a navigation database for RNP APCH operations unless the navigation database supplier holds a Type 2 Letter of Acceptance (LoA) or equivalent.

An EASA Type 2 LoA is issued by EASA in accordance with EASA OPINION Nr. 01/2005 on "The Acceptance of Navigation Database Suppliers" dated 14 Jan 05. The FAA issues a Type 2 LoA in accordance with AC 20-153, while Transport Canada (TCCA) issues an Acknowledgement Letter of an Aeronautical Data Process using the same basis. Both the FAA LoA and the TCCA Acknowledgement Letter are seen to be equivalent to the EASA LoA.

EUROCAE/RTCA document ED-76/DO-200A Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data contains guidance relating to the processes that the supplier may follow. The LoA demonstrates compliance with this standard.

#### 10.4.3.1 Non-approved Suppliers

If the operator's supplier does not hold a Type 2 LoA or equivalent, the operator should not use the electronic navigation data products unless the Authority has approved the operator's procedures for ensuring that the process applied and the delivered products have met equivalent standards of integrity.

#### 10.4.3.2 Quality Monitoring

The operator should continue to monitor both the process and the products in accordance with the quality system required by the applicable operational regulations.

#### 10.4.3.3 Data Distribution

The operator should implement procedures that ensure timely distribution and insertion of current and unaltered electronic navigation data to all aircraft that require it.

#### 10.4.4 Aircraft Modifications

If an aircraft system required for RNP AR operations is modified (e.g. software change), the operator is responsible for validation of RNP AR procedures with the navigation database and the modified system. This may be accomplished without any direct evaluation if the manufacturer verifies that the modification has no effect on the navigation database or path computation. If no such assurance from the manufacturer is available, the operator must conduct initial data validation with the modified system.

### 10.5 Reportable Events

A reportable event is one that adversely affects the safety of the operation and may be caused by actions/events external to the operation of the aircraft navigation system. The operator should have in place a system for investigating such an event to determine if it is due to an improperly coded procedure, or a navigation data base error. Responsibility for initiating corrective action rests with the operator.

For those operators for whom approval is granted under EU OPS-1, following events should be the subject of Occurrence Reports (see EU-OPS 1.420):

Technical defects and the exceeding of technical limitations, including:

- a) Significant navigation errors attributed to incorrect data or a database coding error.
- b) Unexpected deviations in lateral/vertical flight path not caused by pilot input or erroneous operation of equipment.
- c) Significant misleading information without a failure warning.
- d) Total loss or multiple navigation equipment failure.
- e) Loss of integrity (e.g. RAIM) function whereas integrity was predicted to be available during the pre-flight planning.

### 10.6 Fleet Approvals

Normally, operational approvals for RNAV AR Procedures will be fleet specific.

### 10.7 RNP Monitoring Programme

The operator should have an RNP monitoring programme to ensure continued compliance with the guidance of this AMC and to identify any negative trends in performance. At a minimum, this programme must address the following information. During the initial 90 day interim approval period, the operator must submit the following information every 30 days to the authority granting their authorisation. Thereafter, the operator must continue to collect and periodically review this data to identify potential safety concerns, and maintain summaries of this data.

- a) Total number of RNP AR procedures conducted
- b) Number of satisfactory approaches by aircraft/system (Satisfactory if completed as planned without any navigation or guidance system anomalies)

- 
- c) Reasons for unsatisfactory approaches, such as:
    - 1) UNABLE REQ NAV PERF, NAV ACCUR DOWNGRAD, or other RNP messages during approaches
    - 2) Excessive lateral or vertical deviation
    - 3) TAWS warning
    - 4) Autopilot system disconnect
    - 5) Nav data errors
    - 6) Pilot report of any anomaly
  - d) Crew comments

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-26 Glossary

ED Decision 2009/019/R

The following are definitions of key terms used throughout this AMC.

**Area Navigation (RNAV).** A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of station-referenced navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these.

Note: RNAV functional capability is typically viewed as navigation operations in the horizontal plane, which is known also as Lateral Navigation Mode. However, an RNAV system may include functional capabilities for operations in the vertical plane, known as Vertical Navigation Mode.

**Accuracy.** The degree of conformance between the estimated, measured, or desired position and/or the velocity of a platform at a given time, and its true position or velocity. Navigation performance accuracy is usually presented as a statistical measure of system error and is specified as predictable, repeatable and relative.

**Availability.** An indication of the ability of the system to provide usable service within the specified coverage area and is defined as the portion of time during which the system is to be used for navigation during which reliable navigation information is presented to the crew, automatic pilot, or other system managing the flight of the aircraft.

**Continuity of Function.** The capability of the total system (comprising all elements necessary to maintain aircraft position within the defined airspace) to perform its function without non-scheduled interruptions during the intended operation.

**Integrity.** The ability of a system to provide timely warnings to users when the system should not be used for navigation.

**Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM).** A technique whereby a GPS receiver/processor determines the integrity of the GPS navigation signals using only GPS signals or GPS signals augmented with altitude. This determination is achieved by a consistency check among redundant pseudo-range measurements. At least one satellite in addition to those required for navigation must be in view for the receiver to perform the RAIM function.

**Vertical Navigation.** A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on a vertical flight profile using altimetry sources, external flight path references, or a combination of these.

The following acronyms are used in the document:

AFM	Aircraft Flight Manual
AGL	Above Ground Level
AIP	Aeronautical Information Publication
AIRAC	Aeronautical information regulation and control
AP	Autopilot
APCH	Approach
AR	Authorisation Required
ATC	Air Traffic Control
ATS	Air Traffic Service
BARO	Barometric
CAT	Category
CDI	Course Deviation Indicator
CF	Course to Fix

CRM	Collision risk model
CRM	Crew resource management
DA/H	Descent Altitude/Height
DF	Direct to Fix
DME	Distance Measuring Equipment
EC	European Commission
EFIS	Electronic flight instrument system
EGNOS	European Geostationary Navigation Overlay Service
ETA	Estimated Time of Arrival
EU	European Union
FAF	Final Approach Fix
FD	Flight Director
FOM	Flight Operations Manual
FMC	Flight Management Computer
FMS	Flight Management System
F/O	First Officer
FOSA	Flight Operations Safety Assessment
FTE	Flight Technical Error
GBAS	Ground-based augmentation system
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPWS	Ground Proximity Warning System
HIL	Horizontal Integrity Limit
HSI	Horizontal situation indicator
IAF	Initial Approach Fix
IAP	Instrument approach procedure
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organisation
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IMC	Instrument meteorological conditions
INS	Inertial Navigation System
IRS	Inertial Reference System
IRU	Inertial Reference Unit
ISA	International standard atmosphere
KIAS	Knots indicated airspeed
LoA	Letter of Acceptance
LOE	Line Oriented Evaluation
LOFT	Line Oriented Flight Training
LNAV	Lateral Navigation
MASPS	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standards
MEL	Minimum Equipment List
MMEL	Master Minimum Equipment List
NAV	Navigation
NM	Nautical Mile
NOTAM	Notice to Airmen
OEI	One Engine Inoperative

---

OEM	Original Equipment Manufacture
PBN	Performance Based Navigation
PC	Proficiency Check
POH	Pilot Operating Handbook
PT	Proficiency Training
RAIM	Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring
RF	Radius to Fix
RNAV	Area Navigation
RNP	Required Navigation Performance
RTA	Required Time of Arrival
SBAS	Satellite-based augmentation system
SSA	System Safety Assessments
STC	Supplemental Type Certificates
TAWS	Terrain Awareness Warning System
TC	Type Certificates
TERPS	Terminal Instrument Procedures
TF	Track to Fix
TLS	Target Level Of Safety
TOGA	Take off/Go around
VDI	Vertical Deviation Indicator
VEB	Vertical Error Budget
VMC	visual meteorological conditions
VNAV	Vertical Navigation
VOR	VHF Omni-directional Range
WGS	World Geodetic System

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-26 Training and Crew Qualification Issues

ED Decision 2009/019/R

### 1 INTRODUCTION

The operator must provide training for key personnel (e.g. flight crewmembers and dispatchers) in the use and application of RNP AR procedures. A thorough understanding of the operational procedures and best practices is critical to the safe operation of aircraft during RNP AR operations. This programme must provide sufficient detail on the aircraft's navigation and flight control systems to enable the pilots to identify failures affecting the aircraft's RNP capability and the appropriate abnormal/emergency procedures. Required training must include both knowledge and skill assessments of the crewmembers and dispatchers duties.

#### 1.1 Flight Crew Training

- a) Each operator is responsible for the training of flight crews for the specific RNP AR operations exercised by the operator. The operator must include training on the different types of RNP AR procedures and required equipment. Training must include discussion of RNP AR regulatory requirements. The operator must include these requirements and procedures in their flight operations and training manuals (as applicable). This material must cover all aspects of the operator's RNP AR operations including the applicable AR authorisation. An individual must have completed the appropriate ground and or flight training segment before engaging in RNP AR operations.
- b) Flight training segments must include training and checking modules representative of the type of RNP AR operations the operator conducts during line flying activities. Many operators may train for RNP AR procedures under the established training standards and provisions for any advanced qualification programmes. They may conduct evaluations in Line Oriented Flight Training (LOFT) scenarios, selected event training scenarios or in a combination of both. The operator may conduct required flight-training modules in Flight Training Devices, Aircraft Simulators, and other enhanced training devices as long as these training mediums accurately replicate the operator's equipment and RNP AR operations.

#### 1.2 Flight Crew Qualification Training

- a) Operators must address initial RNP AR training and qualifications during initial, transition, upgrade, recurrent, differences, or stand-alone training and qualification programmes in a respective qualification category. The qualification standards assess each pilot's ability to properly understand and use RNP AR procedures. The operator must also develop recurrent qualification standards to ensure their flight crews maintain appropriate RNP AR knowledge and skills (RNP AR Recurrent Qualification).
- b) Operators may address RNP AR operation topics separately or integrate them with other curriculum elements. For example, an RNP AR flight crew qualification may key on a specific aircraft during transition, upgrade, or differences courses. General training may also address RNP AR qualification (e.g. during recurrent training or checking events such as recurrent proficiency check/proficiency training (PC/PT), line oriented evaluation (LOE) or special purpose operational training. A separate, independent RNP AR qualification programme may also address RNP AR training (e.g. by completion of a special RNP AR curriculum at an operator's training centre or at designated crew bases).

- c) Operators intending to receive credit for RNP training, when their proposed programme relies on previous training (e.g. Special RNP IAP's) must receive specific authorisation from their approving authority. In addition to the current RNP training programme, the operator will need to provide differences training between existing training programme and the RNP AR training requirements.

### **1.3 Flight Dispatcher Training**

Training for flight dispatchers must include: training on the different types of RNP AR procedures, the importance of specific navigation equipment and other equipment during RNP AR operations and discuss RNP AR regulatory requirements and procedures. Dispatcher procedure and training manuals must include these requirements (as applicable). This material must cover all aspects of the operator's RNP AR operations including the applicable authorisation. An individual must have completed the appropriate training course before engaging in RNP AR operations. Additionally, the dispatchers' training must address how to determine: RNP AR availability (considering aircraft equipment capabilities), MEL requirements, aircraft performance, and navigation signal availability (e.g. GPS RAIM/predictive RNP capability tool) for destination and alternate airports.

## **2 GROUND TRAINING SEGMENTS**

Ground training segments must address the following subjects as training modules in approved RNP AR academic training during the initial introduction of a crewmember to RNP AR systems and operations. For recurrent programmes, the curriculum need only review initial curriculum requirements and address new, revised, or emphasised items.

### **2.1 General Concepts of RNP AR Operation**

RNP AR academic training must cover RNP AR systems theory to the extent appropriate to ensure proper operational use. Flight crews must understand basic concepts of RNP AR systems operation, classifications, and limitations. The training must include general knowledge and operational application of RNP AR instrument approach procedures. This training module must address the following specific elements:

- a) Definitions of RNAV, RNAV (GPS), RNP, RNP AR, RAIM, and containment areas.
- b) The differences between RNAV and RNP.
- c) The types of RNP AR approach procedures and familiarity with the charting of these procedures.
- d) The programming and display of RNP and aircraft specific displays (e.g. Actual Navigation Performance).
- e) How to enable and disable the navigation updating modes related to RNP.
- f) RNP values appropriate for different phases of flight and RNP AR instrument procedures and how to select (if required).
- g) The use of GPS RAIM (or equivalent) forecasts and the effects of RAIM "holes" on RNP AR procedures (flight crew and dispatchers).
- h) When and how to terminate RNP navigation and transfer to traditional navigation due to loss of RNP and/or required equipment.
- i) How to determine if the FMC database is current and contains required navigational data.

- j) Explanation of the different components that contribute to the total system error and their characteristics (e.g. effect of temperature on BARO-VNAV, drift characteristics when using IRU with no radio updating, considerations in making suitable temperature corrections for altimeter systems).
- k) Temperature Compensation. Flight crews operating avionics systems with compensation for altimetry errors introduced by deviations from ISA may disregard the temperature limits on RNP AR procedures, if pilot training on use of the temperature compensation function is provided by the operator and the compensation function is utilised by the crew. However the training must also recognise the temperature compensation by the system is applicable to the VNAV guidance and is not a substitute for the flight crew compensating for the cold temperature effects on minimum altitudes or the decision altitude.
- l) The effect of wind on aircraft performance during RNP AR procedures and the need to positively remain within RNP containment area, including any operational wind limitation and aircraft configuration essential to safely complete an RNP AR procedure.
- m) The effect of groundspeed on compliance with RNP AR procedures and bank angle restrictions that may impact the ability to remain on the course centreline. For RNP procedures aircraft are expected to maintain the standard speeds associated with applicable category.
- n) Relationship between RNP and the appropriate approach minima line on an approved published RNP AR procedure and any operational limitations if the available RNP degrades or is not available prior to an approach (this should include flight crew procedures outside the FAF versus inside the FAF).
- o) Understanding alerts that may occur from the loading and use of improper RNP values for a desired segment of an RNP AR procedure.
- p) Understanding the performance requirement to couple the autopilot/flight director to the navigation system's lateral guidance on RNP AR procedures requiring an RNP of less than RNP 0.3.
- q) The events that trigger a missed approach when using the aircraft's RNP capability to complete an RNP AR procedure.
- r) Any bank angle restrictions or limitations on RNP AR procedures.
- s) Ensuring flight crews understand the performance issues associated with reversion to radio updating, know any limitations on the use of DME and VOR updating.

## 2.2 ATC Communication and Coordination for Use of RNP AR

Ground training must instruct the flight crews on proper flight plan classifications and any Air Traffic Control (ATC) procedures applicable to RNP AR operations. The flight crews must receive instruction on the need to advise ATC immediately when the performance of the aircraft's navigation system is no longer suitable to support continuation of an RNP AR procedure. Flight crews must also know what navigation sensors form the basis for their RNP AR compliance, and they must be able to assess the impact of failure of any avionics or a known loss of ground systems on the remainder of the flight plan.

### **2.3 RNP AR Equipment Components, Controls, Displays, and Alerts**

Academic training must include discussion of RNP terminology, symbology, operation, optional controls, and display features including any items unique to an operator's implementation or systems. The training must address applicable failure alerts and limitations. The flight crews and dispatchers should achieve a thorough understanding of the equipment used in RNP operations and any limitations on the use of the equipment during those operations.

### **2.4 AFM Information and Operating Procedures**

The AFM or other aircraft eligibility evidence must address normal and abnormal flight crew operating procedures, responses to failure alerts, and any limitations, including related information on RNP modes of operation. Training must also address contingency procedures for loss or degradation of RNP capability. The flight operations manuals approved for use by the flight crews (e.g. Flight Operations Manual (FOM) or Pilot Operating Handbook (POH)) should contain this information.

- a) Temporary Limitations on Minima. Where Operators are new to RNP operations and whose initial application is for RNP < 0.3, it is appropriate to establish a temporary limitation for minima consistent with RNP 0.3, until operational experience is gained. This period could be based upon time (i.e. 90 days) and/or number of conducted operations (e.g. 100 RNP approaches), as agreed upon by the regulator and operator.

### **2.5 MEL Operating Provisions**

Flight crews must have a thorough understanding of the MEL requirements supporting RNP AR operations.

## **3 FLIGHT TRAINING SEGMENTS**

In addition to the academic training, the flight crews must receive appropriate operational use training. Training programmes must cover the proper execution of RNP AR procedures in concert with the OEM's documentation. The operational training must include RNP AR procedures and limitations; standardisation of the set-up of the cockpit's electronic displays during an RNP AR procedure; recognition of the aural advisories, alerts and other annunciations that can impact compliance with an RNP AR procedure; and the timely and correct responses to loss of RNP AR capability in a variety of scenarios embracing the breadth of the RNP AR procedures the operator plans to complete. Such training may also use approved flight training devices or simulators. This training must address the following specific elements:

- a) Procedures for verifying that each pilot's altimeter has the current setting before beginning the final approach of an RNP AR procedure, including any operational limitations associated with the source(s) for the altimeter setting and the latency of checking and setting the altimeters for landing.
- b) Use of aircraft RADAR, TAWS, GPWS, or other avionics systems to support the flight crew's track monitoring and weather and obstacle avoidance.
- c) Concise and complete flight crew briefings for all RNP AR procedures and the important role Cockpit Resource Management (CRM) plays in successfully completing an RNP AR procedure.
- d) The importance of aircraft configuration to ensure the aircraft maintains any required speeds during RNP AR procedures.

- e) The potentially detrimental effect of reducing the flap setting, reducing the bank angle or increasing airspeeds may have on the ability to comply with an RNP AR procedure.
- f) Develop flight crew knowledge and skills necessary to properly conduct RNP AR operations (RNP AR Procedure Training).
- g) Ensure flight crews understand and are capable of programming and operating the FMC, autopilot, autothrottles, RADAR, GPS, INS, EFIS (including the moving map), and TAWS in support of RNP AR procedures.
- h) Handling of TOGA while in a turn.
- i) Monitoring of FTE and related go-around operation.
- j) Handling of loss of GPS during a procedure.
- k) Flight crew contingency procedures for a loss of RNP capability during a missed approach. Due to the lack of navigation guidance, the training should emphasise the flight crew contingency actions that achieve separation from terrain and obstacles. The operator should tailor these contingency procedures to their specific, approved AR procedures.
- l) As a minimum, each pilot must complete two RNP approach procedures that employ the unique AR characteristics of the operator's approved procedures (i.e., RF legs, RNP missed). One procedure must culminate in a transition to landing and one procedure must culminate in execution of an RNP missed approach procedure.

## 4 EVALUATION

### 4.1 Initial Evaluation of RNP AR Knowledge and Procedures

The operator must evaluate each individual flight crewmember on their knowledge of RNP AR procedures prior to employing RNP AR procedures. As a minimum, the review must include a thorough evaluation of pilot procedures and specific aircraft performance requirements for RNP AR operations. An acceptable means for this initial assessment includes one of the following:

- a) An evaluation by an examiner using an approved simulator or training device.
- b) An evaluation by an authorised instructor evaluator or check airman during line operations, training flights, PC/PT events, operating experience, route checks, and/or line checks.
- c) Line Oriented Flight Training (LOFT)/Line Oriented Evaluation (LOE). LOFT/LOE programmes using an approved simulator that incorporates RNP AR operations that employ the unique AR characteristics (i.e., RF legs, RNP missed) of the operator's approved procedures.

### 4.2 Specific elements that must be addressed in this evaluation module are:

- a) Demonstrate the use of any RNP AR limits/minimums that may impact various RNP AR operations.
- b) Demonstrate the application of radio-updating procedures, such as enabling and disabling ground-based radio updating of the FMC (i.e., DME/DME and VOR/DME updating) and knowledge of when to use this feature. If the aircraft's avionics do not include the capability to disable radio updating, then the training must ensure the flight crew is able to accomplish the operational actions that mitigate the lack of this feature.

- c) Demonstrate the ability to monitor the actual lateral and vertical flight paths relative to programmed flight path and complete the appropriate flight crew procedures when exceeding a lateral or vertical FTE limit.
- d) Demonstrate the ability to read and adapt to a RAIM (or equivalent) forecast including forecasts predicting a lack of RAIM availability.
- e) Demonstrate the proper setup of the FMC, the weather RADAR, TAWS, and moving map for the various RNP AR operations and scenarios the operator plans to implement.
- f) Demonstrate the use of flight crew briefings and checklists for RNP AR operations with emphasis on CRM.
- g) Demonstrate knowledge of and ability to perform an RNP AR missed approach procedure in a variety of operational scenarios (i.e., loss of navigation or failure to acquire visual conditions).
- h) Demonstrate speed control during segments requiring speed restrictions to ensure compliance with an RNP AR procedure.
- i) Demonstrate competent use of RNP AR approach plates, briefing cards, and checklists.
- j) Demonstrate the ability to complete a stable RNP AR approach: bank angle, speed control, and remaining on the procedure's centreline.
- k) Know the operational limit for deviation below the desired flight path on an RNP AR approach and how to accurately monitor the aircraft's position relative to vertical flight path.

## **5 RECURRENT TRAINING OF RNP AR KNOWLEDGE AND PROCEDURES**

- 5.1 RNP AR Recurrent Training. The operator should incorporate recurrent RNP training that employs the unique AR characteristics of the operator's approved procedures as part of the overall programme.
- 5.2 A minimum of two RNP AR approaches must be flown by each pilot for each duty position (pilot flying and pilot monitoring), with one culminating in a landing and one culminating in a missed approach, and may be substituted for any required "precision-like" approach.

NOTE: Equivalent RNP approaches may be credited toward this requirement

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 3 to AMC 20-26 RNP Operational Considerations

*ED Decision 2009/019/R*

### 1 GENERAL

This appendix provides an acceptable means to conduct of RNP operations where authorisation is required (AR). In addition, the operator must continue to ensure they comply with the general RNAV operating requirements; checking Notices to Airmen (NOTAMS), availability of Navigational Aids (NAVAID), airworthiness of aircraft systems, and aircrew qualification.

### 2 OPERATIONAL CONSIDERATIONS

- a) **Minimum Equipment List.** Operators minimum equipment list should be developed/revised to address the equipment requirements for RNP instrument approaches. Guidance for these equipment requirements is available from the aircraft manufacturer. The required equipment may depend on the intended navigation accuracy and whether or not the missed approach requires RNP less than 1.0. For example, GNSS and autopilot are typically required for small navigation accuracy. Dual equipment is typically required for approaches when using a line of minima less than RNP-0.3 and/or where the missed approach has an RNP less than 1.0. An operable Class A Terrain Awareness Warning System (TAWS) is required for all RNP AR approach procedures. It is recommended that the TAWS use altitude that is compensated for local pressure and temperature effects (e.g. corrected barometric and GNSS altitude), and include significant terrain and obstacle data. The flight crew must be cognisant of the required equipment.
- b) **Autopilot and Flight Director.** RNP procedures with RNP values less than RNP 0.3 or with RF legs require the use of autopilot or flight director driven by the RNAV system in all cases. Thus, the autopilot/flight director must operate with suitable accuracy to track the lateral and vertical paths required by a specific RNP AR approach procedure. When the dispatch of a flight is predicated on flying an RNP AR approach requiring the autopilot at the destination and/or alternate, the flight crew must determine that the autopilot is installed and operational.
- c) **Dispatch RNP Assessment.** The operator should have a predictive performance capability, which can determine whether or not the specified RNP will be available at the time and location of a desired RNP operation. This capability can be a ground service and need not be resident in the aircraft's avionics equipment. The operator should establish procedures requiring use of this capability as both a pre-flight dispatch tool and as a flight-following tool in the event of reported failures. The RNP assessment should consider the specific combination of the aircraft capability (sensors and integration), as well as their availability.
  - (1) **RNP assessment when GNSS updating.** This predictive capability must account for known and predicted outages of GNSS satellites or other impacts on the navigation system's sensors. The prediction programme should not use a mask angle below 5 degrees, as operational experience indicates that satellite signals at low elevations are not reliable. The prediction must use the actual GPS constellation with the (RAIM) (or equivalent) algorithm identical to that used in the actual equipment. For RNP AR approaches with high terrain, use a mask angle appropriate to the terrain.

- (2) Initially, RNP AR approach procedures require GNSS updating.
- d) NAVAID Exclusion. The operator should establish procedures to exclude NAVAID facilities in accordance with NOTAMs (e.g. DMEs, VORs, localisers). Internal avionics reasonableness checks may not be adequate for RNP operations.
  - e) Navigation Database Currency. During system initialisation, pilots of aircraft equipped with an RNP-certified system, must confirm that the navigation database is current. Navigation databases are expected to be current for the duration of the flight. If the AIRAC cycle will change during flight, operators and pilots must establish procedures to ensure the accuracy of navigation data, including suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for flight. Traditionally, this has been accomplished by verifying electronic data against paper products. One acceptable means is to compare aeronautical charts (new and old) to verify navigation fixes prior to dispatch. If an amended chart is published for the procedure, the database must not be used to conduct the operation.

### **3 FLIGHT CONSIDERATIONS**

- a) Modification of Flight Plan. Pilots should not be authorised to fly a published RNP procedure unless it is retrievable by the procedure name from the aircraft navigation database and conforms to the charted procedure. The lateral path must not be modified; with the exception of accepting a clearance to go direct to a fix in the approach procedure that is before the FAF and that does not immediately precede an RF leg. The only other acceptable modification to the loaded procedure is to change altitude and/or airspeed waypoint constraints on the initial, intermediate, or missed approach segments flight plan fixes (e.g. to apply cold temperature corrections or comply with an ATC clearance/instruction).
- b) Required Equipment. The flight crew should have either a required list of equipment for conducting RNP approaches or alternate methods to address in flight equipment failures that would prohibit RNP approaches (e.g. crew warning systems, quick reference handbook).
- c) RNP Management. The flight crew's operating procedures should ensure the navigation system uses the appropriate RNP values throughout the approach. If the navigation system does not extract and set the navigation accuracy from the on-board navigation database for each leg of the procedure, then the flight crew's operating procedures must ensure that the smallest navigation accuracy required to complete the approach or the missed approach is selected before initiating the approach (e.g. before the initial approach fix (IAF)). Different IAF's may have different navigation accuracy, which are annotated on the approach chart.
- d) Loss of RNP The flight crew must ensure that no loss of RNP annunciation is received prior to commencing the RNP AR approach. During the approach, if at any time a loss of RNP annunciation is received, the flight crew must abandon the RNP AR approach unless the pilot has in sight the visual references required to continue the approach.
- e) Radio Updating. Initiation of all RNP AR procedures is based on GNSS updating. Except where specifically designated on a procedure as Not Authorised, DME/DME updating can be used as a reversionary mode during the approach or missed approach when the system complies with the navigation accuracy. VOR updating is not authorised at this time. The flight crew must comply with the operator's procedures for inhibiting specific facilities.

- f) Approach Procedure Confirmation. The flight crew must confirm that the correct procedure has been selected. This process includes confirmation of the waypoint sequence, reasonableness of track angles and distances, and any other parameters that can be altered by the flight crew, such as altitude or speed constraints. A procedure must not be used if validity of the navigation database is in doubt. A navigation system textual display or navigation map display must be used.
- g) Track Deviation Monitoring. The flight crew must use a lateral deviation indicator, flight director and/or autopilot in lateral navigation mode on RNP AR approach procedures. The flight crew of aircraft with a lateral deviation indicator must ensure that lateral deviation indicator scaling (full-scale deflection) is suitable for the navigation accuracy associated with the various segments of the RNP AR approach procedure. All flight crew are expected to maintain procedure centrelines, as depicted by onboard lateral deviation indicators and/or flight guidance during all RNP operations described in this manual unless authorised to deviate by ATC or under emergency conditions. For normal operations, cross-track error/deviation (the difference between the RNP system computed path and the aircraft position relative to the path) should be limited to the navigation accuracy (RNP) associated with the procedure segment.

Vertical deviation should be monitored above and below the glide-path; The vertical deviation must be within  $\pm 75$  feet of the glide-path during the final approach segment.

Flight crew must execute a Missed Approach if the lateral deviation exceeds  $1 \times \text{RNP}$  or the vertical deviation exceeds 75 feet, unless the pilot has in sight the visual references required to continue the approach.

- (1) Where a moving map, low-resolution vertical deviation indicator (VDI), or numeric display of deviations are to be used, flight crew training and procedures must ensure the effectiveness of these displays. Typically, this involves demonstration of the procedure with a number of trained crews and inclusion of this monitoring procedure in the recurrent RNP AR approach training programme.
  - (2) For installations that use a CDI for lateral path tracking, the aircraft flight manual (AFM) or aircraft qualification guidance should state which navigation accuracy and operations the aircraft supports and the operational effects on the CDI scale. The flight crew must know the CDI full-scale deflection value. The avionics may automatically set the CDI scale (dependent on phase of flight) or the flight crew may manually set the scale. If the flight crew manually selects the CDI scale, the operator must have procedures and training in place to assure the selected CDI scale is appropriate for the intended RNP operation. The deviation limit must be readily apparent given the scale (e.g. full-scale deflection).
- h) System Cross-check. For approaches with RNP value less than RNP 0.3, the flight crew should ensure the lateral and vertical guidance provided by the navigation system is consistent with other available data and displays provided by an independent means.
- Note: This cross-check may not be necessary if the lateral and vertical guidance systems have been developed and/or evaluated consistent with extremely remote failure conditions and if the normal system performance supports  $1 \times \text{RNP}$  containment.
- i) Procedures with RF Legs. An RNP procedure may require the ability to execute an RF leg to avoid terrain or obstacles. As not all aircraft have this capability, flight crews should be aware of whether or not they can conduct these procedures.

- (1) If initiating a go-around during or shortly after the RF leg, the flight crew must be aware of the importance of maintaining the published path as closely as possible. Operational procedures are required for aircraft that do not stay in LNAV when a go-around is initiated to ensure the RNP AR APCH ground track is maintained.
- (2) Pilots must not exceed the maximum airspeeds shown in Table 1 throughout the RF leg segment. For example, a Category C A320 must slow to 160 KIAS at the FAF or may fly as fast as 185 KIAS if using Category D minima. A missed approach prior to DA may require the segment speed for that segment be maintained.

**Table 1: Maximum Airspeed by Segment and Category**

Segment	Indicated Airspeed (Knots)				
	Indicated Airspeed by Aircraft Category				
	Cat A	Cat B	Cat C	Cat D	Cat E
Initial & Intermediate (IAF to FAF)	150	180	240	250	250
Final (FAF to DA)	100	130	160	185	As Specified
Missed Approach (DA to MAHP)	110	150	240	265	As Specified
Airspeed Restriction*	As Specified				

\*Airspeed restrictions may be used to reduce turn radius regardless of aircraft category.

- j) **Temperature Compensation.** For aircraft with temperature compensation, flight crews may disregard the temperature limits on RNP procedures if the operator provides pilot training on the use of the temperature compensation function. Temperature compensation by the system is applicable to the VNAV guidance and is not a substitute for the flight crew compensating for the cold temperature effects on minimum altitudes or the decision altitude. Flight crews should be familiar with the effects of the temperature compensation on intercepting the compensated path described in EUROCAE ED-75B/RTCA DO-236B Appendix H.
- k) **Altimeter Setting.** Due to the performance based obstruction clearance inherent in RNP instrument procedures, the flight crew should verify the most current airport altimeter is set prior to the final approach fix (FAF). Operators should take precautions to switch altimeter settings at appropriate times or locations and request a current altimeter setting if the reported setting may not be recent, particularly at times when pressure is reported or is expected to be rapidly decreasing. Execution of an RNP instrument procedure requires the current altimeter setting for the airport of intended landing. Remote altimeter settings are not allowed.
- l) **Altimeter Cross-check.** The flight crew should complete an altimetry crosscheck ensuring both pilots' altimeters agree within  $\pm 100$  feet prior to the final approach fix (FAF) but no earlier than when the altimeters are set for the airport of intended landing. If the altimetry cross-check fails then the procedure must not be continued.  
  
Note: This operational cross-check is not necessary if the aircraft systems automatically compare the altitudes to within 75 feet.
- m) **Go-Around or Missed Approach.** Where possible, the missed approach will require RNP 1.0. The missed approach portion of these procedures is similar to a missed approach of an RNP APCH procedure. Where necessary, navigation accuracy less than RNP 1.0 will be used in the missed approach. To be approved to conduct these approaches, equipage and

procedures must meet criteria in paragraph 7, Table 2 (Requirements for Approaches with Missed Approach less than RNP 1.0).

- (1) In many aircraft when executing a go-around or missed approach activating Take-off/Go-around (TOGA) may cause a change in lateral navigation. In many aircraft, activating TOGA disengages the autopilot and flight director from LNAV guidance, and the flight director reverts to track-hold derived from the inertial system. LNAV guidance to the autopilot and flight director should be re-engaged as quickly as possible.
  - (2) The flight crew procedures and training must address the impact on navigation capability and flight guidance if the pilot initiates a go-around while the aircraft is in a turn. When initiating an early go-around, the flight crew should follow the rest of the approach track and missed approach track unless issued a different clearance by ATC. The flight crew should also be aware that RF legs are designed based on the maximum true airspeed at normal altitudes, and initiating an early go-around will reduce the manoeuvrability margin and potentially even make holding the turn impractical at missed approach speeds.
  - (3) Upon loss of GNSS updates, the RNAV guidance may begin to “coast” on IRU, if installed, and drift, degrading the navigation position solution. Thus, when the RNP AR APCH missed approach operations rely on IRU “coasting” the inertial guidance can only provide acceptable navigation performance for a specified amount of time.
- n) Contingency Procedures
- (1) Failure while En Route. The aircraft RNP capability is dependent on operational aircraft equipment and GNSS satellites. The flight crew should be able to assess the impact of equipment failure on the anticipated RNP approach and take appropriate action.
  - (2) Failure on Approach. The operator’s contingency procedures should address at least the following conditions:
    - a) Failure of the RNP system components, including those affecting lateral and vertical deviation performance (e.g. failures of a GPS sensor, the flight director or automatic pilot)
    - b) Loss of navigation signal-in-space (loss or degradation of external signal)
- o) Engine-Out Procedures. Aircraft may demonstrate acceptable flight technical error with one engine inoperative to conduct RNP AR operations. Otherwise, flight crews are expected to take appropriate action in event of engine failure during an approach so that no specific aircraft qualification is required. The aircraft qualification should identify any performance limits in event of engine failure to support definition of appropriate flight crew procedures.

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 4 to AMC 20-26 Acceptable Methods for Flight Technical Error Assessment for RNP

*ED Decision 2009/019/R*

This appendix outlines criteria for assessment of "Flight Technical Error" (FTE) related to RNP capability and other navigation applications (e.g. instrument approach capability, etc.). These criteria are available for use for FMS/EFIS based applications, RNP applications, or other navigation applications related to this AMC or as otherwise determined to be acceptable by the appropriate regulatory authority. It may be used in lieu of FTE assumptions referenced in other Advisory Circulars.

### 1 BACKGROUND

For RNP of 0.3 NM or greater, industry standard default values for FTE e.g. RTCA DO-208, AC20-130, etc are used and present a convenience to an operator or applicant in enabling a quick determination of what combinations of systems, capabilities, features and performance are allowable for the conduct of operations. However, the default value is the dominant error as RNP values are reduced below 0.3 NM. As a result, use of the standard defaults limit the extent that a system may be utilised, i.e. for RNP 0.15 an FTE of 0.125 NM is assumed when coupled to an autopilot. For RNP less than 0.15 NM, the standard FTE values are insufficient such that an aircraft may not be used even with a precision source such as GNSS, until there is a reduction in FTE.

FTE estimates or assumptions are typically added to navigation system error characteristics to permit specification of "protected airspace" for obstacle clearance or aircraft-to-aircraft separation (using various mathematical statistical methods such as "Root Sum Squared"). Protected airspace may pertain to procedure obstacle clearance surfaces, establishing route or airway widths, setting oceanic track separation values, definition of ICAO Obstacle Clearance Limits, or other similar applications.

Previous FTE assessments were based on very limited samples of normal performance of a population of aircraft that included "worst case aircraft types and least capable systems" and is not representative of modern, advanced aircraft. This penalises, or does not appropriately credit, modern systems which have resulted in improved FTE performance.

Further, some assessments of FTE usually consider only "normal performance", and do not appropriately assess path displacements for "rare normal performance" (e.g. strong winds), or "non-normal performance" (e.g. flight path performance related to failures - engine failure while on RF turn, extraction, etc).

### 2 OBJECTIVES

A major element of aircraft and navigation system performance assessment is the proper characterisation of FTE. This appendix provides uniform criteria for assessing FTE to be used in conjunction with AC120-29A, and other relevant regulatory and industry references.

This FTE method:

- a) Establishes FTE for modern aircraft in a way that provides improved pilot situation information over that provided in previous generation aircraft,
- b) Comprehensively considers the factors which affect FTE,
- c) Establishes a means to provide credit to an aircraft and navigation system design which includes features which provide for significantly reduced FTE,

- d) Permits improved partitioning of the application and use of FTE between airworthiness assessment, operational authorisation, and procedure development and implementation (e.g. for definition of RNP routes, use of PANS-OPS or TERPS applications etc.),
- e) Provides operational incentives, and consequential design incentives for good FTE performance,
- f) Allows proactive rather than reactive applications (e.g. eliminate the need for lengthy and costly in service data collection)
- g) Properly addresses "real" safety factors related to functional hazard assessments,
- h) Establishes consistent application with the desired navigation evolution to RNP, 4D, MASPS, etc.
- i) Permits the eventual introduction of new methods of risk assessment (i.e. performance based design) as alternatives to the traditional, conservative methods such as "Collision Risk Model (CRM)", and
- j) Facilitates the transition to GPS, GNSS, and other modern navigation techniques.

### **3 CRITERIA**

The criteria in the following sections provide a means for applicants to demonstrate improved FTE performance which may be used in lieu of previous standard FTE assumptions that may not be appropriate for certain modern aircraft and systems.

Items in section 4 address FTE demonstration criteria. Items in section 5 address acceptable methods for data collection and presentation of results.

### **4 FTE Demonstration Criteria**

#### **a) USE OF REALISTIC TASKS**

Tasks selected should address relevant flight phases applicable to the FTE measurements sought (e.g. takeoff, climb, cruise, descent, approach, landing, and missed approach). Tasks should be realistic in providing appropriate lateral, vertical, and longitudinal elements, even though capability in only one or several dimensions is being assessed. Realistic and representative procedures should be used (e.g., number of waypoints, placement of waypoints, segment geometry, leg types, etc.).

#### **b) REPRESENTATIVE TEST METHODS AND TEST SUBJECTS**

##### **(1) TEST METHODS**

An acceptable combination of analysis, simulation, and flight verification should be used to establish alternative FTE performance. A plan acceptable to the appropriate regulatory authority should be provided by the applicant prior to testing.

##### **(2) TEST SUBJECTS**

Test crews should represent an appropriate mix of flight experience, currency, and qualification (Captain, F/O, etc.).

#### **c) PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT**

Normal performance (straight and turning flight), Rare Normal Performance (e.g. strong winds and wind gradient effects), and Non-Normal Performance (e.g. engine failure, remote and extremely remote effects) should each be considered. Functional hazard assessments should be the basis for deciding how to assess non-normal performance.

Characterisation of performance should address "95%" and "limit performance" for a suitable sample size. Emphasis should be on practical and realistic flight scenarios rather than on rigorous statistical demonstrations that may not be representative of "in service" conditions.

Successful demonstration of procedures intended for terminal area applications (e.g. approach, missed approach) may generally be considered to also cover en-route applications.

Note: Probable failures are in accordance with AMC 25-1309, and  $10^{-5}$  per operation.

The demonstration of Flight Technical Error must be completed in a variety of operational conditions; rare-normal conditions and non-normal conditions. This should be documented in the appropriate aircraft operational support document. Realistic and representative procedures should be used (e.g. Number of waypoints, placement of waypoints, segment geometry, leg types, wind etc.). The non-normal assessment should consider the following:

- (1) Acceptable criteria to be used for assessing probable failures and engine failure during the aircraft qualification is to demonstrate that the aircraft trajectory is maintained within a 1xRNP corridor laterally and 75 feet vertically.
- (2) Acceptable criteria to be used for assessing remote failures during the aircraft qualification is to demonstrate that the aircraft trajectory is maintained within a 2xRNP corridor laterally and 75 feet vertically.
- (3) Extremely remote failure cases should be assessed to show that under these conditions the aircraft can be safely extracted from the procedure. Failure cases might include dual system resets, flight control surface runaway and complete loss of flight guidance function while in NAV.
- (4) The aircraft performance demonstration during the operational evaluations can be based on a mix of analysis and flight technical evaluation using expert judgment.

RNP AR procedures with navigation accuracy less than RNP 0.3 or with RF legs require the use of autopilot or flight director driven by the RNAV system in all cases. Thus, the autopilot/flight director must operate with suitable accuracy to track the lateral and vertical paths required by a specific RNP AR approach procedure.

d) REFERENCE PATH SELECTION

For FTE assessments a nominal path may be used (magenta line) that does not include consideration of specific navigation sensor/system anomalies (e.g. DME updating anomaly characteristics etc.). The applicant should, however, indicate how any FTE effects related to navigation system anomalies, if any, should be operationally addressed.

## 5 PARAMETERS TO BE MEASURED AND PRESENTATION OF RESULTS

a) FTE ASSESSMENT PARAMETER MEASUREMENT

Parameters measured should include:

- (1) Pertinent lateral and vertical path displacements,
- (2) Longitudinal performance as applicable (speed errors, ETA/RTA errors, etc.),
- (3) Other parameters as necessary to assure realistic operational performance (bank angles, pitch attitudes, thrust changes, track/heading variation, G loading, etc.).

b) FTE ASSESSMENT METHODS

Unless otherwise agreed by the regulator, demonstrations should be based on appropriate simulations, and be verified by flight trials.

c) FTE ASSESSMENT RESULT PRESENTATION

Data may be presented in various AFM provisions related to demonstrated performance for levels of "RNP", instrument approach and landing capability, etc.

**6 EXAMPLES OF REGULATORY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ASSESSMENT OF FTE AND USE OF FTE EVALUATION RESULTS**

The Agency will:

- a) typically conduct assessments of FTE in conjunction with Type Certification/Supplemental Type Certification (TC/STC) projects, when a TC/STC applicant has made such a request. Special circumstances may exist where assessments acceptable to the Agency will be conducted by other organisations (FAA, etc.),
- b) participate in FTE assessments in conjunction with aircraft certification projects, and assure that appropriate flight standardisation provisions are identified,
- c) assure proper application of FTE as specified in AFMs for particular applications (e.g. RNP authorisations),
- d) address crew qualification requirements necessary to achieve the intended FTE performance.

**7 FTE ASSESSMENT PROCESS**

Applicants apply through normal channels to the Agency. The Agency will evaluate the application for applicable criteria and specific evaluation plans.

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 5 to AMC 20-26 Flight Operation Safety Assessments

*ED Decision 2009/019/R*

### 1 SAFETY ASSESSMENT

The safety objective for RNP AR operations is to provide for safe flight operations. Traditionally, operational safety has been defined by a target level of safety and specified as a risk of collision of  $10^{-7}$  per approach. For RNP AR approaches a flight operational safety assessment (FOSA) methodology may be used. The FOSA is intended to provide a level of flight safety that is equivalent to the traditional TLS, but using methodology oriented to performance-based flight operations. Using the FOSA, the operational safety objective is met by considering more than the aircraft navigation system alone. The FOSA blends quantitative and qualitative analyses and assessments for navigation systems, aircraft systems, operational procedures, hazards, failure mitigations, normal, rare-normal and abnormal conditions, hazards, and the operational environment. The FOSA relies on the detailed criteria for aircraft qualification, operator approval and instrument procedure design to address the majority of general technical, procedure and process factors. Additionally, technical and operational expertise and experience are essential to the conduct and conclusion of the FOSA.

An overview of the hazards and mitigations is provided to assist States in applying these criteria. Safety of RNP AR approach operations rests with the operator and the air navigation service provider as described in this chapter.

A FOSA should be conducted for each RNP AR approach procedure where more stringent aspects of the nominal procedure design criteria are applied (e.g. RNP0.1 missed approach, RF legs, and RNP missed approaches less than 1.0) or where the application of the default procedure design criteria is in an operating environment with special challenges or demands to ensure that for each specific set of operating conditions, aircraft, and environment that all failure conditions are assessed and where necessary mitigations implemented to meet the operational safety objective. The assessment should give proper attention to the inter-dependence of the elements of design, aircraft capability, crew procedures and operating environment.

The following hazard conditions are examples of some of the more significant hazards and mitigations addressed in the aircraft, operational and procedure criteria:

**Normal performance:** Lateral and vertical accuracy are addressed in the aircraft requirements, aircraft and systems operate normally in standard configurations and operating modes, and individual error components are monitored/truncated through system design or crew procedure.

**Rare-Normal and Abnormal Performance:** Lateral and vertical accuracy are evaluated for aircraft failures as part of the determination of aircraft qualification. Additionally, other rare-normal and abnormal failures and conditions for ATC operations, crew procedures, infrastructure and operating environment are also assessed. Where the failure or condition results are not acceptable for continued operation, mitigations are developed or limitations established for the aircraft, crew and/or operation.

### 2 AIRCRAFT FAILURES

- a) **System Failure:** Failure of a navigation system, flight guidance system, flight instrument system for the approach, or missed approach (e.g. loss of GNSS updating, receiver failure, autopilot disconnect, FMS failure etc.). Depending on the aircraft, this may be addressed through aircraft design or operational procedure to cross-check guidance (e.g. dual equipage for lateral errors, use of terrain awareness and warning system).

- b) Malfunction of air data system or altimetry: Crew procedure cross-check between two independent systems mitigates this risk.

### **3 AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE**

- a) Inadequate performance to conduct the approach: the aircraft qualification and operational procedures ensure the performance is adequate on each approach, as part of flight planning and in order to begin or continue the approach. Consideration should be given to aircraft configuration during approach and any configuration changes associated with a go-around (e.g. engine failure, flap retraction, re-engagement of LNAV mode).
- b) Loss of engine: Loss of an engine while on an RNP AR approach is a rare occurrence due to high engine reliability and the short exposure time. Operators will take appropriate action to mitigate the effects of loss of engine, initiating a go-around and manually taking control of the aircraft if necessary.

### **4 NAVIGATION SERVICES**

- a) Use of a navigation aid outside of designated coverage or in test mode: Aircraft requirements and operational procedures have been developed to address this risk.
- b) Navigation database errors: Procedures are validated through flight validation specific to the operator and aircraft, and the operator is required to have a process defined to maintain validated data through updates to the navigation database.

### **5 ATC OPERATIONS**

- a) Procedure assigned to incapable aircraft: Operators are responsible for declining the clearance.
- b) ATC vectors aircraft onto approach such that performance cannot be achieved: ATC training and procedures must ensure obstacle clearance until aircraft is established on the procedure, and ATC should not intercept on or just prior to a curved segments of the procedure.

### **6 FLIGHT CREW OPERATIONS**

- a) Erroneous barometric altimeter setting: Crew entry and cross-check procedures mitigate this risk.
- b) Incorrect procedure selection or loading: crew procedure to verify loaded procedure matches published procedure, aircraft requirement for map display.
- c) Incorrect flight control mode selected: training on importance of flight control mode, independent procedure to monitor for excessive path deviation.
- d) Incorrect RNP entry: crew procedure to verify RNP loaded in system matches the published value.
- e) Go-Around/Missed Approach: Balked landing or rejected landing at or below DA (H).
- f) Poor meteorological conditions: Loss or significant reduction of visual reference that may result in or require a go-around.

### **7 INFRASTRUCTURE**

- a) GNSS satellite failure: This condition is evaluated during aircraft qualification to ensure obstacle clearance can be maintained, considering the low likelihood of this failure occurring.

- b) Loss of GNSS signals: Relevant independent equipage (e.g. IRU) is required for RNP AR approaches with RF legs and approaches where the accuracy for the missed approach is less than 1 NM. For other approaches, operational procedures are used to approximate the published track and climb above obstacles.
- c) Testing of ground Navaid in the vicinity of the approach: Aircraft and operational procedures are required to detect and mitigate this event.

## **8 OPERATING CONDITIONS**

- a) Tailwind conditions: Excessive speed on RF legs will result in inability to maintain track. This is addressed through aircraft requirements on the limits of command guidance, inclusion of 5 degrees of bank manoeuvrability margin, consideration of speed effect and crew procedure to maintain speeds below the maximum authorised.
- b) Wind conditions and effect on flight technical error: nominal flight technical error is evaluated under a variety of wind conditions, and crew procedures to monitor and limit deviations ensure safe operation.
- c) Extreme temperature effects of barometric altitude (e.g. extreme cold temperatures, known local atmospheric or weather phenomena, high winds, severe turbulence etc.): The effect of this error on the vertical path is mitigated through the procedure design and crew procedures, with an allowance for aircraft that compensate for this effect to conduct procedures regardless of the published temperature limit. The effect of this error on minimum segment altitudes and the decision altitude are addressed in an equivalent manner to all other approach operations.

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 6 AMC 20-26/PBN Manual/AC90-101 Comparison

ED Decision 2009/019/R

This appendix contains a comparison of this AMC relative to the ICAO Performance Based Navigation Manual and the US AC90-101. In general, the AC is the same as the PBN Manual Navigation Specification for RNP AR APCH. The AMC contains some differences that are noted as follows.

The matrix does not highlight the unique requirements introduced by AC 90-101 and not contained within this AMC.

Regular = Same/Comparable

Italic = areas where AMC provides additional information, guidance or criteria

ALL CAP = areas where PBN Manual is more extensive

Bold = areas where AMC is more stringent than PBN Manual and/or AC90-101 criteria

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
1	Preamble					NC
1.2	Purpose	6.1.2	Purpose	1	Purpose	NC
1.2	Background	--	--	--	--	NC
2	Scope	--	--	--	--	NC
3	Reference Documents	--	--	4	Related Documents	NC
3.1	Related Requirements	--	--	--	--	NC
3.2	Related Material	--	--	2	Related CFR Sections	NC
3.2.1	ICAO	--	--	--	--	NC
3.2.2	EASA	--	--	--	--	NC
3.2.3	Eurocontrol	--	--	--	--	NC
3.2.4	FAA	--	--			NC
3.2.5	ETSO	--	--			NC
3.2.6	EUROCAE /RTCA, ARINC	--	--	--	--	NC
4	Assumptions	6.2	ANSP Considerations	--	--	AMC expands assumptions for procedure design, infrastructure, publication, status monitoring, controller training, flight evaluation.
5	System Description	--	--	--	--	NC
5.1	LNAV			--	--	NC
5.1.1		--	--	--	--	AMC descriptive info
5.1.2	Position Determination and Sensors	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific Navigation Services	App 2, 3.a	Position Estimation	AMC has more explicit description, PBN implies more
5.2	VNAV	--	--	--	--	AMC provides descriptive info

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
5.2.2	Temperature Compensation Systems	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific Navigation Services, Temperature Compensation Systems	App 2, 3.a(7)	Temperature Compensation Systems	Same
6	Airworthiness Certification Objectives	--	--	--	--	AMC ties criteria to assumptions
6.1	Accuracy	6.3.3.1	System Performance, Monitoring and Alerting, Path Definition	App 2, 2.a	Path Definition	Same
6.1.1	Lateral	6.3.3.1	System Performance, Monitoring and Alerting, Lateral Accuracy	App 2, 2.b	Lateral Accuracy	More notes of clarification and expanded considerations
6.1.2	Vertical	6.3.3.1	System Performance, Monitoring and Alerting, Airspace Containment	App 2, 2.c	Vertical Accuracy	More notes of clarification and expanded considerations
6.1.2	Vertical	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific Navigation Services, Altimetry System Error	App 2, 3.a(6)	99.7% ASE	Same
6.1.3	RNP System Performance	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Demonstration of Path Steering Performance	App 2, 3.c	Path Steering Performance	AMC has More Stringent Requirements
6.2	Integrity	--	--	--	--	--
6.2.1, a)	System	6.3.3.1	System Performance, Monitoring and Alerting, Airspace Containment	App 2, 2.d(1)	RNP and BARO-VNAV	Same
6.2.1, b)	System	6.3.3.1	System Performance, Monitoring and Alerting, Airspace Containment	App 2, 2.d(2)	Other Systems or Alternate Means of Compliance	Same
6.2.2	Display	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Design Assurance	App 2, 3.e	Design Assurance	Same
6.3	Continuity	--	--	--	--	AMC contains explicit requirements. AC

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
						requirement is implied through airspace containment and predetermined through MEL requirements
7	Functional Criteria			--	--	NC
7.1, 1	Lateral/Vertical Deviation	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(1)	Lateral/Vertical Deviation	Same
7.1, 1	For RNP < 0.3, Fixed CDI or Scaled to RNP	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(1)(a)		Unique to AMC
7.1, 1	For RNP < 0.3, Fixed CDI or Scaled to RNP	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(1)(b)		Unique to AMC
7.1, 1	Navigation Map display alternative	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 4, 3.g(1)	Moving map, VDI or numeric display of deviation	Same
7.1, 2	Identification of the Active (To) Waypoint.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(2)	Identification of the Active (To) Waypoint.	Same
7.1, 3	Display of Distance and Bearing.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(3)	Display of Distance and Bearing.	Same
7.1, 4	Display of Groundspeed or Time	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(4)	Display of Groundspeed or Time	Same
7.1, 5	Display of To/From the active fix.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(5)	Display of To/From the active fix.	Same
7.1, 6	Desired Track Display	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(6)	Desired Track Display	Same
7.1, 7	Display of Aircraft Track.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(7)	Display of Aircraft Track.	Same
7.1, 8	Slaved Course Selector	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(9)	Slaved Course Selector	Same
7.1, 9	RNAV Path Display	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(10)	RNAV Path Display	Same
7.1, 10	Display of Distance to Go.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(11)	Display of Distance to Go.	Same

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
7.1, 11	Display of Distance Between Flight Plan Waypoints.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(12)	Display of Distance Between Flight Plan Waypoints.	Same
7.1, 12	Display of Barometric Altitude	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(14)	Display of Barometric Altitude	Same
7.1, 13	Display of Active Sensors	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(15)	Display of Active Sensors	Same
7.1, 14	Navigation Performance	6.3.3.1	System Performance, Monitoring and Alerting	App 2, 2.e	System Monitoring.	AMC provides additional guidance for vertical
7.1, 15	Multi-Sensor Systems	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific Navigation Services	App 2, 3.a(5)	Multi-Sensor Systems	Same
7.1, 16	Auto tuning of DME	--	--	--	--	More explicit guidance for reversion capability in AMC. PBN/AC implies through position estimation criteria for DME
7.1, 17	Auto selection/ de-selection of navigation sources	--	--	--	--	More explicit guidance in AMC. PBN/AC are implies through position estimation criteria
7.1, 18	Failure Annunciation	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.d(8)	Failure Annunciation	Same
7.1, 19	Navigation Database Status	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Displays	App 2, 3.f(3)	Display the Validity Period	Same
7.1, 20	Maintain Track and Leg Transitions	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition and Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(1)	Maintain Track and Leg Transitions	less stringent
7.1, 21	Fly-by and Fly-over Fixes	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(2)	Fly-by and Fly-over Fixes	Same
7.1, 22	Waypoint Resolution Error	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(3)	Waypoint Resolution Error	Same

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
7.1, 23	Capability for a "Direct-To" Function	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(4)	Capability for a "Direct-To" Function	AMC contains additional guidance for VNAV, not in AC
7.1, 24	Capability to define a vertical path	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(5)	Capability to define a vertical path	Same
7.1, 25	Altitudes and/or Speeds	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(6)	Altitudes and/or Speeds	Same
7.1, 26	Construct a Path	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(7)	Construct a Path	Same
7.1, 27	Capacity to Load Procedures from the Navigation Database.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(8)	Capacity to Load Procedures from the Navigation Database.	Same
7.1, 28	Means to Retrieve and Display Navigation Data.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(9)	Means to Retrieve and Display Navigation Data.	Same
7.1, 29	Magnetic Variation	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(10)	Magnetic Variation	Same
7.1, 30	Changes in Navigation Accuracy	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(11)	Changes in RNP Value	Same
7.1, 31	Automatic Leg Sequencing.	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(12)	Automatic Leg Sequencing.	Same
7.1, 32	Display of Altitude Restrictions	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Path Definition & Flight Planning	App 2, 3.b(13)	Display of Altitude Restrictions	Same
7.1, 33	Navigation Database	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements	App 2, 3.f(1)	Navigation Database	Same
7.1, 33	Navigation Database	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements	App 2, 3.f(2)	Database Protection	Same
7.2, 1	Where RNP AR operations use RF Legs	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Requirements for RNP AR	App 2, 4	Requirements for RNP SAAAR Approaches with RF Legs	Conditional requirements tied to RF, RNP less than procedure defaults for

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
			Approaches with RF Legs			approach and missed approach.
7.2, 2	Where RNP AR operations are less than RNP 0.3	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Requirements for RNP AR Approaches to less than RNP 0.3	App 2, 5	Requirements for Using Lines of Minima less than RNP 0.3	AMC is more stringent by removing the alternative for when aircraft lacks continuous LNAV capability
7.2, 3	Where Missed Approach are less than RNP 1.0	6.3.3.3	Functional Requirements, Requirements for Approaches with Missed Approach less than RNP 1.0	App 2, 6	Requirements for Approaches with Missed Approach less than RNP 1.0	AMC is more stringent by removing the alternative for when aircraft lacks continuous LNAV capability
8	Airworthiness Compliance	--	--	--	--	NC
8.1	General	6.3.2	Approval Process	6.a	Overview	Comparable
8.1.1 (a)	New or Modified Installations – Compliance Statement	6.3.2	Approval Process	6.b(1)	Aircraft Qualification Documentation	Comparable
8.1.1 (b)(1)	Design data to support compliance	6.3.2	Approval Process	6.b(1)	Aircraft Qualification Documentation	Comparable
8.1.1 (b)(2)	Risk of flight crew error	6.3.4	Operating Procedures, Track Deviation Monitoring	App 4, 3.g	Track Deviation Monitoring	PBN Manual/AC provide more explicit guidance
8.1.1 (b)(3)	Equipment failures and reversion	6.3.4	Operating Procedures, Contingency Procedures	App 4, 3.p	Contingency Procedures	Comparable
8.1.1 (b)(4)	Coupling arrangements	6.3.4	Operating Procedures, Autopilot & Flight Director	App 4, 2.b	Autopilot & Flight Director	Comparable
8.1.1 (b)(5)	Intercepting CF	--	--	--	--	AMC is more explicit for this condition
8.1.1 (b)(6)	MEL & maintenance	6.3.2.2 .4	MEL Considerations	App 4, 2.a	MEL	Comparable
8.1.2	Existing Installations	--	--	--	--	AMC unique
8.2	Database Integrity	6.3.6	Navigation Database	6.b(2)	RNP SAAAR Operational Documentation	Same
8.3	Use of GPS	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific	App 2, 3.a(1)	GPS	Same

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
			Navigation Services			
8.4	Use of IRS	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific Navigation Services	App 2, 3.a(2)	IRS	Same
8.5	Use of DME	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific Navigation Services	App 2, 3.a(3)	DME	Same
8.6	Use of VOR	6.3.3.2	Criteria for Specific Navigation Services	App 2, 3.a(4)	VOR	Same
8.7	Intermixing of Equipment	--	--	--	--	AMC contains additional guidance and criteria
9	Aircraft Flight Manual	6.3.5	Pilot/Dispatch/Operator Knowledge and Training	6.b(3)	FAA Acceptance	Comparable
10	Operational Criteria	--	--	--	--	NC
10.1	General					AMC general info
10.2	Flight Operations Documentation	6.3.2	Approval Process	6.b	FAA Acceptance	AC provides more guidance
10.3	Qualification and Training	6.3.5	Pilot/Dispatch/Operator Knowledge and Training	App 5	Training	AC is more extensive
10.4	Navigation Database Management	6.3.6	Navigation Database	App 3	Navigation Data Validation Programme	Comparable
10.5	Reportable Events	--	--	--	--	AMC is more extensive
10.6	Fleet Approvals	--	--	--	--	AMC unique
10.7	RNP Monitoring Programme	6.3.7	Oversight Of Operators	App 6	RNP Monitoring Programme	Comparable
Appendix 1	Glossary	--	--	3	Definitions	NC
Appendix 2	Training and Crew Qualification Issues	6.3.5	Pilot/Dispatch/Operator Knowledge and Training	App 5	Training	Comparable
Appendix 3	Operational Considerations	6.3.4	Operating Procedures	App 4	Operational Considerations	Comparable

Section	AMC 20-26	Para	PBN Vol II, Chap 6	Section	AC90-101	Comment
Appendix 4	Acceptable Methods for FTE Assessment for RNP	--	--	--	--	AMC unique
Appendix 5	FOSA	6.4	Safety Assessment	App 2, 2.d(2)		AMC guidance consistent with PBN manual. AC contains a mention to OSA only.

[Amdt 20/5]

## AMC 20-27A

### AMC 20-27A Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP APPROACH (RNP APCH) Operations Including APV BARO-VNAV Operations

ED Decision 2013/026/R

#### 1. PURPOSE

This AMC provides an acceptable means that can be used to obtain airworthiness approval of an Area Navigation (RNAV) system based on a Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) stand-alone receiver or multi-sensor system including at least one GNSS sensor in order to conduct RNP Approach (RNP APCH) operations.

RNP APCH procedures are characterised by existing charted RNAV (GNSS) approach procedures designed with straight final approach segments.

This AMC also defines operational criteria necessary to conduct safely RNP APCH operations in designated European airspace.

This AMC addresses RNP APCH operation without vertical guidance (Non Precision Approach operation) and with vertical guidance based on barometric vertical navigation (APV BARO-VNAV operation). Final approaches utilising SBAS (Localiser Performance with Vertical guidance (LPV) operation) are addressed in separate AMC material.

APV BARO-VNAV systems are based on barometric altimetry for the determination of the aircraft position in the vertical axis. The final approach segment of VNAV instrument flight procedures are performed using vertical guidance to a vertical path computed by the on-board RNAV system. The vertical path is contained in the specification of the instrument procedure within the RNAV system navigation database. For other phases of flight, barometric VNAV provides vertical path information that can be defined by altitudes at fixes in the procedure. It should be noted that there is no vertical requirement in this AMC associated to the use of VNAV guidance outside of the final approach segment. Vertical navigation on the initial or intermediate segment can be conducted without VNAV guidance.

An applicant may elect to use an alternative means of compliance. However, those alternative means of compliance must meet safety objectives that are acceptable to the Agency or the competent authority. Compliance with this AMC is not mandatory. Use of the terms shall and must apply only to an applicant who elects to comply with this AMC in order to obtain airworthiness approval or to demonstrate compliance with the operational criteria.

#### 2. BACKGROUND

This document addresses and defines airworthiness and operational criteria related to RNAV systems approved for RNP APCH based on GNSS with or without vertical guidance based on BARO-VNAV. It relates to the implementation of area navigation within the context of the Single European Sky<sup>1</sup>, in particular in relation to the verification of conformity of the airborne constituents, per Article 5 of EC Regulation 552/2004<sup>2</sup>. It addresses general certification

<sup>1</sup> Regulation (EC) No 549/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 10 March 2004 laying down the framework for the creation of the single European sky (the framework Regulation) (OJ L 096, 31/03/2004, p. 01).

<sup>2</sup> Regulation (EC) No 552/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 10 March 2004 on the interoperability of the European Air Traffic Management network (OJ L 096, 31.3.2004, p. 26).

considerations of stand-alone and multi-sensor systems on-board aircraft, including their functional requirements, accuracy, integrity, continuity of function, and limitations, together with operational considerations.

This document is applicable to RNP APCH operations only. It does not address RNP AR APCH operations (see [AMC 20-26](#)).

This AMC identifies the airworthiness and operational requirements for RNP APCH operations including APV BARO-VNAV operation. Operational compliance with these requirements must be addressed through national operational regulations, and may require a specific operational approval in some cases.

Use of BARO-VNAV information for RNP APCH with LNAV minima only is possible using the CDFA (Continuous Descent Final Approach) concept. This use is possible provided the navigation system is able to compute a vertical continuous descent path on the Final Approach segment and operator complies with EU OPS 1.430 section. It should be noted that this AMC does not address such operational approval authorisation.

### **3. SCOPE**

This AMC includes airworthiness and operational criteria related to RNAV systems based on a GNSS stand-alone receiver, or multi-sensor systems including at least one GNSS sensor, intended to be used under Instrument Flight Rules, including Instrument Meteorological Conditions, in designated European airspace. It contains also airworthiness and operational criteria related to systems based upon the use of barometric altitude and RNAV information in the definition of vertical paths and vertical tracking to a path to conduct APV BARO-VNAV operation.

Section 4.2 of this AMC refers to documents which contribute to the understanding of the RNP APCH concept and which may support an application for approval. However, it is important that an operator evaluates his aircraft system and the proposed operational procedures against the criteria of this AMC.

Compliance with this AMC does not, by itself, constitute an operational authorisation to conduct RNP APCH operations. Aircraft operators should apply to their national authority. Since this AMC has been harmonised with other RNP implementation and operational criteria outside of Europe, i.e. USA/FAA, it is expected to facilitate interoperability and ease the effort in obtaining operational authorisation by operators.

This AMC does not cover RNP approaches where special authorisation is required (RNP AR APCH). RNP AR APCH is addressed in a separate AMC.

### **4. REFERENCE DOCUMENTS**

#### **4.1 Related Requirements**

- CS 25.1301, 25.1302, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1316, 25.1321, 25.1322, 25.1325, 25.1329, 25.1431, 25.1581.
- CS 23.1301, 23.1309, 23.1311, 23.1321, 23.1322, 23.1325, 23.1329, 23.1335, 23.1431, 23.1581.
- Equivalent requirements of CS/FAR 27 and 29 if applicable.

- EU-OPS<sup>1</sup> 1.035, 1.220, 225, 1.243, 1.290, 1.295, 1.297, 1.400, 1.420, 1.845, 1.865, 1.870, 1.873 and 1.975.
- JAR-OPS 3.243, 3.845, 3.865.
- National operational regulations.

## **4.2 Related Material**

### **4.2.1 ICAO**

ICAO Annex 10	International Standards and Recommended Practices-Aeronautical Telecommunications
ICAO Doc 7030/4	Regional Supplementary Procedures
ICAO Doc 9613	Performance Based Navigation Manual (PBN)
ICAO Doc 8168	PANS OPS (Procedures for Air Navigation Services-Aircraft Operations)

### **4.2.2 EASA**

AMC 25-11	Electronic Flight Deck Display
AMC 20-5	Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for the use of the Navstar Global Positioning System (GPS)
AMC 20-115 (latest edition)	Software considerations for certification of airborne systems and equipment
ETSO-C115( )	Airborne Area Navigation Equipment using Multi-Sensor Inputs
ETSO-C129( )	Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS)
ETSO-C145( )	Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
ETSO-C146( )	Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
ETSO-C106( )	Air Data Computer
EASA OPINION Nr. 01/2005	Conditions for Issuance of Letters of Acceptance for Navigation Database Suppliers by the Agency (i.e. an EASA Type 2 LoA). EASA OPINION Nr. 01/2005 on "The Acceptance of Navigation Database Suppliers" dated 14 Jan 05

### **4.2.3 FAA**

AC 25-4	Inertial Navigation Systems (INS)
AC 25-11( )	Electronic Display Systems

---

<sup>1</sup> Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91 on the harmonisation of technical requirements and administrative procedures in the field of civil aviation. Regulation as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 1899/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 December 2006 (OJ L 377, 27.12.2006, p. 1).

---

AC 20-129	Airworthiness Approval of Vertical Navigation (VNAV) Systems or use in the U.S. National Airspace System (NAS) and Alaska
AC 20-138( )	Airworthiness Approval of GNSS equipment
AC 20-130A	Airworthiness approval of navigation or flight management systems integrating multiple navigation sensors
AC 23-1309-1C	Equipment, systems, and installation in Part-23 airplanes
AC 20-153	Acceptance of data processes and associated navigation data bases

#### 4.2.4 Technical Standard Orders

FAA TSO-C115( )	Airborne Area Navigation Equipment using Multi-Sensor Inputs
FAA TSO-C129( )	Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS)
FAA TSO-C145( )	Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
FAA TSO-C146( )	Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
FAA TSO-C106( )	Air Data Computer

#### 4.2.5 EUROCAE/RTCA, SAE and ARINC

ED 26	MPS for airborne Altitude measurements and coding systems
ED 72A	Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Airborne GPS Receiving Equipment
ED-75( )/DO-236( )	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standards: Required Navigation Performance for Area Navigation
ED-76/DO-200A	Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data
ED-77/DO-201A	Standards for Aeronautical Information
DO 88	Altimetry
DO 187	Minimum operational performances standards for airborne area navigation equipments using multi-sensor inputs
DO 208	Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using Global Positioning System (GPS)
DO-229( )	Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Global Positioning System/Wide Area Augmentation System Airborne equipment
ARINC 424	Navigation System Data Base
ARINC 706	Mark 5 Air Data System

## 5. ASSUMPTIONS

Applicants should note that this AMC is based on the following assumptions:

### 5.1 Navaid infrastructure

GNSS is the primary navigation system to support RNP APCH procedures.

The acceptability of the risk of loss of RNP APCH capability for multiple aircraft due to satellite failure, loss of the on board monitoring, alerting function (e.g. RAIM holes) and radio frequency interference, will be considered by the responsible airspace authority.

### 5.2 Obstacle clearance

#### 5.2.1 RNP APCH without BARO-VNAV guidance

Detailed guidance on obstacle clearance is provided in PANS-OPS (Doc 8168, Volume II). Missed approach procedure may be supported by either RNAV or conventional (e.g. based on NDB, VOR, DME) segments.

Procedures design will take account of the absence of a VNAV capability on the aircraft.

#### 5.2.2 APV BARO-VNAV

BARO-VNAV is applied where vertical guidance and information is provided to the flight crew on instrument approach procedures containing a vertical path defined by a vertical path angle.

Detailed guidance on obstacle clearance is provided in PANS-OPS (Doc 8168, Volume II). Missed approach procedure may be supported by either RNAV or conventional (e.g. based on NDB, VOR, DME) segments.

### 5.3 Publication

The instrument approach chart will clearly identify the RNP APCH application as RNAV<sub>(GNSS)</sub>.

For non APV BARO-VNAV operation, the procedure design will rely on normal descent profiles and the chart will identify minimum altitude requirements for each segment, including an LNAV OCA(H).

For APV BARO-VNAV operation, charting will follow the standards of ICAO Annex 4 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation for the designation of an RNAV procedure where the vertical path is specified by a glide path angle. The charting designation will remain consistent with the current convention and will promulgate a LNAV/VNAV OCA(H).

If the missed approach segment is based on conventional means, the navaid facilities or airborne navigation means that are necessary to conduct the missed approach will be identified in the relevant publications (e.g. approach charts).

The navigation data published in the applicable AIP for the procedures and supporting navigation aids will meet the requirements of ICAO Annex 15 and Annex 4 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation. The chart will provide sufficient data to support navigation data base checking by the crew (including waypoint name, track, distance for each segment and vertical path angle).

All procedures will be based upon WGS 84 coordinates.

#### **5.4 Communication, ATS surveillance and ATC coordination**

RNP APCH does not include specific requirements for communication or ATS surveillance. Adequate obstacle clearance is achieved through aircraft performance, operating procedures and procedure design. Where reliance is placed on the use of radar to assist contingency procedures, its performance will be shown to be adequate for that purpose, and the requirement for a radar service will be identified in the AIP.

RT phraseology appropriate to RNP APCH operations will be promulgated.

It is expected that ATC will be familiar with aircraft VNAV capability, as well as issues associated with altimeter setting and temperature effect potentially affecting the integrity of the APV BARO-VNAV operation.

The particular hazards of a terminal and approach area and the impact of contingency procedures following multiple loss of RNP APCH capability will be assessed.

ATC may use radar vectoring techniques to place aircraft onto final approach axis when the RNAV system supports this function. Air Navigation Service Providers implementing such operation in their airspace should inform airspace users of this operational possibility in the relevant AIP.

#### **5.5 Service provider assumption for APV BARO-VNAV operation.**

It is expected that air navigation service provision will include data and information to enable correct and accurate altimeter setting on-board the aircraft, as well as local temperature. This data will be from measurement equipment at the airport where the approach is to take place (remote or regional pressure setting are not authorised).

The specific medium for transmission of this data and information to the aircraft may include voice communication, ATIS or other media. In support of this, it is also expected that MET service providers will assure the accuracy, currency and availability of meteorological data supporting APV BARO-VNAV operations. In order to minimise the potential for miss-setting of barometric reference, Air Traffic Controllers will confirm QNH with flight crews prior to commencement of the approach.

### **6. RNP APCH AIRWORTHINESS CRITERIA**

#### **6.1 General**

The following airworthiness criteria are applicable to the installation of RNAV system intended for IFR approach operation, certified according to CS-23, -25, -27 and -29

This AMC uses FAA Advisory Circulars AC 20-138/AC 20-138A (GPS stand-alone system) or AC 20-130A (Multi-sensors systems) as the basis for the airworthiness approval of an RNAV system based on GNSS. For APV BARO-VNAV operation, this AMC uses FAA Advisory Circular AC 20-129 as the airworthiness basis with additional requirements.

This AMC is to be used as Interpretative Material to show compliance with the applicable CS codes on each application, e.g. xx.1301 and xx.1309.

#### **6.2 Equipment qualification**

##### **6.2.1 General**

If the RNAV installation is based on GNSS stand-alone system, the equipment shall be approved in accordance with TSO-C129a/ETSO-C129a Class A1 or ETSO-C146()/TSO-C146() Class Gamma, operational class 1, 2 or 3.

If the RNAV installation is based on GNSS sensor equipment used in a multi-sensor system (e.g. FMS), the GNSS sensor shall be approved in accordance with TSO-C129( )/ETSO-C129( ) Class B1, C1, B3, C3 or ETSO-C145( )/TSO-C145( ) class Beta, operational class 1, 2 or 3.

Multi-sensor systems using GNSS should be approved in accordance with AC20-130A or ETSO-C115b/TSO-C115b, as well as having been demonstrated for RNP capability.

Note 1: For GNSS receiver approved in accordance with ETSO-C129()/TSO-C129(), capability for satellite Fault detection and Exclusion (FDE) is recommended, to improve Continuity of function.

Note 2: GNSS receivers approved in accordance with ETSO-145/TSO-C145a or ETSO-C146/TSO-C146a (DO 229C) and used outside SBAS coverage area may trigger inappropriate Loss of Integrity (LOI) warning. DO229D paragraph 2.1.1.6 provides a correct satellite selection scheme requirement to address this issue. Although most of the ETSO-C145/TSO-C145a or ETSO-146/TSO-C146a approved receivers comply with this satellite selection scheme, a confirmatory statement from the equipment manufacturer is still necessary. It should be noted that such confirmatory statement is not necessary for equipment compliant with TSO-C145b or TSO-C146b.

#### 6.2.2 Altimeter sensor requirement for APV BARO-VNAV operation

In addition to requirements of paragraph 6.2.1 above, the RNAV equipment that automatically determines aircraft position in the vertical plane should use inputs from equipment that can include:

- a) ETSO-C106/TSO-C106, Air Data Computer; or
- b) Air data system, ARINC 706, Mark 5 Air Data System, ARINC 738 (Air Data and Inertial Reference System); or
- c) Barometric altimeter system compliant with DO-88 "Altimetry" and/or ED-26 "MPS for Airborne Altitude Measurements and Coding Systems"; or
- d) Type certified integrated systems providing an Air Data System capability comparable to item b).

### 6.3 Accuracy

#### 6.3.1 Horizontal

The Lateral and Longitudinal Total System Error (TSE) of the on-board navigation system must be equal to or better than:

- a)  $\pm 1$  NM for 95% of the flight time for the initial and intermediate approach segments and for the RNAV missed approach.

Note: There is no specific RNAV accuracy requirement for the missed approach if this segment is based on conventional means (VOR, DME, NDB) or on dead reckoning.

- b)  $\pm 0.3$  NM for 95% of the flight time for the final approach segment.

The Lateral Total System Error (TSE) is dependent on the Navigation System Error (NSE), Path Definition Error (PDE) and Flight Technical Error (FTE).

In order to satisfy the  $\pm 0.3$  NM TSE accuracy for the final approach segment, FTE (95%) should not exceed  $\pm 0.25$  NM whatever the operating mode (manual, flight director or Autopilot):

- a) A demonstrated FTE (95%) of  $\pm 0.25$  NM is assumed for manual mode if a standardised CDI is installed (compliant with the full-scale deflection sensitivity requirement of TSO-C129a paragraph (a).3.(viii) or RTCA/DO-229() paragraph 2.2.1.4.2.1) Otherwise, it should be demonstrated that an FTE of  $\pm 0.25$  NM can be maintained under all foreseeable conditions through a dedicated flight test evaluation.
- b) A demonstrated FTE (95%) of  $\pm 0.25$  NM is assumed when coupled to a flight director.
- c) A demonstrated FTE (95%) of  $\pm 0.125$  NM is assumed when coupled to an autopilot.

Outside of the Final Approach Segment, a demonstrated FTE of  $\pm 0.5$  NM may be assumed.

Positioning data from other types of navigation sensors may be integrated with the GNSS data provided it does not cause position errors to exceed the Total System Error (TSE) budget, otherwise a means must be provided to deselect the other navigation sensor types.

Note: The horizontal positioning error component of TSE is assumed to be equal to the 2D navigation accuracy of systems/sensors qualified to AC20-138, 20-138A, and 20-130A

An acceptable means of complying with these accuracy requirements is to have an RNAV system approved for RNAV approaches in accordance with 2D navigation accuracy criteria of FAA AC 20-138, AC 20-138A or AC 20-130A.

#### 6.3.2 Vertical accuracy for APV BARO-VNAV operation.

- a) Altimetry System Error (ASE)

Altimetry system performance is demonstrated separately from the APV BARO-VNAV certification through the static pressure system certification process. With such approval (e.g. CS 25.1325), each system must be designed and installed so that the error in indicated pressure altitude, at sea-level, with a standard atmosphere, excluding instrument calibration error, does not result in an error of more than  $\pm 9$  m ( $\pm 30$  ft) per 185 km/hr (100 knots) speed for the appropriate configuration in the speed range between 1.23 VSR0 with wing-flaps extended and 1.7 VSR1 with wing-flaps retracted. However, the error need not be less than  $\pm 9$  m ( $\pm 30$  ft).

Altimetry systems meeting such a requirement will satisfy the Altimetry System Error (ASE) requirements for APV BARO-VNAV operation. No further demonstration or compliance is necessary.

Note 1: Altimetry Error refers to the electrical output and includes all errors attributable to the aircraft altimetry installation including position effects resulting from normal aircraft flight attitudes. In high performance aircraft, it is expected that altimetry correction will be provided. Such correction should be done automatically. In lower performance aircraft, upgrading of the altimetry system may be necessary.

Note 2: Positioning data from other sources may be integrated with the barometric altitude information provided it does not cause position errors exceeding the vertical accuracy requirement.

b) VNAV Equipment Error

The error of the airborne VNAV equipment (excluding altimetry, horizontal coupling and flight technical error) on a 99.7 per cent probability basis should be demonstrated to be less than:

	Descent Along Specified Vertical Profile (angle) (ft)
At or below 5000 ft (MSL)	100
5000 ft to 10000 ft (MSL)	150
10000 ft to 15000 ft (MSL)	220

Note 1: VNAV Equipment Error is the error associated to the vertical path computation. It includes path definition error (PDE) and approximation made by the VNAV equipment for the vertical path construction if any.

c) Horizontal Coupling Error

The Horizontal coupling error (vertical error component of along track positioning error) is a function of the horizontal NSE (see 6.3.1) and is directly reflected in the along track tolerance offset used in APV BARO-VNAV procedure design criteria.

This Horizontal Coupling error in this context is assumed to be 24 ft on a 99.7 per cent probability basis using a longitudinal positioning accuracy of 0.05 NM at 95% and a vertical path of 3°.

Note: For straight approaches, it is assumed that longitudinal accuracy does not include an FTE component. An arbitrary TSE (based on NSE) of 0.2NM is applied instead of 0.3NM.

d) Vertical Flight Technical Error (FTE)

The vertical FTE on a 99.7 per cent probability basis should be demonstrated to be less than

	Descent Along Specified Vertical Profile (angle)(ft)
At or below 5000 ft (MSL)	150
5000 ft to 10000 ft (MSL)	150
10000 ft to 15000 ft (MSL)	150

Note 1: FTE performance requirements are more stringent compared with AC 20-129 and the ICAO PBN manual where 200 ft (at or below 5000 ft MSL) and 300 ft (from 5000 ft to 15000 ft MSL) are required.

Note 2: Use of a flight director or autopilot may be required to support such an FTE requirement.

e) Vertical Total System Error (TSE)

The Vertical Total System Error (using the Root Sum Square (RSS) of all errors components described above) on a 99.7 per cent probability basis is as follow:

	Altimeter System Error <sup>1</sup>	VNAV Equipment Error	Horizontal coupling Error	Flight Technical Error	Vertical Total System Error
At or below 5000 ft (MSL)	80 ft	100 ft	24 ft	150 ft	<b>199 ft</b>
5000 ft to 10000 ft MSL)	106 ft	150 ft	24 ft	150 ft	<b>238 ft</b>
10000 ft to 15000 ft MSL)	127 ft	220 ft	24 ft	150 ft	<b>296 ft</b>

Note 1: If an installation results in larger Fight Technical Errors, the Total Vertical Error for the system should be determined by combining the demonstrated errors using the root sum square (RSS) method. The result should be less than the values listed.

Note 2: The manual monitoring of the altimeters to comply with the DA/DH is independent of the BARO-VNAV system and provides additional mitigation.

An acceptable means of complying with the above accuracy requirements is to have the VNAV system approved for RNAV approaches in accordance with FAA AC 20-129 and to provide evidence that the FTE, or VTSE, or operation procedures to bound the FTE are within the required limits.

f) Vertical Path Error at FAP due to the vertical fly-by transition

Error due to the capture of the vertical path starting from the FAP altitude should be limited. This momentary deviation below the published minimum procedure altitude at the FAP is acceptable provided the deviation is limited to no more than 50 feet (assuming no VNAV equipment error).

Note: ED-75 B paragraphs 1.5.7.2 and 3.2.8.5 provides guidance regarding the VNAV path transitions and, in particular, the vertical fly-by transition

<sup>1</sup> The ASE value has been computed using the following formula:

$$ASE (ft) = -8.8 \cdot 10^{-8} \times (h+\Delta h)^2 + 6.5 \cdot 10^{-3} \times (h+\Delta h) + 50$$

where h is the height of the local altimetry reporting station and Δh is the height of the aircraft above the reporting station.

## 6.4 Integrity

During operations on instrument approach procedures, the probability of displaying misleading navigational or positional information to the flight crew during the approach, including the final segment, shall be remote.

In the horizontal plane and during operations on the initial, intermediate segment and for the RNAV missed approach of an RNP APCH, the system, or the system and pilot in combination, shall provide an alert if the accuracy requirement is not met, or if the probability that the lateral TSE exceeds 2 NM is greater than  $10^{-5}$ . During operations on the final approach segment of an RNP APCH, the system, or the system and pilot in combination, shall provide an alert if the accuracy requirement is not met, or if the probability that the lateral TSE exceeds 0.6 NM is greater than  $10^{-5}$ .

For APV BARO-VNAV operation, in the vertical plane the integrity is relying on system development assurance, crew procedures and use of airborne systems independent from the VNAV computer system (e.g. primary altimeter system). The integrity requirement is satisfied by applying appropriate quantitative numerical methods, qualitative operational and procedural considerations and mitigations. The airborne VNAV system must be designed in accordance with the major failure condition regarding the computation of an erroneous vertical guidance. Two independent altimetry systems (sources and displays) must be operational and crew must cross-check the displayed altitude during the approach and, in particular, when determining the Decision Altitude (DA). Operator procedures and crew training should highlight the importance of having the current altimeter setting for the selected instrument procedure and runway and the respect of temperature limitation if the VNAV system does not compensate automatically.

Note 1: An airborne safety objective of Remote recognises that not only is the navigation system design evaluated consistent with known industry and regulatory system safety assessment views, but is now augmented with a comprehensive assessment of system performance assurance, system features/functions, human interface, flight crew procedures, maintenance and training, that is unique for RNP. The result is that the safety assurance provided greatly exceeds that of conventional navigation systems.

Note 2: An airborne objective of Remote is applicable to an instrument approach in particular on the final segment, i.e. from the FAF down to the runway. It is possible to satisfy this objective when considering the RNP system's unique requirements for RNP monitoring and integrity alerting, situational awareness information, error checking via the human machine interface and cockpit displays of independent flight information. Furthermore, the pilot should respect all vertical constraints associated to the procedure (start of descent, step-down fix,...) in order to respect obstacle clearance.

Note 3: The probability to fail to detect a GPS-induced position error larger than 0.3 NM is less than  $10^{-7}/Fh$  if the receiver is compliant with ETSO-C129( )/TSO-C129( ), ETSO-C145/TSO-C145a or ETSO-C146/TSO-C146a. This  $10^{-7}/Fh$  criterion is the combined probability of the missed detection probability (less than or equal to  $10^{-3}/Fh$ ) and the probability of receiving an erroneous satellite signal (less than or equal to  $10^{-4}/Fh$ ).

Note 4: Traditionally, this requirement has not specifically addressed the airborne system operational software or airborne system databases (e.g. navigation database). However, it is expected that where the RNAV airborne software has been previously shown compliant with the criteria of as a minimum Level C in the industry documents referred to in the latest edition of AMC 20-115, it is acceptable for the operations associated with this AMC.

Note 5: Probability terms are defined in CS AMC 25.1309, AC 23.1309-1() AC 27-1B or AC 29-2C.

Note 6: For RNP APCH operation, the on-board monitoring and alerting function is provided through the use of ABAS (RAIM or an equivalent algorithm) in conjunction with crew monitoring of the FTE.

Note 7: For aircraft and systems approved for RNP AR operations, per [AMC 20-26](#), the crew alerting based upon RNP is an acceptable alternative.

## **6.5 Continuity of function**

It shall be demonstrated that:

- (a) The probability of loss of all navigation information is Remote.
- (b) The probability of non-restorable loss of all navigation and communication functions is Extremely Improbable.

Loss of the RNP APCH functions with or without BARO-VNAV guidance is considered a minor failure condition if the operator can revert to a different navigation system and proceed to a suitable airport. For RNP APCH operations at least one RNAV system is required.

Note 1: From an operational point of view, the operator should develop contingency procedure for the loss of the RNP APCH capability during the approach.

Note 2: Probability terms are defined in CS AMC 25.1309, AC 23.1309-1() AC 27-1B or AC 29-2C.

## **7. FUNCTIONAL CRITERIA**

### **7.1 Required Function for RNP APCH**

Item	Functional Description
1	<p>Navigation data, including a to/from indication and a failure indicator, must be displayed on a lateral deviation display (CDI, (E)HSI) and/or a navigation map display. These must be used as primary flight instruments for the navigation of the aircraft, for manoeuvre anticipation and for failure/status/integrity indication. They must meet the following requirements:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) The displays must be visible to the pilot and located in the primary field of view (<math>\pm 15</math> degrees from pilot's normal line of sight) when looking forward along the flight path.</li> <li>2) The lateral deviation display scaling must agree with any alerting and annunciation limits, if implemented.</li> <li>3) The lateral deviation display must also have a full-scale deflection suitable for the current phase of flight and must be based on the required total system accuracy. For installations having a lateral deviation display, its full-scale deflection must be suitable for the phase of flight and based on the required track-keeping accuracy. Scaling is <math>\pm 1</math> NM for the initial and intermediate segments and <math>\pm 0.3</math> NM for the final segment.</li> <li>4) The display scaling may be set automatically by default logic or set to a value obtained from a navigation database. The full-scale deflection value must be known or made available for display to the flight crew.</li> </ol> <p>Enhanced navigation display (e.g. electronic map display or enhanced EHSI) to improve lateral situational awareness, navigation monitoring and approach (flight plan) verification could become mandatory if the RNAV installation does not support the display of information necessary for the accomplishment of these crew tasks.</p>
2	<p>Capability to continuously display, to the pilot flying, the RNAV computed desired path (DTK), and the aircraft position relative to the path (XTK), on the primary flight instruments for navigation of the aircraft.</p> <p>Note: Where the minimum flight crew is two pilots, it shall be possible for the pilot not flying to verify the desired path and the aircraft position relative to the path.</p>
3	<p>A navigation database, containing current navigation data officially promulgated for civil aviation;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) which can be updated in accordance with the AIRAC cycle and</li> <li>b) from which approach procedures can be retrieved in their entirety and loaded into the RNAV system.</li> </ol> <p>The resolution to which the data is stored must be sufficient to ensure that the assumption of no path definition error is satisfied.</p> <p>The database shall be protected against flight crew modification of the stored data.</p> <p>Note: When a procedure is loaded from the database, the RNAV system is required to fly it as published. This does not preclude the flight crew from having the means to modify a procedure or route already loaded into the RNAV/GNSS system as permitted by paragraph 10. However, the procedure stored in the database must not be modified and must remain intact within the database for future use and reference.</p>
4	Means to display the validity period of the navigation database to the flight crew.
5	Means to retrieve and display data stored in the navigation database relating to individual waypoints and navigation aids, to enable the flight crew to verify the procedure to be flown.
6	Capacity to load from the database into the RNAV system the whole approach procedure to be flown.
7	Display of the identification of the active (To) waypoint, either in the pilot's primary field of view, or on a readily accessible page on the RNAV CDU, readily visible to the flight crew.
8	Display of distance and bearing to the active (To) waypoint in the pilot's primary field of view. Where impracticable, the data may be displayed on a readily accessible page on the RNAV CDU, readily visible to the flight crew.

Item	Functional Description
9	Display of distance between flight plan waypoints. The navigation system must provide the ability to display the distance between flight plan waypoints.
10	Display of distance from present position to any selected waypoint. The navigation system must provide the ability to display the distance to any waypoint selected by the flight crew. Such selection should not impact the active flight plan.
11	Display of ground speed or time to the active (To) waypoint, either in the pilot's primary field of view, or on a readily accessible page on the RNAV CDU, readily visible to the flight crew.
12	Capability for the "Direct to" function.
13	Capability for automatic leg sequencing with display of sequencing to the flight crew.
14	Capability to execute database procedures including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) fly-over and</li> <li>b) fly-by turns.</li> </ul>
15	Capability to execute leg transitions and maintain tracks consistent with the following ARINC 424 path terminators (automatic capability), or their equivalent: Initial Fix (IF), Track to Fix (TF), Direct to Fix (DF) Note: Path terminators are defined in ARINC Specification 424, and their application is described in more detail in documents PANS-OPS, EUROCAE ED-75()/RTCA DO-236(), ED-77/RTCA DO-201A, and EUROCONTROL Document NAV.ET1.ST10.
16	Capability to automatically execute leg transitions consistent with ARINC 424 FA path terminators, or the RNAV system must permit the pilot to fly a course and turn at a designated altitude. If manual intervention is necessary to turn at the designated altitude, the associated crew workload shall be assessed
17	Indication of the RNAV system failure leading to the loss of navigation function in the pilot's primary field of view (e.g. by means of a navigation warning flag on the navigation display).
18	Indication of the Loss Of Integrity (LOI) function (e.g. loss of RAIM) in the pilot's normal field of view (e.g. by means of an appropriately located annunciator). Note: Systems providing RNP alerts that reflect loss of GNSS integrity are considered acceptable.
19	Capability for the accomplishment of holding patterns and procedure turns. Activation of this function shall at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Change automatic waypoint sequencing to manual.</li> <li>b) Permit the pilot to readily designate a waypoint and select a desired course (by means of a numerical keypad entry, HSI course pointer, CDI omni-bearing selector, etc.) to or from the designated waypoint (TO/FROM mode operation is acceptable).</li> <li>c) Retain all subsequent waypoints in the active flight plan in the same sequence.</li> <li>d) Permit the pilot to readily return to automatic waypoint sequencing at any time prior to the designated fix ("TO" waypoint) and continue with the existing flight plan.</li> </ul>

## 7.2 Additional required function for APV BARO-VNAV operation

In addition to the required function specified in paragraph 7.1, the system shall meet the following requirements:

Item	Functional Description																				
1	<p>APV BARO-VNAV deviation must be displayed on a vertical deviation display (HSI, EHSI, VDI). This display must be used as primary flight instruments for the approach. The display must be visible to the pilot and located in the primary field of view (<math>\pm 15</math> degrees from pilot's normal line of sight) when looking forward along the flight path.</p> <p>The deviation display shall have a suitable full-scale deflection based on the required vertical track error.</p> <p>The non-numeric display must allow the flight crew to readily distinguish if the vertical deviation exceeds <math>\pm 75</math> feet.</p> <p>If the non-numeric display does not permit the flight crew to readily distinguish excessive vertical deviations, the approach must be conducted with the flight director and/or the autopilot and a numeric display should allow the pilot to readily distinguish if the vertical deviation exceeds <math>\pm 75</math> feet</p>																				
2	<p>Capability to continuously display, to the pilot flying, the vertical deviation relative to the Final approach segment on the primary flight instruments for navigation of the aircraft.</p> <p>Note: Where the minimum flight crew is two pilots, a means for the pilot not flying to verify the desired path and the aircraft position relative to the path shall be provided.</p>																				
3	<p>The navigation system must be capable of defining a vertical path in accordance with the published vertical path.</p> <p>Note: The VNAV equipment error budget (see 6.3.2.b) includes the path approximation error.</p>																				
4	<p>User Interface (Displays and Control)</p> <p>The display readout and entry resolution for vertical navigation information shall be as follow:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="background-color: #cccccc;">Parameter</th> <th style="background-color: #cccccc;">Display resolution</th> <th style="background-color: #cccccc;">Entry resolution</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Altitude</td> <td>Above altitude transition level</td> <td>Flight Level</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Below altitude transition level</td> <td>1 foot</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Vertical Path Deviation</td> <td>10 feet</td> <td>Not applicable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Flight Path Angle</td> <td>0.1 degree (*)</td> <td>0.1 degree</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Temperature</td> <td>1 degree</td> <td>1 degree</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">(*) A Display resolution of 0.01 degree is recommended</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter	Display resolution	Entry resolution	Altitude	Above altitude transition level	Flight Level	Below altitude transition level	1 foot	Vertical Path Deviation	10 feet	Not applicable	Flight Path Angle	0.1 degree (*)	0.1 degree	Temperature	1 degree	1 degree	(*) A Display resolution of 0.01 degree is recommended		
Parameter	Display resolution	Entry resolution																			
Altitude	Above altitude transition level	Flight Level																			
	Below altitude transition level	1 foot																			
Vertical Path Deviation	10 feet	Not applicable																			
Flight Path Angle	0.1 degree (*)	0.1 degree																			
Temperature	1 degree	1 degree																			
(*) A Display resolution of 0.01 degree is recommended																					
5	<p>The navigation database must contain all the necessary data/information to fly the published APV BARO-VNAV approach. The navigation database must contain the waypoints and associated vertical information (e.g. VPA) for the procedure.</p> <p>Vertical Constraints associated with published procedures must be automatically extracted from the navigation database upon selecting the approach procedure.</p>																				
6	<p>Indication of loss of navigation (e.g. system failure) in the pilot's primary field of view by means of a navigation warning flag or equivalent indicator on the vertical navigation display.</p>																				
7	<p>The aircraft must display barometric altitude from two independent altimetry sources, one in each pilots' primary field of view. When single pilot operation is permitted, the two displays must be visible from the pilot position.</p>																				

### 7.3 Recommended Function for RNP APCH

Item	Functional Description
1	Capability, following ATC instructions, to immediately provide horizontal track deviation indications relative to the extended final approach segment, in order to facilitate the interception of this extended final approach segment from a radar vector.
2	Course selector of the deviation display automatically slaved to the RNAV computed path. Note: Systems with electronic map display in the pilot's primary field of view having a depiction of the active route are sufficient.

### 7.4 Recommended Function for APV BARO-VNAV operation

Item	Functional Description
1	Temperature compensation: Capability to automatically adjust the vertical flight path for temperature effects. The equipment should provide the capability for entry of altimeter source temperature to compute temperature compensation for the vertical flight path angle. The system should provide clear and distinct indication to the flight crew of this compensation/adjustment.
2	Capability to automatically intercept the vertical path at FAP using a vertical fly by technique. Note: Vertical Fly By performance is described in ED-75 B paragraphs 1.5.7.2 and 3.2.8.5

## 8. AIRWORTHINESS COMPLIANCE

### 8.1 General

This section details a means of airworthiness compliance for new or modified installations (Para 8.2) and for existing installations (Para 8.3). It also details specific points that should be considered during these approval processes (Para 8.4).

Relevant documentation demonstrating airworthiness compliance should be available to establish that the aircraft is equipped with an RNAV systems meeting RNP APCH requirements without or with vertical guidance (APV BARO-VNAV).

### 8.2 New or Modified Installations

In demonstrating compliance with this AMC, the following specific points should be noted:

The applicant will need to submit to the Agency a compliance statement which shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied. The statement should be based on a plan, agreed by the Agency at an early stage of the implementation programme. The plan should identify the certification data to be submitted which should include, as appropriate, a system description together with evidence resulting from the activities defined in the following paragraphs.

Compliance with the airworthiness requirements for intended function and safety may be demonstrated by equipment qualification, system safety analysis, confirmation of appropriate software design assurance level (i.e. consistent with paragraph 6.4), performance analyses, and a combination of ground and flight tests. To support the approval application, design data will need to be submitted showing that the objectives and criteria of Sections 6 and 7 of this AMC have been satisfied.

Use of the RNAV systems and the manner of presentation of lateral and vertical (if provided) guidance information on the flight deck should be evaluated to show that the risk of flight crew error has been minimised.

### 8.2.1 Specific Installation criteria

The following points need to be taken into consideration during the airworthiness approval process.

- a) Where other conventional navigation systems, apart from the RNAV system, provide display and/or guidance to a flight director/Autopilot, means should be provided for:
  - a navigation system source selector as the only means of selection;
  - clear annunciation of the selected navigation system on or near the navigation display;
  - display of guidance information appropriate to the selected navigation system; and
  - delivery of guidance information to a flight director/autopilot appropriate to the selected navigation system.
- b) Annunciation for flight director, autopilot and selected navigation system should be consistent, and compatible with the original design philosophy of the cockpit.
- c) Loss of navigation capability should be indicated to the flight crew.
- d) Equipment failure scenarios involving conventional navigation systems and the RNAV system(s) should be evaluated to demonstrate that:
  - adequate alternative means of navigation are available following failure of the RNAV system; and
  - reversionary switching arrangements, e.g. VOR/GPS#2 on HSI#1, do not lead to misleading or unsafe display configurations.

The evaluation should consider also the probability of failures within the switching arrangements.

- e) If barometric altitude input is used by the RNAV system (e.g. Baro aiding for RAIM function), loss of altitude information should be indicated by the RNAV system.
- f) The coupling arrangements between the RNAV system and the flight director/automatic pilot should be evaluated to show compatibility and to demonstrate that operating modes, including RNAV system failures modes, are clearly and unambiguously indicated to the flight crew.
- g) The use of the RNAV system and the manner of presentation of lateral and vertical (if provided) guidance information on the flight deck should be evaluated to show that the risk of flight crew error has been minimised. The crew should be aware, at any time, of the system used for navigation.
- h) The installation configuration features provided by the RNAV system which affect airworthiness approval or operational criteria, such as: external CDI selection; external CDI calibration; entering of GPS antenna height above ground; serial Input/Output port configuration; reference datum, should not be selectable by the pilot. Instructions on how to configure the RNAV system for the particular installation should be listed in the appropriate manual.

- i) Controls, displays, operating characteristics and pilot interface to RNAV system should be assessed in relation to flight crew workload, particularly in the approach environment. Essential design considerations include:
- Minimising reliance on flight crew memory for any system operating procedure or task. Developing a clear and unambiguous display of system modes/sub-modes and navigational data with emphasis on enhanced situational awareness requirements for any automatic mode changes, if provided.
  - Use of context sensitive helps capability and error messages (for example, invalid inputs or invalid data entry messages should provide a simple means to determine how to enter “valid” data).
  - Placing particular emphasis on the number of steps and minimising the time required to accomplish flight plan modifications to accommodate ATS clearances, holding procedures, runway and instrument approach changes, missed approaches and diversions to alternate destinations.
  - Minimising the number of nuisance alerts so the flight crew will recognise and react appropriately when required.

### **8.3 Existing Installations**

Aircraft that are approved for RNP AR APCH operations are considered compliant with this AMC.

An existing statement in the AFM that indicates the aircraft is approved:

- to perform RNP 0.3 GNSS approaches or,
- for instrument approaches including a specification of RNP GNSS capability that meets RNP 0.3

is considered acceptable for lateral performance.

If this is not the case, the applicant will need to submit to the Agency a compliance statement which shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied for existing installations. Compliance may be established by inspection of the installed system to confirm the availability of required features and functionality. The performance and integrity criteria of Sections 6 and 7 may be confirmed by reference to statements in the Aircraft Flight Manual or to other applicable approvals and supporting certification data. In the absence of such evidence, supplementary analyses and/or tests may be required.

To avoid unnecessary regulatory activity, the determination of eligibility for existing systems should consider acceptance of manufacturer documentation. In this specific case, an AFM amendment is recommended to reflect the RNP APCH aircraft capability. The addition of this aircraft capability in the AFM without any technical modification applied to the aircraft could be considered as a Minor change by the Agency.

### **8.4 Specific Installation assessment**

#### **8.4.1 Lateral and vertical Fly-By transition mechanism**

The applicant should demonstrate that the turn indication during lateral fly-by transitions is accurate enough to keep the aircraft within the theoretical transition area as described in ED-75 B paragraph 3.2.5.4. Lateral Fly-by transition assessment

should be evaluated in manual and in autopilot mode. If the equipment provides positive course guidance through the turn (during the fly-by transition), then no specific flight test is required.

The applicant should demonstrate that the vertical indication during vertical fly-by transitions is accurate enough to keep the aircraft within the profile described in ED-75 B paragraph 3.2.8.5. Vertical Fly-by transition assessment should be evaluated in manual and in autopilot mode. It is recalled that momentary deviation below the published minimum procedure altitude at the FAP is acceptable provided the deviation is limited to no more than 50 feet assuming no VNAV equipment error.

#### 8.4.2 Enhanced navigation displays

It is recognised that enhanced navigation display (such as IFR approved electronic moving map or enhanced EHSI) improves crew lateral situational awareness and navigation monitoring. It is strongly recommended that the RNAV installation incorporates an IFR approved moving map display. This may be a stand-alone display or may be integrated within the aircraft electronic displays system or directly integrated within the GNSS stand-alone receiver. For certain cases an enhanced navigation display is required (see Para 7.1 Item 1).

The graphical map display should incorporate at least the active flight plan, map ranges consistent with the flight operation, available navigation aids, and airports. Design and installation of enhanced navigation display should be approved during the approval process; in particular the evaluation of the man-machine interface (colour, symbol, cluttering aspect, display location, display size, etc.).

Enhanced navigational display is considered an essential function for the crew to verify the approach procedure loaded from the navigational database. This display is also a key element for the navigation crew monitoring (e.g. flight plan progress).

#### 8.4.3 Intermixing of equipment

Simultaneous use of RNAV systems with different crew interfaces can be very confusing and can lead to problems when they have conflicting methods of operation and conflicting display formats. For approach operations, simultaneous use of RNAV equipment which is not identical or compatible is not permitted.

### 9. AIRCRAFT FLIGHT MANUAL/PILOT OPERATING HANDBOOK

For new or modified aircraft, the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or the Pilot's Operating Handbook (POH), whichever is applicable, should provide at least the following information:

- a) A statement which identifies the equipment and aircraft build or modification standard certificated for RNP APCH operation with or without vertical guidance (APV BARO-VNAV). This may include a very brief description of the RNAV/GNSS system, including the RNAV/GNSS airborne equipment software version, CDI/HSI equipment and installation and a statement that it is suitable for RNAV operations. A brief introduction to the RNAV(GNSS) approach concept using ICAO RNP APCH terminology may also be included.
- b) Appropriate amendments or supplements to cover RNP APCH approach operations in the following sections:
  - Limitations – including use of VNAV, FD and AP; currency of navigation database; crew verification of navigation data; availability of RAIM or equivalent function; restrictions on use of GNSS for conventional Non Precision Approaches.

- Normal Procedures
- Abnormal Procedures – including actions in response to a Loss of Integrity (e.g. ‘RAIM Position Warning’, (or equivalent) message or a ‘RAIM not available’, (or equivalent) message).

Note: This limited set assumes that a detailed description of the installed system and related operating instructions and procedures are available in other approved operational or training manuals.

## 10. RNP APCH OPERATIONAL CRITERIA

This section describes acceptable operational criteria for approach operations, subject to the limitations given below. The operational criteria assume that the corresponding installation/airworthiness approval has been granted by the Agency.

Operational criteria apply to the use of the RNAV system for RNP APCH operations on any aircraft operated under IFR in accordance with EU legislation or the applicable operational regulations in the fields for which the EU legislation has not yet been established.

Operations of the RNAV systems should be in accordance with the AFM or AFM supplement. The operational procedures to be addressed by the operator are detailed in [Appendix 4](#). The (Master) Minimum Equipment List (MMEL/MEL) should be amended to identify the minimum equipment necessary to satisfy operations using the RNAV system.

The operator should determine the operational characteristics of the procedure to be flown. It is recommended that the process described in paragraph 10.3 and [Appendix 2](#) of this AMC should be followed to validate its operational use by the crew.

Depending on the aircraft capability and the approach procedure, RNP APCH procedures may be conducted with lateral (LNAV), lateral/vertical (LNAV/VNAV) or equivalent mode engaged, and coupling with either a flight director or autopilot.

Prior to the operation, the operator needs to be authorised by his/her competent authority for such operations.

### 10.1 Flight Operations Documentation

The relevant parts and sections of the Operations Manual (e.g., Aircraft Operations Manual, check lists, training of crew) should be revised to take account of the operating procedures detailed in this section and, in particular those in [Appendix 4](#). The operator should make timely amendments to the Operations Manual to reflect relevant RNP APCH procedure without or with vertical guidance (APV BARO-VNAV) and database checking strategies. Manuals and check lists need to be submitted for review by the responsible authority as part of the authorisation process.

The aircraft operator should propose an amendment to the Minimum Equipment List (MEL) appropriate to RNP APCH operations.

### 10.2 Flight Crew Training

Each pilot should receive appropriate training, briefings and guidance material in order to safely conduct RNP APCH operations without or with vertical guidance (APV BARO-VNAV). This material and training should cover both normal and abnormal procedures. Standard training and checking, such as recurrent aeroplane/STD training and proficiency checks, should include RNP APCH procedures. Based on this, the operator should determine what constitutes a qualified crew.

The operator should ensure that during line operations each pilot can perform assigned duties reliably and expeditiously for each procedure to be flown in:

- a) normal operations and
- b) abnormal operations

The operator should ensure that altimeter settings procedures and cold temperature limitations during APV BARO-VNAV operation are respected.

- a) Altimeter setting

Flight Crews should take precautions to switch altimeter settings at appropriate times or locations and request a current altimeter setting if the reported setting is not recent, particularly at times when pressure is reported or is expected to be rapidly decreasing. Remote (regional) altimeter settings are not allowed.

Note: The operational crosscheck between altimeter read-out and charted altitude values at FAF or other profile fixes does not protect against altimeter setting errors.

- b) Cold Temperature

When cold weather temperatures exist, the pilot should check the chart for the instrument approach procedure to determine the limiting temperature for the use of BARO-VNAV capability. If the airborne system contains a temperature compensation capability, manufacturer instructions should be followed for use of the BARO-VNAV function, and the operational use of the temperature compensation function must be authorised by the Air Navigation Service Provider.

A training programme should be structured to provide sufficient theoretical and practical training. An example of training syllabus is described in [Appendix 5](#).

### **10.3 Aerodrome competence and Operator verification**

Before planning a flight to an aerodrome (destination or alternate) with the intent to use an RNAV procedure contained in the Navigation Database, the operator should determine the operational characteristics of the procedure in accordance with EU OPS 1.975 or the applicable operational regulations. Further details are provided in [Appendix 2](#).

Based on this assessment, the appropriate information should be given to the crew. If the aerodrome access requires a specific competence, the designated crew shall have a validated competence.

Note: This AMC addresses only RNP APCH procedures which are designed with straight segment (e.g. T or Y approach). It is therefore anticipated that in most cases no specific competence should be required to fly such approach procedure.

### **10.4 Navigation Database Management**

10.4.1 Operator involved in the operation of aeroplanes for commercial air transportation

EU-OPS 1.873 for the management of navigation database applies.

10.4.2 Operator not involved in the operation of aeroplanes for commercial air transportation

The operators should not use a navigation database for RNP APCH operations unless the navigation database supplier holds a Type 2 Letter of Acceptance (LoA) or equivalent.

An EASA Type 2 LoA is issued by EASA in accordance with EASA OPINION Nr. 01/2005 on “The Acceptance of Navigation Database Suppliers” dated 14 Jan 05. The FAA issues a Type 2 LoA in accordance with AC 20-153, while Transport Canada (TCCA) issues an Acknowledgement Letter of an Aeronautical Data Process using the same basis. Both the FAA LoA and the TCCA Acknowledgement Letter are seen to be equivalent to the EASA LoA.

EUROCAE/RTCA document ED-76/DO-200A Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data contains guidance relating to the processes that the supplier may follow. The LoA demonstrates compliance with this standard.

#### 10.4.2.1 Non-approved Suppliers

If the operator’s supplier does not hold a Type 2 LoA or equivalent, the operator should not use the electronic navigation data products unless the Authority has approved the operator’s procedures for ensuring that the process applied and the delivered products have met equivalent standards of integrity. An acceptable methodology is described in [Appendix 3](#) of this AMC.

#### 10.4.2.3 Quality Monitoring

The operator should continue to monitor both the process and the products in accordance with the quality system required by the applicable operational regulations.

#### 10.4.2.4 Data Distribution

The operator should implement procedures that ensure timely distribution and insertion of current and unaltered electronic navigation data to all aircraft that require it.

### 10.5 Reportable Events

A reportable event is one that adversely affects the safety of the operation and may be caused by actions/events external to the operation of the aircraft navigation system. The operator should have in place a system for investigating such an event to determine if it is due to an improperly coded procedure, or a navigation data base error. Responsibility for initiating corrective action rests with the operator.

For those operators for whom approval is granted under EU OPS 1, the following events should be the subject of Occurrence Reports (see EU-OPS 1.420):

Technical defects and the exceeding of technical limitations, including:

- a) Significant navigation errors attributed to incorrect data or a data base coding error.
- b) Unexpected deviations in lateral/vertical flight path not caused by pilot input or erroneous operation of equipment.
- c) Significant misleading information without a failure warning.
- d) Total loss or multiple navigation equipment failure.

- e) Loss of integrity (e.g. RAIM) function whereas integrity was predicted to be available during the pre-flight planning.

## 11. AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS

JAA documents are available from the JAA publisher Information Handling Services (IHS). Information on prices, where and how to order is available on the JAA website and at [www.jaa.nl](http://www.jaa.nl).

EASA documents may be obtained from EASA (European Aviation Safety Agency), 101253, D-50452 Köln, Germany. Website: [www.easa.europa.eu](http://www.easa.europa.eu)

EUROCAE documents may be purchased from EUROCAE, 102 rue Etienne Dolet, 92240 MALAKOFF, France (Fax: 33 1 46 55 62 65). Website: <http://boutique.eurocae.net/catalog/>.

FAA documents may be obtained from Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325, USA. Website: <http://www.gpoaccess.gov/>.

RTCA documents may be obtained from RTCA Inc, 1828 L Street, NW., Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036, USA (Tel: 1 202 833 9339; Fax 1 202 833 9434). Website: [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org).

ICAO documents may be purchased from Document Sales Unit, International Civil Aviation Organisation, 999 University Street, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7, (Fax: 1 514 954 6769, e-mail: [sales\\_unit@icao.org](mailto:sales_unit@icao.org)) or through national agencies.

[Amdt 20/5]

[Amdt 20/10]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-27 Glossary

ED Decision 2009/019/R

The following are definitions of key terms used throughout this AMC.

**Aircraft-Based Augmentation System (ABAS):** An augmentation system that augments and/or integrates the information obtained from the other GNSS elements with information available on board the aircraft.

**APV (Approach Procedure with Vertical guidance):** An instrument approach procedure which utilises lateral and vertical guidance but does not meet the requirements established for precision approach and landing operations.

**Area navigation (RNAV):** A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of station-referenced navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these.

**Accuracy:** The degree of conformance between the estimated, measured, or desired position and/or the velocity of a platform at a given time, and its true position or velocity. Navigation performance accuracy is usually presented as a statistical measure of system error and is specified as predictable, repeatable and relative.

**ASE: (Altimetry System error):** Altimetry error refers to the electrical output and includes all errors attributable to the aircraft altimetry installation including position effects resulting from normal aircraft flight attitudes.

**Availability:** An indication of the ability of the system to provide usable service within the specified coverage area and is defined as the portion of time during which the system is to be used for navigation during which reliable navigation information is presented to the crew, automatic pilot, or other system managing the flight of the aircraft.

**BARO-VNAV: (Barometric Vertical NAVigation)** is a navigation system that presents to the pilot a computed vertical guidance based on barometric altitude.

**Basic GNSS operation:** Operation that are based on GNSS Aircraft Based Augmentation System (ABAS). An ABAS system is typically a GNSS receiver with fault detection compliant to E/TSO C 129a, E/TSO-C145() or E/TSO-C146().

**Continuity of Function:** The capability of the total system (comprising all elements necessary to maintain aircraft position within the defined airspace) to perform its function without non-scheduled interruptions during the intended operation.

**DA(H):** Decision altitude (DA) or Decision height (DH). A specified altitude or height in the precision approach or approach with vertical guidance at which a missed approach must be initiated if the required visual reference to continue the approach has not been established.

**FAP:** Final Approach Point.

**Fault Detection and Exclusion (FDE):** FDE is a receiver processing scheme that autonomously provides integrity monitoring for the position solution, using redundant range measurements. The FDE consist of two distinct parts: fault detection and fault exclusion. The fault detection part detects the presence of an unacceptably large position error for a given mode of flight. Upon the detection, fault exclusion follows and excludes the source of the unacceptably large position error, thereby allowing navigation to return to normal performance without an interruption in service.

**GNSS stand-alone receiver:** A GNSS system incorporating the GNSS sensor, the navigation capability and the navigation data base.

**GNSS sensor:** A GNSS system incorporating only the GNSS receiving and positioning part. It doesn't incorporate the navigation capability and the navigation data base.

**HCE (Horizontal Coupling Error):** The vertical error component of an along track positioning error

**Integrity:** The ability of a system to provide timely warnings to users when the system should not be used for navigation.

**MDA (H):** Minimum descent altitude (MDA) or minimum descent height (MDH). A specified altitude or height in a non-precision approach or circling approach, below which, descent should not be made without the required visual reference.

**NSE (Navigation System Error):** The difference between true position and estimated position

**OCA/H:** In a precision approach procedure (or APV), the OCA/H is defined as the lowest altitude/height at which a missed approach must be initiated to ensure compliance with the appropriate obstacle clearance design criteria.

**On board Monitoring and Alerting function:** This function is the main element which determines if the navigation system complies with the necessary safety level associated to a RNP application; it relates to both lateral and longitudinal navigation performance. On-board performance monitoring and alerting allows the flight crew to detect that the RNAV system is not achieving the navigation performance required. On-board performance monitoring and alerting is concerned with the monitoring of all type of errors which may affect the aircraft ability to follow the desired flight path.

**TCH:** Threshold Crossing Height. The height of the Glide Path above the threshold.

**TSE (Total System Error):** The difference between true position and desired position. This error is equal to the root sum square (RSS) of the Flight Technical Error (FTE), Path Definition Error (PDE), and Navigation System Error (NSE).

**PDE (Path Definition Error):** The difference between the defined path and the desired path.

**Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM):** A technique whereby a GNSS receiver/processor determines the integrity of the GNSS navigation signals using only GPS signals or GPS signals augmented with altitude. This determination is achieved by a consistency check among redundant pseudorange measurements. At least one satellite in addition to those required for navigation should be in view for the receiver to perform the RAIM function.

**RNAV System:** A navigation system which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of station-referenced navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these. A RNAV system may be included as part of a Flight Management System (FMS).

**RNAV (GNSS) approach:** A GNSS RNAV approach promulgated by a State and designed in accordance with PANS-OPS Criteria Doc 8168, Volume II, Part III, Section 1, Chapter 2 and Section 3, Chapter 3 (Basic GNSS). Such approach should be flown by using an airborne RNAV system approved for RNP APCH operations.

**SBAS:** Satellite Based Augmentation System. SBAS augments core satellite constellation by providing ranging, integrity and correction information via geostationary satellites. This system comprises a network of ground reference stations that observe satellites signals, and master stations that process observed data and generate SBAS messages for uplink to the geostationary satellites, which broadcast the SBAS message to the users.

**RNP APCH:** RNP AProaCH. A RNP approach defined in the ICAO Performance Based Manual (PBN) manual. An approach equivalent to the RNAV (GNSS) one.

**TSO-C129()/ ETSO- C129a GPS Class A equipment:** Equipment incorporating both the GNSS sensor and navigation capability. This equipment incorporates RAIM as defined by TSO/ETSO-C129( ).

**TSO-C129( )/ ETSO-C129 a GPS Class B and C equipment:** GNSS sensor providing GNSS data (position, integrity,..) to an integrated navigation system (e.g. FMS).

**TSO-C146( ) Class GAMMA:** This functional class corresponds to equipment consisting of both the GNSS/SBAS position sensor and a navigation function, so that the equipment provides path deviations relative to a selected path. The equipment provides the navigation function required of a stand-alone navigation system. This equipment also provides integrity in the absence of SBAS signal through the use of FDE. In addition, this class of equipment requires a data base, display outputs and pilot controls.

**TSO-C145( ) class BETA:** Equipment consisting of a GNSS/SBAS sensor that determines position (with integrity) and provides position and integrity to an integrated navigation system (e.g. flight management system, multi-sensor navigation system). This equipment also provides integrity in the absence of the SBAS signal through the use of fault detection and exclusion (FDE).

**TSO-C146( ) or TSO-C145( ) Operational Class 1:** This operational class supports oceanic and domestic en-route, terminal and non precision approach, and departure operation.

**TSO-C146( ) or TSO-C145( ) Operational Class 2:** This operational class supports oceanic and domestic en-route, terminal and non precision approach, LNAV/VNAV and departure operation.

**TSO-C146( ) or TSO-C145( ) Operational Class 3:** This operational class supports oceanic and domestic en-route, terminal and non precision approach, LNAV/VNAV, LPV and departure operation.

**“T” approach:** T approach is defined in ICAO document 8168 and in RTCA/EUROCAE DO 201A/ED 77.

“T” approach is composed of two initial approach segments perpendicular to the intermediate approach segment.

**Vertical Navigation:** A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on a vertical flight profile using altimetry sources, external flight path references, or a combination of these.

**VPA (Vertical Path Angle):** Angle of the published final approach descent.

**VTF:** Vector To Final.

**VSR:** Reference Stall Speed.

**“Y” approach:** Y approach is defined in ICAO document 8168 and in RTCA/EUROCAE DO 201A/ED 77.

“Y” approach is derived from the “T” approach but the initial segments are establishing at 70° to the intermediate segment rather than 90°.

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-27 Operational Characteristics of the Procedure and its Operational Use

*ED Decision 2009/019/R*

The operator should show evidence that consideration has been given to the evaluation of any new or modified RNP APCH procedures.

RNP APCH procedure should be designed using straight segments; the operator should check that the selected procedure fulfils this requirement.

Particular attention should be paid to procedures:

- in mountainous environments,
- within the proximity of well-known obstacles,
- that may require adequate knowledge for the aerodrome access or aerodrome competence qualification, as specified in EU-OPS 1.975 or the applicable operational requirements.

Competence may be required specifically for this RNAV procedure or the procedure may be published for an aerodrome already listed as requiring an aerodrome competence. This may be aircraft type related and subject to periodic revalidation.

- In the absence of radar coverage,
- When missed approach trajectory involve turns, especially at low altitudes,
- Subject to a declared exemption to the procedure design rules specified by the ICAO PANS OPS,
- Every other case considered necessary to be evaluated by the operator.

The operator may develop an internal process (e.g. filtering methods or tools covering the AIP review) to detect RNP APCH procedure(s) showing one or more of the above-listed characteristics.

The operational evaluation of a RNP APCH procedure showing evidence of the above-mentioned operational characteristics may include, at operator discretion, an approach conducted with the aircraft in VMC or the use of a full flight simulator (FFS) in order to evaluate if the procedure is correctly executed by the RNAV system and fly-able with the aircraft type.

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 3 to AMC 20-27 Alternate Navigation Database Integrity Check

*ED Decision 2009/019/R*

If operator's navigation data base supplier has no Type 2 LOA, the operator should develop and describe a method to demonstrate an acceptable level of integrity of the navigation data base content used by the RNAV system on board the aircraft.

The operator should implement navigation data base integrity checks for all RNP APCH procedures they wish to operate, using manual verification procedures or appropriate software tools, at each AIRAC Cycle.

The objective of this integrity check is to identify any significant discrepancies between the published charts/procedures and the navigation database content.

Integrity checks may be conducted by a designated third party, under the operator responsibility.

### 1 Elements to be verified

At least the following elements of an RNP APCH should be verified:

- Coordinates/location verification of IAF, IF, FAF, MAPt, and other waypoints between IAF and MAPt (if any)
- Tracks between these waypoints
- Distance between these waypoints
- Vertical path angle (for APV BARO-VNAV operation)

### 2 Means to verify those elements

#### 2.1 The Operator verification process

The operator should, at the very least, verify the information listed in paragraph 1 of this Appendix, by comparison with the official published data.

As the data may evolve at each AIRAC Cycle, this verification should be done at every AIRAC cycle using comparison with source documents or a reference data base (gold standard).

The operator should describe the method used to verify the navigation data base integrity which can be based on a:

- a) manual method, with or without software support, whereby the airborne data base is compared with the original published data, or
- b) recurrent method with a reference database, whereby any changes identified between the latest data base and the reference data base are checked against the original published data. Once the latest data base has been verified, it becomes the reference data base for the next AIRAC cycle.

The recurrent method relies on the integrity of the initial data base, and requires that the check of every RNP APCH procedure has been properly conducted and validated at the very first time. It also relies on the assumption that every change in the data base is properly identified and checked. It is recommended that software tools are used to compare the contents of one (N) AIRAC cycle data base with the contents of the previous (N-1) AIRAC cycle data base.

Whatever the method, data to be checked must come from the final source to be loaded on the aircraft.

## 2.2 The means to enable this verification

In many cases, the RNAV system and an enhanced navigation display are necessary to access the data (on the aircraft or on a flight simulator).

An RNAV system comparable to the one installed on the aircraft (i.e. using the same algorithms) may also be used, as well as appropriate simulation software tools. The RNAV system manufacturer should be consulted on the adequacy of specific software for this purpose.

Data may also be acquired through a tool able of unpacking the data encoded on the files (e.g. decompactor) developed by the RNAV system manufacturer.

Whatever software tool is used, it should be validated for its intended use by the operator.

## 3 Feed back and reporting errors found

In case of errors found, the operator should take appropriate actions.

In particular, significant errors (i.e. those that would affect the flight path of the aircraft) should be reported to the database supplier and the competent authority and affected procedures should be prohibited by a company instruction or NOTAM.

Note: Integrity checks could be conducted for several operators by a same designated third party. In this case, it is strongly recommended that any problem recorded by this third party be reported to all its client operators.

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 4 to AMC 20-27 Operational Procedures

ED Decision 2009/019/R

This Appendix should be used by the operator to amend the relevant parts and sections of the Operations Manual as described in 10.1 to support these types of operations.

### 1 Normal Procedures

#### 1.1 Pre-flight Planning

Operators and flight crew intending to conduct operations on RNP APCH procedures must file the appropriate flight plan suffixes. The on-board navigation data must be current and must include the appropriate procedures.

In addition to the normal pre-flight planning, the following additional checks must be carried out:

- a) The instrument approach chart should clearly identify the RNP APCH operation as RNAV<sub>(GNSS)</sub> or equivalent (e.g.: RNAV<sub>(GNSS)</sub> RWY 27,...). The operator should determine in accordance with the promulgated OCA(H) and the operational requirement (e.g. EU-OPS 1.430) the Minimum Descent Altitude/Height (MDA(H)) for LNAV approaches or the Decision Altitude/Height (DA(H)) for APV BARO-VNAV operation.
- b) Flight crew must ensure that RNP APCH procedures which may be used for the intended flight (including alternates aerodromes) are selectable from a valid navigation data base (current AIRAC cycle) and are not prohibited by a company instruction or NOTAM.

Flight crew could check approach procedures (including alternate aerodromes) as extracted by the system (e.g. CDU flight plan page) or presented graphically on the moving map, in order to confirm the correct loading and the reasonableness of the procedure content. The vertical path of the APV BARO-VNAV procedure could be checked as extracted from the navigation data base on the RNAV Man Machine Interface (e.g. MCDU).

If above verification is not satisfactory, the flight crew should not use the procedure, and not consider this approach(es) during the selection of aerodromes for the intended flight.

- c) Flight crew should ensure sufficient means are available to navigate and land at the destination or at an alternate aerodrome in the case of loss of RNP APCH airborne capability.

In particular, the pilot should check that:

- a non-RNP APCH procedure is available at the alternate, where a destination alternate is required
  - at least one non-RNP APCH procedure is available at the destination aerodrome, where a destination alternate is not required
- d) Operators and flight crews must take account of any NOTAMs or operator briefing material that could adversely affect the aircraft system operation, or the availability or suitability of the procedures at the airport of landing, or any alternate airport.

- e) If the missed approach procedures are based on conventional means (VOR, NDB), the appropriate airborne equipment required to fly this procedure must be installed in the aircraft and must be operational. The associated ground-based nav aids must also be operational.

If the missed approach procedure is based on RNAV (no conventional or dead reckoning missed approach available), the appropriate airborne equipment required to fly this procedure must be available and serviceable on board the aircraft.

- f) For those GNSS systems relying on RAIM, its availability 15 min before Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) until 15 min after ETA should be verified during the pre-flight planning. In the event of a predicted continuous loss of fault detection of more than five (5) minutes, the flight planning should be revised (e.g. delaying the departure or planning a different approach procedure).

Note 1: For certain systems, prediction is not systematic but is only required in specific cases and shall be detailed in the relevant section of the AFM

Note 2: RAIM availability prediction services may be provided to users by the air navigation service provider (ANSP), an avionics manufacturer or other entities.

- g) Any MEL restriction should be observed

## 1.2 Prior to Commencing the Procedure

In addition to normal procedure prior to commencing the approach (before the IAF and in compatibility with crew workload), the flight crew must verify the correctness of the loaded procedure by comparison with the appropriate approach charts. This check must include:

- a) The waypoint sequence.
- b) Reasonableness of the tracks and distances of the approach legs, and the accuracy of the inbound course and mileage of the final approach segment.

Note: As a minimum, this check could be a simple inspection of a suitable map display.

- c) The vertical path angle.

For multi-sensor systems, the crew must verify during the approach that GNSS sensor is used for position computation.

For an RNAV system with ABAS requiring barometric corrected altitude, the current airport barometric altimeter setting, should be input at the appropriate time, consistent with the performance of the flight operation.

For those GNSS systems relying on RAIM and necessitating a check of its availability for RNP APCH, the flight crew should perform a new RAIM availability check if ETA is more than 15 minutes different from the ETA used during the pre-flight planning. This check is also performed automatically for ETSO/TSO-C129a Class A1 receiver, 2 NM before the FAF.

Note: Systems providing RNP alerts that reflect loss of GNSS integrity are considered acceptable and no flight crew RAIM availability check is required.

For APV BARO-VNAV operation, the crew must confirm the correct altimeter setting. The procedure must only be flown with:

- a) a current local altimeter setting source available; and
- b) the QNH/QFE, as appropriate, set on the aircraft's altimeters.

Procedures using a remote (regional) altimeter setting source cannot support APV BARO-VNAV approach.

For APV BARO-VNAV operation, pilots are responsible for any necessary cold temperature compensations to all published minimum altitudes/heights. This includes:

- a) the altitudes/heights for the initial and intermediate segment(s);
- b) the DA/H; and
- c) subsequent missed approach altitudes/heights.

APV BARO-VNAV procedures are not permitted when the aerodrome temperature is below the promulgated minimum aerodrome temperature for the procedure, unless the RNAV system is equipped with approved cold temperature compensation for the final approach.

ATC tactical interventions in the terminal area may include radar headings, 'direct to' clearances which by-pass the initial legs of an approach, interceptions of an initial or intermediate segments of an approach or the insertion of additional waypoints loaded from the data base. In complying with ATC instructions, the flight crew should be aware of the implications for the RNAV system.

- a) The manual entry of coordinates into the RNAV system by the flight crew for operation within the terminal area is not permitted.
- b) 'Direct to' clearances may be accepted to the Intermediate Fix (IF) provided that the resulting track change at the IF does not exceed 45°.

Note: Direct to clearance to FAF is not acceptable. Modifying the procedure to intercept the final approach course prior to the FAF is acceptable for radar vectored arrivals or at other times with ATC approval.

The lateral and vertical (for APV BARO-VNAV operation) definition of the flight path between the FAF and the Missed Approach Point (MAPt) must not be revised by the flight-crew under any circumstances.

### 1.3 During the Procedure

The final approach trajectory must be intercepted no later than the FAF in order for the aircraft to be correctly established on the final approach course before starting the descent (to ensure terrain and obstacle clearance).

The crew must check the RNAV approach mode annunciator (or equivalent) is properly indicating approach-mode integrity 2 NM before the FAF.

Note: This will not apply for certain RNAV system (e.g. aircraft already approved with demonstrated RNP capability). For such systems, other means are available including electronic map displays, flight guidance mode indications, etc., which clearly indicate to the crew that the approach mode is activated.

For APV BARO-VNAV operation, the crew should check that the two altimeters provide equivalent altitude (difference of 100 feet max) at or before FAF. This check must be made after the crew has set the correct altimeter setting.

The crew should also check the consistency between the VNAV guidance and the primary altimeters indications commensurate with pilot workload (e.g. after the aircraft is established on the vertical path).

During the descent, crew should check that the vertical speed is consistent with the VNAV angle to be flown.

The appropriate displays must be selected so that the following information can be monitored:

- a) The RNAV computed desired path (DTK), and
- b) Aircraft position relative to the lateral path (Cross-Track Deviation) for FTE monitoring
- c) Aircraft position relative to the vertical path (for APV BARO-VNAV operation)

The crew should respect all published altitude and speed constraints.

The procedure must be discontinued:

- a) If RNAV failure is annunciated (e.g. warning flag),
- b) If the NSE alarm is triggered (e.g. RAIM alert),
- c) In case of loss of the NSE alerting function (e.g. RAIM loss),
- d) If lateral or vertical (if provided) FTE is excessive,
- e) If VNAV trajectory is not consistent with aircraft altimetry system information or vertical speed information.

Note: Discontinuing the procedure may not be necessary for a multi-sensor RNAV system that includes demonstrated RNP capability without GNSS. Manufacturer documentation should be examined to determine the extent the system may be used in such configuration.

The missed approach must be flown in accordance with the published procedure. Use of the RNAV system during the missed approach is acceptable provided:

- a) The RNAV system is operational (e.g. no loss of function, no RAIM alert, no failure indication, etc.).
- b) The whole procedure (including the missed approach) is loaded from the navigation data base.

During the RNP APCH procedure, pilots must use a lateral deviation indicator, flight director and/or autopilot in lateral navigation mode.

Pilots of aircraft with a lateral deviation indicator (e.g. CDI) must ensure that lateral deviation indicator scaling (full-scale deflection) is suitable for the navigation accuracy associated with the various segments of the procedure (i.e.,  $\pm 1.0$  nm for the Initial and Intermediate segments,  $\pm 0.3$  nm for the Final Approach segment, and  $\pm 1.0$  nm for the Missed Approach segment).

All pilots are expected to maintain procedure centrelines, as depicted by on board lateral deviation indicators and/or flight guidance during all the approach procedure unless authorised to deviate by ATC or under emergency conditions.

For normal operations, cross-track error/deviation (the difference between the RNAV system computed path and the aircraft position relative to the path) should be limited to  $\pm \frac{1}{2}$  the navigation accuracy associated with the procedure (i.e., 0.5 nm for the Initial and Intermediate segments, 0.15 nm for the Final Approach segment, and 0.5 nm for the Missed Approach segment).

Brief deviations from this standard (e.g. overshoots or undershoots) during and immediately after turns, up to a maximum of 1 times the navigation accuracy (i.e., 1.0 nm for the Initial and Intermediate segments), are allowable.

In addition, during APV BARO-VNAV procedures pilots must use a vertical deviation indicator, flight director and/or autopilot in vertical navigation mode.

Deviations above and below the vertical path must not exceed  $\pm 75$  feet. Pilots must execute a Missed Approach if the vertical deviation exceeds the criteria above, unless the pilot has in sight the visual references required to continue the approach.

In the event of failure of one RNAV system during a procedure where two systems are necessary, the crew should abort the procedure if the failure occurs before FAF but could continue the approach if the failure occurs after FAF.

Use of GNSS altitude information by the crew is prohibited.

## **2 Abnormal Procedures**

Abnormal procedures to address Cautions and Warnings resulting from the following conditions should be developed:

- a) Failure of the RNAV system components, including those affecting Flight Technical Error (e.g. failures of the flight director or automatic pilot).
- b) RAIM (or equivalent) alert or loss of integrity function.

In the event of communications failure, the flight crew should continue with the procedure in accordance with published lost communication procedures.

The flight crew should notify ATC of any problem with the RNAV system that results in the loss of the approach capability.

[Amdt 20/5]

## Appendix 5 to AMC 20-27 Flight Crew Training Syllabus

*ED Decision 2009/019/R*

The flight crew training programme should be structured to provide sufficient theoretical and practical training, using a simulator, training device, or line training in an aircraft, in the concept of RNP APCH operations without or with vertical guidance (APV BARO-VNAV) and the use of the aircraft's RNAV system in such operations to ensure that pilots are not just task-oriented. The following syllabus should be considered as minimum amendment to the training programme to support RNP APCH including APV BARO-VNAV operations:

Note: Operators who are already using procedures to fly other types of approaches, may receive appropriate credit for common training and procedural elements.

### **1 General RNAV concepts including:**

1. Theory of RNAV including differences between types of RNAV operations
2. Limitations of RNAV
3. Limitations of BARO-VNAV
4. Charting and database issues including:
  - i. Waypoint naming concepts
  - ii. Vertical path angle
  - iii. Fly-by and fly-over waypoints
5. Use of RNAV equipment including:
  - i. Verification and sensor management
  - ii. Tactically modifying the flight plan
  - iii. Addressing discontinuities
  - iv. Entering associated data such as:
    - Wind
    - Altitude/speed constraints
    - Vertical profile/vertical speed
6. Use of lateral navigation mode(s) and associated lateral control techniques
7. Use of vertical navigation mode(s) and associated vertical control techniques
8. R/T phraseology for RNAV operations
9. The implication for RNAV operations of systems malfunctions which are not RNAV related (e.g. hydraulic or engine failure)

### **2 RNP APCH concepts including:**

1. Definition of RNP APCH operations and its direct relationship with RNAV (GNSS) procedures.
2. Regulatory requirements for RNP APCH operations
3. Required navigation equipment for RNP APCH operations:
  - i. GPS concepts and characteristics

- ii. RNP/ANP requirements
- iii. RAIM
- iv. BARO-VNAV
- v. MEL
4. Procedure characteristics
  - i. Chart depiction
  - ii. Aircraft display depiction
  - iii. Minima
5. Retrieving a RNP APCH (or a RNAV(GNSS)) approach procedure from the data base
6. Procedure change at destination airport, change arrival airport and alternate airport
7. Flying the procedure:
  - i. Use of autopilot, auto throttle and flight director
  - ii. Flight Guidance (FG) mode behaviour
  - iii. Lateral and vertical path management
  - iv. Adherence to speed and/or altitude constraints
  - v. Fly direct to a waypoint
  - vi. Determine lateral and vertical-track error/deviation
  - vii. Fly interception of an initial or intermediate segment of an approach following ATC notification
  - viii. Where the RNAV system supports interception of the extended final approach segment then flight crew should be trained in use of the function.
  - ix. The use of other aircraft equipment to support track monitoring, weather and obstacle avoidance
  - x. Contingency procedures in case of lateral mode failure (LNAV) and/or vertical mode failure (VNAV)
8. For APV BARO-VNAV operation, a clear understanding of specific crew requirements:
  - i. for comparisons of VNAV guidance with primary altimeter information
  - ii. for altitude crosschecks between primary altimeters (e.g. altimetry comparisons of 100 feet),
  - iii. for temperature limitations on instrument procedures
  - iv. for altimeter settings in term of currency, accuracy and integrity.
9. The effect of temperature deviation and its compensation
10. ATC procedures
11. Abnormal procedures
12. Contingency procedures

[Amdt 20/5]

## AMC 20-28

### AMC 20-28 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria related to Area Navigation for Global Navigation Satellite System approach operation to Localiser Performance with Vertical guidance minima using Satellite Based Augmentation System

*ED Decision 2012/014/R*

This AMC provides an acceptable means that can be used to obtain airworthiness approval for an Area Navigation (RNAV) approach system based on Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) augmented by a Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS) in order to conduct approach operations to Localiser Performance with Vertical guidance (LPV) minima. This AMC also defines the operational criteria necessary to conduct safely such approach operations in designated European airspace.

#### 1. PURPOSE

This AMC provides an acceptable means that can be used to obtain airworthiness approval for an Area Navigation (RNAV) approach system based on Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) augmented by a Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS) in order to conduct approach operations to Localiser Performance with Vertical guidance (LPV) minima. This AMC also defines the operational criteria necessary to conduct safely such approach operations in designated European airspace.

An applicant may elect to use an alternative means of compliance. However, that means of compliance must meet the objectives of this AMC and be acceptable to the Agency and the competent authority. Compliance with this AMC is not mandatory. Use of the terms shall and must apply only to an applicant who elects to comply with this AMC in order to obtain airworthiness approval or to demonstrate compliance with the operational criteria.

#### 2. BACKGROUND

This document addresses and defines airworthiness and operational criteria related to an aircraft system based on GNSS augmented by SBAS in order to conduct RNAV GNSS approach operation to LPV minima. It addresses certification considerations of stand-alone and multi-sensor systems on board an aircraft, including their functional requirements, accuracy, integrity, continuity of function and limitations, together with operational considerations. Operational compliance with these requirements at the date of publication must be addressed through national operational regulations, however, following publication of the Commission regulation on "Air Operations" compliance with that regulation will be required and may require a specific operational approval.

RNAV GNSS approaches conducted down to LPV minima are characterised by a Final Approach Segment (FAS). A FAS is the approach path which is defined laterally by the Flight Path Alignment Point (FPAP) and Landing Threshold Point/Fictitious Threshold Point (LTP/FTP) and defined vertically by the Threshold Crossing Height (TCH) and Glide Path Angle (GPA). The FAS of such approaches may be intercepted by an approach transition (e.g. Precision Area Navigation (P-RNAV) or initial and intermediate segments of an RNP APCH approach) or through vectoring (e.g. interception of the extended FAS).

### 3. SCOPE

This AMC is to be used to show compliance with the applicable Certification Specifications and functional criteria as defined in paragraphs 4.1 and 7.1. These are related to systems based on a stand-alone receiver or multi-sensor systems including at least one GNSS SBAS sensor. It also defines the operational approval criteria for the intended use under Instrument Flight Rules, including Instrument Meteorological Conditions, in designated European airspace.

Section 4.2 of this AMC refers to documents which contribute to the understanding of an RNAV GNSS approach operation to LPV minima using SBAS and which may support an application for approval. However, it is important that an applicant evaluates the aircraft systems and the proposed operational procedures against the criteria of this AMC.

Compliance with this AMC does not, by itself, constitute an operational authorisation to conduct RNAV GNSS approach operation to LPV minima using SBAS. Aircraft operators should apply to their competent authority. Since this AMC has been harmonised with other implementation and operational criteria outside of Europe, i.e. USA/FAA, it is expected to facilitate interoperability and ease the effort in obtaining operational authorisation by operators.

In this AMC, 'LPV approach' wording has been used in lieu of 'RNAV GNSS approach to LPV minima' for simplification purposes.

This document is only applicable to RNAV(GNSS) approaches conducted down to LPV minima that are in accordance with the assumption given in paragraph 5.

### 4. REFERENCE DOCUMENTS

#### 4.1 Related Requirements

- CS 25.1301, 25.1302, 25.1307, 25.1309, 25.1316, 25.1321, 25.1322, 25.1329, 25.1431, 25.1581.
- CS 23.1301, 23.1309, 23.1311, 23.1321, 23.1322, 23.1329, 23.1335, 23.1431, 23.1581.
- CS 27.1301, 27.1309, 27.1321, 27.1322, 27.1329, 27.1581.
- CS 29.1301, 29.1307, 29.1309, 29.1321, 29.1322, 29.1329, 29.1431, 29.1581.
- EU-OPS<sup>1</sup> 1.035, 1.220, 1.225, 1.243, 1.290, 1.295, 1.297, 1.400, 1.420, 1.430, 1.845, 1.865, 1.870, 1.873, and 1.975.
- JAR-OPS 3.243, 3.845, 3.865.
- National operating regulations.

#### 4.2 Related Material

##### 4.2.1. ICAO

Annex 10	International Standards and Recommended Practices-Aeronautical Telecommunications.
Doc 7030/4	Regional Supplementary Procedures.
Doc 9613	Manual on Performance Based Navigation (PBN).

<sup>1</sup> Commission Regulation (EC) N° 859/2008 of 20 August 2008 amending Council Regulation (EEC) N° 3922/91 as regards common technical requirements and administrative procedures applicable to commercial transportation by aeroplane (OJ L 245, 20.9.2008, p. 1).

Doc 8168 PANS OPS (Procedures for Air Navigation Services-Aircraft Operations).

#### 4.2.2. EASA

AMC 25-11 Electronic Display Systems.

AMC 20-26 Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP Authorisation Required (RNP AR) Operations.

AMC 20-27 Airworthiness approval and Operational Criteria for RNP APPROACH (RNP APCH) operations Including APV BARO-VNAV Operations.

AMC 20-115( ) Software considerations in airborne systems and equipment certification

ETSO-C115( ) Airborne area Navigation Equipment using Multi-sensor Inputs.

ETSO-C145c Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Satellite Based Augmentation System.

ETSO-C146c Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Satellite Based Augmentation System.

EASA OPINION Nr. 01/2005 Conditions for Issuance of Letters of Acceptance for Navigation Database Suppliers by the Agency (i.e. an EASA Type 2 LoA).

#### 4.2.3. FAA

AC 25-11( ) Electronic Display Systems.

AC 20-138( ) Airworthiness Approval of GNSS equipment.

AC 20-130A Airworthiness approval of navigation or flight management systems integrating multiple navigation sensors.

AC 23-1309-1( ) Equipment, systems, and installation in Part 23 airplanes.

AC 20-153 Acceptance of data processes and associated navigation data bases.

#### 4.2.4. EUROCAE / RTCA and ARINC

ED-76 / DO-200A Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data.

ED-80( ) / DO-254( ) Design assurance guidance for airborne electronic hardware.

ED-77 / DO-201A Standards for Aeronautical Information.

DO-229( ) Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Global Positioning System/Wide Area Augmentation System Airborne equipment.

ARINC 424 Navigation System Data Base.

## 5. ASSUMPTIONS

Applicants should note that this AMC is based on the following assumptions:

### 5.1 Navigation Aid infrastructure

GNSS augmented by SBAS is the primary navigation system to support LPV approach operations. The navigation system is:

- (1) Provisioned by a Navigation Service Provider
  - a. certified according to Article 7 of Regulation (EC) No 550/2004<sup>1</sup>; or
  - b. certified according to Article 8b(2) of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008<sup>2</sup>; or
- (2) Comply with Annex 10<sup>3</sup> Volume 1 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation (Chicago Convention<sup>4</sup>).

The acceptability of the risk of loss of LPV approach capability for multiple aircraft due to satellite failure or SBAS system failure, loss of availability of satellite signal or radiofrequency interference, will be considered by the air navigation service provider providing the approach.

### 5.2 Obstacle clearance

Detailed guidance on obstacle clearance is provided in PANS-OPS (ICAO Doc 8168, Volume II).

Note: Missed approach procedure may be supported by either RNAV or conventional (e.g. based on NDB, VOR, DME) segments.

### 5.3 Publication

All LPV Approach procedures are:

- (1) Published by an Aeronautical Information Service Provider certified according to Article 7 of Regulation 550/2004; or Article 8b(2) of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008; or
- (2) Consistent with the relevant parts of PANS OPS (ICAO Doc 8168).

The instrument approach chart will identify LPV approach operation as RNAV(GNSS) and will indicate the associated LPV minima.

Charting will follow the standards of Annex 4<sup>5</sup> to the Chicago Convention for the designation of an RNAV procedure where the vertical path is specified by a glide path angle. The charting designation will remain consistent with the current convention and will be promulgated as a LPV OCA(H).

If the missed approach segment is based on conventional means, navigation aids facilities that are necessary to conduct the approach will be identified in the relevant publications.

The navigation data published in the applicable Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP) for the procedures and supporting navigation aids will meet the requirements of

<sup>1</sup> Regulation (EC) No 550/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 10 March 2004 on the provision of air navigation services in the single European sky (the service provision Regulation), OJ L 96, 31.3.2004, page 10.

<sup>2</sup> Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/EC (OJ L 79, 19.03.2008, p. 1). Regulation as last amended by Regulation 1108/2009 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 21 October 2009 (OJ L 309, 24.11.2009, p. 51).

<sup>3</sup> Annex 10 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation - Aeronautical Telecommunications - Radio Navigation Aids

<sup>4</sup> The Convention on International Civil Aviation, sign in Chicago on 7 December 1944 (the Chicago Convention)

<sup>5</sup> Annex 4 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation - Aeronautical Charts

Annex 15<sup>1</sup> and Annex 4 to the Chicago Convention (as appropriate). The chart will provide sufficient data to support navigation database checking by the crew (including waypoint name, track, distance for each segment and vertical path angle).

All procedures will be based upon WGS 84 coordinates.

The LPV FAS will be promulgated using the FAS Data Block process. This specific on board navigation database element defines the LPV FAS and is called 'FAS Data Block'. This FAS Data Block contains the lateral and vertical parameters, which define the approach to be flown. Each FAS Data Block ends with a Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC), which wraps around the approach data.

#### **5.4 Communication and ATS surveillance**

RNAV GNSS approach operation to LPV minima using SBAS does not include specific requirements for communication or ATS surveillance. Adequate obstacle clearance is achieved through aircraft performance, Instrument Approach procedure design and operating procedures. Where reliance is placed on the use of radar to assist contingency procedures, its performance will be shown to be adequate for that purpose, and the requirement for a radar service will be identified in the AIP.

Radio Telephony (RT) phraseology appropriate to such approach operations will be promulgated.

The particular hazards of terminal and approach areas and the impact of contingency procedures following multiple loss of aircraft LPV approach capability will be assessed.

## **6. AIRWORTHINESS CRITERIA**

### **6.1 General**

The following airworthiness criteria are applicable to the installation of the airborne system intended for IFR approach operation, certified according to CS-23, -25, -27 and -29.

This AMC is to be used to show compliance with the applicable Certification Specifications and functional criteria.

### **6.2 Equipment qualification**

#### **6.2.1 GNSS SBAS Stand-alone Navigation system**

GNSS SBAS stand-alone equipment should be approved in accordance with ETSO-C146c Class Gamma, operational class 3.

Note Equipment approved to ETSO-C145/146 could be eligible for acceptance provided that a positive deviation of compliance with RTCA DO-229C including the amendments of Appendix 1 to FAA TSO-C145a/C146a has been documented in the Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP).

#### **6.2.2 Integrated Navigation system incorporating a GNSS SBAS sensor**

The equipment should incorporate a GNSS SBAS sensor approved in accordance with ETSO-C145c Class Beta, operational class 3.

<sup>1</sup> Annex 15 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation - Aeronautical Information Services

Note 1: Aircraft that have previously been demonstrated to comply with FAA AC 20-130A and ETSO C115b (or subsequent versions), need only comply with the performance requirements of Chapter 2.3 of RTCA DO-229D.

Note 2: Equipment approved to ETSO-C145/146 could be eligible for acceptance provided that a positive deviation of compliance with RTCA DO-229C including the amendments of Appendix 1 to FAA TSO-C145a/C146a has been documented in the DDP.

#### 6.2.3 Approach system incorporating class Delta GNSS SBAS equipment

The equipment should be approved in accordance with ETSO-C146c Class Delta operational class 4.

Note: Equipment approved to ETSO-C145/146 could be eligible for acceptance provided that a positive deviation of compliance with RTCA DO-229C including the amendments of Appendix 1 to FAA TSO-C145a/C146a has been documented in the DDP.

### 6.3 Accuracy

The lateral and vertical Total System Error is dependent on the Navigation System Error (NSE), Path Definition Error (PDE) and Flight Technical Error (FTE).

#### 6.3.1. Navigational System Error (NSE)

Navigational System Error should be within the accuracy requirements of Annex 10 volume 1 paragraph 3.7.2.4 to the Chicago Convention (Signal In Space performance requirements). These NSE requirements are considered to be fulfilled without any demonstration if the equipment complies with the requirements of paragraph 6.2.

#### 6.3.2. Flight Technical Error (FTE)

FTE is considered to be equivalent to the ILS approach if the angular deviations are displayed to the Flight Crew on the existing or comparable display, and the system meets the criteria of paragraph 8.5 and the equipment complies with the requirements of paragraph 6.2.

For flight guidance systems, the FTE performance is considered acceptable if it meets the criteria of paragraph 8.5 and the GNSS/SBAS equipment complies with the requirements of paragraph 6.2.

#### 6.3.3. Path Definition Error (PDE)

There are no performance or demonstration requirements for PDE. PDE is considered negligible based upon the process of path specification to data specification and associated quality assurance that is included in the FAS Data Block generation process, which is a standardised process. The responsibilities for FAS Data Block generation lie with the Air Navigation Service Provider. Operator's responsibilities associated to the navigation database management aspect are described in paragraph 10.4 of this AMC.

### 6.4 Integrity

Presenting misleading lateral or vertical guidance is considered to be a hazardous failure condition.

Presenting misleading distance data is considered to be a major failure condition.

Note 1: Probability terms are defined in AMC 25.1309, FAA AC 23.1309-1( ), AC 27-1B or AC 29-2C.

Note 2: Where LPV approach capability is added to an aircraft having ILS capability, the integrity of the existing ILS display(s) or course deviation indicator(s) used for LPV approach operation are considered acceptable.

### 6.5 Continuity of function

Loss of the system that provides LPV approach capability is considered a major failure condition.

## 7. FUNCTIONAL CRITERIA

Functional criteria provided in this paragraph are those applicable to the LPV approach operation only. These criteria are therefore limited to the LPV Final Approach Segment and to the interception of the extended Final Approach Segment.

If the installed system (e.g. RNAV system) is also able to fly the initial, intermediate and missed approach segments of the approach, it must be approved in accordance with the corresponding requirement.

### 7.1 Required Functions

Item	Functional Description
1	<p>LPV approach guidance must be continuously displayed on a lateral and vertical deviation display (HSI, EHSI, CDI/VDI) including a failure indicator and must meet the following requirements:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) This display must be used as primary means of guidance during the approach.</li> <li>2) The display must be visible to the Flight Crew and located in the primary field of view (<math>\pm 15</math> degrees from the normal line of sight) when looking forward along the flight path.</li> <li>3) The deviation display must have a suitable full-scale deflection based on the required track keeping accuracy. The lateral and vertical Full Scale Deflections are angular and associated to the lateral and vertical definitions of the FAS contained in the FAS Data Block.</li> </ol> <p>Note: Where the minimum required Flight Crew is two, it must be possible for the non-flying Flight Crew member to verify the desired path and the aircraft position relative to the path.</p>
2	<p>Capability to display the GNSS Approach mode (e.g. LPV, LNAV/VNAV, LNAV ...) in the primary field of view.</p> <p>Note 1: This annunciation indicates to the crew the active approach mode in order to correlate it with the corresponding line of minima on the approach chart. It permits also to detect a level of service degradation (e.g. downgrade from LPV to LNAV).</p> <p>Note 2: The display may be located in the normal field of view subject to Agency agreement.</p>
3	<p>Capability to continuously display the distance to the Landing Threshold Point/Fictitious Threshold Point (LTP/FTP) or Missed Approach Point (MAPT) after passing the Final Approach Point in the primary field of view.</p> <p>Note: The display may be located in the normal field of view subject to Agency agreement.</p>

Item	Functional Description
4	<p>The navigation database must contain all the necessary data/information to fly the published LPV approach procedure (Final Approach Segment).</p> <p>Note: Although data may be stored or transmitted in different ways, the data has to be organised in data blocks for the purpose of computing the CRC. This format provides integrity protection for the data it contains. Consequently, each Final Approach Segment is defined by a specific 'FAS Data block' containing the necessary lateral and vertical parameters depicting the approach to be flown.</p> <p>Once the FAS Data Block has been decoded, the equipment shall apply the CRC to the data block to determine if the data is valid. If the FAS Data Block does not pass the CRC test, the equipment shall not allow activation of the LPV approach operation.</p>
5	<p>Capability to select from the database into the installed system the whole approach procedure to be flown (SBAS channel number and/or approach name).</p>
6	<p>Indication of the Loss Of Integrity (LOI), of the LPV airborne capability, in the primary field of view, by means of an appropriately located warning annunciator and the removal or invalidation of any guidance cues that no longer meet the approach integrity requirements.</p> <p>Note: The indicator may be located in the normal field of view subject to Agency agreement.</p>
7	<p>Capability to provide an alert for excessive downward deviation from the glide path.</p> <p>Note 1: This is only applicable where operational regulations require the use of a Class A TAWS or a Class A TAWS is installed.</p> <p>Note 2: If the alert is not provided by the TAWS system, the alert should have equivalent effect to that provided by a TAWS system</p>
8	<p>Capability to immediately provide indications of deviation from the intended flight path relative to the extended final approach segment.</p> <p>Note: This is to facilitate the interception of the extended final approach segment from a radar vector (e.g. Vector To Final (VTF) function).</p>

## 8. AIRWORTHINESS COMPLIANCE

### 8.1 General

This section details a means of airworthiness compliance for new or modified installations (Paragraph 8.2) and for existing installations (Paragraph 8.3). It also details specific points that should be considered during these approval processes (Paragraph 8.4 and 8.5).

Relevant documentation demonstrating airworthiness compliance should be available to establish that the aircraft is equipped with an airborne system meeting LPV approach requirements.

### 8.2 New or Modified Installations

In demonstrating compliance with this AMC, the following specific points should be noted:

The applicant will need to submit, to the Agency, a compliance statement which shows how the criteria of this AMC have been satisfied. The statement should be based on a plan, agreed by the Agency at an early stage of the implementation programme. The plan should identify the certification data to be submitted which should include, as

appropriate, a system description together with evidence resulting from the activities defined in the following paragraphs.

Compliance with the airworthiness requirements for intended function and safety may be demonstrated by equipment qualification, system safety analysis, confirmation of appropriate software design and complex electronic hardware assurance level, performance analysis, and a combination of ground and flight tests. To support the approval application, design data will need to be submitted showing that the objectives and criteria of Sections 6 and 7 of this AMC have been satisfied.

### 8.3 Existing Installations

The applicant will need to submit, to the Agency, a compliance statement which shows how the criteria of this AMC have been complied with for the existing installations. Compliance may be established by inspection of the installed system to confirm the availability of required features and functionality. The performance and integrity criteria of Sections 6 and 7 may be confirmed by reference to statements in the Aircraft Flight Manual or to other applicable approvals and supporting certification data. In the absence of such evidence, supplementary analysis and/or tests may be required.

### 8.4 Specific Installation criteria

The following points need to be taken into consideration during the airworthiness approval process.

- a) Where other conventional navigation/approach systems, apart from the installed system, provide display and/or guidance to a Flight Director/Autopilot, means should be provided for:
  - a system source selector as the only means of selection;
  - clear annunciation of the selected approach system on or near the guidance display;
  - display of guidance information appropriate to the selected approach system; and
  - delivery of guidance information to a Flight Director/Autopilot appropriate to the selected approach system.
- b) Annunciation for Flight Director, Autopilot and selected approach system should be consistent, and compatible with the original design philosophy of the cockpit.
- c) Equipment failure scenarios involving conventional navigation/approach systems and the installed system(s) should be evaluated to demonstrate that:
  - adequate alternative means of navigation are available following failure of the installed system, and
  - reversionary switching arrangements, e.g. Selection of ILS system 2 or LPV system 2 on HSI#1 in case of multiple (or redundant) equipment, does not lead to misleading or unsafe display configurations,
  - adequate means to isolate or deactivate the failed system.

The evaluation should consider also the probability of failures within the switching arrangements.

- d) The coupling arrangements between the installed system and the flight director/autopilot should be evaluated to show compatibility and to demonstrate that operating modes, including installed system failure modes, are clearly and unambiguously indicated to the Flight Crew.
- e) The use of the installed system and the manner of presentation of lateral and vertical guidance information to the Flight Crew should be evaluated to show that the risk of Flight Crew error has been minimised. The Flight Crew should be aware, at all times of the system in use for the approach.
- f) Controls, displays, operating characteristics and the Flight Crew interface with the installed system should be assessed in relation to Flight Crew workload, particularly in the approach environment. Essential design considerations include:
  - Minimising reliance on Flight Crew memory for any system operating procedure or task.
  - Developing a clear and unambiguous display of system modes/sub modes and navigational data with emphasis on enhanced situational awareness requirements for any automatic mode changes.
  - Use of context sensitive help capability and error messages (e.g. invalid inputs or invalid data entry messages should provide a simple means to determine how to enter 'valid' data).
  - Placing particular emphasis on the number of steps and minimising the time required to accomplish flight plan modifications to accommodate ATC clearances, holding procedures, runway and instrument approach changes, missed approaches and diversions to alternate destinations.
  - Minimising the number of nuisance alerts so the Flight Crew will recognise and react appropriately when required.

### 8.5 Performance evaluation for LPV approach operation

For equipment that complies with paragraph 6.2, the lateral and vertical Full Scale Deflection (FSD) requirements detailed in RTCA DO-229D ensure a ILS 'look alike' presentation. The deflection may be fully angular with no limitation or angular but bounded at a certain value (e.g. bounded at  $\pm 1$  Nm in lateral and  $\pm 150$  m in vertical). The integration of such equipment with display and autopilot system is considered acceptable if the following criteria are met;

- a) Where fully angular deviations are provided and flight display(s) and autopilots which have not been modified, the applicant should conduct a sufficient number of approaches while flying raw data, flight director and coupled approaches, as required to ensure that the installed equipment interfaces are compatible and enable's a stable approach and alignment with the runway at all anticipate distances from the threshold.
- b) Where deviations are bounded or the autopilot has been modified, or where the autopilot lateral/vertical control channel performance has not been assessed, or where non-standard deviations are provided (not ILS look alike), then the approach performance will need to comply with the applicable Certification Specification (e.g. CS xx.1329).

## **8.6 Intermixing of equipment**

Simultaneous use of airborne systems with different crew interfaces can be very confusing and can lead to problems when they have conflicting methods of operation and conflicting display formats. For approach operations, simultaneous use of equipment that is not identical or compatible is not permitted.

## **9. AIRCRAFT FLIGHT MANUAL/PILOT OPERATING HANDBOOK**

For new or modified aircraft, the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or the Pilot's Operating Handbook (POH), whichever is applicable, should provide at least the following information:

- a) A statement which identifies the equipment and aircraft build or modification standard certificated for RNAV GNSS approach operation to LPV minima using SBAS. This may include a very brief description of the installed system, including the airborne equipment minimum software version, display equipment and a statement that it is suitable for LPV approach operations. A brief introduction to the LPV approach concept may also be included.
- b) Appropriate amendments or supplements to cover LPV approach operation in the following sections: Limitations - including use of Lateral and Vertical deviations, FD and AP; currency of navigation database; crew verification of navigation data. Normal Procedures Abnormal Procedures - including actions in response to a Loss of Integrity in response to a degradation of the GNSS approach mode (e.g. downgrade from LPV to LNAV).

Note: This limited set of information assumes that a detailed description of the installed system and related operating instructions and procedures are available in other operating or training manuals.

## **10. OPERATIONAL CRITERIA**

This section describes acceptable operational criteria for an LPV approach, subject to the limitations given below. The operational criteria assume that the corresponding airworthiness approval has been granted by the Agency.

Operational criteria apply to the use of the approach system on any aircraft operated under IFR in accordance with EU legislation or the applicable operational regulations in the fields for which the EU legislation has not yet been established.

Operations of the installed equipment should be in accordance with the AFM or POH. The operational procedures to be addressed by the operator are detailed in APPENDIX 3. The Minimum Equipment List (MEL) should be amended if required to identify the minimum equipment necessary to satisfy LPV approach operations using the installed system.

The operator should determine the operational characteristics of the procedure to be flown. It is recommended that the process described in paragraph 10.3 and APPENDIX 2 of this AMC should be followed, to validate its operational use by the crew.

Depending on the aircraft capability, an LPV approach may be conducted with either a flight director or autopilot mode engaged. In this case the 'approach' flight guidance mode should be used.

Prior to LPV approach operation, the operator needs to be authorised or approved by their competent authority for such operations.

### **10.1. Flight Operations Documentation**

The relevant parts and sections of the Operations Manual (e.g. Aircraft Operations Manual, check lists, training of crew) should be revised to take account of the operating procedures detailed in APPENDIX 3. The operator should make timely amendments to the Operations Manual to reflect relevant procedure and data base checking strategies. Manuals and check lists may need to be submitted for review by the competent authority as part of the approval process.

### **10.2. Flight Crew Training**

The Flight Crew should receive appropriate training, briefings and guidance material in order to safely conduct an LPV approach. This material and training should cover both normal and abnormal procedures. Standard training and checking should include LPV approach procedures. Based on this, the operator should determine what constitutes a qualified crew.

The operator should ensure that during line operations Flight Crew can perform assigned duties reliably and expeditiously for each procedure to be flown in:

- a) normal operations: and
- b) abnormal operations.

A training program should be structured to provide sufficient theoretical and practical training. An example training syllabus is described in APPENDIX 4.

### **10.3. Aerodrome competence and Operator verification**

Before planning a flight to an aerodrome (destination or alternate) with the intent to use a LPV approach procedure contained in the Navigation Database, the operator should determine the operational characteristics of the procedure in accordance with EU-OPS 1.975 or the applicable operational regulations. Further details are provided in APPENDIX 2.

Based on this assessment, the appropriate information should be given to the crew. If the aerodrome access requires a specific competence, the designated crew shall have a validated competence.

### **10.4. Navigation Database Management**

#### **10.4.1. Operator involved in the operation of aircraft for commercial air transportation**

The operator shall comply with the requirements of EU-OPS 1.873 or applicable operational regulations for the management of navigation databases.

#### **10.4.2. Operator not involved in the operation of aircraft for commercial air transportation**

The operator shall not use a navigation database for LPV approach operations unless the navigation database supplier holds a Type 2 Letter of Acceptance (LoA) or equivalent.

An EASA Type 2 LoA is issued by EASA in accordance with EASA OPINION Nr. 01/2005 on 'The Acceptance of Navigation Database Suppliers' dated 14 January 2005. The FAA issues a Type 2 LoA in accordance with AC 20-153, while Transport Canada (TCCA) issues an Acknowledgement Letter of an Aeronautical Data Process using the same basis. Both the FAA LoA and the TCCA Acknowledgement Letter are seen to be equivalent to the EASA LoA.

EUROCAE/RTCA document ED-76/DO-200A Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data contains guidance relating to the processes that the supplier may follow. The LoA demonstrates compliance with this standard.

Note 1: The LPV approach is characterised in the navigation database by the FAS Data Block protected by a CRC. The FAS Data Block contains the lateral and vertical parameters, which define the approach to be flown. Those parameters have been calculated, validated and promulgated by the Air Navigation Service Provider. In addition, each FAS Data Block ends with a CRC, which wraps around the approach data. Consequently, the integrity is ensured when the airborne equipment making use of the data successfully passes the CRC on the data block.

#### Quality Monitoring

The operator should continue to monitor both the process and the products in accordance with the quality system required by the applicable operational regulations.

#### Data Distribution

The operator should implement procedures that ensure timely distribution and insertion of current and unaltered electronic navigation data to all aircraft that require it.

#### 10.4.3. Reportable Events

A reportable event is one that adversely affects the safety of the operation and may be caused by actions/events external to the operation of the aircraft navigation system. The operator should have in place a system for investigating such an event to determine if it is due to an improperly coded procedure, or a navigation data base error. Responsibility for initiating corrective action rests with the operator.

For those operators for whom approval is granted under EU-OPS 1, Technical defects and the exceeding of technical limitations, including the following events, should be the subject of Occurrence Reports (see EU-OPS 1.420):

- a) Significant navigation errors attributed to incorrect data or a database coding error.
- b) Unexpected deviations in lateral/vertical flight path not caused by pilot input or erroneous operation of equipment.
- c) Significant misleading information without a failure warning.
- d) Total loss or multiple navigation equipment failure.
- e) Loss of Integrity (LOI) annunciation whereas SBAS for LPV approach operations had not been notified as unavailable or unreliable during pre-flight planning.

## 11. AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS

JAA documents are available from the JAA publisher Information Handling Services (IHS). Information on prices, where and how to order is available on the JAA website: [www.jaa.nl](http://www.jaa.nl).

EASA documents may be obtained from EASA (European Aviation Safety Agency), PO Box 101253, D-50452 Koln, Germany. Website: [www.easa.europa.eu](http://www.easa.europa.eu).

---

EUROCAE documents may be purchased from EUROCAE, 102 rue Etienne Dolet, 92240 MALAKOFF, France, (Fax: 33 1 46 55 62 65). Website: [www.eurocae.eu](http://www.eurocae.eu).

FAA documents may be obtained from Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325, USA. Website: [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).

RTCA documents may be obtained from RTCA Inc, 1828 L Street, NW, Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036, USA, (Tel: +1 202 833 9339; Fax: +1 202 833 9434). Website: [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org).

ICAO documents may be purchased from Document Sales Unit, International Civil Aviation Organisation, 999 University Street, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7, (Fax: +1 514 954 6769, e-mail: [sales\\_unit@icao.org](mailto:sales_unit@icao.org)) or through national agencies.

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-28 Glossary

ED Decision 2012/014/R

The following are definitions of key terms used throughout this AMC.

**Abnormal procedure:** Crew procedure defined in the AFM or POH to address Warnings and Cautions issued by aircraft systems

**Aircraft-Based Augmentation System (ABAS):** An augmentation system that augments and/or integrates the information obtained from the other GNSS elements with information available on board the aircraft.

**Area navigation (RNAV):** A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of station-referenced navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these.

**Accuracy:** The degree of conformance between the estimated, measured, or desired position and/or the velocity of a platform at a given time, and its true position or velocity. Navigation performance accuracy is usually presented as a statistical measure of system error and is specified as predictable, repeatable and relative.

**Availability:** An indication of the ability of the system to provide usable service within the specified coverage area and is defined as the portion of time during which the system is to be used for navigation during which reliable navigation information is presented to the crew, autopilot, or other system managing the flight of the aircraft.

**Contingency Procedures:** A procedure developed by the operator to address a situation where the intended procedure could not be performed.

**Continuity of Function:** The capability of the total system (comprising all elements necessary to maintain aircraft position within the defined airspace) to perform its function without non-scheduled interruptions during the intended operation.

**Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC):** A mathematical algorithm applied to the digital expression of data that provides a level of assurance against loss or alteration of data.

**DA(H):** Decision altitude (DA) or Decision height (DH). A specified altitude or height in the precision approach or approach with vertical guidance at which a missed approach must be initiated if the required visual reference to continue the approach has not been established

**FAP:** Final Approach Point.

**FSD:** Full Scale Deflection

**FTP:** Fictitious Threshold Point. The threshold location is referred to as the FTP when it is displaced from the runway. FTP coordinates are stored in the FAS Data Block (see also RTCA DO-229( )).

**GNSS stand-alone receiver:** A GNSS system incorporating the GNSS sensor, the navigation capability and the navigation data base.

**GNSS sensor:** A GNSS system incorporating only the GNSS receiving and positioning part. It doesn't incorporate the navigation capability and the navigation data base.

**GPA: Glidepath Angle:** It represents the angle of the approach path (glide path) with respect to the horizontal plane defined according to WGS-84 at the LTP/FTP. GPA is stored in the FAS data block (see also RTCA DO-229( )).

**HAL:** Horizontal Alert Limit.

**ILS Look alike:** 'ILS Look alike' is defined as the ability of a non-ILS based navigation receiver function to provide operational characteristics and interface functionality to the rest of the aircraft equivalent to that provided by an ILS based receiver function.

**Integrity:** The ability of a system to provide timely warnings to users when the system should not be used for navigation.

**LPV:** Localiser Performance with Vertical guidance.

**LPV approach operation:** RNAV GNSS approach operation conducted down to LPV minima.

**LPV approach procedure:** RNAV GNSS approach procedure containing LPV minima.

**LPV approach capability:** Airborne capability to fly LPV approach procedure.

**LPV OCA(H):** Obstacle clearance altitude (OCA) or obstacle clearance height (OCH). The lowest altitude or the lowest height above the elevation of the relevant runway threshold or the aerodrome elevation as applicable, used in establishing compliance with appropriate obstacle clearance criteria.

**LTP:** Landing Threshold Point. The threshold location is referred to as the LTP when it is collocated with the runway. LTP coordinates are stored in the FAS Data Block.

**RNAV System:** A navigation system which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of station-referenced navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these. A RNAV system may be included as part of a Flight Management System (FMS).

**RNAV(GNSS) approach:** A GNSS RNAV approach promulgated by a state and designed in accordance with PANS-OPS Criteria ICAO Doc 8168.

**SBAS:** Satellite Based Augmentation System. SBAS augments core satellite constellation by providing ranging, integrity and correction information via geostationary satellites. This system comprises a network of ground reference stations that observe satellites signals, and master stations that process observed data and generate SBAS messages for uplink to the geostationary satellites, which broadcast the SBAS message to the users.

**RNP APCH:** RNP AProaCH. A RNP approach defined in the ICAO Performance Based Manual (PBN) manual.

**ETSO:** European Technical Standard Order.

**Vertical Navigation:** A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on a vertical flight profile using altimetry sources, external flight path references, or a combination of these.

**VTF:** Vector To Final.

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-28 Operational Characteristics of the Procedure and its Operational Use

*ED Decision 2012/014/R*

Depending upon the type of operation being undertaken the operator should consider the following:

- a) The provision of evidence of an evaluation of any new or modified LPV approach procedures. Particular attention should be paid to procedures:
  - in mountainous environment;
  - within the proximity of well-known obstacles; and
  - that may require adequate knowledge for the aerodrome access or aerodrome competence qualification, as specified in EU-OPS 1.975 or the applicable operational requirements.
- b) That competence may be required specifically for an LPV approach procedure or the procedure may be published for an aerodrome already listed as requiring an aerodrome competence. The required competence may be aircraft type related and subject to periodic revalidation. Particular attention should be paid to procedures that:
  - are not in radar coverage;
  - have a missed approach trajectories involving turns, especially at low altitudes;
  - are subject to a declared exemption to the procedure design rules specified by the ICAO PANS OPS; and
  - every other case considered necessary to be evaluated by the operator.
- c) The development of an internal process (e.g. filtering methods or tools covering the AIP review) to detect LPV approach procedure(s) showing one or more of the above-listed characteristics.
- d) The operational evaluation of a LPV approach procedure showing evidence of the above mentioned operational characteristics which may include, at operator discretion, an approach conducted with the aircraft in VMC or the use of a full flight simulator (FFS) in order to evaluate if the procedure is correctly executed by the navigation system and fly-able with the aircraft type.

## Appendix 3 to AMC 20-28 LPV Approach Operational Procedures

*ED Decision 2012/014/R*

This appendix should be used by the operator to amend operational manual(s) to support LPV approach operation.

### 1. Normal Procedures

#### 1.1 Pre-flight Planning

The on board navigation data must be current and must include the appropriate procedures.

In addition to the normal pre-flight planning the following checks must be carried out:

- a) The instrument approach chart should clearly identify the LPV approach operation as RNAV(GNSS) to LPV minima. The operator should determine in accordance with the promulgated OCA(H) and the operational requirement (e.g. EU-OPS 1.430) the Decision Altitude/Height (DA(H)).
- b) The Flight Crew must ensure that LPV approach procedures which may be used for the intended flight (including alternate aerodromes) are selectable from a valid navigation data base (current AIRAC cycle) and are not prohibited by a company instruction or NOTAM.

The Flight Crew could check approach procedures (including alternate aerodromes) as extracted by the system (e.g. CDU flight plan page) or presented graphically on the NAV display, in order to confirm the correct loading and the reasonableness of the procedure content. The vertical path of the LPV approach procedure could be checked as extracted from the navigation database on the system Man Machine Interface (e.g. CDU).

If above verification is not satisfactory, the Flight Crew should not use the procedure, and not consider this(ese) approach(es) during the selection of aerodromes for the intended flight.

Note: For LPV approach operations, the Flight Crew selects the desired approach procedure using its name or the SBAS channel number and the on board system automatically extracts the high-integrity procedure and associated alert limits (VAL, HAL). This information is protected from data corruption by a cyclic redundancy check (CRC) determined during the procedure design.

- c) The Flight Crew should ensure sufficient means are available to navigate and land at the destination or at an alternate aerodrome in the case of loss of the capability to perform RNAV(GNSS) approaches to the published minima.
- d) Operators and Flight-Crews must take account of any NOTAMs (including SBAS NOTAMs) or operator briefing material that could adversely affect the aircraft system operation, or the availability or suitability of the procedures at the airport of landing, or any alternate airport.
- e) If the missed approach procedure is based on conventional means (e.g. VOR, DME) the appropriate airborne equipment required to fly this procedure must be available and serviceable on board the aircraft. The associated ground-based navigation aids must also be operational.

If the missed approach procedure is based on RNAV (no conventional or dead reckoning missed approach available) the appropriate airborne equipment required to fly this procedure must be available and serviceable on board the aircraft.

- f) Any MEL restriction must be observed.

## **1.2 Prior to Commencing the Procedure**

The Final approach segment (FAS) of an LPV approach procedure may be intercepted by an approach transition (e.g. P-RNAV or initial/intermediate segments of an RNP APCH approach) or through vectoring (interception of the extended Final approach segment following ATC instruction).

In addition to normal procedure prior to commencing the approach (before the IAF and in compatibility with crew workload), the Flight Crew must verify the correctness of the loaded procedure by comparison with the appropriate approach charts. This check must include:

- The waypoint sequence;
- Reasonableness of the tracks and distances of the approach legs, and the accuracy of the inbound course and mileage of the final approach segment.

Note: As a minimum, this check could be a simple inspection of a suitable map display.

- The vertical path angle where the system permits.

ATC tactical interventions in the terminal area may include radar headings, 'direct to' clearances which by-pass the initial legs of an approach, interception of an initial or intermediate segment of an approach or the insertion of waypoints loaded from the database. In complying with ATC instructions, the Flight Crew should be aware of the implications for the navigation system in particular:

- the manual entry of coordinates into the navigation system by the Flight Crew for operation within the terminal area is not permitted;
- 'Direct to' clearances may be accepted to the Intermediate Fix (IF) provided that the resulting track change at the IF does not exceed 45°.

Note: Direct to clearance to FAP is not acceptable.

The approach system provides the capability for the Flight Crew to intercept the Final Approach track well before the FAP (Vector To Final (VTF) function or equivalent). This function should be used to respect a given ATC clearance.

## **1.3 During the Procedure**

The system provides lateral and vertical guidance relative to the LPV Final Approach Segment or to the extended final approach segment (for the direct transition).

The crew must check that the GNSS approach mode indicates LPV (or an equivalent annunciation) prior to passing the FAP.

The final approach segment should be intercepted before the FAP in order for the aircraft to be correctly established on the final approach course before starting the descent (to ensure terrain and obstacle clearance). The appropriate displays should be selected so that the following information can be monitored:

- aircraft position relative to the lateral path;

- aircraft position relative to the vertical path;
- absence of LOI (Loss Of Integrity) alert.

The crew should respect all published altitude and speed constraints.

The Flight Crew shall maintain the aircraft within  $\frac{1}{3}$  the full scale deflection for the lateral deviation and within  $\frac{1}{2}$  the full scale deflection for the vertical deviation.

Prior to sequencing the FAP, the procedure must be discontinued or may be continued to LNAV minima when supported by the system if there is:

- loss of integrity is indicated by a warning annunciator (e.g. absence of power, equipment failure).

After sequencing the FAP, the procedure must be discontinued, unless the Flight Crew have in sight the visual references required to continue the approach if there is:

- loss of integrity is indicated by a warning annunciator;
- loss of vertical guidance is indicated (even if lateral guidance is displayed);
- lateral or vertical deviation are excessive and cannot be timely corrected.

The missed approach must be flown in accordance with the published procedure (e.g. conventional or RNAV).

Note: Alternatively, when the aircraft is still above 1000 ft. AGL, the pilot may decide to continue the approach to LNAV minima when supported by the system.

## **2. Abnormal Procedures**

Abnormal procedures to address Cautions and Warnings resulting from the following conditions should be developed:

- Failure of the navigation system components, including those affecting flight technical errors (e.g. failures of the flight director or autopilot).
- Loss of integrity annunciation.
- Warning flag or equivalent indicator on the lateral and/or vertical navigation display.
- Degradation of the GNSS approach mode during a LPV approach procedure (e.g. downgrade from LPV to LNAV).

In case of a complete RNAV guidance loss during the approach, the crew must follow the operator defined contingency procedure.

In the event of communications failure, the Flight Crew should continue with the procedure in accordance with published lost communication procedures.

The Flight Crew should notify ATC of any problem with the navigation system that results in the loss of the approach capability.

## Appendix 4 to AMC 20-28 Flight Crew Training Syllabus

ED Decision 2012/014/R

The Flight Crew training program should be structured to provide sufficient theoretical and practical training, using a simulator, training device, or line training in an aircraft, in the concept of RNAV GNSS approach operations to LPV minima and the use of the aircraft's approach system in such operations to ensure that Flight Crew are not just task oriented. The following syllabus should be considered as a minimum amendment to the training programme to support these operations:

### 1. RNAV APPROACH CONCEPT CONTAINING LPV MINIMA:

- a) Theory of approach operations;
- b) Approach charting;
- c) Use of the approach system including:
  - i. Selection of the LPV approach procedure;
  - ii. ILS look alike principle.
- d) Use of lateral navigation mode(s) and associated lateral control techniques;
- e) Use of vertical navigation mode(s) and associated vertical control techniques;
- f) R/T phraseology for LPV approach operations;
- g) The implication for LPV approach operations of systems malfunctions which are not related to the approach system (e.g. hydraulic or engine failure).

### 2. RNAV APPROACH OPERATION CONTAINING LPV MINIMA:

- a) Definition of LPV approach operations and its direct relationship with RNAV(GNSS) procedures;
- b) Regulatory requirements for LPV approach operations;
- c) Required navigation equipment for LPV approach operations:
  - i. GNSS concepts and characteristics;
  - ii. SBAS augmentation and characteristics;
  - iii. MEL.
- d) Procedure characteristics:
  - i. Chart depiction;
  - ii. Aircraft display depiction;
  - iii. Minima.
- e) Retrieving a LPV approach procedure from the database (e.g. using its name or the SBAS channel number);
- f) Procedure change at destination airport, change arrival airport and alternate airport;
- g) Flying the procedure:
  - i. Use of autopilot, autothrottle and flight director;
  - ii. Flight Guidance (FG) mode behaviour;
  - iii. Lateral and vertical path management;

- 
- iv. Adherence to speed and/or altitude constraints;
  - v. Fly interception of an initial or intermediate segment of an approach following ATC notification;
  - vi. Fly interception of the extended final approach segment (e.g. using the VTF function);
  - vii. Consideration of the GNSS approach mode indication (LPV, LNAV/VNAV, LNAV,...);
  - viii. Reversion to LNAV minima;
  - ix. The use of other aircraft equipment to support track monitoring, weather and obstacle avoidance.
- h) ATC procedures;
  - i) Abnormal procedures;
  - j) Contingency procedures.

## AMC 20-29

### AMC 20-29 Composite Aircraft Structure

ED Decision 2010/003/R

#### 1. PURPOSE

This AMC provides an acceptable means, but not the only means, for airworthiness certification of composite aircraft structures. Guidance information is also presented on the closely related design, manufacturing and maintenance aspects. This AMC primarily addresses carbon and glass fibre reinforced plastic structures, although many aspects of this document are also applicable to other forms of structure, e.g. metal bonded structure, wooden structure, etc.

Note: When applying this guidance to other forms of structure, additional design considerations may be necessary and other appropriate references should also be consulted.

#### 2. OBJECTIVE

AMC 20-29 standardises recognised good design practices common to composite aircraft structures in one document.

For rotorcraft, AMC 20-29 complements existing AMC to CS-27 and CS-29 (referring to FAA AC 27-1B MG8 and AC 29-2C MG8).

#### 3. APPLICABILITY

This AMC provides Acceptable Means of Compliance with the provisions of CS-23, CS-25, CS-27 and CS-29. Many of the concepts included in this AMC may also be applicable in part or in full to other CSs. However, when using this AMC as an Acceptable Means of Compliance for these other CSs, appropriate engineering judgement should be exercised and early agreement with the Agency sought.

This AMC applies to: applicants for a type-certificate, restricted type-certificate or supplemental type-certificate; certificate/approval holders; parts manufacturers; material suppliers; and maintenance and repair organisations.

Note: The technical content of this AMC is harmonised with FAA Advisory Circular AC 20-107B, dated 8 September 2009.

#### 4. RELATED REGULATIONS AND GUIDANCE

- a. Applicable paragraphs are listed in [Appendix 1](#).
- b. Relevant guidance considered complementary to this AMC is provided in [Appendix 1](#).

#### 5. GENERAL

- a. The procedures outlined in this AMC provide Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material for composite structures, particularly those that are essential in maintaining the overall flight safety of the aircraft ("critical structure" as defined in [Appendix 2](#)). This AMC is published to aid in the evaluation of certification programmes for composite applications and to reflect the current status of composite technology. It is expected that this AMC will be modified periodically to reflect the continued evolution of composite technology and the data collected from service experience and expanding applications.
- b. There are factors unique to the specific composite materials and processes used for a given application. For example, the environmental sensitivity, anisotropic properties, and

heterogeneous nature of composites can make the determination of structural failure loads, modes, and locations difficult. The reliability of such evaluation depends on repeatable structural details created by scaled manufacturing or repair processes. The extent of testing and/or analysis may differ for a structure depending upon the criticality to flight safety, expected service usage, the material and processes selected, the design margins, the failure criteria, the database and experience with similar structures, and on other factors affecting a particular structure. It is expected that these factors will be considered when interpreting this AMC for use on a specific application.

- c. Definitions of terms used in this AMC can be found in [Appendix 2](#).

## **6. MATERIAL AND FABRICATION DEVELOPMENT**

All composite materials and processes used in structures are qualified through enough fabrication trials and tests to demonstrate a reproducible and reliable design. One of the important features of composite construction is the degree of care needed in the procurement and processing of composite materials. The final mechanical behaviour of a given composite material may vary greatly depending on the processing methods employed to fabricate production parts. Special care needs to be taken in controlling both the materials being procured and how the material is processed once delivered to the fabrication facility. The CSs (namely paragraphs 2x.603 and 2x.605) specify the need to procure and process materials under approved material and process specifications that control the key parameters governing performance. These paragraphs outline a need to protect structures against the degradation possible in service. They also require that the design account for any changes in performance (e.g., environmental and variability effects) permitted by material and process specifications.

### **a. Material and Process Control**

- (1) Specifications covering material, material processing, and fabrication procedures are established to ensure a basis for fabricating reproducible and reliable structure. Material specifications are required to ensure consistent material can be procured, and batch acceptance testing or statistical process controls are used to ensure material properties do not drift over time. Specifications covering processing procedures should be developed to ensure that repeatable and reliable structure can be manufactured. The means of processing qualification and acceptance tests defined in each material specification should be representative of the expected applicable manufacturing process. The process parameters for fabricating test specimens should match the process parameters to be used in manufacturing actual production parts as closely as possible. Both test and production parts must conform to material and process specifications.
- (2) Once the fabrication processes have been established, changes should undergo additional qualification, including testing of differences, before being implemented, (refer to [Appendix 3](#)). It is important to establish processing tolerances, material handling and storage limits, and key characteristics, which can be measured and tracked to judge part quality.
- (3) Material requirements identified in procurement specifications should be based on the qualification test results for samples produced using the related process specifications. Qualification data must cover all properties important to the control of materials (composites and adhesives) and processes to be used for production of composite structure. Carefully selected physical, chemical, and mechanical qualification tests are used to demonstrate the formulation, stiffness, strength, durability, and reliability of materials and processes for aircraft applications. It is

recommended that airframe designers and manufacturers work closely with material suppliers to properly define material requirements.

- (4) To provide an adequate design database, environmental effects on critical properties of the material systems and associated processes should be established. In addition to testing in an ambient environment, variables should include extreme service temperature and moisture content conditions and effects of long-term durability. Qualification tests for environmental effects and long-term durability are particularly important when evaluating the materials, processes, and interface issues associated with structural bonding (refer to paragraph 6.c for related guidance).
- (5) Key characteristics and processing parameters should be specified and monitored for in-process quality control. The overall quality control plan required by the certifying agency should involve all relevant disciplines, i.e., engineering, manufacturing, and quality control. A reliable quality control system should be in place to address special engineering requirements that arise in individual parts or areas as a result of potential failure modes, damage tolerance and flaw growth requirements, loadings, inspectability, and local sensitivities to manufacture and assembly.
- (6) Tolerances permitted by the material and process specifications should be substantiated by analysis supported by test evidence, or tests at the coupon, element or sub-component level. For new production methods, repeatable processes should be demonstrated at sufficient structural scale in a way shown to be consistent with the material and process qualification tests and development of the associated specifications. This will require integration of the technical issues associated with product design and manufacturing details prior to a large investment in structural tests and analysis correlation. It will also ensure the relevance of quality control procedures defined to control materials and processes as related to the product structural details.
- (7) Note that the Agency does not certify materials and processes. However, materials and processes specifications are part of the type-design subject to type-certification. Appropriate certification credit may be given to products and organisations using the same materials and processes in similar applications subject to substantiation and applicability. In some cases, material and processing information may become part of accepted shared databases used throughout the industry. New users of shared qualification databases must control the associated materials and processes through proper use of the related specifications and demonstrate their understanding by performing equivalency sampling tests for key properties. Note that materials and processes used in European Technical Standard Order (ETSO) articles or authorisations must also be qualified and controlled.

**b. Design Considerations for Manufacturing Implementation**

- (1) Process specifications and manufacturing documentation are needed to control composite fabrication and assembly. The environment and cleanliness of facilities are controlled to a level validated by qualification and proof of structure testing. Raw and ancillary materials are controlled to specification requirements that are consistent with material and process qualifications. Parts fabricated should meet design drawing tolerances obtained from the production tolerances validated in qualification, design data development, and proof of structure tests. Some key

fabrication process considerations requiring such control include: (i) material handling and storage, (ii) laminate layup and bagging (or other alternate process steps for non-laminated material forms and advanced processes), (iii) mating part dimensional tolerance control, (iv) part cure (thermal management), (v) machining and assembly, (vi) cured part inspection and handling procedures, and (vii) technician training for specific material, processes, tooling and equipment.

- (2) Substantiating data is needed for design to justify all known defects, damage and anomalies allowed to remain in service without rework or repair. Adequate manufacturing records support the identification and substantiation of known defects, damage and anomalies.
- (3) Additional substantiating design data is needed from new suppliers of parts previously certificated. This may be supported by manufacturing trials and quality assessments to ensure equivalent production and repeatability. Some destructive inspection of critical structural details is needed for manufacturing flaws that are not end item inspectable and require process controls to ensure reliable fabrication.

**c. Structural Bonding**

Bonded structures include multiple interfaces (e.g., composite-to-composite, composite-to-metal, or metal-to-metal), where at least one of the interfaces requires additional surface preparation prior to bonding. The general nature of technical parameters that govern different types of bonded structures are similar. A qualified bonding process is documented after demonstrating repeatable and reliable processing steps such as surface preparation. It entails understanding the sensitivity of structural performance based upon expected variation permitted per the process. Characterisation outside the process limits is recommended to ensure process robustness. In the case of bonding composite interfaces, a qualified surface preparation of all previously cured substrates is needed to activate their surface for chemical adhesion. For all bonding interfaces, regardless if on metallic or previously cured composite substrates, a qualified surface preparation is needed to activate their surface for chemical adhesion. Many technical issues for bonding require cross-functional teams for successful applications. Applications require stringent process control and a thorough substantiation of structural integrity.

- (1) Many bond failures and problems in service have been traced to invalid qualifications or insufficient quality control of production processes. Physical and chemical tests may be used to control surface preparation, adhesive mixing, viscosity, and cure properties (e.g., density, degree of cure, glass transition temperature). Lap shear stiffness and strength are common mechanical tests for adhesive and bond process qualification. Shear tests do not provide a reliable measure of long-term durability and environmental degradation associated with poor bonding processes (i.e., lack of adhesion). Some type of peel test has proven more reliable for evaluating proper adhesion. Without chemical bonding, the so-called condition of a “weak bond” exists when the bonded joint is either loaded by peel forces or exposed to the environment over a long period of time, or both. Adhesion failures, which indicate the lack of chemical bonding between substrate and adhesive materials, are considered an unacceptable failure mode in all test types. Material or bond process problems that lead to adhesion failures are solved before proceeding with qualification tests.

- (2) Process specifications are needed to control adhesive bonding in manufacturing and repair. A “process control mentality”, which includes a combination of in-process inspections and tests, has proven to be the most reliable means of ensuring the quality of adhesive bonds. The environment and cleanliness of facilities used for bonding processes are controlled to a level validated by qualification and proof of structure testing. Adhesives and substrate materials are controlled to specification requirements that are consistent with material and bond process qualifications. The bonding processes used for production and repair meet tolerances validated in qualification, design data development, and proof of structure tests. Some key bond fabrication process considerations requiring such control include: (i) material handling and storage, (ii) bond surface preparation, (iii) mating part dimensional tolerance control, (iv) adhesive application and clamp-up pressure, (v) bond line thickness control, (vi) bonded part cure (thermal management), (vii) cured part inspection and handling procedures, and (viii) bond technician training for specific material, processes, tooling and equipment. Bond surface preparation and subsequent handling controls leading up to the bond assembly and cure must be closely controlled in time and exposure to environment and contamination.
- (3) CS 23.573(a) sets the certification specification for primary composite airframe structures, including considerations for damage tolerance, fatigue, and bonded joints. Although this is a small aeroplane rule, the same performance standards are normally expected for large aeroplanes and rotorcraft (via special conditions and CRIs).
- (a) For bonded joints, CS 23.573(a)(5) states:
- “For any bonded joint, the failure of which would result in catastrophic loss of the aeroplane, the limit load capacity must be substantiated by one of the following methods:*
- (i) The maximum disbonds of each bonded joint consistent with the capability to withstand the loads in paragraph (a)(3) of this section must be determined by analysis, tests, or both. Disbonds of each bonded joint greater than this must be prevented by design features; or*
  - (ii) Proof testing must be conducted on each production article that will apply the critical limit design load to each critical bonded joint; or*
  - (iii) Repeatable and reliable non-destructive inspection techniques must be established that ensure the strength of each joint.”*
- (b) These options do not supersede the need for a qualified bonding process and rigorous quality controls for bonded structures. For example, fail safety implied by the first option is not intended to provide adequate safety for the systematic problem of a bad bonding process applied to a fleet of aircraft structures. Instead, it gives fail safety against bonding problems that may occasionally occur over local areas (e.g., insufficient local bond contact pressure or contamination). Performing static proof tests to limit load, which is the second option, may not detect weak bonds requiring environmental exposure and time to degrade bonded joint strength. This issue should be covered by adequately demonstrating that qualified bonding materials and processes have long-term environmental durability. Finally, the third option

is open for future advancement and validation of non-destructive inspection (NDI) technology to detect weak bonds, which degrade over time and lead to adhesion failures. Such technology has not been reliably demonstrated at a production scale to date.

- (4) Adhesion failures are an unacceptable failure mode for bonded structure that require immediate action by the responsible engineers to identify the specific cause and isolate all affected parts and assemblies for directed inspection and repair. Depending on the suspected severity of the bonding problem, an airworthiness directive may be required to restore the affected aircraft to an airworthy condition. Any design, manufacturing or repair details linked to the bonding problem should also be permanently corrected.

d. Environmental Considerations

Environmental design criteria should be developed that identify the critical environmental exposures, including humidity and temperature, to which the material in the application under evaluation may be exposed. Service data (e.g., moisture content as a function of time in service) can be used to ensure such criteria are realistic. In addition, the peak temperatures for composite structure installed in close proximity to aircraft systems that generate thermal energy need to be identified for worst-case normal operation and system failure cases. Environmental design criteria are not required where existing data demonstrate that no significant environmental effects, including the effects of temperature and moisture, exist for the material system and construction details, within the bounds of environmental exposure being considered.

- (1) Experimental evidence should be provided to demonstrate that the material design values or allowables are attained with a high degree of confidence in the appropriate critical environmental exposures to be expected in service. It should be realised that the worst case environment may not be the same for all structural details (e.g., hot wet conditions can be critical for some failure modes, while cold dry conditions may be worse for others). The effect of the service environment on static strength, fatigue and stiffness properties and design values should be determined for the material system through tests, e.g., accelerated environmental tests, or from applicable service data. The maximum moisture content considered is related to that possible during the service life, which may be a function of a given part thickness, moisture diffusion properties and realistic environmental exposures. The effects of environmental cycling (i.e., moisture and temperature) should be evaluated when the application involves fluctuations or unique design details not covered in the past. Existing test data may be used where it can be shown to be directly applicable to the material system, design details, and environmental cycling conditions characteristic of the application. All accelerated test methods should be representative of real-time environmental and load exposure. Any factors used for acceleration that chemically alter the material (e.g., high temperatures that cause post-cure) should be avoided to ensure behaviour representative of real environmental exposures.
- (2) Depending on the design configuration, local structural details, and selected processes, the effects of residual stresses that depend on environment should be addressed (e.g., differential thermal expansion of attached parts).

**e. Protection of Structure**

Weathering, abrasion, erosion, ultraviolet radiation, and chemical environment (glycol, hydraulic fluid, fuel, cleaning agents, etc.) may cause deterioration in a composite structure. Suitable protection against and/or consideration of degradation in material properties should be provided for conditions expected in service and demonstrated by test and/or appropriate validated experience. Where necessary, provide provisions for ventilation and drainage. Isolation layers are needed at the interfaces between some composite and metal materials to avoid corrosion (e.g., glass plies are used to isolate carbon composite layers from aluminium). In addition, qualification of the special fasteners and installation procedures used for parts made from composite materials need to address the galvanic corrosion issues, as well as the potential for damaging the composite (delamination and fibre breakage) in forming the fastener.

**f. Design Values**

Data used to derive design values must be obtained from stable and repeatable material that conforms to mature material and representative production process specifications. This will ensure that the permitted variability of the production materials is captured in the statistical analysis used to derive the design values. Design values derived too early in the material's development stage, before raw material and composite part production processes have matured, may not satisfy the intent of the associated rules. Laminated material system design values should be established on the laminate level by either test of the laminate or by test of the lamina in conjunction with a test validated analytical method. Similarly, design values for non-laminated material forms and advanced composite processes must be established at the scale that best represents the material as it appears in the part or by tests of material substructure in conjunction with a test validated analytical method.

**g. Structural Details**

For a specific structural configuration of an individual component (point design), design values may be established which include the effects of appropriate design features (holes, joints, etc.). Specific metrics that quantify the severity of composite structural damage states caused by foreign impact damage threats are needed to perform analysis (i.e., the equivalent of a metallic crack length). As a result, testing will often be needed to characterise residual strength, including the structural effects of critical damage location and combined loads. Different levels of impact damage are generally accommodated by limiting the design strain levels for ultimate and limit combined load design criteria. In this manner, rational analyses supported by tests can be established to characterise residual strength for point design details.

**7. PROOF OF STRUCTURE – STATIC**

The structural static strength substantiation of a composite design should consider all critical load cases and associated failure modes. It should also include effects of environment (including residual stresses induced during the fabrication process), material and process variability, non-detectable defects or any defects that are allowed by the quality control, manufacturing acceptance criteria, and service damage allowed in maintenance documents of the end product. The static strength of the composite design should be demonstrated through a programme of component ultimate load tests in the appropriate environment, unless experience with similar designs, material systems, and loadings is available to demonstrate the adequacy of the analysis supported by sub-component, element and coupon tests, or component tests to accepted

lower load levels. The necessary experience to validate an analysis should include previous component ultimate load tests with similar designs, material systems, and load cases.

- a. The effects of repeated loading and environmental exposure which may result in material property degradation should be addressed in the static strength evaluation. This can be shown by analysis supported by test evidence, by tests at the coupon, element or sub-component level, as appropriate, or alternatively by relevant existing data. Earlier discussions in this AMC address the effects of environment on material properties (paragraph 6.d) and protection of structure (paragraph 6.e). For critical loading conditions, three approaches exist to account for prior repeated loading and/or environmental exposure in the full-scale static test.
  - (1) In the first approach, the full-scale static test should be conducted on structure with prior repeated loading and conditioned to simulate the critical environmental exposure and then tested in that environment.
  - (2) The second approach relies upon coupon, element, and sub-component test data to determine the effect of repeated loading and environmental exposure on static strength. The degradation characterised by these tests should then be accounted for in the full-scale static strength demonstration test (e.g., overload factors), or in analysis of these results (e.g., showing a positive margin of safety with design values that include the degrading effects of environment and repeated load).
  - (3) In practice, aspects of the first two approaches may be combined to obtain the desired result (e.g., a full scale static test may be performed at critical operating temperature with a load factor to account for moisture absorbed over the aircraft structure's life). Alternate means to account for environment using validated tests and analyses (e.g., an equivalent temperature enhancement to account for the effect of moisture without chemically altering the material), may be proposed by the applicant.
- b. The strength of the composite structure should be reliably established, incrementally, through a programme of analysis and a series of tests conducted using specimens of varying levels of complexity. Often referred to in industry as the "building block" approach, these tests and analyses at the coupon, element, details, and sub-component levels can be used to address the issues of variability, environment, structural discontinuity (e.g., joints, cut-outs or other stress risers), damage, manufacturing defects, and design or process-specific details. Typically, testing progresses from simple specimens to more complex elements and details over time. This approach allows the data collected for sufficient analysis correlation and the necessary replicates to quantify variations occurring at the larger structural scales to be economically obtained. The lessons learned from initial tests also help avoid early failures in more complex full-scale tests, which are more costly to conduct and often occur later in a certification programme schedule.
  - (1) Figures 1 and 2 provide a conceptual schematic of tests typically included in the building block approach for a fixed wing and tail rotor blade structures, respectively. The large quantity of tests needed to provide a statistical basis comes from the lowest levels (coupons and elements) and the performance of structural details are validated in a lesser number of sub-component and component tests. Detail and subcomponent tests may be used to validate the ability of analysis methods to predict local strains and failure modes. Additional statistical considerations (e.g., repetitive point design testing and/or component overload

factors to cover material and process variability) will be needed when analysis validation is not achieved. The static strength substantiation programme should also consider all critical loading conditions for all Critical Structure. This includes an assessment of residual strength and stiffness requirements after a predetermined length of service, which takes into account damage and other degradation due to the service period.

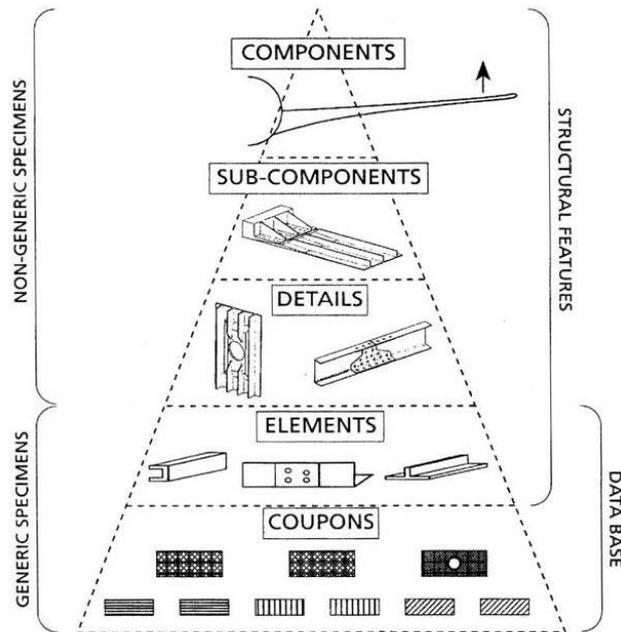


Figure 1 - Schematic diagram of building block tests for a fixed wing.

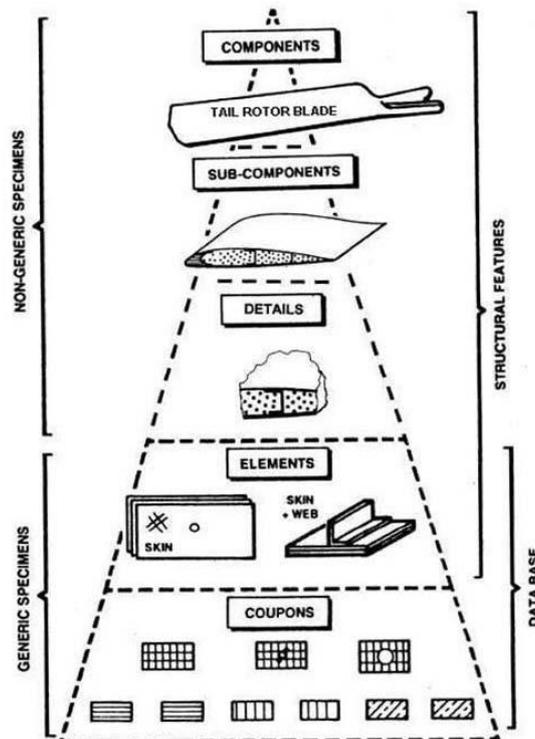


Figure 2 - Schematic diagram of building block tests for a tail rotor blade.

- (2) Successful static strength substantiation of composite structures has traditionally depended on proper consideration of stress concentrations (e.g., notch sensitivity of details and impact damage), competing failure modes and out-of-plane loads. A complete building block approach to composite structural substantiation addresses most critical structural issues in test articles with increasing levels of complexity so that many areas of reliable performance can be demonstrated prior to the component tests. The details and sub-component testing should establish failure criteria and account for impact damage in assembled composite structures. Component tests are needed to provide the final validation accounting for combined loads and complex load paths, which include some out-of-plane effects. When using the building block approach, the critical load cases and associated failure modes would be identified for component tests using the analytical methods, which are supported by test validation.
- c. The component static test may be performed in an ambient atmosphere if the effects of the environment are reliably predicted by building block tests and are accounted for in the static test or in the analysis of the results of the static test.
  - d. The static test articles should be fabricated and assembled in accordance with production specifications and processes so that the test articles are representative of production structure including defects consistent with the limits established by manufacturing acceptance criteria.
  - e. The material and processing variability of the composite structure should be considered in the static strength substantiation. This is primarily achieved by establishing sufficient process and quality controls to manufacture structure and reliably substantiate the required strength by test and analysis. The scatter in strength properties due to variability in materials and processes are characterised by proper allowables or design values, which are derived in compliance with CS 2x.613. When the detail, sub-component and component tests show that local strains are adequately predicted and positive margins of safety exist using a validated analysis everywhere on the structure, then proof of static strength is said to be substantiated using analysis supported by test evidence. Alternatively, in the absence of sufficient building block test data and analysis validation, overloads are needed in the component test to gain proof of static strength for the structure using an approach referred to as substantiated by tests. The overload factors applied in this case need to be substantiated either through tests or past experience and must account for the expected material and process variation.
  - f. It should be shown that impact damage that can be expected from manufacturing and service, but not more than the established threshold of detectability for the selected inspection procedure, will not reduce the structural strength below ultimate load capability. This can be shown by analysis supported by test evidence, or by a combination of tests at the coupon, element, sub-component and component levels. The realistic test assessment of impact damage requires proper consideration of the structural details and boundary conditions. When using a visual inspection procedure, the likely impact damage at the threshold of reliable detection has been called barely visible impact damage (BVID). Selection of impact sites for static strength substantiation should consider the criticality of the local structural detail, and the ability to inspect a location. The size and shape of impactors used for static strength substantiation should be consistent with likely impact damage scenarios that may go undetected for the life of an aircraft. Note that it is possible for some designs to have detectable impact damage and still meet static strength

loads and other requirements without repair (refer to allowable damage discussions in paragraph 10.c(1)).

- g. Major material and process changes on existing certified structure require additional static strength substantiation (e.g., refer to [Appendix 3](#)).

## **8. PROOF OF STRUCTURE – FATIGUE AND DAMAGE TOLERANCE**

The evaluation of composite structure should be based on the applicable certification specifications identified in the type-certification basis. Such evaluation must show that catastrophic failure due to fatigue, environmental effects, manufacturing defects, or accidental damage will be avoided throughout the operational life of the aircraft. The nature and extent of analysis or tests on complete structures and/or portions of the primary structure will depend upon applicable previous fatigue/damage tolerant designs, construction, tests, and service experience on similar structures. In the absence of experience with similar designs, Agency-approved structural development tests of components, sub-components, and elements should be performed (following the same principles discussed in paragraph 7.b and [Appendix 3](#)). The following considerations are unique to the use of composite material systems and provide guidance for the method of substantiation selected by the applicant. When establishing details for the damage tolerance and fatigue evaluation, attention should be given to a thorough damage threat assessment, geometry, inspectability, good design practice, and the types of damage/degradation of the structure under consideration.

1. Composite damage tolerance and fatigue performance is strongly dependent on structural design details (e.g., skin laminate stacking sequence, stringer or frame spacing, stiffening element attachment details, damage arrestment features, and structural redundancy).
2. Composite damage tolerance and fatigue evaluations require substantiation in component tests unless experience with similar designs, material systems, and loadings is available to demonstrate the adequacy of the analysis supported by coupons, elements, and sub-component tests.
3. Final static strength, fatigue, and damage tolerance substantiation may be gained in testing a single component test article if sufficient building block test evidence exists to ensure that the selected sequence of repeated and static loading yield results representative of that possible in service or provide a conservative evaluation.
4. Peak repeated loads are needed to practically demonstrate the fatigue and damage tolerance of composite aircraft structure in a limited number of component tests. As a result, metal structures present in the test article generally require additional consideration and testing. The information contained in AMC 25.571 provides fatigue and damage tolerance guidance for metallic structures.

### **a. Damage Tolerance Evaluation**

- (1) Damage tolerance evaluation starts with identification of structure whose failure would reduce the structural integrity of the aircraft. A damage threat assessment must be performed for the structure to determine possible locations, types, and sizes of damage considering fatigue, environmental effects, intrinsic flaws, and foreign object impact or other accidental damage (including discrete source) that may occur during manufacture, operation or maintenance.
  - (a) Currently, there are very few industry standards that outline the critical damage threats for particular composite structural applications with enough detail to establish the necessary design criteria or test and analysis protocol for complete damage tolerance evaluation. In the absence of standards, it is

the responsibility of individual applicants to perform the necessary development tasks to establish such data in support of product substantiation. Some factors to consider in development of a damage threat assessment for a particular composite structure include part function, location on the aircraft, past service data, accidental damage threats, environmental exposure, impact damage resistance, durability of assembled structural details (e.g., long-term durability of bolted and bonded joints), adjacent system interface (e.g., potential overheating or other threats associated with system failure), and anomalous service or maintenance handling events that can overload or damage the part. As related to the damage threat assessment and maintenance procedures for a given structure, the damage tolerance capability and ability to inspect for known damage threats should be developed.

- (b) Foreign object impact is a concern for most composite structures, requiring attention in the damage threat assessment. This is needed to identify impact damage severity and detectability for design and maintenance. It should include any available damage data collected from service plus an impact survey. An impact survey consists of impact tests performed with representative structure, which is subjected to boundary conditions characteristic of the real structure. Many different impact scenarios and locations should be considered in the survey, which has a goal of identifying the most critical impacts possible (i.e., those causing the most serious damage but are least detectable). When simulating accidental impact damage at representative energy levels, blunt or sharp impactors of different sizes and shapes should be selected to cause the most critical and least detectable damage, according to the load conditions (e.g., tension, compression or shear). Until sufficient service experience exists to make good engineering judgments on energy and impactor variables, impact surveys should consider a wide range of conceivable impacts, including runway or ground debris, hail, tool drops, and vehicle collisions. This consideration is important to the assumptions needed for use of probabilistic damage threat assessments in defining design criteria, inspection methods, and repeat inspection intervals for maintenance. Service data collected over time can better define impact surveys and design criteria for subsequent products, as well as establish more rational inspection intervals and maintenance practice. In review of such information, it should be realised that the most severe and critical impact damages, which are still possible, may not be part of the service database.
- (c) Once a damage threat assessment is completed, various damage types can be classified into five categories of damage as described below (refer to figure 3). These categories of damage are used for communication purposes in this AMC. Other categories of damage, which help outline a specific path to fatigue and damage tolerance substantiation, may be used by applicants in agreement with the regulatory authorities.

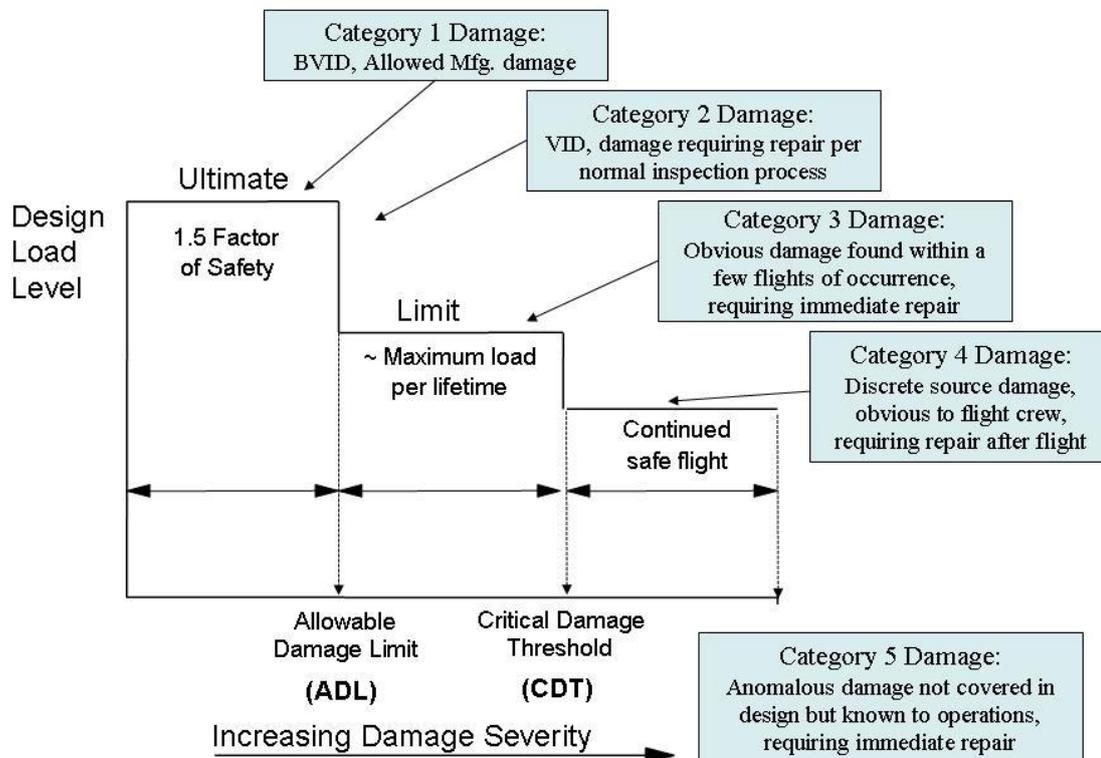


Figure 3 - Schematic diagram showing design load levels versus categories of damage severity.

Category 1: Allowable damage that may go undetected by scheduled or directed field inspection and allowable manufacturing defects. Structural substantiation for Category 1 damage includes demonstration of a reliable service life, while retaining ultimate load capability. By definition, such damage is subjected to the requirements and guidance associated with paragraph 7 of this AMC. Some examples of Category 1 damage include BVID and allowable defects caused in manufacturing or service (e.g., small delamination, porosity, small scratches, gouges, and minor environmental damage) that have substantiation data showing ultimate load is retained for the life of an aircraft structure.

Category 2: Damage that can be reliably detected by scheduled or directed field inspections performed at specified intervals. Structural substantiation for Category 2 damage includes demonstration of a reliable inspection method and interval while retaining loads above limit load capability. The residual strength for a given Category 2 damage may depend on the chosen inspection interval and method of inspection. Some examples of Category 2 damage include visible impact damage (VID), VID (ranging in size from small to large), deep gouges or scratches, manufacturing mistakes not evident in the factory, detectable delamination or debonding, and major local heat or environmental degradation that will sustain sufficient residual strength until found. This type of damage should not grow or, if slow or arrested growth

occurs, the level of residual strength retained for the inspection interval is sufficiently above limit load capability.

Category 3: Damage that can be reliably detected within a few flights of occurrence by operations or ramp maintenance personnel without special skills in composite inspection. Such damage must be in a location such that it is obvious by clearly visible evidence or cause other indications of potential damage that becomes obvious in a short time interval because of loss of the part form, fit or function. Both indications of significant damage warrant an expanded inspection to identify the full extent of damage to the part and surrounding structural areas. In practice, structural design features may be needed to provide sufficient large damage capability to ensure limit or near limit load is maintained with easily detectable, Category 3 damage. Structural substantiation for Category 3 damage includes demonstration of a reliable and quick detection, while retaining limit or near limit load capability. The primary difference between Category 2 and 3 damages are the demonstration of large damage capability at limit or near limit load for the latter after a regular interval of time, which is much shorter than the former. The residual strength demonstration for Category 3 damage may be dependent on the reliable short time detection interval. Some examples of Category 3 damage include large VID or other obvious damage that will be caught during walk-around inspection or during the normal course of operations (e.g., fuel leaks, system malfunctions or cabin noise).

Category 4: Discrete source damage from a known incident such as flight manoeuvres is limited. Structural substantiation for Category 4 damage includes a demonstration of residual strength for loads specified in the regulations. It should be noted that pressurised structure will generally have Category 4 residual strength requirements at a level higher than shown in figure 3. Some examples of Category 4 damage include rotor burst, bird strikes (as specified in the regulations), tyre bursts, and severe in-flight hail.

Category 5: Severe damage created by anomalous ground or flight events, which is not covered by design criteria or structural substantiation procedures. This damage is in the current guidance to ensure the engineers responsible for composite aircraft structure design and the Agency work with maintenance organisations in making operations personnel aware of possible damage from Category 5 events and the essential need for immediate reporting to responsible maintenance personnel. It is also the responsibility of structural engineers to design-in sufficient damage resistance such that Category 5 events are self-evident to the operations personnel involved. An interface is needed with engineering to properly define a suitable conditional inspection based on available information from the anomalous event. Such action will facilitate the damage characterisation needed prior to repair. Some examples of Category 5 damage include severe service vehicle collisions with aircraft, anomalous flight overload conditions, abnormally hard landings, maintenance jacking errors, and loss of aircraft parts in flight, including possible subsequent high-energy, wide-area (blunt) impact with adjacent structure. Some Category 5 damage scenarios will not have clearly visual indications of damage, particularly in composite structures. However, there should be knowledge of other evidence from the

related events that ensure safety is protected, starting with a complete report of possible damage by operations.

- (d) The five categories of damage will be used as examples in subsequent discussion in this paragraph and in paragraphs 9 and 10. Note that Category 2, 3, 4 and 5 damages all have associated repair scenarios.
- (2) Structure details, elements, and sub-components of Critical Structure should be tested under repeated loads to define the sensitivity of the structure to damage growth. This testing can form the basis for validating a no-growth approach to the damage tolerance requirements. The testing should assess the effect of the environment on the flaw and damage growth characteristics and the no-growth validation. The environment used should be appropriate to the expected service usage. Residual stresses will develop at the interfaces between composite and metal structural elements in a design due to differences in thermal expansion. This component of stress will depend on the service temperature during repeated load cycling and is considered in the damage tolerance evaluation. Inspection intervals should be established, considering both the likelihood of a particular damage and the residual strength capability associated with this damage. The intent of this is to assure that structure is not exposed to an excessive period of time with residual strength less than ultimate, providing a lower safety level than in the typical slow growth situation, as illustrated in Figure 4. Conservative assumptions for capability with large damage sizes that would be detected within a few flights may be needed when probabilistic data on the likelihood of given damage sizes does not exist. Once the damage is detected, the component is either repaired to restore ultimate load capability or replaced.

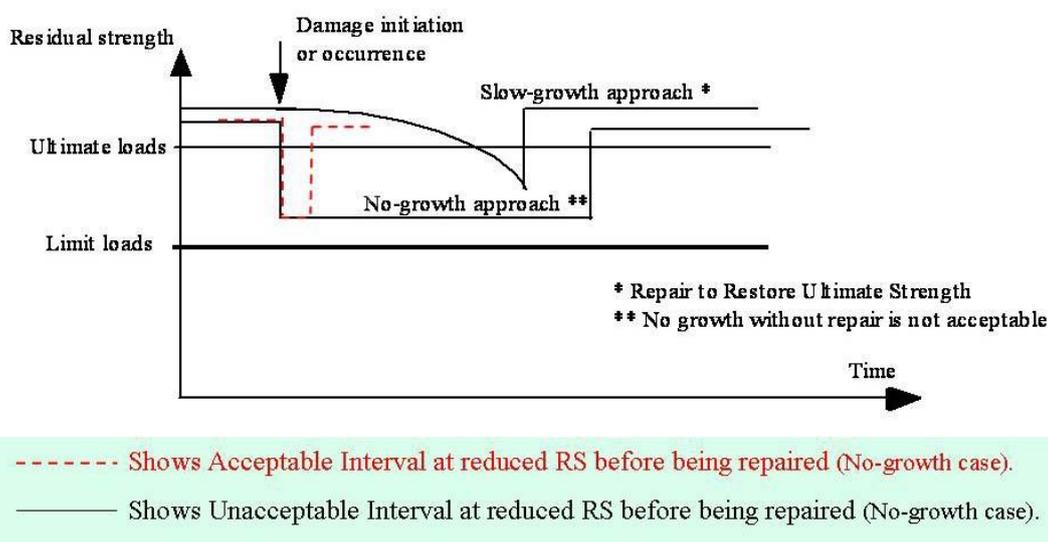


Figure 4 - Schematic diagram of residual strength illustrating that significant accidental damage with "no-growth" should not be left in the structure without repair for a long time.

- (a) The traditional slow growth approach may be appropriate for certain damage types found in composites if the growth rate can be shown to be slow, stable and predictable. Slow growth characterisation should yield conservative and reliable results. As part of the slow growth approach, an inspection programme should be developed consisting of the frequency,

extent, and methods of inspection for inclusion in the maintenance plan. Inspection intervals should be established such that the damage will have a very high probability of detection between the time it becomes initially detectable and the time at which the extent of the damage reduces the residual static strength to limit load (considered as ultimate), including the effects of environment. For any detected damage size that reduces the load capability below ultimate, the component is either repaired to restore ultimate load capability or replaced. Should functional impairment (such as unacceptable loss of stiffness) occur before the damage becomes otherwise critical, part repair or replacement will also be necessary.

- (b) Another approach involving growth may be appropriate for certain damage types and design features adopted for composites if the growth can be reliably shown to be predictable and arrested before it becomes critical. Figure 5 shows schematic diagrams for all three damage growth approaches applied to composite structure. The arrested growth method is applicable when the damage growth is mechanically arrested or terminated before becoming critical (residual static strength reduced to limit load), as illustrated in Figure 5. Arrested growth may occur due to design features such as a geometry change, reinforcement, thickness change, or a structural joint. This approach is appropriate for damage growth that is detectable and found to be reliably arrested, including all appropriate dynamic effects. Structural details, elements, and sub-components of Critical Structure, components or full-scale structures, should be tested under repeated loads for validating an Arrested Growth Approach. As was the case for a “no-growth” approach to damage tolerance, inspection intervals should be established, considering the residual strength capability associated with the arrested growth damage size (refer to the dashed lines added to Figure 5 to conceptually show inspection intervals consistent with the slow growth basis). Again, this is intended to ensure that the structure does not remain in a damaged condition with residual strength capability close to limit load for long periods of time before repair. For any damage size that reduces load capability below ultimate, the component is either repaired to restore ultimate load capability or replaced.
- (c) The repeated loading should be representative of anticipated service usage. The repeated load testing should include damage levels (including impact damage) typical of those that may occur during fabrication, assembly, and in-service, consistent with the inspection techniques employed. The damage tolerance test articles should be fabricated and assembled in accordance with production specifications and processes so that the test articles are representative of production structure.
- (3) The extent of initially detectable damage should be established and be consistent with the inspection techniques employed during manufacture and in service. This information will naturally establish the transition between Category 1 and 2 damage types (i.e., inspection methods used by trained inspectors in scheduled maintenance). For damage that is clearly detectable to an extent that it will likely be found before scheduled maintenance (i.e., allowing classification as Category 3 damage), detection over shorter intervals and by untrained personnel may be permitted. Flaw/damage growth data should be obtained by repeated load cycling of intrinsic flaws or mechanically introduced damage. The number of cycles applied

to validate both growth and no-growth concepts should be statistically significant, and may be determined by load and/or life considerations and a function of damage size. The growth or no growth evaluation should be performed by analysis supported by test evidence or by tests at the coupon, element, or sub-component level.

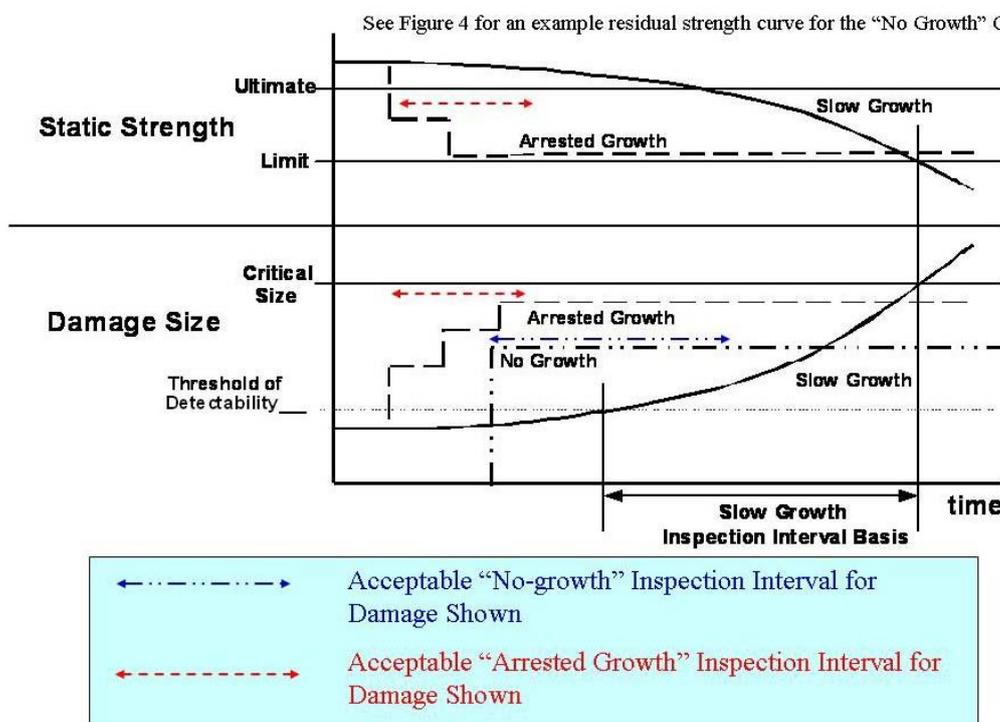


Figure 5 - Illustrations of residual strength and damage size relationships for three different approaches to composite structural damage tolerance substantiation

- (4) The extent of damage for residual strength assessments should be established, including considerations for the probability of detection using selected field inspection procedures. The first four categories of damage should be considered based on the damage threat assessment. In addition, Category 3 damage should be detected in a walk-around inspection or through the normal course of operations. Residual strength evaluation by component or sub-component testing or by analysis supported by test evidence should be performed considering that damage. The evaluation should demonstrate that the residual strength of the structure will reliably be equal to or greater than the strength required for the specified design loads (considered as ultimate), including environmental effects. The statistical significance of reliable sub-component and detail residual strength assessments may include conservative methods and engineering judgment. It should be shown that stiffness properties have not changed beyond acceptable levels.
  - (a) For the no-growth, slow growth, arrested growth approaches, residual strength testing should be performed after repeated load cycling. All probabilistic analyses applied for residual strength assessments should properly account for the complex nature of damage defined from a thorough damage threat assessment. Conservative damage metrics are permitted in

- such analyses assuming sufficient test data on repeated load and environmental exposure exists.
- (b) Composite designs should afford the same level of fail-safe, multiple load path structure assurance as conventional metals design. Such is also the expectation in justifying the use of static strength allowables with a statistical basis of 90 percent probability with 95 percent confidence.
  - (c) Some special residual strength considerations for bonded structure are given in paragraph 6.c.(3).
- (5) The repeated load spectrum developed for fatigue testing and analysis purposes should be representative of the anticipated service usage. Low amplitude load levels that can be shown not to contribute to damage growth may be omitted. Reducing maximum load levels is generally not accepted. Variability in repeated load behaviour should be covered by appropriate load enhancement or life scatter factors and these factors should take into account the number of specimens tested. The use of such factors to demonstrate reliability in component tests should be consistent with the fatigue and damage tolerance behaviour characterised for the materials, processes and other design details of the structure in building block tests.
- (6) An inspection programme should be developed consisting of frequency, extent, and methods of inspection for inclusion in the maintenance plan. Inspection intervals should be established such that the damage will be reliably detected between the time it initially becomes detectable and the time at which the extent of damage reaches the limits for required residual strength capability. The potential for missed inspections should be considered.
- (a) For the case of no-growth design concept, inspection intervals should be established as part of the maintenance programme. In selecting such intervals, the residual strength level associated with the assumed damages should be considered. This point was illustrated in Figures 4 and 5. Note that an acceptable inspection interval for the larger damages shown for the “no-growth” and “arrested growth” options in Figures 4 and 5 was conceptually shown as related to an acceptable slow growth basis in terms of the residual strength and time below ultimate load before damage was detected and repaired. Data on the probability of occurrence for different damage sizes also helps define an inspection interval.
  - (b) A thorough composite damage threat assessment and the separation of different damage sizes into categories, each with associated detection methods, supports programmes using a rigorous damage tolerance assessment to avoid conservative design criteria with very large damage assumptions. In such cases, Category 2 damage types will require the structural substantiation of well specified and reliable inspection methods applied by trained inspectors at scheduled maintenance intervals (by default, Category 1 damage is at the threshold of this evaluation). Those damages classified as Category 3 may take advantage of shorter service time intervals provided sufficient structural substantiation exists with demonstrated proof that there will be early detection by untrained ramp maintenance or operations personnel. By definition, Category 4 damage will require residual strength substantiation to levels that complete a flight with

limited manoeuvres based on the associated regulatory loads. Due to the nature of service events leading to Category 4 damage, suitable inspections will need to be defined to evaluate the full extent of damage, prior to subsequent aircraft repair and return to service. By definition, Category 5 damages do not have associated damage tolerance design criteria or related structural substantiation tasks. Category 5 damage will require suitable inspections based on engineering assessment of the anomalous service event, and appropriate structural repair and/or part replacement, prior to the aircraft re-entering service.

- (7) The structure should be able to withstand static loads (considered as ultimate loads) which are reasonably expected during a completion of the flight on which damage resulting from obvious discrete sources occur (i.e., uncontained engine failures, etc.). The extent of damage should be based on a rational assessment of service mission and potential damage relating to each discrete source. Structural substantiation will be needed for the most critical Category 4 damage as related to the associated load cases. Some Category 4 damage may have high margins but will likely still require suitable inspections since their detectability may not be consistent with the substantiations validated for Category 2 damage types.
- (8) The effects of temperature, humidity, and other environmental or time-related aging factors, which may result in material property degradation, should be addressed in the damage tolerance evaluation. Unless tested in the environment, appropriate environmental factors should be derived and applied in the evaluation.

**b. Fatigue Evaluation**

Fatigue substantiation should be accomplished by component fatigue tests or by analysis supported by test evidence, accounting for the effects of the appropriate environment. The test articles should be fabricated and assembled in accordance with production specifications and processes so that the test articles are representative of production structures. Sufficient component, sub-component, element or coupon tests should be performed to establish the fatigue scatter and the environmental effects. Component, sub-component, and/or element tests may be used to evaluate the fatigue response of structure with impact damage levels typical of those that may occur during fabrication, assembly, and in service, consistent with the inspection procedures employed. Other allowed manufacturing and service defects, which would exist for the life of the structure, should also be included in fatigue testing. It should be demonstrated during the fatigue tests that the stiffness properties have not changed beyond acceptable levels. Replacement lives should be established based on the test results. By definition, Category 1 damage is subjected to fatigue evaluation and expected to retain ultimate load capability for the life of the aircraft structure.

**c. Combined Damage Tolerance and Fatigue Evaluation**

Generally, it is appropriate for a given structure to establish both an inspection programme and demonstrate a service life to cover all detectable and non-detectable damage, respectively, which is anticipated for the intended aircraft usage. Extensions in service life should include evidence from component repeated load testing, fleet leader programmes (including NDI and destructive tear-down inspections), and appropriate statistical assessments of accidental damage and environmental service data considerations.

## **9. PROOF OF STRUCTURE – FLUTTER AND OTHER AEROELASTIC INSTABILITIES**

The aeroelastic evaluations including flutter, control reversal, divergence, and any undue loss of stability and control as a result of structural loading and resulting deformation, are required. Flutter and other aeroelastic instabilities must be avoided through design, quality control, maintenance, and systems interaction.

- a. The evaluation of composite structure needs to account for the effects of repeated loading, environmental exposure, and service damage scenarios (e.g., large Category 2, 3 or 4 damage) on critical properties such as stiffness, mass and damping. Some control surfaces exposed to large damage retain adequate residual strength margins, but the potential loss of stiffness or mass increase (e.g., sandwich panel disbond and/or water ingress) may adversely affect flutter and other aeroelastic characteristics. This is particularly important for control surfaces that are prone to accidental damage and environmental degradation. Other factors such as the weight or stiffness changes due to repair, manufacturing flaws, and multiple layers of paint need to be evaluated. There may also be issues associated with the proximity of high temperature heat sources near structural components (e.g., empennage structure in the path of jet engine exhaust streams or engine bleed air pneumatics system ducting). These effects may be determined by analysis supported by test evidence, or by tests at the coupon, element or sub-component level.

## **10. CONTINUED AIRWORTHINESS**

The maintenance and repair of composite aircraft structure should meet all general, design and fabrication, static strength, fatigue/damage tolerance, flutter, and other considerations covered by this AMC as appropriate for the particular type of structure and its application.

### **a. Design for Maintenance**

Composite aircraft structure should be designed for inspection and repair access in a field maintenance environment. The inspection and repair methods applied for structural details should recognise the special documentation and training needed for critical damage types that are difficult to detect, characterise and repair. The inspection intervals and life limits for any structural details and levels of damage that preclude repair must be clearly documented in the appropriate continued airworthiness documents.

### **b. Maintenance Practices**

Maintenance manuals, developed by the appropriate organisations, should include appropriate inspection, maintenance, and repair procedures for composite structures, including jacking, disassembly, handling, part drying methods, and repainting instructions (including restrictions for paint colours that increase structural temperatures). Special equipment, repair materials, ancillary materials, tooling, processing procedures, and other information needed for inspection or repair of a given part should be identified since standard field practices, which have been substantiated for different aircraft types and models, are not common.

#### **(1) Damage Detection**

- (a) Procedures used for damage detection must be shown to be reliable and capable of detecting degradation in structural integrity below ultimate load capability. These procedures must be documented in the appropriate sections of the instructions for continued airworthiness. This should be substantiated in static strength, environmental resistance, fatigue, and damage tolerance efforts as outlined in paragraphs 6, 7 and 8. Substantiated

detection procedures will be needed for all damage types identified by the threat assessment, including a wide range of foreign object impact threats, manufacturing defects, and degradation caused by overheating. Degradation in surface layers (e.g., paints and coatings) that provide structural protection against ultraviolet exposure must be detected. Any degradation to the lightning strike protection system that affects structural integrity, fuel tank safety, and electrical systems must also be detected.

- (b) Visual inspection is the predominant damage detection method used in the field and should be performed under prescribed lighting conditions. Visual inspection procedures should account for access, time relaxation in impact damage dent depth, and the colour, finish and cleanliness of part surfaces.
- (2) Inspection. Visual indications of damage, which are often used for composite damage detection, provide limited details on the hidden parts of damage that require further investigation. As a result, additional inspection procedures used for complete composite damage characterisation will generally be different from those used for initial damage detection and need to be well documented. Non-destructive inspection performed prior to repair and destructive processing steps performed during repair must be shown to locate and determine the full extent of the damage. In-process controls of repair quality and post-repair inspection methods must be shown to be reliable and capable of providing engineers with the data to determine degradation in structural integrity below ultimate load capability caused by the process itself. Certain processing defects cannot be reliably detected at completion of the repair (e.g., weak bonds). In such cases, the damage threat assessment, repair design features and limits should ensure sufficient damage tolerance.
- (3) Repair. All bolted and bonded repair design and processing procedures applied for a given structure shall be substantiated to meet the appropriate requirements. Of particular safety concern are the issues associated with bond material compatibilities, bond surface preparation (including drying, cleaning, and chemical activation), cure thermal management, composite machining, special composite fasteners, and installation techniques, and the associated in-process control procedures. The surface layers (e.g., paints and coatings) that provide structural protection against ultraviolet exposure, structural temperatures, and the lightning strike protection system must also be properly repaired.
- (4) Documentation and Reporting. Documentation on all repairs must be added to the maintenance records for the specific part number. This information supports future maintenance damage disposition and repair activities performed on the same part. It is recommended that service difficulties, damage, and degradation occurring to composite parts in service should be reported back to the design approval holder to aid in continuous updates of damage threat assessments to support future design detail and process improvements. Such information will also support future design criteria, analysis, and test database development.

**c. Substantiation of Repair**

- (1) When repair procedures are provided in Agency approved documents or the maintenance manual, it should be demonstrated by analysis and/or test that the method and techniques of repair will restore the structure to an airworthy condition. Repairable damage limits (RDL), which outline the details for damage to

structural components that may be repaired based on existing data, must be clearly defined and documented. Allowable damage limits (ADL), which do not require repair, must also be clearly defined and documented. Both RDL and ADL must be based on sufficient analysis and test data to meet the appropriate structural substantiation requirements and other considerations outlined in this AMC. Additional substantiation data will generally be needed for damage types and sizes not previously considered in design development. Some damage types may require special instructions for field repair and the associated quality control. Bonded repair is subjected to the same structural bonding considerations as the base design (refer to paragraph 6.c).

- (2) Operators and maintenance repair organisations (MRO) wishing to complete major repairs or alterations outside the scope of approved repair documentation should be aware of the extensive analysis, design, process, and test substantiation required to ensure the airworthiness of a certificated structure. Documented records and the certification approval of this substantiation should be retained in accordance with regulations to support any subsequent maintenance activities.

**d. Damage Detection, Inspection and Repair Competency**

- (1) All technicians, inspectors and engineers involved in damage disposition and repair should have the necessary skills to perform their supporting maintenance tasks on a specific composite structural part. The continuous demonstration of acquired skills goes beyond initial training (e.g., similar to a welder qualification). The repair design, inspection methods, and repair procedures used will require approved structural substantiation data for the particular composite part. Society of Automotive Engineers International (SAE) Aerospace Information Report (AIR) 5719 outlines training for an awareness of the safety issues for composite maintenance and repair. Additional training for specific skill building will be needed to execute particular engineering, inspection and repair tasks.
- (2) Pilots, ramp maintenance, and other operations personnel that service aircraft should be trained to immediately report anomalous ramp incidents and flight events that may potentially cause serious damage to composite aircraft structures. In particular, immediate reporting is needed for those service events that are outside the scope of the damage tolerance substantiation and standard maintenance practices for a given structure. The immediate detection of Category 4 and 5 damages are dependent on the proper reaction of personnel that operate and service the aircraft.

**11. ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS**

**a. Crashworthiness**

- (1) The crashworthiness of the aircraft is dominated by the impact response characteristics of the fuselage. Regulations, in general, evolve based on either experience gained through incidents and accidents of existing aircraft or in anticipation of safety issues raised by new designs. In the case of crashworthiness, regulations have evolved as experience has been gained during actual aircraft operations. For example, emergency load factors and passenger seat loads have been established to reflect dynamic conditions observed from fleet experience and from controlled FAA and industry research. Fleet experience has not demonstrated a need to have an aircraft level crashworthiness standard. As a result, the regulations reflect the capabilities of traditional aluminium aircraft structure under

survivable crash conditions. This approach was satisfactory as aircraft have continued to be designed using traditional construction methods. With the advent of composite fuselage structure and/or the use of novel design, this historical approach may no longer be sufficient to substantiate the same level of protection for the passengers as provided by similar metallic designs.

- (2) Airframe design should assure that occupants have every reasonable chance of escaping serious injury under realistic and survivable crash impact conditions. A composite design should account for unique behaviour and structural characteristics, including major repairs or alterations, as compared with conventional metal airframe designs. Structural evaluation may be done by test or analysis supported by test evidence. Service experience may also support substantiation.
- (3) The crash dynamics of an aircraft and the associated energy absorption are difficult to model and fully define representative tests with respect to structural requirements. Each aircraft product type (i.e., large aeroplane, small aeroplane, and rotorcraft) has unique regulations governing the crashworthiness of particular aircraft structures. The regulations and guidance associated with each product type should be used accordingly. The regulations for large aeroplane and rotorcraft address some issues that go beyond those required of small aeroplanes.
- (4) Special conditions are anticipated for large aeroplanes with composite fuselage structure to address crashworthiness survivability. The impact response of a composite fuselage structure must be evaluated to ensure the survivability is not significantly different from that of a similar-sized aircraft fabricated from metallic materials. Impact loads and resultant structural deformation of the supporting airframe and floor structures must be evaluated. Four main criteria areas should be considered in making such an evaluation.
  - (a) Occupants must be protected during the impact event from release of items of mass (e.g., overhead bins).
  - (b) At least the minimum number of emergency egress paths must remain following a survivable crash.
  - (c) The acceleration and loads experienced by occupants during a survivable crash must not exceed critical thresholds.
  - (d) A survivable volume of occupant space must be retained following the impact event.
- (5) The criticality of each of these four criteria will depend on the particular crash conditions. For example, the loads and accelerations experienced by passengers may be higher at lower impact velocities where structural failures have not started to occur. As a result, validated analyses may be needed to practically cover all the crashworthiness criteria for a fuselage.
- (6) Existing large aeroplane requirements also require that fuel tank structural integrity be addressed during a survivable crash impact event as related to fire safety (also refer to paragraph 11.b). As related to crashworthiness, composite fuel tank structure must not fail or deform to the extent that fire becomes a greater hazard than with metal structure.
- (7) Physics and mechanics of the crashworthiness for composite structures involve several issues. The local strength, energy absorbing characteristics, and multiple

competing failure modes need to be addressed for composite structure subjected to a survivable crash. This is not simply achieved for airframe structures made from anisotropic, quasi-brittle, composite materials. As a result, the accelerations and load histories experienced by passengers and equipment on a composite aircraft may differ significantly from that seen on a similar metallic aircraft unless specific considerations are designed into the composite structure. In addition, care should be taken when altering composite structure to achieve specific mechanical behaviours. (For example, where the change in behaviour of a metallic structure with a change in material thickness may be easily predicted, an addition or deletion of plies to a composite laminate may also require data for the effects of laminate stacking sequence on the failure mode and energy absorption characteristics of a composite element).

- (8) Representative structure must be included to gain valid test and analysis results. Depending on aircraft loading (requiring investigation of various aircraft passenger and cargo configurations), structural dynamic considerations, and progressive failures, local strain rates and loading conditions may differ throughout the structure. Sensitivity of the structural behaviour to reasonable impact orientation should also be considered for large aeroplane and rotorcraft applications. This can be addressed by analysis supported by test evidence.
- (9) Considering a need for comparative assessments with metal structure and a range of crash conditions, analysis with sufficient structural test evidence is often needed for large aeroplane and rotorcraft applications. Analysis requires extensive investigation of model sensitivity to modelling parameters (e.g., mesh optimisation, representation of joints, element material input stress-strain data). Test also requires investigation of test equipment sensitivity appropriate to composites (e.g., filter frequencies with respect to expected pulse characteristics in the structure). Model validation may be achieved using a building block approach, culminating in an adequately complex test (e.g., a drop test with sufficient structural details to properly evaluate the crashworthiness criteria).

**b. Fire Protection, Flammability and Thermal Issues**

- (1) Fire and exposure to temperatures that exceed maximum operating conditions require special considerations for composite airframe structure. (Refer to note below). Requirements for flammability and fire protection of aircraft structure attempt to minimise the hazard to occupants in the event that flammable materials, fluids, or vapours ignite. *The regulations associated with each aircraft product type (i.e., transport, small airplane, rotorcraft) should be used accordingly.* Compliance may be shown by tests or analysis supported by test evidence. A composite design, including repair and alterations, should not decrease the existing level of safety relative to metallic structure. In addition, maintenance procedures should be available to evaluate the structural integrity of any composite aircraft structures exposed to fire and temperatures above the maximum operating conditions substantiated during design.

Note: Aircraft cabin interiors and baggage compartments have been areas of flammability concerns in protecting passenger safety. This revision of the AMC does not address composite materials used in aircraft interiors and baggage compartments. Please consult other Guidance Material for Acceptable Means of Compliance with flammability rules for interiors.

- (2) Fire protection and flammability has traditionally been considered for engine mount structure, firewalls, and other powerplant structures that include composite elements. Additional issues critical to passenger safety have come with the expanded use of composites in wing and fuselage structures for large aeroplanes. Existing regulations do not address the potential for the airframe structure itself to be flammable. Wing and fuselage applications should consider the effects of composite design and construction on the resulting passenger safety in the event of in-flight fires or emergency landing conditions, which combine with subsequent egress when a fuel-fed fire is possible.
- (3) The results of fire protection and flammability testing with structural composite parts indicate dependence upon overall design and process details, as well as the origin of the fire and its extent. For example, the overall effects of composite fuselage structures exposed to fire may be significantly different when the fire originates within the cabin, where it can be controlled by limiting the structure's contribution to spreading the fire, than when the fire occurs exterior to the fuselage after a crash landing, where fuel is likely to be the primary source for maintaining and spreading the fire. The threat in each case is different, and the approach to mitigation may also be different. In-flight fire safety addresses a fire originating within the aircraft due to some fault, whereas post-crash fire safety addresses a fuel fed pool fire external to the aircraft. Special conditions are anticipated for large aeroplanes with fuselage structure subjected to both in-flight and post-crash fire conditions. Large aeroplane wing structure will need to have special conditions for post-crash fire conditions.
- (4) For an in-flight fire in large aeroplanes, it is critical that the fire not propagate or generate hazardous quantities of toxic by-products. In-flight fires have been catastrophic when they can grow in inaccessible areas. Composite fuselage structure could play a role different from traditional metal structure if the issue is not addressed.
- (5) Metallic large aeroplane fuselage and wing structures have established a benchmark in fire protection that can be used to evaluate specific composite wing and fuselage structural details. Exterior fire protection issues associated with composite structure must include the effects of an exterior pool fire following a survivable crash landing. Fuselage structure should provide sufficient time for passenger egress, without fire penetration or the release of gasses and/or materials that are either toxic to escaping passengers or reduce visibility (smoke density) or could increase the fire severity. Furthermore, these considerations must be extended to wing and fuel tank structure, which must also be prevented from collapse and release of fuel (including consideration of the influence of fuel load upon the structural behaviour. For large aeroplanes, the standards of CS 25.856(b) provide the benchmark to establish the required level of safety.
- (6) The exposure of composite structures to high temperatures needs to extend beyond the direct flammability and fire protection issues to other thermal issues. Many composite materials have glass transition temperatures, which mark the onset of reductions in strength and stiffness that are somewhat lower than the temperatures that can have a similar effect on equivalent metallic structure. The glass transition temperature of most composite materials is further reduced by moisture absorption. The reduced strength or stiffness of composites from high temperature exposures must be understood per the requirements of particular

applications (e.g., engine or other system failures). After a system failure and/or known fire, it may be difficult to detect the full extent of irreversible heat damage to an exposed composite structure. As a result, composite structures exposed to high temperatures may require special inspections, tests, and analysis for proper disposition of heat damage. All appropriate damage threats and degradation mechanisms need to be identified and integrated into the damage tolerance and maintenance evaluation accordingly. Reliable inspections and test measurements of the extent of damage that exists in a part exposed to unknown levels of high temperatures should be documented. Particular attention should be given to defining the maximum damages that likely could remain undetected by the selected inspection procedures.

**c. Lightning Protection**

Lightning protection design features are needed for composite aircraft structures. Current Carbon fibre composites are approximately 1,000 times less electrically conductive than standard aluminium materials, and composite resins and adhesives are traditionally non-conductive. Glass and aramid fibre composites are non-conductive. A lightning strike to composite structures can result in structural failure or large area damage, and it can induce high lightning current and voltage on metal hydraulic tubes, fuel system tubes, and electrical wiring if proper conductive lightning protection is not provided. Aircraft lightning protection design guidance can be found in the FAA Technical Report "Aircraft Lightning Protection Handbook" (See [Appendix 1 2.a](#)). The lightning protection effectiveness for composite structures should be demonstrated by tests or analysis supported by tests. Such tests are typically performed on panels, coupons, subassemblies, or coupons representative of the aircraft structure, or tests on full aircraft. The lightning test waveforms and lightning attachment zones are defined in EUROCAE ED-84 and ED-91. Any structural damage observed in standard lightning tests should be limited to Category 1, 2 or 3, depending on the level of detection. This damage is characterised and integrated into damage tolerance analyses and tests as appropriate. Small simple aeroplanes certified under CS-23 for VFR use only may be certified based on engineering assessment, according to AC 23-15A. The effects of composite structural repairs and maintenance on the lightning protection system should be evaluated. Repairs should be designed to maintain lightning protection.

**(1) Lightning Protection for Structural Integrity**

- (a)** The composite structural design should incorporate the lightning protection when appropriate for the anticipated lightning attachment. The extent of lightning protection features depends on the lightning attachment zone designated for that area of the aircraft. Lightning protection features may include, but are not limited to, metal wires or mesh added to the outside surface of the composite structure where direct lightning attachment is expected.
- (b)** When lightning strikes an aircraft, very high currents flow through the airframe. Proper electrical bonding must be incorporated between structural parts. This is difficult to achieve for moveable parts (e.g., ailerons, rudders and elevators). The electrical bonding features must be sized to conduct the lightning currents or they can vaporise, sending the high currents through unintended paths such as control cables, control rods, or hydraulic tubes. Guidance for certification of lightning protection of aircraft structures can be found in EUROCAE ED-113.

- 
- (2) Lightning Protection for Fuel Systems
- (a) Special consideration must be given to the fuel system lightning protection for an aircraft with integral fuel tanks in a composite structure. Composite structure with integral fuel systems must incorporate specific lightning protection features on the external composite surfaces, on joints, on fasteners, and for structural supports for fuel system plumbing and components to eliminate structural penetration, arcing, sparks or other ignition sources. AC 20-53B provides certification guidance for aircraft fuel system lightning protection.
  - (b) Large aeroplane regulations for fuel system ignition prevention in CS 25.981 require lightning protection that is failure tolerant. As a result, redundant and robust lightning protection for composite structure joints and fasteners in fuel tank structure is needed to ensure proper protection in preventing ignition sources.
- (3) Lightning Protection for Electrical and Electronic Systems
- (a) Lightning strike protection of composite structures is needed to avoid inducing high lightning voltages and currents on the wiring for electrical and electronic systems whose upset or damage could affect safe aircraft operation. The consequences from a lightning strike of unprotected composite structures can be catastrophic for electrical and electronic systems that perform highly critical functions, such as fly-by-wire flight controls or engine controls.
  - (b) Electrical shields over system wiring and robust circuit design of electrical and electronic equipment both provide some protection against system upset or damage due to lightning. Since most composite materials provide poor shielding, at best, metal foil or mesh is typically added to the composite structure to provide additional shielding for wiring and equipment. Electrical bonding between composite structure parts and panels should be provided for the shielding to be effective. EUROCAE ED-81 and ED-107 provide certification guidance for aircraft electrical and electronic system lightning protection.

[Amdt 20/6]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-29 – Applicable CSs and Relevant Guidance

*ED Decision 2010/003/R*

- 1. Applicable CSs.** A list of applicable CS paragraphs is provided for subjects covered in this AMC (see notes). In most cases, these CS paragraphs apply regardless of the type of materials used in aircraft structures.

AMC Paragraphs	CS-23	CS-25	CS-27	CS-29
1. Purpose of this AMC	----- Not Applicable -----			
2. To Whom this AMC Applies	----- Not Applicable -----			
3. Cancellation	----- Not Applicable -----			
4. Related Regulations and Guidance	----- Not Applicable -----			
5. General	----- Not Applicable -----			
6. Material and Fabrication Development	603	603	603	603
	605	605	605	605
	609	609	609	609
	613	613	613	613
	619	619	619	619
7. Proof of Structure – Static	305	305	305	305
	307	307	307	307
8. Proof of Structure – Fatigue and Damage Tolerance	573	571	571	571
9. Proof of Structure – Flutter	629	629	629	629
10. Continued Airworthiness	1529	1529	1529	1529
	App. G	App. H	App. H	App. A
11. Additional Considerations				
a. Crashworthiness (including impact dynamics)	561	561	561	561
	562	562	562	562
	601	601	601	601
		631		631
	721	721		
	783	783	783	783
	785	785	785	785
	787	787	787	787
	789	789		
		801	801	801
				803
	807		807	
		809		809
		963	963	963
965		965	965	
967	967	967	967	
	981			

b.	Fire Protection, Flammability and Thermal Issues	609	609	609	609
		853	853	853	853
		855	855	855	855
		859	859	859	859
				861	861
		863	863	863	863
		865	865		
		867			
		903	903		903
		1121	1121	1121	1121
		1181	1181		1181
		1182	1182		
		1183	1183	1183	1183
			1185	1185	1185
				1187	1187
		1189	1189	1189	1189
		1191	1191	1191	1191
		1193	1193	1193	1193
				1194	1194
		1359			
		1365			
c.	Lightning Protection		581*		
	* see AMC 25.899 para.6	609	609	609	609
					610
		867			
			899*		
		954	954*	954	954
		1309	981		
				1309	1309
			1316		

Notes:

- (1) This list may not be all inclusive and there may be differences between certification agencies (e.g. FAA and the Agency).
- (2) Special conditions may be issued in accordance with Part-21 21.A.16B for novel and unusual design features (e.g., new composite materials systems).

## 2. Guidance

FAA issues guidance providing supportive information of showing compliance with regulatory requirements. Guidance may include the advisory circulars (AC) and policy statements (PS). In general, an AC presents information concerning acceptable means, but not the only means, of complying with regulations. The guidance listed below is deemed supportive to the purposes of this AMC. These FAA documents can be located via website: [http://www.faa.gov/regulations\\_policies/](http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/). In addition, EUROCAE have developed industry standards that are recognised by the Agency.

Note: Many of the FAA documents are harmonised with EASA. Applicants should confirm with the Agency if in doubt regarding the status and acceptance of any such documents by the Agency.

- a. FAA/EUROCAE guidance documents

- AC 20-53B “Protection of Airplane Fuel Systems Against Fuel Vapor Ignition Due to Lightning” [6/06]
  - AC 20-135 "Powerplant Installation and Propulsion System Component Fire Protection Test Methods, Standards, and Criteria" [2/90]
  - AC 21-26 "Quality Control for the Manufacture of Composite Structures" [6/89]
  - AC 21-31 "Quality Control for the Manufacture of Non-Metallic Compartment Interior Components" [11/91]
  - AC 23-15A “Small Airplane Certification Compliance Program” [12/03]
  - AC 23-20 "Acceptance Guidance on Material Procurement and Process Specifications for Polymer Matrix Composite Systems" [9/03]
  - AC 25.571-1C “Damage Tolerance and Fatigue Evaluation of Structure” [4/98]
  - AC 29 MG 8 “Substantiation of Composite Rotorcraft Structure” [4/06]
  - AC 35.37-1A "Guidance Material for Fatigue Limit Tests and Composite Blade Fatigue Substantiation" [9/01]
  - AC 145-6 "Repair Stations for Composite and Bonded Aircraft Structure" [11/96]
  - RTCA DO-160 / EUROCAE ED-14
  - EUROCAE ED-81 “Certification of Aircraft Electrical/Electronic Systems for the Indirect Effects of Lightning”
  - EUROCAE ED-84 “Aircraft Lightning Environment and Related Test Waveforms”
  - EUROCAE ED-91 “Aircraft Lightning Zoning”
  - EUROCAE ED-107 “Guide to Certification of Aircraft in a High Intensity Radiated Field (HIRF)”
  - EUROCAE ED-113 Aircraft Lightning Direct Effects Certification
  - EUROCAE ED-14E Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment
  - FAA Technical Report “Aircraft Lightning Protection Handbook” (DOT/FAA/CT-89/22).
- b. FAA Policy Statements
- "Static Strength Substantiation of Composite Airplane Structure" [PS-ACE100-2001-006, December 2001]
  - "Final Policy for Flammability Testing per 14 CFR Part 23, Sections 23.853, 23.855 and 23.1359" [PS-ACE100-2001-002, January 2002]
  - “Material Qualification and Equivalency for Polymer Matrix Composite Material Systems" [PS-ACE100-2002-006, September 2003]
  - “Bonded Joints and Structures - Technical Issues and Certification Considerations” [PS-ACE100-2005-10038, September 2005]

[Amdt 20/6]

## Appendix 2 to AMC 20-29 – Definitions

ED Decision 2010/003/R

The following definitions are applicable to [AMC 20-29](#) and relevant CS paragraphs only.

**Allowables:** Material values that are determined from test data at the laminate or lamina level on a probability basis (e.g., A or B basis values, with 99% probability and 95% confidence, or 90% probability and 95% confidence, respectively). The amount of data required to derive these values is governed by the statistical significance (or basis) needed.

**Anisotropic:** Not isotropic; having mechanical and/or physical properties which vary with direction relative to natural reference axes inherent in the material.

**Arrested Growth Approach:** A method that requires demonstration that the structure, with defined flaws present, is able to withstand appropriate repeated loads with flaw growth which is either mechanically arrested or terminated before becoming critical (residual static strength reduced to limit load). This is to be associated with appropriate inspection intervals and damage detectability.

**Category of Damage:** One of five categories of damage based on residual strength capability, required load level, detectability, inspection interval, damage threat and whether (or not) the event creating damage is self-evident (see Section 8(a)(1)(c)).

**Component:** A major section of the airframe structure (e.g., wing, body, fin, horizontal stabiliser) which can be tested as a complete unit to qualify the structure.

**Coupon:** A small test specimen (e.g., usually a flat laminate) for evaluation of basic lamina or laminate properties or properties of generic structural features (e.g., bonded or mechanically fastened joints).

**Critical Structure:** A load bearing structure/element whose integrity is essential in maintaining the overall flight safety of the aircraft. This definition was adopted for this AMC because there are differences in the definitions of primary structure, secondary structure, and principle structural elements (PSE) when considering the different categories of aircraft. For example, PSE are critical structures for Large Aeroplanes.

**Damage:** A structural anomaly caused by manufacturing (processing, fabrication, assembly or handling) or service usage.

**Debond:** Same as Disbond.

**Degradation:** The alteration of material properties (e.g., strength, modulus, coefficient of expansion) which may result from deviations in manufacturing or from repeated loading and/or environmental exposure.

**Delamination:** The separation of the layers of material in a laminate. This may be local or may cover a large area of the laminate. It may occur at any time in the cure or subsequent life of the laminate and may arise from a wide variety of causes.

**Design Values:** Material, structural elements, and structural detail properties that have been determined from test data and chosen to assure a high degree of confidence in the integrity of the completed structure. These values are most often based on allowables adjusted to account for actual structural conditions, and used in analysis to compute margins-of-safety.

**Detail:** A non-generic structural element of a more complex structural member (e.g., specific design configured joints, splices, stringers, stringer runouts, or major access holes).

**Disbond:** An area within a bonded interface between two adherends in which an adhesion failure or separation has occurred. It may occur at any time during the life of the substructure and may arise

from a wide variety of causes. Also, colloquially, an area of separation between two laminae in the finished laminate (in this case the term “delamination” is normally preferred).

**Discrepancy:** A manufacturing anomaly allowed and detected by the planned inspection procedure. They can be created by processing, fabrication or assembly procedures.

**Element:** A generic part of a more complex structural member (e.g., skin, stringers, shear panels, sandwich panels, joints, or splices).

**Environment:** External, non-accidental conditions (excluding mechanical loading), separately or in combination, that can be expected in service and which may affect the structure (e.g., temperature, moisture, UV radiation, and fuel).

**Factor(s):**

- **Life (or Load) Enhancement Factor:** An additional load factor and/or test duration applied to structural repeated load tests, relative to the intended design load and life values, used to account for material variability. It is used to develop the required level of confidence in data.
- **Life Scatter Factor:** Same as Life/Load Enhancement Factor.
- **Overload Factor:** A load factor applied to a specific structure test which is used to address parameters (e.g., environment, a short test pyramid, etc.) not directly addressed in that test. This factor is usually developed from lower pyramid testing addressing such parameters.

**Heterogeneous:** Descriptive term for a material consisting of dissimilar constituents separately identifiable; a medium consisting of regions of unlike properties separated by internal boundaries.

**Intrinsic Flaw:** Defect inherent in the composite material or resulting from the production process.

**Manufacturing Defect:** An anomaly or flaw occurring during manufacturing that can cause varying levels of degradation in structural strength, stiffness and dimensional stability. Those manufacturing defects (or permissible manufacturing variability) allowed by the quality control, manufacturing acceptance criteria are expected to meet appropriate structural requirements for the life of the aircraft part. Other manufacturing defects that escape detection in manufacturing quality control should be included in a damage threat assessment and must meet damage tolerance requirements until detected and repaired.

**No-Growth Approach:** A method that requires demonstration that the structure, with defined flaws present, is able to withstand appropriate repeated loads without detrimental flaw growth for the life of the structure.

**Primary Structure:** The structure which carries flight, ground, or pressurisation loads, and whose failure would reduce the structural integrity of the aircraft.

**Point Design:** An element or detail of a specific design which is not considered generically applicable to other structure for the purpose of substantiation, e.g., lugs and major joints. Such a design element or detail can be qualified by test or by a combination of test and analysis.

**Slow Growth Approach:** A method that requires demonstration that the structure, with defined flaws present, is able to withstand appropriate repeated loads with slow, stable, and predictable flaw growth for the life of the structure, or beyond appropriate inspection intervals associated with appropriate damage detectability.

**Structural Bonding:** A structural joint created by the process of adhesive bonding, comprising of one or more previously-cured composite or metal parts (referred to as adherends).

---

**Sub-component:** A major three-dimensional structure which can provide completed structural representation of a section of the full structure (e.g., stub-box, section of a spar, wing panel, body panel with frames).

**Weak Bond:** A bond line with mechanical properties lower than expected, but without any possibility to detect that by normal NDI procedures. Such situation is mainly due to a poor chemical bonding.

[Amdt 20/6]

## Appendix 3 to AMC 20-29 – Change of Composite Material and/or Process

*ED Decision 2010/003/R*

1. It is necessary to re-certify composite structures, which during production, incorporate substitutions of, or changes to, the materials and/or processes from those originally substantiated at the time of initial certification. For example, the original material supplier may either change its product, or cease production. Manufacturers may also find it necessary to modify their production processes to improve efficiency or correct product deficiencies. In either case, care must be taken to ensure that modifications and/or changes are adequately investigated to ensure the continued adequacy of already certified composite structure. This appendix covers such material and/or process changes, but does not address other changes to design (e.g., geometry, loading). The definition of the materials and processes used is required in the specifications by Part 21.A.31. Changes to the material and process specifications are often major changes in type design and must be addressed as such under Part-21, subpart D or E as applicable.
2. The qualification and structural substantiation of new or modified materials and/or processes used to produce parts of a previously certified aircraft product requires:
  - a. The identification of the key material and/or process parameters governing performances;
  - b. The definition of the appropriate tests able to measure these parameters; and
  - c. The definition of pass/fail criteria for these tests.
3. 'Qualification' procedures developed by every manufacturer include specifications covering:
  - a. Physical and chemical properties,
  - b. Mechanical properties (coupon level), and
  - c. Reproducibility (by testing several batches).
4. Specifications and manufacturing quality procedures are designed to control specific materials and processes to achieve stable and repeatable structure for that combination of materials and processes. However, the interchangeability of alternate materials and processes for a structural application cannot be assumed if one only considers the properties outlined in those specifications (as it could be for materials that are much less process dependent, e.g., some metallic material forms). A structure fabricated using new or modified materials and/or processes, which meet the 'qualification' tests required for the original material and process specifications, does not necessarily produce components that meet all the original engineering requirements for the previously certified structure.
5. Until improvements in identifying the complex relations between key material parameters that govern composite processing occurs, there will be a need for extensive and diverse testing that directly interrogates material performance using a range of representative specimens of increasing complexity in building block tests. Furthermore, failure modes may vary from one material and/or process to another, and analytical models are sometimes insufficiently precise to reliably predict failure without sufficient empirical data. Therefore, a step-by-step test verification with more complex specimens may be required.
6. **Classification of Material or Process Change**

Material and/or process changes require appropriate classification in order to aid the determination of the extent of investigation necessary. Some minor changes may only require

material equivalency sampling tests to be completed at the base of the test pyramid, whilst more significant changes will require more extensive investigations, including possibly a new structural substantiation.

- a. Any of the following situations requires further investigation of possible changes to a given composite structure:
  - (1) Case A: A change in one or both of the basic constituents, resin, or fibre (including sizing or surface treatment alone) would yield an alternate material. Other changes that result in an alternate material include changes in fabric weave style, fibre areal weight and resin content.
  - (2) Case B: Same basic constituents, but any change of the resin impregnation method. Such changes include: (i) prepregging process (e.g., solvent bath to hot melt coating), (ii) tow size (3k, 6k, 12k) for tape material forms with the same fibre areal weight, (iii) prepregging machine at the same suppliers, (iv) supplier change for a same material (licensed supplier).
  - (3) Case C: Same material, but modification of the processing route (if the modification to the processing route governs eventual composite mechanical properties). Example process changes of significance include: (i) curing cycle, (ii) bond surface preparation, (iii) changes in the resin transfer moulding process used in fabricating parts from dry fibre forms, (iv) tooling, (v) lay-up method, (vi) environmental parameters of the material lay-up room, and (vii) major assembly procedures.
- b. For each of the above cases, a distinction should be made between those changes intended to be a replica of the former material/process combination (Case B and some of Case C) and those which are “truly new material” (Case A and some of Case C). So, two classes are proposed:
  - (1) “Identical materials/processes” in cases intended to create a replica structure.
  - (2) “Alternative materials/processes” in cases intended to create truly new structure.
- c. Within the “identical materials/processes” class, a sub-classification can be made between a change of the prepregging machine alone at the supplier and licensed production elsewhere. For the time being, a change to a new fibre produced under a licensed process and reputed to be a replica of the former one, will be dealt with as an “alternative material/process”.
- d. Some minor changes within the class representing identical materials/processes may not interact with structural performances (e.g., prepreg release papers, some bagging materials, etc.) and should not be submitted to the Agency as part of the change. However, the manufacturers (or the supplier) should develop a proper system for screening those changes, with adequate proficiency at all relevant decision levels. Other minor material changes that fall under Case B may warrant sampling tests to show equivalency only at lower levels of building block substantiation.
- e. Case C changes that may yield major changes in material and structural performance need to be evaluated at all appropriate levels of the building block tests to determine whether the manufacturing process change yields identical or alternate materials. Engineering judgment will be needed in determining the extent of testing based on the proposed manufacturing change.

- f. Case A (alternative material) should always be considered as an important change, which requires structural substantiation. It is not recommended to try a sub-classification according to the basic constituents being changed, as material behaviour (e.g., sensitivity to stress concentrations) may be governed by interfacial properties, which may be affected by either a fibre or a resin change.
7. **Substantiation Method.** Only the technical aspects of substantiation are addressed below.
- a. **Compliance Philosophy.** Substantiation should be based on a comparability study between the structural performances of the material accepted for type certification, and the second material. Whatever the modification proposed for a certificated item, the revised margins of safety should remain adequate. Any reduction in the previously demonstrated margin should be investigated in detail.
- (1) **Alternative Material/Process:** New design values for all relevant properties should be determined for any alternate material/process combination. Analytical models initially used to certify structure, including failure prediction models, should be reviewed and, if necessary, substantiated by tests. The procurement specification should be modified (or a new specification suited to the selected material should be defined) to ensure key quality variations are adequately controlled and new acceptance criteria defined. For example, changing from first to second generation of carbon fibres may improve tensile strength properties by more than 20% and a new acceptability threshold will be needed in the specification of the alternate material to ensure the detection of quality variations.
  - (2) **Identical Material:** Data should be provided that demonstrates that the original design values (whatever the level of investigation, material or design) remain valid. Statistical methods need to be employed for data to ensure that key design properties come from the same populations as the original material/process combination. Calculation models including failure prediction should remain the same. The technical content of the procurement specification (Case B) should not need to be changed to properly control quality.
- b. **Testing.**
- (1) The extent of testing needed to substantiate a material change should address the inherent structural behaviour of the composite and will be a function of the airworthiness significance of the part and the material change definition. For example, the investigation level might be restricted to the generic specimens at the test pyramid base (refer to figures in paragraph 7) for an identical material, but non-generic test articles from higher up the pyramid should be included for an alternative material. Care needs to be taken to ensure that the test methods used yield data compatible with data used to determine properties of the original structure.
  - (2) The testing that may be required for a range of possible material and/or process changes should consider all levels of structural substantiation that may be affected. In some instances (e.g., a minor cure cycle change), possible consequences can be assessed by tests on generic specimens only. For other changes, like those involving tooling (e.g., from a full bag process to thermo-expansive cores), the assessment should include an evaluation of the component itself (sometimes called the “tool proof test”). In this case, an expanded NDI procedure should be required for the first items to be produced. This should be supplemented – if

deemed necessary – by “cut up” specimens from a representative component, for physical or mechanical investigations.

c. **Number of Batches.**

- (1) The purpose for testing a number of batches is the demonstration of an acceptable reproducibility of material characteristics. The number of batches required should take into account: material classification (identical or alternative), the investigation level (non-generic or generic specimen) the source of supply, and the property under investigation. Care should be taken to investigate the variation of both basic material and the manufacturing process.
- (2) Existing references (e.g., The Composite Materials Handbook (CMH-17) Volumes 1 and 3, FAA Technical Report DOT/ FAA/AR-03/19), addressing composite qualification and equivalence and the building block approach, provide more detailed guidance regarding batch and test numbers and the appropriate statistical analysis up to laminate level. Changes at higher pyramid levels, or those associated with other material forms, e.g., braided VARTM (Vacuum-Assisted Resin Transfer Moulding) structure, may require use of other statistical procedures or engineering methods.

d. **Pass/Fail Criteria.** Target pass/fail criteria should be established as part of the test programme. For strength considerations for instance, a statistical analysis of test data should demonstrate that new design values derived for the second material provide an adequate margin of safety. Therefore, provision should be made for a sufficient number of test specimens to allow for such analysis. At the non-generic level, when only one test article is used to assess a structural feature, the pass criteria should be a result acceptable with respect to design ultimate loads. In the cases where test results show lower margins of safety, certification documentation will need to be revised.

e. **Other Considerations.** For characteristics other than static strength (all those listed in AMC 20-29, paragraphs 8, 9, 10 and 11), the substantiation should also ensure an equivalent level of safety.

[Amdt 20/6]

## AMC 20-115D

### AMC 20-115D Airborne Software Development Assurance Using EUROCAE ED-12 and RTCA DO-178

*ED Decision 2017/020/R*

#### 1. PURPOSE

- a. This AMC describes an acceptable means, but not the only means, for showing compliance with the applicable airworthiness regulations with regard to the software aspects of airborne systems and equipment in the domain of product certification or European technical standard orders (ETSOs) authorisation. Compliance with this AMC is not mandatory and therefore an applicant may elect to use an alternative means of compliance (AltMoC). However, the AltMoC must meet the relevant requirements, ensure an equivalent level of software safety as this AMC, and be approved by the European Aviation Safety Agency (EASA) on a product or ETSO article basis.
- b. This AMC recognises the following European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE) and Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA) documents:
  1. EUROCAE ED-12C, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 1 January 2012, and RTCA DO-178C, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 13 December 2011;
  2. EUROCAE ED-215, Software Tool Qualification Considerations, 1 January 2012, and RTCA DO-330, Software Tool Qualification Considerations, 13 December 2011;
  3. EUROCAE ED-216, Formal Methods Supplement to ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012, and RTCA DO-333, Formal Methods Supplement to DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011;
  4. EUROCAE ED-217, Object-Oriented Technology and Related Techniques Supplement to ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012, and RTCA DO-332, Object-Oriented Technology and Related Techniques Supplement to DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011; and
  5. EUROCAE ED-218, Model-Based Development and Verification Supplement to ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012, and RTCA DO-331, Model-Based Development and Verification Supplement to DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011.

Note: EUROCAE ED is hereinafter referred to as 'ED'; RTCA DO is hereinafter referred to as 'DO'. Where the notation 'ED-XXX/DO-XXX' appears in this document, the referenced documents are recognised as being equivalent.

- c. This AMC identifies the following as supporting documents:
  - ED-94C, Supporting Information for ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012; and
  - DO-248C, Supporting Information for DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011.ED-94C/DO-248C contains a collection of frequently asked questions (FAQs) and discussion papers (DPs) compiled and approved by the authors of ED-12C and DO-178C to provide clarification of the guidance contained in ED-12C/DO-178C.
- d. References to the use of ED-12C/DO-178C in this AMC include the use of ED-215/DO-330 and supplements ED-216/DO-333, ED-217/DO-332 and ED-218/DO-331, as applicable.

- e. This AMC establishes guidance for using existing ED-12B/DO-178B processes for new software development.
- f. This AMC also establishes guidance for transitioning to ED-12C/DO-178C when making modifications to software previously approved using ED-12/DO-178, ED-12A/DO-178A, or ED-12B/DO-178B.

## **2. APPLICABILITY**

This AMC applies to applicants, design approval holders (DAHs), and developers of airborne systems and equipment containing software to be installed on type-certified aircraft, engines, and propellers, or to be used in ETSO articles.

## **3. REPLACEMENT**

This AMC replaces and cancels AMC 20-115C, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 12 September 2013.

## **4. BACKGROUND**

- a. ED-12C/DO-178C, Appendix A, Section 3, provides a summary of the differences between ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B. The EUROCAE and RTCA Inc. documents listed in subparagraph 1.b. of this AMC provide guidance for establishing software life cycle planning, development, verification, configuration management, quality assurance and certification liaison processes to be used in the development of software for airborne systems. The guidance provided in these documents is in the form of:
  - 1. objectives for software life cycle processes;
  - 2. activities that provide a means for satisfying the objectives; and
  - 3. descriptions of the evidence indicating that the objectives have been satisfied.
- b. The technical content of this AMC is, as far as practicable, harmonised with Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) AC 20-115D, which is also based on ED-12C/DO-178C.

## **5. USING ED-12B/DO-178B PROCESSES AND PROCEDURES FOR NEW SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT**

- a. Applicants who have established software development assurance processes using ED-12B/DO-178B may continue to use those processes (including tool qualification processes) for new software development and certification projects, provided that the following criteria are met:
  - 1. The software development assurance processes are shown to have no known process deficiencies, such as those discovered during internal or external audits or reviews, or identified in open problem reports (OPRs), resulting in non-satisfaction of one or more ED-12B/DO-178B objectives. Evidence of resolution and closure of all process-related OPRs and of all process-related audit or review findings may be requested.
  - 2. The processes were previously used to develop software that was used in a certified product at a software level at least as high as the software level of the software to be developed.
  - 3. If model-based development (MBD), object-oriented technology (OOT), or formal methods (FMs) are to be used, existing processes incorporating these methods should have been evaluated and found to be acceptable by EASA on a previous certified project. These processes should have been developed in accordance with

EASA guidance specific to the technique, such as that contained in an associated certification review item (CRI) or a published certification memorandum (CM).

4. If configuration data is used, as defined in ED-12C/DO-178C under 'Parameter data item', existing processes for such data should have been evaluated and found to be acceptable by EASA on a previous certified project. In the absence of processes for using configuration data, the applicant should establish new processes for using PDIs in accordance with ED-12C/DO-178C.
  5. There are no significant changes to the software processes described in the plans or to the software development environment. This should be supported through analysis of the changes to the previously accepted software development processes and environment.
  6. The applicant does not intend to declare the proposed software as having satisfied ED-12C/DO-178C.
- b. If the criteria of subparagraph 5.a. are not met, the applicant should upgrade their processes and develop the new software using ED-12C/DO-178C; tool qualification processes should be addressed in accordance with Section 12.2 of ED-12C/DO-178C and paragraph 10(c) of this AMC.
  - c. Applicants or developers should establish new software life cycle processes in accordance with ED-12C/DO-178C.

## **6. USING EUROCAE ED-12C AND RTCA DO-178C**

ED-12C/DO-178C is an acceptable means of compliance (AMC) with regard to the software aspects of product certification or ETSOs authorisation. When using ED-12C/DO-178C, the following should apply:

- a. The applicant should satisfy all of the objectives associated with the software level assigned to the software, and develop all of the associated life cycle data to demonstrate compliance with the applicable objectives, as listed in the Annex A tables of ED-12C/DO-178C and, where applicable, of ED-215/DO-330, ED-216/DO-333, ED-217/DO-332, and ED-218/DO-331. The applicant should plan and execute activities that satisfy each objective.
- b. The applicant should submit to EASA the life cycle data specified in Section 9.3 of ED-12C/DO-178C, and Section 9.0 a. of ED-215/DO-330, as applicable to tool qualification. It is the applicant's responsibility to perform the planned activities and produce the life cycle data necessary to satisfy all the applicable objectives.
- c. Section 9.4 of ED-12C/DO-178C specifies the software life cycle data related to the type design of the certified product. However, not all of the specified data applies to all software levels; specifically the design description and the source code are not part of the type design data for Level D software.
- d. The applicant should make available to EASA, upon request, any of the data described in Section 11 of ED-12C/DO-178C, applicable tool qualification data, data outputs from any applicable supplements, and any other data needed to substantiate the satisfaction of all the applicable objectives.
- e. EASA may publish an AMC to specific certification specifications (CSs), stating the required relationship between the criticality of the software-based systems and the software levels, as defined in ED-12C/DO-178C. Such AMC takes precedence over the application of Section 2.3 of ED-12C/DO-178C.

**7. RESERVED****8. GUIDANCE APPLICABLE TO ED-12B/DO-178B OR ED-12C/DO-178C****a. The use of supplements with ED-12C/DO-178C**

The applicant should apply the guidance of supplements to ED-216/DO-333, ED-217/DO-332 and ED-218/DO-331 when incorporating the addressed software development techniques. If the applicant intends to use multiple software development techniques together, more than one supplement applies. The applicant should not use supplements as stand-alone documents.

**1. When using one or more supplements, the applicant's plan for software aspects of certification (PSAC) should describe:**

- a. how the applicant applies ED-12C/DO-178C and the supplement(s) together; and
- b. how the applicant addresses the applicable ED-12C/DO-178C objectives and those added or modified by the supplement(s): which objectives from which documents apply to which software components, and how the applicant's planned activities satisfy all the applicable objectives.

**2. If the applicant intends to use any techniques addressed by the supplements to develop a qualified tool (for tool qualification levels (TQLs) 1, 2, 3, and 4 only), then the tool qualification plan (TQP) should describe:**

- a. based on supplement analysis, which tool qualification objectives are affected by the use of the technique(s); and
- b. how the planned activities satisfy the added or modified objectives.

**3. The intent of this subparagraph is to provide clarification of Section MB.6.8.1 of ED-218/DO-331. If the applicant uses models as defined in Section MB.1.0 of ED-218/DO-331 as the basis for developing software, the applicant should apply the guidance of ED-218/DO-331. When applying Section MB.6.8.1 of ED-218/DO-331, the applicant should do the following:**

- a. identify which review and analysis objectives are planned to be satisfied by simulation alone or in combination with reviews and analyses; all other objectives should be satisfied by reviews and analyses, as described in Section MB.6.3 of ED-218/DO-331; and
- b. for each identified objective, justify in detail how the simulation activity, alone or in combination with reviews and analyses, fully satisfies the specific review and analysis objective.

**b. Guidance on field-loadable software (FLS)**

This Section supplements ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B. The applicant should use this guidance in addition to ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B when using FLS in their project.

1. As the developer, the applicant should provide the necessary information to support the system-level guidance identified in items a, b, c and d of ED-12C/DO-178C, Section 2.5.5, and items a, b, c and d of ED-12B/DO-178B, Section 2.5.
2. The FLS should be protected against corruption or partial loading at an integrity level appropriate for the FLS software level.

3. The FLS part number, when loaded in the airborne equipment, should be verifiable by appropriate means.
4. Protection mechanisms should be implemented to prevent inadvertent enabling of the field-loading function during cruising or any other safety-critical phase.

c. Guidance on user-modifiable software (UMS)

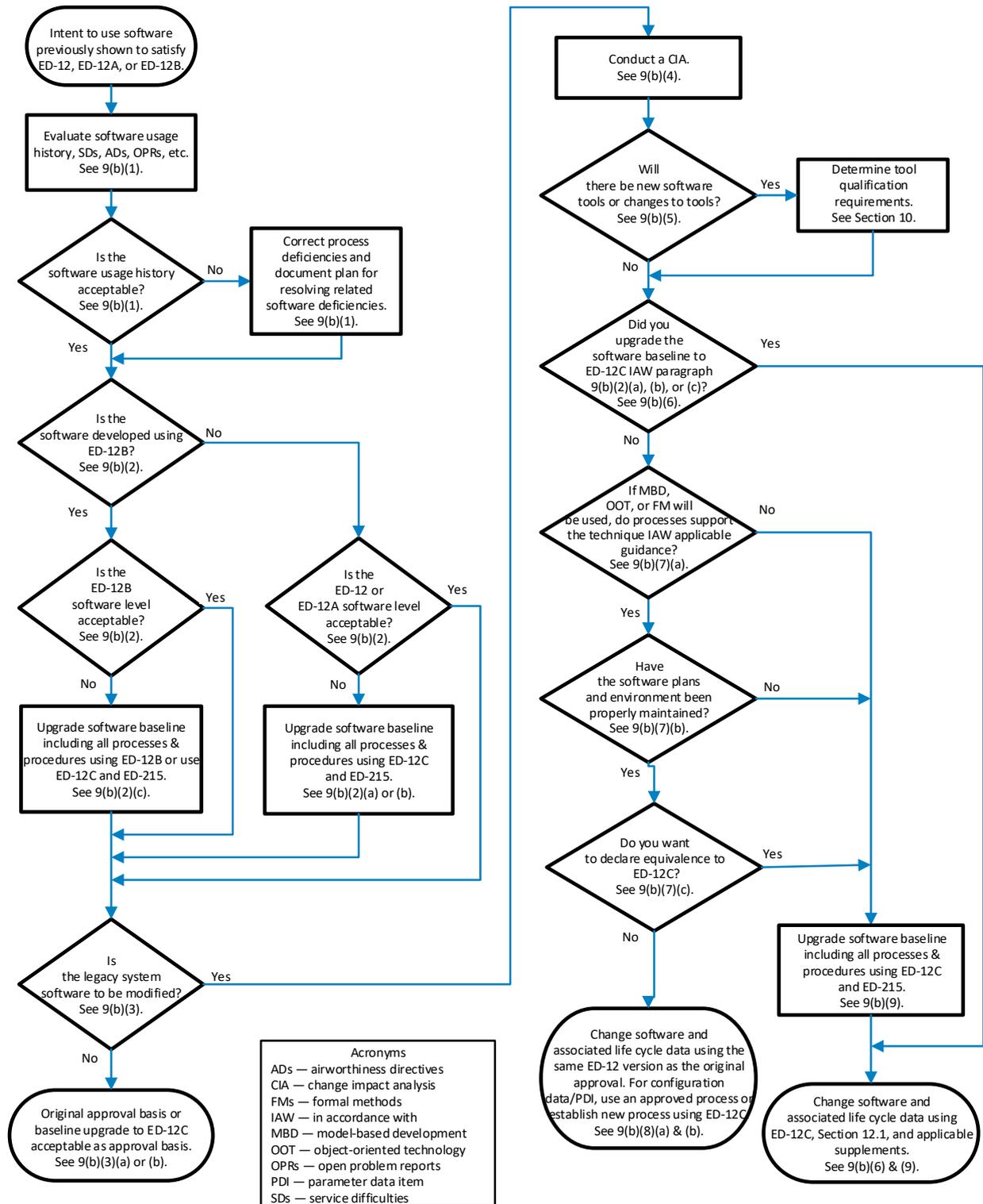
This Section supplements ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B. The applicant should use this guidance in addition to ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B when using UMS in their project.

1. As the developer, the applicant should provide the necessary information to support the system-level guidance identified in items a, b, c and f of ED-12C/DO-178C, Section 2.5.2, and items a and b of ED-12B/DO-178B, Section 2.4.
2. The modifiable part of the software should be developed at a software level at least as high as the software level assigned to that software.

**9. MODIFYING AND REUSING SOFTWARE APPROVED USING ED-12/DO-178, ED-12A/DO-178A, OR ED-12B/DO-178B**

- a. EASA previously approved the software for many airborne systems using ED-12/DO-178, ED-12A/DO-178A, or ED-12B/DO-178B as a means of compliance. In this AMC, reference to legacy software includes the previously approved software or component(s) that makes up the software used in legacy systems. In this subparagraph, it is described how to demonstrate compliance with the software aspects of certification for an application that includes modifications to legacy software or the use of unmodified legacy software.
- b. Figure 1 presents a flow chart for using legacy software. The applicant should use the flow chart while following the procedures in this subparagraph if the applicant modifies or reuses legacy software. Although these procedures apply to the majority of projects, the applicant should coordinate with EASA any cases that do not follow this flow.

Figure 1 — Legacy software process flow chart



Note: references to RTCA documents are intentionally omitted for formatting purposes.

1. The applicant should assess the legacy software to be modified or reused for its usage history from previous installations. If the software has safety-related service difficulties, airworthiness directives, or OPRs with a potential safety impact on the proposed installation, the applicant should establish plans to resolve all related software deficiencies. Prior to modifying or reusing the legacy software, the applicant should correct any related development process deficiencies, such as those discovered during internal or external audits or reviews, or identified in OPRs resulting in non-satisfaction of one or more ED-12B/DO-178B objectives. Evidence of resolution and closure of all process-related OPRs and of all process-related audit or review findings may be requested.
2. The system safety process assigns the minimum development assurance level based on the severity classifications of failure conditions for a given function. The ED-12B/DO-178B software levels are consistent with the ED-12C/DO-178C software levels. However, ED-12/DO-178 and ED-12A/DO-178A were published prior to the establishment of the software levels addressed in ED-12B/DO-178B and ED-12C/DO-178C. The applicant should use Table 1 to determine whether their legacy software level satisfies the software level assigned by the system safety process for the proposed installation. A '✓' in the intersection of the row and column indicates that the legacy software level is acceptable. For example, legacy software with development assurance for ED-12A/DO-178A software Level 2 can be considered to satisfy software Levels B, C, and D. A blank indicates that the software level is not acceptable. Therefore, the ED-12A/DO-178A software developed for software Level 2 would not be acceptable where software Level A is required.

Table 1 — Software level relationships

Assigned software level	Legacy software level per ED-12B				Legacy software level per ED-12A			Legacy software Level per ED-12		
	A	B	C	D	1	2	3	Critical	Essential	Non-Essential
A	✓				✓			✓		
B	✓	✓			✓	✓		✓		
C	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓		✓	✓	
D	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	

- a. If the legacy software was developed at software level 'Essential' using ED-12/DO-178 and was previously accepted by the certification authority as acceptable for software Level B, it remains acceptable for the new project. If the ED-12/DO-178 legacy software was not previously assessed, or the software level is not acceptable, then the applicant should upgrade the software development baseline, including all processes and procedures (as well as tool qualification processes), using Section 12.1.4 of ED-12C/DO-178C, and ED-215/DO-330.
- b. If the legacy software was developed using ED-12A/DO-178A, and the software level is not acceptable, the applicant should upgrade the software development baseline, including all processes and procedures (as well as tool qualification processes), using Section 12.1.4 of ED-12C/DO-178C, and ED-215/DO-330.

- c. If the legacy software was developed using ED-12B/DO-178B, and the software level is not acceptable, the applicant should upgrade the software development baseline, including all processes and procedures (as well as tool qualification processes), using Section 12.1.4 of ED-12B/DO-178B or ED-12C/DO-178C, and ED-215/DO-330.
3. If the criteria of 9(b)(1) and 9(b)(2) are satisfied and modifications to the software are not required, then:
  - a. the original approval may serve as the basis for the software in the installation approval of the proposed system; and
  - b. if the applicant upgraded the software development baseline using ED-12C/DO-178C and updated all processes and procedures, as well as tool qualification processes, to ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330, then the applicant may declare their software as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C; however, the applicant cannot declare their unmodified tools as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330. The applicant should make all subsequent modifications to all their software and tools using their processes and procedures that satisfy ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330.
4. If modifications to the software are required, the applicant should conduct a software change impact analysis (CIA) to determine the extent of the modifications, the impact of those modifications, and what verification is required to ensure that the modified software performs its intended function and continues to satisfy the identified means of compliance. The applicant should:
  - a. identify the software changes to be incorporated and conduct a CIA consisting of one or more analyses associated with the software change, as identified in ED-12C/DO-178C, Section 12.1;
  - b. conduct the verification, as indicated by the CIA; and
  - c. summarise the results of the CIA in the plan for software aspects of certification (PSAC) or in the software accomplishment summary (SAS).
5. If new software tools or modifications to tools are needed, please refer to paragraph 10 of this AMC to determine the tool qualification requirements.
6. If the applicant upgraded the software baseline to ED-12C/DO-178C in accordance with subparagraph 9(b)(2), they should make all modifications to the software using ED-12C/DO-178C, Section 12.1. If the applicant wants to declare their software as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C, the applicant's equivalence declaration applies to both modified and unmodified software and is valid even if the applicant uses unmodified tools that have not been qualified using ED-12C/DO-178C. However, the applicant cannot declare their unmodified tools as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330. All subsequent modifications to all their software and tools are to be made using processes and procedures satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330.
7. If the applicant wants to use their existing processes to make modifications to their legacy software using the version of ED-12/DO-178 (i.e. ED-12/DO-178, ED-12A/DO-178A, or ED-12B/DO-178B) used for the original software approval, the applicant may do so, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

- a. If MBD, OOT, or FMs are to be used, existing processes incorporating these methods should have been evaluated and found to be acceptable by EASA on a previous certified project. These processes should have been developed in accordance with EASA guidance specific to the technique, such as that contained in an associated CRI or a published CM.
  - b. The applicant has maintained, and can still use, the software plans, processes, and life cycle environment, including improvements to processes or to the life cycle environment as captured in revised plans.
  - c. The applicant does not intend to declare the proposed software as satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C.
8. If the conditions of subparagraph 9(b)(7) are satisfied:
- a. the applicant may accomplish all modifications to the software using the same ED-12/DO-178 version as for the original approval. However, the applicant may not declare their software as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C; and
  - b. if configuration data is used, as defined under 'Parameter data item' in ED-12C/DO-178C, the applicant may use existing processes for such data if the processes were evaluated and found to be acceptable by EASA on a previous certified project; in the absence of processes for using configuration data, the applicant should establish new processes for using parameter data items (PDIs) in accordance with ED-12C/DO-178C.
9. If any of the conditions of subparagraph 9(b)(7) is not satisfied, the applicant should update all their processes and procedures, as well as tool qualification processes, using ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330, and make all modifications to the software using ED-12C/DO-178C, Section 12.1. If the applicant wants to declare their software as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C, their declaration applies to both the modified and unmodified software and is valid even if the applicant uses unmodified tools that have not been qualified using ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330. However, the applicant cannot declare their unmodified tools as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330. The applicant should make all subsequent modifications to all their software and tools using their processes and procedures that satisfy ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330.

## **10. TOOL QUALIFICATION**

Sections 12.2 of ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-215/DO-330 provide an acceptable method for tool qualification. ED-215/DO-330 contains its own complete set of objectives, activities, and life cycle data for tool qualification.

- a. If the applicant's legacy software was previously approved using ED-12/DO-178 or ED-12A/DO-178A, and the applicant intends to use a new or modified tool for modifications to the legacy software, they should use the criteria of ED-12C/DO-178C, Section 12.2 to determine whether tool qualification is needed. If the applicant needs to qualify the tool, they should use the software level assigned by the system safety assessment for determining the required TQL, and should use ED-215/DO-330 for the applicable objectives, activities, and life cycle data. The applicant may declare their qualified tool as satisfying ED-215/DO-330, but not the legacy software as equivalent to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C.

- b. If the applicant’s legacy software was previously approved using ED-12B/DO-178B, and they do not intend to declare equivalence to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C, the applicant can either:
  1. use their ED-12B/DO-178B tool qualification processes for qualifying new or modified tools in support of modifications to ED-12B/DO-178B legacy software, or
  2. update their tool qualification processes and qualify the tool using ED 215/DO-330, referring to Table 2 of this document for determining the required TQL; the applicant may then declare their qualified tool as satisfying ED-215/DO-330.
  
- c. If the applicant’s legacy software was previously approved using ED-12B/DO-178B, the applicant intends to declare equivalence to satisfying ED-12C/DO-178C, and has ED-12B/DO-178B legacy tools that need to be qualified, the applicant should follow the guidance of this subparagraph.
  1. ED-12C/DO-178C establishes five levels of tool qualification based on the tool use and its potential impact on the software life cycle processes (see Section 12.2.2 and Table 12-1 of ED-12C/DO-178C). However, ED-12C/DO-178C does not address the use of tools previously qualified according to the ED-12B/DO-178B criteria. For a tool previously qualified as an ED-12B/DO-178B development tool or verification tool, the applicant should use Table 2 below to determine the correlation between the ED-12B/DO-178B tool qualification type and the ED-12C/DO-178C tool criteria and TQLs.

**Table 2 — Correlation between ED-12B/DO-178B tool qualification type and ED-12C/DO-178C tool criteria and TQLs**

ED-12B/DO-178B Tool Qualification Type	Software Level	ED-12C/DO-178C Tool Criteria	ED-12C/ED-215 TQL
Development	A	1	TQL-1
Development	B	1	TQL-2
Development	C	1	TQL-3
Development	D	1	TQL-4
Verification	A, B	2	TQL-4
Verification	C, D	2	TQL-5
Verification	All	3	TQL-5

2. Development tools previously qualified using ED-12B/DO-178B
  - a. If the ED-12B/DO-178B software level assigned to the tool correlates with or exceeds the required TQL established by ED-12C/DO-178C, the applicant may continue to use their ED-12B/DO-178B tool qualification processes. If there are changes to the tool’s operational environment or to the tool itself, then the applicant should conduct a tool CIA in accordance with Section 11.2.2 or 11.2.3 of ED-215/DO-330, respectively, and perform changes using their ED-12B/DO-178B tool qualification processes.
  - b. If the ED-12B/DO-178B software level assigned to the tool does not satisfy the required TQL, the applicant should update their tool qualification processes and requalify the tool using ED-215/DO-330.

- c. The applicant may declare their tool as equivalent to satisfying ED-215/DO-330 if all the changes to the tool and to their tool qualification processes satisfy ED-215/DO-330.
- 3. Verification tools previously qualified using ED-12B/DO-178B
  - a. If TQL-5 is required, and the applicant's verification tool was previously qualified using ED-12B/DO-178B:
    - i. the applicant may continue to use their ED-12B/DO-178B tool qualification process; and
    - ii. If there are changes to the tool or the tool's operational environment, the applicant should conduct a tool CIA and reverify the tool using their ED-12B/DO-178B tool qualification processes or requalify the tool using ED-215/DO-330.
  - b. If TQL-4 is required, the applicant should requalify their verification tool using ED-215/DO-330.
  - c. The applicant may declare their tool as equivalent to satisfying ED-215/DO-330 if all changes to the tool (if applicable) and to their tool qualification processes satisfy ED-215/DO-330.

## **11. RELATED REGULATORY, ADVISORY, AND INDUSTRY MATERIAL**

### **a. Related EASA CSs**

- 1. Decision No. 2003/14/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 14 November 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance for normal, utility, aerobatic and commuter category aeroplanes ('CS-23').
- 2. Decision No. 2003/2/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 17 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for large aeroplanes ('CS-25').
- 3. Decision No. 2003/15/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 14 November 2003 on certification specifications for small rotorcraft ('CS-27').
- 4. Decision No. 2003/16/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 14 November 2003 on certification specifications for large rotorcraft ('CS-29').
- 5. Decision No. 2003/9/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 24 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for engines ('CS-E').
- 6. Decision No. 2003/7/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 24 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for propellers ('CS-P').
- 7. Decision No. 2003/10/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 24 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for European Technical Standard Orders ('CS-ETSO').

8. Decision No. 2003/5/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 17 October 2003 on certification specifications, including airworthiness codes and acceptable means of compliance, for auxiliary power units ('CS-APU').
  9. Decision No. 2003/12/RM of the Executive Director of the Agency of 5 November 2003 on general acceptable means of compliance for airworthiness of products, parts and appliances ('AMC-20').
- b. FAA advisory circulars (ACs)**
1. AC 23.1309-1E, System Safety Analysis and Assessment for Part 23 Airplanes, 17 November 2011.
  2. AC 27.1309A, Equipment, Systems, and Installations (included in AC 27-1B, Certification of Normal Category Rotorcraft), 4 February 2016.
  3. AC 29.1309A, Equipment, Systems, and Installations (included in AC 29-2C, Certification of Transport Category Rotorcraft), 4 February 2016.
- c. Industry documents**
1. EUROCAE ED-12, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, May 1982 (no longer in print).
  2. EUROCAE ED-12A, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, October 1985 (no longer in print).
  3. EUROCAE ED-12B, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 1 December 1992.
  4. EUROCAE ED-12C, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 1 January 2012.
  5. EUROCAE ED-94C, Supporting Information for ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012.
  6. EUROCAE ED-215, Software Tool Qualification Considerations, 1 January 2012.
  7. EUROCAE ED-216, Formal Methods Supplement to ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012.
  8. EUROCAE ED-217, Object-Oriented Technology and Related Techniques Supplement to ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012.
  9. EUROCAE ED-218, Model-Based Development and Verification Supplement to ED-12C and ED-109A, 1 January 2012.
  10. RTCA DO-178, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, January 1982 (no longer in print).
  11. RTCA DO-178A, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 1 March 1985 (no longer in print).
  12. RTCA DO-178B, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 1 December 1992.
  13. RTCA DO-178C, Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification, 13 December 2011.
  14. RTCA DO-248C, Supporting Information for DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011.

15. RTCA DO-297, Integrated Modular Avionics (IMA) Development Guidance and Certification Considerations, 8 November 2005.
16. RTCA DO-330, Software Tool Qualification Considerations, 13 December 2011.
17. RTCA DO-331, Model-Based Development and Verification Supplement to DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011.
18. RTCA DO-332, Object-Oriented Technology and Related Techniques Supplement to DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011.
19. RTCA DO-333, Formal Methods Supplement to DO-178C and DO-278A, 13 December 2011.

## 12. AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS

- EASA CSs and AMC are available at: [www.easa.europa.eu](http://www.easa.europa.eu).
- FAA ACs are available at: [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
- EUROCAE are available on payment at:  
European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment  
102 rue Etienne Dolet, 92240 Malakoff, France  
Telephone: +33 1 40 92 79 30; Fax +33 1 46 55 62 65  
Email: [eurocae@eurocae.net](mailto:eurocae@eurocae.net), website: [www.eurocae.net](http://www.eurocae.net).
- RTCA documents are available on payment at:  
RTCA, Inc.  
1150 18<sup>th</sup> Street NW, Suite 910, Washington DC 20036, USA  
Email: [info@rtca.org](mailto:info@rtca.org), website: [www.rtca.org](http://www.rtca.org).

[Amdt 20/14]

## GM1 to AMC 20-115D – Software change impact analyses (CIAs)

*ED Decision 2017/020/R*

- a. These practices provide complementary information to ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B, Sections 12.1.1, 12.1.2, and 12.1.3, and [AMC 20-115D](#), subparagraph 9(b)(4). The applicant may use these practices when they need to conduct a software CIA.
- b. A CIA identifies the released software baseline upon which the proposed software is to be built, providing:
  1. a summary of the changes and the impact of those changes;
  2. a listing and descriptions of the problem reports to be corrected as part of the intended change and/or change requests related to those changes; and
  3. a listing of new functions to be activated and/or implemented.
- c. A CIA addresses changes to the following items, where applicable:
  1. the software level;
  2. the development or verification environment;
  3. the software processes;

4. the tools (e.g. when a new tool version is introduced or a tool's use is modified);
  5. the processor or other hardware components and interfaces;
  6. the configuration data, especially when activating or deactivating functions;
  7. the software interface characteristics and input/output (I/O) requirements; and
  8. the software requirements, design, architecture, and code components, where such changes are not limited to the modified life cycle data, but should also consider the items affected by the change.
- d. For each applicable item of subparagraph 13(c) above, a CIA describes the resulting impact of the change(s) and identifies the activities to be performed to satisfy ED-12C/DO-178C or ED-12B/DO-178B and continue to satisfy the requirements for safe operation.

[Amdt 20/14]

## GM2 to AMC 20-115D – Clarification of data coupling and control coupling

*ED Decision 2017/020/R*

These practices provide complementary information to ED-94C/DO-248C FAQ#67 for satisfying objective A-7 (8) of ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B.

- a. Data coupling analysis is of a different type and purpose than control coupling analysis. Both analyses are necessary to satisfy said objective.
- b. Although they support a verification objective, data coupling and control coupling analyses rely on good practices in the software design phase, for example, through the specification of the interfaces (I/O) and of the dependencies between components.

[Amdt 20/14]

## GM3 to AMC 20-115D – Error-handling at design level

*ED Decision 2017/020/R*

- a. These practices provide complementary information to ED-12C/DO-178C and ED-12B/DO-178B, Sections 6.3.2, 6.3.3, and 6.3.4. Section 6.3.4.f., and identifies potential sources of errors that require specific activities focused at the source code review level. However, in order to protect against foreseeable unintended software behaviour, it is beneficial and recommended to handle these sources of error at the design level.
- b. The possibility of unintended software behaviour may be reduced by considering the following activities:
  1. identification of foreseeable sources of software errors, which include:
    - a. runtime exceptions or errors, such as fixed/floating-point arithmetic overflow, stack/heap overflow, division by zero, or counter and timer overrun/wrap-around;
    - b. data/memory corruption or timing issues, such as those caused by a lack of partitioning or improper interrupt management or cache management; and
    - c. features leading to unpredictable programme execution, such as dynamic allocation, out-of-order execution, or resource contention;
  2. for each foreseeable source of software error, identification of the associated mitigation;

3. specification of protection mechanisms in the software requirements (high-level or low-level requirements) which should in particular include the specification of error-handling mechanisms; and
  4. for software Levels A and B, it is recommended that consideration be given to incorporating runtime protection mechanisms since reliance on probabilistic approaches or static analyses alone may not be appropriate; it may be a good practice to implement such runtime protection mechanisms for the other software levels as well.
- c. The use of FMs in accordance with ED-216/DO-333 may enhance the detection of runtime errors.

[Amdt 20/14]

## AMC 20-128A

### AMC 20-128A Design Considerations for Minimizing Hazards Caused by Uncontained Turbine Engine and Auxiliary Power Unit Rotor Failure

ED Decision 2003/12/RM

#### 1 PURPOSE.

This acceptable means of compliance (AMC) sets forth a method of compliance with the requirements of CS 23.901(f), 23.903(b)(1), 25.903(d)(1) and 25A903(d)(1) of the EASA Certification Specifications (CS) pertaining to design precautions taken to minimise the hazards to an aeroplane in the event of uncontained engine or auxiliary power unit (APU) rotor failures. The guidance provided within this AMC is harmonised with that of the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) and is intended to provide a method of compliance that has been found acceptable. As with all AMC material, it is not mandatory and does not constitute a regulation.

#### 2 RESERVED

#### 3 APPLICABILITY.

This AMC applies to CS-23 and CS-25 aeroplanes.

#### 4 RELATED DOCUMENTS.

Paragraphs 23.903, and 25.903 of the CS and other paragraphs relating to uncontained engine failures.

- a. Related Joint Aviation Requirements. Sections which prescribe requirements for the design, substantiation and certification relating to uncontained engine debris include:

§ 23.863, 25.863	Flammable fluid fire protection
§ 25.365	Pressurised compartment loads
§ 25.571	Damage-tolerance and fatigue evaluation of structure
§ 25.963	Fuel tanks: general
§ 25.1189	Shut-off means
§ 25.1461	Equipment containing high energy rotors
CS-APU	Auxiliary Power Units

NOTE: The provisions of § 25.1461 have occasionally been used in the approval of APU installations regardless of protection from high energy rotor disintegration. However, the more specific requirements of CS 25.903(d)(1) and associated guidance described within this AMC take precedence over the requirements of CS 25.1461.

- b. Other Documents

ISO 2685:1992	Aircraft – Environmental conditions and test procedures for airborne equipment – Resistance to fire in designated fire zones
AC 20-135	Powerplant Installation and Propulsion System Component Fire Protection Test Methods, Standards, and Criteria.

- c. Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) Documents.

AIR1537	Report on Aircraft Engine Containment, October, 1977.
AIR4003	Uncontained Turbine Rotor Events Data Period 1976 through 1983.
AIR4770	Uncontained Turbine Rotor Events Data Period 1984 (Draft) through 1989.

These documents can be obtained from the Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc., 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, Pennsylvania, 15096.

## 5 BACKGROUND.

Although turbine engine and APU manufacturers are making efforts to reduce the probability of uncontained rotor failures, service experience shows that uncontained compressor and turbine rotor failures continue to occur. Turbine engine failures have resulted in high velocity fragment penetration of adjacent structures, fuel tanks, fuselage, system components and other engines on the aeroplane. While APU uncontained rotor failures do occur, and to date the impact damage to the aeroplane has been minimal, some rotor failures do produce fragments that should be considered. Since it is unlikely that uncontained rotor failures can be completely eliminated, CS-23 and CS-25 require that aeroplane design precautions be taken to minimise the hazard from such events.

- a. Uncontained gas turbine engine rotor failure statistics are presented in the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) reports covering time periods and number of uncontained events listed in the table shown below. The following statistics summarise 28 years of service experience for fixed wing aeroplanes and do not include data for rotorcraft and APUs:

Report No.	Period	No. of Events		
		Total	Category 3	Category 4
AIR1537	1962–75	275	44	5
AIR4003	1976–83	237	27	3
AIR4770 (Draft)	1984–89	164	22	7
TOTAL		676	93	15

The total of 676 uncontained events includes 93 events classified in Category 3 and 15 events classified in Category 4 damage to the aeroplane. Category 3 damage is defined as significant aeroplane damage with the aeroplane capable of continuing flight and making a safe landing. Category 4 damage is defined as severe aeroplane damage involving a crash landing, critical injuries, fatalities or hull loss.

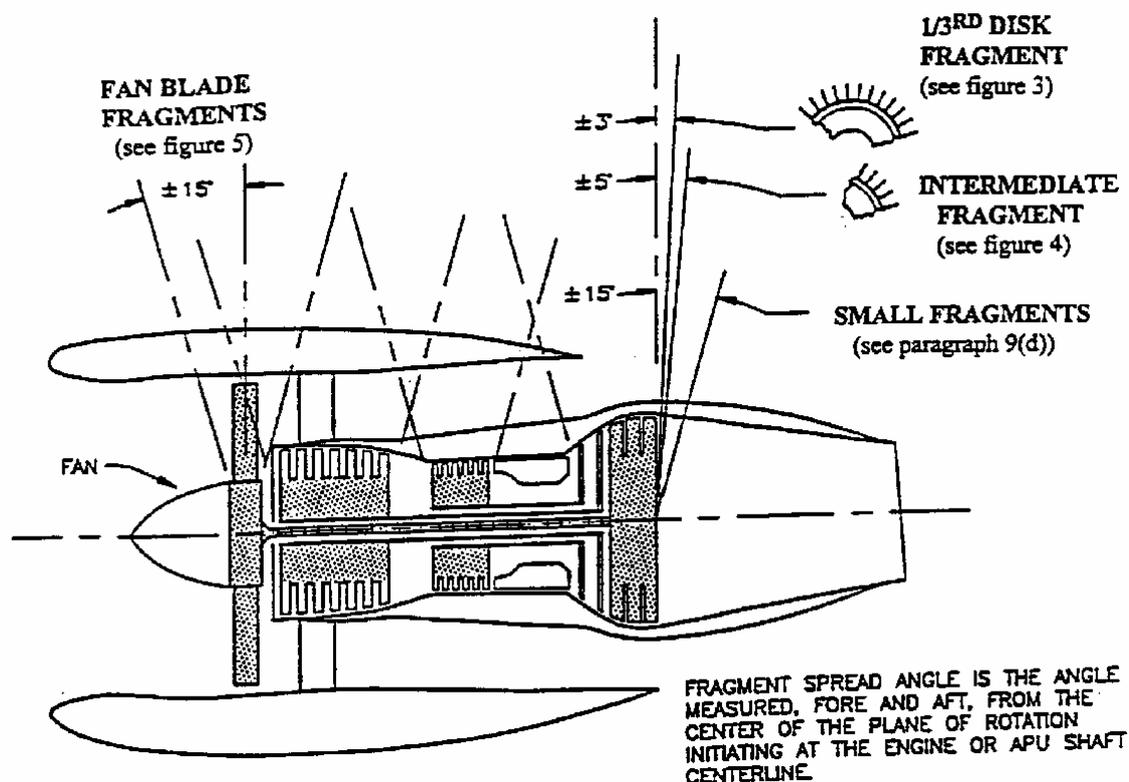
During this 28 year period there were 1,089.6 million engine operating hours on commercial transports. The events were caused by a wide variety of influences classed as environmental (bird ingestion, corrosion/erosion, foreign object damage (FOD)), manufacturing and material defects, mechanical, and human factors (maintenance and overhaul, inspection error and operational procedures).

- b. Uncontained APU rotor failure statistics covering 1962 through 1993 indicate that there have been several uncontained failures in at least 250 million hours of operation on transport category aeroplanes. No Category 3 or 4 events were reported and all failures occurred during ground operation. These events were caused by a wide variety of influences such as corrosion, ingestion of de-icing fluid, manufacturing and material defects, mechanical, and human factors (maintenance and overhaul, inspection error and operational procedures).

- c. The statistics in the SAE studies indicate the existence of many different causes of failures not readily apparent or predictable by failure analysis methods. Because of the variety of causes of uncontained rotor failures, it is difficult to anticipate all possible causes of failure and to provide protection to all areas. However, design considerations outlined in this AMC provide guidelines for achieving the desired objective of minimising the hazard to an aeroplane from uncontained rotor failures. These guidelines, therefore, assume a rotor failure will occur and that analysis of the effects of this failure is necessary. These guidelines are based on service experience and tests but are not necessarily the only means available to the designer.

## 6 TERMINOLOGY.

- a. Rotor. Rotor means the rotating components of the engine and APU that analysis, test, and/or experience has shown can be released during uncontained failure. The engine or APU manufacturer should define those components that constitute the rotor for each engine and APU type design. Typically rotors have included, as a minimum, discs, hubs, drums, seals, impellers, blades and spacers.
- b. Blade. The airfoil sections (excluding platform and root) of the fan, compressor and turbine.
- c. Uncontained Failure. For the purpose of aeroplane evaluations in accordance with this AMC, uncontained failure of a turbine engine is any failure which results in the escape of rotor fragments from the engine or APU that could result in a hazard. Rotor failures which are of concern are those where released fragments have sufficient energy to create a hazard to the aeroplane.
- d. Critical Component. A critical component is any component whose failure would contribute to or cause a failure condition which would prevent the continued safe flight and landing of the aeroplane. These components should be considered on an individual basis and in relation to other components which could be damaged by the same fragment or by other fragments from the same uncontained event.
- e. Continued Safe Flight and Landing. Continued safe flight and landing means that the aeroplane is capable of continued controlled flight and landing, possibly using emergency procedures and without exceptional pilot skill or strength, with conditions of considerably increased flightcrew workload and degraded flight characteristics of the aeroplane.
- f. Fragment Spread Angle. The fragment spread angle is the angle measured, fore and aft from the centre of the plane of rotation of an individual rotor stage, initiating at the engine or APU shaft centreline (see Figure 1).



**FIGURE 1 – ESTIMATED PATH OF FRAGMENTS**

- g. Impact Area. The impact area is that area of the aeroplane likely to be impacted by uncontained fragments generated during a rotor failure (see Paragraph 9).
- h. Engine and APU Failure Model. A model describing the size, mass, spread angle, energy level and number of engine or APU rotor fragments to be considered when analysing the aeroplane design is presented in Paragraph 9.

## 7 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS.

Practical design precautions should be used to minimise the damage that can be caused by uncontained engine and APU rotor fragments. The most effective methods for minimising the hazards from uncontained rotor fragments include location of critical components outside the fragment impact areas or separation, isolation, redundancy, and shielding of critical aeroplane components and/or systems. The following design considerations are recommended:

- a. Consider the location of the engine and APU rotors relative to critical components, systems or areas of the aeroplane such as:
  - (1) Any other engine(s) or an APU that provides an essential function;
  - (2) Pressurised sections of the fuselage and other primary structure of the fuselage, wings and empennage;
  - (3) Pilot compartment areas;
  - (4) Fuel system components, piping and tanks;
  - (5) Control systems, such as primary and secondary flight controls, electrical power cables, wiring, hydraulic systems, engine control systems, flammable fluid shut-off valves, and the associated actuation wiring or cables;

- (6) Any fire extinguisher system of a cargo compartment, an APU, or another engine including electrical wiring and fire extinguishing agent plumbing to these systems;
  - (7) Engine air inlet attachments and effects of engine case deformations caused by fan blade debris resulting in attachment failures;
  - (8) Instrumentation essential for continued safe flight and landing;
  - (9) Thrust reverser systems where inadvertent deployment could be catastrophic; and
  - (10) Oxygen systems for high altitude aeroplanes, where these are critical due to descent time.
- b. Location of Critical Systems and Components. Critical aeroplane flight and engine control cables, wiring, flammable fluid carrying components and lines (including vent lines), hydraulic fluid lines and components, and pneumatic ducts should be located to minimise hazards caused by uncontained rotors and fan blade debris. The following design practices should be considered:
- (1) Locate, if possible, critical components or systems outside the likely debris impact areas.
  - (2) Duplicate and separate critical components or systems, or provide suitable protection if located in debris impact areas.
  - (3) Protection of critical systems and components can be provided by using airframe structure or supplemental shielding.

These methods have been effective in mitigating the hazards from both single and multiple small fragments within the  $\pm 15^\circ$  impact area. Separation of multiplied critical systems and components by at least a distance equal to the 1/2 blade fragment dimension has been accepted for showing minimisation from a single high energy small fragment when at least one of the related multiplied critical components is shielded by significant structure such as aluminium lower wing skins, pylons, aluminium skin of the cabin pressure vessel, or equivalent structures.

Multiplied critical systems and components positioned behind less significant structures should be separated by at least a distance equal to the 1/2 blade fragment dimension, and at least one of the multiplied critical systems should be:

    - (i) Located such that equivalent protection is provided by other inherent structures such as pneumatic ducting, interiors, bulkheads, stringers, or
    - (ii) Protected by an additional shield such that the airframe structure and shield material provide equivalent shielding.
  - (4) Locate fluid shut-offs and actuation means so that flammable fluid can be isolated in the event of damage to the system.
  - (5) Minimise the flammable fluid spillage which could contact an ignition source.
  - (6) For airframe structural elements, provide redundant designs or crack stoppers to limit the subsequent tearing which could be caused by uncontained rotor fragments.

- (7) Locate fuel tanks and other flammable fluid systems and route lines (including vent lines) behind aeroplane structure to reduce the hazards from spilled fuel or from tank penetrations. Fuel tank explosion-suppression materials, protective shields or deflectors on the fluid lines, have been used to minimise the damage and hazards.
- c. External Shields and Deflectors. When shields, deflection devices or aeroplane structure are proposed to be used to protect critical systems or components, the adequacy of the protection, including mounting points to the airframe structure, should be shown by testing or validated analyses supported by test data, using the fragment energies supplied by the engine or APU manufacturer or those defined in Paragraph 9. For protection against engine small fragments, as defined in Paragraph 9, no quantitative validation as defined in Paragraph 10 is required if equivalency to the penetration resistant structures listed (e.g. pressure cabin skins, etc.) is shown.

## 8 ACCEPTED DESIGN PRECAUTIONS.

Design practices currently in use by the aviation industry that have been shown to reduce the overall risk, by effectively eliminating certain specific risks and reducing the remaining specific risks to a minimum level, are described within this paragraph of the AMC. Aeroplane designs submitted for evaluation by the regulatory authorities will be evaluated against these proven design practices.

- a. Uncontrolled Fire.
  - (1) Fire Extinguishing Systems. The engine/APU fire extinguishing systems currently in use rely on a fire zone with a fixed compartment air volume and a known air exchange rate to extinguish a fire. The effectiveness of this type of system along with firewall integrity may therefore be compromised for the torn/ruptured compartment of the failed engine/APU. Protection of the aeroplane following this type of failure relies on the function of the fire warning system and subsequent fire switch activation to isolate the engine/APU from airframe flammable fluid (fuel and hydraulic fluid) and external ignition sources (pneumatic and electrical). Fire extinguishing protection of such a compromised system may not be effective due to the extent of damage. Continued function of any other engine, APU or cargo compartment fire warning and extinguisher system, including electrical wiring and fire extinguishing agent plumbing, should be considered as described in Paragraph 7.
  - (2) Flammable Fluid Shut-off Valve. As discussed above, shut-off of flammable fluid supply to the engine may be the only effective means to extinguish a fire following an uncontained failure, therefore the engine isolation/flammable fluid shut-off function should be assured following an uncontained rotor failure. Flammable fluid shut-off valves should be located outside the uncontained rotor impact area. Shut-off actuation controls that need to be routed through the impact area should be redundant and appropriately separated in relation to the one-third disc maximum dimension.
  - (3) Fire Protection of Critical Functions. Flammable fluid shut-off and other critical controls should be located so that a fire (caused by an uncontained rotor event) will not prevent actuation of the shut-off function or loss of critical aeroplane functions. If shut-off or other critical controls are located where a fire is possible following an uncontained rotor failure (e.g. in compartments adjacent to fuel tanks) then these items should meet the applicable fire protection guidelines such as ISO 2685:1992 or AC 20-135.

- 
- (4) Fuel Tanks. If fuel tanks are located in impact areas, the following precautions should be implemented:
- (i) Protection from the effects of fuel leakage should be provided for any fuel tanks located above an engine or APU and within the one-third disc and intermediate fragment impact areas. Dry bays or shielding are acceptable means. The dry bay should be sized based on analysis of possible fragment trajectories through the fuel tank wall and the subsequent fuel leakage from the damaged fuel tank so that fuel will not migrate to an engine, APU or other ignition source during either –flight or ground operation. A minimum drip clearance distance of 10 inches (254 mm) from potential ignition sources of the engine nacelle, for static conditions, has been acceptable (see Figure 2).

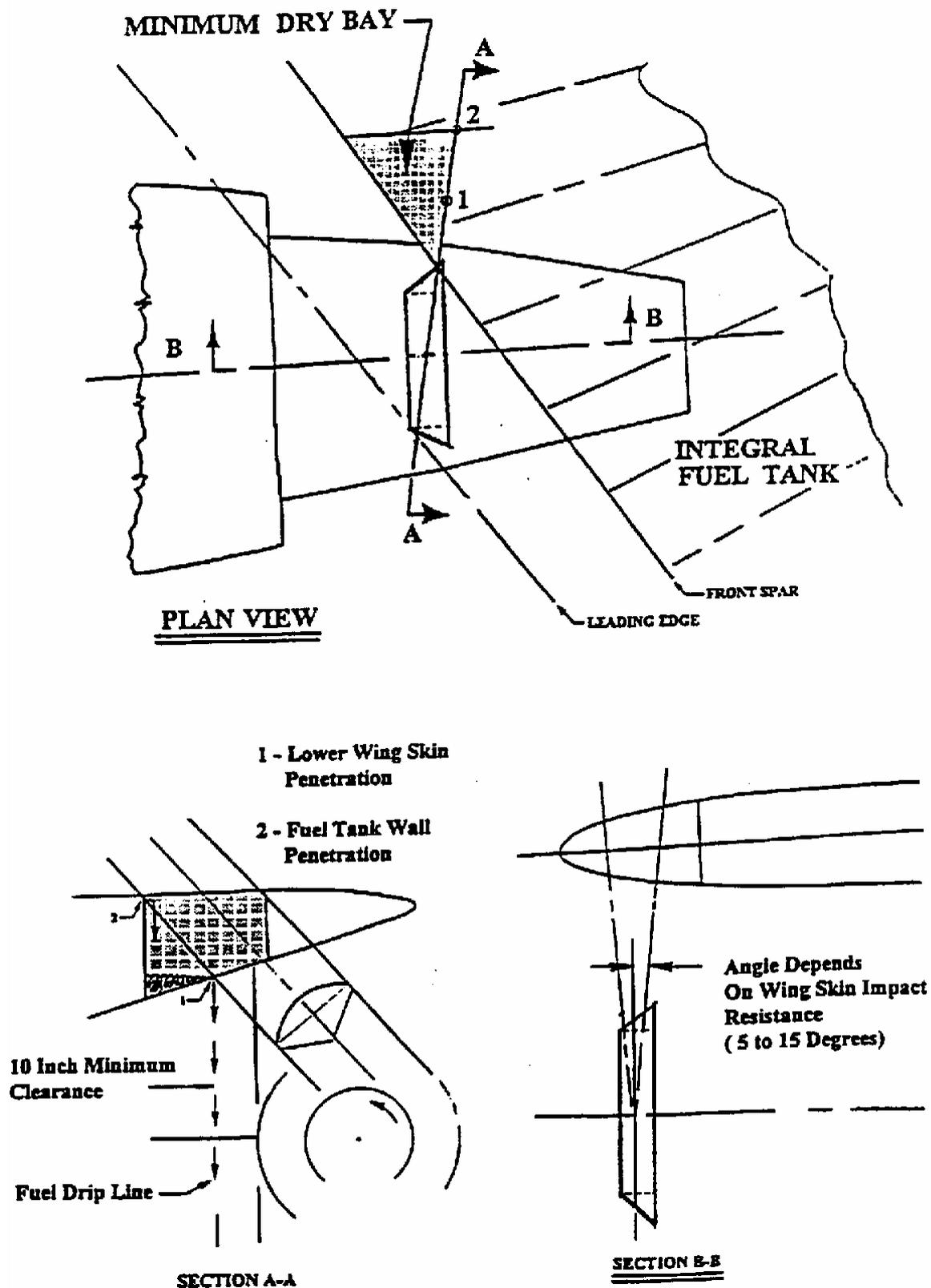


FIGURE 2 – DRY BAY SIZING DETERMINATION EXAMPLE

- (ii) Fuel tank penetration leak paths should be determined and evaluated for hazards during flight and ground phases of operation. If fuel spills into the airstream away from the aeroplane no additional protection is needed. Additional protection should be considered if fuel could spill, drain or migrate into areas housing ignition sources, such as engine or APU inlets or wheel wells. Damage to adjacent systems, wiring etc., should be evaluated regarding the potential that an uncontained fragment will create both an ignition source and fuel source. Wheel brakes may be considered as an ignition source during take-off and initial climb. Protection of the wheel wells may be provided by airflow discharging from gaps or openings, preventing entry of fuel, a ventilation rate precluding a combustible mixture or other provisions indicated in CS 23.863 and CS 25.863.
    - (iii) Areas of the aeroplane where flammable fluid migration is possible that are not drained and vented and have ignition sources or potential ignition sources should be provided with a means of fire detection and suppression and be explosion vented or equivalently protected.
  - b. Loss of Thrust.
    - (1) Fuel Reserves. The fuel reserves should be isolatable such that damage from a disc fragment will not result in loss of fuel required to complete the flight or a safe diversion. The effects of fuel loss, and the resultant shift of centre of gravity or lateral imbalance on aeroplane controllability should also be considered.
    - (2) Engine Controls. Engine control cables and/or wiring for the remaining powerplants that pass through the impact area should be separated by a distance equal to the maximum dimension of a one- third disc fragment or the maximum extent possible.
    - (3) Other Engine Damage. Protection of any other engines from some fragments should be provided by locating critical components, such as engine accessories essential for proper engine operation (e.g., high pressure fuel lines, engine controls and wiring, etc.), in areas where inherent shielding is provided by the fuselage, engine or nacelle (including thrust reverser) structure (see Paragraph 7).
  - c. Loss of Aeroplane Control
    - (1) Flight Controls. Elements of the flight control system should be adequately separated or protected so that the release of a single one-third disc fragment will not cause loss of control of the aeroplane in any axis. Where primary flight controls have duplicated (or multiplied) elements, these elements should be located to prevent all elements in any axis being lost as a result of the single one- third disc fragment. Credit for maintaining control of the aeroplane by the use of trim controls or other means may be obtained, providing evidence shows that these means will enable the pilot to retain control.
    - (2) Emergency Power. Loss of electrical power to critical functions following an uncontained rotor event should be minimised. The determination of electrical system criticality is dependent upon aeroplane operations. For example, aeroplanes approved for Extended Twin Engine Operations (ETOPS) that rely on alternate power sources such as hydraulic motor generators or APUs may be configured with the electrical wiring separated to the maximum extent possible within the one-third disc impact zone.

- (3) Hydraulic Supply. Any essential hydraulic system supply that is routed within an impact area should have means to isolate the hydraulic supply required to maintain control of the aeroplane. The single one-third disc should not result in loss of all essential hydraulic systems or loss of all flight controls in any axis of the aeroplane.
  - (4) Thrust reverser systems. The effect of an uncontained rotor failure on inadvertent in-flight deployment of each thrust reverser and possible loss of aeroplane control shall be considered. The impact area for components located on the failed engine may be different from the impact area defined in Paragraph 6. If uncontained failure could cause thrust reverser deployment, the engine manufacturer should be consulted to establish the failure model to be considered. One acceptable method of minimisation is to locate reverser restraints such that not all restraints can be made ineffective by the fragments of a single rotor.
- d. Passenger and Crew Incapacitation.
- (1) Pilot Compartment. The pilot compartment of large aeroplanes should not be located within the  $\pm 15^\circ$  spread angle of any engine rotor stage or APU rotor stage that has not been qualified as contained, unless adequate shielding, deflectors or equivalent protection is provided for the rotor stage in accordance with Paragraph 7c. Due to design constraints inherent in smaller CS-23 aeroplanes, it is not considered practical to locate the pilot compartment outside the  $\pm 15^\circ$  spread angle. Therefore for other aeroplanes (such as new CS-23 commuter category aeroplanes) the pilot compartment area should not be located within the  $\pm 5^\circ$  spread angle of any engine rotor stage or APU rotor stage unless adequate shielding, deflectors, or equivalent protection is provided for the rotor stage in accordance with Paragraph 7c of this AMC, except for the following:
    - (i) For derivative CS-23 category aeroplanes where the engine location has been previously established, the engine location in relation to the pilot compartment need not be changed.
    - (ii) For non-commuter CS-23 category aeroplanes, satisfactory service experience relative to rotor integrity and containment in similar engine installations may be considered in assessing the acceptability of installing engines in line with the pilot compartment.
    - (iii) For non-commuter new CS-23 category aeroplanes, where due to size and/or design considerations the  $\pm 5^\circ$  spread angle cannot be adhered to, the pilot compartment/engine location should be analysed and accepted in accordance with Paragraphs 9 and 10.
  - (2) Pressure Vessel. For aeroplanes that are certificated for operation above 41,000 feet, the engines should be located such that the pressure cabin cannot be affected by an uncontained one-third or intermediate disc fragment. Alternatively, it may be shown that rapid decompression due to the maximum hole size caused by fragments within the  $\pm 15^\circ$  zone and the associated cabin pressure decay rate will allow an emergency descent without incapacitation of the flightcrew or passengers. A pilot reaction time of 17 seconds for initiation of the emergency descent has been accepted. Where the pressure cabin could be affected by a one-third disc or intermediate fragments, design precautions should be taken to preclude incapacitation of crew and passengers. Examples of design precautions that have been previously accepted are:

- (i) Provisions for a second pressure or bleed down bulkhead outside the impact area of a one- third or intermediate disc fragment.
- (ii) The affected compartment in between the primary and secondary bulkhead was made inaccessible, by operating limitations, above the minimum altitude where incapacitation could occur due to the above hole size.
- (iii) Air supply ducts running through this compartment were provided with non-return valves to prevent pressure cabin leakage through damaged ducts.

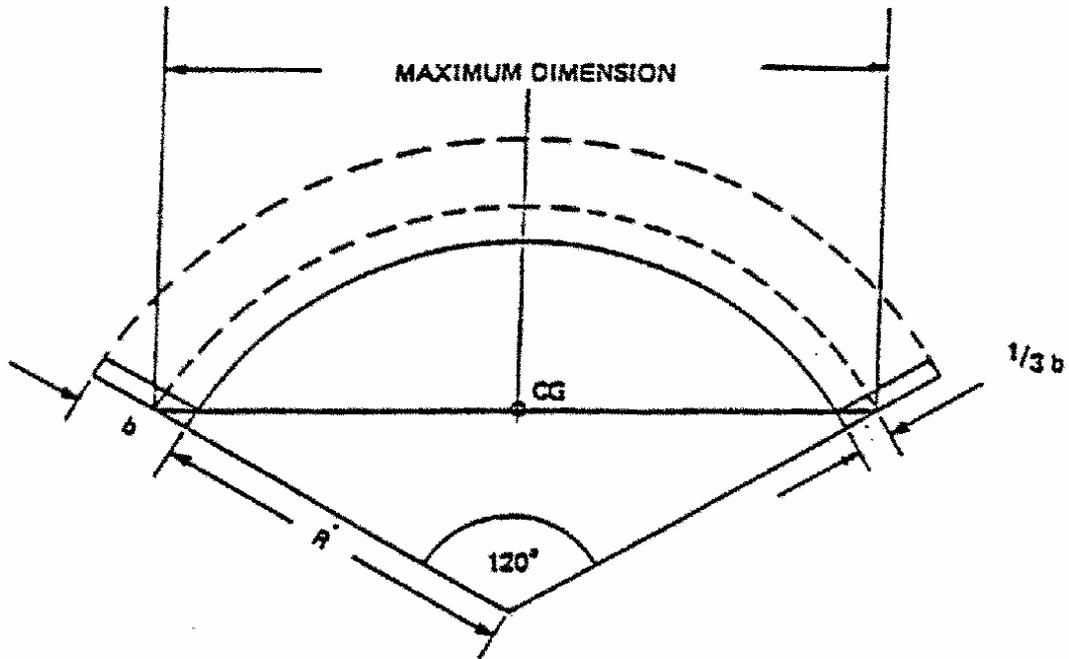
NOTE: If a bleed down bulkhead is used it should be shown that the rate of pressure decay and minimum achieved cabin pressure would not incapacitate the crew, and the rate of pressure decay would not preclude a safe emergency descent.

- e. Structural Integrity. Installation of tear straps and shear ties within the uncontained fan blade and engine rotor debris zone to prevent catastrophic structural damage has been utilised to address this threat.

## 9. ENGINE AND APU FAILURE MODEL.

The safety analysis recommended in Paragraph 10 should be made using the following engine and APU failure model, unless for the particular engine/APU type concerned, relevant service experience, design data, test results or other evidence justify the use of a different model.

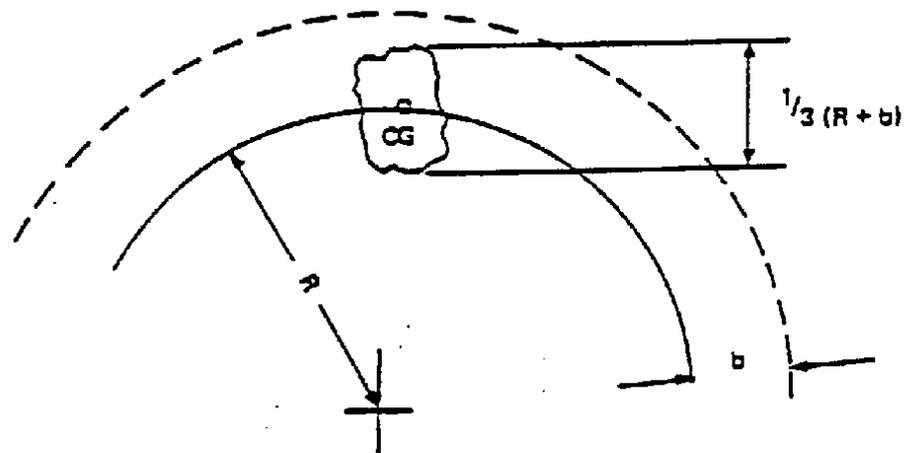
- a. Single One-Third Disc fragment. It should be assumed that the one-third disc fragment has the maximum dimension corresponding to one-third of the disc with one-third blade height and a fragment spread angle of  $\pm 3^\circ$ . Where energy considerations are relevant, the mass should be assumed to be one-third of the bladed disc mass and its energy, the translational energy (i.e., neglecting rotational energy) of the sector travelling at the speed of its c.g. location as defined in Figure 3.
- b. Intermediate Fragment. It should be assumed that the intermediate fragment has a maximum dimension corresponding to one-third of the bladed disc radius and a fragment spread angle of  $\pm 5^\circ$ . Where energy considerations are relevant, the mass should be assumed to be 1/30 of the bladed disc mass and its energy the transitional energy (i.e. neglecting rotational energy) of the piece travelling at rim speed (see Figure 4).



Where  $R$  = disc radius  
 $b$  = blade length

The CG is taken to lie on the maximum dimension as shown.

FIGURE 3 – SINGLE ONE-THIRD ROTOR FRAGMENT



Where  $R$  = disc radius  
 $b$  = blade length

Maximum dimension =  $\frac{1}{3}(R + b)$

Mass assumed to be  $\frac{1}{30}$ th of bladed disc

CG is taken to lie on the disc rim

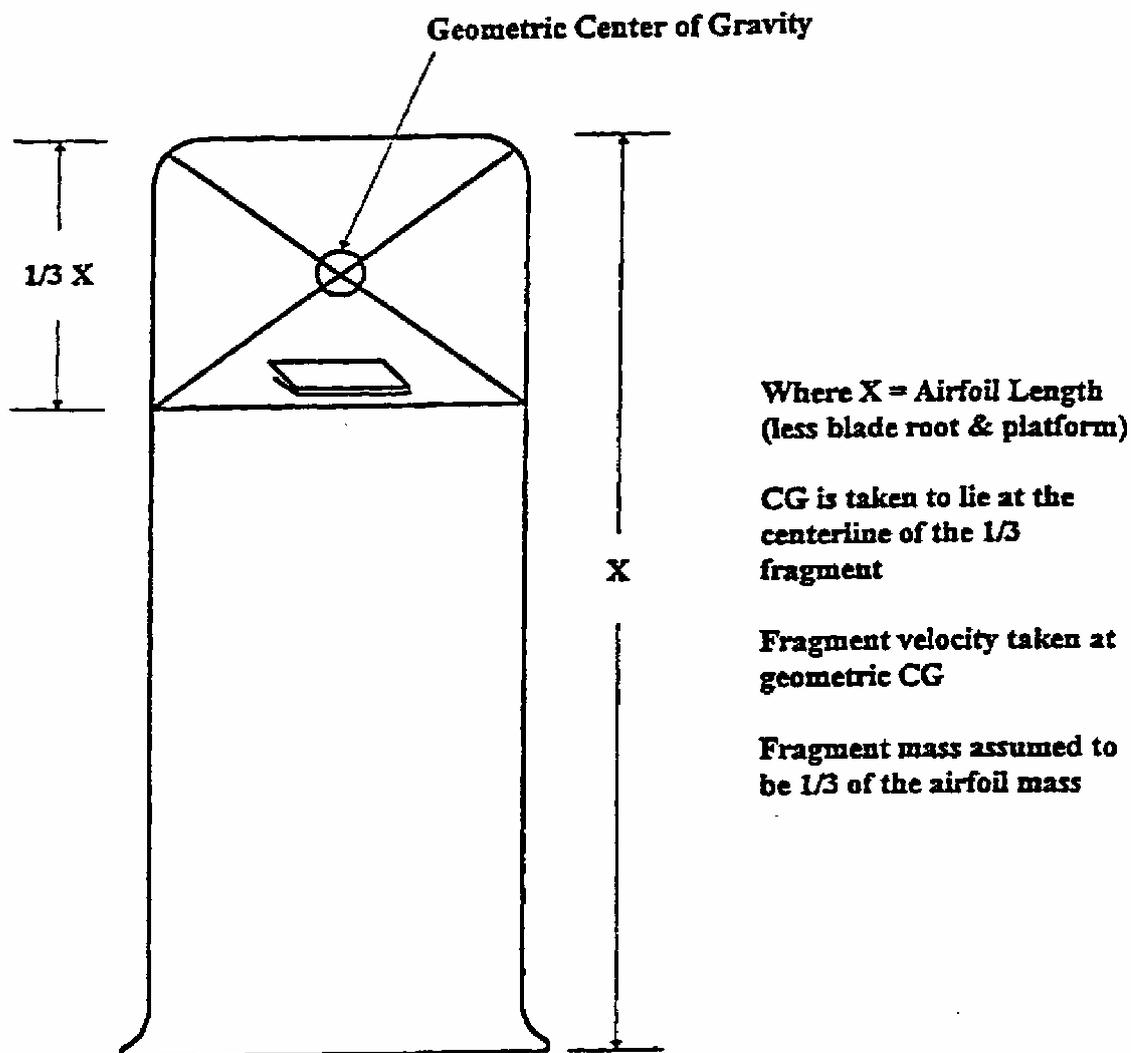
**FIGURE 4 – INTERMEDIATE FRAGMENT**

- c. Alternative Engine Failure Model. For the purpose of the analysis, as an alternative to the engine failure model of Paragraphs 9a and b, the use of a single one-third piece of disc having a fragment spread angle  $\pm 5^\circ$  would be acceptable, provided the objectives of Paragraph 10c are satisfied.
- d. Small Fragments. It should be assumed that small fragments (shrapnel) range in size up to a maximum dimension corresponding to the tip half of the blade airfoil (with exception of fan blades) and a fragment spread angle of  $\pm 15^\circ$ . Service history has shown that aluminium lower wing skins, pylons, and pressure cabin skin and equivalent structures typically resist penetration from all but one of the most energetic of these fragments. The effects of multiple small fragments should also be considered. Penetration of less significant structures such as fairings, empennage, control surfaces and unpressurised unpressurised skin has typically occurred at the rate of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  percent of the number of blades of the failed rotor stage. Refer to paragraph 7b and 7c for methods of minimisation of the hazards. Where the applicant wishes to show compliance by considering the energy required for penetration of structure (or shielding) the engine manufacturer should be consulted for guidance as to the size and energy of small fragments within the impact area.

For APUs, where energy considerations are relevant, it should be assumed that the mass will correspond to the above fragment dimensions and that it has a translational energy level of one percent of the total rotational energy of the original rotor stage.

- e. Fan Blade Fragment. It should be assumed that the fan blade fragment has a maximum dimension corresponding to the blade tip with one-third the blade airfoil height and a fragment spread angle of  $\pm 15^\circ$ . Where energy considerations are relevant the mass

should be assumed to be corresponding to the one-third of the airfoil including any part span shroud and the transitional energy (neglecting rotational energy) of the fragment travelling at the speed of its c.g. location as defined in Figure 5. As an alternative, the engine manufacturer may be consulted for guidance as to the size and energy of the fragment.



**FIGURE 5 – FAN BLADE FRAGMENT DEFINITION**

- f. Critical Engine Speed. Where energy considerations are relevant, the uncontained rotor event should be assumed to occur at the engine or APU shaft red line speed.
- g. APU Failure Model. For all APU's, the installer also needs to address any hazard to the aeroplane associated with APU debris (up to and including a complete rotor where applicable) exiting the tailpipe. Paragraphs 9g(1) or (2) below or applicable service history provided by the APU manufacturer may be used to define the size, mass, and energy of debris exiting that tailpipe. The APU rotor failure model applicable for a particular APU installation is dependent upon the provisions of CS-APU that were utilised for receiving approval:

- (1) For APU's where rotor integrity has been demonstrated in accordance with CS-APU, i.e. without specific containment testing, Paragraphs 9a, b, and d, or Paragraphs 9c and 9d apply.
- (2) For APU rotor stages qualified as contained in accordance with CS-APU, historical data shows that in-service uncontained failures have occurred. These failure modes have included bi-hub, overspeed, and fragments missing the containment ring which are not addressed by the CS-APU containment test. In order to address these hazards, the installer should use the APU small fragment definition of Paragraph 9d or substantiated in-service data supplied by the APU manufacturer.

## **10 SAFETY ANALYSIS.**

The numerical assessment requested in Paragraph 10c(3) is derived from methods previously prescribed in ACJNo. 2 to CS 25.903(d)(1). The hazard ratios provided are based upon evaluation of various configurations of large aeroplanes, made over a period of time, incorporating practical methods of minimising the hazard to the aeroplane from uncontained engine debris.

- a. Analysis. An analysis should be made using the engine/APU model defined in Paragraph 9 to determine the critical areas of the aeroplane likely to be damaged by rotor debris and to evaluate the consequences of an uncontained failure. This analysis should be conducted in relation to all normal phases of flight, or portions thereof.

NOTE: APPENDIX 1 provides additional guidance for completion of the numerical analysis requested by this paragraph.

- (1) A delay of at least 15 seconds should be assumed before start of the emergency engine shut down. The extent of the delay is dependent upon circumstances resulting from the uncontained failure including increased flightcrew workload stemming from multiplicity of warnings which require analysis by the flightcrew.
- (2) Some degradation of the flight characteristics of the aeroplane or operation of a system is permissible, provided the aeroplane is capable of continued safe flight and landing. Account should be taken of the behaviour of the aeroplane under asymmetrical engine thrust or power conditions together with any possible damage to the flight control system, and of the predicted aeroplane recovery manoeuvre.
- (3) When considering how or whether to mitigate any potential hazard identified by the model, credit may be given to flight phase, service experience, or other data, as noted in Paragraph 7.

- b. Drawings. Drawings should be provided to define the uncontained rotor impact threat relative to the areas of design consideration defined in Paragraphs 7a(1) through (10) showing the trajectory paths of engine and APU debris relative to critical areas. The analysis should include at least the following:

- (1) Damage to primary structure including the pressure cabin, engine/APU mountings and airframe surfaces.

NOTE: Any structural damage resulting from uncontained rotor debris should be considered catastrophic unless the residual strength and flutter criteria of ACJ 25.571(a) subparagraph 2.7.2 can be met without failure of any part of the structure essential for completion of the flight. In addition, the pressurised compartment loads of CS 25.365(e)(1) and (g) must be met.

- (2) Damage to any other engines (the consequences of subsequent uncontained debris from the other engine(s), need not be considered).
  - (3) Damage to services and equipment essential for safe flight and landing (including indicating and monitoring systems), particularly control systems for flight, engine power, engine fuel supply and shut-off means and fire indication and extinguishing systems.
  - (4) Pilot incapacitation, (see also paragraph 8 d(1)).
  - (5) Penetration of the fuel system, where this could result in the release of fuel into personnel compartments or an engine compartment or other regions of the aeroplane where this could lead to a fire or explosion.
  - (6) Damage to the fuel system, especially tanks, resulting in the release of a large quantity of fuel.
  - (7) Penetration and distortion of firewalls and cowling permitting a spread of fire.
  - (8) Damage to or inadvertent movement of aerodynamic surfaces (e.g.. flaps, slats, stabilisers, ailerons, spoilers, thrust reversers, elevators, rudders, strakes, winglets, etc.) and the resultant effect on safe flight and landing.
- c. Safety Analysis Objectives. It is considered that the objective of minimising hazards will have been met if:
- (1) The practical design considerations and precautions of Paragraphs 7 and 8 have been taken;
  - (2) The safety analysis has been completed using the engine/APU model defined in Paragraph 9;
  - (3) For CS-25 large aeroplanes and CS-23 commuter category aeroplanes, the following hazard ratio guidelines have been achieved:
    - (i) Single One-Third Disc Fragment. There is not more than a 1 in 20 chance of catastrophe resulting from the release of a single one-third disc fragment as defined in Paragraph 9a.
    - (ii) Intermediate Fragment. There is not more than a 1 in 40 chance of catastrophe resulting from the release of a piece of debris as defined in Paragraph 9b.
    - (iii) Multiple Disc Fragments. (Only applicable to any duplicated or multiplied system when all of the system channels contributing to its functions have some part which is within a distance equal to the diameter of the largest bladed rotor, measured from the engine centreline). There is not more than 1 in 10 chance of catastrophe resulting from the release in three random directions of three one-third fragments of a disc each having a uniform probability of ejection over the 360° (assuming an angular spread of  $\pm 3^\circ$  relative to the plane of the disc) causing coincidental damage to systems which are duplicated or multiplied.

NOTE: Where dissimilar systems can be used to carry out the same function (e.g. elevator control and pitch trim), they should be regarded as duplicated (or multiplied) systems for the purpose of this subparagraph provided control can be maintained.

The numerical assessments described above may be used to judge the relative values of minimisation. The degree of minimisation that is feasible may vary depending upon aeroplane size and configuration and this variation may prevent the specific hazard ratio from being achieved. These levels are design goals and should not be treated as absolute targets. It is possible that any one of these levels may not be practical to achieve.

- (4) For newly designed non-commuter CS-23 aeroplanes the chance of catastrophe is not more than twice that of Paragraph 10(c)(3)(i), (ii) and (iii) for each of these fragment types.
  - (5) A numerical risk assessment is not requested for the single fan blade fragment, small fragments, and APU and engine rotor stages which are qualified as contained.
- d. APU Analysis For APU's that are located where no hazardous consequences would result from an uncontained failure, a limited qualitative assessment showing the relative location of critical systems/components and APU impact areas is all that is needed. If critical systems/components are located within the impact area, more extensive analysis is needed. For APUs which have demonstrated rotor integrity only, the failure model outlined in Paragraph 9g(1) should be considered as a basis for this safety assessment. For APU rotor stages qualified as contained per CS-APU, the aeroplane safety analysis may be limited to an assessment of the effects of the failure model outlined in Paragraph 9g(2).
- e. Specific Risk The aeroplane risk levels specified in Paragraph 10c, resulting from the release of rotor fragments, are the mean values obtained by averaging those for all rotors on all engines of the aeroplane, assuming a typical flight. Individual rotors or engines need not meet these risk levels nor need these risk levels be met for each phase of flight if either:
- (1) No rotor stage shows a higher level of risk averaged throughout the flight greater than twice those stated in Paragraph 10c.

NOTE: The purpose of this Paragraph is to ensure that a fault which results in repeated failures of any particular rotor stage design, would have only a limited effect on aeroplane safety.

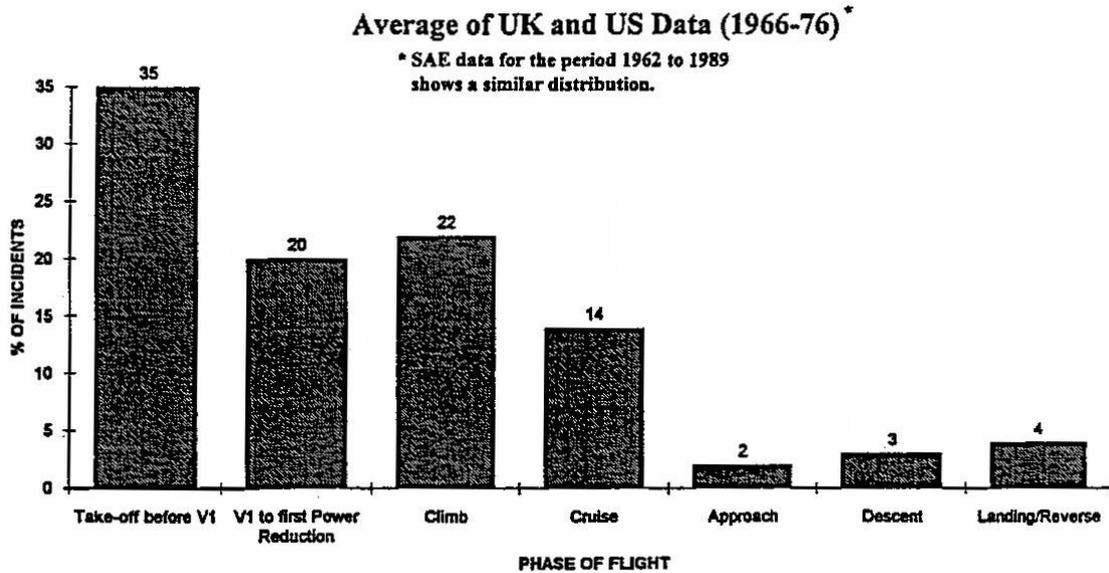


FIGURE 6 – ALL NON-CONTAINMENTS BY PHASE OF FLIGHT

- (2) Where failures would be catastrophic in particular portions of flight, allowance is made for this on the basis of conservative assumptions as to the proportion of failures likely to occur in these phases. A greater level of risk could be accepted if the exposure exists only during a particular phase of flight e.g., during take-off. The proportional risk of engine failure during the particular phases of flight is given in SAE Papers referenced in Paragraph 4d. See also data contained in the CAA paper "Engine Non-Containments – The CAA View", which includes Figure 6. This paper is published in NASA Report CP-2017, "An Assessment of Technology for Turbo-jet Engine Rotor Failures", dated August 1977.

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-128A User's Manual

ED Decision 2003/12/RM

### RISK ANALYSIS METHODOLOGY for UNCONTAINED ENGINE/APU FAILURE

#### INDEX

- 1.0 GENERAL
- 2.0 SCOPE
- 3.0 FUNDAMENTAL COMPONENTS OF A SAFETY AND RISK ANALYSIS
- 4.0 ASSUMPTIONS
- 5.0 PLOTTING
- 6.0 METHODOLOGY – PROBABILITY ASSESSMENT
- 7.0 RESULTS ASSESSMENT

- FIGURE 1 EXAMPLE – HAZARD TREE
- FIGURE 2 EXAMPLE – SYSTEM LOADING MATRIX
- FIGURE 3 TRI-SECTOR ROTOR BURST
- FIGURE 4 TYPICAL LAYOUT OF SYSTEMS IN ROTOR PLANE
- FIGURE 5 TRAJECTORY RANGE PLOTTING
- FIGURE 6 TYPICAL TRAJECTORY PLOTTING
- FIGURE 7 DEFINITION – THREAT WINDOW
- FIGURE 8 SAMPLE ROTOR STAGE PLOTTING CHART

#### 1.0 GENERAL

- 1.1 The design of aeroplane and engine systems and the location of the engines relative to critical systems and structure have a significant impact on survivability of the aeroplane following an uncontained engine failure. CS 23.903(b)(1) and 25.903(d)(1) of the EASA Certification Specifications (CS) require that design precautions be taken to minimise the hazard to the aeroplane due to uncontained failures of engine or auxiliary power unit (APU). [AMC 20-128A](#) provides guidance for demonstrating compliance with these requirements.
- 1.2 As a part of this compliance demonstration, it is necessary to quantitatively assess the risk of a catastrophic failure in the event of an uncontained engine failure. This User's Manual describes an acceptable method for this purpose.
- 1.3 The objective of the risk analysis is to measure the remaining risk after prudent and practical design considerations have been taken. Since each aeroplane would have unique features which must be considered when applying the methods described in this manual, there should be some flexibility in the methods and procedures.
- 1.4 It is a preferred approach to use these methods throughout the development of an aeroplane design to identify problem areas at an early stage when appropriate design changes are least disruptive. It is also advisable to involve the European Aviation Safety Agency (EASA) in this process at an early stage when appropriate interpretation of the methodology and documentation requirements can be established.
- 1.5 It should be noted that although the risk analysis produces quantitative results, subjective assessments are inherent in the methods of the analysis regarding the criticality of specific types of aeroplane component failures. Assumptions for such assessments should be documented along with the numerical results.

- 1.6 Aeroplane manufacturers have each developed their own method of assessing the effects of rotor failure, as there are many ways to get to the same result. This User's Manual identifies all the elements that should be contained in an analysis, so that it can be interpreted by a person not familiar with such a process.
- 1.7 The intent of this manual therefore is to aid in establishing how an analysis is prepared, without precluding any technological advances or existing proprietary processes.
- 1.8 AMC 20-128A makes allowance for the broad configuration of the aeroplane as such damage to the structure due to rotor failure generally allows for little flexibility in design. System lay-out within a rotor burst zone, however, can be optimized.
- 1.9 Damage to structure, which may involve stress analysis, generally can be analyzed separately, and later coordinated with simultaneous system effects.
- 1.10 For an analysis of the effects on systems due to a rotor failure the aeroplane must be evaluated as a whole; and a risk analysis must specifically highlight all critical cases identified which have any potential to result in a catastrophe.
- 1.11 Such an analysis can then be used to establish that reasonable precautions have been taken to minimise the hazards, and that the remaining hazards are an acceptable risk.
- 1.12 A safety and a risk analysis are interdependent, as the risk analysis must be based on the safety analysis.

The safety analysis therefore is the starting point that identifies potential hazardous or catastrophic effects from a rotor failure and is the basic tool to minimise the hazard in accordance with the guidelines of [AMC 20-128A](#).

- 1.13 The risk analysis subsequently assesses and quantifies the residual risk to the aeroplane.

## 2.0 SCOPE

The following describes the scope of analyses required to assess the aeroplane risk levels against the criteria set forth in Paragraph 10 of [AMC 20-128A](#).

### 2.1 Safety

Analysis is required to identify the critical hazards that may be numerically analyzed (hazards remaining after all practical design precautions have been taken).

Functional criticality will vary by aeroplane and may vary by flight phase.

Thorough understanding of each aeroplane structure and system functions is required to establish the criticality relative to each fragment trajectory path of the theoretical failure.

Assistance from experts within each discipline is typically required to assure accuracy of the analysis in such areas as effects of fuel tank penetration on leakage paths and ignition hazards, thrust level control (for loss of thrust assessment), structural capabilities (for fuselage impact assessment), aeroplane controllability (for control cables impact assessment), and fuel asymmetry.

### 2.2 Risk

For each remaining critical hazard, the following assessments may be prepared using the engine/APU failure models as defined in Paragraph 9 of [AMC 20-128A](#):

- a. Flight mean risk for single 1/3 disc fragment.
- b. Flight mean risk for single intermediate fragment.

- c. Flight mean risk for alternate model (when used as an alternate to the 1/3 disc fragment and intermediate fragment).
- d. Multiple 1/3 disc fragments for duplicated or multiplied systems.
- e. Specific risk for single 1/3 disc fragment and single intermediate fragment.
- f. Specific risk for any single disc fragment that may result in catastrophic structural damage.

The risk level criteria for each failure model are defined in Paragraph 10 of [AMC 20-128A](#).

### 3.0 FUNDAMENTAL COMPONENTS OF A SAFETY AND RISK ANALYSIS

#### 3.1 The logical steps for a complete analysis are:

- a. Establish at the design definition the functional hazards that can arise from the combined or concurrent failures of individual systems, including multiplied systems and critical structure.
- b. Establish a Functional Hazard Tree (see Figure 1), or a System Matrix (see Figure 2) that identifies all system interdependencies and failure combinations that must be avoided (if possible) when locating equipment in the rotor burst impact area.

In theory, if this is carried out to the maximum, no critical system hazards other than opposite engine or fuel line hits would exist.

- c. Establish the fragment trajectories and trajectory ranges both for translational and spread risk angles for each damage. Plot these on a chart or graph, and identify the trajectory ranges that could result in hazardous combinations (threats) as per the above system matrix or functional hazard analysis.
- d. Apply risk factors, such as phase of flight or other, to these threats, and calculate the risk for each threat for each rotor stage.
- e. Tabulate, summarize and average all cases.

#### 3.2 In accordance with [AMC 20-128A](#) the risk to the aeroplane due to uncontained rotor failure is assessed to the effects, once such a failure has occurred.

The probability of occurrence of rotor failure, as analyzed with the probability methods of AMC 25.1309 (i.e. probability as a function of critical uncontained rotor failure rate and exposure time), does not apply.

#### 3.3 The total risk level to the aeroplane, as identified by the risk analysis, is the mean value obtained by averaging the values of all rotor stages of all engines of the aeroplane, expressed as Flight Mean Risk.

### 4.0 ASSUMPTIONS

#### 4.1 The following conservative assumptions, in addition to those in Paragraphs 10(a)(1), (2) and (3) of [AMC 20-128A](#), have been made in some previous analyses. However, each aeroplane design may have unique characteristics and therefore a unique basis for the safety assessment leading to the possibility of different assumptions. All assumptions should be substantiated within the analysis:

- a. The 1/3 disc fragment as modeled in Paragraph 9(a) of the [AMC 20-128A](#) travels along a trajectory path that is tangential to the sector centroid locus, in the direction of rotor rotation (Refer to Figure 3).

The sector fragment rotates about its centroid without tumbling and sweeps a path equal to twice the greatest radius that can be struck from the sector centroid that intersects its periphery.

The fragment is considered to possess infinite energy, and therefore to be capable of severing lines, wiring, cables and unprotected structure in its path, and to be undeflected from its original trajectory unless deflection shields are fitted. However, protective shielding or an engine being impacted may be assumed to have sufficient mass to stop even the most energetic fragment.

- b. The probability of release of debris within the maximum spread angle is uniformly distributed over all directions.
- c. The effects of severed electrical wiring are dependent on the configuration of the affected system. In general, severed wiring is assumed to not receive inadvertent positive voltage for any significant duration.
- d. Control cables that are struck by a fragment disconnect.
- e. Hydraulically actuated, cable driven control surfaces, which do not have designated “fail to” settings, tend to fail to null when control cables are severed. Subsequent surface float is progressive and predictable.
- f. Systems components are considered unserviceable if their envelope has been touched. In case of an engine being impacted, the nacelle structure may be regarded as engine envelope, unless damage is not likely to be hazardous.
- g. Uncontained events involving in-flight penetration of fuel tanks will not result in fuel tank explosion.
- h. Unpowered flight and off-airport landings, including ditching, may be assumed to be not catastrophic to the extent validated by accident statistics or other accepted factors.
- i. Damage to structure essential for completion of flight is catastrophic (Ref. [AMC 20-128A](#), Paragraph 10.b(1)).
- j. The flight begins when engine power is advanced for takeoff and ends after landing when turning off the runway.

## 5.0 PLOTTING

- 5.1 Cross-section and plan view layouts of the aeroplane systems in the ranges of the rotor burst impact areas should be prepared, either as drawings, or as computer models

These layouts should plot the precise location of the critical system components, including fuel and hydraulic lines, flight control cables, electric wiring harnesses and junction boxes, pneumatic and environmental system ducting, fire extinguishing; critical structure, etc.

- 5.2 For every rotor stage a plane is developed. Each of these planes contains a view of all the system components respective outer envelopes, which is then used to generate a cross-section. See Figure 4.
- 5.3 Models or drawings representing the various engine rotor stages and their fore and aft deviation are then generated.
- 5.4 The various trajectory paths generated for each engine rotor stage are then superimposed on the cross-section layouts of the station planes that are in the range of

that potential rotor burst in order to study the effects (see Figure 5). Thus separate plots are generated for each engine rotor stage or rotor group.

To reduce the amount of an analysis the engine rotor stages may also be considered as groups, as applicable for the engine type, using the largest rotor stage diameter of the group.

- 5.5 These trajectory paths may be generated as follows and as shown in Figure 6:
- a. Two tangent lines T1 are drawn between the locus of the centroid and the target envelope.
  - b. At the tangent line touch points, lines N1 and N2 normal to the tangent lines, are drawn with the length equal to the radius of the fragment swept path (as also shown in Figure 1).
  - c. Tangent lines T2 are drawn between the terminal point of the normal lines and the locus of the centroid. The angle between these two tangent lines is the translational risk angle.
- 5.6 The entry and exit angles are then calculated.
- 5.7 The initial angle of intersection and the final angle of intersection are recorded, and the trajectories in between are considered to be the range of trajectories in which this particular part would be impacted by a rotor sector, and destroyed (i.e. the impact area). The intersections thus recorded are then entered on charts in tabular form so that the simultaneous effects can be studied. Refer to Figure 8.
- Thus it will be seen that the total systems' effects can be determined and the worst cases identified.
- 5.9 If a potentially serious multiple system damage case is identified, then a more detailed analysis of the trajectory range will be carried out by breaking the failure case down into the specific fore-aft spread angle, using the individual rotor stage width instead of combined groups, if applicable.

## 6.0 METHODOLOGY – PROBABILITY ASSESSMENT

- 6.1 Those rotor burst cases that have some potential of causing a catastrophe are evaluated in the analysis in an attempt to quantify an actual probability of a catastrophe, which will, in all cases, depend on the following factors:
- a. The location of the engine that is the origin of the fragment, and its direction of rotation.
  - b. The location of critical systems and critical structure.
  - c. The rotor stage and the fragment model.
  - d. The translational trajectory of the rotor fragment,
  - e. The specific spread angle range of the fragment.
  - f. The specific phase of the flight at which the failure occurs.
  - g. The specific risk factor associated with any particular loss of function.

## 6.2 Engine Location

The analysis should address the effects on systems during one flight after a single rotor burst has occurred, with a probability of 1.0. As the cause may be any one of the engines, the risk from each engine is later averaged for the number of engines.

The analysis trajectory charts will then clearly show that certain system damage is unique to rotor fragments from a particular engine due to the direction of rotation, or, that for similar system damage the trajectory range varies considerably between engines.

A risk summary should table each engine case separately with the engine location included.

## 6.3 Rotor Element

The probability of rotor failure is assumed to be 1.0 for each of all rotor stages. For the analysis the individual risk(s) from each rotor stage of the engine should be assessed and tabled.

## 6.4 Translational Risk Angle

The number of degrees of included arc (out of 360) at which a fragment intersects the component/structure being analyzed. Refer to Figure 6 and Figure 7.

## 6.5 Trajectory Probability (P)

The probability of a liberated rotor fragment leaving the engine case is equal over 360°, thus the probability P of that fragment hitting a system component is the identified Translational Risk Angle  $\phi$  in degrees °, divided by 360, i.e.

$$P = \phi/360$$

or

$$\frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{360}$$

## 6.6 Spread Angle

If the failure model of the analysis assumes a (fore and aft) spread of  $\pm 5^\circ$ , then the spread angle is a total of  $10^\circ$ . If a critical component can only be hit at a limited position within that spread, then the exposure of that critical component can then be factored according to the longitudinal position within the spread angle, e.g.:

$$\frac{\psi_2 - \psi_1}{\text{spread angle}}$$

If a component can only be hit at the extreme forward range of  $+4^\circ$  to  $+5^\circ$ , then the factor is .1 (for one degree out of 10).

## 6.7 Threat Window

The definition of a typical threat window is shown in Figure 7.

## 6.8 Phase of Flight

Certain types of system damage may be catastrophic only during a specific portion of the flight profile, such as a strike on the opposite engine during take-off after V1 (i.e. a probability of 1.0), while with altitude a straight-ahead landing may be possible under certain favourable conditions (e.g. a probability of less than 1.0). The specific case can then be factored accordingly.

6.8.1 The most likely time for an uncontained rotor failure to occur is during take-off, when the engine is under highest stress. Using the industry accepted standards for the percentage of engine failures occurring within each flight phase, the following probabilities are assumed:

Take-off before V1	35%
V1 to first power reduction	20%
Climb	22%
Cruise	14%
Descent	3%
Approach	2%
Landing/Reverse	4%

6.8.2 The flight phase failure distribution above is used in the calculations of catastrophic risk for all cases where this risk varies with flight phase.

$$Dp = \frac{P \text{ flight phase } \%}{100}$$

6.9 Other Risk Factors

Risks such as fire, loss of pressurization, etc., are individually assessed for each case where applicable, using conservative engineering judgment. This may lead to a probability of catastrophe (i.e., risk factor) smaller than 1.0.

6.9.1 The above probabilities and factors are used in conjunction with the critical trajectory range defined to produce a probability of the specific event occurring from any random rotor burst.

This value is then factored by the "risk" factor assessed for the case, to derive a calculated probability of catastrophe for each specific case.

Typical conditional probability values for total loss of thrust causing catastrophic consequences are:

Phase	Dp	Risk
T.O.-V1 to first power reduction	0.20	1.0
Climb	0.22	0.4
Cruise	0.14	0.2
Descent	0.03	0.4
Approach	0.02	0.4

6.10 All individual case probabilities are then tabled and summarised.

6.11 The flight mean values are obtained by averaging those for all discs or rotor stages on all engines across a nominal flight profile.

The following process may be used to calculate the flight mean value for each Failure Model:

- a. Establish from the table in Figure 8 the threat windows where, due to combination of individual damages, a catastrophic risk exists.
- b. For each stage case calculate the risk for all Critical Hazards

- c. For each stage case apply all risk factors, and, if applicable, factor for Flight Phase-Failure distribution
- d. For each engine, average all stages over the total number of engine stages
- e. For each aeroplane, average all engines over the number of engines.

**7.0 RESULTS ASSESSMENT**

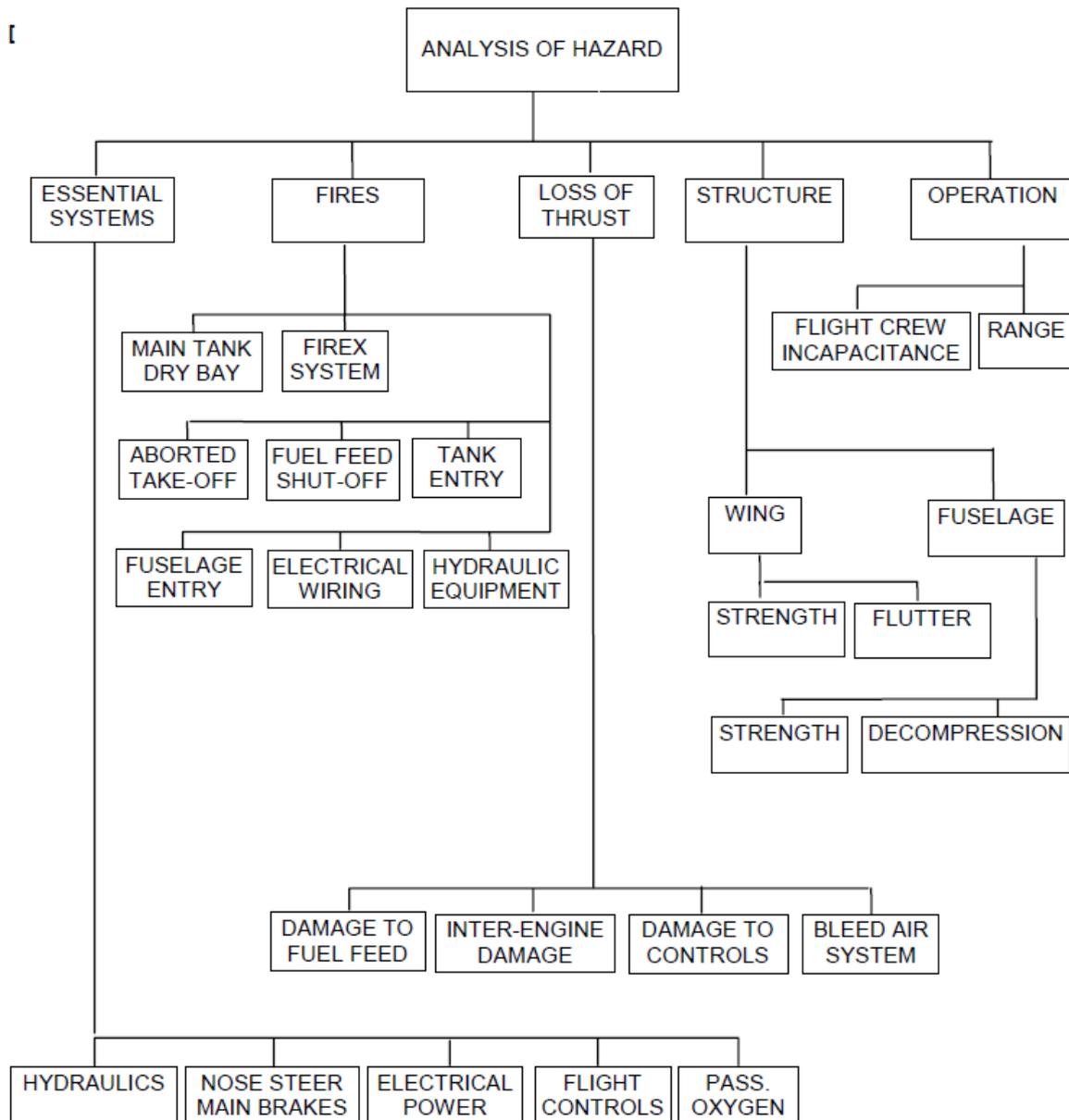
7.1 An applicant may show compliance with CS 23.903(b)(1) and CS 25.903(d)(1) using guidelines set forth in [AMC 20-128A](#). The criteria contained in the AMC may be used to show that:

- a. Practical design precautions have been taken to minimise the damage that can be caused by uncontained engine debris, and
- b. Acceptable risk levels, as specified in [AMC 20-128A](#), Paragraph 10, have been achieved for each critical Failure Model.

7.2 The summary of the applicable risk level criteria is shown in Table 1 below.

**Table 1 Summary of Acceptable Risk Level Criteria**

Requirement	Criteria
Average 1/3 Disc Fragment	1 in 20
Average Intermediate Fragment	1 in 40
Average Alternate Model	1 in 20 @ ± 5 degree Spread Angle
Multiple Disc Fragments	1 in 10
Any single fragment (except for structural damage)	2 x corresponding average criterion



EXAMPLE – HAZARD TREE

FIGURE 1

LOC	COMPONENT	DAMAGE TO	SYSTEM LOADED	DETAIL
LEFT	AILERON	CABLES/SURFACE	HYDRAULIC POWER	#1 & #3
RIGHT	AILERON	CABLES/SURFACE	HYDRAULIC POWER	#2 & #3
LEFT	SPOILER - OUTBD MULTI-FUNCTION	CONTROL/SURFACE	HYDRAULIC POWER	#1
RIGHT	SPOILER - OUTBD MULTI-FUNCTION	CONTROL/SURFACE	HYDRAULIC POWER	#1
LEFT	FLAP-OUTBD	TRACK/SURFACE	ELECTRICAL POWER	AC BUS1 AC ESS
RIGHT	FLAP-OUTBD	TRACK/SURFACE	ELECTRICAL POWER	AC BUS1 AC ESS

LEFT	RUDDER	CABLE	HYDRAULIC POWER	#1,#2&#3
RIGHT	RUDDER	CABLE	HYDRAULIC POWER	#1,#2&#3
LEFT	ELEVATOR	CABLES Note 1	HYDRAULIC POWER	#1 & #3
RIGHT	ELEVATOR	CABLES Note 1	HYDRAULIC POWER	#2 & #3
CHAN1	PITCH TRIM	CONTROL/POWER Note 2	ELECTRICAL POWER	AC BUS1 DC BUS1
CHAN2	PITCH TRIM	CONTROL/POWER Note 2	ELECTRICAL POWER	AC ESS DC ESS

### FLIGHT CONTROLS – SYSTEM LOADING

**Note 1:**

Same fragment path must not sever:

ON-SIDE cables + OFF-SIDE hydraulic system + HYDRAULIC PWR #3

e.g.: Left elevator cable and HYDRAULIC PWR #2 and #3 or,

Right elevator cable and HYDRAULIC PWR # 1 and # 3

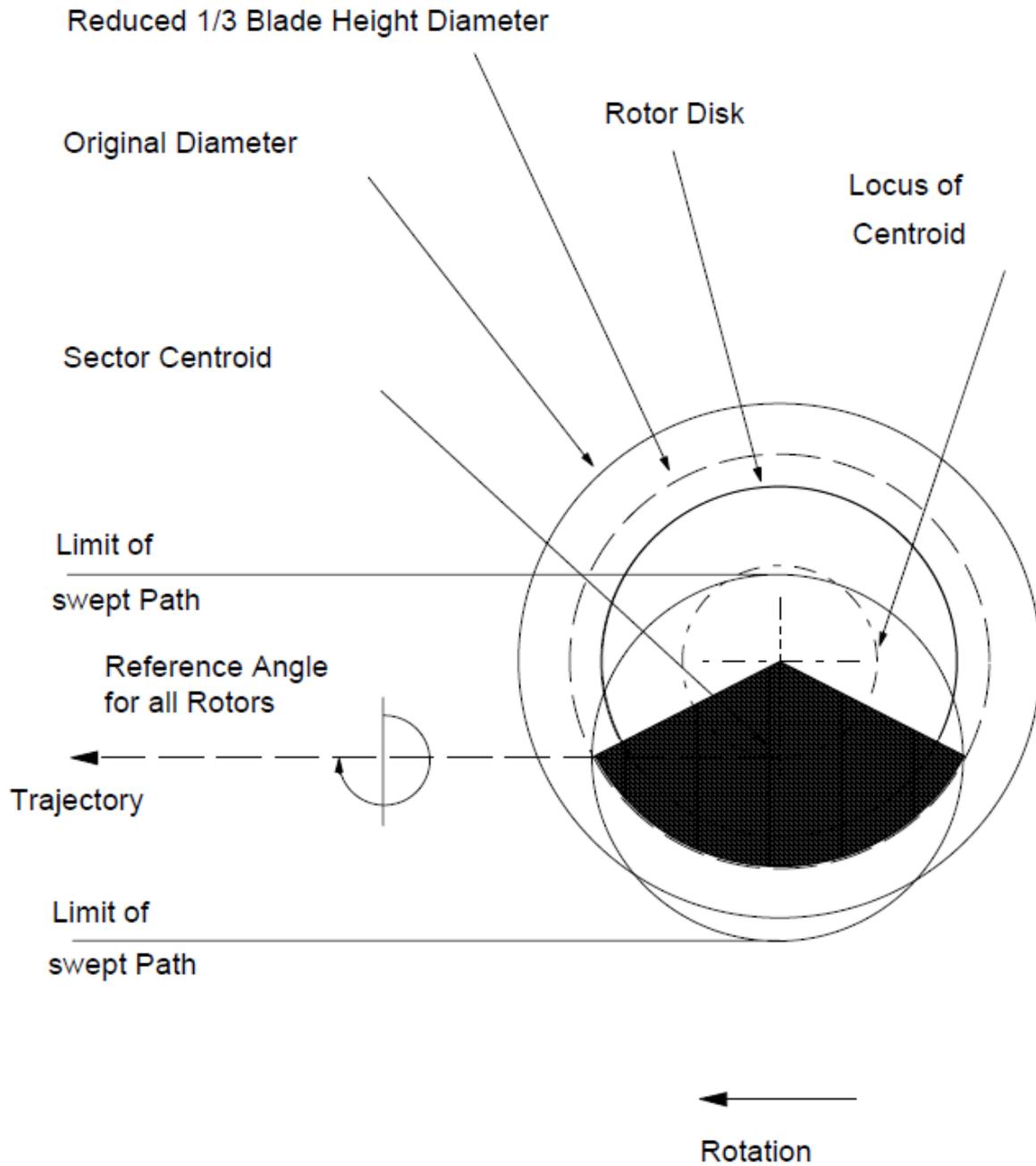
**Note 2:**

Same fragment path must not sever:

- Both CHAN1 and CHAN2 circuits
- ON-SIDE control circuit + OFF-SIDE power circuit
- OFF-SIDE control circuit + ON-SIDE power circuit

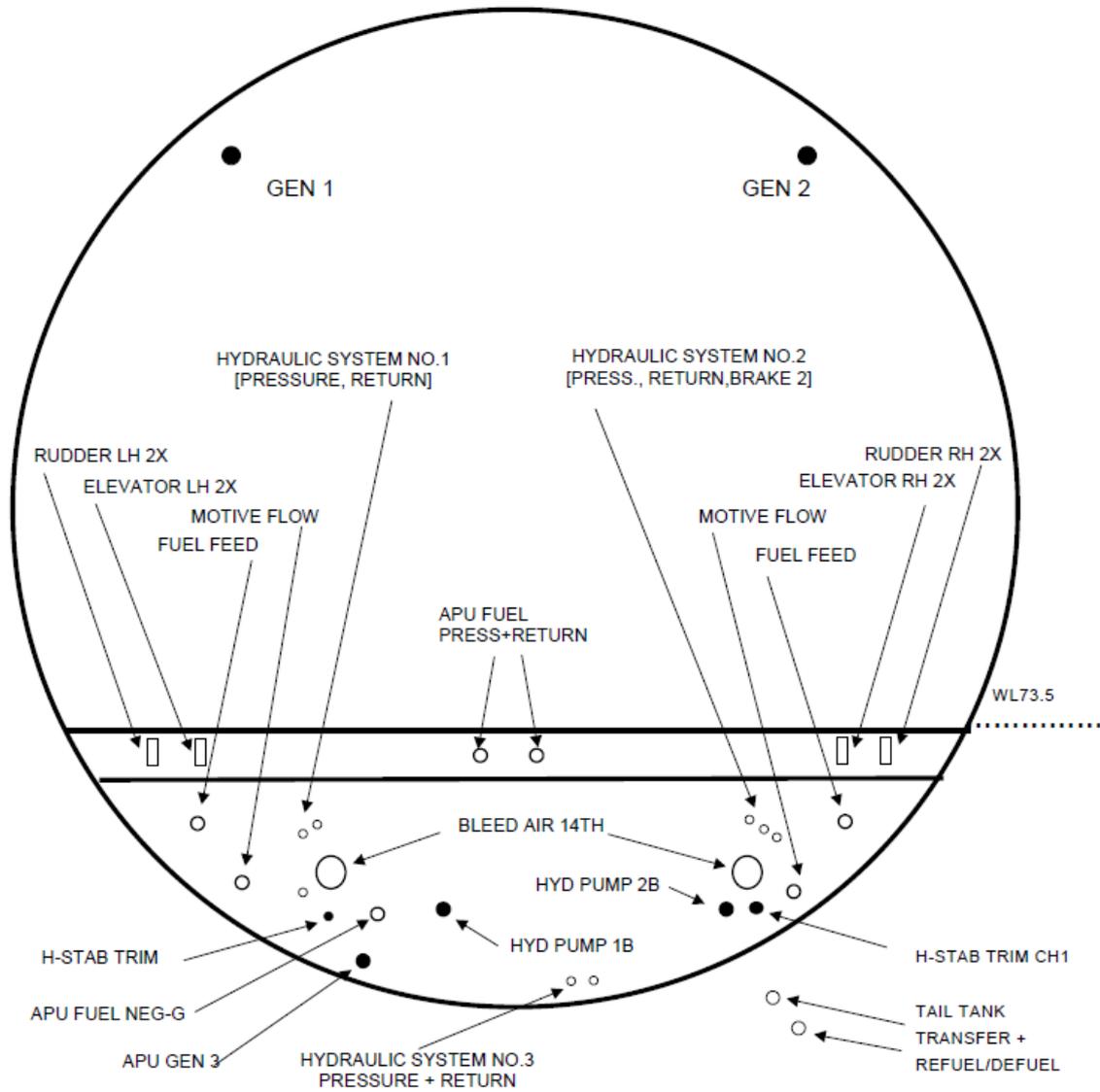
**EXAMPLE – SYSTEM LOADING MATRIX**

**FIGURE 2**



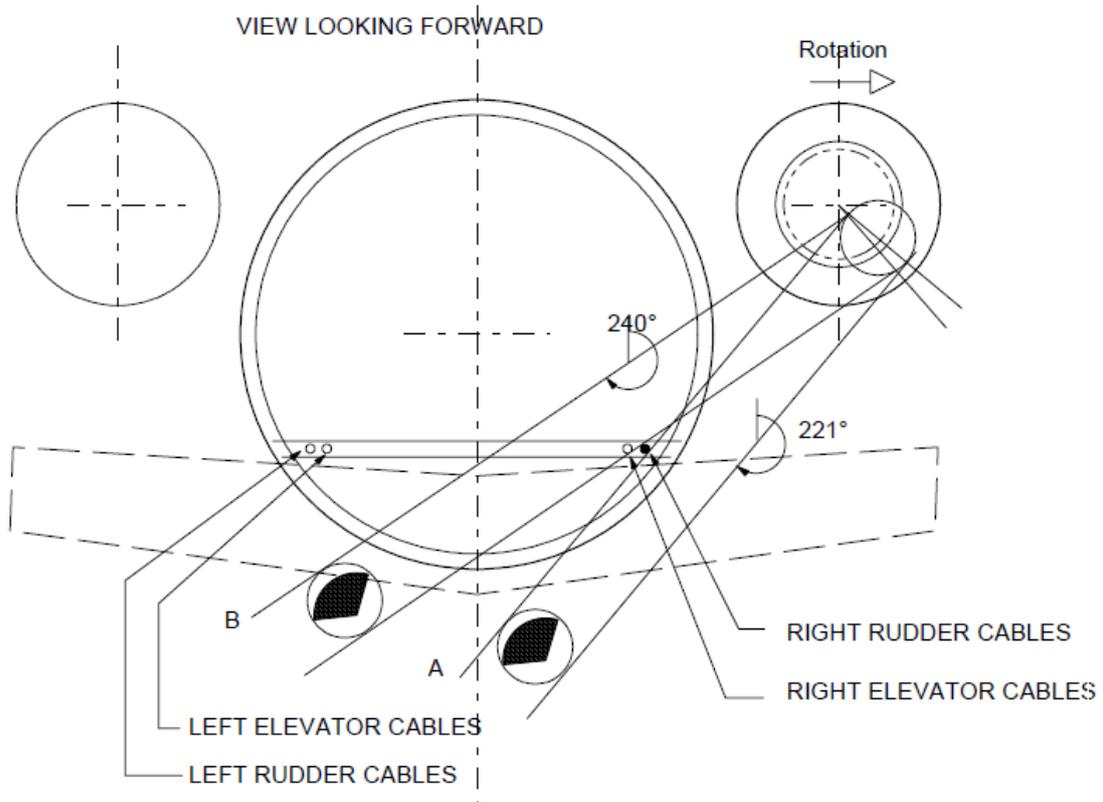
**TRI-SECTOR ROTOR BURST**

**FIGURE 3**



**TYPICAL LAYOUT OF SYSTEMS IN ROTOR PLANE**

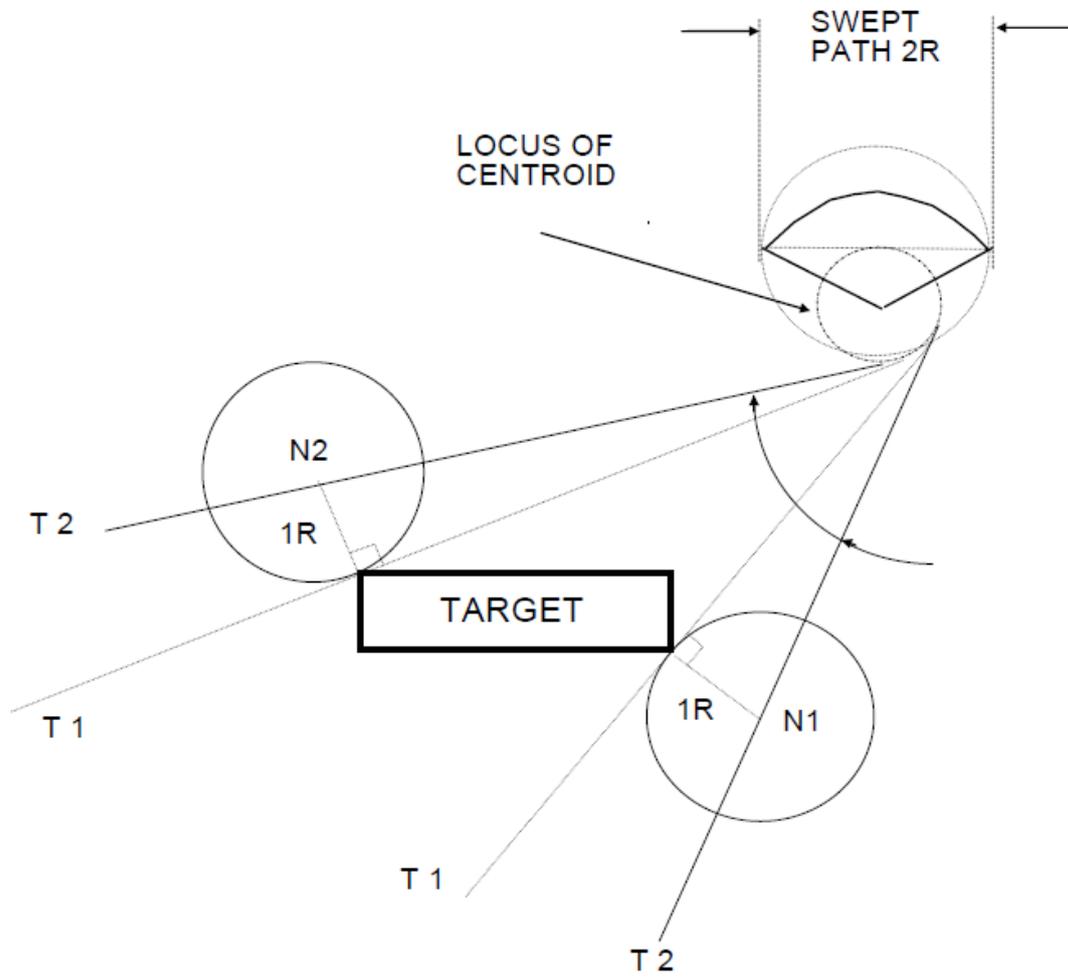
**FIGURE 4**



**EXAMPLE:**  
 The right rudder cables are cut by a 1/3 fan fragment from the right engine at all trajectory angles between 221° and 240°. Trajectory range A - B is therefore 19°

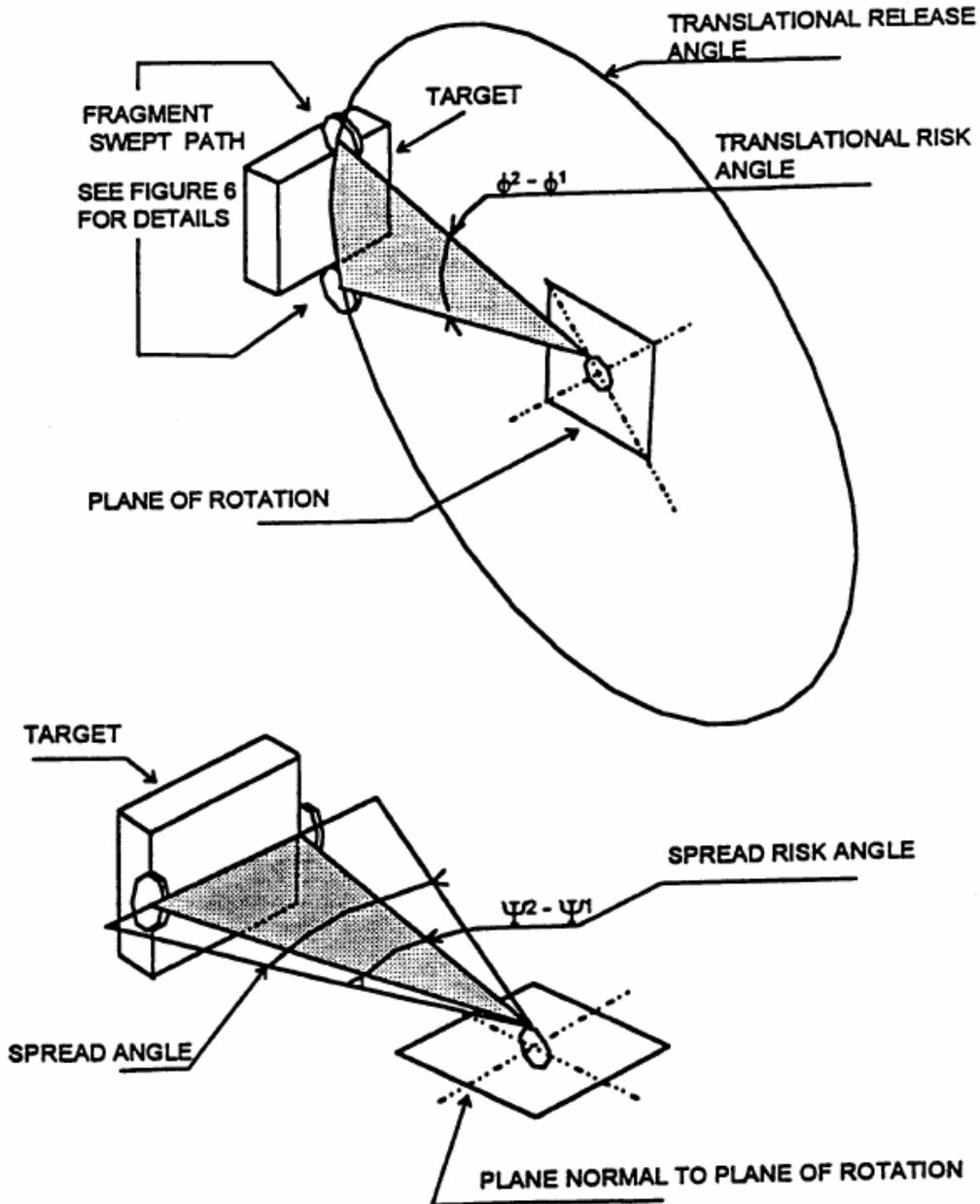
**TRAJECTORY RANGE PLOTTING**

**FIGURE 5**



TYPICAL TRAJECTORY PLOTTING

FIGURE 6



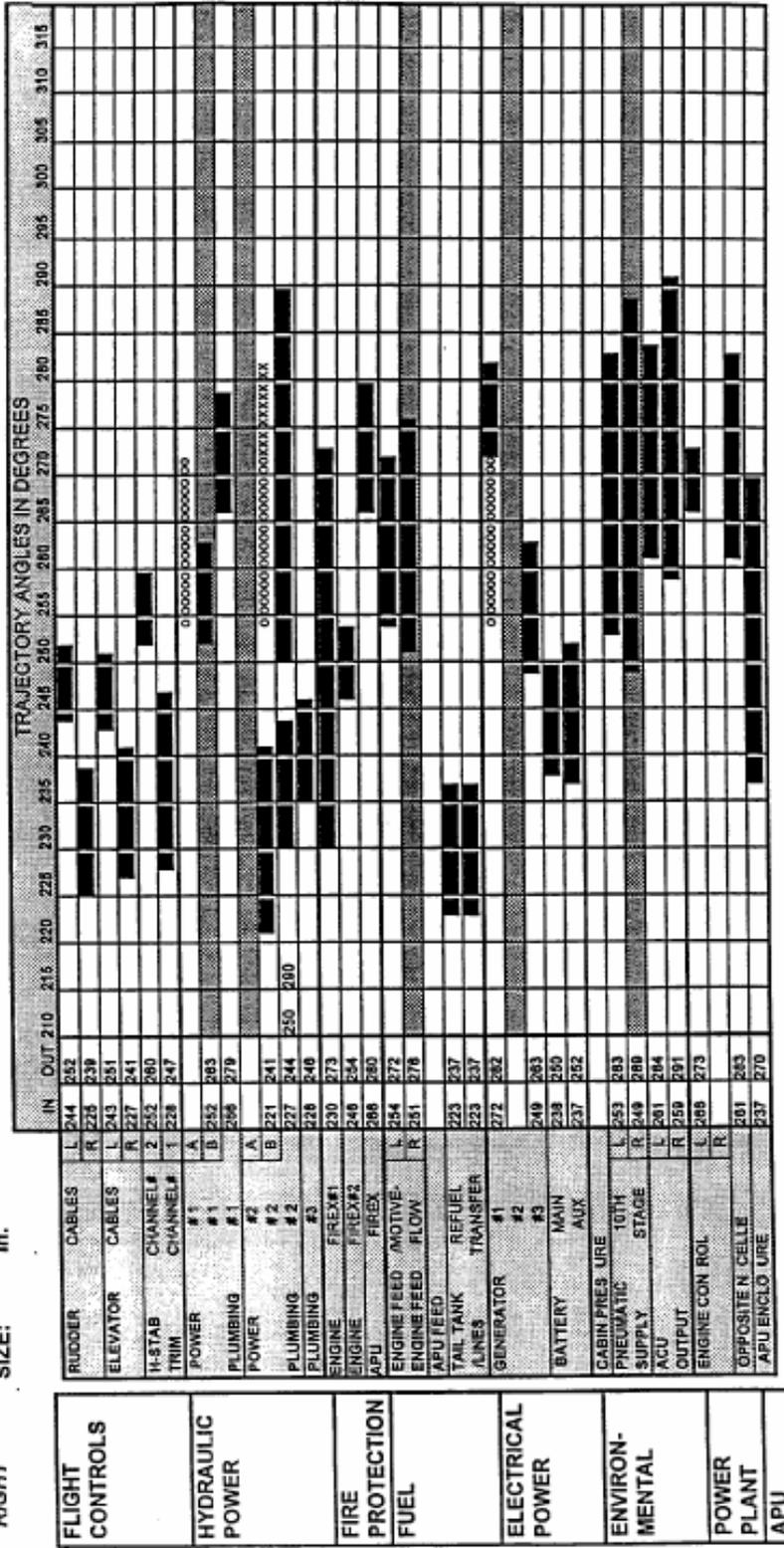
**DEFINITION - THREAT WINDOW**

**FIGURE 7**

**ENGINE ROTOR FAILURE - SYSTEM EFFECTS**

**H.P. TURBINE 1**

ENGINE: **RIGHT**  
 COMPONENT: **In.**  
 SIZE: **In.**



LEGEND: **■** = DIRECT HIT    00000 = OPPOSITE ENGINE FUEL LINE    XXXXX = OPPOSITE GENERATOR    FFFFF = APU FUEL LINE

**FIGURE 8 - SAMPLE ROTOR STAGE PLOTTING CHART**

## AMC 20-136

### AMC 20-136 Aircraft Electrical and Electronic System Lightning Protection

*ED Decision 2015/017/R*

#### 1. PURPOSE

- a. This Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) provides the means and Guidance Material (GM) on how aircraft electrical and electronic systems can be protected from the effects of lightning. This AMC describes a means, but not the only means, to demonstrate compliance with the following Certification Specifications: CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, and CS 29.1316, Electrical and electronic system lightning protection, as they pertain to aircraft type certification or supplemental type certification.
- b. This AMC is not mandatory and does not constitute a regulation. In using the means described in this AMC, it must be followed in all important respects.
- c. The verb 'must' is used to indicate mandatory requirements when following the guidance in this AMC in its entirety. The terms 'should' and 'recommend' are used when following the guidance is recommended but not required to comply with this AMC.

#### 2. APPLICABILITY

This AMC applies to all applicants for a new Type Certificate (TC) or a change to an existing TC when the certification basis contains either CS 23.1306, or CS 25.1316, or CS 27.1316, or CS 29.1316.

#### 3. SCOPE

- a. AMC 20-136 provides the AMC and GM for complying with CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, and CS 29.1316 for the effects on electrical and electronic systems due to lightning transients induced or conducted onto equipment and wiring.
- b. CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, and CS 29.1316 are also applicable to the effects on aircraft electrical and electronic systems when lightning directly attaches to equipment, components, or wiring. This AMC addresses the functional aspects of these effects on aircraft electrical and electronic equipment, components, or wiring. However, this AMC does not address lightning effects such as burning, eroding, and blasting of aircraft equipment, components, or wiring. For demonstrating compliance for these effects, we recommend using EUROCAE ED-113, Aircraft Lightning Direct Effects Certification.
- c. For information on fuel ignition hazards, see AMC 25.954 and FAA AC 20-53, Protection of Aircraft Fuel Systems Against Fuel Vapor Ignition Caused By Lightning. This AMC does not address lightning zoning methods, lightning environment definition, or lightning test methods. For information on lightning zoning methods and lightning environment definition, see EUROCAE ED-91 and ED-84A. For information on Fuel Structural Lightning Protection, see EUROCAE policy ER-002. For information on lightning test methods, see EUROCAE ED-105A, Aircraft Lightning Test Methods, or ED-14G, Section 22, Lightning Induced Transient Susceptibility, and Section 23, Lightning Direct Effects.

**4. RELATED MATERIAL****a. European Aviation Safety Agency (EASA) (in this document also referred to as the 'Agency')**

1. Certification Specifications CS-23: 23.867, 23.901, 23.954, 23.1301, 23.1306, 23.1309, 23.1529.
2. Certification Specifications CS-25: 25.581, 25.901, 25.954, 25.1301, 25.1309, 25.1316, 25.1529.
3. Certification Specifications CS-27: 27.610, 27.901, 27.954, 27.1301, 27.1309, 27.1316, 27.1529.
4. Certification Specifications CS-29: 29.610, 29.901, 29.954, 29.1301, 29.1309, 29.1316, 29.1529.

Copies of these CSs can be requested from the European Aviation Safety Agency, Postfach 10 12 53, D-50452 Cologne, Germany; telephone +49 221 8999 000; fax: +49 221 8999 099; Website: <http://easa.europa.eu/official-publication/>

**b. Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations (14 CFR)**

Copies of the following 14 CFR sections can be requested from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402-9325. Telephone 202-512-1800, fax 202-512-2250. Copies can also be requested from the Government Printing Office (GPO) via the electronic CFR Internet website at [www.access.gpo.gov/ecfr/](http://www.access.gpo.gov/ecfr/).

Part 23, Airworthiness Standards: Normal, Utility, Acrobatic, and Commuter Category Airplanes

§ 23.867 Electrical bonding and protection against lightning and static electricity

§ 23.901 Installation

§ 23.954 Fuel system lightning protection

§ 23.1301 Function and installation

§ 23.1309 Equipment, systems, and installations

§ 23.1306 Electrical and electronic system lightning protection

§ 23.1529 Instructions for continued airworthiness

Part 25, Airworthiness Standards: Transport Category Airplanes

§ 25.581 Lightning protection

§ 25.901 Installation

§ 25.954 Fuel system lightning protection

§ 25.1301 Function and installation

§ 25.1309 Equipment, systems, and installations

§ 25.1316 Electrical and electronic system lightning protection

§ 25.1529 Instructions for continued airworthiness

Part 27, Airworthiness Standards: Normal Category Rotorcraft

§ 27.610 Lightning and static electricity protection

§ 27.901 Installation

§ 27.954 Fuel system lightning protection

§ 27.1301 Function and installation

§ 27.1309 Equipment, systems, and installations

§ 27.1316 Electrical and electronic system lightning protection

§ 27.1529 Instructions for continued airworthiness

Part 29, Airworthiness Standards: Transport Category Rotorcraft

§ 29.610 Lightning and static electricity protection

§ 29.901 Installation

§ 29.954 Fuel system lightning protection

§ 29.1301 Function and installation

§ 29.1309 Equipment, systems, and installations

§ 29.1316 Electrical and electronic system lightning protection

§ 29.1529 Instructions for continued airworthiness

**c. FAA Advisory Circular**

1. AC 20-155, SAE Documents to Support Aircraft Lightning Protection Certification.
2. AC 21-16, RTCA Document DO-160 Versions D, E, F, and G, Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment.
3. AC 23-17, Systems and Equipment Guide for Certification of Part 23 Airplanes and Airships.
4. AC 23.1309-1E, System Safety Analysis and Assessment for Part 23 Airplanes.
5. AC 27-1B, Certification of Normal Category Rotorcraft.
6. AC 29-2C, Certification of Transport Category Rotorcraft.

Copies of these ACs are available at [http://www.faa.gov/regulations\\_policies/advisory\\_circulars](http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/advisory_circulars).

**d. Industry documents**

Note: The industry documents referenced in this section refer to the current revisions or regulatory authorities accepted revisions.

1. **European Organization for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE)**. Copies of the following documents can be requested from EUROCAE, 102 rue Etienne Dolet, 92240 Malakoff. Telephone: +33 1 40 92 79 30, Fax: +33 1 46 55 62 65,

Website: <http://www.eurocae.net>.

EUROCAE ED-79A, Guidelines for Development of Civil Aircraft and Systems.

EUROCAE ED-14G, Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment.

EUROCAE ED-84A, Aircraft Lightning Environment and Related Test Waveforms

EUROCAE ED-91, Aircraft Lightning Zoning

EUROCAE ED-105A, Aircraft Lightning Test Methods.

EUROCAE ED-113, Aircraft Lightning Direct Effects Certification.

2. **RTCA.** You can get copies of RTCA/DO-160G, Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment, from RTCA, Inc., 1150 18th Street NW, Suite 910, Washington, D.C. 20036. Telephone: +1 202 833 9339, Fax +1 202 833 9434, Website: <http://www.rtca.org>.

This document is technically equivalent to EUROCAE ED-14G. Anywhere there is a reference to RTCA/DO-160G, EUROCAE ED-14G may be used.

3. **SAE International.** You can get copies of the following documents from SAE Customer Service, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA 15096-0001. Telephone: +1 724 776 4970, Fax: 724-776-0790, Website: [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).

*ARP 4754A, Guidelines for Development of Civil Aircraft and Systems. This document is technically equivalent to EUROCAE ED-79A. Anywhere there is a reference to ARP 4754A, EUROCAE ED-79A may be used.*

*ARP 4761, Guidelines and Methods for Conducting the Safety Assessment Process on Civil Airborne Systems and Equipment.*

*ARP 5412B, Aircraft Lightning Environment and Related Test Waveforms. This document is technically equivalent to EUROCAE ED-84A. Anywhere there is a reference to ARP 5412A, EUROCAE ED-84A may be used.*

*ARP 5414A, Aircraft Lightning Zoning. This document is technically equivalent to EUROCAE ED-91. Anywhere there is a reference to ARP 5414A, EUROCAE ED-91 may be used.*

*ARP 5415A, User's Manual for Certification of Aircraft Electrical/Electronic Systems for the Indirect Effects of Lightning.*

*ARP 5416A, Aircraft Lightning Test Methods. This document is technically equivalent to EUROCAE ED-105A. Anywhere there is a reference to ARP 5416A, EUROCAE ED-105A may be used.*

*ARP 5577, Aircraft Lightning Direct Effects Certification. This document is technically equivalent to EUROCAE ED-113. Anywhere there is a reference to ARP 5577, EUROCAE ED-113 may be used.*

## 5. BACKGROUND

- a. **Regulatory Applicability.** The certification specifications for aircraft electrical and electronic system lightning protection are based on the aircraft's potential for lightning exposure and the consequences of system failure. The regulations require lightning protection of aeroplane/rotorcraft electrical and electronic systems with catastrophic, hazardous, or major failure conditions for aeroplane/rotorcraft certificated under CS-25 and 29. The requirements also apply to CS-23 aeroplanes and CS-27 rotorcraft approved for operations under instrument flight rules. Those CS-23 aeroplanes and CS-27 rotorcraft

approved solely for operations under visual flight rules require lightning protection of electrical or electronic systems having catastrophic failure conditions.

- b. **Regulatory Requirements.** Protection against the effects of lightning for aircraft electrical and electronic systems, regardless of whether these are ‘indirect’ or ‘direct’ effects of lightning, are addressed under CS 23.1306, 25.1316, 27.1316, and 29.1316. The terms ‘indirect’ and ‘direct’ are often used to classify the effects of lightning. However, the regulations do not, and are not intended to, differentiate between the effects of lightning. The focus is to protect aircraft electrical and electronic systems from effects of lightning. The regulations listed in this paragraph introduce several terms which are further explained below, including:

1. **System.** A system can include equipment, components, parts, wire bundles, software, and firmware. Electrical and electronic systems consist of pieces of equipment connected by electrical conductors, all of which are required to perform one or more functions.
2. **Function.** The specific action of a system, equipment, and flight crew performance aboard the aircraft that, by itself, provides a completely recognizable operational capability. For example, “display aircraft heading to the pilots” is a function. One or more systems may perform a specific function or one system may perform multiple functions.
3. **Adverse Effect.** A lightning effect resulting in system failure, malfunction, or misleading information to a degree that is unacceptable for the specific aircraft function or system addressed in the system lightning protection regulations.
4. **Timely Manner.** The meaning of “in a timely manner” depends upon the function performed by the system being evaluated, the specific system design, interaction between that system and other systems, and interaction between the system and the flight crew. The definition of “in a timely manner” must be determined for each specific system and for specific functions performed by the system. The applicable definition should be included in the certification plan for review and approval by the certification authorities.

## 6. STEPS FOR DEMONSTRATING COMPLIANCE

- a. **The following seven steps** describe how compliance with CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, and CS 29.1316 may be demonstrated:

1. Identify the systems to be assessed.
2. Determine the lightning strike zones for the aircraft.
3. Establish the aircraft lightning environment for each zone.
4. Determine the lightning transient environment associated with the systems.
5. Establish Equipment Transient Design Levels (ETDLs) and aircraft Actual Transient Levels (ATLs).
6. Verify compliance with the requirements.
7. Take corrective measures, if needed.

- b. **Lightning considerations**

The steps above should be performed to address lightning transients induced in electrical and electronic system wiring and equipment, and lightning damage to aircraft external

equipment and sensors that are connected to electrical and electronic systems, such as radio antennas and air data probes. Additional guidance on lightning protection against lightning damage for external equipment and sensor installations can be found in EUROCAE ED-113.

**c. Identify the systems to be assessed**

1. General. The aircraft systems requiring lightning assessment should be identified. Address any lightning-related electrical or electronic system failure that may cause or contribute to an adverse effect on the aircraft. The effects of a lightning strike, therefore, should be assessed in a manner that allows for the determination of the degree to which the aircraft and/or its systems' safety may be influenced. This assessment should cover:
  - a. all normal aircraft operating modes, phases of flight, and operating conditions; and
  - b. all lightning-related failure conditions and their subsequent effects on aircraft operations and the flight crew.
  
2. Safety assessment. A safety assessment related to lightning effects should be conducted to establish and classify the system failure condition. Based on the failure condition classification established by the safety assessment, the systems should be assigned appropriate lightning certification levels, as shown in Table 1. The failure condition classifications and terms used in this AMC are consistent with those used in AC 23.1309-1E, System Safety Analysis and Assessment for CS-23 Aeroplanes, and AMC 25.1309, System Safety Analysis and Assessment for CS-25 Aeroplanes. Further guidance on processes for conducting safety assessments can be found in those AC/AMC and in AC 27-1B, Certification of Normal Category Rotorcraft, AC 29-2C, Certification of Transport Category Rotorcraft, EUROCAE ED-79A, Guidelines for Development of Civil Aircraft and Systems, and ARP 4761, Guidelines and Methods for Conducting the Safety Assessment Process on Civil Airborne Systems and Equipment. The specific aircraft safety assessment related to lightning effects required by CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316 and CS 29.1316 takes precedence over the more general safety assessment process described in AC 23.1309-1E, AMC 25.1309, AC 27-1B, and AC 29-2C. Lightning effects on electrical and electronic systems are generally assessed independently from other system failures that are unrelated to lightning, and do not need to be considered in combination with latent or active failures unrelated to lightning.

**Table 1 — Lightning failure conditions and certification levels**

Lightning Requirement Provisions From: CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, CS 29.1316	Failure Condition	System Lightning Certification Level
(a) Each electrical and electronic system that performs a function for which failure would prevent the continued safe flight and landing of the aircraft.	Catastrophic	A
(b) Each electrical and electronic system that performs a function for which failure would reduce the capability of the aircraft or the ability of the flight crew to respond to an adverse operating condition.	Hazardous	B
	Major	C

- a. Level A systems. The system safety assessment should consider effects of lightning-related failures or malfunctions on systems with lower failure classification that may affect the function of Level A systems. The applicant should demonstrate that any system with wiring connections to a Level A system will not adversely affect the functions with catastrophic failure conditions performed by the Level A system when the aircraft is exposed to lightning. Redundancy alone cannot protect against lightning because the lightning-generated electromagnetic fields, conducted currents and induced currents in the aircraft can simultaneously induce transients in all electrical wiring on an aircraft.
- b. Level B or C systems. Simultaneous and common failures due to lightning exposure generally do not have to be assumed for Level B or C systems incorporating redundant, spatially separated installations in the aircraft. This is because aircraft transfer function tests and in-service experience have shown these redundant and spatially separated installations are not simultaneously exposed to the maximum lightning-induced transients. For example, redundant external sensors may mitigate direct lightning attachment damage if there is acceptable separation between the sensors to prevent damage to multiple sensors so that the function is maintained. Therefore, simultaneous loss of all of these redundant and spatially separated Level B or C systems due to lightning exposure does not need to be considered. However, if multiple Level B or C systems are designed and installed within the same location in the aircraft, or share a common wiring connection, then the combined failure due to lightning exposure should be assessed to determine if the combined failures are catastrophic. If so, these systems should be designated as Level A systems.
- c. Failure conditions. The safety assessment may show that some systems have different failure conditions in different phases of flight. Therefore, different lightning requirements may have to be applied to the system for different phases of flight. For example, an automatic flight control system may have a catastrophic failure condition for autoland, while automatic flight control system operations in cruise may have a hazardous failure condition.
- d. **Determine the lightning strike zones for the aircraft**

The purpose of lightning zoning is to determine those areas of the aircraft likely to experience lightning channel attachment and those structures that may conduct lightning current between lightning attachment points. The lightning attachment zones for the aircraft configuration, should be determined, since the zones will be dependent upon the aircraft's geometry, materials, and operational factors. Lightning attachment zones often vary from one aircraft type to another.

Note: EUROCAE ED-91 provides guidance to determine the lightning attachment zones for the aircraft.
- e. **Establish the aircraft lightning environment for each zone**

Zones 1 and 2 identify where lightning is likely to attach and, as a result, the entrance and exit points for current flow through the aircraft. The appropriate voltage waveforms and current components to apply in those zones should be identified. By definition, Zone 3 areas carry lightning current flow between initial (or swept stroke) attachment points, so they may include contributions from all of the current components. The Agency accepts

analysis to estimate Zone 3 current levels that result from the external environment. The external lightning environment is:

1. caused by the lightning flash interacting with the exterior of the aircraft; and
2. represented by combined waveforms of the lightning current components at the aircraft surface.

Note: EUROCAE ED-84A provides guidance for selecting the lightning waveforms and their applications.

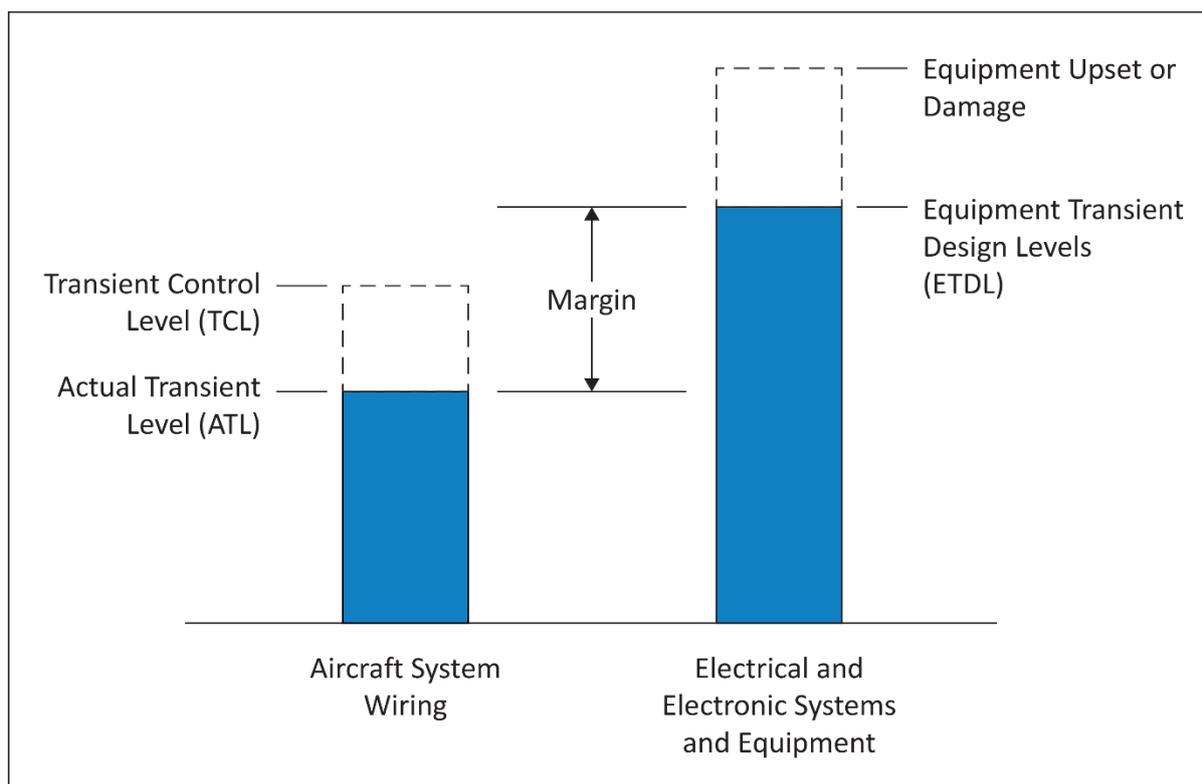
**f. Determine the lightning transient environment associated with the systems**

1. The lightning environment, as seen by electrical and electronic systems, consists of voltages and currents produced by lightning current flowing through the aircraft. The voltages and currents that appear at system wiring interfaces result from aperture coupling, structural voltages, or conducted currents resulting from direct attachments to equipment and sensors.
2. Determine the lightning voltage and current transient waveforms and amplitudes that can appear at the electrical and electronic equipment interface circuits for each system identified in paragraph 6.c. The lightning transients may be determined in terms of the wire bundle current, or the open circuit voltage and the short circuit current appearing at system wiring and equipment interface circuits. The voltage and current transient waveforms and amplitudes are dependent upon the loop impedances of the system and its interconnecting wiring.

**g. Establish Equipment Transient Design Levels (ETDLs) and aircraft Actual Transient Levels (ATLs)**

The regulations in CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, and CS 29.1316 define requirements in terms of functional effects that are performed by aircraft electrical and electronic systems. From a design point of view, lightning protection for systems is shared between protection incorporated into the aircraft structure and wiring, and protection incorporated into the equipment. Therefore, requirement allocations for the electrical and electronic system lightning protection can be based on the concept of ETDLs and ATLs.

1. Determine and specify the ETDLs for the electrical and electronic equipment that make up the systems to be assessed. The ETDLs set qualification test levels for the systems and equipment. They define the voltage and current amplitudes and waveforms that the systems and equipment must withstand without any adverse effects. The ETDLs for a specific system depend on the anticipated system and wiring installation locations on the aircraft, the expected shielding performance of the wire bundles and structure, and the system criticality.
2. The ATLs are the voltage and current amplitudes and waveforms actually generated on the aircraft wiring when the aircraft is exposed to lightning, as determined by aircraft test, analysis, or similarity. The difference between an ETDL and an ATL is the margin. Figure 1 shows the relationship among the ATL and the ETDL. The aircraft, interconnecting wiring, and equipment protection should be evaluated to determine the most effective combination of ATLs and ETDLs that will provide acceptable margin. Appropriate margins to account for uncertainties in the verification techniques may be required as mentioned in paragraph 8.i. of this AMC.



3. Typically, the applicant should specify the ETDLs prior to aircraft certification lightning tests or analyses to determine the aircraft ATLs. Therefore, the expected aircraft transients must be based upon results of lightning tests on existing aircraft, engineering analyses, or knowledgeable estimates. These expected aircraft lightning transient levels are termed Transient Control Levels (TCLs). The TCLs voltage and current amplitudes and waveforms should be specified based upon the expected lightning transients that would be generated on wiring in specific areas of the aircraft. The TCLs should be equal to or greater than the maximum expected aircraft ATLs. The TCLs for a specific wire bundle depend on the configuration of the aircraft, the wire bundle, and the wire bundle installation. The aircraft lightning protection should be designed to meet the specified TCLs.

**h. Verify compliance with the requirements**

1. The applicant should demonstrate that the systems comply with the applicable requirements of CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, or CS 29.1316.
2. The applicant should demonstrate that the ETDLs exceed the ATLs by the margin established in their certification plan.
3. Verification may be accomplished by tests, analyses, or by demonstrating similarity with previously certified aircraft and systems. The certification process for Level A systems is contained in paragraph 8. The certification process for Level B and C systems is contained in paragraph 9.
4. The applicant should submit their certification plan in the early stages of the programme to the Agency for review. Experience shows that, particularly with aircraft using new technology or those that have complex systems, early agreement on the certification plan benefits both the applicant and the Agency. The plan should define acceptable ways to resolve critical issues during the

certification process. Analyses and test results during the certification process may warrant modifications to the design or verification methods. When significant changes are necessary, the certification plan should be updated accordingly. The plan may include the items listed in Table 2.

**i. Take corrective measures**

If tests and analyses show that the system did not meet the pass/fail criteria, review the aircraft, installation or system design and improve protection against lightning.

**Table 2 — Items recommended for a lightning certification plan**

Item	Discussion
<b>Description of systems</b>	Describe the systems' installation, including unusual or unique features; the system failure condition classifications; the operational aspects; lightning attachment zones; lightning environment; preliminary estimate of ETDLs and TCLs; and acceptable margins between ETDLs and ATLs.
<b>Description of compliance method</b>	Describe how to verify compliance. Typically, the verification method chosen includes similarity, analytical procedures, and tests. If using analytical procedures, describe how to verify them. (See paragraph 8.d.)
<b>Acceptance criteria</b>	Determine the pass/fail criteria for each system by analysing how safe the system is. During this safety analysis, assess the aircraft in its various operational states; account for the failure and disruption modes caused by the effects of lightning.
<b>Test plans</b>	Each test undertaken as part of the demonstration of compliance should be appropriately planned. The applicant can decide if test plans are separate documents or part of the compliance plan. Test plans should state the test sequence.

**7. EFFECTS OF TRANSIENTS**

Lightning causes voltage and current transients to appear on equipment circuits. Equipment circuit impedances and configurations will determine whether lightning transients are primarily voltage or current. These transient voltages and currents can degrade system performance permanently or temporarily. The two primary types of degradation are component damage and system functional upset.

**a. Component damage**

This is a permanent condition in which transients alter the electrical characteristics of a circuit. Examples of devices that may be susceptible to component damage include:

1. active electronic devices, especially high-frequency transistors, integrated circuits, microwave diodes, and power supply components;
2. passive electrical and electronic components, especially those of very low power or voltage rating;
3. electro-explosive devices, such as squibs and detonators;
4. electromechanical devices, such as indicators, actuators, relays, and motors; and
5. insulating materials (for example, insulating materials in printed circuit boards and connectors) and electrical connections that can burn or melt.

**b. System functional upset**

1. Functional upset is mainly a system problem caused by electrical transients. It may permanently or momentarily upset a signal, circuit, or a system component, which can adversely affect system performance enough to compromise flight safety. A functional upset is a change in digital or analogue state that may or may not require

manual reset. In general, functional upset depends on circuit design and operating voltages, signal characteristics and timing, and system and software configuration.

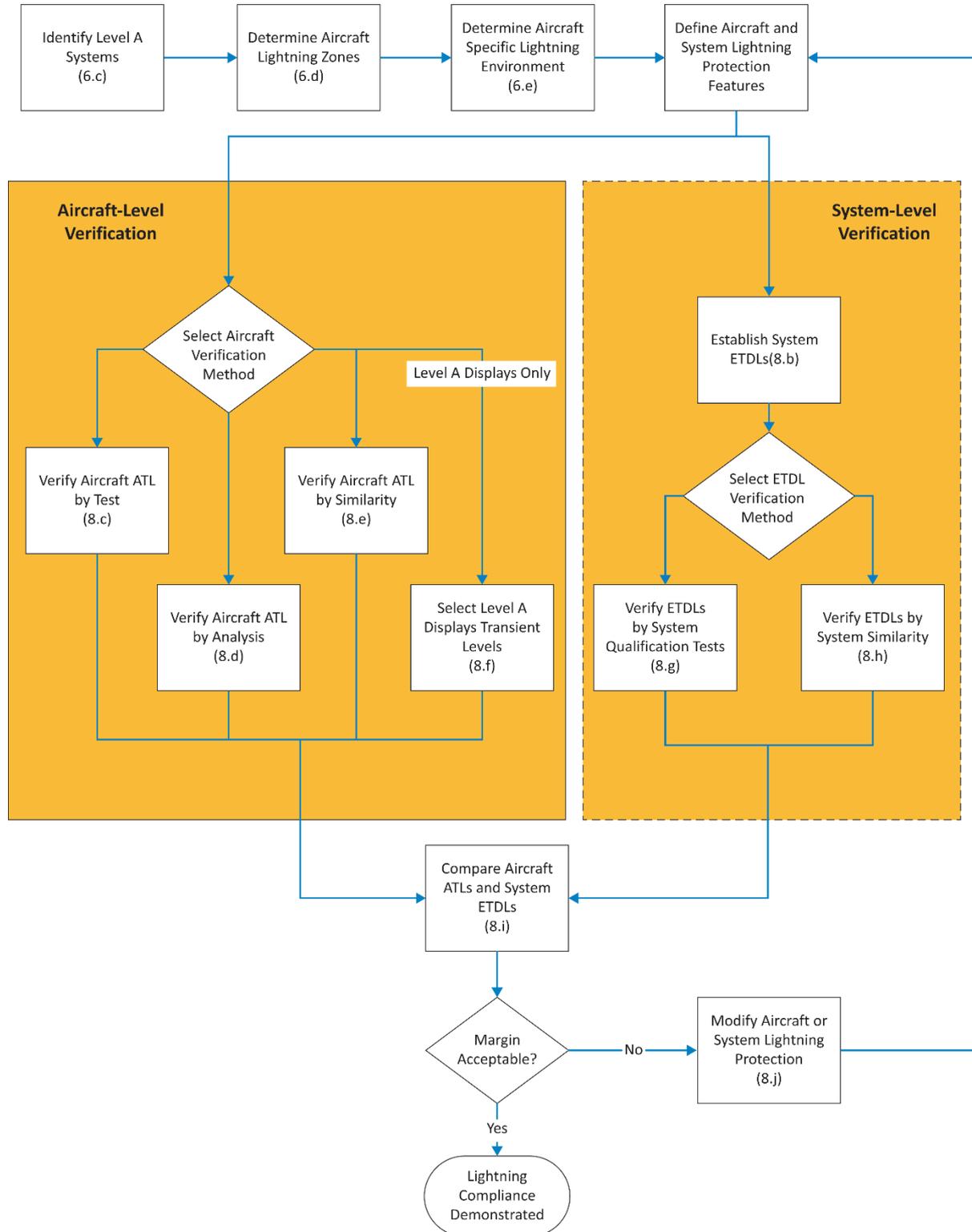
2. Systems or devices that may be susceptible to functional upset include computers and data/signal processing systems; electronic engine and flight controls; and power generating and distribution systems.

## 8. LEVEL A SYSTEM LIGHTNING CERTIFICATION

Figure 2 illustrates a process that the applicant can use to demonstrate that their Level A system complies with CS 23.1306, CS 25.1316, CS 27.1316, and CS 29.1316.

- a. **Identify Level A systems** Level A systems should be identified as described in paragraph 6.c. The detailed system performance pass/fail criteria should be defined. The Agency should concur on this criterion before the applicant begins testing or analysing their Level A system. Specific equipment, components, sensors, power systems and wiring associated with each Level A system should be identified in order to perform the ETDL verification mentioned in paragraphs 8.g and 8.h.

Figure 2 — Typical compliance process for Level A systems



Note: Numbers in parentheses refer to sections in this AMC.

**b. Establish the system's ETDLs**

Establish the aircraft system's ETDLs from an evaluation of expected lightning transient amplitudes and waveforms for the system installation, structure and wiring configuration on a specific aircraft. ETDLs that exceed the ATLs by an acceptable margin should be established. In general, the ETDLs for equipment in a complex system will not be the same for all wire bundles connecting them to other equipment in the system. The applicant may use results of lightning tests on existing similar aircraft, engineering analyses, or knowledgeable estimates to establish the appropriate system's ETDLs. While specific aircraft configurations and system installations may lead to ETDLs that have amplitudes and waveforms different than those defined in EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, ETDLs are often specified using the information from Section 22. The ETDLs must exceed the ATLs by an acceptable margin.

**c. Determine the ATLs using aircraft tests**

See SAE ARP 5415A, User's Manual for Certification of Aircraft Electrical/Electronic Systems Against the Indirect Effects of Lightning, and EUROCAE ED-105A for guidance on how to determine the ATLs.

**d. Determine the ATLs using analysis**

See SAE ARP 5415A for guidance on how to analyse aircraft to determine the ATLs. Acceptance of the analysis method chosen will depend on the accuracy of the method. The applicant should confirm their analysis method accuracy using experimental data, and gain agreement of their analysis approach from the Agency.

**e. Determine the ATLs using similarity**

1. The use of similarity to determine the ATLs may be used when:
  - a. there are only minor differences between the previously certified aircraft and system installation and the aircraft and system installation to be certified; and
  - b. there is no unresolved in-service history of problems related to lightning strikes to the previously certified aircraft.
2. If significant differences are found that will affect the aircraft ATLs, the applicant should perform more tests and analyses to resolve the open issues.
3. To use similarity, the applicant should assess the aircraft, wiring, and system installation differences that can adversely affect the system's susceptibility. When assessing a new installation, consider the differences affecting the internal lightning environment of the aircraft and its effects on the system. The assessment should cover:
  - a. aircraft type, equipment locations, airframe construction, structural materials, and apertures that could affect attenuation of the external lightning environment;
  - b. system wiring size, length, and routing; wire types (whether parallel or twisted wires), connectors, wire shields, and shield terminations;
  - c. lightning protection devices such as transient suppressors and lightning arrestors; and
  - d. grounding and bonding.

4. Similarity cannot be used for a new aircraft design with new systems.
- f. **Determine the transient levels using ED-14G, Section 22, Guidance for Level A displays only**
1. The applicant may select ETDLs for their Level A display system using guidance in this section, without specific aircraft test or analysis. Level A displays involve functions for which the pilot will be in the loop through pilot–system information exchange. Level A display systems typically include the displays; symbol generators; data concentrators; sensors (such as attitude, air data, and heading sensors); interconnecting wiring; and associated control panels.
  2. This approach should not be used for other Level A systems, such as control systems, because failures and malfunctions of those systems can more directly and abruptly contribute to a catastrophic failure event than display system failures and malfunctions. Therefore, other Level A systems require a more rigorous lightning transient compliance verification programme.
  3. Information in Table 3 should be used to evaluate aircraft and system installation features in order to select the appropriate ETDLs for the system. Table 3 defines test levels for ETDLs, based on EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, Tables 22-2 and 22-3. The applicant should provide the Agency with a description of their aircraft and display system installation features and compare these to the information in Table 3 to substantiate the ETDL selected for their aircraft and Level A display system installation. When selecting ETDLs using guidance provided in Table 3, an acceptable margin between the anticipated ATLs for display system installations is incorporated in the selected ETDLs.

**Table 3 — Equipment transient design levels — Level A displays**

EUROCAE ED-14G Section 22 Level	Display system installation location
<b>Level 5</b>	<p>Use this level when the equipment under consideration, its associated wire bundles, or other components connected by wiring to the equipment are in aircraft areas exposed to very severe lightning transients. These areas are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— areas with composite materials whose shielding is not very effective;</li> <li>— areas where there is no guarantee of structural bonding; and</li> <li>— other open areas where there is little shielding.</li> </ul> <p>The applicant can also use this level to cover a broad range of installations. The applicant may need higher ETDLs when there are high current density regions on mixed conductivity structures (such as wing tips, engine nacelle fin, etc.) because the system wiring may divert some of the lightning current. If the applicant is the system designer, measures should be applied to reduce the need for higher ETDLs.</p>
<b>Level 4</b>	<p>Use this level when the equipment under consideration, its associated wire bundles, or other components connected by wiring to the equipment are in aircraft areas exposed to severe lightning transients. These areas are defined as outside the fuselage (such as wings, fairings, wheel wells, pylons, control surfaces, etc.).</p>

<b>Level 3</b>	<p>Use this level when the equipment under consideration, its associated wire bundles, and other components connected by wiring to the equipment are entirely in aircraft areas with moderate lightning transients. We define these areas as the inside metal aircraft structure or composite aircraft structure whose shielding without improvements is as effective as metal aircraft structure. Examples of such areas are avionics bays not enclosed by bulkheads, cockpit areas, and locations with large apertures (that is, doors without electromagnetic interference (EMI) gaskets, windows, access panels, etc.).</p> <p>Current-carrying conductors in these areas (such as hydraulic tubing, control cables, wire bundles, metal wire trays, etc.) are not necessarily electrically grounded at bulkheads. When few wires exit the areas, either use a higher level (that is, Level 4 or 5) for these wires or offer more protection for these wires.</p>
<b>Level 2</b>	<p>Use this level when the equipment under consideration, its associated wire bundles, and other components connected by wiring to the equipment are entirely in partially protected areas. We define these areas as the inside of a metallic or composite aircraft structure whose shielding is as effective as metal aircraft structure, if you take measures to reduce the lightning coupling to wires.</p> <p>Wire bundles in these areas pass through bulkheads, and have shields that end at the bulkhead connector. When a few wires exit these areas, use either a higher level (that is, Level 3 or 4) or provide more protection for these wires. Install wire bundles close to the ground plane to take advantage of other inherent shielding from metallic structures. Current-carrying conductors (such as hydraulic tubing, control cables, metal wire trays, etc.) are electrically grounded at all bulkheads.</p>
<b>Level 1</b>	<p>Use this level when the equipment under consideration, its associated wire bundles, and other components connected by wiring to the equipment are entirely in well-protected aircraft areas. We define these areas as electromagnetically enclosed.</p>

- g. **Verify the system's ETDLs using system qualification tests**
1. The applicant should identify the equipment, components, sensors, power systems, and wiring associated with the Level A system undergoing ETDL verification tests, specifically considering the system functions whose failures have catastrophic consequences. For complex Level A systems, the system configuration may include redundant equipment, multiple power sources, multiple sensors and actuators, and complex wire bundles. Define the system configuration used for the ETDL verification tests. The applicant should obtain an EASA approval of their system configuration for ETDL verification tests.
  2. Verify the ETDLs using single stroke, multiple stroke, and multiple burst tests on the system wire bundles. Use waveform sets and test levels for the defined ETDLs. Demonstrate that the system operates within the defined pass/fail criteria during these tests. No equipment damage should occur during these system tests or during single stroke pin injection tests using the defined ETDLs. EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, provides acceptable test procedures and waveform set definitions. In addition, EUROCAE ED-105A provides acceptable test methods for complex and integrated systems.
  3. Evaluate any system effects observed during the qualification tests to ensure they do not adversely affect the system's continued performance. The Level A system performance should be evaluated for functions for which failures or malfunctions would prevent the continued safe flight and landing of the aircraft. Other functions performed by the system for which failures or malfunctions would reduce the capability of the aircraft or the ability of the flight crew to respond to an adverse

operating condition should be evaluated using the guidance in Chapter 10. The applicant should obtain an EASA approval of their evaluation.

- h. Verify the system's ETDLs using existing system data (similarity)
  - 1. The applicant may base their ETDL verification on similarity to previously certified systems without performing more tests. This may be done when:
    - a. there are only minor differences between the previously certified system and installation and the system and installation to be certified;
    - b. there are no unresolved in-service system problems related to lightning strikes on the previously certified system; and
    - c. the previously certified system ETDLs were verified by qualification tests.
  - 2. To use similarity to previously certified systems, the applicant should assess the differences between the previously certified system and installation and the system and installation to be certified that can adversely affect the system's susceptibility. The assessment should cover:
    - a. system interface circuits;
    - b. wire size, routing, arrangement (parallel or twisted wires), connector types, wire shields, and shield terminations;
    - c. lightning protection devices such as transient suppressors and lightning arrestors;
    - d. grounding and bonding; and
    - e. system software, firmware, and hardware.
  - 3. If the applicant is unsure how the differences will affect the systems and installations, they should perform more tests and analyses to resolve the open issues.
  - 4. The applicant should assess every system, even if it uses equipment and installation techniques that have a previous certification approval.
  - 5. The use of similarity should not be used for a new aircraft design with new systems.
- i. Verify compliance with the requirements

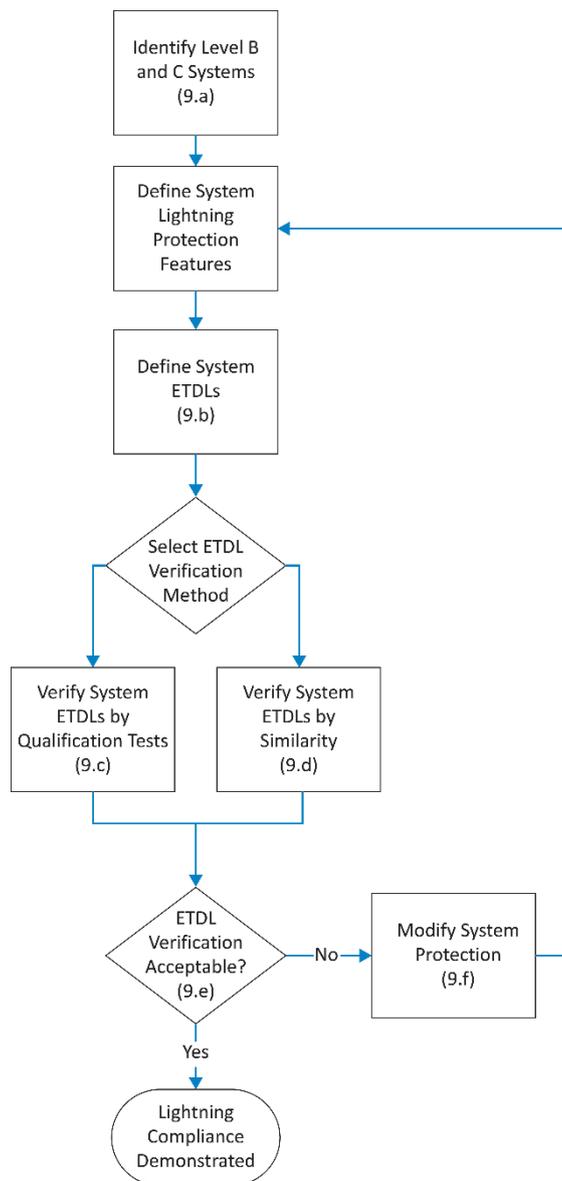
The applicant should compare the verified system ETDLs with the aircraft ATLs and determine if an acceptable margin exists between the ETDLs and the ATLs. Margins account for uncertainty in the verification method. As confidence in the verification method increases, the margin can decrease. An ETDL exceeding the ATL by a factor of two is an acceptable margin for Level A systems, if this margin is verified by aircraft test or by analysis supported by aircraft tests. For Level A display systems where the ETDLs are determined using guidance provided in Table 3, an acceptable margin is already incorporated in the selected ETDLs. For other verification methods, the margin should be agreed upon with the Agency.
- j. Take corrective measures
  - 1. When a system fails to meet the certification requirements, corrective actions should be selected. Any changes or modifications made to the aircraft, system installation or the equipment may require more testing and analysis.
  - 2. To meet the certification requirements, the applicant may need to repeat system qualification testing, or aircraft testing and analysis (in whole or in part). This may include modification to the system or installation to get certification. The applicant should review these changes or modifications with the Agency to determine if they

are significant. If these changes or modifications are significant, the applicant should update their lightning certification plan accordingly. The updated certification plan should be resubmitted to the Agency for review.

## **9. LEVEL B AND C SYSTEM LIGHTNING CERTIFICATION**

- a. Identify Level B and C systems
  1. The applicant should identify their Level B and C systems as described in paragraph 6.c.
  2. The applicant should define the detailed system performance pass/fail criteria. They should obtain the Agency's concurrence on this criterion before starting tests or analyses of Level B and C systems.
  3. Figure 3 illustrates a process the applicant can use to demonstrate that their Level B and C systems comply with the CS requirements.

Figure 3 — Typical compliance process for Level B and C systems



Note: Numbers in parentheses refer to sections in this AMC.

b. Establish the ETDs

1. ATIs determined during aircraft tests or analyses performed for Level A systems to establish the appropriate ETDs for Level B and C systems.
2. Alternatively, the applicant may use the definitions in EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, to select the appropriate ETDs for their Level B and C systems. The following should be considered when selecting an appropriate level:
  - a. Use EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, Level 3 for most Level B systems.
  - b. For Level B systems and associated wiring installed in aircraft areas with more severe lightning transients, use EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, Level 4 or 5 as appropriate to the environment. Examples of aircraft areas with more severe lightning transients are those external to the fuselage, areas with

- composite structures showing poor shielding effectiveness, and other open areas.
- c. Use EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, Level 2 for most Level C systems.
  - d. For Level C systems installed in aircraft areas with more severe lightning transients, use EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, Level 3. Examples of aircraft areas with more severe lightning transients are those external to the fuselage, areas with composite structures showing poor shielding effectiveness, and other open areas.
  - e. The applicant should provide the Agency with a description of their aircraft and system installation features to substantiate the EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, levels selected for their system.
- c. Verify the system's ETDs using equipment qualification tests
1. Equipment qualification tests should be performed using the selected test levels and single stroke, multiple stroke, and multiple burst waveform sets. It should be demonstrated that the equipment operates within the defined pass/fail criteria during these tests. No equipment damage should occur during these equipment qualification tests or during single stroke pin injection tests using the defined ETDs. EUROCAE ED-14G, Section 22, provides acceptable test procedures and waveform set definitions.
  2. Any equipment effects observed during the qualification tests should be evaluated to ensure that they do not adversely affect the system's continued performance. The applicant should obtain the Agency's approval of their evaluation.
  3. Multiple stroke and multiple burst testing is not required if an analysis shows that the equipment is not susceptible to upset, or that the equipment may be susceptible to upset but a reset capability exists so that the system recovers in a timely manner.
- d. Verify the system's ETDs using existing equipment data (similarity)
1. ETDs may be verified by similarity to previously certified systems without performing more tests. The applicant may do this when:
    - a. there are only minor differences between the previously certified system and installation and the system and installation to be certified;
    - b. there are no unresolved in-service system problems related to lightning strikes on the previously certified system; and
    - c. the previously certified system ETDs were verified by qualification tests.
  2. The assessment should cover:
    - a. equipment interface circuits;
    - b. wire size, routing, arrangement (parallel or twisted wires), connector types, wire shields, and shield terminations;
    - c. lightning protection devices such as transient suppressors and lightning arrestors;
    - d. grounding and bonding; and
    - e. equipment software, firmware, and hardware.

3. If significant differences are found that will affect the systems and installations, the applicant should perform more tests and analyses to resolve the open issues.
- e. **Verify compliance with the requirements**

The applicant should demonstrate that the Level B and C systems meet their defined acceptance criteria during the qualification tests at the selected system ETDLs.
- f. **Take corrective measures**

When a system fails to meet the certification requirements, the applicant should decide on corrective actions. If they change or modify the system or installation, equipment qualification testing may need to be repeated. The applicant should review these changes or modifications with the Agency to determine if they are significant. If these changes or modifications are significant, the applicant should update their lightning certification plan accordingly. The updated certification plan should be resubmitted to the Agency for review.

## **10. MAINTENANCE AND SURVEILLANCE**

- a. The applicant should identify the minimum maintenance required for the aircraft electrical and electronic system lightning protection in the Instructions for Continued Airworthiness (ICA). The applicant should define the requirements for periodic and conditional maintenance and surveillance of lightning protection devices or features to ensure acceptable protection performance while the aircraft is in service. Avoid using devices or features that may degrade with time because of corrosion, fretting, flexing cycles, or other causes. Alternatively, identify when to inspect or replace these devices.
- b. The applicant should define the inspection techniques and intervals needed to ensure that the aircraft and system lightning protection remains effective in service. Also, identify built-in test equipment, resistance measurements, continuity checks of the entire system, or other means to determine the system's integrity periodically and conditionally.
- c. See SAE ARP 5415A for more information on aircraft lightning protection maintenance and surveillance.

[Amdt 20/13]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-136 Definitions and acronyms

ED Decision 2015/017/R

### a. Definitions

**Actual Transient Level (ATL):** The level of transient voltage or current that appears at the equipment interface circuits because of the external environment. This level may be less than or equal to the transient control level, but should not be greater.

**Aperture:** An electromagnetically transparent opening.

**Attachment point:** A point where the lightning flash contacts the aircraft.

**Component damage:** A condition in which transients permanently alter the electrical characteristics of a circuit. Because of this, the component can no longer perform to its specifications.

**Continued safe flight and landing:** The aircraft can safely abort or continue a take-off, or continue controlled flight and landing, possibly using emergency procedures. The aircraft must do this without requiring exceptional pilot skill or strength. Some aircraft damage may occur because of the failure condition or on landing. For large aeroplanes, the pilot must be able to land safely at a suitable airport.

For CS-23 aeroplanes, it is not necessary to land at an airport. For rotorcraft, the rotorcraft must continue to cope with adverse operating conditions, and the pilot must be able to land safely at a suitable site.

**Direct effects:** Physical damage to the aircraft or electrical and electronic systems. Direct attachment of lightning to the system's hardware or components causes the damage. Examples of direct effects include tearing, bending, burning, vaporisation, or blasting of aircraft surfaces and structures, and damage to electrical and electronic systems.

**Equipment:** Component of an electrical or electronic system with interconnecting electrical conductors.

**Equipment Transient Design Level (ETDL):** The peak amplitude of transients to which equipment is qualified.

**External environment:** The natural lightning environment, outside the aircraft, for design and certification purposes. See EUROCAE ED-84A, which reference documents that provide additional guidance on aircraft lightning environment and related waveforms.

**Indirect effects:** Electrical transients induced by lightning in aircraft electrical or electronic circuits.

**Internal environment:** The potential fields and structural voltages inside the aircraft produced by the external environment.

**Lightning flash:** The total lightning event. It may occur in a cloud, among clouds, or between a cloud and the ground. It can consist of one or more return strokes, plus intermediate or continuing currents.

**Lightning strike:** Attachment of the lightning flash to the aircraft.

**Lightning strike zones:** Aircraft surface areas and structures that are susceptible to lightning attachment, dwell time, and current conduction. See EUROCAE ED-91, which references documents that provide additional guidance on aircraft lightning zoning.

**Lightning stroke (return stroke):** A lightning current surge that occurs when the lightning leader (the initial current charge) makes contact with the ground or another charge centre. A charge centre is an area of high potential of opposite charge.

**Margin:** The difference between the equipment transient design levels and the actual transient level.

**Multiple burst:** A randomly spaced series of bursts of short duration, low amplitude current pulses, with each pulse characterised by rapidly changing currents. These bursts may result as the lightning leader progresses or branches, and are associated with the cloud-to-cloud and intra-cloud flashes. The multiple bursts appear most intense when the initial leader attaches to the aircraft. See EUROCAE ED-84A.

**Multiple stroke:** Two or more lightning return strokes during a single lightning flash. See EUROCAE ED-84A.

**Transient Control Level (TCL):** The maximum allowable level of transients that appear at the equipment interface circuits because of the defined external environment.

**b. Acronyms**

<b>AC:</b>	Advisory Circular
<b>AMC:</b>	Acceptable Means of Compliance
<b>ARP:</b>	Aerospace Recommended Practice
<b>ATL:</b>	Actual Transient Level
<b>CS:</b>	Certification Specification
<b>ETDL:</b>	Equipment Transient Design Level
<b>EASA:</b>	European Aviation Safety Agency
<b>EUROCAE:</b>	European Organization for Civil Aviation Equipment
<b>FAA:</b>	Federal Aviation Administration
<b>ICA:</b>	Instructions for Continued Airworthiness
<b>TCL:</b>	Transient Control Level

[Amdt 20/13]

## AMC 20-158

### AMC 20-158 Aircraft Electrical and Electronic System High-Intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF) Protection

ED Decision 2015/017/R

#### 1. PURPOSE

- a. This Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) provides the means and Guidance Material (GM) related to High-Intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF) protection and the demonstration of compliance with the Certification Specifications CS 23.1308, CS 25.1317, CS 27.1317, and CS 29.1317.
- b. This AMC is not mandatory and does not constitute a regulation. It describes an acceptable means, but not the only means, to demonstrate compliance with the requirements for the protection of the operation of electrical and electronic systems on an aircraft when the aircraft is exposed to an external HIRF environment. In using the means described in this AMC, they must be followed in all important respects.

#### 2. SCOPE

This AMC applies to all applicants for a new Type Certificate (TC) or a change to an existing TC when the certification basis requires the address of the HIRF certification requirements of CS 23.1308, CS 25.1317, CS 27.1317, and CS 29.1317.

#### 3. RELATED MATERIAL

- a. **European Aviation Safety Agency (EASA) (in this document also referred to as the 'Agency')**

Certification Specifications:

CS 23.1308, CS 25.1317, CS 27.1317, and CS 29.1317, High-intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF) protection;

CS 23.1309, CS 25.1309, CS 27.1309, and CS 29.1309, Equipment, systems, and installations; and

CS 23.1529, CS 25.1529, CS 27.1529, and CS 29.1529, Instructions for Continued Airworthiness.

Copies of these CSs can be requested from the European Aviation Safety Agency, Postfach 10 12 53, D-50452 Cologne, Germany; Telephone +49 221 8999 000; Fax: +49 221 8999 099; Website: <http://easa.europa.eu/official-publication/>

- b. **Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations (14 CFR)**

Sections:

§§ 23.1308, 25.1317, 27.1317, and 29.1317, High-intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF) protection;

§§ 23.1309, 25.1309, 27.1309, and 29.1309, Equipment, systems, and installations; and

§§ 23.1529, 25.1529, 27.1529, and 29.1529, Instructions for Continued Airworthiness.

Copies of the above 14 CFR sections can be requested from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402-9325, telephone 202-512-1800, fax 202-512-2250. Copies can also be requested from the Government Printing Office (GPO), electronic CFR Internet website at <http://www.gpoaccess.gov/cfr/>.

**c. FAA Advisory Circulars (ACs)**

AC 20-158A, The Certification of Aircraft Electrical and Electronic Systems for Operation in the High-Intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF) Environment.

AC 23.1309-1E, System Safety Analysis and Assessment for Part 23 Airplanes; and AC 25.1309-1A, System Design and Analysis.

Copies of these ACs can be requested from the U.S. Department of Transportation, Subsequent Distribution Office, DOT Warehouse M30, Ardmore East Business Center, 3341 Q 75th Avenue, Landover, MD 20785; telephone +1 301 322 5377. These ACs can also be accessed via the FAA website: [http://www.faa.gov/regulations\\_policies/advisory\\_circulars/](http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/advisory_circulars/).

**d. European Organization for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE).** Copies of these documents can be requested from EUROCAE, 102 rue Etienne Dolet, 92240 Malakoff, France; Telephone: +33 1 40 92 79 30; Fax: +33 1 46 55 62 65; Website: <http://www.eurocae.net>.

1. EUROCAE ED-107A, Guide to Certification of Aircraft in a High Intensity Radiated Field (HIRF) Environment. ED-107A and SAE ARP 5583A, referenced in paragraph 3.f.1. below, are technically equivalent and either document may serve as the 'User's Guide' referred to in this AMC.
2. EUROCAE ED-14G, Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment. This document is technically equivalent to RTCA/DO-160G. Whenever there is a reference to RTCA/DO-160G in this AMC, EUROCAE ED-14G may also be used.
3. EUROCAE ED-79A, Guidelines for Development of Civil Aircraft and Systems. This document is technically equivalent to ARP 4754A. Whenever there is a reference to ARP 4754A in this AMC, EUROCAE ED-79A may also be used.

**e. Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA).**

RTCA/DO-160G, Environmental Conditions and Test Procedures for Airborne Equipment. This document is technically equivalent to EUROCAE ED-14G.

Copies of this document can be requested from RTCA, Inc., 1828 L Street NW, Suite 805, Washington, DC 20036; Telephone: +1 202 833 9339; Website: <http://www.rtca.org>.

**f. Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE International).** Copies of the below documents can be requested from SAE World Headquarters, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, Pennsylvania 15096-0001; Telephone: +1 724 776 4970; Website: <http://www.sae.org>.

1. SAE Aerospace Recommended Practice (ARP) 5583A, Guide to Certification of Aircraft in a High Intensity Radiated Field (HIRF) Environment. SAE ARP 5583A and ED-107A, referenced in paragraph 3.d.1. above, are technically equivalent and either document may serve as the 'User's Guide' referred to in this AMC.
2. SAE ARP 4754A, Guidelines For Development Of Civil Aircraft And Systems, December 2010.

3. SAE ARP 4761, Guidelines and Methods for Conducting the Safety Assessment Process on Civil Airborne Systems and Equipment, December 1996.

#### 4. BACKGROUND

- a. Aircraft protection. Concern for the protection of aircraft electrical and electronic systems has increased substantially in recent years because of:
  1. greater dependence on electrical and electronic systems performing functions required for continued safe flight and landing of an aircraft;
  2. reduced electromagnetic shielding afforded by some composite materials used in aircraft designs;
  3. increased susceptibility of electrical and electronic systems to HIRF because of increased data bus and processor operating speeds, higher density integrated circuits and cards, and greater sensitivities of electronic equipment;
  4. expanded frequency usage, especially above 1 gigahertz (GHz);
  5. increased severity of the HIRF environment because of an increase in the number and radiated power of Radio Frequency (RF) transmitters; and
  6. adverse effects experienced by some aircraft when exposed to HIRF.
- b. **HIRF environment.** The electromagnetic HIRF environment exists because of the transmission of electromagnetic RF energy from radar, radio, television, and other ground-based, shipborne, or airborne RF transmitters. The User's Guide (EUROCAE ED-107A) provides a detailed description of the derivation of these HIRF environments.

#### 5. DEFINITIONS

**Adverse effect:** HIRF effect that results in system failure, malfunction, or misleading information to a degree that is unacceptable for the specific aircraft function or system addressed in the HIRF regulations. A determination of whether a system or function is adversely affected should consider the HIRF effect in relation to the overall aircraft and its operation.

**Attenuation:** Term used to denote a decrease in electromagnetic field strength in transmission from one point to another. Attenuation may be expressed as a scalar ratio of the input magnitude to the output magnitude or in decibels (dB).

**Bulk Current Injection (BCI):** Method of Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) testing that involves injecting current into wire bundles through a current injection probe.

**Continued safe flight and landing:** The aircraft can safely abort or continue a take-off, or continue controlled flight and landing, possibly using emergency procedures. The aircraft must do this without requiring exceptional pilot skill or strength. Some aircraft damage may occur because of the failure condition or on landing. For large aeroplanes, the pilot must be able to land safely at a suitable airport. For CS-23 aeroplanes, it is not necessary to land at an airport. For rotorcraft, the rotorcraft must continue to cope with adverse operating conditions, and the pilot must be able to land safely at a suitable site.

**Continuous Wave (CW):** RF signal consisting of only the fundamental frequency with no modulation in amplitude, frequency, or phase.

**Coupling:** Process whereby electromagnetic energy is induced in a system by radiation produced by a Radio Frequency (RF) source.

**Current injection probe:** Inductive device designed to inject RF signals directly into wire bundles when clamped around them.

**Direct drive test:** Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) test that involves electrically connecting a signal source directly to the unit being tested.

**Equipment:** Component of an electrical or electronic system with interconnecting electrical conductors.

**Equipment electrical interface:** Location on a piece of equipment where an electrical connection is made to the other equipment in a system of which it is a part. The electrical interface may consist of individual wires or wire bundles that connect the equipment.

**External High-Intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF) environment:** Electromagnetic RF fields at the exterior of an aircraft.

**Field strength:** Magnitude of the electromagnetic energy propagating in free space expressed in volts per meter (V/m).

**High-Intensity Radiated Fields (HIRF) environment:** Electromagnetic environment that exists from the transmission of high power RF energy into free space.

**HIRF vulnerability:** Susceptibility characteristics of a system that cause it to suffer adverse effects when performing its intended function as a result of having been subjected to an HIRF environment.

**Immunity:** Capacity of a system or piece of equipment to continue to perform its intended function, in an acceptable manner, in the presence of RF fields.

**Interface circuit:** Electrical or electronic device connecting the electrical inputs and outputs of equipment to other equipment or devices in an aircraft.

**Internal HIRF environment:** The RF environment inside an airframe, equipment enclosure, or cavity. The internal RF environment is described in terms of the internal RF field strength or wire bundle current.

**Margin:** Difference between equipment susceptibility or qualification levels and the aircraft internal HIRF environment. Margin requirements may be specified to account for uncertainties in design, analysis, or test.

**Modulation:** Process whereby certain characteristics of a wave, often called the carrier wave, are varied in accordance with an applied function.

**Radio Frequency (RF):** Frequency useful for radio transmission. The present practical limits of RF transmissions are approximately 10 kilohertz (kHz) to 100 gigahertz (GHz). Within this frequency range, electromagnetic energy may be detected and amplified as an electric current at the wave frequency.

**Reflection plane:** Conducting plate that reflects RF signals.

**Similarity:** Process of using existing HIRF compliance documentation and data from a system or aircraft to demonstrate HIRF compliance for a nearly identical system or aircraft of equivalent design, construction, and installation.

**Susceptibility:** Property of a piece of equipment that describes its inability to function acceptably when subjected to unwanted electromagnetic energy.

**Susceptibility level:** Level where the effects of interference from electromagnetic energy become apparent.

**System:** Piece of equipment connected via electrical conductors to another piece of equipment, both of which are required to make a system function. A system may contain pieces of equipment, components, parts, and wire bundles.

**Transfer function:** Ratio of the electrical output of a system to the electrical input of a system, expressed in the frequency domain. For HIRF, a typical transfer function is the ratio of the current on a wire bundle to the external HIRF field strength, as a function of frequency.

**Upset:** Impairment of system operation, either permanent or momentary. For example, a change of digital or analogue state that may or may not require a manual reset.

**User's Guide:** Refers to SAE document ARP 5583A or EUROCAE document ED-107A.

## 6. APPROACHES TO COMPLIANCE

a. **General.** The following activities should be elements of a proper HIRF certification programme. The iterative application of these activities is left to the applicant. Adherence to the sequence shown is not necessary. The applicant should:

1. identify the systems to be assessed;
2. establish the applicable aircraft external HIRF environment;
3. establish the test environment for installed systems;
4. apply the appropriate method of HIRF compliance verification; and
5. verify HIRF protection effectiveness.

### b. Identify the systems to be assessed

1. **General.** The aircraft systems that require HIRF assessment must be identified. The process used for identifying these systems should be similar to the process for demonstrating compliance with CS 23.1309, CS 25.1309, CS 27.1309, and CS 29.1309, as applicable. These sections address any system failure that may cause or contribute to an effect on the safety of flight of an aircraft. The effects of an encounter with HIRF, therefore, should be assessed in a manner that allows for the determination of the degree to which the aircraft and its systems' safety may be influenced. The operation of the aircraft systems should be assessed separately and in combination with, or in relation to, other systems. This assessment should cover:
  - a. all normal aircraft operating modes, phases of flight, and operating conditions;
  - b. all failure conditions and their subsequent effect on aircraft operations and the flight crew; and
  - c. any corrective actions required.
2. **Safety assessment.** A safety assessment related to HIRF must be performed to establish and classify the equipment or system failure condition. Table 1 provides the corresponding failure condition classification and system HIRF certification level for the appropriate HIRF regulations. The failure condition classifications and terms used in this AMC are similar to those used in AC 23.1309-1E and AMC 25.1309, as applicable. Only those systems identified as performing or contributing to functions the failure of which would result in Catastrophic, Hazardous, or Major failure conditions are subject to HIRF regulations. Based on the failure condition classification established by the safety assessment, the systems should be assigned appropriate HIRF certification levels, as shown in Table 1. The safety assessment should consider the common cause effects of HIRF, particularly for highly integrated systems and systems with redundant elements. Further guidance on

performing the safety assessment can be found in AC 23.1309-1E, AMC 25.1309, ED-79A, and SAE ARP 4761.

**Table 1 — HIRF failure conditions and system HIRF certification levels**

HIRF REQUIREMENTS EXCERPTS FROM CS 23.1308, CS 25.1317, CS 27.1317, AND CS 29.1317	FAILURE CONDITION	SYSTEM HIRF CERTIFICATION LEVEL
Each electrical and electronic system that performs a function whose failure would prevent the continued safe flight and landing of the aircraft.	Catastrophic	A
Each electrical and electronic system that performs a function whose failure would significantly reduce the capability of the aircraft or the ability of the flight crew to respond to an adverse operating condition.	Hazardous	B
Each electrical and electronic system that performs a function whose failure would reduce the capability of the aircraft or the ability of the flight crew to respond to an adverse operating condition.	Major	C

3. Failure conditions. A safety assessment should consider all potential adverse effects due to system failures, malfunctions, or misleading information. The safety assessment may show that some systems have different failure conditions in different phases of flight; therefore, different HIRF requirements may have to be applied to the system for different phases of flight. For example, an automatic flight control system may have a Catastrophic failure condition for autoland, while automatic flight control system operations in cruise may have a Hazardous failure condition.
- c. Establish the applicable aircraft external HIRF environment. The external HIRF environments I, II and III, as published in CS 23.1308, CS 25.1317, CS 27.1317, and CS 29.1317, are shown in Tables 2, 3 and 4 respectively. The field strength values for the HIRF environments and test levels are expressed in root mean square (rms) units measured during the peak of the modulation cycle, which is how many laboratory instruments indicate amplitude.

**Table 2 — HIRF environment I**

FREQUENCY	FIELD STRENGTH (V/m)	
	PEAK	AVERAGE
10 kHz – 2 MHz	50	50
2 MHz – 30 MHz	100	100
30 MHz – 100 MHz	50	50
100 MHz – 400 MHz	100	100
400 MHz – 700 MHz	700	50
700 MHz – 1 GHz	700	100
1 GHz – 2 GHz	2 000	200
2 GHz – 6 GHz	3 000	200
6 GHz – 8 GHz	1 000	200
8 GHz – 12 GHz	3 000	300
12 GHz – 18 GHz	2 000	200
18 GHz – 40 GHz	600	200

In this table, the higher field strength applies to the frequency band edges.

**Table 3 — HIRF environment II**

FREQUENCY	FIELD STRENGTH (V/m)	
	PEAK	AVERAGE
10 kHz – 500 kHz	20	20
500 kHz – 2 MHz	30	30
2 MHz – 30 MHz	100	100
30 MHz – 100 MHz	10	10
100 MHz – 200 MHz	30	10
200 MHz – 400 MHz	10	10
400 MHz – 1 GHz	700	40
1 GHz – 2 GHz	1 300	160
2 GHz – 4 GHz	3 000	120
4 GHz – 6 GHz	3 000	160
6 GHz – 8 GHz	400	170
8 GHz – 12 GHz	1 230	230
12 GHz – 18 GHz	730	190
18 GHz – 40 GHz	600	150

In this table, the higher field strength applies to the frequency band edges.

**Table 4 — HIRF environment III**

FREQUENCY	FIELD STRENGTH (V/m)	
	PEAK	AVERAGE
10 kHz – 100Hz	150	150
100 kHz – 400 MHz	200	200
400 MHz – 700 MHz	730	200
700 MHz – 1 GHz	1 400	240
1 GHz – 2 GHz	5 000	250
2 GHz – 4 GHz	6 000	490
4 GHz – 6 GHz	7 200	400
6 GHz – 8 GHz	1 100	170
8 GHz – 12 GHz	5 000	330
12 GHz – 18 GHz	2 000	330
18 GHz – 40 GHz	1 000	420

In this table, the higher field strength applies to the frequency band edges.

**d. Establish the test environment for installed systems**

1. **General.** The external HIRF environment will penetrate the aircraft and establish an internal RF environment to which installed electrical and electronic systems will be exposed. The resultant internal RF environment is caused by a combination of factors, such as: aircraft seams and apertures, re-radiation from the internal aircraft structure and wiring, and characteristic aircraft electrical resonance.
2. **Level A systems.** The resulting internal HIRF environments for Level A systems are determined by aircraft attenuation to the external HIRF environments I, II, or III, as defined in CS-23 Appendix K, CS-25 Appendix R, CS-27 Appendix D, and CS-29

Appendix E, as applicable. The attenuation is aircraft and zone specific and should be established by aircraft test, analysis, or similarity. The steps for demonstrating Level A HIRF compliance are presented in Chapter 9 of this AMC.

3. **Level B systems.** The internal RF environments for Level B systems are defined in CS-23 Appendix K, CS-25 Appendix R, CS-27 Appendix D, and CS-29 Appendix E, as applicable, as equipment HIRF test levels 1 or 2. The steps for demonstrating Level B HIRF compliance are presented in Chapter 10 of this AMC.
4. **Level C systems.** The internal RF environments for Level C systems are defined in CS-23 Appendix K, CS-25 Appendix R, CS-27 Appendix D, and CS-29 Appendix E, as equipment HIRF test level 3. The steps for demonstrating Level C HIRF compliance are also presented in Chapter 10 of this AMC.

**e. Apply the appropriate method of HIRF compliance verification**

1. **General.** Table 5 summarises the relationship between the aircraft performance requirements in the HIRF regulations (sections (a), (b) and (c)), and the HIRF environments and test levels.
2. **Pass/fail criteria.** Establish specific HIRF compliance pass/fail criteria for each system as it relates to the applicable HIRF regulation performance criteria. These pass/fail criteria should be presented to the Agency for approval. The means for monitoring system performance relative to these criteria also should be established by the applicant and approved by the Agency. All effects that define the pass/fail criteria should be the result of identifiable and traceable analysis that includes both the separate and interdependent operational characteristics of the systems. The analysis should evaluate the failures, either singularly or in combination, which could adversely affect system performance. This should include failures that could negate any system redundancy, or failures that could influence more than one system performing the same function.

**Table 5 — Summary of HIRF certification requirements**

HIRF FAILURE CONDITION FROM CS 23.1308, CS 25.1317, CS 27.1317, AND CS 29.1317	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA	ITEM THE ENVIRONMENT OR TEST LEVEL APPLIES TO	HIRF ENVIRONMENT OR TEST LEVEL
Each electrical and electronic system that performs a function whose failure would prevent the continued safe flight and landing of the aircraft must be designed and installed so that...	...each function is not adversely affected during and after the time...	...the aircraft...	...is exposed to HIRF environment I.
	...each electrical and electronic system automatically recovers normal operation of that function, in a timely manner after...	...the aircraft...	...is exposed to HIRF environment I.
	...each electrical and electronic system is not adversely affected during and after...	...the aircraft...	...is exposed to HIRF environment II.

	...each function required during operation under visual flight rules is not adversely affected during and after...	...the rotorcraft...	...is exposed to HIRF environment III (Parts 27 and 29 only).
Each electrical and electronic system that performs a function whose failure would significantly reduce the capability of the aircraft or the ability of the flight crew to respond to an adverse operating condition must be designed and installed so that...	...the system is not adversely affected when...	...the equipment providing these functions...	...is exposed to equipment HIRF test level 1 or 2.
Each electrical and electronic system that performs such a function whose failure would reduce the capability of the aircraft or the ability of the flight crew to respond to an adverse operating condition must be designed and installed so that...	...the system is not adversely affected when...	...the equipment providing these functions...	...is exposed to equipment HIRF test level 3.

- f. Verify the HIRF protection effectiveness. It should be demonstrate that the RF current on system and equipment wire bundles and the RF fields on the system, created by the HIRF environment, are lower than the equipment or system HIRF qualification test levels.

## 7. MARGINS

A margin is normally not necessary for HIRF compliance based on tests on the specific aircraft model and system undergoing certification. However, when determining compliance based on analysis or similarity, a margin may be required depending on the validation of the analysis or similarity process. Where data have limited substantiation, a margin may be required depending on the available justifications. The justification for a selected margin should be part of the HIRF compliance plan set out in Chapter 8 below.

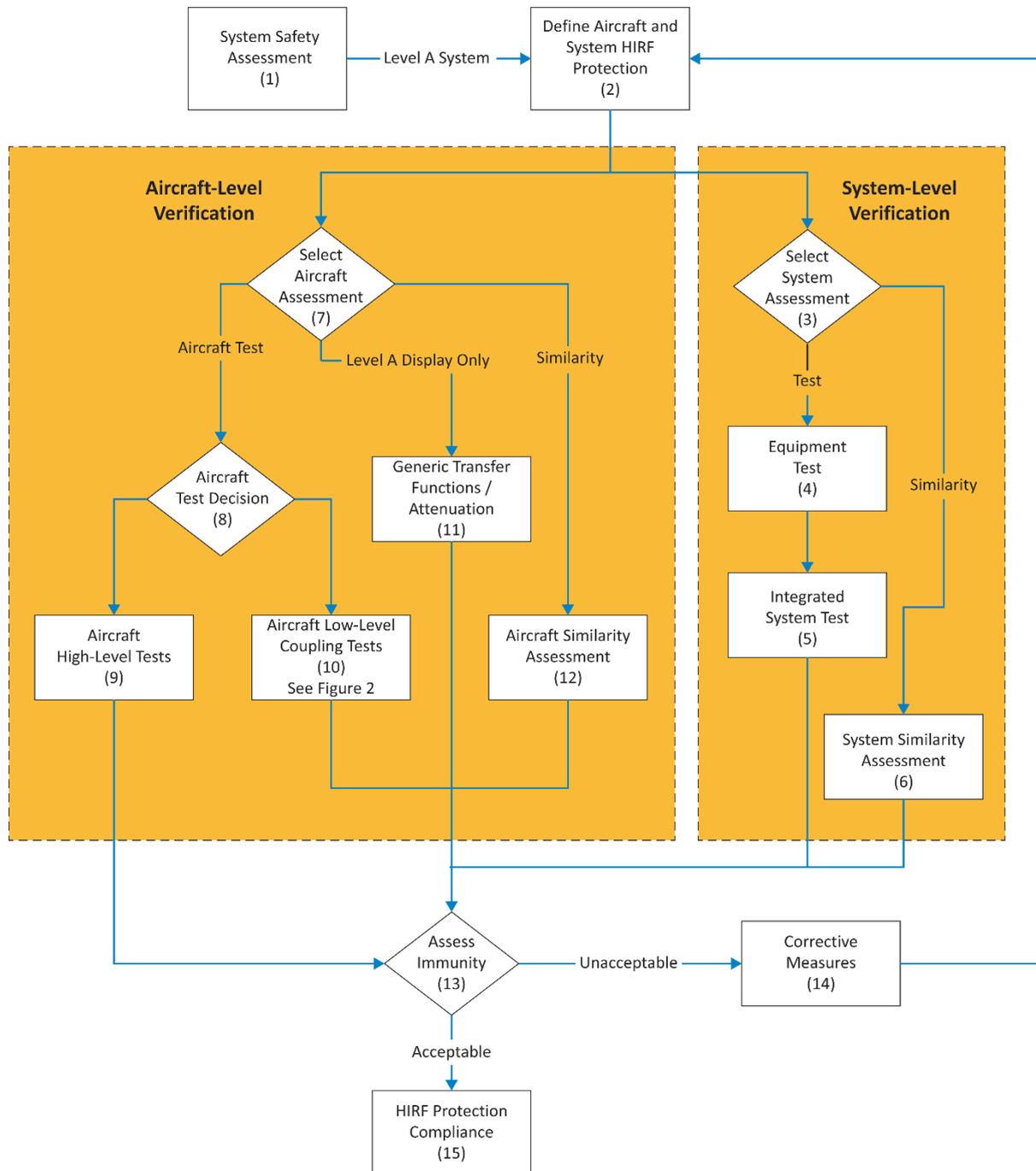
## 8. HIRF COMPLIANCE

- a. **HIRF compliance plan.** An overall HIRF compliance plan should be established to clearly identify and define HIRF certification requirements, HIRF protection development, and the design, test, and analysis activities intended to be part of the compliance effort. This plan should provide definitions of the aircraft systems, installations, and protective features against which HIRF compliance will be assessed. The HIRF compliance plan should be discussed with, and submitted to, the Agency for approval before being implemented. If the aircraft, system, or installation design changes after the Agency's approval, a revised HIRF compliance plan should be submitted to the Agency for approval. The HIRF compliance plan should include the following:
  1. a HIRF compliance plan summary;
  2. identification of the aircraft systems, with classification based on the safety assessment as it relates to HIRF (see paragraph 6.b.2);
  3. the HIRF environment for the aircraft and installed systems; and

4. the verification methods, such as test, analysis, or similarity.
- b. HIRF verification test, analysis, or similarity plan.** Specific HIRF test, analysis, or similarity plans should be prepared to describe specific verification activities. One or more verification plans may be necessary. For example, there may be several systems or equipment laboratory test plans, an aircraft test plan, or a similarity plan for selected systems on an aircraft.
1. Test plan
    - a. A HIRF verification test plan should include the equipment, system, and aircraft test objectives for the acquisition of data to support HIRF compliance. The plan should provide an overview of the factors being addressed for each system test requirement. The test plan should include:
      1. the purpose of the test;
      2. a description of the aircraft and/or system being tested;
      3. system configuration drawings;
      4. the proposed test set-up and methods;
      5. intended test levels, modulations, and frequency bands;
      6. pass/fail criteria; and
      7. the test schedule and test location.
    - b. The test plan should cover Level A, B, and C systems and equipment, as appropriate. Level A systems may require both integrated systems laboratory tests and aircraft tests. Level B and Level C systems and equipment require only equipment laboratory testing.
    - c. The test plan should describe the appropriate aspects of the systems to be tested and their installation. Additionally, the test plan should reflect the results of any analysis performed in the overall process of the HIRF compliance evaluation.
  2. **Analysis plan.** A HIRF compliance analysis plan should include the objectives, both at the system and equipment level, for generating data to support HIRF compliance verification. Comprehensive modelling and analysis for RF field coupling to aircraft systems and structures is an emerging technology; therefore, the analysis plan should be coordinated with the Agency to determine an acceptable scope for the analysis. The analysis plan should include:
    - a. the purpose and scope of the analysis;
    - b. a description of the aircraft and/or system addressed by the analysis;
    - c. system configuration descriptions;
    - d. proposed analysis methods;
    - e. the approach for validating the analysis results; and
    - f. pass/fail criteria, including margins to account for analysis uncertainty.
  3. **Similarity plan.** A similarity plan should describe the approach taken in using certification data from previously certified systems, equipment, and aircraft. The similarity plan should include:

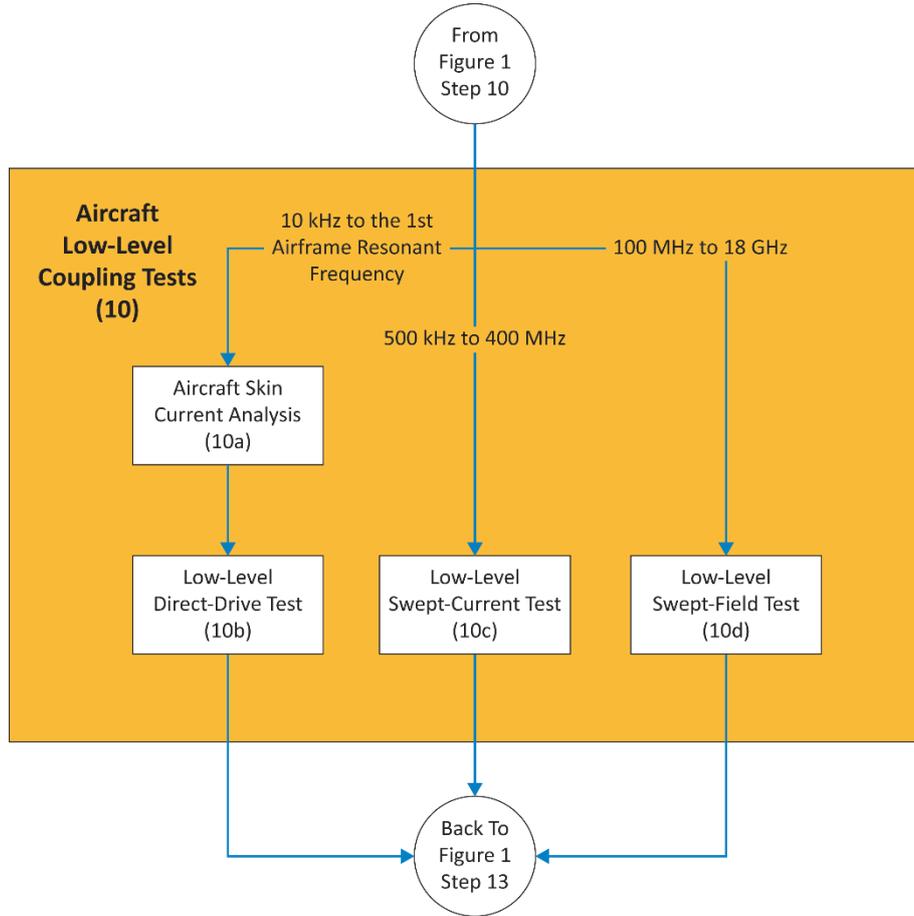
- a. the purpose and scope of the similarity assessment;
  - b. specific systems addressed by the similarity assessment;
  - c. data that will be used from the previously certified systems, equipment, and aircraft; and
  - d. any significant differences between the aircraft and system installation proposed for certification and the aircraft and system installation from which the data will be used. Include appropriate margins to account for similarity uncertainty.
- c. Compliance reports.** One or more compliance reports may be necessary to document the results of test, analysis, or similarity assessments. For new or significantly modified aircraft, HIRF compliance reports may include many system and equipment test reports, aircraft test reports, and HIRF analysis reports. For these types of HIRF certification programmes, a compliance summary report may be useful to summarise the results of tests and analyses. For HIRF certification programmes on relatively simple systems, a single compliance report may be adequate.
1. **Test reports.** Comprehensive test reports should be produced at the conclusion of HIRF compliance testing. The test reports should include descriptions of the salient aspects of equipment or system performance during the test, details of any area of non-compliance with HIRF requirements, actions taken to correct the non-compliance, and any similarity declarations. Supporting rationale for any deviations from system performance observed during testing should also be provided.
  2. **Analysis reports.** Analysis reports should describe the details of the analytical model, the methods used to perform the analysis, and the results of the analysis. The reports should identify any modelling uncertainty and justify the margins established in the analysis plan.
  3. **Similarity reports.** Similarity reports should document the significant aircraft, system, equipment, and installation features common between the aircraft or system that is the subject of the similarity analysis and the aircraft or system that previously was certified for HIRF. Identify all significant differences encountered, along with the assessment of the impact of these differences on HIRF compliance. These reports should also justify the margins established in the similarity plan.
- d. Methods of compliance verification**
1. Various methods are available to aid in demonstrating HIRF compliance. Methods acceptable to the Agency are described in Chapters 9 and 10. Figures 1 and 2 below outline the steps to demonstrate HIRF compliance for systems requiring Level A HIRF certification. Figure 3 below outlines the steps to demonstrate HIRF compliance for systems requiring Level B or C HIRF certification. The steps in these figures are not necessarily accomplished sequentially. Wherever a decision point is indicated on these figures, the applicant should complete the steps in that path as described in Chapters 9 and 10.
  2. Other HIRF compliance techniques may be used to demonstrate system performance in the HIRF environment; however, those techniques should be approved by the Agency before using them.

Figure 1 — Routes to HIRF compliance — Level A systems



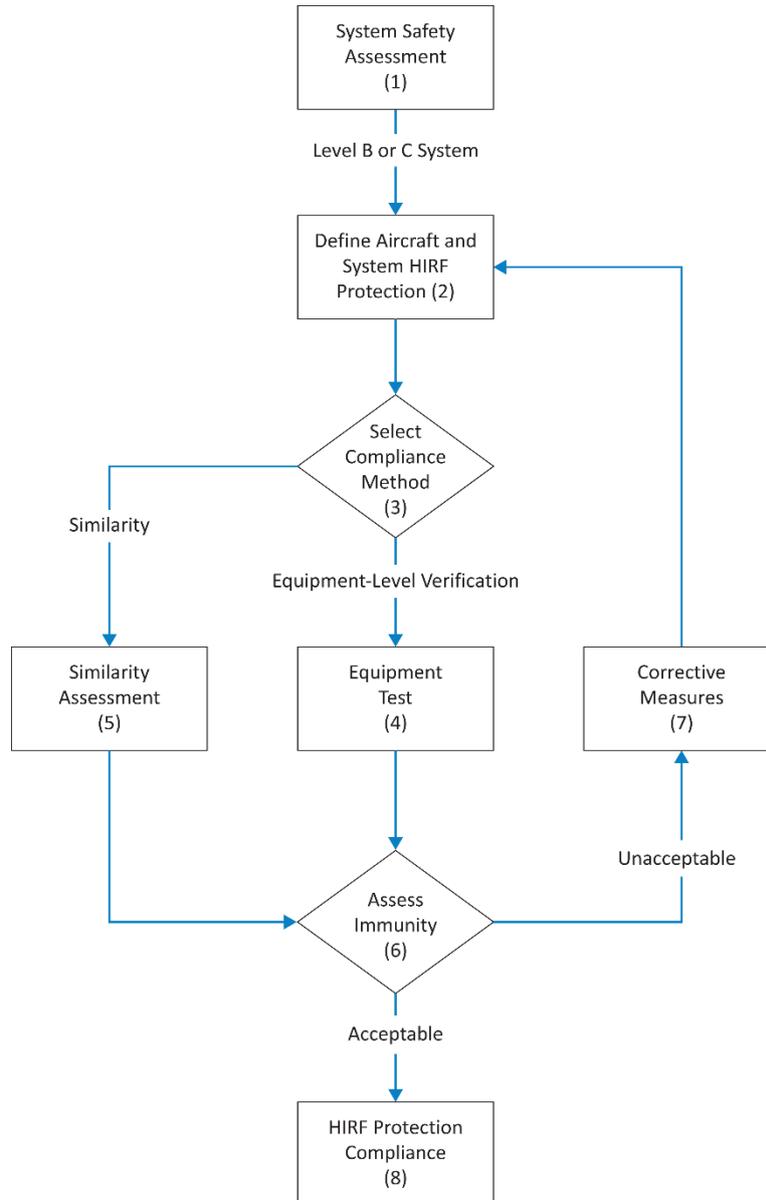
(n) = Step number as described in Chapter 9 of this AMC.

Figure 2 — Aircraft low-level coupling tests — Level A systems



(n) = Step number as described in Chapter 9 of this AMC.

Figure 3 — Routes to HIRF compliance — Level B and C systems



(n) = Step number as described in Chapter 10 of this AMC.

## 9. STEPS TO DEMONSTRATE LEVEL A SYSTEM HIRF COMPLIANCE

- a. **Step 1 — System safety assessment.** The applicant should determine the system failure condition classification for the systems being certified on their aircraft, using a system safety assessment as discussed in paragraph 6.b.2. For systems classified with Catastrophic failure conditions (Level A systems), the applicant should follow compliance steps 2 through 15 listed below, as appropriate. These compliance steps are also depicted in Figures 1 and 2 of this AMC, and are not necessarily accomplished sequentially. For systems classified with Hazardous or Major failure conditions (Level B and C systems), the compliance steps outlined in Chapter 10 should be followed.

- b. Step 2 — Define aircraft and system HIRF protection.** The applicant should define the HIRF protection features that will be incorporated into the aircraft and system designs, based on the HIRF environments that are applicable to their aircraft and its Level A systems. Equipment, system, and aircraft HIRF protection design may occur before aircraft-level tests are performed, and before the actual internal HIRF environment is determined. Therefore, the equipment, system and aircraft HIRF protection design should be based on an estimate of the expected internal HIRF environment. All aircraft configurations that may affect HIRF protection, such as opened landing gear doors, should be considered as part of the aircraft assessment (see Step 7).
- c. Step 3 — System assessment decision.** The applicant should determine whether to perform integrated system HIRF tests on the Level A system, or whether to base the system verification on previous integrated system HIRF tests performed on a similar system. Aircraft and system tests and assessments need not be performed for the HIRF environments above 18 GHz if data and design analysis show that the integrated system tests results (see Step 5) satisfy the pass criteria from 12 GHz to 18 GHz, and that the systems have no circuits that operate in the 18 GHz to 40 GHz frequency range.
- d. Step 4 — Equipment test**
1. Radiated and conducted RF susceptibility laboratory tests of ED-14G, Section 20, may be used to build confidence in the equipment's HIRF immunity before conducting integrated system laboratory tests in Step 5. The equipment should be tested in accordance with the test levels (wire bundle currents and RF field strengths) of ED-14G, Section 20, or to a level estimated for the aircraft and equipment installation using the applicable external HIRF environment.
  2. Equipment HIRF tests may be used to augment the integrated system HIRF tests where appropriate. For equipment, whose HIRF immunity is evaluated as part of the integrated system-level HIRF tests discussed in Step 5, the individual equipment's HIRF testing described in this step may be considered optional.
- e. Step 5 — Integrated system test**
1. Radiated and conducted RF susceptibility laboratory tests on an integrated system should be performed for Level A systems. The HIRF field strengths and wire bundle currents selected for this test should be based on the attenuated external HIRF environment determined in the aircraft assessment (see Steps 10, 11, or 12). In many cases, the integrated system test is performed before the aircraft assessment is complete. In these cases, the integrated system test field strengths and currents should be selected based on the expected aircraft attenuation or transfer function.
  2. The installation details for the laboratory integrated system tests should be similar to the installation in the aircraft. For example, the bonding and grounding of the system, wire size, routing, arrangement (whether parallel or twisted wires), connector types, wire shields, and shield terminations, and the relative position of the elements to each other and the ground plane in the laboratory should match closely the system installation on the aircraft to be certificated. For this reason, the laboratory integrated system rig should have an EASA conformity inspection prior to conducting any EASA certification credit testing.
  3. The integrated system should be tested with the system operating, and should include connected displays, sensors, actuators, and other equipment. To ensure that the integrated system is tested when operating at its maximum sensitivity, the system should be placed in various operating modes. If the connected equipment

is not related to the functions with Catastrophic failures, these items may be simulated by test sets, if the test sets accurately represent the terminating circuit impedance of the sensor. However, the connected equipment should meet the appropriate HIRF requirements required for their failure condition classification.

4. The test levels should be selected based on the expected aircraft internal HIRF environment determined through aircraft tests (see Step 10), generic transfer functions and attenuation (see Step 11), or aircraft similarity assessment (see Step 12), using the applicable external HIRF environment. Integrated system test procedures are described in detail in the User's Guide (SAE ARP 5583A/EUROCAE ED-107A).
5. Wire bundle current injection should be used for frequencies from 10 kHz to 400 MHz. RF currents are injected into the integrated system wiring via a current transformer. Each wire bundle in the system should be injected and the induced wire bundle current measured. If a system wire bundle branches, then each wire bundle branch also should be tested. Simultaneous multi-bundle current injection may be necessary on systems where there are redundant or multi-channel architectures.
6. High-level radiated susceptibility tests should be used at frequencies greater than 100 MHz. The radiating antenna should be far enough away to ensure the total volume of the equipment and at least half a wavelength of the wiring is simultaneously and uniformly illuminated during the test.
7. Define the appropriate pass/fail criteria for the system, based on the system safety assessment and the appropriate HIRF regulation. Any system susceptibility, including system malfunctions, upset, or damage should be recorded and evaluated based on these previously defined pass/fail criteria.
8. Using only the modulation to which the system under evaluation is most sensitive may minimise the test time. The User's Guide provides guidance on modulation selection and suggested default modulations and dwell times.
9. The equipment tests in Step 4, using the techniques in ED-14G, Section 20, normally are not sufficient to demonstrate HIRF compliance for Step 5. However, for simple systems, these standard ED-14G, Section 20, tests may be sufficient if paragraphs 9.e.2. and 3. of this step are met.

**f. Step 6 — System similarity assessment**

1. The integrated system HIRF tests performed for a system previously certified on one aircraft model may be used to demonstrate system verification for a similar system. Each system considered under the similarity approach needs to be assessed independently even if it may use equipment and installation techniques that have been the subject of a previous certification.
2. The system used as the basis for similarity must have been certified previously for HIRF compliance on another aircraft model, and must have successfully completed integrated system HIRF tests. Similarity assessment requires comparison of both equipment and installation differences that could adversely affect HIRF immunity. The assessment should consider the differences between the previously HIRF certified system and the equipment circuit interfaces, wiring, grounding, bonding, connectors, and wire-shielding practices of the equipment that comprises the new system.

3. If the assessment finds only minimal differences between the previously certified system and the new system to be certified, similarity may be used as the basis for system-level verification without the need for additional integrated system tests, providing there are no unresolved in-service HIRF problems related to the previously certified system. If there is uncertainty about the effects of the differences, additional tests and analyses should be conducted as necessary and appropriate to resolve the uncertainty. The amount of additional testing should be commensurate with the degree of difference identified between the new system and the system previously certified. If significant differences are found, similarity should not be used as the basis for system-level verification.

**g. Step 7 — Aircraft assessment decision**

1. Level A systems require an aircraft assessment. The aircraft assessment should determine the actual internal HIRF environment where the Level A systems are installed in the aircraft. The applicant should choose whether to use aircraft tests, previous coupling/attenuation data from similar aircraft types (similarity), or, for Level A display systems only, the generic transfer functions and attenuation in [Appendix 1](#) to this AMC. Alternately, the aircraft assessment may be a test that exposes the entire aircraft with operating Level A systems to external HIRF environments I, II, or III (Tables 2, 3, and 4 respectively), as appropriate, to demonstrate acceptable Level A system performance.
2. Integrated display systems include the display equipment, control panels, and the sensors that provide information to the displays. In some systems, the sensors also provide information to Level A systems that are not displays. If the sensors also provide information to Level A flight controls, the applicant must use actual transfer functions and attenuation when demonstrating compliance for these sensors and the flight controls.
3. Other methods for aircraft HIRF assessment, such as analysis, may be acceptable. However, comprehensive modelling and analysis for RF field coupling to the aircraft structure is an emerging technology. Therefore, analysis alone is currently not adequate to demonstrate HIRF compliance for Level A systems and should be augmented by testing.
4. If analysis is used to determine aircraft attenuation and transfer function characteristics, test data should be provided to support this analysis. Any analysis results should take into account the quality and accuracy of the analysis. Significant testing, including aircraft level testing, may be required to support the analysis.
5. Aircraft and system tests and assessments need not be performed for the HIRF environments above 18 GHz if data and design analysis show that the integrated system tests results (see Step 5) satisfy the pass criteria from 12 GHz to 18 GHz, and the systems have no circuits that operate in the 18 GHz to 40 GHz frequency range.

**h. Step 8 — Aircraft test decision**

1. Various aircraft test procedures are available and accepted for collecting data for aircraft HIRF verification. The two main approaches to aircraft testing are the aircraft high-level test (see Step 9) and the aircraft low-level coupling test (see Step 10). The aircraft high-level field-illumination test involves radiating the aircraft at test levels equal to the applicable external HIRF environment in the HIRF regulations. Aircraft low-level coupling tests involve measuring the airframe

attenuation and transfer functions, so that the internal HIRF electric fields and currents can be compared to the integrated system test levels.

2. Some test procedures may be more appropriate than others because of the size of the aircraft and the practicality of illuminating the entire aircraft with the appropriate external HIRF environment. The aircraft low-level coupling tests (see Step 10) may be more suitable for testing large aircraft than the high-level field-illumination test in Step 9, which requires illumination of the entire aircraft with the external HIRF environment.

**i. Step 9 — Aircraft high-level tests**

1. The aircraft high-level field-illumination test requires generating RF fields external to an aircraft at a level equal to the applicable external HIRF environment.
2. At frequencies below 400 MHz, the distance between the aircraft and the transmitting antenna should be sufficient to ensure the aircraft is illuminated uniformly by the external HIRF environment. The transmitting antenna should be placed in at least four positions around the aircraft, typically illuminating the nose, tail, and each wingtip. The aircraft should be illuminated by the antenna at each position while sweeping the frequency range. Separate frequency sweeps should be performed with the transmitting antenna oriented for horizontal and vertical polarisation. The RF field should be calibrated by measuring the RF field strength in the centre of the test volume before the aircraft is placed there.
3. At frequencies above 400 MHz, the RF illumination should be localised to the system under test, provided all parts of the system and at least one wavelength of any associated wiring (or the total length if less than one wavelength) are illuminated uniformly by the RF field. Reflection planes may be needed to illuminate relevant apertures on the bottom and top of the aircraft.
4. To ensure that the systems are tested when operating at their maximum sensitivity, Level A systems should be fully operational and the aircraft should be placed in various simulated operating modes.
5. The test time can be minimised by using only the modulation to which the system under evaluation is most sensitive. In this case, the rationale used to select the most sensitive modulation should be documented in the HIRF test plan as discussed in paragraph 8.b.1. The User's Guide provides guidance on modulation selection and suggested default modulations and dwell times.
6. As an alternative to testing at frequencies below the first airframe resonant frequency, it is possible to inject high-level currents directly into the airframe using aircraft high-level direct-drive test methods. Aircraft skin current analysis should be performed as described in the User's Guide, or low-level swept-current measurements should be made to determine the skin current distribution that will exist for different RF field polarisations and aircraft illumination angles so that these can be simulated accurately during this test. Aircraft high-level direct-drive testing, although applicable only from 10 kHz to the first airframe resonant frequency, is advantageous because it is possible to test all systems simultaneously.

**j. Step 10 — Aircraft low-level coupling tests****1. General**

- a. The aircraft low-level coupling tests include three different tests that cover the frequency range of 10 kHz to 18 GHz (see Figure 2). Detailed descriptions are available in the User's Guide. Other techniques may be valid, but must be discussed with and approved by the Agency before being used.
- b. The low-level direct-drive test (see Step 10b, Figure 2) and the low-level swept-current test (see Step 10c) are used for frequencies at or below 400 MHz. The low-level swept-field test (see Step 10d) is used for frequencies at and above 100 MHz. There is an overlap of test frequencies from 100 MHz to 400 MHz in the low-level swept-current test and the low-level swept-field test. The division at 400 MHz is not absolute but rather depends on when HIRF penetration of the equipment case becomes a significant factor.

**2. Steps 10a and 10b — Aircraft skin current analysis and low-level direct-drive test.**

Low-level direct-drive tests in conjunction with skin current analysis should be used to determine the transfer function between the skin current and individual equipment wire bundle currents. The low-level direct-drive test is typically used for frequencies from 10 kHz to the first airframe resonant frequency. For the low-level direct-drive test to be applied successfully, a three-dimensional model of the aircraft should be derived using aircraft skin current analysis. The three-dimensional model can then be used to derive the aircraft's skin current pattern for the applicable external HIRF environment. Guidance on skin current analysis is in the User's Guide. If the relationship between the external HIRF environment and the skin current is known for all illumination angles and polarisation, either because of aircraft skin current analysis or the use of the low-level swept-current test, the skin current can be set up by direct injection into the airframe. The resultant currents on the system wire bundles are measured with a current probe and normalised to 1 V/m electric field strength so that they can be scaled to the appropriate external HIRF environment. This test method has improved sensitivity over the low-level swept-current test and may be necessary for small aircraft or aircraft with high levels of airframe shielding.

**3. Step 10c — Low-level swept-current test**

- a. The low-level swept-current test involves illuminating the aircraft with a low-level external HIRF field to measure the transfer function between the external field and the aircraft and equipment wire bundle currents. This test is typically used in the frequency range of 500 kHz to 400 MHz. The transfer function is resonant in nature and is dependent on both the aircraft structure and the system installation. Because the transfer function relates wire bundle currents to the external field, the induced bulk current injection test levels can be related to an external HIRF environment.
- b. The transmitting antenna should be placed in at least four positions around the aircraft, typically the nose, tail, and each wingtip, with sufficient distance between the aircraft and the transmitting antenna to ensure the aircraft is illuminated uniformly. The aircraft should be illuminated by the antenna at each position while sweeping the frequencies in the range of 500 kHz to 400 MHz. Separate frequency sweeps should be performed with the transmitting

- antenna oriented for horizontal and vertical polarisation. The currents induced on the aircraft wire bundles should be measured.
- c. The ratio between the induced wire bundle current and the illuminating antenna field strength should be calculated and normalised to a ratio of 1 V/m. This provides the transfer function in terms of induced current per unit external field strength. Then the current induced by the applicable external HIRF environment can be calculated by multiplying the transfer function by the external HIRF field strength. The calculated HIRF currents for all transmitting antenna positions for each aircraft wire bundle being assessed should be overlaid to produce worst-case induced current for each wire bundle. These worst-case induced currents can be compared with the current used during the integrated system test in Step 5.
  4. **Step 10d — Low-level swept-field test.** Low-level swept-field testing is typically used from 100 MHz to 18 GHz. The test procedures for the low-level swept-field test are similar to those used for the low-level swept-current test; however, in the low-level swept-field test, the internal RF fields in the vicinity of the equipment are measured instead of the wire bundle currents. Various techniques can be used to ensure the maximum internal field in the vicinity of the equipment is measured. Depending on the size of the aircraft and the size of the aircraft cabin, flight deck, and equipment bays, multipoint measurement or mode stirring can be used to maximise the internal field in the vicinity of the equipment. See the User's Guide for detailed low-level swept-field test procedures.
- k. **Step 11 — Generic transfer functions and attenuation — Level A display systems only**
1. Level A displays involve functions for which system information is displayed directly to the pilot. For Level A display systems, the aircraft attenuation data may be determined using generic attenuation and transfer function data. This approach should not be used for other Level A systems, such as control systems, because failures and malfunctions of those systems can more directly and abruptly contribute to a Catastrophic failure event than do display system failures and malfunctions; therefore, other Level A systems should have a more rigorous method of HIRF compliance verification.
  2. The integrated system test levels specified in Step 5 may be derived from the generic transfer functions and attenuation for different types of aircraft. Acceptable transfer functions for calculating the test levels are given in [Appendix 1](#) to this AMC. [Appendix 1](#) to this AMC also contains guidelines for selecting the proper generic attenuation. The generic transfer functions show the envelope of the currents that might be expected to be induced in the types of aircraft in an external HIRF environment of 1 V/m. The current levels should be multiplied linearly by HIRF environment I, II, or III, as appropriate, to determine the integrated system test levels.
  3. The internal HIRF electric field levels are the external HIRF environment divided by the appropriate attenuation, in linear units. For example, 20 dB or a 10:1 attenuation means the test level is the applicable external HIRF environment electric field strength reduced by a factor of 10.
  4. The internal HIRF environments for Level A display systems can also be measured using on-aircraft low-level coupling measurements of the actual system installation

(see Step 10). This procedure should provide more accurate information to the user, and the test levels may be lower than the generic transfer functions or attenuation, which are worst-case estimates.

**i. Step 12 — Aircraft similarity assessment**

1. The aircraft attenuation and transfer functions tests performed for a previously certified aircraft may be used to support aircraft-level verification for a similar aircraft model. The aircraft used as the basis for similarity must have been previously certified for HIRF compliance, using HIRF attenuation and transfer functions determined by tests on that aircraft.
2. The similarity assessment for the new aircraft should consider the aircraft differences that could impact the internal HIRF environment affecting the Level A systems and associated wiring. The comparison should consider equipment and wiring locations, airframe materials and construction, and apertures that could affect attenuation for the external HIRF environment.
3. If the assessment finds only minimal differences between the previously certified aircraft and the new aircraft to be certified, similarity may be used to determine aircraft attenuation and transfer functions without the need for additional aircraft tests, providing there are no unresolved in-service HIRF problems related to the existing aircraft. If there is uncertainty about the effects of the differences, additional tests and analyses should be conducted as necessary and appropriate to resolve the uncertainty. The amount of additional testing should be commensurate with the degree of difference identified between the new aircraft and the aircraft previously certified. If significant differences are found, similarity should not be used as the basis for aircraft-level verification.

**m. Step 13 — Assess immunity**

1. The test levels used for the integrated system test of Step 5 should be compared with the internal RF current or RF fields determined by the aircraft low-level coupling tests (see Step 10), the generic transfer functions and attenuation (see Step 11), or the aircraft similarity assessment (see Step 12). The actual aircraft internal RF currents and RF fields should be lower than the integrated system test levels. The applicant's comparison method should be included in the HIRF compliance plan. The method should enable a direct comparison between the system test level and the aircraft internal HIRF environment at the equipment or system location, using current for frequencies from 10 kHz through 400 MHz, and using electric field strength for frequencies from 100 MHz through 18 GHz.
2. If the conducted RF susceptibility test levels used for the integrated system test (see Step 5) were too low when compared with the aircraft-induced currents determined in Steps 10b, 10c, 11 or 12, then corrective measures may be needed (see Step 14). If the radiated RF susceptibility test levels used for integrated system tests (see Step 5) were too low when compared with the aircraft internal fields determined in Steps 10d, 11 or 12, then corrective measures may also be needed (see Step 14).
3. When comparing the current measured during low-level swept-current tests in Step 10c with the current used during the integrated system tests in Step 5, there may be differences. These differences may be due to variations between the actual aircraft installation and the integrated system laboratory installation, such as wire bundle lengths, shielding and bonding, and wire bundle composition. The worst-

case current signature for a particular wire bundle should be compared to the current induced at the particular test level or equipment malfunction over discrete frequency ranges such as 50 kHz to 500 kHz, 500 kHz to 30 MHz, and 30 MHz to 100 MHz. This comparison should be broken into discrete frequency ranges because the resonant frequencies may differ between the integrated system tests and the aircraft tests.

4. If the applicant used aircraft high-level tests (see Step 9) for aircraft HIRF verification, it should be determined if there were any Level A system susceptibilities. Any Level A system susceptibilities should be evaluated based on the pass/fail criteria as established in the test plan (see paragraph 8.b.1). If the HIRF susceptibilities are not acceptable, then corrective measures may be needed (see Step 14).
  5. HIRF susceptibilities that were not anticipated or defined in the test plan pass/fail criteria may be observed during aircraft high-level tests or integrated system laboratory tests. If so, the data collected during the HIRF compliance verification process should be used to determine the effect of the HIRF susceptibility on the aircraft systems and functions. The pass/fail criteria may be modified if the effects neither cause nor contribute to conditions that adversely affect the aircraft functions or systems, as applicable, in the HIRF regulations. The applicant should provide an assessment of, and supporting rationale for, any modifications to the pass/fail criteria to the Agency for approval. If the HIRF susceptibilities are not acceptable, then corrective measures may be needed (see Step 14).
  6. If the Level A systems show no adverse effects when tested to levels derived from HIRF environment I or III, as applicable, then this also demonstrates compliance of the system with HIRF environment II.
  7. If the integrated system tests results (see Step 5) satisfy the pass criteria from 12 GHz to 18 GHz, and design analysis shows that the system has no circuits that operate in the 18 GHz to 40 GHz frequency range, then this demonstrates by analysis that the system is not adversely affected when exposed to HIRF environments above 18 GHz. If these conditions are satisfied, further aircraft and system tests and assessments above 18 GHz are not necessary.
  8. Review the actual system installation in the aircraft and the system configuration used for the integrated system test (see Step 5). If significant configuration differences are identified, corrective measures may be needed (see Step 14).
  9. Certain RF receivers with antennas connected should not be expected to perform without effects during exposure to the HIRF environments, particularly in the RF receiver operating band. Because the definition of adverse effects and the RF response at particular portions of the spectrum depends on the RF receiver system function, the applicant should refer to the individual RF receiver minimum performance standards for additional guidance. However, because many RF receiver minimum performance standards were prepared before implementation of HIRF requirements, the RF receiver pass/fail criteria should be coordinated with the Agency.
- n. **Step 14 — Corrective measures.** Corrective measures should be taken if the system fails to satisfy the HIRF immunity assessment of Step 13. If changes or modifications to the aircraft, equipment, system or system installation are required, then additional tests may be necessary to verify the effectiveness of the changes. The ED-14G, Section 20,

equipment tests, integrated system tests, and aircraft tests, in whole or in part, may need to be repeated to demonstrate HIRF compliance.

- o. Step 15 — HIRF protection compliance.** The test results and compliance report should be submitted to the Agency for approval as part of the overall aircraft type certification or supplemental type certification process.

## 10. STEPS TO DEMONSTRATE LEVEL B AND C SYSTEM HIRF COMPLIANCE

- a. Step 1 — System safety assessment.** The applicant should determine the system failure condition classification for the systems being certified on their aircraft using a system safety assessment as discussed in paragraph 6.b.2. For systems classified with Hazardous or Major failure conditions (Level B and C systems), the applicant should follow compliance steps 2 through 8 listed below, as appropriate. These compliance steps are also depicted in Figure 3 of this AMC, and are not necessarily accomplished sequentially. For systems classified with Catastrophic failure conditions (Level A systems), the compliance steps outlined in Chapter 9 should be followed.
- b. Step 2 — Define aircraft and system HIRF protection.** The applicant should define the HIRF protection features that will be incorporated into the aircraft and system designs, based on the HIRF environments that are applicable to their aircraft and its Level B and C systems. Equipment, system, and aircraft HIRF protection design may occur before aircraft-level tests are performed, and before the actual internal HIRF environment is determined. Therefore, the equipment, system and aircraft HIRF protection design should be based on an estimate of the expected internal HIRF environment.
- c. Step 3 — Select compliance method.** The applicant should determine whether to perform equipment HIRF tests on the Level B and C systems, or whether to base compliance on previous equipment tests performed for a similar system.
- d. Step 4 — Equipment test**
  - 1. Level B and Level C systems do not require the same degree of HIRF compliance testing as Level A systems and, therefore, do not require aircraft-level testing. ED-14G, Section 20, laboratory test procedures should be used, using equipment test levels defined in the regulations. The test levels used depend on whether the system is categorised as Level B or C. Equipment HIRF test level 1 or 2, as applicable, should be used for Level B systems. ED-14G, Section 20, Category RR, satisfies the requirements of equipment HIRF test level 1. For equipment HIRF test level 2, the applicant may use the approach in paragraph 9.k. to help determine acceptable aircraft transfer function and attenuation curves for their Level B system. Equipment HIRF test level 3 should only be used for Level C systems. ED-14G, Section 20, Category TT, satisfies the requirements of equipment HIRF test level 3. When applying modulated signals, the test levels are given in terms of the peak of the test signal as measured by a root mean square (rms), indicating spectrum analyser's peak detector. See the User's Guide (SAE ARP 5583A/EUROCAE ED-107A) for more details on modulation.
  - 2. Define the appropriate pass/fail criteria for the system, based on the system safety assessment and the appropriate HIRF regulation (see paragraph 6.b.2). Any susceptibility noted during the equipment tests, including equipment malfunctions, upset, or damage, should be recorded and evaluated based on the defined pass/fail criteria.

**e. Step 5 — Similarity assessment**

1. The equipment HIRF tests performed for a system previously certified on one aircraft model may be used to show compliance for a similar system. Each system considered for similarity needs to be assessed independently even if it may use equipment and installation techniques that have been the subject of a previous certification.
2. The system used as the basis for certification by similarity must have been previously certified for HIRF compliance on another aircraft model, and must have successfully completed equipment HIRF tests. Similarity assessment requires comparison of both equipment and installation differences that could adversely affect HIRF immunity. An assessment of a new system should consider the differences in the equipment circuit interfaces, wiring, grounding, bonding, connectors, and wire-shielding practices.
3. If the assessment finds only minimal differences between the previously certified system and the new system to be certified, similarity may be used for HIRF compliance without the need for additional equipment HIRF tests, providing there are no unresolved in-service HIRF problems related to the previously certified system. If there is uncertainty about the effects of the differences, additional tests and analyses should be conducted as necessary and appropriate to resolve the uncertainty. The amount of additional testing should be commensurate with the degree of difference identified between the new system and the system previously certified. If significant differences are found, similarity should not be used as the basis for HIRF compliance.

**f. Step 6 — Assess immunity**

1. The results of the equipment test should be reviewed to determine if the pass/fail criteria is satisfied. HIRF susceptibilities that were not anticipated or defined in the test plan pass/fail criteria may be observed during equipment HIRF tests. If so, the applicant should determine the effect of the HIRF susceptibility on the aircraft systems and functions. The pass/fail criteria may be modified if the effects neither cause nor contribute to conditions that adversely affect the aircraft functions or systems, as applicable, in the HIRF regulations. The applicant should provide an assessment of, and supporting rationale for, any modifications to the pass/fail criteria to the Agency for approval. If the HIRF susceptibilities are not acceptable, then corrective measures may be needed (see Step 7).
2. The actual system installation in the aircraft and the configuration used for the equipment tests (see Step 4) should be reviewed. If significant differences in grounding, shielding, connectors, or wiring are identified, corrective measures may be needed (see Step 7).
3. Certain RF receivers with antennas connected should not be expected to perform without effects during exposure to the HIRF environments, particularly in the RF receiver operating band. Because the definition of adverse effects and the RF response at particular portions of the spectrum depends on the RF receiver system function, the applicant should refer to the individual RF receiver minimum performance standards for additional guidance. However, because many RF receiver minimum performance standards were prepared before implementation of HIRF requirements, the RF receiver pass/fail criteria should be coordinated with

the Agency. Future modifications to the minimum performance standards should reflect HIRF performance requirements.

- g. Step 7 — Corrective measures.** Corrective measures should be taken if the system fails to satisfy the HIRF immunity assessment of Step 6. If changes or modifications to the equipment, system, or system installation are required, then additional tests may be necessary to verify the effectiveness of the changes. The ED-14G, Section 20, equipment tests, in whole or in part, may need to be repeated to demonstrate HIRF compliance.
- h. Step 8 — HIRF protection compliance.** The test results and compliance report should be submitted to the Agency for approval as part of the overall aircraft type certification or supplemental type certification process.

## 11. MAINTENANCE, PROTECTION ASSURANCE, AND MODIFICATIONS

- a.** The minimum maintenance required to support HIRF certification should be identified in the Instructions for Continued Airworthiness (ICA) as specified in CS 23.1529, CS 25.1529, CS 27.1529, and CS 29.1529, as appropriate. Dedicated devices or specific features may be required to provide HIRF protection for an equipment or system installation. Appropriate maintenance procedures should be defined for these devices and features to ensure in-service protection integrity. A HIRF protection assurance programme may be necessary to verify that the maintenance procedures are adequate. The User's Guide (SAE ARP 5583A/EUROCAE ED-107A) provides further information on these topics.
- b.** The maintenance procedures should consider the effects of corrosion, fretting, flexing cycles, or other causes that could degrade these HIRF protection devices. Whenever applicable, specific replacement times for these devices and features should be defined and identified.
- c.** Aircraft or system modifications should be assessed for the impact any changes will have on the HIRF protection. This assessment should be based on analysis and/or measurement.

[Amdt 20/13]

## Appendix 1 to AMC 20-158 Generic transfer functions and attenuation

ED Decision 2015/017/R

### 1. Generic transfer functions

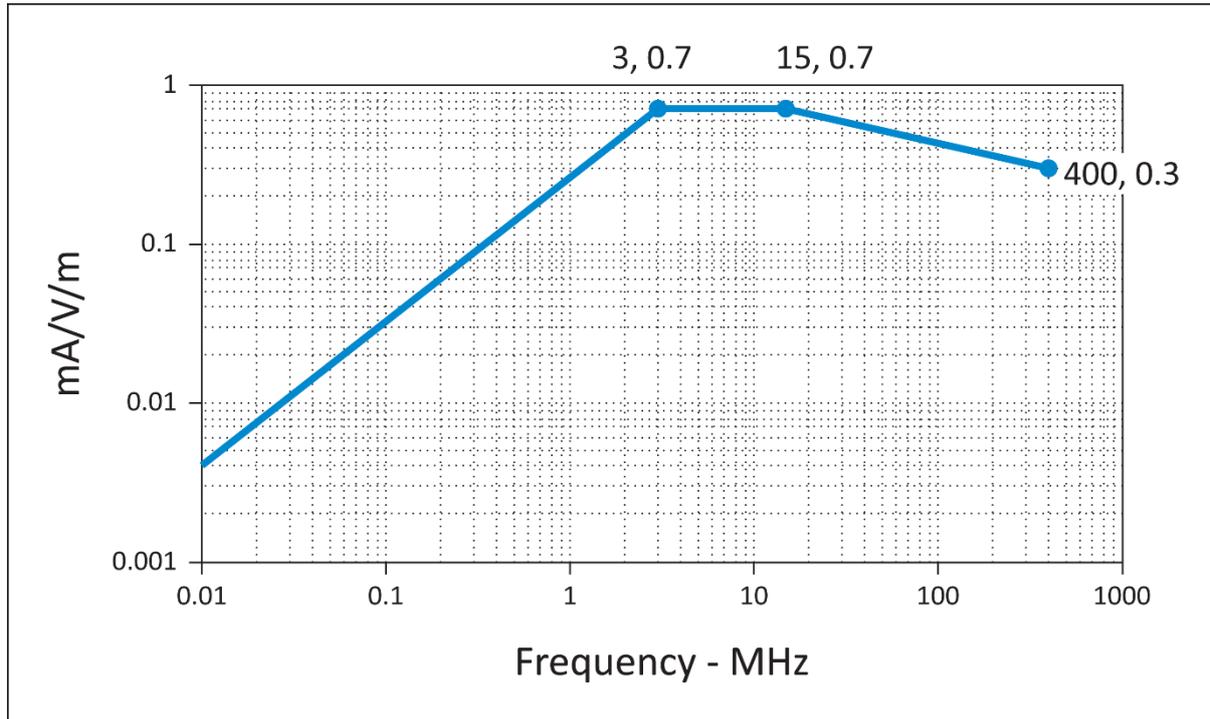
- a. Suitable transfer functions for calculating the bulk current injection test levels for Level A display systems (see paragraph 9.k.) are given in Figures A1-1 through A1-5. These are derived generic transfer functions acquired from test results obtained from a significant number of aircraft. The test results were then processed to establish a 95 per cent population probability.
- b. The transfer functions are normalised to a 1 V/m HIRF environment and may be multiplied linearly by the external HIRF environment to establish the bulk current injection test level requirements in the frequency range from 10 kHz up to 400 MHz. For example, if the HIRF environment is 100 V/m at 3 MHz, then using Figure A1-1, multiply 0.7 mA/V/m by 100 V/m to establish a test level of 70 milliamperes (mA).
- c. Consult the User's Guide (SAE ARP 5583A/EUROCAE ED-107A) for details on the use of generic transfer functions.

### 2. Generic attenuation

- a. Figure A1-6 shows the generic attenuation for frequencies from 100 MHz to 18 GHz that can be used for determining the internal HIRF environment where equipment and associated wiring for Level A display systems (see paragraph 9.k.) are installed. This internal HIRF environment provides the test level for the integrated system radiated susceptibility laboratory test. The external HIRF environment should be divided by the appropriate attenuation, in linear units, to determine the internal HIRF environment. For example, 12 dB or a 4:1 attenuation means the test level is the applicable external HIRF environment electric field strength reduced by a factor of 4.
- b. Guidance on the use of the generic attenuation is given below.
  1. No attenuation. No attenuation credit can be used when the Level A display equipment and associated wiring are located in aircraft areas with no HIRF shielding, such as areas with unprotected non-conductive composite structures, areas where there is no guarantee of structural bonding, or other open areas where no shielding is provided. The applicant may choose to use no attenuation for equipment that may be installed in a broad range of aircraft areas.
  2. 6 dB attenuation. This attenuation is appropriate when the Level A display equipment and associated wiring are located in aircraft areas with minimal HIRF shielding, such as a cockpit in a non-conductive composite fuselage with minimal additional shielding, or areas on the wing leading or trailing edges, or in wheel wells.
  3. 12 dB attenuation. This attenuation is appropriate when the Level A display equipment and associated wiring are located entirely within aircraft areas with some HIRF shielding, in aircraft with a metal fuselage or a composite fuselage with shielding effectiveness equivalent to metal. Examples of such areas are avionics bays not enclosed by bulkheads, cockpits, and areas near windows, access panels, and doors without EMI gaskets. Current-carrying conductors in this area, such as hydraulic tubing, control cables, wire bundles, and metal wire trays, are not all electrically bonded to bulkheads they pass through.

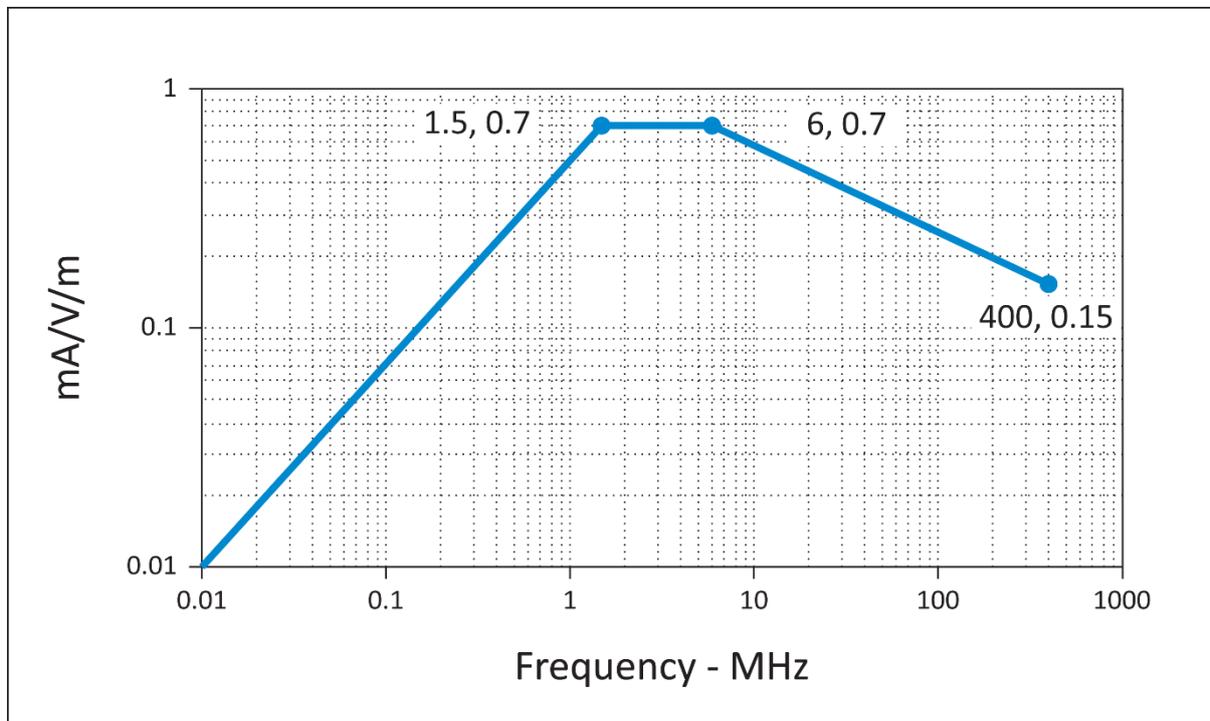
4. 20 dB attenuation. This attenuation is appropriate when the Level A display equipment and associated wiring are located entirely within the aircraft areas with moderate HIRF shielding, in aircraft with a metal fuselage or a composite fuselage with shielding effectiveness equivalent to metal. In addition, wire bundles passing through bulkheads in these areas have shields electrically bonded to the bulkheads. Wire bundles are installed close to metal structure and take advantage of other inherent shielding characteristics provided by metal structure. Current-carrying conductors such as hydraulic tubing, cables, and metal wire trays are electrically bonded to all bulkheads they pass through.
  5. 32 dB attenuation. This attenuation is appropriate when the Level A display equipment and all associated wiring to and from equipment are located entirely within areas with very effective HIRF shielding to form an electromagnetic enclosure.
  - c. Different attenuation values may be appropriate for different frequency ranges. For example, 0 dB attenuation may be used for the frequency range of 100 MHz to 400 MHz, 6 dB attenuation for the frequency range of 400 MHz to 1 GHz, and 12 dB attenuation for the frequency range of 1 GHz to 18 GHz. If the applicant intends to use different attenuation values for various frequency ranges, then the supporting rationale should also be provided.
  - d. Consult the User's Guide for details on the use of generic attenuation.
3. **Measured transfer functions or attenuation.** The applicant can produce their own generic transfer functions and attenuation for their Level A display systems (see paragraph 9.k.) based on actual measurements on their aircraft models. These transfer functions and attenuation can then be used in their HIRF compliance submission in place of the generic transfer functions and attenuation specified in this appendix. The Agency encourages this approach because it provides a more accurate reflection of the true internal HIRF environment of the aircraft models. However, if the applicant intends to produce their own generic transfer functions and attenuation, then this approach should also be addressed in the HIRF compliance plan (see paragraph 8.a.) that is submitted to the Agency for approval.

Figure A1-1 — Generic transfer function — Aeroplane



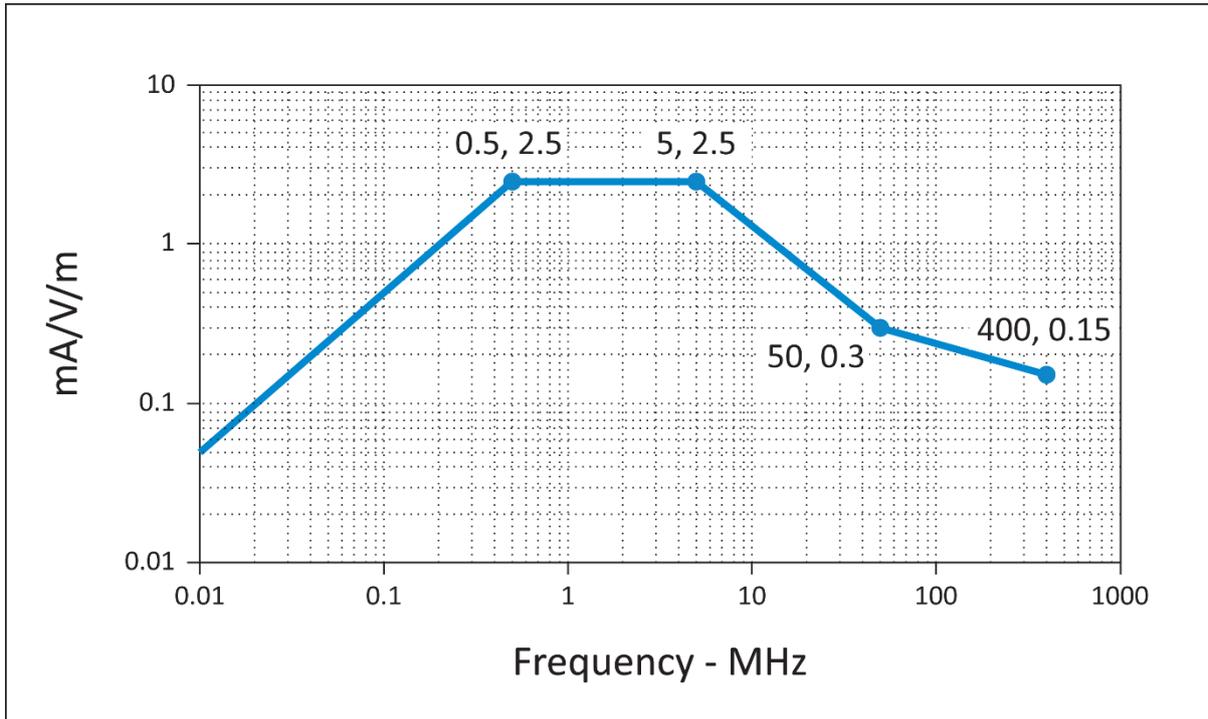
Generic transfer function normalised to 1 V/m for an aeroplane with a fuselage length of  $\leq 25$  m.

Figure A1-2 — Generic transfer function — Aeroplane



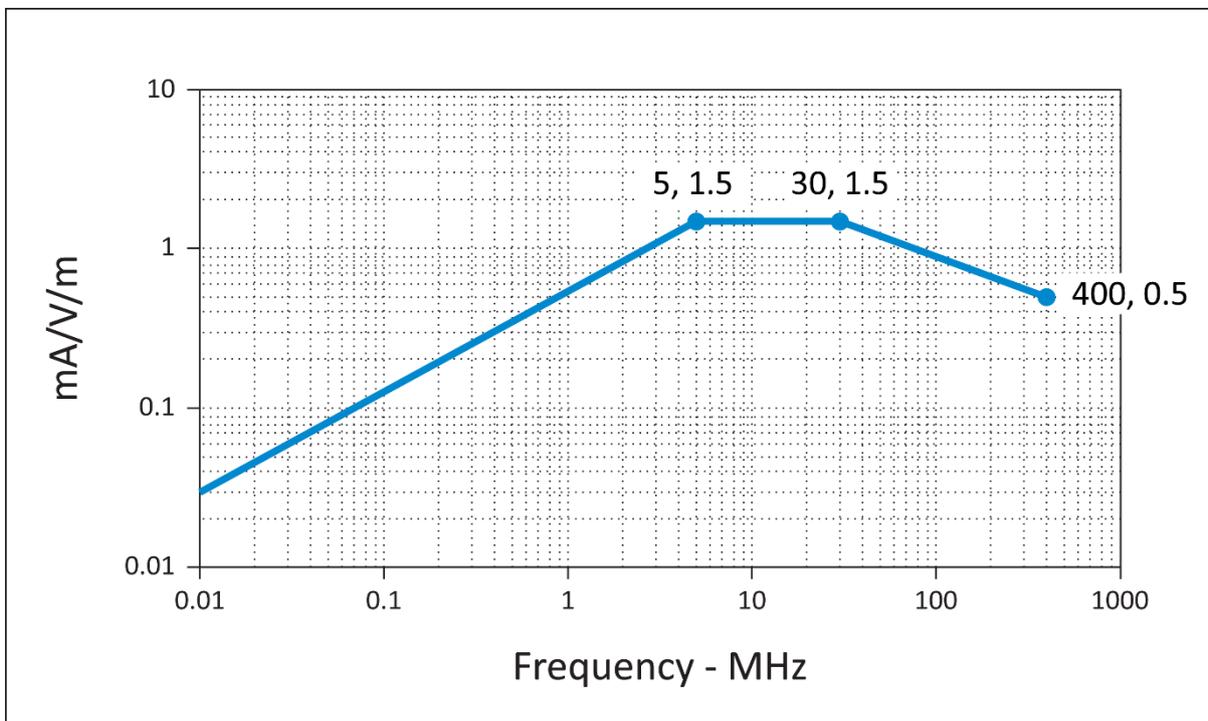
Generic transfer function normalised to 1 V/m for an aeroplane with a fuselage length of  $> 25$  m and  $\leq 50$  m.

Figure A1-3 — Generic transfer function — Aeroplane



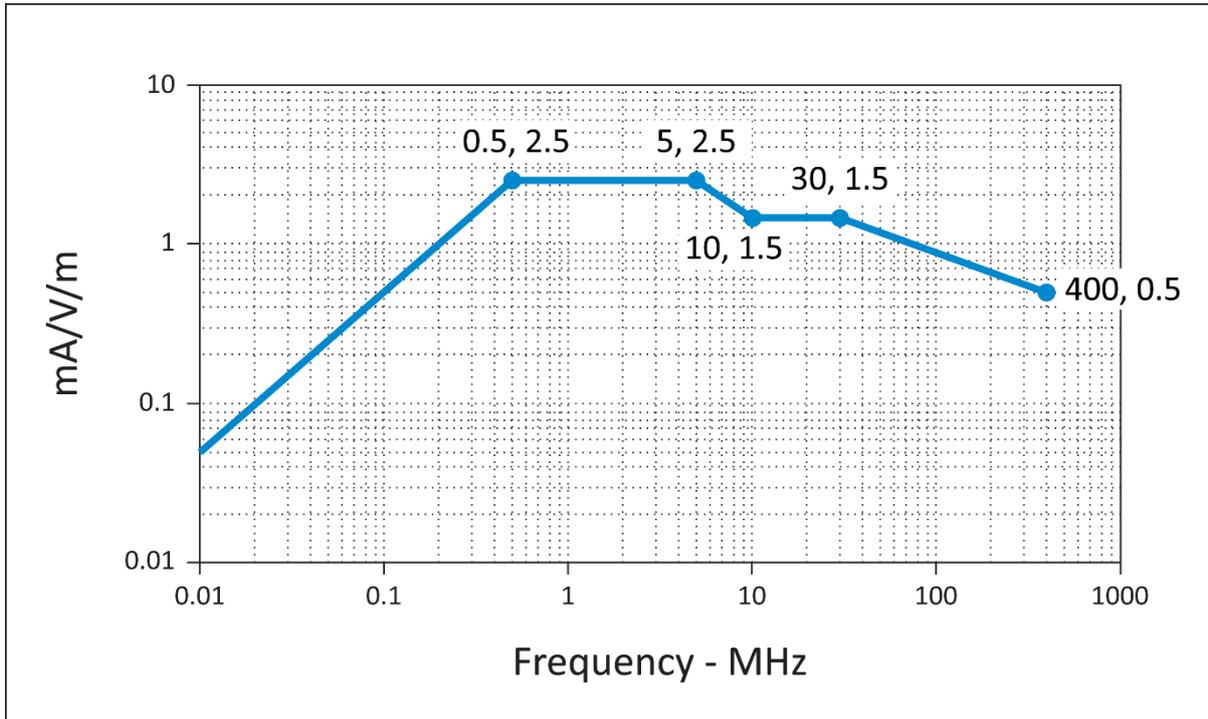
Generic transfer function normalised to 1 V/m for an aeroplane with a fuselage length of > 50 m.

Figure A1-4 — Generic transfer function — Rotorcraft



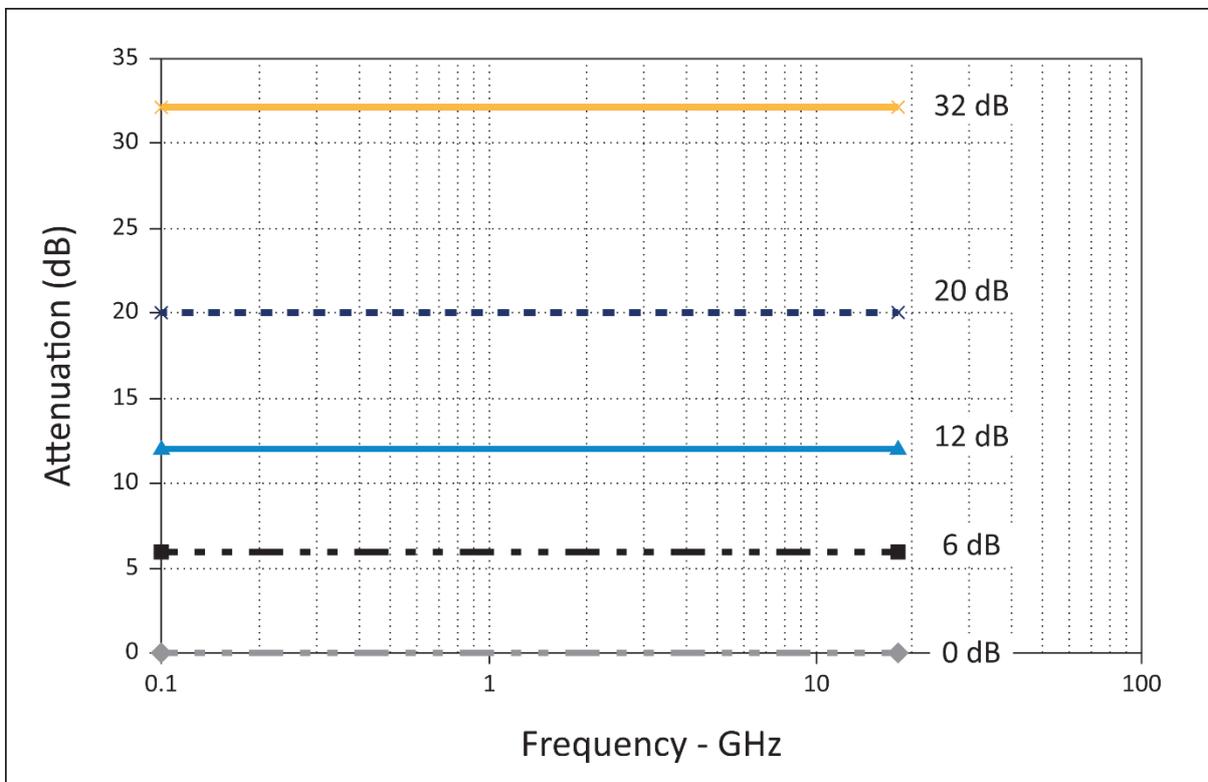
Generic transfer function normalised to 1 V/m for a rotorcraft.

Figure A1-5 — Generic transfer function — All aircraft



Generic transfer function normalised to 1 V/m for all aircraft.

Figure A1-6 — Generic attenuation values — All aircraft 100 MHz to 18 GHz



[Amdt 20/13]